

Book of Mormon

Thoughts

Anonymous

*Hope is believing, faith is asking,
knowledge is receiving, and priesthood is becoming.*

Introduction

This book is not a scholarly manual to assist in your Book of Mormon study. It is not a book of opinions or epiphanies. It is the revelations of the anonymous blog writer *Pure Revelations* (PR), written for the purpose of assisting those who will awake and arise.

My hope is that you will develop a relationship with the Lord to where He can personally show you the same things I have seen. You will probably see much I have not. That is the beauty of the Heavenly Realm, it is endless and you will never run out of things to learn.

If a fire burns within you to know Jesus Christ personally, to be a witness, and to serve Him with all your heart, you will rise to the occasion. We come to this world prepared to perform a mission, and your awakening is part of that journey.

NOTE:

This book was written over the course of a year, and then with the help of volunteers edited for grammatical errors. The content is from Pure Revelation unless noted otherwise.

At the end of each chapter is a question and answer portion, as was in the original blog. Some has been edited to exclude names or unrelated content.

© Pure Revelations, 2021

First Book of Nephi

Lehi's Second Comforter – 1 Nephi 1:1-20

1 I, Nephi, having been born of goodly **[inspired]** parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness **[revelations]** and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days. **Because Nephi has experienced great spiritual blessings in his life thus far, including the ministering of angels and being a witness to many great things, (a prophet, seer, and revelator,) he writes a record. He gives credit to his parents, his father, who has taught him much, including how to write, study the scriptures, and many lessons of life.**

2 Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians. **[Written in the early Demotic Egyptian style with an emphasis on Hebrew words and symbols. This was taught to Nephi by his father Lehi who dealt with the Egyptians via trade in his business. Lehi was both a merchant trader and collector of sacred writings, by the commission of scribes to copy the sacred temple texts]**

3 And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge. **[Not as a scribe, but by his own account.]**

4 For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed. **There were indeed many prophets. Meaning both men and women preaching to the people. These included Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Huldah, and many others. Also, many false prophets preaching that they were a righteous people and that the others were evil for accusing them of such. (Details regarding their stories can be found in “A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations” pg. 149-154.)**

5 Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth **[on a business trip away]** prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

6 And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire **[light]** and dwelt upon a rock before him; **[open vision]** and he saw and heard much; and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly. **[He had received a baptism of fire and a taste of the eternal realm including visions of coming events.]**

7 And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen. **[He was still feeling the effects of the change to his spirit and his vision.]**

8 And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, **[A full ascension experience]** even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw

God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God. **[Lehi has his first Second Comforter experience. It was tangible, but in the Spirit. He sees God from a distance.]**

9 And it came to pass that he saw One descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day. **[A vision of the coming Christ, condescending among the House of Israel.]**

10 And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament. **[The great Apostles that were chosen from before the world.]**

11 And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read. **[The Lord presents to him his calling and election made sure.]**

12 And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord. **[The spirit of Prophecy]**

13 And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

14 And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth; and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish! **[An act of praise amongst the Angels of God who worship at the Throne.]**

15 And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, **[filled with light, clean in the presence of the Lord]** because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

16 And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spake unto his children, of which I shall not make a full account. **[The writings of Lehi were vast, many volumes. Mostly concerning things he had seen regarding the Heavenly Realm and the destiny of the House of Israel.]**

17 But I shall make an account of my proceedings in my days. Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my father, upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; wherefore, after I have abridged the record of my father then will I make an account of mine own life. **(Details regarding this abridgment are included in “A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations” pg. 157)**

18 Therefore, I would that ye should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my father, Lehi, yea, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

19 And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations; and he testified that the things which he saw and heard, and also the things which he read in

the book, **[his prophetic assignment]** manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah, and also the redemption of the world.

20 And when the Jews heard these things they were angry with him; yea, even as with the prophets of old, whom they had cast out, and stoned, and slain; and they also sought his life, that they might take it away. **[Those who preached against the Jews were considered political enemies and there were assassins sent by those in power to have them killed.]** But behold, I, Nephi, will show unto you that the tender mercies of the Lord are over all those whom he hath chosen, because of their faith, to make them mighty even unto the power of deliverance. **[Many are Called (receive Christ), yet few are Chosen, which is a reference to 4th estate servants who have exercised great faith in the world. They are delivered from the Adversary in their elected callings to perform a great work in the name of the Lord. Nephi will use his writing to demonstrate how this occurred during his life.]**

Questions and Comments:

Please keep it coming! Man it tastes good. I feel like a kid in the spiritual candy shop with what you've shared. It resonates of truth and motivates greater faith in Christ for me! Excited to learn more about the details of Nephi's ascension. Truly the strength of his position in regards to his convictions in our great Lord Jesus went way beyond being a member of a true institution. Rather, it came from his own redemption and personal tangible experience through and with our Savior! His fervor and convictions / first hand witness for Christ "our all" and his clear invitation to like wise receive- is profound and most beautiful for me. 2 Nephi 25: But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.

7 But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

8 Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

9 And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

10 Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

11 And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem;

wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

12 But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

13 Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name... ..we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

26 And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins... 29 And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out. **[How often I have sat in a Gospel Doctrine class and wished to expound what the Lord has shown me only to have the Spirit shut my mouth. I am grateful the Lord is allowing me to do this.]**

Will you be doing this for the entire BoM? **[Yes, I think so. PR]**

A few years ago my husband and I were talking about 1st Nephi chapter 1. He shared his thoughts about what “goodly” meant based on what he had learned. He said that Lehi had some wealth and was therefore likely able to pay a tutor or teacher to instruct his children “in the learning of [his] father.” The wealth also can be assumed because Lehi traveled to Egypt and had learned about the language and customs there. Also, Nephi and his brothers gathered their belongings to hopefully pay Laban for the brass plates. So, goodly can also be considered to mean “wealthy,” or of considerable status, reputation, and monetary belongings. **[My understanding was that they followed the pattern of righteousness as set by the Law of Moses, and taught their children to worship the Lord. Nephi’s parents followed the Spirit in their raising of children and were “inspired.” In today’s vernacular some would refer to them as “churchgoers.” PR]**

Nephi’s Journey Begins – 1 Nephi 2:1-24

1 For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life. **[Often when we are so cumbered with the business of life it can be difficult for us to hear the Spirit telling us something. It requires us to take the time to be holy. In these cases, when urgency abounds, the Lord will visit us in our dreams.]**

2 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

3 And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him. **[Often the Lord does not explain in detail the reasons for doing something. In our obedience we receive the blessings and later realize the reason for the revelation. Why would Lehi be commanded to leave when so many other prophets were remaining in the city?]**

4 And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness. **[He was strictly commanded that he was to do it this way.]**

5 And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; **[This was not the typical path traveled. Lehi would have traveled the Via Maris (The Way of the Sea along the Mediterranean) when trading with Egypt. In this case he was following the commandment of the Lord. Going south it took almost 2 weeks to arrive at the Gulf of Aqaba.]** and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

6 And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water. **[Near the Gulf of Aqaba on the eastern side]**

7 And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God. **[Lehi had built an altar of stones to God before. A sign of his devotion and covenant to God.]**

8 And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

9 And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

10 And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord! **[As Lehi and his family traveled south, Lehi rehearsed to them much of the stories of the children of Israel, their struggles and miracles in the wilderness, as they were obedient in keeping the Lord's commandments. He compared their struggles to the children of Israel and hoped they would be as blessed.]**

11 Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart. **[Lehi's sons were very astute, business minded men. They had prepared to take over their father's successful trade business and had networked well amongst the Jews. They saw Lehi's "imaginations" as folly, but felt compelled to oblige their father hoping he would come to his senses. They also were obedient in fear of losing their inheritance to run the family business.]**

12 And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.
13 Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father. **[Many people today are like this, seeing the world through the eyes of the natural man, with no relationship to the Spirit to guide them. Many people in America today take for granted the blessings of safety and prosperity we enjoy.]**

14 And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them. **[Lehi was a powerful prophet, filled with confidence in the Lord.]**

15 And my father dwelt in a tent. **[Seemingly, a random statement; but every sentence in the Book of Mormon is there for a reason. To dwell in a tent is to imply that one is a wanderer without a permanent home. Lehi was no stranger to the traveling life, but he dwelt in a spacious home near Jerusalem. His new “dwelling” was now a simple tent. He gave up everything to be obedient to the Lord’s word to him.]**

16 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, **[From the perspective of writing this as an older more experienced man.]** nevertheless being large in stature, **[influence]** and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, **[spiritually-minded]** wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers. **[The Spirit comforted Nephi, receiving personal revelation concerning his father’s visions.]**

17 And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

18 But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

19 And it came to pass **[after the passing of time]** that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart. **[A formula for great faith, to seek revelation diligently, with a humble heart.]**

20 And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, **[My revelations to you.]** ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands. **[The land of promise for each of us is different. This is an example of the Lord’s direction in the important things in our lives such as marriage, career, where we live, what we do. The promises of the Lord to us are directly related to our faith and the covenants made before we were born.]**

21 And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. **[to rebel against the words given to Nephi by the Spirit of the Lord.]**

22 And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, **[as received by revelation]** thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

23 For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

24 And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance. **[These words were recorded by Nephi as direct revelations from the Lord, in His voice. Previously, Nephi had only received revelation by the Spirit. He is beginning to exercise the gifts of the Spirit and ascend the steps of revelatory progression. As Nephi wrote this he must have felt great joy and understanding after witnessing the fulfillment of these prophecies the wisdom of God in His mercy to have the seed of his wicked brothers play a part in the repentance of his people.]**

Questions and Comments:

I appreciate your commentary on the book of Mormon the book of Mormon has played an integral part in my conversion to the gospel not being influenced by any religion as I am a convert by the age of 16 I had read the book of Mormon three times and still hadn't joined the church my conversion to the truthfulness of the book of Mormon was a process but it develop me in such a way as to learn how to receive revelation and I am so ever grateful for the kindness the Lord has showed me And taught me step by step until I was able to receive a direct revelation that book of Mormon was true. I have been blessed much and I'm so grateful for your wonderful gift and for sharing it.

Did Nephi have any sisters at this time? If so why do you think they aren't mentioned? **[He did have sisters. I don't know the particular to that question, but it may be that they were younger. PR]**

Was all of this seen by you, as you had seen in your books, or was this all revelation through the Gift of Revelation? **[It is a mix. This why I call it BofM Thoughts. PR]**

Nephi's Test of Faith – 1 Nephi 3:1-31

1 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father. **[Just after receiving the revelation from the previous chapter regarding his relationship with his brothers and their posterity. The original translation did not have the chapter divisions.]**

2 And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.

3 For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass. **[Laban was the keeper of the temple treasury, which included all the sacred texts and relics. Refer to "A Witness**

of the Temporal Dispensations” under the chapter Lehi and Nephi for more information.]

4 Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness. **[The Lord could have commanded only Nephi to go, but it was important that his brothers also go to see the hand of the Lord with Nephi, and the sacred commission of this work.]**

5 And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord. **[He had already told the older brothers, as it was their expected place of leadership to fulfill their father’s commandments.]**

6 Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured. **[An important statement, not only did Nephi remember to include it in his record, but it was a prophesy of his father Lehi.]**

7 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my father: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them. **[This is the mantra that defined Nephi’s life. A true principle to remember when seeking the Lord, as He has also promised that WE WILL FIND HIM IF WE SEEK. Refer to D&C 93:1, D&C 88:63-64, Ether 12]**

8 And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord. **[Often we don’t receive a witness of our revelations until later, at which time our joy is full.]**

9 And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.

10 And it came to pass that when we had gone up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another. **[Approximately two weeks travel with little conversation regarding the matter.]**

11 And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house. **[The Lord gave Laman the first opportunity to receive the blessing on behalf of his family, yet he relied upon himself and what he perceived as his business skills. Such tactics involved manipulation and a position of perceived strength.]**

12 And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.

13 And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee. **[Laban had a grudge against the House of Lehi due to previous affairs with Lehi that brought embarrassment to Laban because of his own dishonesty.]**

14 But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness.

15 But behold I said unto them that: As the Lord liveth, and as we live, **[an oath]** we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

16 Wherefore, let us be faithful **[seek revelation and act upon it]** in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our father's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches. And all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord. **[Lehi had been commanded to leave his riches, and now they know why.]**

17 For he knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people.

18 For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my father should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to flee out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he flee out of the land.

19 And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers; **[Nephi, by revelation, understands the reason for retrieving the records.]**

20 And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time. **[The original plates of brass contained "All the holy prophets." Many of which we do not have the records in the Bible today.]**

21 And it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my brethren, that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of God. **[Nephi often uses godly persuasion to teach his family.]**

22 And it came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

23 And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban. **[There was a space of time between the last meeting with Laban and the next one. This delayed their return and led to worry and murmuring with Sariah, Lehi's wife.]**

24 And it came to pass that we **[all the brothers]** went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

25 And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property. **[Thinking that offering an exaggerated amount of treasure for the plates would exonerate them in the eyes of Laban, they were surprised when Laban stole their possessions and continued to seek their lives. Laban attempted to take their property and appear innocent.]**

26 And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, **[Temple treasury guards]** and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

27 And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

28 And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel

did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod. **[Laman and Lemuel felt they had lost all hope of regaining their wealth and status, blaming their father, Nephi and Sam for their loss.]**

29 And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.

30 And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed. **[The angel appeared in the pillar of light or fire, and spoke to their minds. They all saw it, but it was not of the flesh, therefore, Laman and Lemuel who were carnally-minded instantly began to doubt what they had seen.]**

31 And after the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us? **[How often do we doubt the Lord in regards to the promised blessings He has spoken to us? When we murmur we use the words, “How is it possible that the Lord....?”]**

Questions and Comments:

PR, can you answer this? In verse 28, “Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, ” and then verse 29 And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, “. Did Sam also go with them ? I used to think it was Laman, Lemuel, and Nephi who were sent, but now I’m not sure... **[Sam was with them, but it was Nephi that was beaten with the rod because Laman and Lemuel saw him as the reason for their losing the treasures.**

PR]

Nephi and Laban – 1 Nephi 4:1-38

1 And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; **[Sees the commandment as from God and not only his father Lehi.]** for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?

2 Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.

3 Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians. **[Nephi is already receiving a**

preparatory revelation where he sees that God will somehow destroy Laban. He remembers how the Egyptians were slain in the Red Sea. These thoughts were placed in his mind by the Spirit of the Lord.]

4 Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem. **[If you could have seen through the veil you would have seen many dark spirits speaking to Nephi's brothers.]**

5 And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

6 And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do. **[The Lord almost always has us follow an initial revelation with no idea how we will bring it to pass. This is the pattern by which we learn to have faith.]**

7 Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine. **[Laban collapsed almost to the doors of his own house. He was drunk on the very wine he had stolen from the House of Lehi. Also, he lay in the very spot the temple guards almost slew Nephi as they narrowly escaped from Laban.]**

8 And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

9 And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel. **["The King's Sword," a gift from King Saul to David, kept amongst the sacred relics of the Temple Treasury. For more information refer to "A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations" in the chapter "Nephi."]**

10 And it came to pass that I was constrained **[commanded with great force]** by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him. **[Nephi knew in his heart the Lord would slay Laban, but did not expect he would be the one commanded to do it.]**

11 And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

12 And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands; **[The "Spirit" is the means of communication, but often these are angels communicating with us.]**

13 Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish **[to physically die]** than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

14 And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise. **[His personal revelation.]**

15 Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

16 And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

17 And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

18 Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword. **[Such an execution is considered barbaric in our time, but was considered proper and clean in Nephi's day.]**

19 And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins. **[Interesting detail: when I saw this event I noticed that Nephi removed the outside clothing of Laban before taking his head. It was done in a way that was clean and the clothing was not bloody. It was not done without careful preparation.]**

20 And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury. **[A blunt manner of speaking, low pitched.]**

21 And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

22 And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

23 And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.

24 And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

25 And I also bade him that he should follow me.

26 And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

27 And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

28 And it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

29 And it came to pass that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to flee from my presence.

30 And it came to pass that when the servant of Laban beheld my brethren he began to tremble, and was about to flee from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

31 And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, **[faith and influence of God]** and also having received much strength of the Lord, **[physical strength]** therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not flee.

32 And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.

33 And I spake unto him, even with an oath, that he need not fear; that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us. **[Zoram was not a pure Israelite, but was highly schooled in the traditions of the Jews.]**

34 And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord?

Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.

35 And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.

36 Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

37 And it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.

38 And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father. **[The lesson from this account of Nephi is how the path the Lord sets in our lives is often unexpected and unconventional. We usually do not know how or why things happen the way they do, but we trust in the Lord and He delivers us. The story of Nephi slaying Laban has brought much conjecture, whether Nephi acted properly, or that he wrested the kingdom from the Jews by doing this act. The fact is that Nephi simply followed the commandment of God to do what was required, to assist his posterity to know where they came, to preserve their language, and to come unto Christ.]**

Comments and Questions:

I find it interesting that Zoram brings up the Elder of the Jews “And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews” why?, I think if Mormon kept this piece of information here it must’ve been for a reason. Have you ever wondered about it?

[I perhaps didn’t inquire enough, but I was told that he had an active interest in the dealings of the Elders as it related to the work he did in the treasury. Zoram was very intelligent. PR]

Didn’t Laban get drunk when he was with the Elders? My impression was that they were wicked like Laban. I might be totally wrong. **[Yes, they were wicked and intoxicated. Drinking to that extreme was considered unbecoming to their position, but was generally not considered a reason to lose one’s place at that time. PR]**

I often wondered how Nephi kept the blood off of Nephi’s garments and Laban’s garments. Thank you for that information.

Plates of Brass are Future Prophecy – 1 Nephi 5:1-22

I am doing a careful examination of the Book of Mormon to share some of my insights and revelations for those who are interested. Pray for your own confirmation and revelation as you read these thoughts.

1 And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us. **[The doubts had begun to creep in, which is common as we wait patiently on the Lord.]**

2 For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; **[to bandits]** and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness. **[She had not received a witness of what her husband had received.]**

3 And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father. **[Notice the word “complained,” which is different than to murmur.]**

4 And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren. **[Lehi’s experiences were all visionary and in the Spirit, yet to him, as tangible as anything. In today’s world to see in vision, especially the Lord, is also often dismissed as imaginary.]**

5 But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, **[A covenant]** in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness. **[There was a fear in Lehi that Laban would be angry with his sons for their request, but he remembered the Lord’s promise to him.]**

6 And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.

7 And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted. **[The phrase “joy is full’ is to mean that your joy is the realization that your faith is complete.]**

8 And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak. **[Sariah required evidence to build her faith. More blessed are those who believe without evidence.]**

9 And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel. **[The most sacred form of worship to the Hebrews. Interesting that Lehi is doing this outside the confines of the temple in Jerusalem. He knew that God would honor His sacrifice of holiness as he received it by revelation or commandment.]**

10 And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning. **[The scriptures in their fullness were not readily available to all the Jews. For this reason Lehi often paid scribes to transcribe certain**

portions for his personal collection. This often required an expense to the scribe and a certain payment to the head of the treasury (Laban). For the first time Lehi was able to read the entire record.]

11 And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

12 And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;

13 And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah. **[The plates were kept current by the scribes.]**

14 And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

15 And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

16 And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records. **[Joseph himself kept the records, which responsibility was passed down through his lineage. Laban had risen amongst the scribes to gain favor with the King and was given the honor to be the Keeper of the Treasury.]**

17 And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed— **[The Spirit of Prophecy for the purpose of revealing the Lord's will to Lehi's family.]**

18 That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed. **[The day would come when the seed of Lehi (Native Americans), who had divided into nations, and peoples, and languages, would be able to read these records.]**

19 Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed. **[Has this prophecy been fulfilled in the translation of the Bible? Did not the Brass Plates contain the writings of the Old Testament? Yes; however, this prophecy is speaking specifically about the Brass Plates, which exist today hidden in the Hill Shim whose location is not revealed to the world. When the records in the Hill Shim are brought forth and translated, their words shall be first shared with the descendants of Lehi. At this time they will be in the process of establishing Zion after the great destructions have begun upon this land. The records will be of great worth to the people of Joseph (the Lamanite Prophet,) as these writings will detail their ancestry and also will give them the fullness of the Book of Mormon, which will include the record of Lehi in its entirety.]**

20 And it came to pass that thus far I and my father had kept the commandments **[revelations]** wherewith the Lord had commanded us.

21 And we had obtained the records which the Lord had commanded us, and searched them and found that they were desirable; yea, even of great worth unto us, insomuch

that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children. **[The record was not missing anything.]**

22 Wherefore, it was wisdom **[foresight]** in the Lord that we should carry them with us, as we journeyed in the wilderness towards the land of promise.

Comments and Questions:

Thank you for sharing. Could you explain how complaining is different than murmuring? **[Complaining is voicing your concerns. Murmuring, in the context of scripture, is voicing your lack of trust in the Lord. There can be a fine line between the two, but murmuring is worse because it often prevents the blessings from coming forth. We need to learn to patiently learn to wait on the Lord for the fulfillment of the promises. Until we learn the lesson we often wander in the wilderness of our lack of faith for a season, or forever. If Sariah had received a witness of her husband's prophetic calling and then expressed her frustrations in the Lord, that would be murmuring. PR]**

Thank you for explaining this prophecy of the brass plates. When you say that “they” will be in the process of establishing Zion, are you referring to the descendants of Lehi? And is this the first Zion? **[I am referring to both First Zion and those that will build the New Jerusalem. PR]**

In verse 19 you mention: “The records will be of great worth to the people of Joseph (the Lamanite Prophet,) as these writings will detail their ancestry” Is your reference to Joseph, the descendants of Joseph who was sold into Egypt, or the name of the Lamanite prophet in the latter days? Or is it both? **[It is applicable to both the descendants of ancient Joseph, and the modern Lamanite prophet Joseph. PR]**

Is the Lamanite prophet Native American? Or South America? Or are they the same? **[His ancestry is Hebrew, and he is not South American, which is different. PR]**

What I meant when I asked about being “different” was if Native Americans and Mayan descendants are not related through the lineage of Lehi? Or are they both Lehi's descendants? Are Mayans, Incas, not of Hebrew lineage? Sorry, I'm Hispanic and have Mayan in me, so I've always considered myself a Lamanite descendant, my patriarchal blessing says I'm from the tribe of Manasseh. **[The further south you go the more that lineage becomes diluted. The remnant of the seed of Lehi were North American and some migrated south after the destructions. PR]**

The Prophet Nephi's Intent – 1 Nephi 6:1-6

1 And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work. **[He received this by commandment not knowing the reason.]**

2 For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph. **[The record keepers of the House of Israel.]**

3 And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God. **[There was a record of the events before and after traveling in the wilderness that detailed their struggles. Nephi was the first to abridge what would be the Book of Mormon, “the first shall be last and the last shall be first.”]**

4 For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved. **[The hallmark of a prophet.]**

5 Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world. **[Those “who are not of the world” is a reference to the anointed servants of God. The Book of Mormon is a blueprint to those who will awaken and gather Israel.]**

6 Wherefore, I shall give commandment **[revelation]** unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men. **[Again, Nephi writes by way of commandment to his posterity to not include entertaining and frivolous material in this record. It’s purpose is clear, to bring those who are not of this world, his posterity, and the gentiles to an awakening that they may be perfected in Christ.]**

Comments and Questions:

What does it mean, The first shall be last and the last shall be first? **[Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.]**
Jacob 5:63

“Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away. And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new. And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel. And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered

in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham. And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.” Ether 13:8-12

It may seem that I randomly placed that reference in my thoughts. There is a mystery associated with this phrase. A clue can be found in Matthew 20:16, and relates to the Anointed Servants. I can’t really elaborate more, but for those to whom the Lord teaches this it will begin to unravel a beautiful part of the Everlasting Covenant. PR]

Can you do a spiritual translation of Alma 31 and 32? **[I’m still in 1 Nephi! PR]**

Still studying after my last comment, but interestingly for something related to something other than his post. First-last-last-first is also the culmination of Matthew 19. This chapter and 20...

I’m glad that I read the comments just now. While I have been listening to third Nephi over and over these past few weeks, my mind several times has been brought to think of the parable in Matthew 20; I didn’t remember this was the chapter until I read that comment below and referenced it. Thank you!

Family of Ishmael – 1 Nephi 7:1-22

1 And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise. **[This revelation came to Lehi because he inquired of the Lord.]**

2 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

3 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

4 And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, **[I have not inquired regarding the family of Ishmael and who they are, but will include that information in the future. I know there are theories, but I prefer to learn from the source. I recommend that anything you read here only be considered and then you receive your own personal revelation. UPDATE added below...]** and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord. **[Nephi rehearsed the events that lead to their journey in the wilderness and asked Ishmael to inquire of the Lord.]**

5 And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.

6 And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters. **[This is the second time Laman and Lemuel have openly rebelled against their father.]**

7 And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

8 And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, **[cannot receive revelation]** that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?

9 How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord? **[The spirit of Revelation]**

10 How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord? **[gift of the Spirit: ministering of Angels, beholding of angels]**

11 Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten what great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?

12 Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.

13 And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.

14 For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; **[People of Jerusalem]** for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, **[Such details were included in Lehi's plates.]** insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.

15 Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye will also perish; for thus the Spirit of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak. **[Often when the Spirit comes upon us it compels us to reason the Gospel with those who need to hear. Nephi did not, in this case, command his brothers. He reminded them of what was at stake and what they had witnessed. He said it was their choice.]**

16 And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts. **[Often the wicked are angry when they are reasoned with and prefer to stop the utterance of the righteous. Their anger for losing their place and**

possessions was fueled by the Adversary, and their hearts were murderous.]

17 But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound. **[It was not a force of will that allowed Nephi to break the bands, but that he voiced his belief that God could do it. He asked in faith and believed God would deliver him. In such manner we too can be delivered from our precarious situations according to the Lord's will.]**

18 And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again. **[His confidence in the Lord was such that he didn't run, being led by the Spirit of God. This was the second time his brothers had attempted to take his life.]**

19 And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life. **[Sometimes the wicked place a wall from hearing one person (Nephi), yet are willing to listen to another. The Lord uses different people to reach the sinner. We pray that we can be a tool in the Lord's hands.]**

20 And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.

21 And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.

22 And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

As I read the story of Nephi I am struck by how the Lord guides them in their journey, not in a straight line, but a series of trials and experiences that prepare them for what lies ahead. Lehi could have received all the instructions at once: the plates, Ishmael's family, his possessions; but the Lord knew the end from the beginning. This is how it is often in our lives and how things will transpire leading up to the establishment of Zion. We must be faithful.

Comments and Questions:

Did the families of Lehi and Ishmael have previous marriage arrangements for their children before Lehi left Jerusalem? What was it that persuaded Ishmael to join Lehi in the wilderness? How did Ishmael persuade his adult children? What was Ishmael's profession in life?

Did the two families have close ties before they left? [I received the following vision regarding the family of Ishmael: “The Lord said that Ishmael was not too close to Lehi, but had spoken with him a few times. He was impressed with Lehi as a business man and a gospel scholar. Ishmael spoke with him privately when Lehi began to prophecy to the people and wondered why Lehi was creating problems for himself. When Nephi and the brothers came to him and rehearsed the story of their journey and the miracles, Ishmael was very moved. He prayed and felt the Spirit confirm that it was truth. He brought his five daughters, and two sons with their small families. One son and his family remained in Jerusalem.

“Ishmael was of the tribe of Ephraim whereas Lehi was of Manasseh. It is interesting that the sons of Ishmael who would be adopted into the people of the Lamanites and have a skin of darkness would be those whose descendants would endure until the end of Times. There are other House of Israel descendants amongst the modern day native Americans, but I thought that was interesting.”

I did not see Ishmael’s wife, so I wonder if she had already passed away. Ishmael seemed older than Lehi. His beard was white and his hair was salt and pepper dark. He seemed frailer. He died during the journey as his body didn’t endure the heat and travel as well.

“I was told that Zoram married his oldest daughter (After writing this I saw that this is actually recorded in the BofM.) and they ranged in age from early twenty to sixteen when they left for the wilderness. Ishmael had been constrained by the Spirit to prevent his daughters from marrying before leaving Jerusalem and this was directly related to the Lord’s purposes. This was a chosen family of righteous posterity, especially the daughters.”

“When the family was on their course to join up with Lehi, Laman and Lemuel rehearsed their view of the events shared by Nephi and were successful in convincing one of the sons of Ishmael. Ishmael’s sons were orthodox in that they mostly trusted in the Elders of the Church. Laman was very passionate and determined to regain his control.

“When Ishmael joined with Lehi they had a beautiful friendship as they shared in their love for the word of God and each other’s witness. Much more regarding their interactions were recorded in the First record of Nephi.” PR]

19 And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, (one of the daughters) of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did ease striving to take away my life. PR- I have been praying

over a very specific subject and wanted to see if you had any feedback regarding Names mentioned in the scriptures ending in-iah. I know the Hebrew form refers to -yah or-jah but there seems to be a pattern. Is it in reference to anything you may be promoted to share? The same applies to names beginning with AB or FATHER. I understand if you cannot expand on this. Thank you again for sharing your own light! **IS THIS MYNIAH, NEPHIS'S WIFE? [I would if I could. I don't have any Hebrew training and have not asked that question of the Lord. PR]**

Some say Ishmael was Sara's brother. What do you think of that? **[I am not aware of that. PR]**

Lehi's Dream – 1 Nephi 8:1-38

1 And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind. **[They had brought various dried fruit and grains.]**

2 And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision. **[A vision is often similar to a daylight dream, where you are awake yet seeing something in the Spirit.]**

3 And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

4 But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness. **[the world]**

5 And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.

6 And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.

7 And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste. **[The Adversary often deceives us as a being of light.]**

8 And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, **[Lehi's vision was leading nowhere, as he struggled to see. He began to feel the need for God's help. This is often the pattern for those seeking divine guidance. Often, we are allowed to be deceived that we may know the good from the evil.]** I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies. **[As we pray for deliverance we are blessed.]**

9 And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field. **[The beginning of the true vision. The field is leading to the purpose of the vision.]**

10 And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, **[representing Christ]** whose fruit was desirable to make one happy. **[Eternal Life]**

11 And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen. **[Although a vision, the fruit of the Tree of Life is a tangible real fruit, which exists at the**

Throne of God. Each person who will receive Eternal Life must partake. I have eaten of this fruit and it is as Lehi describes. It reminds me of the flavor of a sweet nashi with the texture of soft pineapple, wrapped in a white husk.]

12 And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; **[exquisite love and joy]** wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit. **[The fruit itself plays an important role in the Everlasting Covenant.]**

13 And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

14 And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go. **[The beginning of each person's spiritual journey.]**

15 And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit. **[Often the Lord teaches us through symbolic visions or dreams to prepare us for future events. The key is to ask and discover the meaning to the dream.]**

16 And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.

17 And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

18 And it came to pass that I saw them, **[In our visions we see that which we desire to look upon.]** but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.

19 And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

20 And I also beheld a strait and narrow path, **[This path represents the commandments, the church, and all things which can help guide us in our journey.]** which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

21 And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path **[Those who seek the path will find it.]** which led unto the tree by which I stood.

22 And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.

23 And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost. **[The mist of darkness can be many things: unbelief, false traditions, philosophies of men, temptation to sin, doubt, depression, etc. Every person is susceptible to this mist of darkness unless they grab hold of the rod.]**

24 And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end **[Always start at the end, not the middle.]** of the rod of iron; **[I have seen this in vision and one detail I noticed was that as they**

grabbed hold their bodies are filled with light. The Lord told me this is the Gift of the Holy Ghost. The rod itself is the “word of God,” which is personal revelation. This is received however the Lord gives it us, whether directly or through scripture, or another.] and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree. **[No person, once having grabbed hold of the rod fails to come to the tree.]**

25 And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

26 And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, **[The barrier between God and Satan.]** a great and spacious building; **[The kingdom of the Adversary.]** and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.

27 And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; **[Many levels in Satan’s realm.]** and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit. **[This the manner of those of perdition, as they mock and plot against the servants of God.]**

28 And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost. **[Become sons or daughters of perdition]**

29 And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father. **[Concerning those who will fall]**

30 But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down **[at the feet of Christ]** and partook of the fruit of the tree.

31 And he also saw other multitudes feeling their way towards that great and spacious building. **[Different groups of people will find their way to perdition.]**

32 And it came to pass that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; **[overcome by Satan’s temptation.]** and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads. **[Various religions of the world.]**

33 And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. **[Church of the Devil]** And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.

34 These are the words of my father: For as many as heeded them, **[Kingdom of Darkness]** had fallen away.

35 And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit, said my father. **[But they did not yet join the Church of the Devil.]**

36 And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.

37 And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them, and not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them. **[This verse says much about Lehi’s style of parenting. He would reason and preach to his sons patiently.]**

38 And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied [**spoke by the Spirit of God**] unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

Lehi's Dream gave him comfort and understanding regarding his family and how the Adversary operates. The most common misconception is that as long as we hold to our scriptures and church authorities (iron rod) we will be safe from the mists of darkness. This is not how this should be interpreted. In the later chapter Nephi tells us that the rod of iron is the word of God. This means that we are now receiving revelation for ourselves and rely upon no man to teach us but the Lord. Until we learn this important lesson we are vulnerable to the confusion and temptations that may befall us as we walk the path.

Questions and Comments:

Thank you for the time you take to share this information! “21 And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path [Those who seek the path will find it.]” Can you further define the “pressing forward” that people do before they obtain the path and grab hold of the rod of iron? What are these activities in real life that people engage in? Does the path begin exactly where the rod of iron begins or is there a bit of a path leading up to the rod of iron (symbolically and literally)? Thank you for sharing that those who seek the path will find it. That is comforting to those of us still fumbling about! **[I did not see all of Lehi's dream. I saw elements of the vision he had that the Lord wanted me to see, and I asked questions. “Pressing forward” are those who are seeking truth. PR]**

What does the rod of iron look like in Lehi's dream? Is it connected to the ground/path in any way or does it float in the air? Is it a dark iron color or is it lighter? Does it look like cast iron or is it polished and smooth? Was it thick or thinner than a regular tubular hand rail we encounter on earth around schools and sports stadiums? Was there anything about it's visual portrayal that held symbolism? Any idea why the rod is made of iron? Is it because iron ore can come from rock, which can be a symbol of Christ? Thank you for what you share! **[When I saw this my eyes were more focused on the people and what they were doing than the details of the rod. It seemed to be a dark grey and palm width, but I don't remember how it was fastened to the ground or not. You should seek a revelation regarding those details if you wish to know. PR]**

I wish I could taste the flavor of the fruit, all things are first spiritual before they are physical. I'm praying to get where I can feel the fruit, taste the flavor of it, but it is beautiful.

28 And after they had tasted of the fruit “they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost. [become sons or daughters of perdition]” These are 3rd and fourth state? From what you've explained

before these are they that make these covenants before condescending, to become sons or daughters of perdition. They looked at the spacious building and desire it? **[When reading this part of the vision we assume that it was a simple glance to the spacious building, an embarrassed feeling, and then to throw it all away to follow Satan. This doesn't describe the full picture of becoming a son of perdition. Yes, these are 4th estate, but as I've said before, a person does not accidentally, by simply jumping to the other side, becomes a son of perdition after tasting of the fruit. The word "ashamed" is more than to be embarrassed. It is similar to how a spouse would feel as they tell their bride that they are guilty of an infidelity. Such things occur slowly over time and result in act of complete rejection of their vows. More hints into the meaning behind this: 2 Timothy 1:7-9, 1 John 2:28 PR]**

Gradual Infidelity, sounds to me like a process of slowly or gradually participating in something forbidden, or desiring that which is not of the light, Godliness "No man can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and mammon."

Perhaps you've posted something on this previously. Man in white robe? **[My answer is in verse seven. PR]**

I remember as a kid watching the living scriptures of this dream and seeing Lamien and Lemuel in the great and spacious building partying it up. It always stuck with me until just now you pointing out they never entered the building but just refused the fruit. Dang you Richard Rich!

I like this additional insight in verse 30: (at the feet of Christ) ...they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down (Second Comforter) [at the feet of Christ] and partook of the fruit of the tree.

Lehi is such an amazing man. I have great fondness for this visionary man. Did he write about this vision in the book of Lehi? If so, is it the same as Nephi wrote here? Or was it tailored to the one having the vision with different emphasis and details? **[Lehi saw a different vision than Nephi. We often see different things. My vision of the Tree of Life had different details, some were the same, some things they saw I didn't. Often what we see is determined by the questions we ask. PR]**

An Epic Record – 1 Nephi 9:1-6

1 And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, **[For many, the most sacred places for receiving revelation is our own homes. We make holy where we stand when we invite the Spirit.]** and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.
2 And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I

make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi. **[Nephi kept two separate records; one for the general history of events both secular and spiritual, and one for the ministerial history.]**

3 Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry **[convincing of Christ]** of my people. **[I had a similar commandment in that I was to keep a journal of only the spiritual events I witness, separate from the other writings.]**

4 Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people. **[Nephi wrote upon plates instead of skins or parchment, because the Lord knew the records would be preserved.]**

5 Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not. **[Nephi's other plates will also be translated along with the sealed portion of the Book of Mormon when Zion is established. This will be a large undertaking utilizing many translators, all using the gift of translation to bring this about. These records will not be forgotten.]**

6 But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; **[When the day comes that all things are revealed we will marvel at the complexity and beauty of the history of the world, and how intimately the Lord was involved in everything. Like the perfectly constructed script of a movie, we will realize that it was truly a masterpiece.]** for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words. And thus it is. Amen.

Some of the interesting things that will be written in these records are the stories of the women, the rise of the people of Nephi, and more of the trials of the people.

When Nephi wrote his record it was far more than what was included in the Book of Mormon. Mormon had to pick which parts to include according to the Spirit which guided him.

Each of us have epic moments in our life. These moments of truth are often forgotten by us or may seem unimportant; but the angels look upon us and study what we do. Even now, you do not know how much of your life is watched as it is immortalized in time and space. This means that any time in the future, beings of light may choose to go back and see what you did, your sacrifice, good deeds, or how you overcame something. Your life has epic possibilities. Nephi and his family experienced an epic journey. Both the actual physical events along with his written account of them will be studied and experienced by countless glorified beings for eternity, and so will yours!

Questions and Comments:

I have renewed hope in your words here and last chapter after a trying period recently.

Thank you for sharing!

Do you foresee the translation of the other plates of Nephi and the sealed portion being a separate endeavor from the translation of the brass plates received from Laban? Are the former to be used by those already converted (in Zion) while the latter to convert the seed of Lehi/Joseph? **[It will begin with the sealed portion of the Book of Mormon and then the rest will be translated, but I don't know what order after that. The knowledge of these records will be shared amongst those in Zion, and the prophecy shall be fulfilled: "And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth." 2 Nephi 27:11 PR]**

Nephi Desires to See – 1 Nephi 10:1-22

1 And now I, Nephi, proceed **[continue]** to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.

2 For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—

3 That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance. **[This began about 537 BC.]**

4 Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world. **[This is the most detailed prophecy concerning the time of the birth of Christ in scripture up to this point, from Lehi.]**

5 And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

6 Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

7 And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord— **[John the Baptist]**

8 Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: **[Between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea]** Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; **[His mission is soon to begin.]** for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.

9 And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; **[A ford near the east side of the Jordan River.]** and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

10 And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world. **[A very detailed description of the important event showing for the first time the importance of baptism by water, from a Jew, almost 600 years before Christ.]**

11 And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles. **[All of this was shown to Lehi because he inquired of the Lord regarding the prophecies of the Messiah.]**

12 Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth. **[This is not only the spreading of the Jews during the Diaspora, but also that the spirits of these covenant children would be grafted into different blood lines throughout the world. This is the Times of the Gentiles, a great mercy of the Lord.]**

13 Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord **[a correlated effort]** into the land of promise, **[North America]** unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

14 And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, **[Those who made covenants before birth.]** should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer. **[They shall be found and taught.]**

15 And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book. **[Lehi was a student of Isaiah and other prophets, but he spoke plainly regarding these things, as did Nephi.]**

16 And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel. **[In simple circumstances]**

17 And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, **[revelation]** which power he received by faith **[Because he believed, received revelation and acted upon it.]** on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, **[You must desire to see, hear, and know for yourself if you are to receive the gifts of the Spirit. Many feel this is a sin, to seek for a sign; but the difference is that Nephi's intent is pure, as should your desire be also.]** which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, **[The Lord is no respecter of persons in this category. All who diligently seek are given the gift according to their righteous desire.]** as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men. **[Never changes]**

18 For he is the same yesterday, today, and forever; and the way is prepared **[opportunity]** for all men **[mankind]** from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him. **[Turn their hearts to God.]**

19 For he that diligently seeketh shall find; **[to act in faith, seeking revelation and acting upon it.]** and the mysteries of God **[that which is unknown to the world]** shall be unfolded **[little by little]** unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round. **[This is how it has always been.]**

20 Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment. **[God shall see and bless according to your faith. To judge is to separate and organize.]**

21 Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly **[not seeking God and His works]** in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; **[the Throne of Heaven]** and no unclean thing can dwell with God; **[without the Holy Ghost]** wherefore, ye must be cast off forever. **[Remain impure]**

22 And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not. **[Spirit of Prophecy]**

Questions and Comments:

PR, the BofM and its clarity of Christ so many years beforehand is stunning. Was the Bible / the prophets in it, were they placed under a gag order of sorts to not speak with similar clarity? I am personally under the impression we have a fairly watered down version of what was testified / prophesied of about Christ in the Bible. Also, can you speak in defense of Isaiah— from what the consensus of biblical scholars say, the argument is being made that the book of Isaiah spanned 3 different authors over a time period 500 + years. I'm learning that a critical scholarly / secular investigation of Christianity especially the Restoration reveals so many holes. Profound, seemingly troublesome irregularities can be pointed out. The traditions of man: falsehoods, corrupt spin / understanding of many elements of our history etc have grown exponentially since the Prophet was taken from our midst and we were left with a lesser order of things— this loss of light and truth and the subsequent manifestation of God's power has so easily given life to those who can with convincing power mock and find astonishing difficult information that make it hard for so many to overcome. The more I awake to truth (God's truth) the more I realize what a powerful strong hold Satan has on this fallen sphere which was made all the stronger when Joseph and his connection to heaven, was taken...

I was thinking about this recently, how we feel that we shouldn't seek, that it might be a sin, or that maybe we are not good enough to receive it, the list goes on and on of why we couldn't receive light, the mysteries of God. That's exactly what veil us. "—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost" our desires when pure, will lead us to God. **[I don't know anything about a gag order. Daniel was very accurate in many of his predictions too. Isaiah was the first to go into great detail regarding the Messiah's life that I am aware of in the written form. They each had their prophetic roles. Lehi's prophecies were meant for his posterity and being in the new land were**

fortunate to know exactly when to expect the coming of Christ so they could look for the signs. When I did my personal spiritual translations of Isaiah (included in A Witness of the End of Times) what I was given is that they were all Isaiah. I've heard the theory that they are three different people, but that is not what I was told concerning the source of the text. PR]

How can we know if our intent is pure? [If your intentions are to honestly know His will for you, to have a real relationship, and to serve Him without guile. The Spirit will tell you if anything is lacking. PR]

In verse 13 it states: “Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord [a correlated effort] into the land of promise, [North America] unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.” When you indicate “North America”, this seems to give credibility to the “Heartland Theory” of the Book of Mormon. Is there credibility to the Heartland Theory of the Book of Mormon? If so, was the land of Zarahemla located in the current city of Nauvoo, Illinois, or in the vicinity of its current day location? **[Yes. Zarahemla was not in Nauvoo, but was in that area. There were some Nephites who traveled south into Central America after Christ came to America. PR]**

Exceedingly High Mountain – 1 Nephi 11:1-36

1 For it came to pass **[After a period of time]** after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart **[Most all my most sacred experiences with the Lord came while I was sitting and praying. “Pondering” is a state of meditation mixed with prayer.]** I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, **[This is a typical ascension, where our spirit splits and we are still sitting. It feels as if in every sense we are in a different place.]** yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot. **[In my case this was like a glass room high above the earth. I know that Jesus was shown the whole earth by Satan and He too was high above the earth. I believe Nephi may have been taken to a similar place.]**

2 And the Spirit **[An angelic messenger]** said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

3 And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

4 And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

5 And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father. **[Interesting the casual nature of the conversation.]**

6 And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired. **[This was a big moment for Nephi, the angel announces that he will receive the blessing he seeks and he begins a new level of communication with heaven.]**

7 And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God. **[Nephi is given instruction for what he will do with his new knowledge.]**

8 And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! **[Whenever this word is spoken in the Heavenly Realm we are being directed to view a new vision. It begins a little foggy and quickly materializes into what we are to see.]** And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow. **[This is not your normal tree, as it is planted in the heavenly realms. Nephi did not expect it to be as much, based on his expectation after listening to his father describe the tree.]**

9 And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is precious above all.

10 And he said unto me: What desirest thou? **[In the Heavenly Realm questions always precede the answers.]**

11 And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another. **[Some have read this assuming it is the Holy Ghost in bodily form. All spirits that are messengers can be termed a spirit of the Lord, yet may not be angels sent from the Highest Court of Heaven like a Seraphim. These spirits are often close to us, yet our memories do not allow us to know them. Read the link in the title bar: Our Temporal Progression > Gift of the Holy Ghost.]**

12 And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look! **[another vision]** And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him not; for he had gone from before my presence.

13 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.

14 And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; **[a different messenger]** and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?

15 And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins.

16 And he said unto me: Knowest thou the condescension of God? **[The understanding that the Messiah would be God's condescension among men was contested amongst the Jews. The meaning behind the Messiah taking bodily form was a mystery to most everyone, even those who studied such things.]**

17 And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of all things.

18 And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh. **[There is a distinction made between His Eternal mother, and that of a mother in the flesh. Herein lies a mystery regarding Mary's role, but she is not Heavenly Mother as some have supposed.]**

19 And it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; **[Mary had an experience which helped her to understand her role more fully. Her anointed mission was to carry the Christ child and to rear Him. She was a virgin in every implication. There was no intercourse involved with her in the conception of the child.]** and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

20 And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

21 And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, **[the future Sacrifice]** yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw? **[The Holy Spirit was teaching Nephi as he witnessed the vision.]**

22 And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things. **[The Tree is a gift of our heavenly parents, which gift is greater than anything the children of men could desire.]**

23 And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most joyous to the soul.

24 And after he had said these words, he said unto me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God going forth among the children of men; and I saw many fall down at his feet and worship him.

25 And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, **[Personal revelation as received by the Spirit, through scripture, others, or however the Lord will communicate with us directly.]** which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; **[There is a fountain of pure living waters that issues forth from the Tree of Life.]** and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.

26 And the angel said unto me again: Look and behold the condescension of God!

27 And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. **[John the Baptist]** And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost **[Gift of the Holy Ghost]** come down out of heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove. **[A change in His spirit, as it abode in Him from that moment forward. Jesus had to go beneath all things before He could rise above all things. The dove was a sign to John that He was the Redeemer.]**

28 And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people, in power and great glory; and the multitudes were gathered together to hear him; and I beheld that they cast him out from among them.

29 And I also beheld twelve others following him. And it came to pass that they were carried away in the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not. **[He only saw a glimpse.]**

30 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the heavens open again, and I saw angels descending upon the children of men; and they did minister unto them. **[The gift of the ministering of Angels, as many of the Dominions came to the Jews and spoke to their minds and hearts who would listen. All this from the other side of the veil as they sought to prepare them.]**

31 And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out. **[Every sick person was also afflicted with evil spirits, as is how it commonly occurs. Each healing was accompanied by a forgiveness of sins.]**

32 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world; **[to fulfill all righteousness]** and I saw and bear record.

33 And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross **[The word for his place of execution.]** and slain for the sins of the world.

34 And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together **[gathered by the Adversary]** to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord. **[An Apostle is a witness of the resurrected Christ with a mission to be a traveling minister for the Lord. A disciple is a follower who has not yet had this witness or stewardship.]**

35 And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my father saw. **[Church of the Devil]** And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb. **[The covenant children of God had rebelled against their King.]**

36 And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb. **[The great and spacious building is the entire world, all the races of men that join the Church of the Devil to fight against God.]**

It was this visionary experience where Nephi becomes a prophet of the Lord. He is shown things regarding the mission of Christ and given a commandment by a messenger of the Lord (Spirit of the Lord) to bear record of it, meaning to write it down. He has not yet had his full Second Comforter experience, yet is being prepared for this. It is important to note that this chapter is a continuation of the previous chapter, as there were no chapter divisions in the original translation. Nephi wanted to emphasize that such visions are available to all who diligently seek Him. He desired to see and know for himself what his father had seen.

I also desired to see what Lehi and Nephi saw and was shown much of the same things. It is interesting to me how each of us see differently depending upon the questions we ask. Is your heart pure and your intentions righteous? It will “come to pass” that you too will have such visions as you learn to trust in the Lord in all righteousness.

Questions and Comments:

Nephi sees first the Spirit of the Lord “I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord” then he says that the this Spirit speaks to him “2 And the Spirit said unto me...” But before the Spirit leaves Nephi says “I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh to another” then the Spirit leaves, and he sees Mary and Then an angel comes, someone different: “14 And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me;” it seems to me that this second one is a complete different messenger. This is what is kind of confusing for me, how Nephi says he is talking to the Spirit of the Lord at first, and as soon as the vision of Mary comes up the Spirit of the Lord leaves and then another messenger, and angel takes over. **[It is not uncommon for another angel to have a stewardship to teach different things. PR]**

Was the first messenger the Spirit of Christ? That’s what I’m reading in these verses. Thanks for the clarification. **[That is not my understanding. PR]**

Total different topic, I was thinking, or pondering on those that were cast out for rebellion, in the war in Heaven, where did they go? Second question, those sons and daughters of perdition here now, are they part of that group that were cast out? Or they joined Satan later? I received,

I believe a thought that they have to fulfill the measure of their creation. Just like Alma and Amulek had to witness the martyrdom of the innocent in Ammonihah, these have to come and complete their desires. **[The “third part” were the angels that joined Satan and were cast out of the presence of God to the earth in the realm of the spirit. These have taken upon them bodies and many become sons of perdition. PR]**

You say that Mary is not Heavenly Mother. Yet if there is no plural marriage in the eternities if she is the mother of the Son of God doesn’t that necessarily mean the Father is her consort or spouse. Furthermore the “tree” was also a symbol in Ancient Israel of heavenly mother or Asherah. Her symbol of a tree bearing fruit and surrounded by sheep rising up to eat the fruit was her image. This was the image that was kept in the Temple for hundreds of years. I also thought that initially when Nephi sees the tree and then asks for an interpretation the fact that he is shown Mary clearly links her to the tree. Further it always seemed to me she “condescended “ to come into mortality to bear her Son and her husband’s son. I may be wrong about all of this but would be interested in any further light you may be willing offer. Thanks **[The Tree is the love of God, both Father and Mother. Mary was the pure vessel to carry the Son of God. How this occurred is not permitted for me to write, but it was not a polygamous relationship. As people attempt to piece the mystery together there are interesting theories that help make sense of it, as are many mysteries, but the only way to know for sure is to receive the knowledge from God. Take what you wish from my writings to help you in your search for truth, but only trust in the revelation the Lord gives you. PR]**

Out of the many people you have asked about and met in vision, you have said very little about Mary, the mother of Christ. Is there more you can add, such as what happened to her after the Ascension of the Lord? **[I wrote about her in the book, A Witness of the Life of Christ. Towards the end it has information of what happened after Christ’s resurrection. PR]**

The “third part” were the angels that joined Satan and were cast out of the presence of God to the earth in the realm of the spirit. These have taken upon them bodies and many become sons of perdition. Perdition are those who were 4th estate beings, so when it says “third part” what is the original number we are basing that on? So this “third part” of the angels who rejected the Eternal Covenant of Heavenly Father are still able to receive bodies? I thought part of their punishment for rejecting the Covenant was being unable to obtain a body. Are these angels drawn from the Sons of Men? **[It was not a 1/3 portion but a part, meaning a kind. This included 4th estate, and other creatures. The first were the 4th estate and then those of 2nd estate who made covenants to follow Satan. They were cast out of the presence of God, and sent to the telestial realm, but they can possess and even by born into bodies under certain circumstances. PR]**

And these sons and daughters of perdition can obtain bodies not just by being born into the race of men but also from Adams seed, right? Such was the case of Cain. **[Yes, they can be born into bodies. PR]**

How are they born in to bodies if their punishment was to not get a body? **[I used to believe that too. They were cast out of God’s presence to the earth, but there is no scripture that says they could not have physical bodies. In fact, Satan said to the Father, “I will take the spirits that follow me, and they shall possess the bodies thou createst for Adam and Eve! PR]**

Is the Book of Mormon historically accurate as in time frames and actual accounts of past figures? Is any of it simply metaphorical, using characters and experiences to demonstrate our relationship to God? **[Everything I have seen tells me it is exact, though some things are misinterpreted. PR]**

Who or what are the Dominions you mentioned in verse 30? **[The Dominions are the hierarchy of angels that we refer to as the 144k or fourth estate. PR]**

Nephi’s Descendants – 1 Nephi 12:1-23

1 And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, **[future descendants]** and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea. **[Nephi is a prophet, seer, and revelator.]**

2 And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

3 And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, **[About 600 years.]** after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them.

4 And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof. **[See 3 Nephi 8]**

5 And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord. **[These destructions are caused by the dark sun that comes within proximity to the earth. Many times in earth's history this has occurred and brought destructions. It will again occur in the future, and lead to other destructions, but the most drastic destructions will follow the arrival of the City of Enoch, which will appear as a comet or planet approaching earth, bright in its apparel.]**

6 And I saw the heavens open, **[spiritual realm]** and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

7 And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; **[a mantle of light]** and they were ordained of God, **[given instructions to their callings]** and chosen.

8 And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed. **[He both sees it and then is given the interpretation by the angel.]**

9 And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel. **[To judge is to organize and to separate. This is occurring even today amongst the Principalities in the First Heaven, a hierarchy of the anointed servants that judges the House of Israel. The twelve apostles of Christ administer over this with a particular arch angel at their head. Only Christ makes the final judgment as to one's ascension, but he has placed these duties upon his twelve apostles, as has been from before the foundation of the world.]**

10 And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. **[A subset to judge.]** And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood. **[recipients of Eternal Life]**

11 And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; **[A generation in this context is the life of a person, which is about 70 years.]** and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

12 And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

13 And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

14 And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren.

15 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

16 And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell. **[The river represents the cunning and organization of Satan, which washes away those who come unto it.]**

17 And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost. **[In our day we have more temptations than any time in the history of the world. The mist of darkness is particularly thick, yet there are voices calling out to those on the path to grab hold of the rod. Many are afraid to do so, thinking if they lean in too close they may fall into the river. Some seeking to find a better way fall into forbidden paths. It is difficult, but we can find the rod if we have faith.]**

18 And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. **[This is the lure of the Adversary, to seek personal gratification and establish a dominion.]** And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever. **[Outer darkness is completely cut off from God's dominion.]**

19 And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed. **[The last battle, which actually did not take place in New York, but in the Mountain West.]**

20 And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land. **[Spread out over North America.]**

21 And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

22 And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief. **[Overcome with false traditions.]**

23 And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations. **[This was the state of the American Indian when the explorers of the New World began to come to the Americas in larger numbers.]**

Questions and Comments:

Is the dark sun planet 7x or Nibiru? **[I don't know. I've heard of Nibiru, but I don't know much about it. PR]**

I imagine this is what caused the great destruction in the Promised Land at the time of the Savior's death. I have wondered why there were three hours of darkness on the other side of the world, but three days of darkness in the Americas. Any idea how this ties in to the Hopi's Blue/Red Kachina? **[I am not familiar with that. PR]**

“There are voices calling out to those on the path to grab hold of the rod. Many are afraid to do so, thinking if they lean in too close they may fall into the river.” Could you explain what you mean by this? How could one fear falling into the river by seeking the rod or getting too close to the rod? **[Many are too afraid that they will be deceived that they stay where they are, in their comfortable spot. However, to grab hold of the rod is a leap of faith. PR]**

How could one fear falling into the river by seeking the rod or getting too close to the rod?” For what it's worth, I actually had this fear for over a year recently. Unbelief can cause an odd fear that does not allow you to see the forest for the trees. I balked at the idea that I could actually hear the voice of the Lord through the holy ghost prompting me. After I figured out that I really was being sought after, pulled, enticed by the Light and Love of God, I was led to do specific things that were uncomfortable but right. As I did them- acting in faith, things began to unfold immediately. They continue to do so. I will say that 1 Nephi 22:20-22 was key for me. The Holy One of Israel is the prophet I must hear and if I do not hear Him, I will be cut off. It's a fantastic scripture, but can create uneasiness when you confront what it actually means. For me, this scripture means to be careful with the tendency to rely on the arm of flesh and instead rely on the Lord- the Holy One of Israel. Can you see how that could create a fear of falling into the river? **[Edit, PR]** Ultimately, I must hear the voice of the Lord or be cut off.

Vision of America – 1 Nephi 13:1-42

1 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms. **[The many various sovereign countries of the world.]**

2 And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

3 And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles. **[Different races of the children of men, those without the Everlasting Covenant.]**

4 And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great church. **[An assembly for a united purpose.]**

5 And the angel said unto me: Behold the formation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.

6 And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it. **[This is the beginning of the alliance that will become the power brokers of the Sons of Perdition living upon this earth. Such has been since the days of Cain, yet reached great heights after the**

time of Christ. They have been mostly hidden in the shadows, yet have been the means to cause Great War, bloodshed, and evil upon this earth.

Their tentacles and influence today stretches into every country, nation and kingdom; whereas, until the Diaspora their influence was very limited.]

7 And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots. **[These control the riches of the earth and human trafficking.]**

8 And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church. **[They live for self-gratification.]**

9 And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity. **[They fight against true Christianity, and actively work to sway public opinion through propaganda.]**

10 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren. **[The isolation of the Americas.]**

11 And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold **[now you shall see]** the wrath of God **[justice]** is upon the seed of thy brethren. **[Lamanite remnants]**

12 And I looked and beheld a man **[Columbus]** among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought **[had an influence]** upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land. **[North America]**

13 And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters. **[Those seeking religious freedom.]**

14 And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, **[Justice (to separate and organize), meaning that the Lord chose to allow disease and subjugation to weaken the Native American people to allow for a new people to take possession of the land.]** that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten. **[The hardships of the American Indian nations. More Native Americans died from disease and starvation than from war.]**

15 And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, **[Those who were not direct descendants of the Jews]** and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain. **[Although their skin color was white, it is more a reference to their goodness and dedication to God. It's important to note that although these Gentiles were mostly good, even then the tentacles of the abominable church were attempting to usurp their power in the new land.]**

16 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them. **[The Americans prospered exceedingly.]**

17 And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them. **[The British Empire.]**

18 And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle. **[All nations that try to subjugate America failed.]**

19 And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations. **[God's hand was upon this people.]**

20 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them. **[The Bible]**

21 And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?

22 And I said unto him: I know not.

23 And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; **[The Old Testament is significantly smaller than the brass plates in its history.]**

nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

24 And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; **[source was not the Gentiles.]** and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God. **[The fullness of the Gospel is the Doctrine of Christ and the path required to receive the Holy Ghost.]**

25 Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God. **[The Lord gives His approval of the contents of the original books included in the Bible.]**

26 And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of that great and abominable church, **[the organized effort of this secret combination of sons of Perdition.]** which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away. **[A redefining of the truth in the scriptures.]**

27 And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

28 Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God. **[A misunderstanding regarding man's relationship with God. Some of which occurred during the English translation.]**

29 And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of

these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them. **[They do not understand repentance, sin, Holy Ghost, Satan, charity, and our relationship with Christ.]**

30 Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren. **[The American Indian is preserved in the land.]**

31 Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.

32 Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen. **[The Lord will restore His Gospel among them.]**

33 Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment. **[They are preserved.]**

34 And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, **[but not all.]** which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb. **[The Restoration through Joseph Smith of these precious truths by means of the Book of Mormon and the revelations.]**

35 For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they **[the Nephite prophets]** shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, **[Hill Cummorah and Shim]** to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

36 And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

37 And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be. **[This prophecy is for the time of Joseph Smith, but more so for those of our day which are about to bring forth Zion before the Lord's coming.]**

38 And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, **[Bible]** which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.

39 And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, **[the Book of Mormon and the Revelations]** which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true. **[New Translations]**

40 And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

41 And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, **[BofM]** as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; **[the Bible]** wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

42 And the time cometh **[Speaking to Nephi for the near future.]** that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, **[races]** both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last. **[Times of the Gentiles will begin where all people of the world shall have the opportunity to accept the Everlasting Covenant.]**

Nephi's vision of America is very detailed as he describes in only a few words how his people will tie into God's purposes in the last days, 2600 years in the future! He points directly to the secret combination that will fill the earth. This is important information, for today the effects of their evil is widespread. Nephi finally sees the purpose behind the records he is keeping and the great blessing that this will have upon his people and the many nations of the earth.

Questions and Comments:

Hello and thank you for what you are doing. In this blog you mention both the Hill Cummorah and the Hill Shim. Does that mean that both places are places of deposit of Nephite records? I had never thought of it that way! Could you explain further? **[The Hill Shim is where the brass plates, Book of Mormon, and the entire library of Nephite records are kept. PR]**

I've felt that verse 39 had reference to our present records, but also (and importantly) to the additional sealed records yet to come forth – the brass plates, the greater portion of Christ's ministry to the Nephites, the brother of Jared's revelation, etc.. So far, the

revelations we have presently haven't been sufficient to convince the remnant of Lehi's seed nor the Jews "that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true." They have done much in convincing some Gentiles. I've also come to believe that the Joseph and Davidic servants will be instrumental in bringing forth these additional records to their brethren. Is that your understanding as well? Thanks so much. **[Yes, very much so. But the further translations will mostly be for the Remnant of Jacob and those who dwell in Zion. PR]**

Verse 12 mentions the man across the many waters and you have placed Columbus there. Have you been shown that, in fact, it was actually Columbus? I have wondered much about this as there were two others that crossed the many waters before Columbus, Lief Eriksen and William Sinclair. They each landed up north on the continent and worked inland. In particular, Sinclair made peaceful pacts with the Native Americans. He was Scottish and came at a time in the 1300's AD or thereabouts. Eriksen was Viking from Norway I believe and came at a time estimated at around 1000 AD. That's why I ask if you have been shown if it was Columbus. Of course, he landed down in the Gulf of Mexico somewhere and was coming to claim the land for Spain, which led to the entire confiscation of the possessions of the peoples in Middle and South America. Which oddly enough, are said to have been peopled by other races, not the American Indians. **[I know there were others who also came, but it was Columbus that kicked open the door to further settling of the Americas by the waves of people who were to come. I would pray for your own personal revelation on this. PR]**

37 And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost" How may I personally seek to bring forth His Zion? **[The key is to have a relationship with the Lord. This comes by following the pattern taught in 3 Nephi 11, to repent, be baptized and receive the Holy Ghost. After you have received the gift of the Holy Ghost you will be led to stand in holy places and know how to serve the Lord to bring forth His Zion. It will be far different than many imagine and very few today are prepared. PR]**

6 And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it. Hi PR- I believe this is as you explain, but I don't know the extent of it. Could you comment on if what is happening in the shadows in America is linked with other notable countries. And by linked I mean hidden corroboration to get gain, influence and control... meaning on the outside/looking in- the countries appear to fight against each other but from their inside/looking out vantage point it is all a chess game and they give and take amongst each other in order to achieve a master plan. Anyhow, I know that is a deep rabbit hole. **[There are people in the shadows and in the limelight of our government who seek to undermine our freedoms to gain power. They have succeeded on many fronts. Our country today is on a precipice. What this means to us is that we will see a greater divide in the near future as people choose between liberty, or oppression for personal gain. Those who believe in a similar standard as**

Moroni, or those who do not. PR]

Last Days Prophecy – 1 Nephi 14:1-30

1 And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks— **[They shall have the gifts of the Spirit, a restoration of priesthood.]**

2 And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, **[If they choose to not reject Christ.]** they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; **[shall not be subjugated by tyrannical kings or governments]** and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded. **[conquered and dispersed]**

3 And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men **[both spiritually and physically]** shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end. **[This is a prophecy concerning the secret combination that fills this earth today. The Global Society that seeks to rule all people under the guise of peace and equality, yet to destroy the rights of the individual, their sovereign borders and beliefs.]**

4 For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him. **[Because God is just, He must divide the wicked from the righteous when they are ripe in their iniquity.]**

5 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent **[turn to God]** it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.

6 Therefore, wo **[a curse]** be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.

7 For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; **[The establishment of Zion, which has not yet occurred.]** a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

8 And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? **[Covenants of Abraham renewed in Jacob.]** I said unto him, Yea.

9 And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.

10 And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth. **[We are either saved in Christ, lifted to a higher estate, or we remain in this 2nd estate. We are either of the world (church of the devil) or not of this world (Church of the Lamb of God).]**

11 And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, **[the network of Satan that seeks to usurp power and control over all people.]** and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

12 And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, [saved souls] were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw. **[The Church of the Lamb of God is not a singular denomination. It is among every part of the earth, where individuals have sought to know God and have been redeemed. The House of Israel is spread among every nation, even those who are not of the blood of Israel. These shall be gathered in the last days of tribulation. This is a mystery.]**

13 And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God. **[This is occurring even today, as Christians are under attack for their beliefs. Abominations are forced upon the churches and people, and many Christians pray day and night for deliverance.]**

14 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory. **[The beginning of the gathering of Israel, the establishment of Zion in the last days. The Church of the Lamb is different from the covenant people Nephi mentions. The Covenant people are the Gatherers, the anointed servants of the Lord.]**

15 And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God **[judgments]** was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

16 And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—

17 And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel. **[These wars are ongoing, but this prophecy is pointing to a day when**

war will fill the entire earth. At this time, when things are in chaos, shall the Lord commence to establish Zion and gather the Elect.]

18 And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

19 And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.

20 And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb. **[John the Beloved.]**

21 Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been. **[The Book of Revelation contains the details regarding what occurs as Zion has begun to be established, the Servants go forward, and the Lord's wrath is poured out. Nephi was commanded to not share the rest of what he saw for it was the stewardship of John. See the book "A Witness of the End of Times" and read the section for Spiritual Translation of the Book of Revelation.]**

22 And he shall also write concerning the end of the world. **[After the Kingdom of the Beast is defeated.]**

23 Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men. **[At that time the manner of writing was easily understood.]**

24 And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see. **[Angel speaking to Nephi. But Nephi shall see more.]**

25 But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them. **[Book of Revelation, of John]**

26 And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel. **[The sealed portion of the Book of Mormon, the writings of the Brother of Jared. Also, many other writings contained in the Hill Shim.]**

27 And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

28 And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw. **[The Lord often gives instruction for what we can share or must not share after seeing prophetic events and mysteries of the kingdom. I have been blessed to see much; however, only a portion have I been allowed to share.]**

29 And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.

30 And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit; **[vision]** and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen. **[This is a double Amen. "And thus it is" has the same meaning. To say it twice is to make a sealing of**

his own words in God’s name. This is how Nephi chose to end his writing of this sacred vision.]

Questions and Comments:

Thank you so much for this! there is so much in this chapter. I have always struggled about the two churches so this was a great help. In verses 12-14 where it talks about the saints, the church of the lamb of God, it made me think of Moroni 6:4 “And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ...” Does this mean that receiving the Holy Ghost (not just baptism) is what numbers us among the saints of God or the church of the lamb of God? This is also the church of Christ? **[Yes, baptism is not complete without the Gift of the Holy Ghost. PR]**

The Heart of His Brethren – 1 Nephi 15:1-36

1 And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the Spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.

2 And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things which my father had spoken unto them. **[The lapse of time between when Lehi shared his dream and Nephi had his vision was not very long.]**

3 For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought. **[Today, it is common for people to dispute and debate the details of the gospel instead of taking the matter to the Lord, as Nephi did. He received something from his father, who was the prophet, yet he sought a personal witness.]**

4 And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness **[lack of desire]** of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.

5 And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, **[distress]** for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.

6 And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations. **[Came back later and asked them.]**

7 And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.

8 And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord? **[The next time you have a question regarding a point of doctrine, a decision in your life, anything that presses upon your mind, will you not ask the same question as Nephi?**

“Have you inquired of the Lord?” Too often in our culture we feel that the Lord will not help us; that we must figure it all out for ourselves. How many

have studied Isaiah, yet have never asked the Lord directly to help us understand?]

9 And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.

10 Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?

11 Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you. **[I don't know the source of this commandment, but it may have been an unknown commandment in the Brass Plates or directly revealed to Lehi and given to his sons.]**

12 Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, **[Similar to the words of Zenos]** by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; **[Part of what Lehi spoke about which doesn't have a previous reference.]** and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel? **[Tribe of Manassah]**

13 And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural **[wild]** branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed— **[Nephi clearly explains the meaning behind the previous chapter.]**

14 And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved. **[Nephi is prophesying to his brethren based on the vision he had, and the Spirit within him.]**

15 And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

16 Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive tree, into the true olive tree. **[The one bearing good fruit.]**

17 And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; **[Part of Lehi's vision not included in Nephi's writing dealt with the scattering of Israel in the last days.]** and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

18 Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the

kindreds of the earth be blessed. **[It will be fulfilled when Zion is established and the House of Israel is gathered and receives the fullness of the Lord.]**

19 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.

20 And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord. **[Remember, he is speaking of a second scattering and gathering, as the Babylonians have not yet destroyed Israel.]**

21 And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?

22 And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life. **[The only other reference they know is the tree in the Garden of Eden.]**

23 And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

24 And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; **[Cannot be cut off unless they partake of the fruit and follow Satan. Grabbing hold of the rod is holding tight to the Holy Spirit given to them as expressed in revelation, scripture, and the words of others.]** neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

25 Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, **[Nephi was a passionate young man.]** and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.

26 And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?

27 And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water. **[Lehi didn't see the filthy water. This is interesting in how we too may see different things in the spirit that others do not.]**

28 And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

29 And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

30 And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, **[A description of the glory of God.]** which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end. **[There is no end to the Elohim.]**

31 And they said unto me: Doth this thing **[Judgment]** mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?

32 And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation. **[Temporal Judgment is when we either are born again in Christ**

and receive the Holy Ghost, or are ripe in iniquity, having fully chosen to pursue darkness.]

33 Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought **[at a future time]** to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

34 But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy. **[According to their light and glory.]**

35 And there is a place prepared, **[It exists even now, outer darkness.]** yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; **[it is his dominion.]** wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.

36 Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.

The Tree of Life, spoken in previous chapters, is a symbol of God's gift to us, as seen through the Atonement of Christ, (There is more to this.) the True Vine, and also to have Eternal Life. If people have "hardness of hearts," meaning a lack of desire, they will never grab hold of the rod and likely fall into forbidden paths or filthy water and Satan will have power over them. The question is: where is the heart?

Questions and Comments:

Whew! Today i have been in spiritual overload and now I see this:) Is the heart in the MIND? **[No, they are separately linked. PR]**

Is there two rivers? One of filthy waters spoken off and one of living waters perhaps not seen by them? I think of the tree being fed by living waters. **[One is a river and one more like a stream coming out from under the Tree of Life. PR]**

PR, you comment on temporal judgement only happening when we have either been born again or have chose complete evil. For all those in between that, meaning haven't chosen either stay where they are recycling through life/the flesh and not receive judgment until one of those two occur? **[Those without the law in mortality are saved by the atonement from the grasp of Satan. (Moroni 8:22) I would suggest reading the link for "Our Temporal Progression" on the menu bar of the homepage. Read the link "Entering Mortality." PR]**

Liahona Lesson – 1 Nephi 16:1-39

1 And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear. **[Much information regarding the destruction of their family and posterity.]**

2 And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center. **[The wicked rarely feel they are truly wicked and deserving of the justice of God.]**

3 And now my brethren, if ye were righteous **[doing God's will]** and were willing to hearken to the truth, **[listen to the Spirit]** and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur **[complain to God]** because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.

4 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, **[made it a common practice]** to keep the commandments of the Lord.

5 And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; **[participated in worship without complaining]** insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

6 Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel. **[Near the Gulf of Aqaba.]**

7 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; **[Her name was Myniah, read more in A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations, pg 165.]** and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

8 And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments **[revelations]** of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

9 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness. **[Had they remained they would have been slaughtered and destroyed.]**

10 And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness. **[Learn more about the Liahona at: A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations pg. 106-107, 161]**

11 And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

12 And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

13 And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer. **[Near the western side of Saudi Arabia.]**

14 And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go

forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

15 And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

16 And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness. **[The ball would spell out words and also point to the direction according to their faith and righteousness.]**

17 And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families. **[Looking for more fertile areas to feed the animals.]**

18 And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.

19 And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.

20 And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord. **[In their weakened condition of fasting, where it could have helped them to draw closer to God, they began to question the Lord, not to trust Him. This allowed the adversary to tempt not only Nephi's brethren, but it also got to his Father, Lehi.]**

21 Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food. **[Only their slings.]**

22 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, **[no desire to ask God for help]** even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

23 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food? **[The act of asking Lehi was put upon Nephi by the Spirit of the Lord. Instead of using the Liahona he went to his father.]**

24 And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.

25 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow. **[Even a prophet of the Lord can stumble. The most common phrase offered to me in the Heavenly Realm as way of advice is: "Trust in the Lord." This was a good learning experience for Lehi's family and until we learn this one lesson the Lord will continue to allow are paths to stumble.]**

26 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord **[The Spirit of Revelation]** said unto him: **[Lehi]** Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.

27 And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives. **[Worried that they had forfeited their blessings.]**

28 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, **[There are two, one that points the direction, and one that points to an alphabet.]** that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them. **[If they did not follow what was said the ball would not work the next time. Like personal revelation, if we do not follow what the Lord gives us, we are not given as much again until we repent.]**

29 And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by small means the Lord can bring about great things. **[The ball was small, like the size of a small orange. It almost looked like a toy, yet its function was powerful when used righteously. Often what seems incidental and frivolous can be the means of blessing us when we don't discount the blessings the Lord puts in our way.]**

30 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.

31 And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, insomuch that I did obtain food for our families.

32 And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food, how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him. **[Often we don't express gratitude until the blessings come. More blessed are those who praise the Lord in their afflictions.]**

33 And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time. **[Heading southeast along the more fertile areas near the Red Sea.]**

34 And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

35 And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger. **[When the Lord gives us a promise, whether by revelation or through a priesthood blessing, we often affix a time to that blessing. We may expect it to manifest soon, perhaps that very day or week. The family of Lehi traveled many years in the desert before the blessing came. We must TRUST IN THE LORD.]**

36 And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem. **[They were used to a comfortable life and the adversary continually harrowed up memories and doubts, which were exasperated them after the mournful loss of their father.]**

37 And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren. **[Put into their hearts by Satan. If we do not seek revelation from the Lord, the adversary will fill that void.]**

38 Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, **[Nephi has not yet had his full Second Comforter]** and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger. **[They were also embarrassed at how Nephi had emerged as the leader, them being the older brethren.]**

39 And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish. **[They were chastised through the Liahona, and their hearts were pricked by the Spirit of the Lord spoken to them by others in response to their conspiracy.]**

The Liahona was a merciful action of the Lord, knowing the end from the beginning, for the establishment of this branch of the House of Jacob. The Liahona was a property of the patriarch Jacob, through Rachel, that was given to Lehi. Today it exists in the Hill Shim with the other sacred relics.

Questions and Comments:

I'll admit, this query doesn't hold much weight of importance, but jut out of curiosity of the difference in spelling, was Nephi's wife's name Myniah as spelled above of Minyah as spelled in Temporal Dispensations? **[I heard the way it sounded, but am guessing on the spelling. PR]**

Fair enough! Is my assumption that it is pronounced min-"eye"-uh correct? Kind of like we pronounce Sariah? **[Yes. PR]**

Are the principles governing the Liahona the same as with Seer Stones or the White Stone given? Also have you received any revelation on the use of pendulums, dowsing rods, or muscle testing? **[I dont know anything about the mechanisms you mentioned. The Liahona is easier to operate than a seer stone. PR]**

The Wilderness Experience – 1 Nephi 17:1-55

1 And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

2 And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

3 And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness. **[This is the second time that Nephi has mentioned that the Lord will provide the means. Often we assume that if we are righteous that things will be easy, but this is not how the Lord works. The Lord nourishes and strengthens us in our challenges. But, there is always a time and season, then comes the blessing.]**

4 And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

5 And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, **[ocean]** which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

6 And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

7 And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, **[This is part of the steps of revelatory progression as one hears the voice of the Lord, but has not yet had a Second Comforter experience.]** saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

8 And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

9 And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

10 And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

11 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

12 For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not; **[By revelation they were told to do this.]**

13 And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.

14 Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem. **[Until that time they would need to rely upon faith, not knowing the end result. Often the Lord instructs us to do the impossible. Building Zion often seems impossible from where we stand, but it will come.]**

15 Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments **[revelations]** of the Lord, and I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.

16 And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.

17 And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters. **[Most all who follow the Lord's revelations will be mocked by those who see what we do as unconventional.]**

18 And thus my brethren did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

19 And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; **[lack of desire]** and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work. **[They assumed Nephi was depressed that he couldn't accomplish the task when he was sorrowful for his brothers.]**

20 And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; **[Those who do not understand the spirit compare visions as "foolish imaginations." It is easy to disregard such things for those who can only see with the carnal mind.]** yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.

21 Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy. **[This was Laban and Lemuel's biggest complaint from the beginning.]**

22 And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us. **[Most of the people in Jerusalem assumed they were righteous enough, despite the many prophets saying otherwise. This occurs today, as many say, "All is well in Zion."]**

23 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

24 Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?

25 Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.

26 Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

27 But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

28 And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness. **[A great comparison to share with his brothers.]**

29 Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

30 And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient **[just enough]** for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

31 And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word. **[For the Lord, all things are possible, yet we often struggle to have faith in our afflictions.]**

32 And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction. **[Pattern the Lord allows as one people are ripe in iniquity and another, who have God's favor, are given possession of a land.]**

33 And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

34 Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay. **[It doesn't mean He didn't care about them less.]**

35 Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous **[Listens to the Spirit and keeps His commandments.]** is favored of God. But behold, this people **[Those left in Jerusalem]** had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it. **[The Lord doesn't allow a people to be destroyed until they are ripe in iniquity, which means they are fully depraved.]**

36 Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

37 And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.
38 And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes. **[Something of this nature will come forth as Zion is established in our day.]**

39 He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.
40 And he loveth **[blesses]** those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt. **[Sometimes, in our modern day, we think of God's love as we use the term "love." Like an affectionate Father who would treat sinners and saints the same. God's love is more an equal opportunity love, which gives all people the gift of His atonement, which unless they chose Satan will not be cast out. However, to receive His greatest gift of love they must repent and come unto Him.]**

41 And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simpleness of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished. **[To be "stiff-necked" is to be stubborn in our carnal reasoning. For most, the biggest obstacles of faith we have are the false traditions we have been fed for generations. It is difficult for people today to see God as real and personal because they doubt what He will do for them.]**

42 And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise. **[It took eight years for Lehi's family and forty years for the children of Israel to be prepared for their land of promise. How long will your wilderness experience be before you receive the blessing?]**

43 And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.

44 Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.

45 Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder. **[Having angels, visions, and revelations is never a sign of our status with God. Even those who profess a Second Comforter experience are at risk of falling if they fail to follow the Spirit of the Lord.]**

46 And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be

made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that ye can be so hard in your hearts? **[The opposite is a broken heart and a contrite spirit.]**

47 Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. **[Nephi truly loved his brothers.]** Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength. **[When our physical bodies begin to be filled with God's glory, often the effect is to feel our physical strength weakened for a short time.]**

48 And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him. **[The Spirit of Prophecy came over Nephi as he was told by the Spirit exactly what he was to say and do.]**

49 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship. **[At this point he used loving reason to convince them, not commanding them.]**

50 And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done. **[It is important to note that Nephi expresses his great faith that the Lord could do this, not of his own accord.]**

51 And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship? **[I'm thinking of Noah and the Jaredites, although Nephi was only aware of Noah at this time.]**

52 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them. **[When we are filled with the HG and God's power it is tangible. Others can feel it. For some, it makes them very uncomfortable.]**

53 And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.

54 And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken. **[A great act of mercy to Nephi's brothers, for some, to be shaken in such a manner leads to full repentance. Think of Alma the Younger and the sons of Mosiah, and Paul.]**

55 And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give

thee. **[Instead of calling out to God for forgiveness they focused their attention upon their brother, another man. How often do people get caught up in the worship of those we esteem as godly and above us to the level we begin to worship them. If anyone of a priesthood capacity allows others to idolize them to celebrity status, not following the example of Nephi, know for certain they are not of God.]**

Questions and Comments:

In your experience have you found that there are times when the Lord must withdraw his spirit to allow a person to fully confront temptation before ascending? **[No. I do not know of the Spirit withdrawing. PR]**

Nephi shocking his brothers: Is that a function or power of the priesthood? If so, what version of the priesthood was that? If no, is that a gift of the spirit? How is Nephi able to do this? **[All gifts of the Spirit are related to priesthood. You cannot exercise any gift without it. I know this is different than many have been taught, but we can only access the power of God according to our relationship with the divine. As we repent and seek Him, His gifts are bestowed upon us until we have a fullness. There are too many gifts to even attempt to name them all. You might say one gift is to shock the pants of someone who is being a turkey! If the Lord allows it, nothing to prevent it. PR]**

Voyage to the Promised Land – 1 Nephi 18:1-25

1 And it came to pass that they **[his brothers]** did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship. **[revelation came as needed. Often the Lord gives us what we need in stages.]**

2 Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men. **[The hull was like a large oval row boat, but with a steering mechanism and sail. Not the long ship typically envisioned. The sides curled inward like a jar.]**

3 And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, **[meaning he ascended spiritually]** and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

4 And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord. **[I did not see any heavy trees for ship building other than something that resembled a larger palo verde tree. The glue was black and may have been petroleum based.]**

5 And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship. **[Nephi waited for his father to receive the**

revelation. Lehi was the patriarch of the family and Nephi always checked in with his Father.]

6 And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, **[no animals]** with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

7 And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph. **[Both of these children were born to Sariah in late middle age. A great stress and also blessing to them.]**

8 And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land. **[Around the horn of Africa.]**

9 And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness. **[inappropriate behavior]**

10 And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, **[sexual sin]** that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

11 And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked. **[Often the Lord allows the righteous to suffer for a purpose which we often don't see until later.]**

12 And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work. **[The pointers didn't move anymore.]**

13 Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; **[They were driven out to the farther part of the ocean, whereas before they were along the coast of Africa.]** and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

14 And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

15 And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed **[loosened]** the bands which were upon my wrists, and behold they had

swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

16 Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions. **[In our afflictions we gather light when we cheer our soul by remembering the blessings of the Lord and trust in Him.]**

17 Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; **[threatened to throw off the ship.]** and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

18 Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave. **[very sick and weak]**

19 And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, **[nurturing]** were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

20 And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, insomuch that they loosed me.

21 And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

22 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land. **[crossing the ocean]**

23 And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land. **[When the Lord's promised blessing finally arrives it often comes upon us quickly without warning. Suddenly we see the fulfillment of the promise and our hearts fill with joy. In a similar manner will Zion become visible to those anticipating its establishment.]**

24 And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

25 And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, **[Over time they expanded inland.]** that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse **[This is a reference to an animal which could be harnessed]**, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

Questions and Comments:

Did Nephi's brothers making trouble and being driven by a mighty storm coincide with them coming around the Horn of Africa where it can be violently stormy? Thank you for all you share!!! **[It seemed that they had already turned the horn. PR]**

Are you allowed to share where they first landed? Was it along the Atlantic mouth of the St. Lawrence river or did they follow it all the way in to the Great Lakes region and land there? **[I haven't asked that, but it was inside of Florida in the gulf somewhere. I couldn't say exactly. PR]**

Can you describe more about the accommodations on the boat? Did it have a deck and a below-deck area? How did they sleep? What sheltered them overhead? How thick and high was the mast? Was it similar to a cozy yacht or were the families less cramped? While I envision the sails being a natural off-white or tan shade, was this the reality? Did they sacrifice one of their tents to make the sail or were they able to buy fabric from other peoples or caravans as they journeyed? **[What I saw were provisions in the belly with a platform of sorts where they rested. The sail wasn't terribly large. I don't know what was used. It reminded me of being in a large pot or basket. There was a large rutter that they used. It looked home made, but solid. I saw it in vision, so I didn't inspect carefully. PR]**

Are you allowed to describe the horse/saddled animal? It makes so much sense that it would be different! Was it small like a donkey? Or is it a truly unique animal that has been lost from nature in our day? **[I feel compelled not to, it would surprise many and seem humorous to some. PR]**

Was the animal harnessed to pull (chariots, carts, plows, etc.) or harnessed and saddled to ride? I'm still trying to envision what it could be. **[chariots, carriages. PR]**

Humorous because it was a type of deer pulling a carriage? Like how reindeer pull the sleigh we attribute to Santa Claus? (Would not surprise me, it seems every myth has a grain of truth!)

I have thought that Nephi worked as a Smith before leaving Jerusalem. What is your understanding? **[I don't know anything about him being a smith, perhaps he learned something about that, but the Lord could easily teach him. PR]**

The Records and the Gathering – 1 Nephi 19:1-24

1 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, **[by revelation]** wherefore I did make plates of ore **[after reaching the promised land]** that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, **[which was originally on animal skins]** and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

2 And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; **[Mostly not included in the Book of Mormon.]** wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

3 And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord. **[For the purpose of abridging the Book of Mormon.]**

4 Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, **[first plates]** which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates **[all of them]** should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

5 And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; **[A testimony]** and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

6 Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. **[Received by commandment or revelation.]** And now, if I do err, **[make mistakes]** even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself. **[Sometimes even the prophets make mistakes in how they attempt to keep the Lord's revelations, because of weakness. Nephi often acknowledges such in himself.]**

7 For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught **[consider as nothing]** and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels. **[Most people in this world have no interest in Jesus Christ. Today, the vast majority that worship Christ are those who are gentiles, having made the everlasting covenant before birth. These are considered the House of Israel. Here is a mystery.]**

8 And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem. **[The most specific revelation given to Nephi, or any prophet on record, concerning the timing of an event.]**

9 And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; **[allows it]** and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men. **[Motivated by love.]**

10 And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, **[He clearly identifies Christ as the same being who came to the Patriarchs and Moses.]** according to the words of the angel, as a

man, **[temporal being]** into the hands of wicked men, **[Ungodly, which is different than to be evil. To be evil is to have Satanic designs to oppress.]** to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, **[Two of these prophets are no longer included in the Old Testament, but are in the plates of brass, a more complete compilation. Neum is the same person as Nehum included in the latter part of the Old Testament. His full writings are also not included. It is curious that such perfect details pointing to the death of the Messiah would be removed by the Jews to the extent that they were not known to them at the time of Christ.]** which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, **[This phrase is a metaphor that means the isolated settlements.]** more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel. **[Those who have made the covenant before birth and renewed afterward.]**

11 For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up. **[concerning the people in the Americas]**

12 And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea **[various nations]** shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers. **[Many people of the children of men see nature as a deity in itself. This stretches across most civilizations.]**

13 And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel. **[The Jews are unique amongst all the people, where an unprecedented prejudice exists toward them throughout the world. This has existed since the beginning of the Diaspora in 70 AD.]**

14 And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, **[without a country]** and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.

15 Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers. **[Abrahamic Covenant renewed with Jacob]**

16 Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; **[the different Jewish groups spread across the world]** yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

17 Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed. **[Since the Balfour Declaration and the establishment of a homeland for the Jews the world has seen incredible blessings of prosperity and technological advancement. If not for wicked men it would be a paradise in many respects today.]**

18 And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.

19 Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

20 For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, **[A typical physical reaction when the Spirit floods over us.]** for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also. **[Nephi knows he would have perished in Jerusalem as had been prophesied.]**

21 And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; **[Prophets such as Isaiah saw the full history of the House of Israel with each destruction followed by their gathering.]** and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass. **[The remnant of Joseph, or the branch. Gen. 49:22]**

22 Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

23 And I did read many things unto them which were written in the books of Moses; but that I might more fully **[with greater clarity]** persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning. **[Both Nephi and his father Lehi were students of the writings of Isaiah and cherished his words above all others. In our time, much of these writings can only be understood by revelation. The reason they are included so much in the Book of Mormon is that they help unlock what is necessary for the Servants as the gathering prepares to begin.]**

24 Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for after this manner has the prophet written. **[It is a powerful thing for a people to know their righteous roots and that there is a reason for their existence. Even today, in America, our roots are being forgotten by wicked leaders who seek to steer the people towards wickedness and abominations. When the wickedness is ripe, the fury of the Lord's wrath will be poured out upon this people.]**

Questions and Comments:

Would you define “wicked” or “wickedness” generally to mean “ungodly” or is it specific to the passage in verse 10? I did an internet search of the Hebrew / Greek definitions of wicked but there are numerous interpretations. They did seem to have in common that our English rendering of wicked (ie: sinful or evil) is oversimplified.

When a Gentile accepts Jesus Christ and is adopted into the House of Israel, how are they assigned their lineage? Are they mostly through Joseph who was sold into Egypt? **[Good question. I have not asked about that. PR]**

If a person has not made the everlasting covenant before birth is it still possible to be adopted in to the House of Israel? Is also possible to have the Baptism of Fire and Calling & Election? **[All is possible to receive, but the calling and election does not occur in the 2nd estate. PR]**

Isaiah 48 – Zion Arise – 1 Nephi 20:1-22

1 Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, **[those of the Covenant]** who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear **[make an oath]** by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness. **[do not keep their promises]**

2 Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, **[Zion]** but they do not stay **[focus]** themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; **[most powerful God]** yea, the Lord of Hosts is his name.

3 Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. **[did prophecy]** I did show them suddenly. **[with urgency]**

4 And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate **[stubborn]**, and thy neck is an iron sinew **[slow to repent]**, and thy brow brass; **[narrow in vision and understanding]**

5 And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee **[the prophecies]**; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them. **[You cannot say, “It is not of God, but of man, and it is an act of nature, and the creations of man have caused them to occur.”]**

6 Thou hast seen and heard all this; and will ye not declare them? **[Will you not say it is true?]** And that I have showed thee new things from this time **[the present]**, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them. **[you did not know before]**

7 They are created **[happening]** now, and not from the beginning **[past]**, even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them. **[“I already know that.”]**

8 Yea, and thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time thine ear was not opened; **[You did not listen to the Spirit.]** for I knew that thou wouldst deal very treacherously **[break the Covenant]**, and wast called a transgressor from the womb. **[Born under condemnation before you were born because of the tradition of your fathers.]**

9 Nevertheless, for my name’s sake **[sake of mine Elect]** will I defer mine anger, and for my praise **[those who still worship God]** will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off. **[I will not curse you.]**

10 For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee **[found you worthy]** in the furnace **[trial]** of affliction.

11 For mine own **[Elect’s]** sake, yea, for mine own sake will I do this, for I will not suffer my name **[Church]** to be polluted, and I will not give my glory **[power]** unto another.

12 Harken unto me, O Jacob **[those of the Covenant]**, and Israel my called, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last. **[A way to define the role of the Only Begotten Son and Redeemer.]**

13 Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto them and they stand up together. **[obey my commands]**

14 All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among them hath declared these things unto them? **[Who has given you this sacred knowledge?]** The Lord hath loved him **[you]**; yea, and he will fulfil his word which he hath declared by them **[his prophet]**; and he will do his pleasure on Babylon **[the kingdoms of this world]**, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans. **[Those who think they know more than God.]**

15 Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord, yea, I have spoken; yea, I have called him **[Isaiah]** to declare **[prophecy]**, I have brought **[called]** him, and he shall make his way prosperous. **[He shall accomplish his mission.]**

16 Come ye near unto me; **[Listen closely to what I am about to say.]** I have not spoken in secret **[These things are revealed to all.]**; from the beginning, from the time that it was declared **[since I was first called]** have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

17 And thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I have sent him **[Jesus Christ]**, the Lord thy God who teacheth thee to profit **[teaches all thing for your profit]**, who leadeth thee by the way thou shouldst go, hath done it. **[This is what I do.]**

18 O that thou hadst hearkened **[listened and obeyed]** to my commandments—then had thy peace been as a river **[Thy blessings would have flowed unto you without ceasing.]**, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea. **[Your righteous doings come unto you one after another.]**

19 Thy seed **[posterity]** also had been as the sand **[eternal as the sand of the sea]**; the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me. **[Your children remained under the Covenant.]**

20 Go ye forth of Babylon **[leave the ugliness of the world]**, flee ye from the Chaldeans **[the wisdom of man]**, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter to the end of the earth; say ye: The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob **[people of the Covenant]**.

21 And they thirsted not **[were blessed]**; he led them **[the Israelites]** through the deserts; he caused the waters **[blessings]** to flow out of the rock for them; he clave the rock also and the waters **[blessings]** gushed out.

22 And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and greater also, there is no peace **[promise]**, saith the Lord, unto the wicked. **[This same covenant applies to both the ancient Israelites and those who follow Christ today.]**

Each time Isaiah is quoted in the Book of Mormon it is for a purpose related to the latter-days. These words are for those who will arise and claim Zion. These words are for those who will be servants of the Lord in the gathering of Israel.

Questions and Comments:

I have always loved the Isaiah chapters of the Book of Mormon, and your interpretations as always are so enlightening. By coincidence (which I don't believe in), the other day an acquaintance of mine who is considered one of the top Old Testament historians in the world (in respect of his privacy, I won't mention him directly, but I think it's safe to assume that most folks who follow you would recognize him), was mentioning to me something called the deutero Isaiah hypothesis which affect chapters 40-55 of Isaiah. I'm sheepish to admit that I never heard of this before, so I looked into it and read all I could find on the subject on FAIR, but according to my friend, FAIR's response is "very lacking". Coming from someone of your stature with the Lord, I'd love to hear your take. Again, I don't believe in coincidences, and I feel that your inspired interpretations are something I specifically am meant to read. Thank you so much. **[I am not familiar with the deutero Isaiah hypothesis. I have not studied any other person's writings on Isaiah. When I first prepared to study Isaiah a few years ago the Lord told me to put away the books and trust in Him. It made all the difference for me. PR]**

What is interesting is that the Jacob/Israel level is always shown by Isaiah as a deciding factor pivot point where most of humanity comes into mortality. We either covenant and ascend up into the rung of the covenant keepers of "Zion/Jerusalem" (and beyond) through trial and faith or we descend (through covenant breaking and/or idolatry and apathy) towards Babylon and worse. Obviously, most of the world is comfortably camped out in Babylon. Long story short: I enjoy your assessment of Isaiah 48 in the book of Mormon. You said "These words are for those who will arise and claim Zion". YES! Thank you for pointing that out as it goes hand in glove with what I am learning. The only way I understand to do this is to make covenants and exercise great faith in the name of Christ unto salvation. It seems like Isaiah 48 is a perfect jumping off point for Nephi to quote. Isaiah is saying "Jacob, here you are at your deciding pivotal moment. Will you covenant and ascend or will to descend into perdition?" Rarely do we see traditional LDS commentary on Isaiah in the book of Mormon explained as anchor scriptures or guide posts to awake, arise— cast off our idol worship/ apathy and claim Zion in these latter days. Why? **[I will have to let individuals answer that by their own revelation. PR]**

I admit that Deutero Isaiah had me deeply concerned for a while until I started learning how impossible it is for more than one author of Isaiah to exist. Isaiah is so complex all the way through... chapters 1-31 mirror the literary structures and matches the complexity to chapters 32-66 so precisely that it is impossible that two different (or three as some claim) human brains could do it. I have only studied Isaiah for a few months. I see the mind blowing complexity, types, word links, theme links, metaphor, chiasm, and other literary devices and see that these weave back and forth between the various parts of the book of Isaiah claimed to be written by multiple authors. That's the thing though... if one does not put in the time to unlock Isaiah, they have no choice but to get lost in the complexity. In the end, the sheer magnitude and enormity of its complexity from chapter one to chapter 66 is what saves Isaiah... ironically.

We see and hear “covenant”, “covenant keeping”, and “covenant breaking” everywhere. What is it that we are promising the Lord? What does it take to keep that promise and not break it? His commandments...those that are written out in scripture? The two great commandments to love God and love thy neighbor? Or is it to hear His Voice and respond in like? Like anyone else, I don’t want to break covenants and miss out on the flowing of God’s blessings. But I wish it were more clearly stated what my part of the promise is so that I can keep myself in check. **[Yes, that is true. We covenant before we are born to have faith in the Father, to follow His Son, Jesus Christ, and to ascend to the third estate. This is the part that relates to this life, and it continues for many degrees after this life. The entire House of Israel was under this covenant before birth, and many are a part of that as well. To break this covenant is to go seeking after false idols, whatever that may be. There are many facets to this covenant, but that is the main part that pertains to most people. There are also covenants made during our lives that pertain to this Everlasting Covenant, particularly the New Covenant given by Christ to His disciples. This helps us to have faith unto repentance, to prepare for the blessings of the Everlasting Covenant. (Not specifically marriage as has been taught.) The most critical parts of the covenant we need to know are stated in 3 Nephi 11-12. PR]**

Is part of the sacrifice higher estate beings make (for example, a fourth estate person) that they come to earth in a second estate situation and must progress by getting their baptism of fire in this life, even if they have done it in lives before this? Is the baptism of water and fire and receiving the Holy Ghost the only activities required to qualify to progress to the third estate? **[The answer to both questions is yes. PR]**

What is the difference between the premortal covenant to ascend to the third estate and the New Everlasting Covenant made during this life? Have the 144K been pre-ordained for this mission in the pre-existence? What about the Elect? Do you have to be foreordained for that before being born or is this available to everyone? Is ascending to the third estate the same as receiving the Gift of the Holy Ghost, the same as becoming children of Christ, the same as becoming part of the Church of the Firstborn, the same as being saved? So, the 144K will gather in the elect. Does it mean the elect will be protected and gathered before the tribulations. Are the wicked the only ones who will suffer or will the righteous also be subjected to all kinds of tribulations leading to the Second Coming? If I don’t receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost, does it mean I won’t have God’s protection? Has the physical gathering already begun? If you start as a second estate being, what is the most you can advance spiritually during one mortal probation? After the Gift of the Holy Ghost, are the Second Comforter, the Calling and Election, and exaltation all attainable in this life? **[The difference is that the Everlasting Covenant includes everything that comes here after in detail. The New Covenant made during this life is focuses on coming to Christ to be reborn in the Spirit. Yes, the 144K are preordained before the world to do what they do. The Elect are those that made the Everlasting Covenant (House of Israel). During the Times of the Gentiles this is extended to all the Children**

of Men. The 3rd Estate is the same as receiving the gift of HG. Yes, yes, yes. They will be gathered in the midst of the tribulation. It will begin upon His house, meaning His' people. If you are in a state of repentance, seeking Him, you will have the Spirit to guide you. This is the first protection. The final protection would be the gift of the HG. The gathering has not yet begun. If someone is 2nd estate the most they can become is 3rd estate in this life, which is no small thing. Third to Fourth takes place at the end of the Millennium. For the third estate, the Second Comforter is possible in this life. Calling and Election is something that occurs for fourth estate and Exaltation comes after many estates. I hope that helps. PR]

Waters of Judah, baptism. I just learned in going through this chapter again that nowhere in the KJV OT is baptism mentioned except cryptically for religions like the LDS who are trying to find it there. So, Nephi inserts "baptism" here which is like a floodgate of truth for the latter day saint. Non-LDS Bible scholars state that baptism was not practiced by ancient Israel but somehow when John the Baptist was going forth baptizing, many seemed to know all about the practice already... and accepted it was needed. Either John the Baptist was an extremely gifted preacher or the people had been prepared by God to receive this new practice or baptism has always been on the earth when the full gospel is here to accompany it (Adam was baptized in the book of Moses). What do you think? Was baptism, the way we understand it practiced by ancient Israel even though we can't find direct evidence of it? **[My understanding was that Jews didn't perform baptisms upon themselves because they were "born in the covenant." There must have been a caveat understood that one could be reintroduced to the covenant through baptism under certain circumstances. PR]**

Isaiah 49 – Rise of the Servants – 1 Nephi 21:1-26

1 And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out **[those who have departed from the Covenant and have been cursed]** because of the wickedness of the pastors **[teachers]** of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles **[those in other lands]**, unto me, and hearken ye people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name. **[Before I was born was I called.]**

2 And he hath made my mouth **[words]** like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me **[He hath hid this prophecy from the understanding of the world.]**, and made me a polished shaft **[straight arrow, carefully prepared servant]**; in his quiver hath he hid me;

3 And said unto me: Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified. **[It will be through the covenant bloodline of Israel that I will save them.]**

4 Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength **[worked hard]** for naught **[nothing]** and in vain; surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God. **[The Lord will judge me for my effort, for it is His work.]**

5 And now, saith the Lord—that formed me from the womb that I should be his servant **[that called me before I was born]**, to bring Jacob again to him **[to restore Israel to the Covenant]** —though Israel **[descendants]** be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.

6 And he said: It is a light thing **[a great knowledge]** that thou shouldst be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob **[restore those of the Covenant]**, and to restore the preserved of Israel **[descendants]**. I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles **[guide the church in the last days]**, that thou mayest be my salvation **[spread the word of salvation]** unto the ends of the earth.

7 Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth **[when men shall despise him]**, to him whom the nations abhorreth, to servant of rulers: **[though he is hated and treated as a servant]** Kings shall see and arise **[They shall see him and arise.]** , princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful. **[Because the Lord is always with him. (The David Servant)]**

8 Thus saith the Lord: In an acceptable **[proper]** time have I heard thee **[blessed my people]**, O isles of the sea **[in other lands]**, and in a day of salvation **[when the Gospel is restored]** have I helped thee; and I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages; **[To revitalize that which is desolate.]**

9 That thou mayest say to the prisoners **[those in spiritual blindness]**: Go forth; to them that sit in darkness: Show yourselves. **[Come forth!]** They shall feed in the ways, **[They shall learn as they go.]** and their pastures shall be in all high places. **[The Lord shall comfort them.]**

10 They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor the sun smite **[hurt]** them; for he that hath mercy on them **[their benefactor]** shall lead them, even by the springs of water **[pure revelations]** shall he guide them. **[This verse is directly related to the 144K that help to assist the Servant in the gathering of Israel.]**

11 And I will make all my mountains a way **[make a way through all the nations]**, and my highways shall be exalted. **[transportation will not be inhibited]**

12 And then, O house of Israel, behold, these shall come from far; and lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim. **[southern parts]**

13 Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; for the feet **[kingdom]** of those who are in the east shall be established; and break forth into singing, O mountains **[great nations]**; for they shall be smitten no more; for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted. **[The Lord will heal them.]**

14 But, behold, Zion **[those who are pure in heart]** hath said: The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me—but he will show that he hath not.

15 For can a woman forget her sucking **[nursing]** child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.

16 Behold, I have graven **[marked]** thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me. **[I have sealed you unto me.]** **The Saviors Covenant before birth included certain marks upon Himself, as do His servants.**

17 Thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers **[Those you gather shall depart from the adversary.]**; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee. **[Those that afflicted you shall be gone.]**

18 Lift up thine eyes round about and behold; all these gather themselves together, and they shall come to thee. And as I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on even as a bride. **[You shall surely administer Covenants to them all, like beautiful jewels bestowed upon a bride.]**

19 For thy waste **[ruined]** and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now **[before the destructions]** be too narrow **[small]** by reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away. **[Those that will cause this are yet far away.]**

20 The children whom thou shalt have **[new people that come after the affliction]**, after thou hast lost the first **[The former inhabitants]**, shall again in thine ears say: The place is too strait **[difficult in their current place]** for me; give place to me that I may dwell.

21 Then shalt thou say in thine heart: Who hath begotten me these **[Where have these people come from?]**, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? **[All are gone from this place.]** And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been? **[There were no others.]** **This section is referring to an initial gathering of Zion in America after the destructions have laid waste to much of the land.**

22 Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles **[raise up my Church (future event)]**, and set up my standard to the people **[point of gathering]**; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

23 And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers **[You will be helped by kingdoms and principalities.]**; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet **[honor thee]**; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed **[not disappointed]** that wait for me.

24 For shall the prey be taken from the mighty **[Shall the blessings be taken from the faithful?]**, or the lawful captives delivered? **[Or the guilty be unjudged?]**

25 But thus saith the Lord, even the captives **[prisoners]** of the mighty **[Adversary]** shall be taken away **[released]**, and the prey **[victims]** of the terrible shall be delivered; for I will contend **[fight against]** with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children. **[Those to be gathered.]**

26 And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh **[they will destroy themselves]**; they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine **[fall from their own demise]**; and all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

Questions and Comments:

Is Isaiah both the Light to the Gentiles and the Davidic Servant? Or just the Light to the Gentiles? **[He is not the Davidic Servant. PR]**

From the bracketed note in verse 18, what does it mean to administer Covenants?
[This refers to baptism of water and the laying on of Hands for the Gift of the Holy Ghost. PR]

The Book of Mormon shows that there are much greater promises given to the seed of Lehi/Nephi in these latter days, than those given to the gentiles who would receive a restored version of the fullness of the Gospel of Christ. It seems to me that upon the destruction of the great gentile nation (America) that there will be a great work wrought upon the Native Americans. Would not the gentiles (and those of the restored Church, who subsequently rejected the fullness that had been offered them) say to themselves – upon seeing this great work wrought among a different people than themselves – “AND WHO HATH BROUGHT UP THESE? BEHOLD... WHERE HAVE THEY BEEN?”

Vs 3 ” And said unto me: Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified. [It will be through the covenant bloodline of Israel that I will save them.]” Is Ephraim (latter day lds gentiles) a part of that covenant bloodline? **[This is the tribe of Judah here speaking. PR]** Vs 4 “Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength [worked hard] for naught [nothing] and in vain; ” this is so appropriate! This is a chapter about servants awaking and arising... and some days it sure does feel like nothing is happening yet we want so badly for progress to be made manifest. That is a personal interpretation but I wonder if that will be the case when the servants go forth and start gathering or “preaching” to the Jews... maybe it will be a really slow start? **[Not that slow respectively. Not necessarily the Jews, but the entire House of Israel. Again, a mystery. The Jews will still be in confusion other than a small remnant of Messianic Jews, until Christ himself comes to them upon the Mt. of Olives. PR]** Vs 15 “...Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.”

Why does the Lord love the house of Israel above all others so much when they seem to turn away from Him time and again (they even crucified Him)? I know He is merciful and patient and omnibenevolent... I mean, are we all like the house of Israel? Is there not one people who doesn't turn away from Him? Why is Israel the favored house? **[The earth and everything here, the entire purpose of its creation is to save the House of Israel. All other people are here by invitation and are invited to partake, but the HofI are the covenant children since before the foundation of the world. They are why the Father sent His Only Begotten Son. PR]**

Apocalypse of Nephi – 1 Nephi 22:1-31

1 And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh? **[This is and was a common way many interpret scripture. That**

scripture is not literal, but somehow only has a spiritual connotation that does not affect us in the physical realm. Usually, it is both.]

2 And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh. **[Revelations are received in a manner that is outside our physical senses. It is heard and seen in the mind's eye according to the Spirit of the Lord.]**

3 Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations. **[This was unconceivable at that time to a Jew.]**

4 And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. **[Lost Ten Tribes who were formally taken captive by the Assyrians and migrated north.]** Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away **[by the Lord]**; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea **[among many nations]**; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

5 And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts **[will not repent]**; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

6 Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed **[helped to gain strength]** by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel. **[Interpreting Isaiah's scripture, Nephi explains that it will be their descendants and the House of Israel that shall be carried and nourished by Gentiles in the last days.]**

7 And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, **[The United States]** yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

8 And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders. **[The translating of the BofM and other records just before the establishment of Zion. Most of this is yet to occur.]**

9 And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed. **[A full understanding of the Everlasting Covenant and the workings of the Lord.]**

10 And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds **[races]** of the earth cannot be blessed **[be given the Covenant]** unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations. **[Display his power to the world.]**

11 Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants **[ordinances]** and his gospel **[Doctrine of Salvation]** unto those who are of the house of Israel. **[It is these to whom the Gospel will be given when the Times of the Gentiles ends and the Times of the Gathering of Israel commences.]**

12 Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance **[Began happening about 1917 with the Balfour Declaration and the return of the Jews to Israel.];** and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel. **[This will yet occur to the great extent prophesied.]**

13 And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood. **[Wars among nations whose purpose is world domination. Such wars will increase until the end.]**

14 And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it. **[This is a short abbreviation of what the Apostle John saw in Revelation.]**

15 For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned. **[The earth shall receive a literal baptism of fire and be cleansed.]**

16 For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.

17 Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come **[A “fulness” implies the kind of destruction that lays flat everything with complete annihilation.],** and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire. **[It will come from the Heavens. There will be many instances including the coming forth of the Ten Tribes which will be saved from enemies by fire of heaven raining down upon them.]**

18 Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh **[physically]** if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel. **[This occurred during the time of Christ’s death and will again just before HIs coming in glory.]**

19 For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off. **[When they are ripe in iniquity there will be a complete separation of the righteous and wicked geographically.]**

20 And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet **[Jesus Christ]** shall the Lord your God

raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people. **[Shall be cut off from the chosen people of God.]**

21 And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

22 And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded **[lose their way]**. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh— **[This is more than a philosophy or generalization. It is an actual organized entity which seeks to gain power over all people and institutions.]**

23 For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain **[Do you know any established churches that are not rich in terms of money and real estate?]**, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world **[How many churches abandon their former beliefs to conform to cultural changes?]**, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world **[Signifying the pursuit of fame, fortune, and comfort.]**, and to do all manner of iniquity **[Signifying something of a sexual sin.]**; yea, in fine, all those **[churches and institutions]** who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.

24 And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, **[brought home to safety]** and the Holy One of Israel **[Jesus Christ]** must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory. **[The Millennium]**

25 And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth **[The purpose of the 144k]**; and he numbereth his sheep **[The Elect]**, and they know him; and there shall be one fold **[Church of the Firstborn]** and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.

26 And because of the righteousness **[Following the will of the Lord]** of his people, Satan has no power; **[This is a good point to remember in our own lives as we seek to overcome the Adversary.]** wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth. **[Satan's power is not in his physical self, but his dominion and those that worship him. At the end of the Millennium his power will rise as he is allowed to tempt the Angels of God one last time before he is sent to Outer Darkness.]**

27 And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh. **[in the physical world]**

28 But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent. **[The children of men, all races, and religions will be offered this blessing if they repent and partake of the Everlasting Covenant of God.]**

29 And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things. **[The Spirit constrains him from saying more.]**

30 Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.

31 Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end [**continue on this path without changing course**], ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen. [**A double amen is sealing his own words.**]

Questions and Comments:

In verse 23 when Nephi says the churches must be brought low into the dust, does that mean the entire body of all the church goes along with the leadership is brought low into the dust? Or does it mean the church organization (which is made up of all the money, the properties, investments, legal holdings, etc.) and the corrupt leadership are brought low into the dust and the lower, less powerful, blinded members scatter, having witnessed the fall of the devil's churches, but are not significantly harmed? What does the phrase "brought low into the dust" mean in today's language? How will that look when it happens? [**All those who are not part of the Church of Christ, which is not an institution but a Covenant, shall be brought down. At first it will be the cracks among their followers, as members become disillusioned, and then the complete collapse. In the end, the only Church remaining will be the Church of the Firstborn. PR**]

What will the complete collapse of these churches look like in our day? (Bankruptcy? Buildings closing?) What are the symptoms to watch for to let us know this is underway and hastening? [**Inner strife followed by disaster and war. I am not permitted to give details other than what I have already written. PR**]

When they are ripe in iniquity there will be a complete separation of the righteous and wicked geographically" How so? Does this mean Third Zion will be in America? [**Yes, it is in America. The complete separation occurs after the entire House of Israel is gathered. There is also a small gathering in old Jerusalem. PR**]

Thank you so much for sharing these things! My question is, what does a righteous church or the Church of the First Born look like? I feel that my reference point of "a church" is so tainted by false traditions and beliefs that I am searching for a true understanding of what Christ's church looks like. [**Behold, this is my doctrine — whosoever repenteth and cometh unto me, the same is my church." (D&C 10:67) The Lord doesn't look at His Church in terms of an institution. Joseph Smith organized the Church of Christ in 1830 so that the church would have legal standing. Its structure became more organized to suit the needs of men; however, this is not how the Lord identifies His church. In fact, he condemned the church (D&C 84:54-57) for treating lightly what they had received. This was speaking to the body, not to all individuals. Here in mortality the Lord only recognized two churches, His own and the church**

of the devil. This is described in (1 Nephi 14:10). The Church of the Firstborn are those who have received the Gift of the Holy Ghost and mingle freely with the Angels of God. This will occur in Zion and amongst those who have ascended. PR]

I think I kinda understand a TINY bit. I was telling my husband a while ago that I feel as if believers and members of churches (LDS included) may follow “traditional” worship and counsel from “others” more than seeking the Lords counsel without a large organization. Does that make sense?

Can you help me understand these terms or what they reference in the bigger plan?

House of the Lord

House of the Firstborn

House of Joseph

Church of Firstborn

I believe I read somewhere that most Patriarchs are 4th Estate? Do they have authority to seal a blessing upon an individual in proxy of the living God?

Forgive me if my questions are too much. I’m still learning. **[When you see the word “House,” it typically identifies a family. It can also signify a school of learning. Servants under the direction of the Lord can perform sealing blessings. For example, the laying on of hands for the Gift of the Holy Ghost. PR]**

“11 Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants [ordinances] and his gospel [Doctrine of Salvation] unto those who are of the house of Israel. [It is these to whom the Gospel will be given when the Times of the Gentiles ends and the Times of the Gathering of Israel commences.]” Relative to the Everlasting Covenant and it’s ordinances: the ordinances of water baptism and the sacrament are what this verse refers to? **[Yes. PR]**

Is the baptism of fire an ordinance? **[No. It is the cleansing glory by which we can stand in the presence of God and His angels. PR]**

Is the baptism of the holy ghost an ordinance? **[Yes. It is the spiritual consumption of the baptism of the water ordinance. PR]**

Is the calling and election made sure an ordinance? **[Yes it is. PR]**

Is the second comforter experience an ordinance? **[No, this is a gift of the Spirit which has broad meaning to most people. PR]**

Is the sealing to one’s spouse by the Lord an ordinance in the EC? **[Yes. PR]**

are there any other ordinances in the Everlasting Covenant (relative to redemption in this life)? **[The Doctrine of Christ includes the ordinances required for redemption from the 2nd Estate. There are many ordinances that are given in mortality which point us toward a higher portion of the Everlasting Covenant. Those include: The Washing of Feet, Temple ordinances, and whatever means the Lord chooses to give us to prepare our minds for its fulfillment. An ordinance is a ritual observance given from God to point us**

toward the reception of its spiritual consummation, which is the fullness of the Everlasting Covenant. PR]

Second Book of Nephi

Blessings of the Promised Land – 2 Nephi 1:1-32

1 And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

2 And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters, and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not swallowed up in the sea.

3 And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem. **[They had lived through an incredible experience together, witnessing firsthand the miracles and mercy of the Lord. Lehi, very old in age, tried to hammer this point to his sons.]**

4 For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished. **[A seer is shown thing of the past, future, and how they are at the present. Lehi saw what was left of Jerusalem after it was conquered.]**

5 But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord. **[The land of North America is the most choice of all lands for various reasons. It is a blessed land since the beginning, being the land of Adam and His children, where the Jaredites came, and now where those seeking to worship God could flee. This is for not just the family of Lehi and their descendants. The land is also rich with natural resources.]**

6 Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord. **[This is referring to an occupying people. There will always be evil people seeking to overthrow what is good in America. As the United States becomes more ripe in iniquity the Lord will prepare to clean the land that a new people may possess it. (Zion)]**

7 Wherefore, this land is consecrated **[set apart]** unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into

captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever. **[America has had its share of wars and afflictions, mostly because of wickedness. When we look at how the practice of human slavery destroyed the South, and today as the culture shifts to a more godless, secular society, the country is currently divided along lines of what is considered good and evil. For many, what is black is now white.]**

8 And behold, it is wisdom **[with foresight]** that this land should be kept **[secret]** as yet from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

9 Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land **[Thus, it is called the Promised Land.]**; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever. **[America has been more safe than other nations from outside war and attacks than other nations until recent years. Most all of our afflictions have been self-inflicted.]**

10 But behold, when the time cometh that they **[Those that inhabit this land.]** shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith **[After the restoration of the priesthood and the many blessings that include advancements in medicine and technology.]**; having all the commandments **[revelations]** from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them. **[That day is soon upon us.]**

11 Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, **[invasion]** and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten. **[Future suffering of America.]**

12 Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds **[wars]**, and great visitations **[God's interventions]** among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.

13 O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe. **[To be asleep is a good metaphor for not being willing to repent. How many people seem to find comfort in the warm blankets of their current situation, not willing to wake up to the truth?]**

14 Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.

15 But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love. **[A powerful testimony, the kind that should be born from the pulpit and at home amongst our families.]**

16 And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes **[laws]** and the judgments **[ordinances]** of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.

17 My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts **[lack of desire]** the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;

18 Or, that a cursing should come upon you **[your posterity]** for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil. **[The sins of the parents often affect several generations of family before the chain is broken.]**

19 O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

20 And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments **[revelations to you]** ye shall be cut off from my presence. **[If we do not do as the Lord commands us, we cannot have the faith necessary to come to Him.]**

21 And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men **[of God]**, and be determined in one mind and in one heart **[In the Spirit of the Lord]**, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

22 That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body. **[This is the ultimate curse upon those who become Perdition.]**

23 Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness [performing in the Spirit]. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound **[Satan's chains upon the heart]**, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust. **[be born again in Christ]**

24 Rebel no more against your brother **[Nephi]**, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments **[revelations]** from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you. **[a painful reminder to Laman and Lemuel]**

25 And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

26 And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness [**in terms of rude accusations**]; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities. [**The wicked hate to be confronted with truth. The often react with great anger and desire to return with harm upon their accuser.**]

27 And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it. [**When the Spirit of Prophecy comes upon an individual they feel constrained to speak, almost can't help but do so. When this is done it is not uncommon for the servant to say in the name of the Lord, or something to imply that this is the Lord's words, not their own.**]

28 And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing. [**Lehi officially designates Nephi as the leader of the people.**]

29 But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

30 And now, Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever. [**A close relationship founded upon a love for scripture.**]

31 Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever. [**The Zoramites would be counted among the Nephites and carry the lineage of Ephraim.**]

32 Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son. [**Remnants of his seed continue among the Native Americans today.**]

Purpose of Life – 2 Nephi 2:1-30

1 And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my firstborn in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness [**teasing and meanness**] of thy brethren.

2 Nevertheless, Jacob, my firstborn in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God [**He has a witness of God's glory.**]; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain. [**A good lesson for us to remember, that God allows the righteous to suffer that they may be made holy in their afflictions.**]

3 Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou

hast beheld that in the fulness of time **[The apex of this worlds time for man.]** he cometh to bring salvation unto men. **[Jacob had received a witness of Christ and saw the future events for himself, as his brother Nephi before him.]**

4 And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory **[There is no age requirement for when a person can have a witness of Jesus. Joseph saw the Father and the Son at the age of fourteen.]**; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free. **[Another reminder that things never change. That by the Atonement of Christ all men may be saved. He payed the price, which makes it free to us. The question is whether we will take it.]**

5 And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever. **[Which law is Lehi alluding to here? It is the law associated with partaking of a body in this temporal sphere. All mankind is “cut off” from God when they come here, yet they may know intrinsically between good and evil. However, no person is able to be redeemed of their own will, but must be forever telestial.]**

6 Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah **[anointed one]**; for he is full of grace and truth. **[power and light]**

7 Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin **[to make clean again]**, to answer the ends of the law **[That which separates us from God]**, unto all those who have a broken heart **[full desire]** and a contrite spirit **[full submission]**; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered. **[Only these can be born again in His image.]**

8 Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God **[the purpose of Christ’s sacrifice]**, save it be through the merits **[anointing]**, and mercy **[love]**, and grace **[power]** of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh **[in a temporal body]**, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit **[Overcome death and hell]**, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead **[The raising of our bodies from temporal to a spiritual rebirth of higher glory.]**, being the first that should rise. **[He must be the first to be resurrected.]**

9 Wherefore, he is the firstfruits unto God **[The pattern for all]**, inasmuch as he shall make intercession **[in the stead thereof]** for all the children of men; and they that believe **[have faith]** in him shall be saved. **[Shall not be sent where Satan will go.]**

10 And because of the intercession for all, all men **[and women]** come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him **[before His all-seeing eye]**, to be judged **[divided and organized]** of him according to the truth **[divine knowledge and wisdom]** and holiness **[Fullness of the Spirit]** which is in him. Wherefore, the ends of the law **[divine purposes]** which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed **[the justice of the wicked that choose Satan]**, which punishment that is affixed **[set in place]** is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement— **[The entire purpose of the Atonement is to bring us joy and happiness.]**

11 For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my firstborn in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one **[no balance and purpose]**; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility. **[This single verse has massive ramifications to understanding the nature of God and the Heavens. Everything has its mirror image in the universe. You cannot have good without the bad or bad without the good.]**

12 Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught **[nothing]**; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. **[From the moment we were given a spiritual tabernacle in the image of God our purpose was to fill the measure of our creation. This is something that is intrinsically inside each of us, like a seed waiting to sprout and grow into whichever kind of tree we are to become.]** Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his eternal purposes, and also the power **[grace and the estates]**, and the mercy **[Atonement]**, and the justice of God. **[the dividing of the wheat from the tares.]**

13 And if ye shall say there is no law **[governing of heaven]**, ye shall also say there is no sin. **[that which is not in harmony with God's law]** If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. **[in harmony with God's law]** And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. **[spiritual joy and peace]** And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. **[hell and perdition]** And if these things are not there is no God. **[These are the evidence of His works.]** And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away. **[All things in creation are a cascade of relationships of one larger system to another. Each are created with balance to create harmony and help all things reach the measure of their creation in the cosmos.]**

14 And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon. **[This is the nature of the very sub-atomic particles that make up all creation. There are those that act, or are acted upon, and herein lies a mystery.]**

15 And to bring about his eternal purposes **[the entire purpose of the creation]** in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, **[literally, the first]** and the beasts of the field **[creatures good and evil]** and the fowls of the air **[angels good and evil]**, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition **[choice]**; even the forbidden fruit **[forbidden knowlege]** in opposition to the tree of life **[Eternal Life]**; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

16 Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. **[At no time in our existence are we ever compelled to do anything, for we are the kind of intelligence which can act and not be acted upon. However, if ever one were to choose Satan, it becomes a different story.]** Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other. **[This is**

why we are always allowed to be tempted of Satan, even until our dying breath.]

17 And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, **[in the brass plates]** must needs suppose that an ^aangel of God **[fourth estate]**, according to that which is written, had ^bfallen from heaven **[descended into Outer Darkness to make oaths with Lucifer]**; wherefore, he became **[was changed]** a ^cdevil, having sought that which was evil before God. **[Evil is worse than wickedness, for it endeavors to usurp power in the name of Satan.]**

18 And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable **[unquenchable lust]** forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. **[to bind them to himself]** Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die **[be cut off from God's presence]**, but ye shall be as God, **[Father and Mother]** knowing good and evil. **[the fruit is knowledge of their former glories. In this is a mystery.]**

19 And after Adam and Eve had ^apartaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth. **[condescended to a telestial earth.]**

20 And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the earth. **[The purpose to do this was to provide physical bodies for the first estate.]**

21 And the days of the children of men were prolonged **[longevity of life]**, according to the will of God, that they might repent **[turn their hearts to God]** while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state of probation, **[to see what we will do]** and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents. **[All mankind was on the same footing in that they came into this world separated from God. If they repent and come unto Him we will raise them up through the power of the Only Begotten. The transgression of their parents has vast implications.]**

22 And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed **[changed course from God's commandment]** he would not have fallen **[condescended to a lower sphere]**, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end. **[without progression in the estates]**

23 And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, **[without knowledge]** having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin. **[Knowledge can only be fully understood through the afflictions of the temporal world.]**

24 But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom **[foresight]** of him who knoweth all things. **[the beginning from the end]**

25 ^aAdam ^bfell that men might be; and men ^care, that they might have ^djoy. **[Adam and Eve condescended to this earth to open the door for our journey to become like God. The purpose of our creation is to become like our Heavenly Parents.]**

26 And the Messiah **[Our Anointed Redeemer]** cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. **[create the path for us to return to the Garden of Eden]** And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have

become free forever **[without constraint]**, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law **[according to the glory for which they are resurrected]** at the great and last day **[at the end of this worlds terrestrial existence, at the end of the Millennium]**, according to the commandments which God hath given.

27 Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh **[in this mortal sphere]**; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. **[Just enough is given to us to find our way in this lone and dreary world.]** And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself. **[Satan's view of misery is different from our own. His motivation is self gratification and dominion over others and promises such things to those who serve him, but it is a worm that can never be quenched. Therefore, the term "miserable" is very appropriate.]**

28 And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit; **[our holy Parents]**

29 And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh **[the carnal man]** and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, **[to take possession of our souls]** to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom. **[Satan's full purpose.]**

30 I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; **[time of testing]** and I have chosen the good part, according to the words of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

Questions and Comments:

About verse 11, you wrote:

"Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one [no balance and purpose]"
Could you expound on that more? To me, the "wherefore" ties the "compound in one" back to the eternal truth... I have read this verse dozens and dozens of time and never understood why all things must needs be a compound in one... or what that even means. I agree that this verse is heavy... and deep and I have always puzzled over the "must needs be a compound in one" part of this verse. Are you simply saying that verse 11 could be just as well written as "wherefore, all things must needs have no balance and purpose"? I just looked up a definition of "compound" and in chemistry a compound is a group of molecules that cannot be separated by physical means. I am glad I did this... that makes much sense "A substance consisting of atoms or ions of two or more different elements in definite proportions joined by chemical bonds into a molecule. The elements cannot be separated by physical means. Water, for example, is a compound having two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom per molecule." So, it is safe to say if there was not a divinely appointed opposition in all things... and I dare say that if evil did not exist... we could not be "good" and neither could be sanctified to any holy state. We need evil to exist in order for us to choose the path leading away from it? **[I read this as: if there were not opposition in all things, even on a molecular level, it would be a singularity with no balance or purpose. There are**

positive and negative forces always at odds with each other with one dominating the other. PR]

Your comment, “descended into Outer Darkness to make oaths with Lucifer” leads us to believe that Satan and Lucifer are two separate individuals. Is this your understanding? Also, is the creation story of Adam and Eve in the Garden to be taken literal or is it more symbolic? For example, was Adam “fashioned” from literal dirt AND was a rib incised from Adam and a body “fashioned” to create Eve? Or were Adam and Eve created from divine parents in the same way all humans are? Lastly, if they were born like every other human were Adam and Eve physical offspring of Heavenly Father and Heavenly Mother thereby making them both physical and spirit brother & sister? **[You saw that well. Yes, Satan and Lucifer are separate and at some point, Satan will assume that role. These are titles. Much of the Adam story is symbolic, yet there is a literal component as well. Adam and Eve were born to Heavenly Parents in the Garden. The rib is symbolic, the dirt or dust is also symbolic. The story is completely accurate, yet words are used that require revelation to unravel. In my translation of the Book of Moses you can learn more. PR]**

Can you help me understand this principle- there is an opposition in all things. [Everything has its mirror image in the universe.] Is it accurate to say it is ‘equal’ in its opposition? Such as the Yin and Yang? God of light and God of darkness, son of light and son of darkness? Elohim/ Jehovah, Lucifer/ Satan.

We are brought up thinking God is so much more powerful than Lucifer and this whole war in heaven is a sure thing, but I’ve always wondered if we are only hearing one side of the story. If there is true opposition in all things the “other side” would be just as powerful as God’s? Is this accurate?

And if so, will it always be an equal opposition, or is one side trying to overcome the other. In this war, will one side ever completely be victorious, or is that the plan? Growth only comes through opposition, therefor the ‘war’ will continue indefinitely. Thank you for doing these- **[It is equally opposite in the Universe, but both sides are completely separated except in the Telestial realm. Think of Outer Darkness as a mirror universe stacked beneath the Universe of light we observe, like a pancake dimension beneath us. In our world, depending upon the planet and the covenants made therein, good or evil presides. All covenant worlds, where Adam and Eve and their posterity are placed, are governed by Jehovah. Satan is given a sphere of influence and bounds he cannot cross. But there is a type of balance that is maintained between good and evil. Even amongst the planets, as with people, there are those that are claimed by Satan, those of God, and those that remain telestial forever. PR]**

Thank you. That makes sense. Do both sides then share telestial worlds, that the Elohim create or does the dark side have power to create worlds as well and start civilizations with Adams and Eves of their own? **[The pattern of salvation for the worlds is**

very similar to the souls of men. Some become perdition and some are exalted, but most remain telestial. In the realm of outer darkness Satan can create, but it is not a realm of glory. He can populate his worlds, but they are not holy and I wouldn't refer to them as an Adam and Eve. All creation in the Telestial realm is the creation of God (Elohim). PR]

Why does God call Satan 'Lucifer' in the temple? Is he already called both? I understand there is a hierarchy. Is it like Christ being called both the Father and the Son? **[It was Lucifer's plan given to the one that would be Satan. PR]**

Verse 20 tells us that Adam and Eve brought forth all of the children of the earth. This topic has always been confusing to me. Can you shed light on how this verse is true considering other people like giants, men of old and renown, or children of men? Thank you. **[I would refer you to the book A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations, which details what this means. PR]**

Future Lamanite Prophet – 2 Nephi 3:1-25

1 And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest sorrow did thy mother bear thee. **[Interesting that he named his two sons born to him in the wilderness Jacob and Joseph. Both are important key people in the House of Israel. Both carried the priesthood birthright and both were key servants to blessing all of God's servants. Lehi must have been heavily impressed with these two men as he studied the brass plates.]**

2 And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel. **[Lehi's son, Joseph, was not tormented by his brothers as his older brother Jacob was.]**

3 And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy seed shall not utterly be destroyed. **[Lehi knew that many of the Nephites, the seed of Nephi, would eventually be destroyed.]**

4 For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph. **[A fruitful bough, Genesis 49:22)]**

5 Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, **[The lineage of the Messiah would be through Judah.]** but a branch which was to be broken off, **[separated from the rest]** nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days **[our day]**, in the spirit of power **[in glory]**, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom. **[fullness of His Gospel]**

6 For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice **[special and unique calling]** seer unto the fruit of my loins. **[direct descendant of Joseph of Egypt]**

7 Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly **[He will be considered great among his associates even before he manifests himself as a servant of God.]** among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren **[Native Americans]**, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers. **[A true understanding of their history and birthright.]**

8 And I will give unto him **[this special servant]** a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him **[He will have the sealing power. See Helaman 10:5-7]**. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

9 And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

10 And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.

11 But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins **[Moses was God's prophet, this man shall be also a seer, for he shall see the past, present and the future.]**; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins— **[He will be the one to bring the fullness of the BofM to the Native Americans.]** and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them. **[The BofM won't be new, but the convincing of the fullness of the record (with the additional portions) will be new to them.]**

12 Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah **[descendants of the Jews]** shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins **[decendants of Joseph of Lehi]**, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord. **[Yet to come.]**

13 And out of weakness **[obscurity]** he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring **[gathering]** thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

14 And thus prophesied Joseph **[of Egypt]**, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded **[have no power]**; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

15 And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. **[This Lamanite prophet shall be called Joseph, after his own father. These men are alive today upon the earth. I have seen them.]** And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation. **[This single verse contains a mystery which will some day be revealed. The Lord's attention to detail is unfathomable.]**

16 Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses **[that the Israelites would inherit the promised land of Israel]**; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever. **[It must have been an incredible blessing for Lehi to know that part of Joseph's blessing from Abraham was a fulfillment of Lehi's role in bringing his posterity to the covenant land of America.]**

17 And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod **[priesthood]**; and I will give judgment unto him in writing **[sealed up]**. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him. **[This Joseph will be like unto Moses with a spokesman. He will shun the limelight. He will seem quite mysterious to those who hear of him.]**

18 And the Lord said unto me also: **[Mormon]** I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. **[Moroni]** And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it. **[Coming forth of the Book of Mormon.]**

19 And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom **[foresight]** should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins. **[Native Americans]** And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith. **[They will be moved by what they learn.]**

20 And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simpleness of their words.

21 Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

22 And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of old prophesy. **[Joseph of Egypt saw much concerning the posterity of Lehi. This record was with the original brass plates, but was not included in the Bible.]**

23 Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

24 And there shall rise up one mighty among them **[Indian Prophet named Joseph]**, who shall do much good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders **[sealing power]**, and do that thing which is great in the sight of God **[act according to every word given of the Spirit]**, unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren. **[One of the main gatherers of Israel in the last days.]**

25 And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen.

Questions and Comments:

The chapter heading for 2 Nephi 3 lists the latter day seer as Joseph Smith. if what you

are saying is correct (that it is actually a yet-to-be-revealed Lamanite prophet) how has that misinformation been permitted to remain in the Book of Mormon, and how did it get approved in the 1st place? Thanks! **[I can't answer who approved and how. It of course was not in the original manuscript or written by Joseph Smith. PR]**

Is the future Lamanite prophet a member of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints? If not, will he eventually be? Thanks! (And thanks for the beautiful truths on your website.) **[He is not LDS and will only be a member of the Church of the Firstborn, although it will not be a formally organized church as we know it. PR]**

Do you know what Native American tribe this Joseph is from? How can we recognize him? You called him them, are they a quorum? **[I am not permitted to say, but the tribe is not one that most would be familiar. He will be recognized because when he comes he will be the most revered of all modern Native American. PR]**

One would have to be forgiven for jumping to the conclusion that the Joseph referenced in 2 Ne, 3 was indeed Joseph Smith: "A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer / him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins / his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father... /...and I will make for him a spokesman (D&C 100:9 said that Sidney Rigdon would be a spokesman for Joseph). But I could never figure out how this fit Joseph Smith: "Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking..." Joseph Smith was known to be a great orator. Is there a reason that this description so closely resembles Joseph Smith, yet is referencing another great prophet to come? Is there some duality in the reference? **[The verses are very clear that this Joseph would be a descendant of Lehi. I think it is common for people to try and fit their own narratives into a box. PR]**

And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation. [This single verse contains a mystery which will some day be revealed. The Lord's attention to detail is unfathomable.] What a tease! Looking forward to learning what it means.

Thank you for all the time you take typing this and adding your comments in bold so that we may all learn so quickly! This has been an incredible help for me and I'm sure every other who has been mercifully led here to learn. Approximately how old was little Joseph, the son of Lehi, when Lehi gave him this blessing of knowledge? Verse 25 says he was little, I was wondering what age they considered "little" in that time? **[I believe he was under the age of ten. I don't know for sure. PR]**

Joseph the Lamanite Seer in our day, will he translate any of the plates himself? Or will

others do this work? **[Others will do that work. PR]**

Are you allowed to tell us if Joseph the Lamanite seer is currently a newborn, toddler, teen, young adult or adult currently? Does he yet know who he is? **[He is an adult. I am not sure if he knows his full mission yet. PR]**

“I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins;”

The fruits of the loins of Joseph of Egypt has often been considered those belonging to the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim, if that distinction is an accurate one. The Lamanite prophet’s principal role will be among the Native Americans, traditionally viewed as the Tribe of Manasseh. Are these heritages correct? What of the Tribe of Ephraim? **[The tribe of Ephraim in America came through Ishmael’s family. A mixed blood line comes through the Northern European lines. PR]**

Can you go into more detail about v. 18? The narrative flow is that Joseph of Egypt is referenced (v.16), then the Lord is quoted (v. 17) and then it appears that Lehi is speaking again to his son (see v. 22), but from your commentary it seems like its a reference to Mormon speaking? Am I understanding that correctly? **[Not that Mormon is speaking, but that he is referencing Mormon and Moroni, which are fruit of the loins of Joseph. PR]**

Is he part of the “hidden” people you have previously mentioned? The ones who asked to be kept that way from the world. **[I’m not certain who you are referring to. PR]**

I am sorry – I’m trying to remember where you had mentioned about these people so I could reference it for you. But I remember reading that they use rocks to help keep their fires hidden. Seemed to me like they were a hidden remnant living in Central America that will reveal themselves when it’s time. **[You are referring to the City of the Heavenly God. Yes, its location is unknown to the world. PR]**

Those who are called to be gatherers, what will they be doing? What does it mean to be a gatherer? **[I wrote much about that in the book A Witness of the End of Times in the chapter The Servants. They will be gathering the House of Israel. PR]**

Why is this prophecy so specific and descriptive of this particular servant of the last days while the prophecies of the Davidic Servant are comparatively so cryptic? **[Daniel and John spoke directly regarding the Davidic Servant. The BofM addresses the Joseph Servant because of his direct connection to their people. PR]**

Will you be doing a translation of the Book of Daniel? **[I have done some, but have not released it. PR]**

Joseph is a TITLE, correct? **[I'm not aware of it being a title. It has a Hebrew meaning and has been passed down in honor of him, but I haven't inquired about it. PR]**

I hope it's not too personal to ask, but have you ever inquired of Joseph Smith in your meetings with him what he thinks of the conception in the Church that it is he who is referenced in this chapter? **[Yes, I have, and the narrative or history is greatly flawed. I have only shared a small portion of these conversations, but some of it is included in the book A Witness of the Temporal Dispensation in the chapter on Joseph Smith. (PR)]**

Are you familiar with the Mentinah Archives and its similar prophecies about key spiritual leadership roles that Native Americans will fulfill? **[I am familiar but do not study those writings. I tend to not study anything at this point unless I am directed to do it. PR]**

Is this Lamanite prophet the head of the 7th dispensation?
Is he the mighty one spoken of in D&C 85:7? **[He is not. PR]**

In verse 15 it says "...And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation." Can you comment on what "the thing" refers to exactly? BoM writings? Other writings? Something else? **[It is a conglomeration of events that lead to the conversion of his people. PR]**

The Psalm of Nephi – 2 Nephi 4:1-35

1 And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt. **[These are not included in our current Bible.]**

2 For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. **[Perhaps only Adam, and the words of the Brother of Jared.]** And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass. **[The previous chapter, Lehi's references to Joseph, was regarding their posterity.]**

3 Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my firstborn, I would that ye should give ear unto my words. **[Only his grandchildren of Laman.]**

4 For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

5 But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.

6 Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents. **[a beautiful merciful act of the Lord]**

7 Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever. **[This was an act of faith on Lehi's part, he received revelation to this and acted upon it.]**

8 And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.

9 And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daughters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed. **[Lehi truly loved his children and grandchildren.]**

10 And it came to pass that when my father had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.

11 And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou, and thy seed; for thou shalt inherit the land like unto thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou shalt be blessed in all thy days. **[A testament to the loyalty of Sam. Not much is spoken about Sam in the record, but he trusted in his brother Nephi and lived righteously.]**

12 And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried. **[He grew older and had he not given the blessings when he did, it would have been difficult to do it.]**

13 And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord. **[Nephi had confronted them regarding their actions, which were sinful in the sight of God.]**

14 For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my father, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates; for a more history part are written upon mine other plates.

15 And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scriptures, and my heart pondereth them **[Nephi continually thinks upon the words written by the prophets and the revelations.]**, and writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children. **[Nephi does much writing after reaching the promised land.]**

16 Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard. **[After someone has conversed with angels and the Lord, it is difficult to have a single day go by where you do not ponder upon what you have seen and heard. It never leaves you.]**

17 Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities. **[This is such an honest reflection of Nephi's heart. Our bodies are weak and it is a frustration that we cannot always be perfect in every thought and desire. If anyone thinks that a prophet is perfect in every moment they do not understand. The Lord knows this too. I have often expressed my frustration to the Lord for my weakness and he he simply smiles and assures me that he understands. It is only through Him that we can be made clean. He chooses us to do His work according to our faith, which is the desire we have to seek His revelations and to act upon them.]**

18 I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me. **[Every righteous servant is accompanied by familiar spirits of the Adversary which tempt us according to our weakness.]**

19 And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted. **[These spirits will remind us that we are weak and unworthy, yet we must trust in the Lord.]**

20 My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep. **[Remember what the Lord has done for you and why you are of great worth.]**

21 He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh. **[The baptism of fire you received.]**

22 He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me. **[The protection from both physical and spiritual enemies.]**

23 Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night-time. **[Answers to prayers via revelation, visions, and dreams.]**

24 And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me. **[The gifts of the Spirit, including the ministering of angels.]**

25 And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them. **[Nephi ascended to the Throne for his full Second Comforter, Calling and Election Made Sure.]**

26 O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions? **[If the battle is won by Him and for me, why should I sorrow?]**

27 And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy? **[Nephi does a serious self reflection of his own weaknesses of the flesh. All men and women have weakness because of the flesh. This can include food, sleep, laziness, anger, jealousy, sexual appetites, bitterness, false judgment, impatience, and an endless host of appetites. However, the Lord knows our weakness and looks upon the heart as the seat of our desires. As we work toward harnessing**

these desires and temper of our flesh, we allow the Spirit to work upon us and we find peace to our souls.]

28 Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul. **[Overcoming sin is like awakening from a slumber. We rise up, leaving behind the sin and get to work. It is comfortable to stay where we are, but the Lord is calling YOU to awaken.]**

29 Do not anger again because of mine enemies. **[Don't allow others to determine your peace.]** Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions. **[Do not lose faith.]**

30 Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation. **[Praise God during your afflictions, remember His promises to you.]**

31 O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin? **[Ask the Lord for that which you desire.]**

32 May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! **[When we fully submit to the Lord's will for us Satan has no more power over us.]** O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, **[open the gate of revelation]** that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!

33 O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness! **[fill me with the Holy Ghost]** O Lord, wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of mine enemy. **[Stumbling blocks are often there to teach us or because we did not hearken to the Spirit. This may be part of the process the Lord gives us to learn faith. It doesn't necessarily mean we have sinned, yet it is appropriate to ask the Lord to remove them as we do His work.]**

34 O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that putteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm. **[This is the single most important advice that a prophet of God will give you from any of the previous six dispensations – Trust in the Lord.]**

35 Yea, I know that God will give liberally **[without restraint]** to him that asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss **[true intentions]**; therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen. **This chapter is a good synopsis of how Nephi feels about himself and the process of coming to know the Lord. If we can honestly assess ourselves as Nephi, we will have a very realistic view of what it takes to have a prophetic relationship with the Lord as he did.**

The entire Book of Mormon is a series of witnesses of different prophets sharing their experiences for how they came to know the Lord. The words of Nephi by themselves carry a complete blueprint for how to come unto Christ. The forthcoming witnesses simply add upon it.

Questions and Comments:

So beautiful and so relate-able, you can't help but love this man, what an example! I wonder how old was Nephi as he wrote this? I also wonder what he was like as a father and husband, I imagine him being very open with his family as he sought to encourage them as they followed their own similar paths of growth and awakening?

My wife and I viewed the new release of the Book of Mormon last night and it reminded me all this chapter in 2 Nephi.

18 I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me. **[Every righteous servant is accompanied by familiar spirits of the Adversary which tempt us according to our weakness. PR]**

Question: What exactly is a familiar spirit? I thought I knew; but can a familiar spirit be related to you (as in a past ancestor,) and be adversarial? **[A familiar spirit is one assigned by the adversary to take you down a path that will lead you away from the Lord. They are familiar because the temptations and thoughts used against you have a familiarity to them. They seem righteous, yet are not. These spirits appeal to one's pride, comfort, and false traditions. They are the most dangerous and are the most common amongst the servants of the Lord. The Lord will allow them to continue to tempt you until the day you die. However, in the process you come to know the Lord's true voice if you lean on Him on not another. PR]**

People of Nephi – 2 Nephi 5:1-34

1 Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

2 But behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

3 Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people. **[For many years this was the constant bitterness that festered in their hearts, given to them by the Adversary.]**

4 Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

5 And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me **[by revelation]**, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

6 Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words. **[There were fewer that went with Nephi than remained with Laman and Lemuel.]**

7 And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

8 And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

9 And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

10 And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things, according to the law of Moses.

11 And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

12 And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written. **[Laman accused Nephi of stealing what he considered to be his and taught this to his posterity.]**

13 And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.

14 And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.

15 And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

16 And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

17 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands. **[The land of Nephi is in the area of the state of Tennessee.]**

18 And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

19 And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they **[the Lamanites]** sought to take away my life.

20 Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.

21 And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint **[cannot change their mind]**; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them. **[This is both physical**

and spiritual in its meaning. How this physically occurred, I do not know. I will need to ask the Lord.]

22 And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.

23 And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done. **[It occurred not gradually.]**

24 And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety **[cheating and stealing]**, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey. **[did not plant crops]**

25 And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.

26 And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate **[set apart and bless]** Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests **[in the temple]** and teachers over the land of my people.

27 And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness. **[Industrious, keeping the commandments of God, and no poor among them.]**

28 And thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem. **[Nephi has been in the promised land just over 20 years. Almost fifty years of age.]**

29 And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates, which I had made, of my people thus far.

30 And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of thy people. **[These plates contain much of what was included in the Book of Mormon.]**

31 Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the commandments of the Lord, went and made these plates upon which I have engraven these things.

32 And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God. And if my people are pleased with the things of God they will be pleased with mine engravings which are upon these plates.

33 And if my people desire to know the more particular part of the history of my people they must search mine other plates.

34 And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed away, and we had already had wars and contentions with our brethren.

Nephi is a unique prophet in the Lord in that he was much like Moses. His leadership and revelations were critical to the family's safe arrival to the Promised Land. He wrote much of the history and the revelations which had a profound impact upon his people. He also organized their cities, industry, temple worship, preparations for defense, and continually admonished his people to keep the commandments of the Lord.

What was it about Nephi that made him such a powerful instrument in the hands of the Lord? First, he continually cried unto the Lord in behalf of his brethren. He sought their welfare. The Lord blessed him with critical revelation. But where Nephi excelled was he never wasted time in implementing what the Lord instructed him to do, no matter how

unconventional or extreme – he took action! There is much we can learn from Nephi’s example.

Questions and Comments:

I have some questions. How did the Nephites look like? Like Caucasians? Or Red Indians? How did the Lamanites look like? And what was the difference between the two groups in skin colour? **[The Nephites reminded me of fair skinned Polynesians. PR]**

We live in TN. A few years ago my husband was hired to build a display for TVA (TN Valley Authority) on their history. He came across some interesting information about a “Tennessee Temple” being buried under water, along with other Native American lands, when TVA rerouted water when they created the Tellico dam. That’s in east TN. There are also the Pinson Mounds in West TN and The Old Stone Fort ruins where there was supposedly bones belonging to giant people that were found. That area is more middle TN. Are you able to pinpoint a little more the area in TN where Nephi and his people were? **[I just know it was that area. PR]**

My grandfather told me years ago that we had Native American ancestry via the Unami tribe. There is a tribe called the Lenni Lenape which has 3 factions and they are known as the Delaware’s that spread throughout the Great Lake areas, NY, PA, etc. I William Penn signed a treaty with the Lenni Lenape and his description states that they were light skin not be likened unto what he stated they appeared like him. I’m super new to genealogy but WOWZERS, there i has been some remarkable spiritual connections. Blows me away every time the Lord allows me to seek and receive what HE feels I need to know. So humbling!

I meant to say William Penn stated they looked Appeared like himself meaning Caucasian. There’s more to this but I can’t go into detail.

Any idea if the black skin was temporary? **[Same transliteration as skin of darkness, which Native Americans have today. PR]**

And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed away, and we had already had wars and contentions with our brethren.” With both groups initially having such small numbers, and with Nephi clearly the most knowledgeable of swords and warfare of the Nephites, I wonder if he faced...and had to kill Laman or Lemuel in battle. That would be terrible to be forced to kill family members in war, but wouldn’t be the first time... **[That would be tragic, but I’m not aware of that. PR]**

Redemption of the Jews – 2 Nephi 6:1-18

1 The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

2 Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things. **[Jacob had been set apart by Nephi, after the order of the priesthood, to be a priest unto the people. His ordination was from before the foundation of this world, and the Lord revealed Himself to Jacob when he was still in his youth.]**

3 Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world. **[The people of Nephi showed signs early on that concerned both Nephi and Jacob of their propensity for sin.]**

4 And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God. **[A deep love for Isaiah was fostered by Lehi amongst his sons. Both Lehi and Nephi included commentary in their writings and so will Jacob.]**

5 And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

6 And now, these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles **[power given unto the Gentiles]**, and set up my standard to the people **[point of gathering]**; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

7 And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers **[You will be helped by kingdoms and principalities.]**; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet **[honor thee]**; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they **[House of Israel]** shall not be ashamed **[not disappointed]** that wait for me. **[Isaiah 49:22-23]**

8 And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.

9 Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again **[the Jews]**. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me. **[Very specific prophecy regarding the Messiah's way of death.]**

10 And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted. **[Again, they shall be dispersed from their homeland. (70 AD destruction under Titus)]**

11 Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish **[The Jewish Diaspora]**, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated;

nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance. **[This has been occurring since about 1917, over 100 years.]**

12 And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things. **[There are many Christians that have allied themselves with the Jews and the commitment to their returning to Israel. This is prophetic to our day.]**

13 Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet **[honor thee]**; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed **[shall not be disappointed]**. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah. **[Jews are still waiting for their King Messiah to save them.]**

14 And behold, according to the words of the prophet **[Isaiah]**, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him. **[This is a reference to the final battle of Armageddon when He shall appear to them on the Mount of Olives.]**

15 And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire **[from volcanic and heavenly fire]**, and by tempest **[storms]**, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds **[war]**, and by pestilence **[disease]**, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel. **[Some of the disasters that shall plague the earth at His coming.]**

16 For shall the prey **[blessings]** be taken from the mighty **[faithful]**, or the lawful captive delivered? **[or the guilty be unjudged?]**

17 But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee— **[the prisoners of the Adversary shall be released, and the victims of the evil enemy shall be delivered; for I will fight for those who fight with thee, and I will save thy children.]**

18 And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh **[And I will cause those that oppress you to destroy themselves]** and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine **[fall from their own demise]**; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob. **[Isaiah 49:24-26]**

Questions and Comments:

In v. 11, it seems to state that WHEN the Jews come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they will be gathered. Agreed that since the early 20th century, the gathering to Israel has been occurring, but how would you describe the current Jewish belief in the Redeemer? It seems through scripture that the Jews will not believe in the Redeemer (Christ) until they physically see Him after he saves them; or does the Davidic servant

bring them to Christ prior to the Mount of Olives meeting? **[The Jews today have more knowledge about Jesus Christ than ever before. There is a movement among them of Messianic Christians. However, in this scripture I believe it is referring to their knowledge regarding the “Redeemer of Zion” The Jews look forward to a time of peace that they believe will come through this Messiah. I don’t think to say a “knowledge of their Redeemer” is the same as saying they will believe in Jesus Christ. There will be a moment of conversion when He comes upon the Mount of Olives. PR]**

Is this to say that they will see a mighty servant of the Lord as their Redeemer and Deliverer, when this (Davidic) servant saves them from physical destruction (similar to what they were expecting 2000 years ago)? Then will this same servant ultimately point them to the Lord as the one who will save them from spiritual destruction? **[He will preserve them for a time, and then it will appear as if all hope is lost. More importantly, he will lead them toward salvation. PR]**

Isaiah 50 – Christ – 2 Nephi 7:1-11

1 Yea, for thus saith the Lord: Have I put thee away **[told you to leave]**, or have I cast thee off forever? For thus saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mother’s divorcement? **[Where is the proof of your broken covenant?]** To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? **[How did I release you?]** Yea, to whom have I sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away. **[You broke the covenant.]**

2 Wherefore, when I came, there was no man **[no man worthy]**; when I called, yea, there was none to answer. O house of Israel, is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem, or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they die because of thirst. **[can offer victory over Satan’s kingdom, eternal blessings]**

3 I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering. **[I cover the knowledge of Heaven from their view, and I remove their glory.]**

4 The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season unto thee, O house of Israel. When ye are weary he waketh morning by morning. **[He shall be taught by the Spirit and know the Law.]** He waketh mine ear to hear as the learned.

5 The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back. **[Will not turn away from His mission.]**

6 I gave my back to the smiter, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair **[of His beard]**. I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

7 For the Lord God will help me **[Yeshua]**, therefore shall I not be confounded. Therefore have I set my face like a flint **[with resolution]**, and I know that I shall not be ashamed **[confounded]**.

8 And the Lord is near, and he justifieth me **[fulfills the law]**. Who will contend with me **[prevent Christ?]** Let us stand together **[in battle]**. Who is mine adversary? Let him come near me, and I **[Christ]** will smite him with the strength of my mouth.

9 For the Lord God **[The Father]** will help me. And all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up. **[shall go and be forgotten]**

10 Who is among you that feareth **[listens to]** the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, **[or]** that walketh in darkness and hath no light?

11 Behold all ye that kindle fire **[seek God]**, that compass yourselves about with sparks **[seek spiritual awakening]**, walk in the light of your fire **[but walk in the spirit of your own making]** and in the sparks which ye have kindled **[your own knowledge]**. This shall ye **[receive]** have of mine hand—ye shall lie down in sorrow. **[find only sorrow]**

It is interesting to me how clearly Isaiah described the scenario and optics of how the Messiah would reveal Himself to the Jews. He would be rejected, like the scapegoat of the temple. His hair plucked from his cheek and spat upon and shamed. And all those who sought the light of God shall be left with nothing. I can sense through Isaiah's words a great sorrow and lamentation of the Lord for how the House of Israel has rejected His covenant to them. This is truly a sorrowful chapter of Isaiah.

Questions and Comments:

Thank you for posting your insights – they have been helpful in my study of the Book of Mormon. In your comments above, it is clear that Isaiah was referencing the Savior in these verses. I have read other commentaries that say they refer to the Davidic Servant. Is it possible that there is a dual meaning to these verses or is this strictly referring to Christ? **[I know there are Isaiah scriptures that are specific to the Servant; however, this is how I read them. PR]**

Verse 11 seems to apply to our day, too. What is “the spirit of your own making”? How do we avoid this pitfall? **[I believe it means to lean on the understanding of scholars and those who are placed upon a pedestal because of position and authority. I would never put my trust in the arm of flesh. PR]**

Isaiah 51, 52:1-2 – The Servants – 2 Nephi 8:1-25

1 Hearken unto me **[listen carefully]**, ye that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged. **[from the source from where you were created]**

2 Look unto Abraham, your father, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him. **[made covenants with him]**

3 For the Lord shall comfort **[come to]** Zion, he will comfort all her waste places **[restore all her ruined places]**; and he will make her wilderness like Eden **[a place close to God]**, and her desert like the garden **[temple]** of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody **[song]**.

4 Harken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me **[hear the spirit of my words]**, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light **[standard]** for the people.

5 My righteousness **[perfect plan]** is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arm **[power]** shall judge the people. The isles **[branches of Israel]** shall wait upon me **[seek my blessing]**, and on mine arm shall they trust.

6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished. **[at the Lord's coming]**

7 Harken unto me, ye that know righteousness **[my ways]**, the people in whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach **[rude words]** of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings **[accusations]**.

8 For the moth shall eat them up **[they shall go away]** like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

9 Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord **[those who bear the power of the Lord]**; awake as in the ancient days **[days of Enoch]**. Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab **[overcame the world]**, and wounded the dragon **[defeated Satan]**?

10 Art thou not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed **[God's people]** to pass over?

9 Awake, awake! Put on strength, those who will bear the power of the Lord; awake as in the days of Enoch. Are you not the one who overcame pride and the world to defeat Satan? **[A call to the 144,000]**

10 Are you not the ones who has dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that has made the depths of the sea a way for God's people to pass over? **[This has been done by 4th estate in the past (Enoch, Moses) and will be done by the Lord's servants in the future.]**

11 Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall flee away. **[gathering of Zion]**

12 I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you. Behold, who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man **[Why should you be afraid of men?]**, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass **[shall be resurrected]**?

13 And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and **[and still you]** hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor?

14 The captive exile hasteneth **[those in spirit prison await the day]**, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit **[be damned]**, nor that his bread should fail **[his eternal blessing be withheld]**.

15 But I am the Lord thy God, whose waves roared **[whose power is mighty]**; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

16 And I have put my words in thy mouth **[given you my laws]**, and have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand **[watched over you]**, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, thou art my people. **[the purpose of this earth, to save the seed of Adam, the House of Israel]**

17 Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury—thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out [**you have experienced a great tribulation**]—

18 And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth [**None other kingdoms have come to your defense.**]; neither that taketh her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up [**of all kingdoms that have been**].

19 These two sons [**Two servants (prophets)**] are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee—thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword—and by whom shall I comfort thee? [**And by them shall I not be with thee?**]

20 Thy sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are [**shall bring**] full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God. [**refer to Revelation 11**]

21 Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, and not with wine:

22 Thus saith thy Lord, the Lord and thy God pleadeth the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling [**cursing**], the dregs of the cup [**tribulation**] of my fury; thou shalt no more drink [**experience**] it again.

23 But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; who have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we may go over [**harm you**]—and thou hast laid thy body as the ground and as the street to them that went over. [**And your bodies laid on the ground in the street and people shall walk over them.**]

24 Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city; for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised [**those who are not of God**] and the unclean.

25 Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck [**oppression**], O captive daughter of Zion. [**captive people of Zion who have departed from my ways**]

This is a direct prophecy of Isaiah regarding the two Servants that were spoken by John in Revelation 11, who will fight against the oppressors of Israel in the coming battle of Armageddon. These men will include the Davidic Servant, and the Lamanite Prophet. Both will be destroyed in the streets of Jerusalem by an explosive weapon. The enemies will celebrate for three days followed by the two prophet's miraculous resurrection. These scriptures also refer to those who will assist them, the 144k who must still awaken to their calling and election. The words of Isaiah included in the Book of Mormon are there for these servants, to call them out of their slumber.

Questions and Comments:

I cannot stop thinking about a certain prophet who is not known by a large part of the church. The Lord gave me a name and I ran with it and now I am hearing him being spoken of more by church leaders. Had I not felt impressed to “know” him, I’m not sure I would have looked outside the standard works to an apocryphal source referenced by Joseph Smith. My testimony of HIM grows stronger by the day!

Are the 144K spread out throughout the world on different continents or are they only

found mostly in or near the United States? To make my question more direct, are there servants in Africa? **[I believe they are spread out, including Africa. There may be higher numbers from certain areas, I do not know. PR]**

Do you have a response to the comment about a “certain prophet”? Do you know who is being referenced? **[I’m not sure who she is referring to. (PR)]**

Jacob Reveals Truth – 2 Nephi 9:1-54

1 And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things **[in Isaiah]** that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—

2 That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance **[Israel]**, and shall be established in all their lands of promise. **[including America]**

3 Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children. **[our posterity]**

4 For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God. **[Much interest amongst the Nephites regarding life after death.]**

5 Yea, I know that ye know that in the body **[flesh]** he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth **[appropriate that]** the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him. **[This is a very succinct explanation of the Atonement. By our willingness to be subject unto Him, He can lift us to something greater than ourselves.]**

6 For as death hath passed upon all men **[separation from God]**, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection **[rising up in glory]**, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall **[Adam and Eve’s descent from glory]**; and the fall came by reason of transgression **[partaking of the forbidden knowledge before permission was given]**; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord. **[could no longer be in His presence]**

7 Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite **[immeasurable]** atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption **[stained soul]** could not put on incorruption **[become perfect]**. Wherefore, the first judgment **[separation]** which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration **[telestial]**. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more. **[remain physical, to die]**

8 O the wisdom **[foresight]** of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more. **[subject to Satan]**

9 And our spirits must have become like unto him **[without light]**, and we become devils **[dark spirits]**, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled **[seduced]** our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light **[angel of truth]**, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness. **[One of his foremost activities amongst the children of men.]**

10 O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit. **[This world is indeed like a monster, that it is cruel and fearful, yet God's grace provides a way to overcome both death and the grasp of this monster's grip upon us.]**

11 And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave. **[The resurrection of Christ releases the soul from the temporal confines of this telestial world.]**

12 And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel. **[For the spirit to be united with its bodily form in perfection and light is to be resurrected. This is not how many perceive, thinking that their actual physical body is reformed from the dust of the earth. No. It is a perfected body of spirit in the glory of our resurrection.]**

13 O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God **[The spirits that inhabit the First Heaven within the Nexus or Spirit World.]** must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect. **[This is a way to describe that the spirit will be reunited with the senses of the flesh, but with perfection.]**

14 Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed with purity, yea, even with the robe of righteousness. **[The resurrection brings a heightened awareness of the senses that far exceeds the limits of the physical body.]**

15 And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life **[Final Resurrection]**, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God. **[They shall be divided and separated from those who do not inherit their glory.]**

16 And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous

still **[Obtained Eternal Life]**, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still **[Perdition]**; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever and has no end. **[A fair description of Outer Darkness.]**

17 O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled. **[The design and purpose of the Heavens and their different glories is meant to help all things fill the measure of their creation. A beautiful symphony of mercy, justice, and grace.]**

18 But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever. **[These are the seed of Adam, the House of Israel, and those adopted from the seed of men (gentiles) who have accepted the Everlasting Covenant of the Lord.]**

19 O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

20 O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and there is not anything save he knows it.

21 And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam. **[He suffered the pains of sin in all its forms from those to whom he saves. This sacrifice enables Him to be our Father, the Redeemer of our souls in a more perfect resurrection.]**

22 And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day. **[Light attracts light, and shares that light with all that come to it. There has to be a spark and source in order to lift to a higher level. This is the power of the Only Begotten, according to the word of the Father.]**

23 And he commandeth all men that they must repent **[come to Him]**, and be baptized in his name **[commit to be reborn in His image]**, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

24 And if they will not repent and believe in his name **[broken heart, contrite spirit]**, and be baptized in his name **[A witness to the Father]**, and endure to the end **[Endure until you receive the HG and stay true.]**, they must be damned **[without progression]**; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.

25 Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him. **[Those who do not have the law are not condemned to Outer Darkness. See Moroni 8:22]**

26 For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell,

and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.

27 But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth **[do not give heed]** them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!

28 O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.

29 But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God. **[I see this much amongst those who consider themselves spiritually enlightened. Always learning new ideas, hoping for a more inclusive understanding of other religions and philosophies, yet never learning to rely upon the fullness of the atonement of Christ.]**

30 But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their god. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also. **[A good measure of what you worship is where your treasure lies. What is the most important thing in your life?]**

31 And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish. **[Will not listen to the Spirit of God.]**

32 Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also. **[Will not look to the Lord, and choose not to see what is before them.]**

33 Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day. **[Those whose hearts are unclean, desiring that which is unholy and depraved.]**

34 Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell. **[Seek to change the truth to suit their needs.]**

35 Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die. **[his spirit shall be thrust down to hell]**

36 Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell. **[Often those who commit whoredoms possess a lying spirit as well. Justifying their actions according to the philosophies of men. A whoredom is any sexual sin that makes us unclean spiritually.]**

37 Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them. **[To place any person or thing above God.]**

38 And, in fine **[finally]**, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins. **[To “die in sin” is to not repent while in this life, to not seek the Lord’s mercy while in the flesh, though you were fully aware of the gift offered.]**

39 O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal. **[This is a very good way to contrast the two. “Carnally-minded” is to be focused upon the pleasures of the flesh and to disregard spiritual things. “Spiritually-minded” is to seek after the Lord and the gifts of the Spirit.]**

40 O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken. **[I suspect that there will be those who will be offended by how I translated the 9 woes in the proceeding verses. It is hard to be introspective as we honestly assess ourselves. The key to overcoming sin is to fully submit our heart to God, seeking only Him as we trust in the blessings He has promised.]**

41 O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name. **[This is an important scripture. Anyone who claims to hold the keys that make the case that only they can grant you access to God are not truthful, " . . . he employeth no servant there." There is no single individual that stands between us and the Lord. There are messengers and servants that can assist us through ordinances, but it is not the Lord's way to deny access to Him according to any rules of men to determine your worthiness. If you were alone on a deserted island and had nothing but the Book of Mormon to help you, it would be all you need to find the Lord. If you understood the Gospel, you would need nothing more than faith in Christ to lead you to Him. Pray for a personal understanding of what this means. I am not condemning the value of church and those who speak to us by the power of revelation. We just need to be vigilant not to make any person an idol in our heart.]**

42 And whoso knocketh **[ask in faith]**, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them. **[This is a formula for receiving revelation. Do not seek your answers from books, seek directly from the Lord.]**

43 But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints. **[Don't aspire to be a gospel scholar. Aspire to have a relationship with God.]**

44 O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; **[A symbolic act to show he has done all he can to help you, he is clean of any guilt.]** I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

45 O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

46 Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy

are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my transgressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.

47 But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin? **[Jacob is preparing to specifically identify their sins.]**

48 Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.

49 Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart delighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God. **[The act of praising is a sign that our hearts are right with God and we are clothed in righteousness. It is near impossible to praise if we are not repentant. Remember, praising the Lord, exclaiming our gratitude and love is a blessing to us in that it opens the windows of Heaven. It pleases the Lord in that it creates a conduit that He can bless us.]**

50 Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.

51 Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Harken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness. **[Using the metaphor of hunger and thirst, and to labor for that which will truly benefit you – this is the kind of faith that brings one to Christ.]**

52 Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice. **[Prayer is the key to opening the relationship we need with the Lord. Learn how to pray continually.]**

53 And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men **[This particular statement is filled with such nuance. Jacob refers to the Lord’s “condescensions” in this world. A condescension is when God comes down from His glory to walk among men. In this verse Jacob reveals an understanding which is not fully revealed in scripture. God has walked among men many times more than what is revealed to us. This is a mystery. In the future I will share more of what I know of this.]**; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel. **[This is an important message of the prophets of the Book of Mormon and they continually remind their people of the Lord’s mercy to preserve them through all generations.]**

54 And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.

Questions and Comments:

What is the best way to get to the most meaningful deepest source of gratitude that flows from mortal to God? I have been there and it is sublime. and I long to be there with every prayer. Is it possible to have that river of gratitude flow from your heart every private prayer? I can't get there every time. Not even by asking. I am like maybe once a week/ten days I get there and its not enough... Your first book mentions it is an essential component to meaningful mighty prayer but doesnt indicate a means to get there.

[There are different levels of praise. First level is to simply express gratitude to God with all your heart, including the many blessings that come to your mind. Second, if you exercise more faith, is to pray in tongues. I usually do this after I have asked for forgiveness and bathed in the light. At some point during the process there comes a baptism of fire which fully cleans and prepares a person to be in the presence of God. I know that sounds like a lot, but the Lord can help you learn the best process for you. PR]

And I forgot to comment on vs 53. I had not notice condescensions was plural! There is a ton of mystery there. What a sobering thing to bring to light.

How does this compare to Mosiah 15, there are many great mysteries in that chapter. Can't wait for you to get there. **[There are many chapters I am looking forward to commenting upon. I haven't come to a chapter yet that I thought was uninteresting. However, this BofM project is not as engaging to most who follow this blog as before. Perhaps there are many who are offended that I have interpreted things different than their own suppositions. PR]**

I have a question about not seeking answers in books. I have been surprised at how often when I go to the Lord with questions that He brings a book or an article into my life which either answers my question or gives me insight. So maybe if we are directed to read something it is an appropriate way to get answers, but we shouldn't seek learning for its own sake. Is that what you are saying. **[We should certainly read books. I'm sorry if it sounded this way. The Lord has taught me to not lean upon the understanding of others, but to come to Him directly for the answers. The kind of books that are the most dangerous are those that are written to interpret scripture. (even my own writings) These are dangerous to those who do not seek confirmation from the Lord. If you read something and it makes sense to you and feels good, that is not a confirmation of its truthfulness. I remember several years ago receiving the revelation that I was to study Isaiah. I was overwhelmed with inadequacy. I borrowed at least a dozen books from the greatest scholars I could find, and laid them out as I prepared to engage my study. The Lord told me to put them all away. He said to go verse by verse and write as the spirit directed me. I was very anxious to be sure. When I was finished (within only a few days) I was very curious on a couple of parts how correct I was. I literally knew nothing about Hebrew translations or some of Isaiah's cryptic words. I checked a couple of these words against a famous scholar's website and was surprised at how the Lord had helped me. We each need to receive our own**

revelations from the Lord. I would suggest praying to Him regarding what I have written, and then go back to your scriptures. Read through a chapter with fresh eyes and ask the Lord to help you to see it as He would have you see it. It is a powerful experience. PR]

I find them very fascinating, that would be too bad for them if they get offended, I know I don't want to miss out on the light that comes from these interpretations. Today for my morning reading I read Mosiah 15, and it was incredible. But you are right all chapters are amazing.

[Perhaps you should look at learning as this: do not seek your answers from books, seek the questions to ask the Lord from books among other things, and then you will be led to the answers through Him. PR]

Vs 42... this morning I was thinking about casting "these things" away. Jacob seems to condemn people who have riches. So does the Lord. and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them. These things are the chains that tie us to our abundance? Or is it all our wealth? He doesn't seem to want us to not have sufficient for our needs but to care for those in need. Be willing to walk away from everything if He requires it? How do you view what "these things" are? Thanks for the insight on gratitude the other day. It helped. **[I see it as a combination of the three: leaning, wisdom of men, and riches. These can easily be a stumbling block to coming to the Lord because it leads to pride. However, as you stated, giving away any riches should be done according to what the Lord requires. Riches in themselves are not evil. I can think of many scriptural individuals who had riches, yet were servants of the Lord. I think we know the difference. Thank you for the comment. PR]**

Thank you for opening up 2 Nephi 9 in a way that I have never considered before. Your insights into the BofM verses so far have given me great fodder for prayer and for that I am truly grateful and look forward to more. I do have some questions on some of what you have written on this post. 1. You said, "there must needs be a power of resurrection [rising up in glory]". [For the spirit to be united with its bodily form in perfection and light is to be resurrected. This is not how many perceive, thinking that their actual physical body is reformed from the dust of the earth. No. It is a perfected body of spirit in the glory of our resurrection.] Your definition of resurrection is different from what is taught. Maybe I am misunderstanding what you are saying. Can you clarify? If during the resurrection our physical body is not "reformed" then why are the "graves opened"? And likewise Christ's body was missing from the tomb. What then happens to the physical body at resurrection? **[Those are two separate questions. The graves are opened in that they live again in a body of light (Which is more dense, permanent, and glorious than a physical body). This doesn't mean that the grave literally opens up and people step out of their caskets. The second question is regarding the Resurrection of Christ. His**

resurrection is different than what the vast number of people will experience. His body was changed into a tabernacle of light and glory. It was resurrected, and yet he was able to maintain the marks of His suffering as a witness. The physical body was “replaced” for lack of a better word. It no longer existed in a physical form. PR]

2. [The spirits that inhabit the First Heaven within the Nexus or Spirit World.] Can you elaborate on the word “Nexus”? Is this merely another name for the Spirit World or does it have broader meaning? **[The Nexus is what it is called in that realm. PR]**

3. “...yet never learning to rely upon the fullness of the atonement of Christ.” Can you elaborate on why you used the word “fullness” here. Are we disposed to relying upon only a “portion” of the atonement? What is the “fullness”? **[Those without the law are saved by the mercy of God by means of the Atonement. The fullness of the Atonement saves one spiritually as they receive the fullness of the Gospel, the Holy Ghost, and receive Eternal Life. PR]**

4. [Prayer is the key to opening the relationship we need with the Lord. Learn how to pray continually.] Can you give examples on how you “pray continually”? **[To wrap ourselves with virtue, charity, and be in tune with the Spirit of the Lord. This often leads to an ongoing conversation with God throughout the day as we are led by the Spirit. PR]**

5. 53 And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men [This particular statement is filled with such nuance. Jacob refers to the Lord’s “condescensions” in this world. A condescension is when God comes down from His glory to walk among men. In this verse Jacob reveals an understanding which is not fully revealed in scripture. God has walked among men many times more than what is revealed to us. This is a mystery. In the future I will share more of what I know of this.] Wow, ok, so this is heavy stuff. What is your understanding of “condescensions”? Does it include mere visitations from heavenly beings to Earth like angels, or is it more specific to exalted beings who condescend to live a mortal existence? **[Both, but a condescension is to walk amongst temporal beings in a body concealing their glory. PR]**

To condescend must you first be a 4th estate being or higher? **[Yes. PR]**

When you say, “God has walked among men many times” do you mean he has ta lived multiple mortal lives in this cycle of creation (Earth) or do you mean a single mortal existence during multiple prior cycles of creation (prior “Earths”)? **[I have not given permission to discuss that. PR]** Thank you for sharing your personal insights into these scriptures. It gives a perspective of the scriptures that makes them come alive

53 And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men [This particular statement is filled with such nuance. Jacob refers to the Lord’s “condescensions” in this world. A condescension is when God comes

down from His glory to walk among men. In this verse Jacob reveals an understanding which is not fully revealed in scripture. God has walked among men many times more than what is revealed to us. This is a mystery. In the future I will share more of what I know of this.] ; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel. [This is an important message of the prophets of the Book of Mormon and they continually remind their people of the Lord's mercy to preserve them through all generations.] The covenants of the Lord seem very strongly linked to our posterity and our progenitors. The preservation of their seed was a major concern of the righteous Nephites and part of their constant plea to the Lord. In these last days, these same promises and covenants must be planted in our hearts as we turn towards the "fathers" and them to us... Though no one seems to understand what this actually means... In what way do we need to "turn to the fathers" otherwise "the whole earth would be utterly wasted at his coming..." and why is it worded in such a way – which has obviously led to all sorts of precepts of men? **[The "Fathers" are the ancient progenitors that sought Zion. When the people's heart turn toward establishing Zion, then shall the House of Israel finally be gathered. Otherwise, all would be wasted at his coming. There is plenty of nuance in that phrase. Some of which refers to the rise of the 4th estate before His coming. PR]**

Jews and Gentiles – 2 Nephi 10:1-25

1 And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch **[the descendants of their posterity]** of which I have spoken.

2 For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer. **[Again, the prophecy regarding the restoration of the House of Israel in America.]**

3 Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient **[proper]** that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God. **["Christ" is not a Hebrew or Aramaic word; however its meaning is clear – The Anointed One. It would be shocking to a Jew to think of bestowing upon their own Messiah the death of crucifixion.]**

4 For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God. **[This is a terrible statement against the Jews. How could the covenant people do this? Those who have the Law and then are taken captive by Satan are much harder in their hearts than those who never knew.]**

5 But because of priestcrafts [**positions of ecclesiastical authority used unrighteously**] and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

6 Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations. [**The curse upon the Jews, the Great Diaspora.**]

7 But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance. [**This is still in the process.**]

8 And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

9 Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?

10 But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land. [**The land of the United States of America.**]

11 And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles. [**There have been no kings raised up upon this land since the gentiles have taken possession of the United States territories.**]

12 And I will fortify this land against all other nations. [**The strongest defenses of any army in recorded history.**]

13 And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God. [**This has yet to occur.**]

14 For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

15 Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations. [**Future destruction of the United States when its corruption is complete.**]

16 Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God. [**Those that fight against Zion shall be of all religious persuasions, class, and people.**]

17 For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—

18 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel. [**The righteous Gentiles shall be the means to help the remnant of the House of Israel in this land and abroad.**]

19 Wherefore, I will consecrate this land [**America**] unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed [**Those who mix with them.**], forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith

God. **[America is unique today in all the world in that it is designated a land of inheritance unto the righteous who worship God. Those who fight against God today are in peril of destruction.]**

20 And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea. **[All gatherings of the House of Israel are considered an “isle of the sea.”]**

21 But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren. **[There are others like them of the House of Israel that have been led away.]**

22 For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also.

23 Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.

24 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile **[correct]** yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.

25 Wherefore, may God raise you from death **[physical]** by the power of the resurrection **[ascension of light]**, and also from everlasting death **[spiritual]** by the power of the atonement **[bound in glory]**, that ye may be received into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may praise him through grace **[power of ascension]** divine. Amen.

Many Witnesses – 2 Nephi 11:1-8

1 And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficeth me. **[This verse could have been left at the end of the last chapter.]**

2 And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him. **[Nephi bears his witness that he has seen the Lord.]**

3 And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words. **[Nephi knows that himself, his father Lehi, and his brother Jacob have all been witnesses of the Lord. Nephi’s wife Minyah also had seen Him. Many of the prophets from the brass plates, including Isaiah, had also seen the Lord.]**

4 Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been

given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him. **[Nephi must have found great pleasure in showing his people how the temple ceremonies were a type of Christ and His sacrifice to come. Also, how nature in all her wonder points to a God in Heaven and His great covenants unto the House of Israel.]**

5 And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death. **[The “Fathers” are not only Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, but also Adam, Seth, Enoch and Noah. The Lord has been merciful to His people from the beginning.]**

6 And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish. **[Become captive of the devil.]**

7 For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. **[All things are designed and begun for the purpose of having us become the fullness of our creation.]** But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time. **[He comes when all things are prepared. This applies to His coming to Jerusalem, and also in our own lives when he comes in the fullness of our time.]**

8 And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto all men. **[Nephi places the words of Isaiah carefully in his writings to teach his people, but also to prepare us for what will come. This particular chapter is like an introduction for the coming chapters.]**

Questions and Comments:

Verse 4: Can you share examples of how nature points to God in Heaven and His covenant to the House of Israel? I would love to have them to ponder on! **[The order amongst the cosmos, including moons, planets, suns, and stars. The process of creation, the seasons, the cycle of life, the structure of families, the herbs and fruit in their season, etc. PR]**

Where did you find Nephi’s wife’s name and that she saw Christ? **[This was given to me from the Lord. This is not found in scripture. PR]**

Isaiah 2 – The Last Days Church – 2 Nephi 12:1-22

1 The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah **[Israel]** and Jerusalem **[the gathering place of the Church]:**

2 And it shall come to pass in the last days, when the mountain **[church]** of the Lord’s house **[people]** shall be established in the top of the mountains **[considered amongst the great churches]**, and shall be exalted above the hills **[esteemed by many]**, and all nations **[many people]** shall flow unto it.

3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord [**Let us gather and go up to the city of the Lord.**], to the house of the God of Jacob [**the people of the Covenant**]; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for out of Zion [**holy city**] shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem [**His Church**].

4 And he [**the Church**] shall judge [**condemn**] among the nations [**the actions of many people**], and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks—nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more. [**And they shall make peace instead of fighting for truth, and their sharp words into pleasing speech—all people shall get along and their shall be no arguments.**]

5 O house of Jacob [**people of the covenant**], come ye and let us walk in the light [**knowledge**] of the Lord; yea, come, for ye have all gone astray [**they have lost what they had**], every one to his wicked ways.

6 Therefore, O Lord, thou hast forsaken [**turned away from**] thy people, the house of Jacob [**the covenant**], because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers. [**Because they look for help from the wrong source, and pay close attention to those who speculate the future, and they enjoy the company of those who know not God.**]

7 Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures [**wealth**]; their land is also full of horses [**transportation**], neither is there any end of their chariots [**vehicles**].

8 Their land is also full of idols [**great inventions**]; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

9 And the mean man boweth not down [**ungenerous man will not help**], and the great man humbleth himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

10 O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust [**you will hide**], for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee.

11 And it shall come to pass that the lofty [**arrogant**] looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness [**vanity**] of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

12 For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon cometh upon all nations [**all people**], yea, upon every one; yea, upon the proud and lofty, and upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low.

13 Yea, and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon [**rich and prideful**], for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan; [**those who take pride in their own strength**]

14 And upon all the high mountains [**powerful nations**], and upon all the hills [**kingdoms**], and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people;

15 And upon every high tower [**military defense**], and upon every fenced wall;

16 And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish [**ships of trade**], and upon all pleasant pictures. [**luxury ships**]

17 And the loftiness [**arrogance**] of man shall be bowed [**brought**] down, and the haughtiness [**vanity**] of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

18 And the idols [**work of men**] he shall utterly abolish.

19 And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth. **[This will literally happen as the elite gather to bunkers under the earth which have been built and prepared to withstand catastrophic destruction.]**

20 In that day a man shall cast his idols **[creations and treasures]** of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship **[seek after]**, to the moles and to the bats; **[hid up to be forgotten]**

21 To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth. **[A literal description of the fire and power that will come from heaven and shake the earth from its foundation.]**

22 Cease ye from man **[to trust in man]**, whose breath is in his nostrils; for wherein is he to be accounted of? **[for how will you consider him?]**

“Behold, vengeance cometh speedily upon the inhabitants of the earth, a day of wrath, a day of burning, a day of desolation, of weeping, of mourning, and of lamentation; and as a whirlwind it shall come upon all the face of the earth, saith the Lord. And upon my house shall it begin, and from my house shall it go forth, saith the Lord; First among those among you, saith the Lord, who have professed to know my name and have not known me, and have blasphemed against me in the midst of my house, saith the Lord.” D&C 112:24-26

Questions and Comments:

“Upon my house it’s shall begin” Does this mean the entire House of Israel who made covenants before birth, even if those individuals do not yet have their baptism of fire upon the earth?

The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah [Israel] and Jerusalem [the gathering place of the Church]: Is this entire chapter referring to the Jews in Jerusalem? Or could this also refer to more than just them? I don’t normally think of the Jews as a “church”. Maybe it’s just my interpretation but I think of them more as a “religion”. I think of our church more as a “church”. Could this scripture have dual meaning? Could this apply to the latter-day church as well as the Jews?

If the definition of “House” is people, how does the prophesied event begin upon His house? **[It means those of the covenant. I put some hints in there, but it will require personal revelation to understand. PR]**

The White House? I’m so serious with this question:)

I believe this chapter is referencing to the United States and the fall there of. This land, land of the gathering is a place for the covenanted to gather in, which they have, but this nation and its covenanted people have forgotten god and have sought for the attention

and worship of those that do not know god. They have sought for wealth and constant worship of the creation of their hands. When It says “ and it will begin in my house” I believe it mainly means the times of tribulation that hit the United States and brings this nation to dustruction will be the starting point for the great work to come forth. **[The curses listed in this chapter will begin upon His house. PR]**

PR, I am trying to make sense of the following scripture. This scripture continues to come to my mind as I reason with the lord on a certain topic.

4 And he [the Church] shall judge [condemn] among the nations [the actions of many people], and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks—nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more. [And they shall make peace instead of fighting for truth, and their sharp words into pleasing speech—all people shall get along and their shall be no arguments.]

There are parts of this scripture that it feels that it is referencing the millennium or Zion concerning “they shall learn war nor more” and “nation shall not lift up sword against nation”. “all people shall get along and their shall be no arguments”, however your comment that they shall make peace instead of fighting for truth causes me to look at this scripture differently. My sense is that this scripture is stating that the church in the last days seeks for Peace rather than Truth and by so doing they begin to lose the power of inspiration and revelation and why the rest of the verses in this chapter is the lords condemnation on the people for various unrighteousness. Is that accurate? **[Yes, that is correct. PR]**

Isaiah 3 – Judgment of the Church – 2 Nephi 13:1-26

1 For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem **[gathering place of the church]**, and from Judah **[the Jews]**, the stay and the staff **[supply and support]**, the whole staff of bread **[whole supply of food]**, and the whole stay **[supply]** of water— **[This metaphor of food and water is represents the Lord’s withholding of blessings and revelation upon them. (priesthood) See Amos 8:11-13]**

2 The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient;

3 The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning artificer **[inventor]**, and the eloquent orator. **[A list of all those we have previously admired.]**

4 And I will give children **[a new generation]** unto them to be their princes **[priesthood holders]**, and babes **[new people]** shall rule over them.

5 And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child **[new generation]** shall behave himself proudly **[with dignity]** against the ancient **[former people]**, and the base **[unsavory]** against the honorable **[respectable]**.

6 When a man shall take hold of his brother **[ask for help]** of the house of his father **[those who seem related]**, and shall say: Thou hast clothing **[you have what**

we need], be thou our ruler, and let not this ruin come under thy hand— **[Let us not suffer under these conditions.]**

7 In that day shall he swear, saying: I will not be a healer **[I will not take care of you.]**; for in my house there is neither bread **[priesthood]** nor clothing **[authority]**; make me not a ruler of the people.

8 For Jerusalem **[the church]** is ruined, and Judah **[Israel]** is fallen, because their tongues **[words]** and their doings **[acts]** have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

9 The show of their countenance **[truth of their deeds]** doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls **[souls are cursed]**, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves! **[The sin of Sodom was more than sexual depravity. These people sought evil against each other and all who came among them continually.]**

10 Say unto the righteous **[the Lord's servants]** that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings. **[their works shall bring much good.]**

11 Wo unto **[cursed are]** the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

12 And my people, children **[modern church]** are their oppressors, and women rule over them **[Those without authority rule over the members.]**. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of thy paths. **[destroy your traditions]**

13 The Lord standeth up to plead **[to witness]**, and standeth to judge the people. **[to separate and organize]**

14 The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients **[former priesthood leaders]** of his people and the princes **[presiding authority]** thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard **[removed my laws]** and the spoil of the poor in your houses. **[blessings of the Gospel in your sacred structures.]**

15 What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces **[destroyed the faith of my people]**, and grind the faces of the poor **[hurt those who seek me]**, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

16 Moreover, the Lord saith: Because the daughters of Zion are haughty **[members of the covenant are vain]**, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes **[behave with pride and wicked intentions]**, walking and mincing as they go **[with pageantry]**, and making a tinkling with their feet— **[seeking prideful attention]**

17 Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, **[The Lord will remove the gift of revelation of those that preside from the members of the Covenant.]** and the Lord will discover their secret parts **[know their hearts]**.

18 In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments **[confidence in standing in public]**, and cauls **[necklaces]**, and round tires like the moon; **[amulets]**

19 The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers; **[expensive scarfs (ties)]**

20 The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs **[seductive walking]**, and the headbands, and the tablets **[fragrant perfumes]**, and the ear-rings;

21 The rings, and nose jewels;

22 The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles [**shawls, expensive coats**], and the wimples [**hair ornaments**], and the crimping-pins; [**elegant purse, bag, or briefcase**]

23 The glasses [**mirrors**], and the fine linen, and hoods, and the veils. [**All that they use to present themselves publicly with great beauty.**]

24 And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle [**fine belt**], a rent; and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a stomacher [**fine shirt**], a girding of sackcloth; burning instead of beauty. [**Your worldly beauty, wealth, and praise will be gone.**]

25 Thy men shall fall by the sword and thy mighty in the war. [**coming war**]

26 And her gates [**congregations**] shall lament and mourn; and she shall be desolate [**church shall be empty**], and shall sit upon the ground. [**lay in ruin**]

51 For whoso cometh not unto me is under the bondage of sin.

52 And whoso receiveth not my voice is not acquainted with my voice, and is not of me.

53 And by this you may know the righteous from the wicked, and that the whole world groaneth under sin and darkness even now.

54 And your minds in times past have been darkened because of unbelief, and because you have treated lightly the things you have received—

55 Which vanity and unbelief have brought the whole church under condemnation.

56 And this condemnation resteth upon the children of Zion, even all.

57 And they shall remain under this condemnation until they repent and remember the new covenant, even the Book of Mormon and the former commandments which I have given them, not only to say, but to do according to that which I have written—

58 That they may bring forth fruit meet for their Father's kingdom; otherwise there remaineth a scourge and judgment to be poured out upon the children of Zion.

59 For shall the children of the kingdom pollute my holy land? Verily, I say unto you, Nay. (D&C 84:51-59)

Questions and Comments:

Thanks so much for this interpretation. So many things confirmed with what I am seeing and feeling privately. Thank you for additional witness. Ties in well with Ezekiel 34, Mormon 8, 2 Nephi 28, Jacob 5 and other scriptures giving warning and encouragement to repent and turn fully to Christ.

Wow. I guess we now know who the Lord's house or "last days church" is, that has been cursed and condemned. Very sobering. Thank you for having the courage to share this.

39 When men are called unto mine everlasting gospel, and covenant with an everlasting covenant, they are accounted as the salt of the earth and the savor of men;

40 They are called to be the savor of men; therefore, if that salt of the earth lose its savor, behold, it is thenceforth good for nothing only to be cast out and trodden under the feet of men. (D&C 101)

13 But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.

14 And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.

15 But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel. (3 Nephi 16)

I appreciate your insight into this chapter. As an amateur student of Isaiah I find the new layer of meaning you bring up very revealing and poignant. It impacts me in ways that I had not considered although I have invested a lot of time reading **[edit, I don't publish any names of institutions or people on the blog (PR)]**, a notable LDS scholar of Isaiah. Would you explain the process of how these insights come to you? Do you see them in vision; or do you feel the Holy Spirit's witness like ideas downloading into your heart and mind; or is there a messenger or voice that gives the inspiration to you? **[The Lord instructed me to do this BofM Thoughts. I am to simply read verse by verse and write. I remember things I have seen before and sometimes I am shown things as I write. Other times I go to the Lord to ask questions. It is a revelatory process. It is called BofM Thoughts because these are my thoughts and revelations, but you are to take what you read and receive your own revelations and witness. Whatever witness you receive will become your own scripture. PR]**

Very interesting take, I found that the Lord reveals His mysteries in layers, I was reading this scripture I thought of the condition of our Nation at this time and how here Isaiah speaks to in layers to Jerusalem and to The United States, to Their people about their wickedness, but it comes down to the people of the covenant, the people of God, and they that had brought this curse upon them, our Nation now also is cursed and Isaiah speaks to us now the people of the church because they have lost their way, the salt of the Earth has lost its savory, we are under judgment.

It just reads like the Lord will take away the pride filled idolatrous facade from those who, as he bemoaned in the last chapter will not "cease ye from man" (arm of the flesh?)... and according to Isaiah's writings, that external stripping of pride and idolatry and self absorption comes by force. The Assyrians did it to Israel. Someone will do it to us. I have to ask. In your opinion, what is the fastest most sure-fire way to strip ones self of pride (without external compulsion)? **[Self evaluation, fasting, and prayer usually helps me to keep it together. I also have a career where I am both loved and hated, which continually reminds me that I am nothing and all that I have is a gift from God. Keeps me humble. PR]** We are past the point, as a nation, of no return- correct? **[Yes, that is correct. The Lord in His mercy is**

allowing the wickedness to ripen as the people take sides, choosing where they will stand before the judgments begin. PR]

I am unsure how to ask this question. I'll just try: Does vs 1-12 talk about either a shift in who leads the Lord's people in the latter day end times (moving away from the outward church below or "telestial" church towards inward church above or "terrestrial" church)... or maybe these verses talk about a returning of priesthood power (relationship with the Lord) back to the Jews? The next chapter gave me cause to reflect on this chapter with the 7 women taking hold of one man -vying for a renewed priesthood relationship with the Lord... I don't think either of these chapters do much good being read without allowing the context of both chapters to permeate together. Anyhow, I might be off. But I am fascinated with the implications! **[These chapters deal with the fall and corruption of the Church of the Gentiles and the awakening of the House of Israel, the rise of the Elect. PR]**

Isaiah 4 – Beautiful Zion – 2 Nephi 14:1-6

1 And in that day, **[when Zion is established]** seven women **[the perfected saints]** shall take hold of one man **[shall wrest the power from previous authority]**, saying: We will eat our own bread **[we have our own priesthood (relationship) from the Lord]**, and wear our own apparel **[our own authority from Him]**; only let us **[we shall]** be called **[of God]** by thy name **[in thy place]** to take away our reproach. **[God's condemnation upon the people]**

For many, this scripture is a polygamous prophecy. This is not the meaning behind Isaiah's use of this symbolic imagery. The word "seven" denotes perfection, particularly of those who are prepared for a terrestrial glory. The word "women" is used in this scripture to denote one who is preparing to know the Lord. Isaiah's use of this word is to imply that they come from those not having priestly authority, which in the last days will be both men and women, and not from any authority of "man." Verse 1 above is similar in meaning to 2 Nephi 13:1-12.

2 In that day shall the branch **[The extended House of Israel – New Jerusalem]** of the Lord be beautiful and glorious; the fruit of the earth **[Those gathered unto it]** excellent and comely **[desirable]** to them that are escaped of Israel. **[those of the House of Israel that escape the destructions and are gathered unto it]**

3 And it shall come to pass, they that are left **[reside]** in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy, every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem— **[These shall have the mark of God upon them.]**

4 When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion **[removed the wicked from among the church]**, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof **[made them holy, even their very DNA]** by the spirit of judgment **[Gift of the Holy Ghost]** and by the spirit of burning. **[Baptism of Fire]** **The "daughters of Zion" is always a reference to a later generation of God's covenant people that have gone astray. See Moroni 10:31**

5 And the Lord will create upon every dwelling-place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day and the shining of a flaming fire by night [**the Shekinah, or glory of God's protection**]; for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

6 And there shall be a tabernacle [**covering**] for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and a covert from storm and from rain. [**God will shield His people from the destruction which will cover the earth before His coming.**]

Questions and Comments:

Thank you so much for doing this project and especially for the explanation of verse 1. A few years ago, when I was bothered by that verse, the Holy Ghost pointed out that although seven women take hold of one man and make an offer, the verse does not say anything about him marrying any of them, let alone all of them. (The women simply make an offer, that is all that is written.) It calmed me down then but it wasn't until now that I realized the Lord was trying to soothe my fears so perhaps I could see and learn the symbolism, but I never asked anything further about the verse. I am learning so much as I read here; thank you for doing the work the Lord asked so others like me have a chance to learn what we have missed all our lives!

Yes, as others have said.... thank you for verse 1. Vs 4:

When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion [removed the wicked from among the church], and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof [made them holy, even their very DNA] by the spirit of judgment [Gift of the Holy Ghost] and by the spirit of burning. [Baptism of Fire] Back in 1 Nephi 20, Nephi clarified Isaiah 48 by adding that Israel at that time were familiar with baptism. See: "Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism," That last part is not in the kjv bible... and most everyone else outside Mormonism, I think, would say Ancient Israel did not practice baptism. I always look for clues that they could have or did. Could verse 4 of 2Neph 14 also have some reference to baptism by water? The gospel of Jesus includes baptism by water and by fire and vs 4 seems to be able to match that description. [**At the time of Isaiah, Israelites were under the covenant as a people, so they were not required to receive the baptism of water individually. This changed for the Jews in Judea when John began to baptize them. The Jews saw this and understood what John was doing. It meant that their old covenant was no longer valid. Isaiah may have been alluding to an individual baptism and that they must partake of the New Covenant of Christ. In the Americas we see baptism also, as people who had lost their way had to renew their covenants to the Lord. PR**]

See that's what I was taught. To me, it is interesting that Nephi added to or clarified Isaiah 48 to include a reference to baptism. ... Oh...ok... wait I can see what you are saying now and that makes sense.

I appreciate your explanations for verse 1. Having rejected the thought that this verse

was referring to the return of polygamy long ago, the only thing I could come up with was that seven (meaning basically everyone) would take hold of one man (Jesus Christ) and say “save us”. I like this thought but didn’t know how the food and clothing fit in. Thank you for your further illumination.

Isaiah 5 – The Transition to the Kingdom of God – 2 Nephi 15:1-30

1 And then will I sing to my well-beloved **[my God]** a song of my beloved **[my Redeemer]**, touching his vineyard **[Kingdom]**. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill. **[Christ will bare much fruit (enlarging souls) in this covenant world.]**

2 And he fenced it **[gathered it together]**, and gathered out the stones thereof **[removed the obstacles]**, and planted it with the choicest vine **[messengers of the Word, the 4th estate]**, and built a tower **[a church]** in the midst of it, and also made a wine-press therein **[working organization which would require sacrifice to bring forth the fruit]**; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes **[fruit, or partakers of Christ’s gift]**, and it brought forth wild grapes. **[those who rebelled against God.]**

This verse, as with many of Isaiah’s writings, has both a relevance to Isaiah’s day, and our own. A relation to both the Old Covenant or the Mosaic law, and the New Covenant (since the time of Christ); which is simply a more complete law that brings one from a telestial to a terrestrial glory.

3 And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem **[the church]**, and men of Judah **[the Jews]**, judge **[think and decide]**, I pray you, betwixt **[between]** me and my vineyard. **[what I have done for my Kingdom]**

4 What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes **[exalted sons and daughters]** it brought forth wild grapes. **[no fruit, telestial]**

5 And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard **[Kingdom]**—I will take away the hedge thereof **[organization, church]**, and it shall be eaten up **[wiped clean]**; and I will break down the wall thereof **[the leadership]**, and it shall be trodden down;

6 And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged **[it shall not be reestablished]**; but there shall come up briers and thorns **[coming forth uninspired men]**; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it. **[My Spirit shall not enlighten them.]**

7 For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts **[Kingdom of the Lord]** is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah **[Jews]** his pleasant plant **[original covenant]**; and he looked for judgment **[separate them for good]**, and behold, oppression **[but they were separated for wickedness]**; for righteousness, but behold, a cry. **[The righteous cry out to Him.]**

8 Wo unto them **[cursed are they]** that join house to house **[who mingle their beliefs and loyalty]**, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the

midst of the earth! **[Without friends or a homeland – this was the curse that befell the Jews, and the those who abandon their covenant with God in the last days.]**

9 In mine ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate **[Many belief systems shall be destroyed]**, and great and fair cities without inhabitant. **[War and desolation.]**

10 Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah. **[famine of both the land and also hearing the word of God]**

11 Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink, that continue until night, and wine inflame them! **[Those who are drunk with denial and choose to not remain serious and focused in their devotion.]**

12 And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands. **[They seek pleasure and do not seek to know Him.]**

13 Therefore, my people **[Christ's church]** are gone into captivity **[of the Adversary]**, because they have no knowledge **[of the true nature of Lord]**; and their honorable men are famished **[their priesthood leaders are without the Spirit]**, and their multitude dried up with thirst. **[their congregations suffer for lack of spiritual leadership]**

14 Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it. **[Hell]**

15 And the mean **[uncharitable]** man shall be brought down, and the mighty man **[men of power and authority]** shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty **[vain]** shall be humbled.

16 But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judgment **[shall exalt those who are righteous]**, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness. **[Make holy that which seeks His will.]**

17 Then shall the lambs **[pure in heart]** feed after their manner **[be fed with the Spirit]**, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat. **[The defiled churches of the prideful ones shall preach to those who are strangers to God.]**

18 Wo unto them that draw iniquity **[lead others in binding cords of sin]** with cords of vanity **[pride]**, and sin as it were with a cart rope; **[to hold steady by manipulation or force]**

19 That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work, that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it. **[Those who doubt the prophecies and dismiss the word of God because they seek evidence. This is common amongst many Christian groups today who change the meaning of the commandments and prophecies to adapt to cultural trends.]**

20 Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter! **[We are living the fulfillment of this prophecy today.]**

21 Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight!

22 Wo unto the mighty to drink wine [**drunk with their own power**], and men of strength to mingle strong drink; [**who let their positions give them pride**]
23 Who justify the wicked for reward [**who reward the loyalty of the wicked**], and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him! [**Take away the opportunity to follow God.**]

24 Therefore, as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, their root [**priesthood authority**] shall be rottenness [**wither and die**], and their blossoms [**blessings and approval**] shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised [**have not honored**] the word of the Holy One of Israel.

25 Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people [**church**], and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. [**actual devastation that is yet to come**] For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still. [**and there is more judgments to come after that**]

This is again a direct prophecy regarding those of the church in the last days. Particularly, those who have been lulled away by the gross sins of their leaders.

26 And he will lift up an ensign [**a call to gather**] to the nations from far [**throughout the world from a distance**], and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth [**It will be shared amongst all people**]; and behold, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them. [**The gathering of Israel will commence under the direction of the Lord and His servants.**]

27 None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed [**they shall not be weary**], nor the latchet of their shoes be broken; [**nor the means of their transportation be delayed**]

28 Whose arrows [**defenses**] shall be sharp, and all their bows bent [**all preparations ready**], and their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint [**movements with precision**], and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion. [**Great power in their transportation and works.**]

29 They shall roar like young lions [**with power and great energy**]; yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey [**power to gather the Elect, see Matthew 24:27-29**], and shall carry away safe [**The literal carrying away to safety the Elect of God to Zion**], and none shall deliver. [**none shall inhibit them**]

30 And in that day they [**the Lord's servants**] shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea [**The judgment of God, the acts of the servants, shall come upon the wicked with no resistance.**]; and if they look unto the land [**curse the land**], behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof. [**God shall be their sword.**]

This chapter of Isaiah is specifically about the rise of the 4th estate. Who are these people? They are both men and women, people who are obscure to the world, who are awakening to their foreordained mission to save the souls of the House of Israel. These are among the 144 thousand, the Just Men and Women Made Perfect through that which they suffer, the Dominions of Angels whose hearts remember the promises of the Fathers

to redeem Israel, that the Lord's purposes are not wasted at his coming. (D&C 2:1-3)

Questions and Comments:

{This is again a direct prophecy regarding those of the church in the last days. Particularly, those who have been lulled away by the gross sins of their leaders.} I'm having a hard time thinking of real examples of this. **[I edited this portion because it refers to a specific institution or person. PR]** Is that what it is referring to? **[When I refer to the "church," this is a modern church that originally had a covenant and has since lost it. This can be interpreted different ways. I would advise each person to follow the Spirit to determine your own revelation.]**

Once again wonderful. So much light. Can you expound upon the thought of the suffering of the Just Men and Women. Is this required in each condensation as it currently appears? When if ever does self sacrifice end for those who choose the path of Godliness? Thank you. **[The Lord rests on the 7th period. Every condensation brings a sacrifice, and also a beautiful blessing. So, it is so worth it. PR]**

In verse 27 and 28, is the "transportation" described where servants and those saved travel instantly from one place to another place (a place of refuge) by means of the spirit? Like the Lord instantly translocates the rescued individuals and His servant helping them to where they all need to be? **[This will occur, but there will be groups that will travel by land. (PR)]**

How can we help family members and loved ones "who have been lulled away by the gross sins of their leaders" to awaken to the truth that they have been living man-made doctrines mingled with scripture and following a man who has taught that he stands between them and Christ, [Edit]? **[My advice would be to pray for revelation and follow the Spirit, that you can say or do at the very moment what is needed to awaken someone from their slumber. It helps to bear testimony that we must go directly to the Lord and have no person stand between us and Him. (PR)]**

In your comments above, you mentioned the 144k being made perfect through their suffering. Can you elaborate on this concept? Is this the normal day to day hardships and challenges of life or something more? **[Part of it is the day to day and unique challenges each of us face, but for the 4th estate there is more. Their sacrifice and suffering is unique, but I can't elaborate other than to say it is not the same as Jesus in His life. (PR)]** I have a dear friend who has the belief that in order to be a "a Savior on Mount Zion", the 144k must suffer as a "proxy savior" (similar to King Hezekiah in the Bible) for those individuals they will gather or save. This person has had severe health issues for a long time and believes that their suffering is necessary to pay the price for being one of the 144k. What is your understanding of this idea? **[A proxy savior is an interesting way of describing it. The 144k are**

1 tied to the House of Israel since before the foundation of the world. They are vested in helping to save them in the Kingdom of the Father. Their missions are often obscure, and involve great sacrifice. Rarely are their identities known or remembered, but their lives are glorious. However, those who will be the gatherers in the end of times will be amazing to behold. (PR)]

What similarities, if any, do you see with the traveling Israelites being given the lower law, AND the “modern church” you reference above losing the covenant they once had? **[Both groups become corrupted by allowing themselves to seek the pride of the world instead of the glory of God. Their leaders lead the people away from truth and mingle their teachings with that which is unholy. PR]**

Isaiah 6 – Isaiah’s Ascension – 2 Nephi 16:1-13

1 In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up **[In the highest heavens]**, and his train **[hosts of angels]** filled the temple. **[Isaiah’s first ascension / Second Comforter]**

2 Above it stood the seraphim **[Highest Angels]**; each one had six wings **[six angels]**; with twain he covered his face **[with two he guarded his Throne]**, and with twain he covered his feet **[with two he guarded the 2nd Heaven]**, and with twain he did fly. **[with two the angels did descend to the First Heaven]**

3 And one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory. **[The angels praise God continually and observe.]**

4 And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried **[the entrance to the presence of the Lord opened at the voice of those who exercise faith]** and the house was filled with smoke. **[glory, or light and knowledge]**

5 Then said I: Wo is unto me! **[I will die!]** for I am undone **[I am unprepared]**; because I am a man of unclean lips **[I am a man with sins]**; and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips **[a sinful people]**; for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

6 Then flew one of the seraphim **[messenger angels of the Most High]** unto me, having a live coal **[former covenant]** in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar; **[administered to me from the altar of God]**

7 And he laid it upon my mouth **[gave it to me to partake]**, and said: Lo, this has touched thy lips **[and I partook when I called upon God in mighty prayer, an awakening]**; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged. **[Isaiah was reminded that he was clean. He was made clean by the baptism of fire, and then a garment of light was placed over him when he entered the Throne to calm the overwhelming fear that comes upon someone of this world entering the Throne for the first time. Read more about Isaiah’s experiences in A Witness of the Temporal Realm, pg. 137-140.]**

8 Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said: Here am I; send me. **[Isaiah spoke with the Lord face to face.]**

9 And he said: Go and tell **[prophecy to]** this people—Hear ye indeed **[they will hear my words]**, but they understood not; and see ye indeed **[they will see]**, but they perceived not.

10 Make the heart of this people fat **[prick their hearts that they are full]**, and make their ears heavy **[speak bluntly that they can hardly stand to listen]**, and shut their eyes **[don't let them shut their minds]**—lest they **[in hope that they will]** see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.

11 Then said I: Lord, how long **[will I do this]**? And he said: Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate;

12 And the Lord have removed men far away, for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land. **[The Lord showed Isaiah that most would not repent and that the land would be cursed.]**

13 But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves **[a portion that lives on when the tree dies]**; so the holy seed **[remnant of the House of Israel]** shall be the substance thereof.

This chapter is interesting in that it gives a detailed account of Isaiah's experience coming to God, and also what he was called to do with the eventual outcome. The Lord tells him that a tenth would survive the first Diaspora of the Jews, which occurred when Babylon took Jerusalem about a hundred years later (circa 597 BC). A similar pattern will affect the America's when this country has reached its fullness of iniquity as the Lord pours out His judgments upon the earth.

Questions and Comments:

Verse 10

“Make the heart of this people fat [prick their hearts that they are full], and make their ears heavy [speak bluntly that they can hardly stand to listen], and shut their eyes [don't let them shut their minds]—lest they [in hope that they will] see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.”

Who is doing this blunt speaking with those who are hardening their hearts today? **[This will be the rise of the two last days prophets, the Davidic Servant of the old Jerusalem, and the Lamanite prophet of this hemisphere. They will speak boldly to the kings of the earth and will die a martyrs death, as did Isaiah, in Jerusalem. There will also be thousands of servants of the Lord calling the people to repentance (the 144k). However, much of this won't come into play until the wrath of God begins to be unleashed upon the earth. Until this time, the scriptures are opened to us and some people are beginning to awake.]**

Is there an Isaiah figure today? **[I would say Joseph Smith.]** It seems like there is soothing political correctness instead... is this speaking blunt requirement of the Lord's mouthpiece on hold at the moment? **[This is much like things were at the time of Lehi. The times were very political in their discussions. Those who believed**

in a more progressive view of the laws, and those who held to the traditional views. Both camps openly debated in public. Yes, we have many prophets amongst us today. The calling out of for the people to turn to God by His appointed prophets will become even more pronounced in the future.]

Isaiah 7 – Mercenaries Shall Gather – 2 Nephi 17:1-25

1 And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekahthe son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

2 And it was told the house of David, saying: Syria is confederate [**has an alliance**] with Ephraim. And his [**King Ahaz**] heart was moved [**changed**], and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind. [**fear and trembling**]

3 Then said the Lord unto Isaiah: Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field; [**a surprise visit**]

4 And say unto him: Take heed, and be quiet [**do nothing**]; fear not, neither be faint-hearted [**don't be spooked**] for the two tails of these smoking firebrands [**the two leaders of these threatening armies**], for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

5 Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying:

6 Let us go up against Judah and vex it [**provoke it**], and let us make a breach [**a coup**] therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, yea, the son of Tabeal.

7 Thus saith the Lord God: It shall not stand [**it shall not succeed**], neither shall it come to pass.

8 For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus, Rezin; and within threescore and five years [**65 years**] shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a people.

9 And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe [**the Word's of God**] surely ye shall not be established. [**your kingdom shall not remain**]

10 Moreover, the Lord spake again unto Ahaz [**through Isaiah**], saying:

11 Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depths, or in the heights above. [**Like asking: "Do you know the greatest sign of the Lord to His people?"**]

12 But Ahaz said: I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord. [**Like responding impatiently: "I'm not going to answer that!"**]

13 And he said: Hear ye now, O house of David [**O King of this people**]; is it a small thing for you to weary men, [**for you to become impatient with men**] but will ye weary [**become impatient with**] my God also?

14 Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign [**Do you know that the Lord Himself...?**]**—Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel. [God be with us]**

15 Butter **[curdled milk]** and honey shall he eat **[a time of poverty]**, that he may know to refuse the evil and to choose the good.

16 For before the child shall know to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings. **[The land that thou detest shall be cursed and Israel shall fall before the Messiah shall come.]**

17 The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah, the king of Assyria. **[Just as the Northern Kingdom of Israel was divided from Judah.]**

18 And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall hiss **[allow the word to spread]** for the fly that is in the uttermost part of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria. **[The mercenaries shall gather.]**

19 And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes. **[the armies will gather all around]**

20 In the same day shall the Lord **[the Lord shall allow]** shave with a razor that is hired **[The Assyrian king shall be shrewd and cut sharply]**, by them beyond the river **[Euphrates]**, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet; and it shall also consume the beard. **[they shall decimate the Hebrews]**

21 And it shall come to pass in that day, a man **[men who survive in their captivity]** shall nourish a young cow and two sheep; **[shall barely survive]**

22 And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk they shall give he shall eat butter **[what little there is left]**; for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land. **[a difficult time to survive]**

23 And it shall come to pass in that day **[after Israel is conquered]**, every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, which shall be for briers and thorns. **[The land shall be desolate and dark.]**

24 With arrows and with bows shall men come thither, because all the land shall become briers and thorns. **[Bandits shall inhabit the land.]**

25 And all hills that shall be digged with the mattock **[What was once a place to settle]**, there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns **[no longer because of its dangerous circumstances]**; but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and the treading of lesser cattle. **[Those who meander into harsh lands.]**

This chapter of Isaiah was significant to the people of Nephi, for it directly prophesied of what would befall the Northern Kingdoms. It also prophesied of the literal coming of the Messiah amongst their people. The chapter also expresses what happens to a wicked people when they are not righteous. A similar circumstance would befall the Nephites, and also the people of America when they reach the time of God's judgment. Much of the land will be made desolate where once it was habitable.

As I consider this chapter and its application to our day I see similarities for what will befall America in the future.

Questions and Comments:

Why is butter/curdled milk and honey a food that symbolizes poverty? When it is said that a land flows with milk and honey, does that imply it is uninhabited or that there will be a struggle to inhabit it? **[I don't know. That's what I was told. I don't know]**

if milk and honey means something similar or slightly different. I know where you are coming from because I too always assumed it meant the opposite.

UPDATE: “A land flowing with milk and honey” means that they would have all that they need. “to eat cream and honey” means to have hardly enough to survive. If the Lord had said they would have bread and wine and oil, it would denote a more comfortable circumstance. This is what I have learned, but check this yourself with the Lord. PR]

In vs 18, can you further explain the symbolism of the fly of Egypt and bee of Assyria? The fly is a nuisance that spreads filth and disease but the bee is useful. Why these insects? **[The Assyrians would bring eventual blessing to the Hebrews, but the Egyptians were only death and destruction to them. PR]**

Isaiah 8 – Judah Spared from Assyria – 2 Nephi 18:1-22

1 Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me: Take thee a great roll [**formally documented on a scroll**], and write in it with a man’s pen, concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz. **[Isaiah’s son to be born.]**

2 And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record [**the date of the prophecy**], Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

3 And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me: Call his name, Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

4 For behold, the child shall not have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, [**Before the child can utter the word “father, mother” the invasion will begin.**] before the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria. **[the meaning behind the name]**

5 The Lord spake also unto me again, saying:

6 Forasmuch as this people [**Northern Israel**] refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly [**refusing to make themselves clean and holy before God**], and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah’s son [**leadership of the Northern Kingdoms**];

7 Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river [**armies of destruction**], strong and many, even the king of Assyria and all his glory; and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks. **[He will cross his boundaries.]**

8 And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel. **[Deep into Israel.]**

9 Associate yourselves, [**try and come here (Just try it!)**] O ye people [**Assyrians**], and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear [**listen**] all ye of far countries; gird yourselves [**prepare to defend**], and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

10 Take [**try to**] counsel together, and it shall come to naught [**nothing**]; speak the word [**command**], and it shall not stand; for God is with us.

11 For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people **[not capitulate]**, saying:

12 Say ye not, A confederacy **[an alliance]**, to all to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid. **[Isaiah told to tell King Hezekiah not be afraid of Assyria, but of God.]**

13 Sanctify the Lord of Hosts himself **[Make yourself holy before the Lord.]**, and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.

14 And he shall be for a sanctuary **[your protection]** ; but for **[Assyria]** a stone of stumbling, and for a rock of offense to both the houses of Israel **[a destruction to the House of Israel]**, for a gin **[trap]** and a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

15 And many among them shall stumble and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken. **[Many of Israel shall fall.]**

16 Bind up **[strengthen]** the testimony, seal **[know and live]** the law among my disciples.

17 And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face **[shows not Himself]** from the house of Jacob **[the people of the covenant]**, and I will look for him. **[seek Him]**

18 Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me **[Maher-shalal-hash-baz]** are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, which dwelleth in Mount Zion. **[Jerusalem]**

19 And when they shall say unto you: Seek unto them that have familiar spirits **[that channel the dead]**, and unto wizards that peep and mutter **[predict the future]**—should not a people seek unto their God for the living to hear from the dead?

20 To the law and to the testimony **[of God]**; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

21 And they **[the armies of Assyria]** shall pass through it hardly bestead **[with no avail, unsuccessful]** and hungry; and it shall come to pass that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret **[worry]** themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward. **[pray to their false Gods]**

22 And they shall look unto the earth and behold trouble, and darkness, dimness of anguish, and shall be driven to darkness. **[The earth shall spew death upon them. 2 Kings 19:35]**

A story that was well known to the Nephites. Similar to the American story of George Washington's miraculous defeat of the British. Perhaps more dramatic for the people of Jerusalem! Why would these chapters be included in the spiritual history of Nephi? Will God spare the righteous in such a manner during a future last days event? Yes.

Questions and Comments:

Praise be to God for this project you are doing. what a blessing! ...Isaiah's wife Phezbollah! What an absolute gorgeous name! What a beautiful family they had! Hallelujah! To be able to read more about the kind and good natured heart of a prophet I dearly dearly love... to see him smiling with encouragement in my mind's eye has brought tears to my eyes and has caused my soul to rejoice. I can not thank you enough. I don't know about anyone else but reading this chapter today has made my heart sing out great hymns of praise and adoration to our heavenly KING. My heart is filled with

light and my joy is as full as it has ever been. I want my praise to rush forth to meet my KING like seven thousand thunderous hooves of wild and mighty horses galloping into His realm. I am so humbled to be a recipient of knowledge and truth. I am undone but even so in that state I am ever grateful.

PR- you are impacting many lives with your translation into simple words so many of us “find familiar.” I still can’t make sense of so many names that end an “iah” throughout much of Isaiah. There is something of significant symbolism but I have not been able to understand it. Thanks for sharing your light as always.

Merci pour vos différents interprétations. Cela ma permi d’avoir une meilleure lecture des écritures. Que Dieu vous benisse!

Isaiah 9 – The Bricks Have Fallen – 2 Nephi 19:1-21

1 Nevertheless [**And so it is**], the dimness [**lack of understanding**] shall not be such as was in her vexation [**frustration**], when at first he [**Assyria**] lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali [**Northern parts of Israel**], and afterwards did more grievously afflict by the way of the Red Sea beyond Jordan in Galilee of the nations. [**From the Red Sea to the Northern Kingdom, at first the Assyrians were less in their affliction, and then they came upon the House of Israel with fury.**]

2 The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light [**a great understanding, knowledge**]; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death [**Judah**], upon them hath the light shined. [**Blessed**]

3 Thou [**the Lord**] hast multiplied the nation [**Judah’s blessings**], and increased the joy—they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest [**after the work is accomplished**], and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil. [**Enjoy the blessings and freedom.**]

4 For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden [**you have broken the hand of your opponent (Salvation)**], and the staff of his shoulder [**the laws of his delegates (overcome sin)**], the rod of his oppressor. [**the power of his army (Satan)**]

5 For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise [**without purpose**], and garments rolled in blood [**many die**]; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire. [**bodies burned, this is what occurred when the 185,000 Assyrians were killed by the Angel of God. (fate of those who follow Satan)**]

6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government [**Kingdom of God, Eternal Life**] shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace. [**Jesus Christ**]

Verse six is explaining the blessings of verse two.

7 Of the increase of government [**His Kingdom**] and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth, even forever. The zeal [**determination**] of the Lord of Hosts will perform [**establish**] this.

8 The Lord sent his word **[command]** unto Jacob and it hath lighted upon Israel. **[Covenant is passed to the House of Israel.]**

9 And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria **[those who rebelled]**, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart:

10 The bricks are fallen down **[great countries are no longer]**, but we will build with hewn stones **[but we will build them stronger]**; the sycamores are cut down **[the covenant of God is no longer]**, but we will change them into cedars. **[change them into laws that suit us.]**

Such views are embodied in today's political climate in America and many parts of the world. I have particular noticed this cultural shift since 9/11. Similar philosophies occurred amongst the Northern Tribes and apostate Jews after their destruction by the Assyrians. Overall, this is the philosophy of Satan, to replace God with his own dominion.

11 Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him **[allow their enemies to conspire against them]**, and join his enemies together **[alliance]**;

12 The Syrians before and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still. **[The judgment of God is upon them.]**

13 For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them **[They do not seek God's protection.]**, neither do they seek the Lord of Hosts.

14 Therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush in one day. **[The Lord will cut off their leaders, generals, and couriers in one day.]**

15 The ancient, he is the head **[A son of perdition, Satan]**; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail. **[False prophet, aligned with Satan]**

16 For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed. **[Kingdom of the Beast]**

17 Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows; for everyone of them is a hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly **[untruthfully]**. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

When we read a "stretched out arm," it implies God gathering or protecting His people. When we read "hand is outstretched," it implies keeping at a distance, or allowing the judgments to come upon them.

18 For wickedness burneth as the fire **[starts small and grows quickly]**; it shall devour the briars and thorns **[the wicked and evildoers are consumed with darkness]**, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forests **[shall launch from hidden places]**, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke. **[They grow in size and show signs of great destruction.]**

I used to think "mount up like the lifting up of smoke" was a description of a mushroom cloud; however, today I see this as more broad in its application.

19 Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire **[The Spirit of the Lord is completely gone.]**; no man shall spare his brother. **[no man has empathy for another]**

20 And he shall snatch on the right hand and be hungry **[steal from one another]**; and he shall eat on the left hand **[go to another place]** and they shall not be satisfied; they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm— **[resort to cannibalism]**

21 Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh **[will fight each other]**; they together shall be against Judah **[the Jews]**. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still. **[And the judgements of God will be made manifest]**

All of Isaiah's writings are so interesting in that they prophesy of what will come upon the House of Israel during his time, and also what will befall us during our time. Few scriptures have a dual prophetic role like Isaiah. For this reason Nephi specifically included them in his record. As you read this chapter allow the Spirit to speak to you regarding how this applies toward what will occur in America and Israel in the last days.

This chapter is very dark, but the coming Isaiah chapters focus on the great blessings.

Questions and Comments:

In v.15 it stirs my mind to think that Satan will mimic everything Christ does. Like Satan will have an end time "Davidic-type" Servant. I wonder if Satan's followers believe that Satan is the true Messiah. I used to think that they were just fighting against God to stop Jesus. But sometimes I wonder if they truly believe that Satan is the Savior of mankind. **[He absolutely will mimic Christ's return. The Kingdom of the Beast is already preparing for this. The armies of Armageddon will see themselves as Christ's soldiers as they fall upon Israel. PR]**

A dark chapter indeed. Vs 16 "this people" refers to people led by false prophets into apostasy? Or is it referring to fallen Israel? Islam, Catholicism? or maybe even a future (present?) state of Ephraim? LDS? Or do we go back to Nephi's description of how there are only two churches, 1. Church of the Lamb of God or 2. Church of the devil/ whore of all the earth. I ask because vs 2 describes a people, and I assume it's the people of God who even dwell in hardship "In the land of the shadow of death" who finally come out of that darkness being blessed to see a great light (acknowledge and follow the Lord probably by covenant). Then in vs 8 Jacob receives "his word/light" which is the Lord, I believe. But then Vs 17 "every one of them is a hypocrite and an evil doer..." Vs 19 "no man shall spare his brother" and other parts of this chapter... wickedness prevails (burns as a fire), the land darkens (people turn from the light?)... Where is Zion or the followers of Jesus in all this? Is this suggesting even Zion fails or stumbles for a time? Does it make more sense to read this chapter as moving back and forth in time skipping to different parts of history of the people of God? **[I know it appears that I am translating everything, but I am not. I'm trying to give the spiritually sensitive reader a head start. Follow your personal revelation and the Spirit will guide you. The coming chapters explain where the righteous will be as this scenario plays out. PR]**

I SO need to learn to ask better questions! Thanks for the helpful comment. I know that the book of Mormon was written for me and my loved ones and those who read it and come to Christ. I believe Nephi included these chapters because they foretell of an apostasy of huge proportions among those who hold the book of Mormon dear.

Covenant, Apathy, Apostasy, Warning, Tribulation, Desolation, and hopefully redemption if you made it that far. I know how brutal the Assyrian army was 2700 years ago. Just awful. 2 Nephi 20:22 is hopeful about a few that should prevail "for though thy people Israel be as the sands of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return, the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness" and then an encouragement to not fear the Assyrians.

This is a reminder of where we are right now as a nation, and as a people of God. Things will get very dark in this nation for a season, but just like in 3Nephi 8 when the people cried, and suffered in the dark after the destruction the Light will come back even brighter, like in 3Nephi13 those same people that were howling, and mourning the loss of many they got to see the Lord and be blessed greatly.

Is it bad to hope for the tribulation and desolate to come so that I can finally have Babylon ripped away from me? I just don't seem to be willing to sacrifice my favorite telestial hobbies and fleshly delights to be able to seek the Lord with ALL my heart, might, mind and strength! It's unfortunate that the world may need to be forcefully taken from me before I will be truly broken, humble, contrite, and childlike before the Lord. Alas, this may be how it must go for me (and apparently the great majority of us) before I receive the Holy Ghost fully like those of 3 Nephi 17.

PR- sorry so long, post part of it or none, but maybe it will help this person. PB wrote: "I just don't seem to be willing to sacrifice my favorite telestial hobbies and fleshly delights to be able to seek the Lord with ALL my heart, might, mind and strength" Please pardon my intruding unsolicited comment. It's just that I have been there. One of the most amazing things that has ever happened to me was when I finally came to that place in my life where I realized I cannot do "this" (come out of the world, come unto Christ, Love Him more than all "These Things") at all by myself. I still do not understand it all the way but I knew I was tired of my shallow life enough that my desire to do everything I could do (which was not much) was there. I was afflicted with vices and Babylon was thoroughly steeped into my daily life in all areas. I had tried several times to break free on my own with no success. I always slipped back down into my lowly Telestial station. So, this is my story (briefly): I asked Him to show me how to develop real intent. I told Him I would do everything He directed me to do. I knew somehow that I meant it.... which was surprising. I just knew. First thing He directed was to pray. I had not prayed in years. I began to pray. Then scriptures and conference talks. I had not done that in years either. I complied. This time I felt a pinpoint of light burst through my darkness (not suggesting you are in darkness at all PB, but I certainly was!). I felt the tiniest smallest pin prick beacon of light break through my shadowy world and rest upon me. I felt hope! Something so beautiful happened. I felt the Savior's love pierce my heart. It was warm and rested right behind my solar plexus (breastbone) and settle there. It felt like when you see a smile from your very best friend celebrating/encouraging your grand accomplishment. I hadn't done much but yet I felt like I had done everything all at once. I felt His wonderful patience. There was so much compassion and beautiful patience and so much kindness and goodness. I wept openly that first time I felt it and many times over as I kept going. It had been years. How did I

forget this. More prayer happened later that day and the same feeling came over me. I was overwhelmed with gratitude. And this was how I came out of the world. Through prayer and study I was lead to deeper and deeper levels of meekness where in a matter of weeks I was willing to submit to anything He directed me to do. I did not want to jeopardize losing that connection with Jesus. At that time I was introduced to people, websites, books, podcasts and as I continued, I felt a surge of confidence that if I continued I would be free of all my vices, doubts and fears. In another week or so, I knew I was free. To wrap this up, I was prompted to give up tv, radio, talk radio, R rated movies, fashion, sports watching, worldly music, and other things and replace that with more refined celestial equivalents. I did it gladly because every step was punctuated with that glorious celestial love and light. That was 3 years ago almost. It was easy to do because of Him. Basically, for about 14 months straight I was bathed in His wonderful light and love almost every day until I was brought sufficiently into His light to where I could stand on my own feet. You can do this. He will lead you. It is worth every sacrifice. God bless you!

To PB ~ I find the Lord doesn't often require us to give everything up all at once. It's generally line upon line... Here a little and there a little. (That's not to say it doesn't hurt every time you give up something). My unsolicited advice would be to go in prayer to the Lord and ask, "what lack I yet?" And then do the one thing He asks you to do. And once you've given that up, go back and ask again, "what lack I yet?". Until you find you have been a rough stone rolling and He finally invites you into His presence.

Thank you MS and TR. That is what I needed to hear. I need to let go of the fear of what might happen, or what I NEED to do, and just submit and trust in him and believe that his love is complete and pure. I crave to be back within his loving embrace. 20 years ago I felt and experienced what you, Mike, describe. I too was lost and had given up caring about God and didn't care/believe that he existed. I was in darkness, willing to do any sin that might come my way. Then one day, in the most unworthy of circumstances, I called out to Jesus for mercy – with sincerity... And boy did he respond! To make a long story short... My life was cleaned up instantly and the level of the Spirit and love of God I was feeling, the discernment I had, the holiness I felt was greater than anything I ever thought was possible, and it was clear to me that no one around me understood what I was experiencing. I knew something miraculous was given to being given to me, but I didn't understand it (kind of like when the Lamanites were baptized with fire, but didn't know it)... Within a few months, I had my mission call. Then, with time, and despite my zealousness to be the best, most obedient, hardest working missionary I could be, these feelings faded... After my mission, this turned into laziness and half-heartedness with my church/spiritual responsibilities... Over the past few years, I've woken up to my awful situation, and our awful shared situation (if you know what I mean...) but have yet to be born again – again.... But it is my greatest desire! I need to turn to the Lord fully! Thank you!

PB- that is fantastic! One thing I know is that He is always ready when we are and He knows exactly what we are going through and is 100% capable of leading us through it triumphantly if we will meekly submit to the process of receiving Him and the revelation

He has for us. God bless you PB

Isaiah 10 – Attack Against Jerusalem – 2 Nephi 20:1-34

- 1 Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees [**declarations**], and that write grievousness [**evil acts**] which they have prescribed;
- 2 To turn away the needy from judgment [**callous in their actions**], and to take away the right from the poor of my people [**to exist**], that widows may be their prey, [**slavery**] and that they may rob the fatherless! [**This is the purpose of the Assyrians, to plunder.**]
- 3 And what will ye do in the day of visitation [**when war is upon you**], and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory? [**How will your kingdom stand without God?**]
- 4 Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners [**taken captive**], and they shall fall under the slain. [**executed**] For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still. [**The judgments are fixed.**]
- 5 O Assyrian, the rod [**power**] of mine [**God's**] anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation. [**Israel's own ruling is their undoing.**]
- 6 I will send him [**The army of Assyrians to go**] against a hypocritical nation [**Northern Kingdom of Israel**], and against the people of my wrath [**Israel**] will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.
- 7 Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so [**The Assyrian king lies about his intentions**]; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few. [**He intends to conquer many nations.**]
- 8 For he saith: Are not my princes altogether kings? [**His governor replacements are better than their Kings.**]
- 9 Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus? [**conquered kingdoms of Assyria**]
- 10 As my hand hath founded the kingdoms of the idols [**of their own gods**], and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria; [**Their gods were greater than the Hebrews.**]
- 11 Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and to her idols? [**Shall I not even easier destroy you and your god?**]
- 12 Wherefore it shall come to pass that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem [**The temple and the city**], I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks. [**The fall of Assyria.**]
- 13 For he [**king of Assyria**] saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent [**cautious**]; and I have moved the borders of the people [**destroyed their kingdom and annexed to my own**], and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down [**reduced**] the inhabitants like a valiant [**great warrior**] man;
- 14 And my hand hath found as a nest [**depository**] the riches of the people; and as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved

the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped. **[I have taken all the riches and there was no resistance.]**

15 Shall the ax boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood! **[Where does the king get his power? It is not of himself, for God has only allowed it.]**

16 Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat **[rich and proud]** ones, leanness **[humility]**; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning **[cleansing]** like the burning of a fire.

17 And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn **[by the power of God and His angel]** and shall devour his thorns and his briars in one day; **[shall his army against my people be destroyed.]**

18 And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body **[completely annihilated]**; and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainteth. **[They shall die where they stand, as if fainting.]**

This is Isaiah's direct prophecy regarding how the Lord would destroy the 185,000 man army of the Assyrians.

19 And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them. **[Those that survive are a number so few even a child could count them.]**

20 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel **[Northern Kingdom]**, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob **[in Jerusalem]**, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth. **[They shall know that the Lord is their support, not the Assyrians. In God do they trust.]**

21 The remnant shall return, yea, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God. **[Those of the covenant shall again worship God in great faith.]**

22 For though thy people Israel **[Northern Kingdom]** be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return **[a portion shall be saved]**; the consumption decreed **[heavy cost of their rebellion to God]** shall overflow with righteousness. **[Shall bring forth great events unto God's purposes.]**

23 For the Lord God of Hosts shall make a consumption **[make less abundant]**, even determined in all the land.

24 Therefore, thus saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion **[Jerusalem]**, be not afraid of the Assyrian; he shall smite thee with a rod **[word of power]**, and shall lift up his staff **[bondage]** against thee, after the manner of Egypt. **[slavery and servitude]**

25 For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction. **[It will be only a short while.]**

Here is where patience is required. Often when the Lord says things will be only a little while, it could mean years.

26 And the Lord of Hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and as his rod was upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt. **[Like the battle of Gideon and his 300 against the Midianites, or Moses and his destruction of the Egyptians at the Red Sea. Each were considered impossible tasks, yet God won the battle for them.]**

27 And it shall come to pass in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing. **[The Assyrian yoke will not last.]**

28 He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages.

29 They are gone over the passage; they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramath is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.

30 Lift up the voice, O daughter of Gallim; cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.

31 Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee. **[Isaiah lists the cities that have fallen to the Assyrians.]**

32 As yet shall he remain at Nob that day; he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem. **[They are about to come to attack Jerusalem.]**

33 Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the bough with terror **[cut down their army]**; and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down; and the haughty shall be humbled. **[kings shall be overthrown]**

34 And he shall cut down the thickets of the forests with iron **[the angel shall cut down the army]**, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one. **[But Assyria will fall by the hand of God.]**

The Lord showed me that these armies of Shenacherub, the Assyrian King, composed of mercenaries of Egypt and the Assyrians lands, were overcome by carbon monoxide gas seeping from the faults a distance from Jerusalem where they were encamped. They literally died as if fainting. In 2 Kings 19:35 it states that an angel of the lord destroyed them.

Although this chapter is a detailed description of what occurred to Jerusalem during the siege of the Assyrians against Hezekiah, it is also a detailed account of how God will protect the Jews and in the last days as they are besieged by the armies of Armageddon.

Another comparison I see is how the wicked in America will be like the Northern Kingdom of Israel and the righteous of the New Jerusalem like those of the old Jerusalem. God will protect those who put their trust in Him.

Questions and Comments:

I was waiting for this chapter! Amen! I read it this morning and all I could think was the evil going on right now. This is exactly what's coming to this nation.

Who are the Assyrians today? [They occupy much of the same lands as before, but have mixed with other people. Mostly the northern middle eastern countries. Today, a group of ethnic Christians in Syria call themselves Assyrian. PR]

Thank you for the extra commentary on verse 25. I have read previously that the United

States will be occupied by invaders for about 7 years when it occurs. Are you able to tell us if this is similar to what you have seen? **[I don't know how long invaders will be in the US. PR]**

Isaiah 11 – Davidic Servant – 2 Nephi 21:1-16

1 And there shall come forth a rod [**leader of God**] out of the stem of Jesse [**line of David**], and a branch shall grow out of his roots. [**a righteous heir to the House of Israel**]

2 And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord [**This person shall have a full abundance of the gifts of the Spirit.**];

3 And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord [**in the spirit of discernment**]; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears. [**He will see that which the Lord reveals, not what man can teach.**]

4 But with righteousness shall he judge the poor [**He will know the poor in spirit and those who are repentant**], and reprove with equity [**deal justly with those who are not**] for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod [**power**] of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips [**the words spoken**] shall he slay the wicked.

5 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins [**God's command shall be the power of his purpose.**], and faithfulness [**acting upon revelation**] the girdle of his reins. [**covering of his authority**]

6 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

7 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

8 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's [**type of poisonous viper**] den.

These examples portray the animal kingdom, but more importantly, Isaiah describes the peace and felicity that will exist between enemies. There will not be differing religious views or political ideologies, for the knowledge of God shall cover the earth.

9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain [**Kingdom**], for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea. [**The Millennial Reign after the earth is fully cleansed and has become terrestrial.**]

10 And in that day [**our day**] there shall be a root [**descendant**] of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign [**holy standard**] of the people [**House of Israel**]; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious. [**The Gentiles shall seek the Everlasting Covenant offered by Jesus Christ through Abraham.**]

11 And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time [**that is soon to be accomplished**] to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from

Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea. **[The Elect shall be gathered from the four corners of the earth in the last days.]**

12 And he shall set up an ensign **[a holy call to gather]** for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

13 The envy of Ephraim **[fighting between tribes]** also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah **[Jews]** shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim. **[Priesthood shall be united under God as this occurs. The Gatherers]**

14 But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them. **[They shall gather amongst those who are enemies and none shall stop them.]**

15 And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod. **[Roads and means of travel not impeded as before by these bodies of water.]**

16 And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt. **This chapter gives us some clues regarding the Davidic Servant that will arise to help gather the Elect before Christ comes. Who is he and what will he do? He will sit in councils and lead with great wisdom. He will have the power to gather the Elect of the House of Israel and none can stop him. He has the full sealing power of God before the final cleansing of the earth.**

Questions and Comments:

Do you believe this servant will come from within the leadership of the LDS church? **[No, he will not. PR]**

Do you believe he is here now? If so, has he started his mission? **[He is alive and well, but I don't know if he is fully aware. That I do not know. PR]**

But he will be familiar with the church eventually? is he in Israel? **[He is in Israel, and I would suspect he will become familiar with the church. PR]**

When the gathering of the elect is spoken of, does this mean both a spiritual gathering first – as in their hearts are turned towards God – and then they are physically gathered second? Or are the elect gathered in whatever state of spirituality they currently are in (including “asleep”) because of the covenant they made before birth and they learn during the process of gathering and living together? **[It is a literal gathering; however, the Elect will hear his voice. This means their hearts were prepared before they came to this earth. PR]**

PR, do you have any insights on Ephraim? Is Ephraim comprised of mostly Americans who feel the pull to help gather Israel?

[The Lord said Ephraim were amongst the ten tribes taken captive by the Assyrians. Eventually, their tribe crossed the Caucasus Mountains and went north, settling in the southern part of Russia. They then migrated west through Germany and to the British Isles. The blood of Ephraim is mixed mostly amongst the Brits, Irish, and Scots. The early Americans and first to receive the New Covenant in the Americas and were heavily of the tribe of Ephraim. This is considered the Church of the Gentiles; however, it is by Ephraim that the book written by the hand of a Jew (the Bible), and the gathering of Israel to their homeland will occur in the last days. The Lord showed me that Ephraim has spread across the entire world by the English establishing colonies. It is Ephraim's privilege and calling to bless the House of Israel in the last days. PR]

Why is Ephraim considered the Church of the Gentiles?... they're the gentiles discussed in Third Nephi?... I'm confused, I thought that gentiles were celestial spirits outside the Covenant. **[Gentiles are 2nd estate spirits that have not yet partaken of the Everlasting Covenant. In the last days the Church of the Gentiles, which is comprised of Gentiles who seek Christ, will have the opportunity to be grafted into the House of Jacob (partake of the covenant), and thereby join the true vine. (Jacob 5:13-18, here we see how Ephraim did bring forth fruit in the Lord's vineyard.) The Tribe of Ephraim has an important role in the Times of the Gentiles, in that they will be the means to bring the Gospel to the earth, and to help gather the tribes of Israel and Jacob home to God. (D&C 86:9-11, 88:84) As I mentioned before, the blood of Ephraim moved up and over to the British Isles where it acted as a leaven to spread God's word throughout the world. Ephraim exists within the Church of the Gentiles and plays a key role in its success. (D&C 113:9-10, D&C 27:5, D&C 64:35-36, D&C 133:30-34) In the end the Church of the Gentiles will consist of both wheat and tares, but will bring forth fruit to God.]**

Will the Lamanite Prophet join the Davidic Servant in Israel when their killed together? **[Yes. PR]**

Thank you for the clarification. That makes sense it's called the Church of the Gentiles now that the gospel is extended to them. When did the Times of the Gentiles begin (and church of the Gentiles)? There was a big missionary effort made by Peter and Paul towards the gentiles. Was that the beginning of the current dispensation? **[The dispensation began with John the Baptist, but the Times of the Gentiles did not begin until Jesus gave the word to His Apostles after His resurrection. PR]**

It seems to me that the Church of the Gentiles will falter greatly with the mistakes listed in 2 Nephi 28, Mormon 8, and other places in scripture. Will a righteous remnant then be the first to establish the Church of the Lamb of God / Church of the Firstborn? If so, does this remnant consist of a mix of Christians? Who will lead this group, or will they be called individually like Lehi and his family were called? **[Yes, to both. The Lord**

will lead out righteous Christians, including LDS, before the gathering. It will be like when he came to the Nephites in Bountiful and said to have no more contentions on my doctrine. They will be united. And then the Gatherers will go forth teaching the doctrine of Christ with power. That's an oversimplification, but it will be from a diverse group. PR]

Uniting the various groups of believers with “there shall be no more disputations on my doctrine”. Very insightful! That makes so much sense. It's amazing I did not see that until just now... yet another reason why this discussion has been so invaluable (for me).

This may be a silly question, but how does one partake of the Everlasting Covenant? Does it simply mean to accept Jesus Christ and be baptized? Or is there a lot more to it? **[It is either made before this life, or made by a Gentile in this life. Both yield the same result, and both require baptism and the gift of the Holy Ghost. The Everlasting Covenant is the participation in the Father's plan for our exaltation, which takes a great deal of work even beyond this life. So worth it. PR]**

When you said “The Lord will lead out righteous Christians, including LDS, before the gathering.” Can you describe what being led out means? Will they be physically led somewhere, or is this a spiritual awakening? **[It implies both. There will be different circumstances for each depending upon where they live. PR]**

So Ephraim traveled to the British Isles. Which tribes of Israel populated mid and northern Europe? Like Germany, France, and those of Nordic heritage (Norway, Sweden and Denmark). Are any parts of Europe or Russia pre-dominantly Gentile in spirit and heritage? **[I only am aware of Ephraim, although there may be others. PR]**

So are all of those countries populated/founded by Ephraim? I remember hearing that there's slivers of truth handed down in Nordic mythology from Israelites, like the horns of Loki was once Satan/Lucifer. **[No, they are not. PR]**

PR wrote: As I mentioned before, the blood of Ephraim moved up and over to the British Isles where it acted as a leaven to spread God's word throughout the world. Ephraim exists within the Church of the Gentiles and plays a key role in its success. (D&C 113:9-10, D&C 27:5, D&C 64:35-36, D&C 133:30-34) In the end the Church of the Gentiles will consist of both wheat and tares, but will bring forth fruit to God.] D&C 64:36 For, verily I say that the rebellious are not of the blood of Ephraim, wherefore they shall be plucked out. The rebellious...? or Ephraim is going to be plucked out? (Rebellious?) Do you know how they will be plucked out? Tribulation destruction? **[There are few pure bloodlines in the world today, especially those who have the blood of Ephraim. Those who are the House of Israel are now mixed among the Gentiles and the Elect are those who will hear His word when He comes to them. The rebellious are those who have chosen Satan.**

They will be cut off from God in the end. PR] D&C 133

30 And they shall bring forth their rich treasures unto the children of Ephraim, my servants.

31 And the boundaries of the everlasting hills shall tremble at their presence.

32 And there shall they fall down and be crowned with glory, even in Zion, by the hands of the servants of the Lord, even the children of Ephraim.

33 And they shall be filled with songs of everlasting joy.

34 Behold, this is the blessing of the everlasting God upon the tribes of Israel, and the richer blessing upon the head of Ephraim and his fellows Question: vs 34 refers to Ephraim as a whole or just those within Ephraim who are of the 144,000? **[Ephraim has an important part in the Gathering of the last days. This is for the 144k. PR]** Also, I know that there are the blessed high priests and priestesses in the actual 144,000 but are there “assistants” to the gatherers? If yes, Would those come from Ephraim or a different tribe? **[There are no assistants to the Gatherers, only assistants to the Lord. All who come unto Christ will assist in one way or another when Zion is established. PR]**

Isaiah 12 – He Hath Done Excellent Things – 2 Nephi 22:1-6

1 And in that day thou shalt say: O Lord, I will praise thee; though thou wast angry with me thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me. **[Isaiah declares that when Zion is redeemed the House of Israel will praise their God and He will be in their midst.]**

2 Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid; for the Lord Jehovah is my strength and my song; he also has become my salvation.

3 Therefore, with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation. **[Draw knowledge and great blessings of eternal deliverance from my Lord.]**

4 And in that day shall ye say: Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

5 Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things; this is known in all the earth.

6 Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion; for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee. **[This is the Second Comforter]**

Every prophet since the beginning has looked forward to the Lord’s return when the earth is changed and made holy. The most incredible moment will be when we finally know just how much “he hath done excellent things” and we “declare his doings among the people.”

The history of the earth is an intricate tapestry of God’s intervention for the saving of souls in His Father’s Kingdom. He has been in every detail. You have no idea how much so, for in that day you may have to pick your jaw up off the floor when you realize how perfectly every piece of the puzzle, every careful detail of what the Lord did, is finally revealed. You will even come to

know how your Lord and Savior carefully intervened in your life in a personal and tangible way and you didn't even know.

Questions and Comments:

“HE has been in every detail” I think that is the message from prophets I love the most. I personally glean so much hope from hearing that beautiful truth. What you wrote there causes wonderment and reflection. It's a very very good thing!

This is POWERFUL....I recently listened to the song “Daughter Arise” from the Women at the Well soundtrack and started shaking, crying and my heart was pounding like crazy.... That's probably a SMALL GLIMPSE of what I will feel.

Yes, there is so much hope in this. It's that kind of hope that brings deep reflection and from that reflection a wonderful and pure fountain of gratitude for what the Lord has done seen and unseen bursts forward and brings a great light. Hallelujah I say. Praise His name!

Isaiah 13 – End of Babylon – 2 Nephi 23:1-22

- 1 The burden [**judgments against**] of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.
- 2 Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain [**Let everyone know this is a Blessed people**], exalt the voice unto them [**raise your voices**], shake [**wave the sign**] the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.
- 3 I have commanded my sanctified ones [**People of Zion**], I have also called my mighty ones [**the Gatherers**], for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness. [**The Lord's anger is not upon His people.**]
- 4 The noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a great people, a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together, the Lord of Hosts mustereth the hosts [**angels of destruction**] of the battle.
- 5 They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, yea, the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land. [**Most of the major destructions of the last days will come from events related to things outside the earth's atmosphere causing havoc upon our planet.**]
- 6 Howl ye, for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.
- 7 Therefore shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt [**without hope**];
- 8 And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames. [**like the deer in the headlights**]
- 9 Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.
- 10 For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine. [**After the other tribulations the earth will be a void of darkness**]

11 And I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible.

12 I will make a man more precious than fine gold **[The resurrection of the Just]**; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir. **[Rise in perfected glory.]**

13 Therefore, **[to bring this to pass]** I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger. **[The earth shall literally be removed from her orbit.]**

14 And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up; and they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land. **[All nations in chaos not knowing what to do.]**

15 Every one that is proud shall be thrust through; yea, and every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword. **[Wars will ravage the earth.]**

16 Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and their wives ravished. **[death, violence, and destruction]**

17 Behold, I will stir up the Medes **[Army of the Beast]** against them, which shall not regard silver and gold, nor shall they delight in it.

18 Their bows shall also dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eyes shall not spare children.

19 And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah. **[wiped clean and left desolate]**

19 And Babylon **[Kingdom of the Devil]**, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the richest cities, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah. **[destroyed by fire from heaven]**

The earth will literally be bathed in fire before the end.

20 It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there. **[The children of men who follow Satan]**

Babylon was destroyed in 539 BC by Cyrus the Great, the king of Persia. For many hundred of years the land laid desolate until the city was discovered by archeologist in the late nineteenth century.

21 But wild beasts **[Satan's exalted demons]** of the desert **[spirit world]** shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful **[dirty]** creatures **[dark spirits of men]**; and owls shall dwell there **[death]**, and satyrs shall dance there. **[Satan's host of creatures]**

22 And the wild beasts **[exalted demons]** of the islands **[on the earth]** shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons **[sons of perdition]** in their pleasant palaces; and her time is near to come, and her day shall not be prolonged. For I will destroy her speedily; yea, for I will be merciful unto my people, but the wicked shall perish. **[These verses regarding the fall of Babylon are a similitude of the destruction of Satan's kingdom. He will be bound and sent to his place until he is sent to Outer Darkness.]**

Questions and Comments:

When the earth ascends in glory, will a counterpart be left behind with the wicked and Satan?... will this be physical or spiritual, and will Satan reign over it for a Millennium until he is cast out? **[The earth will be without light, a dead planet, where**

Satan will reign, bound to its sphere for a Millennium. Zion will have ascended to a Terrestrial sphere, an orb of light and glory. At the end of the Millennium Satan will have power to tempt the Angels of God one last time before he is sent to Outer Darkness. These things are both physical and spiritual. To God they are the same, however what we consider physical is like dust to God, meaning not permanent. PR]

So right now our mortal life is like dust to Him? Satan will be bound to the Earth sphere for a millennium with his followers? Spirit prison sort of place? While the Earth is being renewed and moved. **[Our mortal bodies are like dust. Our lives are of great importance. Yes, to your other questions. PR]**

In regards to your last paragraph, doesn't Satan and his follower's believe their reward will be reigning over the dead earth after its spirit is resurrected?... I imagine that look's like a telestial planet that's not fun to hang out on.... But on the other hand won't the Second Coming burn the bodies all those telestial beings that don't ascend, leaving just their spirits behind? That's why I asked if it's spiritual or physical. **[They will not resurrect to a physical body. At the end of the seventh dispensation they and Satan will be sucked into outer darkness where they will inhabit space in that realm. PR]**

Isaiah 14 – Satan's Kingdom – 2 Nephi 24:1-32

1 For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob **[people of the covenant]**, and will yet choose **[accept]** Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers **[Gentiles]** shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob. **[This is the modern day Church of the Gentiles (Christianity), where the wheat and tares shall grow together until it is time for the harvest. The church that will rise is the Church of the Firstborn.]**

2 And the people **[Church of the Gentiles]** shall take them and bring them to their place **[to Zion]**; yea, from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise **[land of Israel]**. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids **[They shall come from poor circumstances]**; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors. **[This is occurring today in Israel as they continually fight against Palestine and the rest of the world.]**

This is also a type for how the Remnant of Jacob will be gathered in its own land by the Gentiles in America (Church of the Gentiles).

3 And it shall come to pass in that day **[last days]** that the Lord shall give thee rest, from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve.

4 And it shall come to pass in that day, that thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased! **[The fall of Babylon, the kingdom of the devil is no more!]**

5 The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the scepters of the rulers.

6 He **[Satan]** who smote the people **[Israel and Jacob, The Times of the Gentiles]** in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth. **[no longer pay him attention]**

7 The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet; they break forth into singing. **[Satan is bound and the earth rejoices.]**

8 Yea, the fir trees **[righteous]** rejoice at thee, and also the cedars of Lebanon **[Great ones of God]**, saying: Since thou art laid down no feller is come up against us. **[Satan cannot come against us.]**

9 Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming **[Those that are separated from God (dark spirits) gather against the Lord at his coming.]**, it **[Satan]** stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones **[all the great devils]** of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations. **[sons of perdition]**

10 All they shall speak and say unto thee: Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us? **[They declare, "Satan, thy power is like unto us!" Satan has no power to restrain the purposes of God at that time.]**

11 Thy pomp **[impressiveness]** is brought down to the grave; the noise of thy viols **[acclaim]** is not heard; the worm is spread under thee **[your annihilation is upon thee]**, and the worms cover thee. **[You are no more.]**

12 How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! Art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!

13 For thou hast said in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars **[noble]** of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation **[Council of Elohim]**, in the sides of the north; **[highest abode of Heaven]**

14 I will ascend above the heights of the clouds **[highest of glory]**; I will be like the Most High.

15 Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit. **[Son of Perdition]**

16 They that see thee shall narrowly **[curiously]** look upon thee, and shall consider thee **[consider your story]**, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms?

17 And made the world as a wilderness **[created a kingdom without God]**, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners **[and held the children of light hostage?]**

18 All the kings of the nations **[the Anointed of God]**, yea, all of them, lie in glory, every one of them in his own house. **[Kingdom]**

19 But thou **[Satan]** art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch **[rotten weed]**, and the remnant of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.

20 Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land and slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall never be renowned **[never be exalted, and eternal punishment].**

Isaiah uses language to describe utter defeat and humiliation. This was understood well by the Hebrews.

21 Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their fathers, that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities. **[A prison shall be prepared for Satan's followers, that they shall never rise again.]**

22 For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name **[cut off Satan's hierarchy of evil]**, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.

23 I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water **[Their kingdom shall be like swampland]**; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts. **[The earth's state after it is swept clean of all life.]**

24 The Lord of Hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely as I have thought **[planned]**, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand—

25 That I will bring the Assyrian in my land **[Armies of Armageddon]**, and upon my mountains **[people of Israel]** tread him under foot; then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders. **[The evil armies shall be destroyed.]**

26 This is the purpose that is purposed **[what the Lord intends to accomplish]** upon the whole earth; and this is the hand **[judgment]** that is stretched out upon all nations.

27 For the Lord of Hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul? **[Who can stop the Lord's purpose?]** And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?

28 In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden. **[This should have been the beginning of a new chapter, related to the following verses.]**

29 Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken **[Lord's power seems to be stopped]**; for out of the serpent's root **[Satan's deception]** shall come forth a cockatrice **[something unexpected]**, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent. **[the wrath of God]**

30 And the firstborn of the poor shall feed **[poor in spirit shall see God]**, and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill thy root with famine **[Remove Satan's nourishment]**, and he shall slay thy remnant. **[Take who is left with him.]**

31 Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina **[city of Satan]**, art dissolved; for there shall come from the north a smoke **[a power of God]**, and none shall be alone in his appointed times. **[The Lord is in every detail.]**

32 What shall then answer the messengers of the nations **[people of the earth]**? That the Lord hath founded **[established]** Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

It is interesting how Isaiah describes the fall of Satan's kingdom. Every prophet who has their calling and election made sure is a witness of Satan. Isaiah knew how Satan presented himself to his followers, and thus, was amazed at the great fall of his earthly kingdom in the vision the Lord gave him. If one were to see the Adversary in his perceived glory today it would resemble the great and spacious building Lehi described. It is impressive to the carnal mind, but the fall of it shall be mighty.

You may ask, "Does Satan think he can win this battle?" The fact is, in Satan's mind he has already won. His purpose from the beginning was to establish his own dominion, to bring as many souls as would follow him as possible. He knows how the Everlasting Covenant works. He knew from the beginning that this world would be glorified in Christ's name, and he has lied to his followers. In the end, they will all be cast out with him together, to dwell in Outer Darkness where Lucifer will reign over them forever.

Questions and Comments:

In vs 1, the wheat and tares: are the wheat the Church of the Firstborn (3rd estate and higher)? Are the tares 2nd estate who do not achieve their baptism of fire in this life? Or are the tares the children of men who have not yet selected a side? **[The Church of the Gentiles and the Great and Abominable Church are together until the Gentiles partake of the Everlasting Covenant. At that point they are grafted into the true vine and join the Church of the Firstborn. (3rd Estate) To be considered “fruit” in the Lord’s kingdom is to be amongst the Church of the Firstborn. Tares are those who are amongst the Great and Abominable Church. PR]**

What does this mean? 2 Thessalonians 2:3,4

3Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition; 4Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God. **[This is the rise of the Great and Abominable Church that will herald the arrival of the Anti-Christ before the Second Coming of the Lord. PR]**

I have a question about Satan. Does he have a body. I’ve read that he doesn’t, but if he was a high estate, 4th or higher, I think. Wouldn’t he have a body or was he required to give it up. Thank you for these translations, I’m really enjoying them and learning so much. **[He has, but only a spirit form now. There are some mysteries regarding Satan that I cannot discuss. PR]**

After they are cast out, what is there for Lucifer to reign over? Is there any glory, albeit a dark version of glory? Is outer darkness a planet type place or a ethereal void? **[Outer Darkness is a dimension separate from God’s realm. It exists as a dark mirror image of God’s kingdom going downward forever. It has planets and dominions that are ruled by a hierarchy of evil beings. PR]** Also at the time the earth becomes terrestrialized, does the telestial kingdom cease to exist? If no, where is the telestial kingdom then located? If yes, then there aren’t 3 degrees of glory like the church teaches, correct? **[The Telestial kingdom exists on the outer rim of the galaxy. It is exactly where we are now. The closer one moves toward the center of the galaxy the more glory that abides until you reach the Throne of God. PR]**

Is the organization of the kingdom of darkness or the hierarchy of evil beings follow the same pattern like the heavenly realm organization of Angel? **[It seems to follow it, but I can’t say if it does exactly. PR]**

From v10 All they shall speak and say unto thee: Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us? [They declare, “Satan, thy power is like unto us!” Satan has

no power to restrain the purposes of God at that time.]

Q: Will that position caused hardship to Satan from his own minion? **[They will be surprised how little power he has against God. But Satan will rule them none the less. PR]**

Do you understand what these verses are saying? Moses 5:40, 48

40 And I the Lord said unto him: Whosoever slayeth thee, vengeance shall be taken on him sevenfold. And I the Lord set a mark upon Cain, lest any finding him should kill him. 48 If Cain shall be avenged sevenfold, truly Lamech shall be seventy and seven fold; **[It was not a change of skin color, but a spiritual mark. This curse was multi- generational and by the time Lamech came he proudly declared it would extend forever. It became a line of perdition that would last until the end of the earth's temporal existence. PR]**

Question from the last paragraph: "He knew from the beginning that this world would be glorified in Christ's name, and he has lied to his followers. In the end they will all be cast out with him together, to dwell in Outer Darkness where Lucifer will reign over them forever." This seems to indicate, though not stated, that Satan's followers, including those who have followed him in ignorance because of the great darkness that veils the earth, will have had ample opportunity to hear the Gospel of Jesus Christ in it's purity and to know that Jesus is the Christ, without the current oppression and opposition. Isn't that the only way they could become full sons of perdition? **[That is correct. Most of his followers will be perdition, having made a covenant to him. However, a Son of Perdition is one who knows Jesus intimately and makes a covenant as well as sheds the innocent blood of another anointed servant. PR]**

Are Satan and Lucifer the same person? ...or are Satan, Lucifer, and Cain the dark 'god-head' ? **[Satan and Lucifer are titles. Each are separate individuals like the Father and the Son. PR]**

Also at the time the earth becomes terrestrialized, does the telestial kingdom cease to exist? If no, where is the telestial kingdom then located? If yes, then there aren't 3 degrees of glory like the church teaches, correct? [The Telestial kingdom exists on the outer rim of the galaxy. It is exactly where we are now. The closer one moves toward the center of the galaxy the more glory that abides until you reach the Throne of God.

PR] Sorry, so... does that mean that the telestial kingdom is planetless? My understanding is that this beautiful earth moves on until she is finally celestialized. ...? **[The earth will be bathed in fire (D&C 43:32, 88:26, 3 Nephi 26:3, Mormon 9:2) and be moved out of its place. (D&C 29:23, Ether 13:8-9) The suns are also like planets, just of a different element, and they grow more glorious as they near the same glory of God. PR]**

Does the Sun increase in glory because the Earth fulfilled her mission of condescending and providing an abode for Heavenly Father's children to become exalted, or is there other criteria involved as well? Are the Earth and Sun always connected and ascend

together, or were they just paired together for this eternal round? **[Not all creations exalt in their estates at the same time. PR]**

The closer one moves toward the center of the galaxy the more glory that abides until you reach the Throne of God. Does this mean each galaxy belongs to a separate Heavenly Father? **[It is part of the Elohim. In this is a mystery. PR]**

Any suggestions on how one could best determine if they are of Israel, or adopted in? My patriarchal blessing says I am descendant of Joseph via Ephraim, and that I have inherited that birthright blessing. Blood or adopted? Thx **[Many people of English descent are from the blood of Ephraim, but knowing our ancestry in many cases can only be known by personal revelation. People who are of the House of Israel are a choice covenant group who made arrangements with God before they were born to receive His Gospel. These are the Elect, and the desire to know Him burns in their hearts. During the Times of the Gentiles they are not limited to only blood lines. The Lord has dispersed these choice spirits throughout the world in this last dispensation. PR]**

Nephi Explains Isaiah – 2 Nephi 25:1-30

1 Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand **[Not just us, they too had difficulty.];** for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews. **[A manner of using symbol to express meaning. Not just the Jews, but other eastern countries.]**

2 For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; **[Nephi did not elaborate upon the corruptions to his people that brought the downfall of Israel.]** for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

3 Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, **[speaking to us]** that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

4 Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. **[Herein lies the key to understanding Isaiah, or any other cryptic scripture: you must be shown via the Spirit the Lord its meaning for you. Prophecy is closely aligned to the spirit of revelation. See A Witness of the Gifts of the Spirit, pg. 118-125]** But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn. **[Nephi delights in revealing the truth behind the words of God. Often scripture can be taken out of context or interpreted falsely by uninspired men.]**

5 Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews. **[Nephi offers his credibility for understanding Isaiah and the manner of the Jews.]**

6 But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them. **[Nephi has explained Isaiah in reference to the geography using his knowledge of the land surrounding Jerusalem.]**

7 But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass. **[Some of Isaiah's prophecies have occurred, others are yet to come. We have much to look forward to.]**

8 Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them. **[When the Remnant of Jacob, the Native Americans of our time, are finally associated with the BofM record, it will be of great worth to them. This will remarkably not come from any of the Mormon denominations, but directly from the remnant of the Church of the Gentiles, carried by the House of Ephraim to them. It will truly be a marvelous work and a wonder! In this lies a mystery.]**

9 And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord. **[Part of the purpose of Isaiah, Nephi, and even Joseph Smith.]**

10 Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem **[Prophets who remained in Jerusalem continued to preach their destruction.]**; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

11 And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance. **[This came about 530 BC as the Jews reestablished their kingdom in Jerusalem.]**

12 But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks. **[Recap of Isaiah's prophecies.]**

13 Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name. **[A very precise prophecy regarding Jesus resurrection not seen in other Old Testament writings.]**

14 And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church. **[Destruction of Jerusalem under Roman Titus in 70AD.]**

15 Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations. **[Making the point that it will not be Babylon that will scatter the Jews. Nephi sees the Great Jewish Diaspora that Isaiah prophesied.]**

16 And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things. **[The first Messianic Jews were amongst the original followers of Christ which were the catalyst for the early growth of Christianity amongst the Gentiles. Not until the late nineteenth century did there begin to be a Messianic Christian movement amongst the Jews. It was small, and yet has continued to grow until even now. Most Jews will not believe until the day the Lord sets His foot upon the Mount of Olives and says as He shows the marks in His hands, “This I received in the house of my friends.” Zechariah 13:6]**

17 And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men. **[It began with the Balfour Declaration in 1917 and culminated in a Jewish State in 1947. It has now been over 70 years since the establishment of Israel. Nephi says that the Lord will “proceed to do something wonderful in this world. What is that? It is will be the final gathering of the House of Israel!]**

18 Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them **[at that time]**, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people **[There will be an actual, physical false Messiah that will reveal himself before the Lord’s coming. He will perform miracles and call for world peace and unity toward him. He will bring only the Kingdom of the Beast to power.];** for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

19 For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God. **[Nephi was not the only one to prophecy regarding the name of Christ, Yeshua HaMashiach, translated for us as Jesus Christ.]**

20 And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations **[group of people, the tribes]** after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved. **[It is critical to understand the reality of the statement that only through Christ can a man be saved. It is a popular philosophy amongst many today that all religions and spirituality lead to the same result. This is false.]**

21 Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand. **[The descendants of Joseph in America, the Native Americans, are of the House of Israel, of the line of Joseph who was sold into Egypt.]**

22 Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

23 For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do. **[This is an important distinction of the doctrine of grace. Grace is a gift to us that God gives freely to those who will take it. This gift of has two parts: it will save us from physical death, and also spiritual death. The part that all men shall partake (assuming they don't bind themselves to Satan) is salvation from physical death. Spiritual salvation comes by yielding our hearts unto Christ "after all we can do." This is where a broken heart and contrite spirit have a part. We must fully submit to God to receive the fullness of His grace, even Eternal Life.]**

24 And, notwithstanding **[by following through]** we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses **[which points to Him]**, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

25 For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath **[will]** become dead unto us **[The law of Moses will have an end.]**, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith **[born again new in Christ, the third estate]**; yet we keep the law because of the commandments. **[And therefore, we keep the Law of Moses.]**

26 And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins. **[All this that our children may understand.]**

27 Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law **[that it has an end]**; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away. **[The Mosaic Law was for the purpose of preparing the Lord's people to know Christ when He came to them. Once they "know" Him the law is dead, because they are then a new creature and have the gift of the Holy Ghost. However, they are expected to keep the commandments of God according to His word.]**

28 And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny **[reject]** him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.

29 And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out. **[Another description of a broken heart and contrite spirit.]**

30 And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses. **[Until Christ comes, all the ceremonies of the temple according the Law of Moses, must continue.]**

Questions and Comments:

What is the relationship of the Remnant of Jacob to the house of Ephraim? And when you use the word Gentile are you meaning not Jewish? **[Gentiles are those who have not partaken of the Lord's Covenant. The Remnant of Jacob are the Nephites and Lamanites, particularly the Native Americans. Ephraim are those who are mingled among the nations of the world to help gather the Tribes of Israel in the last days. They are considered Gentile by blood, but are not by spirit. In this is a mystery. PR]**

8 Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them. [When the Remnant of Jacob, the Native Americans of our time, are finally associated with the BofM record, it will be of great worth to them. This will remarkably not come from any of the Mormon denominations, but directly from the remnant of the Church of the Gentiles, carried by the House of Ephraim to them. It will truly be a marvelous work and a wonder! In this lies a mystery.] I feel like we are living in a day similar to that of Mary, Zacharias, and Elisabeth – waiting for the Lord's hand to be revealed in a humble, small way at first, but with power nonetheless... What are we to be looking for among the Native American population that will mark the Lord's recovery of them? Will this not occur until great tribulations sweep the Earth? Or will this begin earlier that we might

be looking and watching? What events are there to help watching for? American attacks and market crash, like described in your book? **[The Native Americans will rise during a time of great desolation. We will know it when it is occurring and the prophecies of Isaiah and Revelation will be easily understood by those who are assembled in Zion. PR]**

Who are ‘the remnant of the Church of the Gentiles’? ...Non-covenant Christians that survive ? ... and covenant LDS Ephraim will have accepted the new record and will carry it to the Native Americans? **[They are those who come unto Christ after departing from the Church of the Gentiles, or in spite of their association with this church. PR]**

Ephraim...are considered Gentile by blood, but are not by spirit...” Are you allowed to say more about this? We are to help ‘gather,’ but are mostly not “THE gatherers” ? **[Many of the gatherers will come from Ephraim. Most of Ephraim is mixed with the blood of the gentiles at this point. The Lord in most cases today identifies Israel by spirit, meaning these are those who made the Everlasting Covenant before birth. PR]**

Is the doctrine of Grace relative? “After all I can do” ... is there a scale there? Surely others farther or closer to Christ can do so much more than those who are just beginning on the path but who are also earnestly striving to know Him. Is it correct to say I am saved after all I personally can do, which is NOT as much as others a lot farther along the path can do? **[Grace is directly related to the degree in which we have ascended. It is not according to how much we exercise works, such as healing, prophecy, etc. Those are the byproducts of righteousness. This is why charity is the greatest of all, because it is an ascension from the 2nd to the 3rd estate, the virtue required to receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. The gifts of the Spirit are for all who exercise faith in Christ. The more we know Him, the more we are capable of exercising in His name. Matt 7:21-23**

PR] Or does Grace reset every time one reaches a new level (where much is given much is required)...? As in, ok... you now can hear my voice giving you Yes/No answers, great job... but you are not saved now because now you need to be able to hear full sentences. That seems pernicious and off... but unfortunately how I have viewed Grace for years. It’s been exhausting to be honest.

PR said “This is why charity is the greatest of all, because it is an ascension from the 2nd to the 3rd estate, the virtue required to receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.” So is charity a quality we learn to develop or it is truly a gift from God that at a specific moment He bestows upon us? I’m trying to figure out my part vs Heavenly Father’s part. Am I supposed to be learning to love everyone including my enemies with a perfect love (while I am still struggling to even love myself) or do I just pray for that greatest gift and wait for it to be given to me? Are there things I need to be working on as I prepare to receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost or do I just receive it when the time is right? Is there such a thing as earning the desired blessings? How important are our works? Or is there nothing we can do as it is all based upon the merits of Christ? Thanks for helping me

understand. **[Charity is a gift which is bestowed upon us. The fruits of charity are what many confuse to be charity itself, based upon most people's definition. You ask about earning a desired blessing. All gifts of the Spirit are bestowed upon us according to our faith, which means we trust in the Lord as we seek revelation and act upon it. PR]**

Warning to the Church – 2 Nephi 26:1-33

1 And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do. **[Nephi prophesies of Christ's coming to the Nephites, because he saw it in vision.]**

2 For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.

3 And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth **[When the night came it would not be dark.]**, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish **[The terrible destructions and three days without light.]**; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them. **[God's judgments]**

4 Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

5 And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

6 And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts. **[Nephi sees these destructions about 600 years before they occur.]**

7 O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth **[overwhelms]** me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

8 But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish. **[This is a type for how the righteous will withstand the day of judgment in the last days.]**

9 But the Son of Righteousness **[Christ]** shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness. **[4th Nephi]**

10 And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that

it shall come to pass; and they sell themselves for naught [**give up their blessings for nothing**]; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell. [**The exact same thing is occurring in our today.**]

11 For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieveth my soul.

12 And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews [**the last chapter**], that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God; [**the coming Church of the Gentiles**]

13 And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith. [**the Times of the Gentiles**]

14 But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things [**these records**] forth unto the children of men.

15 After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles [**after the Indian Nations have fallen to the new people which inhabit the land**]; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten. [**there will be a change and blessing brought forth**]

16 For those who shall be destroyed [**Native American ancestors**] shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him [**Moroni**] power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust. [**the records**]

17 For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God. [**the fallen Nephites and Lamanites**]

18 Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly— [**The remaining Nephites shall be destroyed.**]

19 And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief [**Native Americans**] shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.

20 And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor. [**Any Church that inhibits the gifts of the Spirit (miracles), and preaches the words of their own ministers, and thereby increases their gain and control, is fallen.**]

21 And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice. **[churches that compete against each other]**

22 And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever. **[This is the state of today's Church of the Gentiles. Such secret combinations are not known to the people, but the Lord knows.]**

23 For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness. **[The Lord does not work amongst his church in secret, this is where Satan performs his darkness. (This is not a condemnation of temple ordinances, as such information is readily available.)]**

24 He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation. **[No person is denied baptism for any reason if they desire it.]**

25 Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price. **[No emissary of the Lord is justified to deny entrance to the kingdom of God based upon previous sin, habits, or allegiances. Only one requirement; do you accept Jesus Christ as your Savior? If the person performing the baptism is accepted of God and the one receiving has real intent, it is honored of the Lord.]**

26 Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

27 Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people **[Church of Christ]** that they should persuade all men to repentance. **[turn their hearts to God]**

28 Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men **[mankind]** are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden. **[This is the purpose of the Times of the Gentiles, to bring the Gospel to the entire world.]**

29 He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion. **[This is a powerful condemnation against the Church of the Gentiles. If they preach for the purpose of promoting themselves in any way, to garner the praise of others, or to gain anything other than to inspire repentance of the people, they are exercising priestcraft. Priestcraft is like being a professional clergy, where one is supported by the funds given to the Church, or by money made indirectly because of their position of authority. What does it mean to seek the welfare of Zion? A Zion people are those that know the Lord, they are equal in spirit and love, without any form of pecking order, they seek a relationship with Jesus that is uninhibited. There is no place upon the accessible world today where a Zion society exists. But it is coming.]**

30 Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love **[Christ's love]**. And except they should have charity they were nothing. Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish. **[The opposite of priestcraft, where the person exercises love according to their own pleasure, is to have charity, where all love is performed by the Spirit for the welfare of Zion; or in other words, to bring others to Christ.]**

31 But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish. **[Strong words against those who seek their own interests instead of bringing others to Christ.]**

32 And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish. **[A strong emphasis on the Ten Commandments. Even though the Mosaic Law is ended in Christ today, we are still reminded to remember to keep these commandments.]**

33 For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men **[There are those who claim that some of these established sins are justified if the Lord commands it. If any man preaches this he is false. If they use rare examples from the scriptures, including Abraham and Nephi, they do not understand the Lord or His ways. Be careful.]**; and he doeth nothing save it be plain **[simply understood]** unto the children of men **[Gentiles]**; and he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness **[gift of the Holy Ghost]**; and he denieth none that come unto him **[caveat is that they must come]**, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

Many who read this chapter will make conclusions in their minds who these words are condemning. The Church of the Gentiles includes all churches which inhibit people from coming unto Christ. I do not specify their names because it is your responsibility to pray and seek personal revelation regarding these things.

When the Lord reveals himself in the last days He will separate the wheat from the tares and all hidden things shall be made known. If you seek to know truth now, it will be given unto you according to your faith by the power of the Holy Ghost.

Questions and Comments:

It sounds as if ALL of the well known Christian churches among the Gentiles qualify as practicing priestcraft and are condemned. Is there a church of the Gentiles that isn't fallen? If it only matters that the person performing the baptism is accepted of God and that the person receiving has real intent, then does it matter what church you belong to? **[There are only two churches. "And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the**

church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.” 1 Nephi 14:10 PR]

Thank you so much for doing this scripture project! I have been waiting to arrive at these chapters. Last year the Lord had me spend 2 months reading 2 Nephi chapters 26, 27 and 28 over and over again. I went to church, served in my Primary calling and studied 2 Nephi 26-28 every night, finally getting to the point where I was reading each word carefully, trying to decipher what the Lord DESPERATELY wanted me to know – like He was excited for me to know! Then one day the Lord opened my mind in an instant and I understood what 2 Nephi 26:20 and 29 (read in that order) were saying. I had made such mental excuses, fastened in place by repeated teachings, that it took two months of reading the same words for my mind to open just enough for the Lord to download the truth. What you shared here is a second witness. Thank you

I love this Chapter. It's one that should cause us to look in word and ask, Is it I. **[Thank you for commenting, Jim. I had to edit this part of your comment because I don't want to name any institutions, people, or links in the comments. PR]**

In V.29 you noted “there is no place in the accessible world” where a zion society is in place, does this refer only to those in the north in the earth fissures or also to Enoch's zion as being ultimately considered part of this earth? **[There is only one city in the world living a Zion society. It is not the lost ten tribes or the City of Enoch (not on this world). It is a small Native American group unknown to the general public. (PR)]**

I promise I'm not trying to argue, just find understanding. I'm a little confused, clearly God commanded Nephi to kill Laban. I know that Nephi did not do it out of self-gratification at all (had he done so it would have clearly been incorrect), but he still did it outside of the established laws of the time. So God does command people to do acts (while this is extremely rare and we should never ever go looking for exceptions) that would at least appear to us as murder or lying (or at least with-holding truth with the intent to deceive). The moment this is done with self-gratification or for self I understand it is wrong. In fact, you better well be sure that the command comes from God in these instances – which means one should know the voice of God. Being unwilling to do anything the Lord asks seems as if one wouldn't truly have a broken heart and contrite spirit willing to submit to the Father in all things? I know our heart should absolutely abhor sins too, but there seems to be a fine line here and it is to teach us something otherwise it wouldn't be found in the scriptures. Am I wresting scriptures? Thank you for your response. **[You are correct, George. In the scripture cited it uses the word “murder.” The judgment of God is never murder. There are those who believe they can break the listed commandments in verse 32 with impunity. Murder and whoredoms are never justified for righteousness by God. My comment was focused on such people. PR]**

Much joy felt in exercising faith just now that there is a city on the earth today who are a

Zion society. I have yearned to be a part of that for a couple of years now. Separately, why are you saying vs 23 is not a condemnation of temple ordinances? **[There are those outside of the LDS faith who would think this, so I wanted my thoughts to be clear that I was not referring to that. I am a member of the LDS faith, yet this blog is for all seeking Christ and to be a servant. The LDS ordinances are often considered hidden or secret to those outside this church, but they have much light in them. Some day the fullness of the temple experience will be offered in Zion, and all that has been removed, changed, or altered shall be restored. PR]**

Thank you! I really love what you have clarified regarding baptism in verses 24-25. Based on that, could you help me understand what it means in Moroni 6, to bring forth fruit worthy of baptism? Is it stating that all the elders, priests, and teachers were required to have a broken heart and contrite spirit to be (re)baptized the same fruit required of Any other person? Or is it referring to another fruit? And what does it mean to witness unto the church that they had repented? **[To witness to the church is to declare by your words and actions that you had given your heart to Christ. This is the fruit which is worthy of baptism. PR]** 1 And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

2 Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins. Thanks again

2 Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins. ——— I had wondered this also. How could I witness unto the church that I had truly repented of all my sins and possessed a broken and sincere heart? About 4 months ago I was asking the Lord with much intensity how I should know or come to know about this witness to the church. I didn't receive an immediate answer on my knees but later that morning I felt impressed to follow a cross reference in the scriptures to a passage in Isaiah. It was chapter 55: 6 ¶ Seek ye the Lord while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near:

7 Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the Lord, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon. It was such a kind response and it resonated all through me. I had truly forsaken my old ways about 2 years prior. I had returned unto the Lord. Lately, my answer is unfolding more completely these past couple of weeks and it's humbling. There are yet more significant ways for me to return to the Lord that I am learning about.

For a Zion society to exist, there must needs be a prophet to raise them up I think. Is that the Davidic Servant? Or did this small group of people accomplish this without a prophet? **[There will be multiple “servants” to help establish Zion. The Davidic Servant will be the principle servant to save the House of Israel.**

The Joseph Servant will raise up the New Jerusalem. Yes, there will be many prophets and servants before Zion is established.] How long has this Zion society of Native Americans been in this state? **[Since long before Europeans came to America.]** Have you been among them? **[Yes]**

I take it these warnings apply to current practices in **[I had to remove this because I don't include any names of institutions or people in comments. PR]** as well? **[You will need to seek personal revelation whether that is the case. PR]** Also your reference to a Native American group that is living as a Zion society is very interesting. Can you share any more information about that? It coincides with what the Mentinah Archives prophecy about a group of Native Americans called Nemenhah. **[I cannot add any more information at this time. I have heard of the Mentinah, but have never studied it.]**

BofM Prophecy – 2 Nephi 27:1-35

1 But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—**[As in the times of Noah, so shall it be in the last days when Christ returns. Luke 17:26]**

Here, Nephi adds the words of Isaiah 29:

2 And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

3 And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion. **[They think that there is nothing to prevent them from taking what they want, and then they see that they have no power.]**

4 For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink. **[To be intoxicated is to lack clarity of what is happening around them. They usually feel content and euphoric, yet stumble.]**

5 For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity. **[They will have no understanding of their situation because they reject the light.]**

6 And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered. **[The entire Book of Mormon, including the sealed portion.]**

7 And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

8 Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them. **[Not revealed until Zion is established.]**

9 But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another; **[speaking of Joseph Smith]**

10 But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof. **[This will occur when First Zion is established before the Joseph Servant builds the New Jerusalem.]**

11 And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth. **[This will literally occur in the future in Zion and her stakes.]**

12 Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein. **[Just as it is documented in Church History.]**

13 And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God **[Eight Witnesses]**, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

14 Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God!

15 But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

16 And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

17 And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

18 Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

19 Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

20 Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee. **[These verses reflect a broad view amongst scholars that criticize the Book of Mormon, and the skepticism that exists for it amongst academia and the Christian world.]**

21 Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work. **[The Lord uses the simple, uneducated, and unassuming to bring about His works. He never uses brilliant scholars, or those in high places to establish His kingdom. In the last days, as things begin to heat up, expect to find the servants amongst the humble and unassuming.]**

22 Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, **[This was the command to Joseph Smith]** until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom **[foresight]** to reveal all things unto the children of men.

Today, the record of the plates including the sealed portion are stored in the Hill Shim until the Lord is ready to bring it forth to be translated, along with many other records. It will not be announced to the world when this is occurring, but it will coincide with the establishment of Zion.

23 For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith. **[That is a powerful statement to consider. He only works amongst us “according to our faith.” What does that mean? Faith is receiving revelation and acting upon it. How many receive impressions, or nudges, and dismiss the call to do things? Unless we are proactive in bringing about righteousness we are left to our own devices. Now more than ever the Lord needs servants who are actively seeking Him, which means we are seeking to know His will for us and our families.]**

24 And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him: **[The Lord shall say to those who shall receive the Book of Mormon, and who is that?]**

25 Forasmuch as this people **[Those who identify with the Book of Mormon.]** draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—**[The Lord says that in the last days there shall be a people that follow the words of the Book of Mormon, and shall say good things; however their hearts will be far from Him. This is because they follow the precepts of men.]**

Those are hard words for any to hear that would be counted among such, but the Lord judges the heart. What is He looking for? A broken heart and a contrite spirit. What is that? Full submission to the Lord and only Him. How is that accomplished? The answer is coming in chapter 32 of 2 Nephi.

26 Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid. **[This has yet to occur in its fullness.]**

27 And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! **[They do not govern by revelation.]** And their works are in the dark **[They act secretly.];** and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter’s clay. **[Translation: “We know**

what we are doing and we can change things as we wish according to our desire.”] But behold, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding? **[You cannot deny the foundation of your faith.]**

28 But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon **[the origins]** shall be turned into a fruitful field **[shall gather righteousness in its return]**; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest. **[and the righteous shall be many]**

29 And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness. **[Those who could not understand the truth because of unbelief and false traditions shall see the light.]**

30 And the meek **[Those who seek Christ, repentant]** also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor **[in spirit, those with a broken heart and contrite spirit]** among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel. **[see the Beatitudes, 3 Nephi 12:3-11]**

31 For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one **[the Adversary]** is brought to naught **[nothing]**, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;

32 And they that make a man an offender for a word **[the church that disciplines those for disagreeing]**, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate **[seek to catch those who call them to repentance]**, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught. **[to reject those that are righteous as nothing]**

33 Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob **[the people of the Covenant]**: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale. **[You shall not be abandoned to disgrace.]**

34 But when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify **[be made holy in]** my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob **[Second Comforter]**, and shall fear **[reverence/worship]** the God of Israel.

35 They also that erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and they that murmured shall learn doctrine. **[And those that once did not understand the true nature of God and His holiness will be brought to the truth.]**

In this chapter Nephi sounds a lot like Isaiah in his manner of writing for the verses not included in Isaiah. I don't know if the brass plates included these verses, or if Nephi added according to his personal revelation. He uses metaphor and reproves the wicked in the last days. The words are direct, sobering, yet filled with hope.

Questions and Comments:

Vs 25 “And their fear towards me.. is taught by precepts of men”.

I have never noticed that and I've read this verse so many times. I think that I am familiar with that fear. A lot to think about there.

Vs 27: And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay.

Do you think that this is addressing those religions out there that rewrite their history to

fit a more acceptable/protective/faith promoting history? **[I think that would apply too, yes. PR]**

Vs 34: what do you think the difference is between the Holy one of Jacob vs the Holy one of Israel? **["Holy One of Jacob" is toward those who have partaken of the fullness of the Covenant. "The Holy One of Israel" is the God of the Hebrews, speaking to those born in the Covenant, and have not yet received a fullness. PR]**

With each chapter expounded upon in your blog makes letting go of spiritual halting false traditions more easy. Grateful for the inspiration you share which resonates with light and joy for me...

Vs 34: what do you think the difference is between the Holy one of Jacob vs the Holy one of Israel? **["Holy One of Jacob" is toward those who have partaken of the fullness of the Covenant. "The Holy One of Israel" is the God of the Hebrews, speaking to those born in the Covenant, and have not yet received a fullness. PR]**

I had not heard of "Holy one of Jacob" before...

All sorts of new things jumping out at me going through this study with you and others. Really beneficial, many thanks!

So... but now I have to ask this as a follow up: Jacob has not fulfilled the covenant yet until he has his name changed to Israel...

Wouldn't it be reversed from what you clarified just now?

(Jacob: no fullness yet, hasn't wrestled with the angel yet. Israel: fullness evidenced by name change and covenant).

Thanks again. I'm probably wrong but thought I would ask again. Maybe the name change from Jacob to Israel after the wrestle with the angel isn't a sign of covenant blessing receipt like I think it is. **[Those are good questions. It is confusing because Jacob and Israel are used interchangeably so much in scripture. In the context of how the phrase is used it can simply mean of the family of Jacob, the twelve tribes, or it can mean those that have received the fullness of the covenant. Israel means "to come to God," as I was told. This is the meaning of the covenant of Abraham that his posterity inherited. Jacob was the first of his immediate family to receive a fullness, and therefore I often look for that connection when it reads "House of Jacob." My best advice is to follow the Spirit when discerning how the phrase is used.]**

I had a thought today that was intense. I saw [Edit] Basically "Eli" had the scriptures stored within HIM, however through his journey he carried a "book" that he evil ones wanted possession of. In the end, goodness prevails and he ends up translating scriptures (Bible, books, etc.) which had been stored up in his "memory" that had been preserved. Does stored up in Hill Shem mean buried in the ground OR can it mean stored up within individuals? Sorry, if this is random but I'm wondering if you can elaborate? **[There is a record that is stored within each of us, but there is an actual Hill Shim where the sacred records are still kept. PR]**

From vs 19: "the Lord God will deliver AGAIN the book and the words thereof to him

that is not learned“ This seems to say that a new servant in our day will be given the record to translate. Does this new servant translate only the sealed portion? Or do we get the Book of Lehi and everything translated from the BoM again? **[There will be a servant to translate it, and other servants to assist in the translation of others beside the sealed portion. There are many records in that Hill. It is not the Joseph Servant who will do this, but another.]** Is this servant the Lamanite Joseph servant who does this sealed portion translation?

In response to M’s comment you said there is a record stored within each of us. What is this record?... and is it related to the white seer stone with our names written on it? (D&C 130:10 and Revelation) **[It is a record of who we are, what we are, and our deeds. I don’t know how it is stored or if there is any connection to the Urim and Thummim stone. PR]**

When we depart this life, do we regain the memories **[Edit]** what we have learned? Are we allowed to ask questions about our **[Edit]** when we visit the Savior (Second Comforter) but are still in this life? **[We allowed to ask any question; however, there are times when it is discouraged. Knowing who we are before birth can be a distraction to our current mission. Some topics I am not to discuss openly. This is why I have edited a few parts of your question. PR]**

28 But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon [the origins] shall be turned into a fruitful field [shall gather righteousness in its return]

Can you explain who Lebanon [the origins] is? **[The “origins” are the original House of Israel when it was pure and white, before it was corrupted. I see it more in their original spiritual state when they first took upon themselves the Everlasting Covenant before the foundation of the world. Lebanon was considered the source of the great timber used to build Solomon’s Temple, great beauty and wealth. PR]**

Vs 25: “...and [removed] their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men...” When people who identify with the Book of Mormon are found to be removing the fear of the Lord- do you think this means being in a state of spiritual apathy and indifference towards exercising faith? And having this lack of fear towards the Lord... being taught by the precepts of men, “ALL is well in Zion”... type of a mindset? **[“The fear of God” is the same as focusing on the word of God. I think your definitions are good. It can lead to apathy, indifference, and seeking the pleasing words of men if one does not focus on what the Lord is telling them. PR]**

Did Joseph Smith read and understand the sealed portion of the BOM? If so do you know when and how did that affect his understanding and teaching of the gospel? **[The sealed portion of the BofM remained sealed. Joseph knew much of the truths contained therein, but not all. PR]**

A Harsh Rebuke – 2 Nephi 28:1-32

1 And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained [**compelled**] me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass. [**It is a curious thing to be constrained by the Spirit. When you feel the Hand of God take over you it is impossible for many to resist as you know you are doing the Lord's will.**]

2 And the things which shall be written out of the book [**Book of Mormon**] shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel. [**This book has hardly yet fulfilled its mission.**]

3 For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord— [**The push today amongst many Christian sects is to be unified. Few claim to be the Lord's only true church.**]

4 And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance. [**How many attempt to prove their scriptural understanding through scholarly research? They study history, geography, language, or the words of men, and yet do not have the Holy Ghost to inspire them. And, most people accept there teachings.**]

5 And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men; [**Most every Christian church I know believes that God has passed His power to men. That new revelation, the kind that Joseph gave, is not necessary as before. We are told to hearken to the words of men, and this is idolatry.**]

6 Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work. [**How often are miracles dismissed amongst the followers of Christ today? How would those you associate with today react if you stood before them and bore witness to angelic visitations, the power of healing, tongues, prophecy, and above all – that Christ has visited you with His glory and you KNOW that He lives! These are the miracles witnessed throughout the BofM and those that Moroni and others testify to us.**]

7 Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us. [**How many believe that they are good enough to merit eternal blessings?**]

8 And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry [**celebrate**]; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin [**“You are a Christian, so relax!”**]; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die [**“God doesn't expect you to be perfect, so relax!”**]; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God. [**“What do you think the Atonement is for? Relax!”**]

Too often the focus of many is to do busy tasks that supposedly bring us to God and merit forgiveness. What God wants is our hearts, to repent, which means to desire Him more than anything. To know Him and serve Him by receiving the Holy Ghost and acting upon the revelations we are given. By so doing we become new in Christ and our actions display a love toward all men as we keep the Lords commandments and exercise charity. God cannot justify even the smallest sin, yet if we are repentant, we will be forgiven.

9 Yea, and there shall be many [almost every ecclesiastical leader] which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts [pride], and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord [do not council with the Lord and seek revelation]; and their works shall be in the dark. [inspired by the Adversary]

10 And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them. [In modern times I think of Joseph Smith.]

11 Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted. [Nephi says “all,” not just some.]

12 Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up. [What started as pure has been polluted by pride, and the false teachings of men.]

13 They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries [What is a sanctuary? It is a magnificent church building that is very costly.]; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart [those who seek Christ only], because in their pride they are puffed up. [How do they persecute others by how they dress, or what they build? Because they set themselves up as a light.]

14 They wear stiff necks [unteachable] and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms [sexual sin amongst the leadership of these Christian churches], they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led [even the humble followers of Christ fail], that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men. [Because they lean on the understanding of men, and follow the arm of flesh.]

15 O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty [Not Nephi’s words, but the Lord.], for they shall be thrust down to hell!

16 Wo unto them that turn aside the just [the distinction between right and wrong] for a thing of naught and revile against [to rebuke and condemn] that which is good, and say that it is of no worth! [No value for today.] For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.

17 But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.

The Book of Mormon up until now has been almost exclusively studied by the LDS Church and other Mormon denominations. It is written for us. It’s message now is for us. In the future it will become a great ensign for the

Remnant of Israel. They will easily see the truth behind Nephi's words regarding the Church of the Gentiles. The message is sobering and we should ask the Lord to help us to understand.

18 But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof. **[This is the conglomerate of all churches that do not lead us to Christ.]**

19 For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish; **[How will Satan's kingdom shake? This is the purpose of the judgments that God will pour out upon the world in the near future. Men will choose to repent or not.]**

20 For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.

21 And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well **[If you ever hear anyone, a neighbor, family member, ecclesiastical leader, celebrity, or scholar, tell you that God's church (Zion) is doing well, you must know that this is false. Zion is not well until the day you are standing with your feet firmly planted in that holy city and Christ is with you.]**—and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.

22 And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance. **[I have heard more of this talk amongst those who identify as Christians, and it sickens my heart. Many view religious philosophy as a symbolic metaphor for a spiritual connection to the universe. Many who become disillusioned with church choose this path, and it is very popular in today's secular world.]**

23 Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell **[caught in a cycle]**, and the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment. **[At some point they will be divided and organized according to the justice of God.]**

24 Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion! **[Zion is both a state of mind and a place of refuge. It is the status or dwelling of those who have been glorified, or received the gift of the Holy Ghost. They are prepared to enter the presence of God. To be at "ease" is to not feel an urgency to prepare.]**

25 Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well! **[Because it has not yet been established don't think that God is pleased with any institution upon the face of the earth.]**

26 Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men **[pontifications of people as they read the words of other people, share stories, and platitudes]**, and denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost! **[They do not speak by the power of revelation and prophecy, but rely on prepared speeches and teleprompters.]**

27 Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

28 And in fine **[finally]**, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of the truth of God! **[It is hard for those who will be angry for this rebuke and condemnation, for it is difficult to accept the truth.]** For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he shall fall.

29 Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the word of God, and we need no more of the word of God, for we have enough! **[We usually think of these as your standard Christians that only will read the Bible, yet the admonition is to those who read the Book of Mormon and will expect that it is normal to no longer receive a regular influx of revelation.]**

30 For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give unto the children of men line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little; and blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts, and lend an ear unto my counsel, for they shall learn wisdom; for unto him that receiveth I will give more; and from them that shall say, We have enough, from them shall be taken away even that which they have. **[I love this scripture, because it teaches the pattern of revelation. It begins as a small trickle of faith, of new understanding, a word, a thought, a phrase, and then the Lord sees what we will do with it. Often it is rejected by those who see it as their own obscure thoughts, thrown away as waste. We must learn to lend an ear to the Lord's counsel, which is to seek revelation and to act upon it. This process must be exercised for us to obtain Zion.]**

31 Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or maketh flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the precepts of men, save their precepts shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost. **[How many times has he said this? How many of us will do nothing unless a presiding authority tells us? Where do YOU put your trust? This is not a rhetorical question.]**

32 Wo be unto the Gentiles **[Those who have not received the Covenant of God]**, saith the Lord God of Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out mine arm unto them from day to day, they will deny me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me; for mine arm **[mercy]** is lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

Questions and Comments:

I just love you PR and am most grateful for words of wisdom. Again, what you say is so familiar with so many facets of “church organizations” that subtly install fear or unworthiness into members/congregations. I’m not gonna lie- I have never felt a desire to seek personal revelation until the spirit literally guided me to this site. What has unfolded cannot be taught in church. It’s almost as if our very spirits are starting to recognize the LIGHT OF CHRIST in places outside of mass congregations. Does that even make sense?

Thank you so much for the commentary you added after verse 30. You simply cannot imagine how much these things help! I love when you are more wordy and add these explanations! I had received my own revelation as I read this post, about something I could do as a type of prayer since I have utterly failed at quieting my mind to sit still and pray. It was just a thought. While it was still in my mind (and I was wondering if God

would be offended if I followed through on that thought by typing my prayers so my whole body is focused on communicating with God), I read your commentary. I realized God was helping me and if it is His idea, I don't need to worry about Him being offended. But I really do need the prayer focus help. Several months ago I had a dream where I was taught that if I receive something from God and I *act on it*, the act of simply acting on it – even in a weak or inefficient way – makes me eligible to receive more. Thank you for the second witness you provided here.

This is the reason a prayer journal is so key. Write down all of your promptings and dreams and revelation! To me, it is a sacred token to heaven you are serious about hearkening! I can go back weeks prior and see promptings I have not followed up on... and do them. Which.... actually reminds me to do this very thing asap as it has been a couple if weeks!

RE: doesn't matter which path to Jesus... I am sincerely curious about Joseph being told, in response to his inquiry, to join none of them... and then later organizing a church... and D&C 1:30... I consider it very difficult for me personally to figure out the diff btw my voice and that of the Lord. I have been striving to have the Lord help me with this (as only he can do it I have come to accept) but I have a long way to go. Things I do know: God is my Father, Jesus is Savior, BoM is true, Joseph is Prophet of the restoration, Pres X is a living Prophet. Not sure if I have been led here to this blog by my voice or by Jesus (or both). I have no doubt that I have been inspired by much here and in your books PR.... just curious how y'all reconcile the above...

[In the early nineteenth century, there were no churches that the Lord was pleased with. The Lord gave His blessing upon the early restoration, but condemned the church shortly thereafter. (D&C 84:54-58) What the Lord is looking for is the “fruit” of righteousness (Holy Ghost). Such fruit has begun to appear throughout the world in different places since then. If you are struggling with revelation my best advice is to read the books offered on the site starting with the first and in order. Hopefully that will help. You must learn to receive personal revelation. PR]

Thanks so much for this! Could you please comment on your understanding of the “power of the Holy Ghost?” Based on your clarifications of the Holy Ghost, and since the power of the Holy Ghost is the means by which Moroni promises the Lamanites they can come to a knowledge of the truth of the record, could you explain more? To me, it means that once one has received the Holy Ghost gift, pure revelation will provide a witness of truth as well as to reveal new truth. **[The power of the Holy Ghost are the gifts of the Spirit, which include charity and the GOTHG. PR]**

In verse 26, it states . . . “and denieth the power of God, and the Gift of the Holy Ghost!” Your comment on that is: [“They do not speak by the power of revelation and prophecy, but rely on prepared speeches and teleprompters”]. Could you please elaborate what you mean? **[My comment is pointed to those who do not rely upon the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gifts of the spirit. They prepare their speeches**

to create a good feeling in the listener by crafting their words to elicit emotion, comfort, and praise. If a speech is prepared using the power of the Holy Ghost it would be magnificent. I'm not pointing fingers in my notations, only adding my thoughts to help clarify what I believe these scriptures are saying. PR]

The reason I ask, is that many prepared speeches in my church I have heard have been incredibly inspiring. In fact, when I have been asked to give a speech myself, I have done it both ways: impromptu (as directed by the Spirit), and as a prepared speech. Both have been wonderful experiences. I have found with my prepared speeches that the days – and even weeks preparing have been under the direction of the Lord and His spirit. At times, I have adjusted those prepared remarks at the pulpit, so I know I have been guided by His spirit. In contrast, sometime I have heard people try to speak by the workings of the spirit (perhaps as an act of faith) and frankly embarrass themselves as it clearly was not inspiring. So for them (and me at times) the prepared speech may work best. Perhaps one could view prepared speeches as a ‘telestial’ method and the impromptu style under the direction of His spirit is a higher or more of a terrestrial method. **[I would never judge a speech by its delivery or how well the words are spoken. “For it shall be given you in the very hour, yea, in the very moment, what ye shall say. But a commandment I give unto you, that ye shall declare whatsoever thing ye declare in my name, in solemnity of heart, in the spirit of meekness, in all things. And I give unto you this promise, that inasmuch as ye do this the Holy Ghost shall be shed forth in bearing record unto all things whatsoever ye shall say.” D&C 100:6-8]** So I'm having a hard time reconciling this. Could you please elaborate or expound? Are you referring primarily to the tele-evangelic type speeches? **[I used teleprompters as a metaphor for ecclesiastical leaders using prepared speeches. It could be any person speaking without the power of the Holy Ghost for their own gain.]** Or just in general people should be encouraged to rely more on the Spirit in an impromptu type format “after the manner of the workings of the Spirit” as is indicated in Moroni 6:9? Your thoughts would be appreciated. **[Thank you for asking these questions. Often, we view things according to our life experiences. I have sat in many meetings and listened to beautiful talks that brought tears to my eyes and left me desiring to know God. I've been inspired by quotes from others, and laughed at the humor that interrupted a serious talk, which I liked. We are human. I have heard people botch their talks and others give finely delivered sermons. I am guilty of all these things myself. I now see it differently, and this is why I share what I do on this blog. We need to look past what we have been taught is the standard for godliness and see what the Lord is inviting us to partake. If we are not exercising the gifts of the Spirit, we are lacking. PR]**

31 Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or maketh flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the precepts of men, save their precepts shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost. [How many times has he said this? How many of us will do nothing unless a presiding authority tells us? Where do YOU put your trust? This is not a rhetorical question.] I just have to share a scripture that popped into my life about a month ago that totally opened my eyes wide open to this concept. It has helped me to be able to

focus all my efforts on the Lord. We must follow the prophet. But Nephi teaches that the Lord is the prophet we must hear and if we do not hear this prophet we will be cut off.

1Nephi 22:20-

20 And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

21 And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

I had never seen this scripture before... even though I had read it dozens of times.

A Bible! A Bible! – 2 Nephi 29:1-14

1 But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel; **[Speaking of not only the Jews, but the Remnant of Jacob. This has yet to occur.]**

2 And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed **[Mormon and Moroni]**; and my words shall hiss forth **[shall be spread by the power of God]** unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

Whenever I read the “House of Israel” I think of the literal sons and daughters of light, those who made the Everlasting Covenant before birth. Only a small portion of those who inhabit this earth have made this covenant. These are the Elect, and they respond to the message. In the very last days, as the Gatherers are sent out in the midst of the judgments of God upon the world, the Elect will be gathered to them and receive the Doctrine of Christ in its fullness.

3 And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible. **[It’s important to mention that the word Bible did not exist to Nephi. This was Joseph Smith’s word to represent a book of scripture from the hand of the Jews.]**

4 But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them? Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? **[What does it mean to be a Gentile?]** Do they remember the travails, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles? **[Do they appreciate the sacrifices of the early Jews such as Paul, Peter, the apostles and early converts from Judaism?]**

5 O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not

forgotten my people. **[Many Christians today look with great compassion upon the Jews, and some do not.]**

6 Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

7 Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth? **[The Times of the Gentiles began with the 5th Dispensation and was a part of the Eternal Plan of Salvation to provide an opportunity for every person of the children of men to receive the Gospel. These opportunities were coordinated before people are born. Our Lord is ever merciful, and all are invited to partake of the Lord's full blessings.]**

8 Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations **[people of God]** is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. **[If it comes from Jesus, it will be the same message. Not a different theology.]** And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

9 And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

The Bible is a curious book. It contains the translation of thousands of years of history and much is very simplistic and often lacks context. The use of ancient metaphor and misunderstood customs can confuse and sidetrack the reader, which can lead to unbelief or rejection of the truth. Because it is the nature of man to fall away from truth ever so often, a new dispensation is begun for the purpose of restoring priesthood; in other words, to reestablish God's relationship with man.

Like the gardener sending his servants to tend to his garden, to nurture and weed away what has encroached upon it, a new dispensation begins with a messenger to start anew. This was part of Joseph Smith's calling, to lay a foundation of truth that would spread across the world. All things are done by Jehovah for the purpose of establishing the kingdom of the Father and raising up as many souls as will come to Him.

A new dispensation is arising, which will establish a new relationship with God and man before His coming. It is the Dispensation of the Gathering of Israel and will prepare us for His coming and reign upon the earth.

10 Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

11 For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written. **[Yes, many books. the Bible is a mass conglomeration of books written by His prophets. All books written according to God's commandments by His prophets are scripture to us at any time in the earth's existence.]**

12 For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it. **[That is a broad range of people. Whomever the Lord commands. And the words are usually the same, "Come unto Christ, and know Him."]**

13 And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

14 And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions **[Zion]**; and my word also shall be gathered in one. **[The Library of God's word among men will be gathered as Zion is established.]** And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever. **[The seed of Abraham are the House of Israel and all who are adopted in after receiving the Covenant. These are those will partake of the Tree of Life.]**

Questions and Comments:

"A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible." Is a condemnation by God to the gentile church's closed mindedness to His work among other nations and people's but couldn't we just as easily replace the word "Bible" today with prophet (Church, Pope, pastor, bishop, or other ecclesiastical leader) and still be true? A Prophet! A Prophet! We have got a Prophet, and there cannot be any more Prophet.

How will we know when the Lord's marvelous work has begun? Will it be obvious to us who are trying to seek Christ, even at a basic level? **[The earth will be in turmoil and the servants of God will offer peace and love, teaching His Gospel with Power. Your hearts will burn with the Holy Ghost. There will be no question to those seeking the Lord. PR]**

The servants who will teach His gospel with power, how will they reach us? Will it be through internet/blogs/YouTube or will the world be in such turmoil that they will teach in person? **[The 144k are the angelic Dominions, which have watched over the House of Israel since the foundation of the world. There will be angels assisting on one side of the veil and translated Gatherers in the temporal**

world, all helping to raise up the Elect and bring them to Zion. No, it won't be through the computer. PR]

Are some of the translated Gatherers us? i.e., Will any of us be far enough along to help at this point? **[It's not that some earn that privilege. There will be some who were anointed before they came and they will awaken to their calling and election for that purpose. PR]**

I cannot remember sorry if you have spoken of this in any of your books but for the gatherers who are called (144K), is it for couples only? What would be the exceptions, if any? I am thinking if you made those particular covenants before earth you would come with a like companion particularly if you are 4th estate and have condescended to be here? Is calling and election therefore a couple's ordinance also, even though you may receive it as an individual? I'm sure I should know this already. Thank you. **[They will go forth as couples and some not married and not as couples. Each of the 144k were brought forth in the Council of Heaven as couples to condescend among the House of Israel to help save souls. They sometimes come down as family, but not always couples. After the Lord's Coming many of these 4th estate will be paired again and this is when a sealing becomes permanent. PR]**

The Rise of Zion – 2 Nephi 30:1-18

1 And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer **[let you think]** that ye should suppose that ye are more righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

2 For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel. **[A powerful blessing to the gentiles.]**

What the Lord has shown me is that the majority of the House of Israel will receive the fullness of the covenant, but only a small percentage of the gentiles will. The same covenant is offered, But, as the Lord has said, the Elect shall hear His voice. What makes them Elect? It is because of who they were before this world. The Elect are the new spirit children of God in their first estate. The children of men are also children of God, but more ancient, having been 2nd estate since before the creation of this world. These Elect used to be confined to only the Israelites; however, in our time they are spread across the world amongst different people to act as a leaven during the Times of the Gentiles. God's ways are so merciful and just!

3 And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles,

and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed. **[The Book of Mormon]**

4 And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

5 And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers. **[This has not yet occurred and will happen during great destructions upon this land. “First Zion” will have been established. 3 Nephi 20:15-22]**

6 And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightsome people. **[A generation is approximately 40 years according to Biblical language. It has been about 5 generations since the Book of Mormon has been published. And they shall “blossom as a rose.” D&C 49:24-25]**

7 And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightsome people. **[A small number growing.]**

8 And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people **[House of Israel]** upon the earth.

9 And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor **[in spirit]**, and reprove with equity **[just in His giving of blessings]** for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked. **[judgments of the last days]**

10 For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.

We live in a time of great wickedness, murder, and secret combinations. many of the righteous cry out to God and wonder why He stays His hand. The wicked are ripe in iniquity throughout the world, and God will pour out His judgments when the people are fully divided. The area of grey and moderation is coming to an end. All will either choose wickedness, or the Lord their God.

11 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins **[prepare you for battle]**, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins. **[Revelation shall guide their purposes.]**

12 And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.

13 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

14 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

15 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

As stated in 2 Nephi 21, "These examples portray the animal kingdom, but more importantly, Isaiah describes the peace and felicity that will exist between enemies. There will not be differing religious views or political ideologies, for the knowledge of God shall cover the earth.

16 Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men.

17 There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed. **[All knowledge shall be revealed during this time, the Millennium.]**

18 Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. **[Until those of a telestial glory transmigrate to another telestial world after the earth is glorified.]** And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.

I know that I sometimes write things that seem strange, because they are unfamiliar. Imagine how the early members of the church felt when Joseph Smith threw out some humdingers. The fact is that the creations of God are filled with miracles and the marvelous. What we accept as mundane today would have been far-fetched and ridiculous to even our grandparents in their generation. Nephi saw much more than he wrote about for the same reason I restrain from writing certain things. If you see anything in my writing that makes you uncomfortable ask the Lord what you should do with that information.

Questions and Comments:

Until those of a telestial glory transmigrate to another telestial world after the earth is glorified.] If a person does not have an event baptism of fire in this life, they are still 2nd estate? **[They can receive it in the next life too, but not baptism of water. PR]** If true, then that is a LOT of people. Is it 3rd estate or 4th estate where transmigrations to another world end? **[3rd estate]** What about the Lord? He was far above 3rd and 4th estate when He came down 2000 years ago... ? **[Of course]**

11 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins [prepare you for battle]... Who will be involved, and how, in this (plural?) battle? is this to battle evil by spiritual means, or are (some of) these people going to be caught up in physical battles before 1st Zion comes? Thank you for this work you are doing! It is amazing and so appreciated! **[It is a spiritual battle that takes place in the physical realm. Like Moses,**

Elijah, and Enoch's day, but on a grander scale. PR]

“Of course” Well that’s my point, that’s an example of a “more than” 3rd estate being transmigrating to another world. So if transmigration stops at 3rd estate, then that doesn’t fit. Maybe I should ask what your definition of transmigration is? Appreciate the time you take to put these thoughts together. So much! **[Transmigration are 2nd estate spirits traveling to another earth to continue their telestial existence. When a higher estate being goes to a world it is a condescension. PR]**

I am so grateful for the books you have available ! I reference them quite often after I am in prayer. The breakdown of estates can be overwhelming but it starts to make sense when I realized that LINE UPON LINE PRECEPT ON PRECEPT is how He literally lifts us! It makes me have a stronger desire to ask the Lord to work with me and to guide me to only do His will. Not mine. It’s tough but so rewarding when he answers!!!

I’m beginning to get the feeling that the gospel of Christ was meant to be simple and easy, learned line upon line as one lived an honest life and experienced nature as they grew their own food, raised animals, children & families. Most days I worry that I’m going to be blown to smithereens in the first bomb drop and die without my baptism of fire. Is this an unfounded fear of mine? If I want to serve Christ and am seeking Him, does my fretting and trying to “hurry” do any good? It seems a time is coming where truth will be plainly taught and the baptism of fire won’t be as hard for me to figure out. Is this true? **[All those who are in a state of repenting (your heart’s desire is to know God) will find what they seek. Whether in this life or the next. PR]**

The Elect that have come to our earth (first estate), is it common for them to progress rapidly to second estate? Or even to third estate in one lifetime or in one “covenant planet cycle” made up of however many times they were allowed to come to this earth? **[Entering mortality is the 2nd estate. It is not an immediate process to go to the 3rd estate. Initially, the House of Israel was given the Mosaic Law to prepare them. All those who have not yet ascended with receive this blessing in the Times of the Gathering of Israel (our time), or at the Resurrection when Christ comes. PR]** How do individuals get stuck in the second estate, transmigrating from world to world? **[They choose not to accept Christ or Satan and remain in their sins, bound to the flesh. They will stay telestial forever, but sometimes are given opportunities to receive again as was the case with this world. PR]**

1. Is there any way to know whether you are already a 3rd estate or 4th estate? **[3rd estate is to know you have received the gift of the Holy Ghost. 4th estate is to receive your calling and election made sure. This is why I tell people not to worry whether you are 4th. Most 4th don’t even find out in this life. How about that? However, most will know in this one. PR]** 2. Or if you are here and you are fairly positive you have yet to receive your baptism of fire event that means there is no way around it... you are 2nd estate? **[There are plenty of 4th that have not**

received their gift of the Holy Ghost yet. For them it is an awakening of what they already have. PR] 3. And if you are a 2nd estate... then that means more than likely this life is NOT your first time as a human on a planet? **[Yes. PR]** 4. And if this is so, (#3 above), that means you more than likely tuned out the gospel in a previous life? **[It's been a process for most all 2nd estate Elect. But most will receive in the end. PR]** 5. I have heard that it is possible for a 4th estate to be here and not know that they are a fourth estate. Is that possible? PR, thank you very much for your patience. This is a fairly convoluted way to get answers and maybe somethings are better left until the Lord reveals them... but if you can put more light on these, just thanks for doing that.

The third estate (and beyond) individuals that condescend to come into mortal lives, worlds without end, how many times does the average person come back to each planet? Do we keep coming over and over, almost back to back? Or are there gaps of time between our mortal lives where hundreds of years pass on earth? **[It depends on many factors. Part of that I am not permitted to answer. But, when someone receives there 3rd estate they rest until they are called up to be 4th estate before a new world. Some stay 3rd for a long time. Honestly, it's best not to dwell on the topic of "how many times." Our focus is to find Christ now. In the end, we will see how perfectly everything was planned and executed. How the Lord was in every detail and so very merciful. PR]**

Allright. If this is not the first time as a human on a planet: 1. Is it fairly accurate to say that previous lives were done on this same planet here? Or more probable that it was lived on another planet(s)? 2. If another, different planet... did that planet go through its 2nd coming with me "tied" or associated with or to it all the way to its final judgement baptism by fire/Zion established/ terrestrial stage? **[Good questions, I think I have said enough on this topic. PR]**

Can you tell me, or do you know if there are any 4th estate among children right now? Can you be a 4th estate without being a gatherer or one of the 144k? **[I don't know the answer to that. But, we shouldn't feel less if we are not 4th estate. What matters is that we come unto Christ. All Gatherers are 4th estate, which are a part of the 144k. PR]**

Here are a few questions unrelated to the discussion so far, but related to the rise of Zion and the restoration of the Jews. I remain very confused about how to view the Jewish Nation (Israel) in terms of God's purposes and the great work to take place in the near future. I feel that the Jewish religion has been heavily infiltrated by dark forces (maybe the darkest forces on earth). Israel and those who claim Jewish heritage have ENORMOUS financial control of politics (through things such as AIPAC), industry, entertainment, economics, and virtually all of society. This is not theory of a conspiracy, but is documented fact. Overwhelmingly, Jewish religion today consists not of following the Torah / Mosiac, seeking after Jehovah, but rather followers of Kaballah/Zohar – which is Babylonian in it's roots. It appears to be deeply Babylonian, in every way.

Obviously Babylon is everything worldly. But is it also specifically the secret combination that has taken hold of Judaism since their initially mingling with the Kingdom of Babylon centuries before the Savior's birth? How deep does this rabbit hole go? **[Yes, what you say is mostly true. But there are other forces at work. It's a complex question that requires much history to unravel. Since the establishment of Israel, the Lord has sent His covenant spirits through that lineage, but also this is the same lineage of the sons of perdition. Today, the darkest leaders in Satan's kingdom that exist in the flesh are Jews or House of Israel. But, this is by their lineage only, for they are Luciferian in their practices and objectives; not Jewish. These people are for the most part unknown to the world, but run much of the institutions that influence. They bring others up through their ranks. It is the foundation of the Great and Abominable Church of the devil. In the state of Israel today the vast majority are secular Jews, with a few Orthodox, and even fewer Messianic Jews. The prophecy of their conversion has obviously not yet occurred, but because of the few who did begin to believe in Christ it led to the prophecy of the Gentiles helping them return to their homeland. PR]** I am also curious about modern Christianity's blind devotion to "Israel" which leads to an unknowing support of some very very atrocious actions that take place on the world stage. In your "End Times" book, the "kingdom of the beast" appears to be mainly an Islamic force. Is it the "kingdom of the beast" that leads to the fall of Babylon? **[The AntiChrist and False Prophet will use the Kingdom of the Beast to fight against Israel, but then it will turn on itself and lead to the complete destruction of Babylon. The Church of the Gentiles has an affinity with Israel, to help her in any way. Many Christians believe it will hasten the coming of Christ. I do not believe this is necessary at this point. Certainly, secret combinations exist in Israel as with any other nation of this earth. PR]** Does the fall of Babylon focus heavily on the fall of the great secret combination that has taken root in the people named Israel (aka the Jews)? Is this calamity going to pave the way for their restoration, similar to how the Nephites were restored to the true faith after the calamities of 34AD? **[Yes]** How should we view the push for the 3rd temple in Jerusalem? This is clearly being done in an effort to bring in their Mossiach. Is the Mossiach they are looking for going to be the AntiChrist? Is it going to be the Davidic Servant? **[Those Jews are sincere that they are looking for the return of the Messiah. The Davidic Servant has an interest in their movement. This temple will usher in the Davidic Servant, his influence, the rise of the Antichrist, and the battle of Armageddon. I watch these events with great interest. PR]**

There is a verse in Jeremiah 3:14 that says, "...I will take you one of a city, and two of a family, and I will bring you to Zion." I have always been bothered by this verse, perhaps not understanding its meaning. Do you have any thoughts or insights about what is meant? It is just implying that the numbers of the Elect will be far and few in between or will the families actually be broken up and torn apart? Is there any hope to make it to Zion as a whole family unit? Or will this have to be one of the required sacrifices to choose Christ over your family members to qualify? **[I read that differently. For God will have prophets in each city and members of a family filled with the**

Holy Ghost to lead others to Zion. Zion is a process of lifting others. PR]

Doctrine of Christ – 2 Nephi 31:1-21

1 And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob. **[I would suspect that Nephi wrote only a fraction of what he saw. I only share what the Lord allows me, because there is much that would only serve as a distraction to the purpose of this blog if I went too far. The reason for all of this is to increase your desire to seek revelation and come to the Lord.]**

2 Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficeth me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying. **[Done with the metaphors for now. There is a purpose for that kind of writing, like how Jesus spoke in parables at times. Those who have eyes to see and ears to hear (revelation) will understand.]**

3 For my soul delighteth in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men. For the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding; for he speaketh unto men according to their language, unto their understanding. **[Every person has a unique journey and path as they come unto Christ. The Lord is interested in us as individuals. People don't understand that God knows you as if you were His only creation. He can focus on you with that kind of laser attention and love. This allows for a unique experience for each of us, which is the beauty and joy of the Throne of Heaven. Our creativity in exercising faith is what raises the excited cheers of the angels and joyful tears of our Dear Lord in our behalf.]**

4 Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world. **[1 Nephi 10:9-10, 1 Nephi 11:27]**

5 And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water! **[There is a pattern required for all, no way around it.]**

6 And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

7 Know ye not that he was holy? **[completely clean]** But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments. **[The purpose of baptism is to witness to the Father that we will follow Christ.]**

8 Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove. **[Jesus' receipt of the Holy Ghost is unique and special. He did not receive it by the laying on of hands, but directly from Heaven. The "sign of the dove" was promised to John as a way he would recognize that he had baptized the Messiah. This sign is our Mother in Heaven and her**

participation in that beautiful event. The Father was there, as He spoke to John and Jesus the words, “This is my beloved Son in whom I am well pleased.”

9 And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straitness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them. **[The straightness of the path is the baptism of water, the narrowness of the gate is the reception of the gift of the Holy Ghost. After this has occurred they shall hold to the iron rod and their journey to the Tree of Life will commence.]**

10 And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father? **[What are the commandments of the Father? We think of the basics, which are the Ten Commandments, but we now have the New Covenant, which really is just the fullness of what God wants us to have. The commandments are all that God tells us we need to do to know Him. This comes by personal revelation as we pray, read, and experience others. When we receive the gift of the Holy Ghost we are born again a new person in Christ. He becomes our Father and we seek to be one with Him. This is the Atonement in its fullness.]**

11 And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son. **[Like saying, “Turn your heart to Christ, be baptized that you may prepare to come unto Christ and receive the Holy Ghost!”]**

12 And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.

13 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel. **[This is a good synopsis of the simplicity of the requirement to receive the baptism of fire and the gift of the Holy Ghost. The phrase “full purpose of heart” is another way to phrase a broken heart, without any guile. A contrite spirit is a full submission of yourself, to take upon you His name. There is much that can be spoken about that, which I will save for the chapters in Moroni.]**

14 But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me. **[After one has received the gift of the Holy Ghost they are not the same. Yes, physically you feel the same, life goes on; however, your spirit now has far more light than before. This is where one advances to their 3rd estate. A type of resurrection has occurred. To “deny” Christ is more that to**

sin or say you don't know him. It's not that easy to become a Son of Perdition.]

15 And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved. **[The phrase “endure to the end” means to “work out your salvation in fear and trembling” (Mormon 9:27), as you seek God. The end of this salvation is achieved when one receives the gift of the Holy Ghost. This is the first stage of enduring. The second phase is what is taught by the Lord after we receive the Doctrine of Christ, which is to have a personal witness of Him and become a servant. This is clearly taught in 3 Nephi 12 as we are taught the Beatitudes and begin the Sermon on the Mount. I will be discussing that in the future.]**

16 And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved. **[There is another stage of enduring to the end. Every “estate” has an enduring to the end component. There are certain sacrifices we make to help save souls. We lift ourselves as we lift others, and all is selfless. This is a mirror opposite of Satan's kingdom in that he sacrifices others to lift himself, and it is all self serving. God is love, Satan is self love. When one turns inward they begin the path to perdition.]**

17 Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost. **[This is the Doctrine of Christ]**

18 And then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate **[baptism]**; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive. **[to receive a fullness, even Eternal Life]**

19 And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save. **[How do you receive the gift of the Holy Ghost after baptism?]**

20 Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. **[You must seek the gift of charity.]** Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ **[revelation]**, and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life. **[The gift of the Holy Ghost]**

21 And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

This is one of the most important chapters in the Book of Mormon. The simplicity of the doctrine of Christ as presented by Nephi is stunning. The

Lord himself echoes these words again in 3 Nephi 11 when He came to the people in Bountiful. When I read this chapter I consider how the simplicity of salvation is lost to much of the Church of the Gentiles. We often give ourselves a steady flow of duties and tasks that we believe will earn us a seat in the Kingdom. The way is simple: repent, be baptized, receive the Holy Ghost. As we repent we are exercising faith by keeping His commandments, which are received by revelation through prayer, scripture, and other people. There is no man other than Christ that stands at the gate. No person can tell you whether you are worthy to receive Him except Christ Himself – that is a promise.

Questions and Comments:

Holy! Holy!Holy! I am in tears! Verse 16 was my personal revelation and confirmation to exactly what I have been praying about. This entire chapter has filled me with absolute conviction in my testimony of the Gospel of Christ...Thank you for all your help in breaking down plain words that are simple.

Is our Mother in Heaven often represented as a dove? (As in Noah's ark?) Or if we see a dove in our own lives? **[It is a symbol associated with Mother. I haven't asked about the other circumstances. PR]**

The phrase "full purpose of heart" is another way to phrase a broken heart, without any guile. A contrite spirit is a full submission of yourself, to take upon you His name. There is much that can be spoken about that, which I will save for the chapters in Moroni.] Is there any way we can talk you in to doing a blog post sooner about how to do this? How do I break my own heart? How do I make my spirit contrite? I've been struggling with understanding what I need to do for years! But my question is serious – how do I break my own heart? **[That is an interesting question. I have written about what it means have a broken heart and contrite spirit, and what it means to repent; but "how to break your own heart?" I will pray about that one. Thank you. PR]**

My goodness, I had such an outpouring of light from yesterday's 2Nephi 30 discussion here that as i pondered on the discussion, it actually altered my perception of who I am and who others are. So much so that I was unusually pleasant, patient and eager to rush to those friends who needed me last night at an event I was in charge of. (Not that I'm normally unpleasant). I felt like I radiated light. Today, as I had hoped, adds to the progression. Why this chapter of the book of Mormon, explained this way, is not what is talked about in first discussions with missionary work is a mystery.

I have been asking the Lord the same questions in my recent prayers. And PR, whatever you can help us with here will be most appreciated.

Obviously, I'm not the advanced placement student here but... so I've asked the Lord about having Him help me with the needed broken heart. A lot. This has led me on a

wonderful journey of discovery towards meekness and how to be meek... and what that means... and from what I feel I am being taught, has much to do with this broken heart. PR gave a definition today or yesterday about meekness and it had something to do with: Seek revelation, discern it, then submit to it as carefully as you can. I loved that! None are acceptable save the meek (who receive revelation and follow it humbly) and lowly of heart. Maybe meekness is part of the broken heart? Maybe it's a companion to it

“. Every “estate” has an enduring to the end component. There are certain sacrifices we make to help save souls. We lift ourselves as we lift others, and all is selfless. ”Can you elaborate on what is the end component of the 3rd estate ? What must one do to advance to the 4th estate? Is it just to continue serving others? Or is there a trait you must obtain? Or is there a specific sacrifice you must make? Like the goal in 2nd estate to 3rd estate is to have the Baptism of Fire. To obtain the trait of charity. To have a broken heart and a contrite spirit. . Can you give more details about the 3rd to 4 th estate process. Thank you for all you do and all the time you spend in helping others to grow spiritually. You are amazing! **[I can answer that question, but not those regarding the 5th estate or higher; at least for now. Those who obtain the 3rd estate have a choice at some point. Will they be willing to set aside their glory to condescend to a new world to help save souls among the new first estate of Father’s Children of Light? It won’t be easy. It will involve great pain and suffering, yet it will be one of the greatest acts of pure love, and be glorious. You will be a Savior on Mount Zion, one of the Just Men or Women Made Perfect, a High Priest or Priestess of the Angelic Dominions, the 144 thousand Anointed Ones of God, those who will have their Calling and Election in this life. This is the sacrifice to rise to the 4th estate and comes at the end of the Seventh Dispensation of an earth when the Grand Council is called and the Father says, “Whom shall I send?” The 3rd Estate have already been Called, but now they will have the opportunity to be Chosen, if it is their desire. PR]**

Did Christ tell you that Satan’s path is “self love”? I don’t like that term, I think his path is pride and self service. The Spirit has taught me its important to love myself as Christ does, its not pride but to see what the Lord sees in you (true potential). So doubting yourself would be to doubt the Lord.... We can’t truly extend this Love/Charity to others if we dont first allow God’s love for us to take place in our hearts. “Do unto others as you would have them do unto you”, “Love thy neighbor as yourself” **[I understand your point of view. This is an example of how words can mean different things to people. For me, “self love” is to be self centered seeking one’s own personal gratification. I agree that we need to love ourselves the way Christ loves us. This is what I call charity, or the pure love of Christ. PR]**

I’ve grown up being taught that the Saviour never committed a sin in his mortal life and was therefore perfect and able to make a perfect sacrifice. Is that 100% accurate? It seems more likely that Jesus had to grow into his calling and election, much like we are trying to do. But at some point he became perfected and holy through following the path

– the path he exemplifies for all of us. At that point he was able to fulfill his mission and ministry. Would you be able to clarify your understanding in this regard? **[Jesus was the perfect Lamb without spiritual blemish. He literally was the Only Begotten, sent by the Father to partake of the bitter cup of the Eternal Sacrifice to redeem us. He could not have done this without those qualifications. To sin is to be out of harmony with God’s laws. Jesus never was unclean. I have heard some people claim that if he didn’t have it as hard as us that it would be unfair. That he had to go below all things to rise above all things. Indeed, he was born to low circumstances without any title or privilege, but He was spiritually unparalleled. Each of us come to this world the same, born of a woman, knowing nothing and having no ability to care for ourselves. However, our spirits come with a propensity for who we were before we were born. Some of us are born with challenges of the flesh or from the environments we live in. Christ suffered all things, but His spirit was enormous because He learned grace for grace by that which he suffered. What does this mean? He had ascended the estates to the degree that he had suffered all things to prepare Himself for the role as the Redeemer. Jesus was not a repentant sinner. Who would forgive Him if that was the case? No. He was the perfect Sacrifice to open the door for all men. He had to lead out and lift us as part of the Atonement; the link between the Father and the Son that will bind us to Him for eternity. We are also growing grace for grace by what we suffer. Much to think about. PR]**

I didn’t mean to come off doubting the Lord or who He is. I’m finding lately I’m having to relearn almost everything I thought I knew before and I’m trying to understand things in a clearer light. Trying to understand who Jesus was, how He lived, and how I’m supposed to follow Him is helping me to come unto Him. I appreciate the help and I love my Saviour so much for what He has done for me and for sending true messengers. **[It was a good question. PR]**

“When we receive the gift of the Holy Ghost we are born again a new person in Christ. He becomes our Father and we seek to be one with Him. This is the Atonement in its fullness.” Does He remain our Father into our progression after this life/Millennium, or do we take the Father (Christ’s Father) back on as our own after the Millenium? **[Jesus Christ will always be our Father going forward. There are many levels of Fathers all having an important role for us.]**

“Jesus’ receipt of the Holy Ghost is unique and special. He did not receive it by the laying on of hands, but directly from Heaven.” This is what I have come to learn so far—that the Holy Ghost can be given to a person by Jesus Himself or by the laying on of hands through the Lords anointed Apostles. Your above statement raises a question, and it is this: Even in the case of Jesus Himself giving you the Gift of the Holy Ghost, does He only do it through the laying on of His unseen hands on you? Or through the hands of an unseen Angel? Is laying on of hands the only method for receiving the Gift of the Holy Ghost for the rest of us? I hope I’m making sense. **[One can receive the gift without the touching. When we receive the gift of the Holy Ghost the Savior**

gives us an anointing, which is an added measure of light poured over us. The laying on of hands is simply the mechanism we have in the flesh to help those unprepared to receive this if their faith is weak. The requirements are still the same. A good example is the Lamanites referenced from Helaman 5 by the Savior in 3 Nephi 9:20.]

I am so glad you brought up the Gift of the Holy Ghost received by “the Lamanites references by Helaman 5 by the Savior in 3Nephi 9:20.” I have some questions about them receiving the Gift of the Holy Ghost. Were these Lamanites already baptized? **[No, they were not. PR]** Despite there being no scripture I can find specially find stating they had been, this verse below seems to hold some evidence that they may have been. And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you. (Helaman 5:41) And if they weren’t baptized with water prior to the Baptism of Fire is it possible that like the Virtures of Godliness, the order isn’t the most important thing? That the baptism by water happened afterwards? **[Yes, they were all baptized afterward. They received the gift of the Holy Ghost because they qualified for the Holy Spirit of Promise, but without baptism of water they could never stand in the presence of the Father. It usually occurs in reverse with water baptism first. PR]** And this is just an aside. Do you know if the sealed portion of the Book of Mormon or the other ancient American records will detail the ministry of Alma, Amulek, and Zeezrom’s ministry to the Lamintes? To me this miraculous conversion that culminated with Nephi and Lehi was the reaping of seeds sown by their great grandfather Alma and his fellow servants. And the Book of Helaman seems to hold the pattern to the upcoming events of the Last Days just prior Christ’s return. Along with the miraculous conversion of Lehi’s posterity in the coming days. **[I do not know that. PR]** Thank you again, for ministering to us in this way.

Is the authority or qualifications of the person performing the baptism important? If so, what are those requirements? What about the actual method or words spoken? Many groups claim to be the only ones qualified to truly do baptism or that their method is the only correct way. Or maybe you don’t need someone to baptize you and it can be done alone? Reason I ask is that Adam’s baptism in Moses 6:64 seems to be unique as he was “caught away by the Spirit” rather than being baptized by someone. **[The key is that it must be recognized by God, which means the person performing must have received authority from God and the one receiving must exercise the correct faith. In such circumstances, it is valid. Adam’s was different because of who he was, but it accomplished the same thing. In this is a mystery. PR]**

What Next? – 2 Nephi 32:1-9

1 And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But,

behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts? **[That was my first question after I had my baptism of fire and gift of the Holy Ghost.]**

2 Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost? **[To speak with the tongue of angels is to be overcome by the Spirit and to speak the words given to you. This can be in the form of prophecy, tongues, and revelation. It is a beautiful experience.]**

3 Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do. **[This is a critical point to consider. The Lord will give you exactly what you need to do next to draw closer to Him and be a servant. What are the “words of Christ” that you are to feast upon? They are all communications from Him. This comes in the form of revelation received by prayer, scripture, or other people. This is the “word of God” as defined by the “rod of iron” that Nephi saw leading to the Tree of Life. You will reach it eventually.]**

After I had my gift of the Holy Ghost given, having asked the Lord, “What Next?” I was led to do many unconventional things. Six months later this culminated in my Second Comforter experience. Each of our paths will be different, but you must rely upon revelation to be led to do exactly what the Lord has for you.

4 Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark. **[You should tape these words next to your bed. There is much that we do not understand, yet God will give you answers to your prayers and lead you to what you need as fast as possible. There is a law in Heaven called, “The Law of Asking.” You must ask in faith (Seek revelation and act upon it.)]**

5 For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do. **[What a beautiful promise!]**

6 Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do. **[This scripture is confused by many to mean when they have their Second Comforter. It is referring to receiving their gift of the Holy Ghost. Until that time comes we are only to receive the Doctrine of Christ. At that critical juncture, we literally have Christ’s Atonement manifest to us while in our mortal bodies (the flesh). After this occurs, Nephi reminds us that the Lord will show us all things that we need to observe to do going forward.]**

7 And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, **[I can relate to that. These were the words the Lord said to me when I asked, “How will I know if I am saying too much in my writing? When I’ve been stopped it feels like He literally shuts my mouth or contains me.]** and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness

of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

It is a lonely and difficult feeling to watch so many wandering in their search for God when He is standing at the gate inviting them. The reason He is not seen by many is that people are rigid in their views of Christ, and have false traditions that bind them from coming to Him. How does the Lord compensate for this? He sends prophets to teach. He has His words written to be studied and prayed upon. When things become horribly wicked He humbles the people by allowing wars, famine, or disasters to shake them. His mercy is always extended until the day that the earth is finished. Unfortunately, mostly the Elect are the only ones to listen. These are those whose hearts were prepared before they came to mortality having made the covenant with God beforehand to receive Him in this life.

8 And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray, ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray. **[Are you pondering in your heart, “What should I do now?” The answer is to pray to the Lord. Ask Him, “Father, what next? How can I make the straight line to thee? Please, remove my stumbling blocks and show me. I will give all that I have to know thee and be thy servant. I love you more than anything in my life!]**

9 But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray always, and not faint **[give up]**; that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul. **[Anything that you do as a servant of the Lord must first be given as permission by the Spirit so that it is consecrated by Him. This is true in all your actions taken to know Him better, your attempt to seek Him, even the questions you ask. I always seek the Lord’s Spirit in even writing down the questions I will ask during my holy time. I don’t just throw random questions when I’m with Him (Except for that one about His beard.) Also, I always check before I give a blessing, healing, speak in His name, write, and do anything that I believe has relevance to being a servant of God. I carry a prayer in my heart all day, which means that I do my best to carry the Spirit with me, in thanksgiving, as I am sensitive to any communication I receive from the Lord. I call out to Him all day long in my mind or vocally. What a beautiful journey!]** I should say, after we receive such great blessings, life is still hard, challenging, and at times you want to collapse. Its hard to be 100% with it all the time. We must continue to repent and seek Him. The Lord understands. I have many times in my experiences with Him expressed my sorrow at not being more strong or coming to Him more often. He smiles, expresses His love to me and encourages me to keep going. The big question to consider is “What is the desire of your heart?” This will lead to all blessings for you.

Questions and Comments:

I think most of us understand the monumental task you have undertaken with this blog and now this book of Mormon project. I know we are grateful, PR. It's not a wasted effort and the impact is significant. The light from the truth is almost tangible and has absolutely straightened out my path. I am being changed through the spirit of the Lord present from this discipline. My heart leaps with joy when I see others posting their thoughts and comments and questions. which brings me to my question: In your opinion, what are the most damnable ways that people are "too rigid" in their views of Christ? **[What is the "most damnable" differs much from person to person. The most common are false traditions or unbelief. For example: anything beyond the Doctrine of Christ that is set as a standard for worthiness to achieve the Celestial Kingdom. Instead of focusing upon a relationship with Christ, we focus upon tasks and duties that equal worthiness. And then the assumption that we have arrived. "All is well in Zion" is how Nephi described it. PR]**

I ask because even though I know that is a great question for the Lord to answer, I have seen the answer come from Him only to have my own unbelief totally throw it out! And maybe it's not something you are comfortable commenting on, which is fine also. Thanks again! **[I had to realize this question for myself during my journey. It is a difficult time of self evaluation. Things really took off for me and my relationship with Christ when I resolved not to let anybody tell me what to do, to focus on whatever revelation I was receiving. I told the Lord I would do it. He tested me according to my faith. It was stepping into the dark, but the reward was far more than I bargained. He gives us line upon line, as they say. Fear is what prevents most of us from taking the necessary steps. Love is what pushes us forward into His arms. PR]**

From the comment above: Things really took off for me and my relationship with Christ when I resolved not to let anybody tell me what to do, to focus on whatever revelation I was receiving. I told the Lord I would do it. He tested me according to my faith. It was stepping into the dark, but the reward was far more than I bargained. He gives us line upon line, as they say. Fear is what prevents most of us from taking the necessary steps.] I know this fear. I followed some bad "revelation" ten years ago from the adversary (I couldn't discern and was moving too fast, not checking things against scripture). It resulted in me being heart-shattered and berated by my husband, a bishop and a good friend. I was treated like a crazy person for even thinking I could hear God. I prayed for 8 months, begging for discernment, and feeling nothing. One night I slapped my hands down on the bed in the middle of a prayer, done with the "thees" and "thous" and fake righteous talk. I said "Lord, I just need to know your voice!" He answered me 'aloud', in that it sounded as if it was aloud and yet as if I was hearing it with the space between my inner ear and my skull. (Hard to describe. Like it was piped directly into only my ear drums.) Jesus said "Do you know my voice?" and I had a full body reaction. My kneeling body reflexively and instinctively crouched lower to the floor, absolutely recognizing the voice of my Creator, while my spirit perked up, moving in the opposite direction to look up and over for Him. I felt my body and my spirit go in those two different directions and realized my spirit was "wearing" my body, for lack of a better

term. I instantly understood why the Lord's voice is described as thunder because of the way it seemed to thrum or reverberate through me with power. I understood why His voice is called the double edged sword because it pierced me to the center. I understood how every knee will bow – the act of kneeling is instinctive and your body WANTS to kneel in His presence, the same way it reflexively jerks your hand away from something hot. You have a very natural desire to kneel. This, and so much more, came into my mind and understanding in that split second. This is how He taught me discernment and how He taught me about revelation. And yet I'm still so fearful of being led astray. I'm afraid of my husband treating me like I'm crazy again because it was so painful to try to seek Christ with blind excitement and have the adversary answer me and publicly gut me as quickly as he could. Joseph knew exactly what he was talking about when he said the most harmful, hurtful thing was to believe you were following the spirit of God and then discover you had been deceived. (But I know being afraid of the adversary is a sin and a weakness and holding me back.) What can I pray to ask for when it comes to overcoming my fear? I've already had that encounter with the venomous subtlety of the adversary and been pummeled so my fear is real. Plus I still don't have the baptism of fire or gift of the Holy Ghost. I'm kind of a tangled mess but I mostly fear continuing to pray for YEARS with not much happening by way of answers. (Sigh. I know I should take this up with God but I'm even afraid to pray aloud lest the adversary get more dirt on me.) Should I pray for courage? Or maybe I'm closer to that broken heart I need as-is?? **[I'm sorry it has been so hard for you. Fear is certainly a deterrent to receiving revelation. I would be cautious who you share your experiences with, as it can lead to heartache when given to those unprepared. It is extremely hard to do this journey and not have a spouse on the same page. For anyone reading this, try to always have their support. Easier said than done, but it is worth going slower for their sake than to speed ahead too quickly. At this stage in your sorrow, I would seek to gather holiness and simply pray with determination to have a relationship with your Lord. The book "How to Open Your Spiritual Eyes" has all my best advice for how to move forward in the process. It also details what can prevent us from having success. Usually, there is a reason for what is holding us back. Only you can determine what that may be, but if your heart is unshaken you will find what you are looking for. PR]**

I like you!! What a beautiful experience. I have a hard time describing how the Holy Ghost speaks to me. Almost like someone talking to me, but in my head, not my ears. The same thing repeated and remembered with exactness until I do the thing mentioned. Yours sounds similar but VERY INTENSE. You have a beautiful humble heart and I can feel that. HUGS from your sister (in Christ).

Anonymous, this is very inspirational. Thanks again. It's amazing how I've read these words all my life and you give it a clarity that I never imagined! (Not just this post, of course!) Your words strengthen my desire to Know Him.

I was looking forward to you doing these chapters, 31 and 32. I've always felt that there

was so much in them, but couldn't exactly know what. Many things came to my mind, but that was just scratching the surface sort of thing. Now that I'm on this path of awakening I'm seeing what I couldn't see before, your explanation has made it even more obvious. The beauty of its simplicity, and yet unless we are on this path, coming to Christ, letting Him open our spiritual eyes we won't see it.

Wonderfully inspiring information! "... Then SINGS MY SOUL my Savior God to thee how great thou art --how great thou art..."

"I should say, after we receive such great blessings, life is still hard, challenging, and at times you want to collapse. It's hard to be 100% with it all the time. We must continue to repent and seek Him. The Lord understands." I admit I don't understand that. It seems life, while challenging as it can be, would also be so much easier to go through having been with Him. It seems like the comfort of knowing the Lord like that would bolster your ability to do most earth things. Or does the newness of what you have experienced wear off? **[Until the body is translated, we still struggle with the flesh. We get sick, tired, irritable at times. Satan is not out of your life, he works on you in more subtle ways. The familiar spirits never leave. Even Christ dealt with evil spirits even up until his death upon the cross. The Lord encourages me to come to Him more, but it is in many cases like running a marathon. It takes preparation and focus, and so worth it. Do not think that if you have your calling and election made sure that everything is easy from hence forth. PR]** Is it more like a whole new set of challenges arrive? I imagine it must weigh on people who have paid the price to see the Lord... it must be difficult and even exhausting to see so many billions stray so far. And then to have to watch family members and friends close to you not even attempt the path. Or spurn/ ridicule you... does that happen? That must be heavy! **[I actually feel more at peace, because I trust in the Lord more. I've seen how he operates and He is in every detail. I feel sorrow for the pain of others and my heart aches for those who will not repent; but I'm not stressed about that. My stresses are more that I can balance my life in a way that pleases the Lord. I don't want to have a hiccup and miss something important he needed me to do because I was distracted. These are human tendencies. The part of my life that gives me the most anxiety is regarding the rescue missions I am required to do. They are heart renching at times and take me far out of my comfort zone. PR]** Do you see any persecution from others, subtle or otherwise in your life for your experiences? Is that one of the reasons you have chosen to be anon? **[The Lord told me to remain anonymous for now until I finish another part of my mission. I can see the wisdom in it. Also, as I've said before, it would distract from the message if people we're focused on a personality. In some ways they still do and I don't know how to get around that. I hope people read all this and think to themselves, "So, this guy has had some crazy experiences. I wonder if any of it is true? I will pray and see if what he is teaching is true. If it is true, then perhaps I can have the same experiences. All this reading of Anonymous is giving me ideas that I can take to the Lord and try for myself!" PR]**

As for focusing on the personality, it's a two edged sword. On one side I understand your entire blog and books broadcast "Come follow HIM, not me", but on the other hand you've likely been camping and see how moths and coleman lanterns react. High potency of light attracts others to it... we can't help it. I really am sensitive in trying to not perpetuate towards a cult of personality... and every time I post here I worry I'm doing it again. And I'm probably doing it right now GAH! "So, this guy has had some crazy experiences. I wonder if any of it is true? I will pray and see if what he is teaching is true." PLEASE know that yes, that is the thought process that continuously runs in my head and heart. Continuously. It's a breath of fresh air to think it. **[I understand the "cult of personality" thing. Look at how churches fawn over their own leaders. It's actually healthy to think less of Anonymous but be intrigued enough by the writings to ask questions of yourself. PR]**

Ha! love all the candor in this thread... speaking of love— We benefit from seeing how meek and deflecting of greatness Jesus was... I love that Christ was always quick to give credit to his Father... "Why callest thou me good.... Now granted, he knew he was the Lamb with out blemish and that shortly the addendum in 3nephi would be added: "be ye therefore perfect even as I and your Father in Heaven is perfect..." But as he walked this devil infested earth— He was ever mindful of where his strength etc derived from... a powerful ability to spiritually ascend through clear devotion and worship to what makes Christian people great— is gained through this particular message and example of our Savior... So grateful for the Book of Mormon which sheds light on how our ascending worship of Christ should eventually look like: 1 And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them. 2 And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually. 3 And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things. 4 And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy. 5 And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God. 6 And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant. 7 And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters. 8 And under this head ye are made free, and there

is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives. 9 And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ. 10 And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God. 11 And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts. 12 I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you. 13 For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart? 14 And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called. 15 Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.

Thank you not only for all you share but also the comment section. It truly helps. Last night I took my feelings to the Lord. He was gentle and is having me start at square one, with working on quieting & emptying my mind. Not letting fears, worries or never-ending to-do lists and mental chatter distract me. That's what I'm to practice doing right now. It was nice to receive help so quickly! It was also very simple. I like to sit quietly outside in nature and I realized that this IS what I'm supposed to be doing because it is part of quieting myself and preparing my mind. Your suggestion to "simply pray with determination to have a relationship with your Lord" really did help me. I also noticed – and loved – that you used the phrase "your Lord", very much how Nephi calls him "my Jesus"!

Also, I find your rescue mission stories fascinating and full of proof that God truly is of great kindness and mercy. I have felt a seed planted in me that in future times of distress that I could cry out to the Lord, knowing He is mighty to save and has Servants that He sends. And by knowing I mean KNOWING because you were brave enough to share. Please, keep sharing as many of the rescue mission stories as you are allowed. I don't know our God but through you, I am gathering enough little tidbits about His awesome character that I'm finding the courage to continue wearying Him with my questions!

“I told the Lord I would do it. He tested me according to my faith.”

PR- I am right here at the moment with some instructions from Him that are testing my limits. Which is great except I am seeking to really make sure I have the instructions correct before I jump into it. When do you ... ok how.. or when you first started hearing the Lord more clearly but there was that twinge of “am I sure that is what I am supposed to do”... Is it appropriate to ask a second or even a third (ok not going to hide it... fourth) time? At what point does seeking clarification become fearful and faithless? Or is there even a fine line on this between faithful moving forward and faithless fear? **[That is a very appropriate question. Fear is not of the Lord, as you know. When the Lord tells you to do something by the Spirit, you feel constrained to do it. You can ask and seek a confirmation, but the thought of not doing it is more unfathomable than not. Each of the difficult revelations I have received in the past have come with a reassurance that I was doing the right thing. I just couldn't resist the commandment because I knew it was right. Sometimes, afterward, I wondered if it was right. There are times that we could go years without a witness that what we did made any sense. I've seen some things end in failure, only to find out years later it was to set everything up for a powerful intervention of the Lord. You must trust Him. Imagine how Lehi and his family felt leaving Jerusalem. They did not receive any validation until almost ten years later. PR]**

I've been asking more times than I should if this is what He really wants from me, at first He was yes, trust me, and He would show me why I should do it, I even received a confirmation just as I asked, but now He is quiet, why do I question this? Is it fear? How can I get courage to be obedient? I feel like Nephi being asked to slay Laban, he wished he wouldn't have to, and God told him what would happen if he didn't go through with it, the same for me I've been told what would happen if I don't go through with this, but my heart breaks. **[Karla, I would write yourself a blessing. Then see that as your personal scripture if you get a confirmation. PR]**

Just some thoughts this morning... 2 Ne 32:5 For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

6 Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do. “Entering in by the way” Faith, repentance, baptism, gotHG Faith in what? -Jesus Christ, you come to hear and see him beckoning to you to leave your nets and to follow him. If you chose to listen and to believe then you will drop your nets and leave your fishing boats. This is repentance. The act of dropping your nets; a turning from the life that “you” created or built for yourself and a turning to Christ who promises you a better life “in him”. When we repent it is more than just turning from our sins but it is turning from ourselves. This process reaches a climatic leap of faith....a critical decision to do something that will disrupt your life forever....you willingly submit to an eternal covenant to take upon you Christ's Name and Christ's Life, forever leaving behind your fishing nets, because you were told that you will now be made “fishers of men”. You are

baptized by water. This Baptism is a solemn covenant of obedience to Gods law, both his written law found in the scriptures but more importantly the unwritten law that is written upon your heart. The Holy Ghost (messenger(s)) will be sent to give you commandments to further leave the world(sacrifice) by the quiet whisperings of the still small voice. If we harken to these whispering in faith, without “seeing” then we have witnessed to this secret messenger that we do not sell our tokens for money but that we do in fact keep them sacred and that our intent is to someday receive further light and knowledge that our sacrifices are in deed accepted by the Lord and recorded in heaven and one day soon these messengers will then be sent to us in their true identity as “true messengers” sent from the father to give us the witness of our faith. Our faith is no longer faith, we no longer “believe” but these things that we once relied on become “sure” they become “knowledge”. And we are born again....no longer are we who we use to be....our very natures have been forever changed and we in a very real sense “receive the Holy Ghost”. This Reception of the Holy Ghost is as a baptism of Fire upon us. We are changed from our carnal selves and receive a token of a new level of existence. No longer are we pursuing the same object as we were before, because we have now received all of these things and our new objective is to strictly and many times blindly obey all things which the Holy Ghost will show you to do. “He” becomes your new “law”. If you chose to obey with exactness you will be clothed in the robes of the priesthood and introduced to the savior (in time), and this event will change you and the world that you live in...no longer will you be subjected to the laws of a telestial world but you will be brought into a high order of things. “Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.” Where do you and I stand in this progression? Are we waiting for these things to come upon us on their own, after this life? This Is A False Belief and Another Wicked Tradition of Our Fathers and A Lie From Our adversary...Who whispers in our ears, “ All is Well in Zion.... yea Zion prospers, and carefully he will lead all who follow these lies down to Hell. I can not deny that I have received promptings to leave my nets in specific ways, but I still cling to them in fear, and then I wonder why my prayers are not answered and why I do not receive the further light and knowledge that I am looking for. Is the lord asking you to leave Jerusalem in some way and to depart into the wilderness with nothing more than your family, your provisions, and your tents....because Jerusalem will soon be destroyed? Perhaps only figuratively? But because “no one else is doing this” and because “the prophet has not commanded us to do this” we hold onto our nets and because we receive no further commandments we say, “I Go a Fishing”.... and we push the promptings aside pick up our current lives and go to work, because when we are busy we cannot think on the guilt we have for not obeying the Lord.

Nephi’s Farewell – 2 Nephi 33:1-15

1 And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking; for when a man speaketh by the

power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men. **[The type of writing that Nephi used (reformed Egyptian) did not give the same degree of expression as we have in the English language. It must have been frustrating to try and instill the power of the words that Nephi desired. The gift of translation assisted Joseph Smith to include some of that in the record, but even Joseph was limited to his own vocabulary. This leaves the reader, us, the need to have the Lord reveal the intent of the words, so that we can have the power of the message given to us.]**

2 But behold, there are many that harden their hearts **[have no desire]** against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things away which are written and esteem them as things of naught. **[Where our treasure is, there will our heart be also. The Book of Mormon is a treasure to those who seek an understanding.]**

3 But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them; and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry. **[There is a connection between the passion of a servant and what the Lord is willing to entrust to them. Pay attention to how often you will read that they “cry to the Lord.” That does not go unnoticed by Him. I remember for years crying out to God to hear my voice on behalf of me, my family, and those I prayed. And then in the stillness He came.]**

4 And I know that the Lord God will consecrate **[bless]** my prayers for the gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is life eternal. **[Nephi prays that God will bless this record that he has written that it will persuade others to come unto Christ.]**

5 And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil. **[He has preached against the sinner.]**

6 I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell. **[I like the idea of teaching in as plain a manner as possible. Nephi would have used a lot of bullet points if they knew about those in his days.]**

7 I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat. **[I hope you will have the opportunity to meet Nephi some day!]**

8 I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.

9 I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the strait path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.

10 And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good. **[I am unaware of a single record that preaches of Christ outside of the Bible more forcefully than the Book of Mormon. There are**

essentially four reasons people dismiss this book: first, if its not the Bible it is not of God. Second, they heard negative things about Joseph Smith. Third, they heard negative things about Mormons. Fourth, they haven't found enough convincing evidence to prove its authenticity. Maybe five; they have no interest in reading something about Christ. For those that dig in, it's like finding an enormous treasure in their back yard.]

11 And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.

12 And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.

13 And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.

14 And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, **[Bible]** and also my words **[BofM]**, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God **[all revelation]**, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

15 For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord commanded me, and I must obey. Amen.

The force and power of Nephi's writings are evident as you read the Book of Mormon. He has a certain way of writing that is different that others in the coming chapters. Each has their own writing style and witness. The power of the first two books of the Book of Mormon are such that the record could have ended here and we would have the Book of Nephi and not the Book of Mormon! But the Lord works through multiple witnesses, so there are more records added to complete the Book of Mormon for us.

Two of the most important prophets of the Book of Mormon are Nephi and Mormon. Nephi began the record under commandment, and Mormon abridged the thousand years of history for the book. Is it any surprise that Nephi came to Joseph Smith in his home as a boy to tell him of the record? There is a mistake in the history that it was Moroni. Moroni was involved in retrieving and protecting the plates. But Nephi was the official introduction. The Lord is in every detail.

Questions and Comments:

I would love to meet Nephi! It is interesting to think of having the book of Mormon ending here. Yet at the same time, there is plenty, all we need in these first two books to bring us to Christ. Last year, I was reading the book of Mormon with an analytical Christian man. It is amazing that he continued to read up until we parted ways in Alma somewhere. He continually picked it apart. Continually disparaged the message... conceded a point here and there but all in all he was out to show me a person could read the book of Mormon and remain unconvinced. I had told him if he read it with real

intent and asked God if it was true, he would be convinced. He actually took the challenge. He has fulfilled his own prophecy

Wow. It was Nephi! Very cool. Even though the Gospel is true, there are so many mistakes in our history or writings that we have assumed were true. People were just as fallible back then as they are now.

Verse 8 – when the record uses the word Jew, which disbelievers have said is an anachronism, is this word included because Joseph was allowed to use the word that was most plain to our understanding as he translated? And why not use House of Jacob or Tribe of Judah? I know Nephi saw our day, hence his exasperation that we would not search knowledge no matter how plain he attempted to make his words. Did he see the anachronism issue causing a problem? Or is it a “problem” only for the unbelievers and that phraseology will soon be a huge blessing to the Remnant of Lehi? **[In that verse, he clarifies his use of the word “Jew” in that it was the people from which he came and knew. The House of Jacob or Tribe of Jacob may have a different nuance to the meaning. If he had said House of Judah, I would have thought Jewish. The Jews today are much different in some ways than the Jews at the time of Nephi. There are anachronisms in Joseph’s translations, but I think that 99% of the time his words were well suited for most of us to understand what Joseph was trying to say. PR]**

Jacob

Blood and Sins – Jacob 1:1-19

1 For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven. **[Nephi was about 70 years old.]**

2 And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

3 For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

4 And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads **[the principal part]** of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ’s sake, and for the sake of our people.

5 For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them. **[Often it is faith and anxiety which leads us to ponder and pray over things. If you feel anxious**

about anything it is a good time to reach out to God seeking revelation, and then to act on those thoughts given.]

6 And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come. **[What is the difference between revelation and prophecy? Revelation is God's word to you. Prophecy is God's word given to you to share to others.]**

7 Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in, as in the provocation in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness. **[Lehi often compared their journey to the children of Israel, this was a motif used commonly amongst the people of Nephi.]**

8 Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger **[judgment against]**, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world **[to overcome the world]**; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.

9 Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.

10 The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence **[was referred to as the King's Sword]**, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—

11 Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.

12 And it came to pass that Nephi died.

13 Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

14 But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings. **[During the reign of the kings it was according to race and skin color, but later in the Book of Mormon it becomes more a political ideology.]**

15 And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son. **[Polygamy is introduced to the people. Jacob immediately calls it out as wicked.]**

16 Yea, and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.

17 Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

18 For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.

19 And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.

Jacob and Joseph were set apart as priests in the temple and teachers to the people by Nephi. Jacob had a relationship with the Lord like Nephi in that He could receive the gift of revelation and prophecy. When the Lord gives a servant a command to preach “repentance and correction” they must do it or they themselves would be held accountable for the sin of their negligence. Often, unrepentant sins afflict a family for many generations before a correction is made. If a servant of God fails to intercede, they carry that responsibility into the next life to correct what they have done. The sins of their generation are upon them.

Today we too carry the responsibility to do all we can to follow the revelation the Lord gives us, to tell those to whom we have been commanded to be corrected and to repent. We must be cautious to follow the Spirit and not our own emotions, which may turn others away and have the opposite effect. I find that it is best to approach those to whom I have a stewardship with love and patience. I ask questions and reason with them. I don’t speak harshly unless the Holy Ghost constrains me to do that. I have been able to help many family and friends this way. Sometimes getting people to repent is like getting your children to eat their vegetables, but if you don’t try you may have to deal with something worse later.

Questions and Comments:

For those who must deal with something worse later because they failed to intercede when the Lord told them to, does that include having to carry those sins and tendencies/weaknesses upon them into another life? So, sins they never committed become theirs to repent of and overcome? **[No, but they have to do much more from the other side to help them. There is a kind of intercessory, but I cannot discuss that part of the Lord’s work. PR]**

Thank you for your help, I am glad you brought up this topic. When the Lord sends servants to preach repentance and correction throughout the scriptures, it seems the majority of the time the ecclesiastical leaders and priests are being called to repentance as well. Will that happen in our day to the leaders of the Gentile church? How will the leaders of these large churches ever hear the message from these servants? **[They all hear it in different ways. After a certain time of calling to repentance the Lord sends the judgments. It is happening now and eventually there will be a great upheaval. PR]**

I have wanted to ask for a while now, it’s unrelated to this post however you mentioned in your book “the City of God will begin to move and the earth will move toward them.

He said that the New Jerusalem and the Old Jerusalem will be lifted up like the “City of Enoch” and the earth will be cleansed, then all three cities will be returned to their place as the earth is made Terrestrial.” I was interested to know about Zions stakes, is the New Zion the only gathering place on this earth for us? When the time comes to gather the lost tribes etc. are we all headed there? I live outside of the USA, I’m unaware if anyone has talked about a vision of us and what happens in the end of times, but I’ve always pictured my nation (Australia) as going through similar devastations, but that we would be gathered elsewhere. I would love it if you could share any information about this. I am loving the BOM posts, I’m so inspired and grateful to you. **[There will be stakes gathered throughout the world, but before the end comes all will be gathered together. PR]**

When the Lord sends His judgements, will these false teachers/preachers/prophets be killed or will the people be shaken awake and realize their leaders had no connection with God and did not warn them anything was coming and did not even know to get themselves out of harm’s way, thus these leaders lose their followers and the people are freed from priestcraft? **[It will come in stages. There will be an exodus of people from the church, which we are seeing across the board as fewer people are attending their churches, or leaving all together. But the day will come when the Lord sends his judgments and the people will see that they cannot rely upon borrowed light. PR]**

Pride and Polygamy – Jacob 2:1-35

1 The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:

2 Now, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God. **[The Nephite Temple was similar to the Temple of Solomon, with an outer court layer where the people could gather to be taught.]**

3 And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.

4 For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you. **[It sounds like it has been a while since he has had to gather the people to make such an announcement or teach them.]**

5 But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God. **[An “abomination” is a sin of power and usually is tied to something of a sexual nature that makes unholy that which is holy.]**

6 Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame **[embarrassing]** before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.

7 And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God; **[It is also embarrassing to your wives and children.]**

8 And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul. **[They are expecting to hear words of rejoicing, but no.]**

9 Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God **[a direct revelation that cannot be neglected]**, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

10 But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart **[without sin]**, and the broken heart **[all to God, repenting]**, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

11 Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me **[Direct questions yield the best answers.]**, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

12 And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

13 And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they. **[The Nephites had begun to divide into classes according to their wealth. This places a wedge amongst the people. We know that having riches isn't in itself a sin, but when we become proud and callous to others it becomes a cord that binds us to this earth. The test for those who acquire wealth is that they can view their wealth as a stewardship of the Lord and not a sign of their status.]**

14 And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

15 O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust! **[A strong way for Jacob to express the judgment of God.]**

16 O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls! **[Many hope and pray for wealth, but it is perhaps one of the most difficult trials for those who experience it.]**

17 Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you. **[If you view your riches as a**

stewardship it is easier to do this. You are not expected to be the Bishop's Storehouse. The Lord will inspire you by the Spirit as to how you can meet this commandment.]

18 But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.

We usually think of riches in terms of money and the things money can buy. However, there are many forms of riches that can lead to pride. Anything that causes one to feel greater than another. This can be our physical beauty, our talents, our family heritage, our church callings, our status in career choice, our vehicle, our clothes, our smile, our intelligence, our experience of the world, our gender, our political affiliation, our friends and associates, and more. None of these things in themselves is sin, but when we use them to place ourselves in a higher class and look down on our brothers and sisters it is damnable to our spirits.

19 And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted. **[The point of this scripture is that God will bless His children with the riches of the world if we seek them for righteous purposes. Righteous, meaning it is His will. There are many among the chosen of God who are not called to have the riches of the world in this life, yet are indeed rich. Satan also blesses his followers with riches for the opposite reasons.]**

One nasty unbelief that is common amongst those who follow Christ is that wealth is a sign of someone's status with God. This is nurtured by the culture of ecclesiastical leaders that come from the high income and career ladders of the world. I'm reminded that Jesus chose from amongst the poor to be his Apostles. Part of the attribute of charity is to see others the way God sees them. We must look beyond the outward appearance.

20 And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it? **[What are you going to do about it?]**

21 Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

22 And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you. **[It always helps to start with the less bad news before you hit them with the whopper.]**

23 But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity **[Sin is to be out of harmony with God's law. Iniquity is to do something that is highly inappropriate, this word implies something of a grosser nature.]**; they understand not the

scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

24 Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord. **[This is a very direct statement from a prophet of the Lord. He doesn't go into any detail regarding David and what he did, yet clearly teaches to his people that they are not to do this thing.]**

25 Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

26 Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old. **[They are commanded not to have polygamous relationships like "them of old." This would include those who excuse their actions by citing Abraham and Jacob.]**

27 Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none; **[This is very clear. Only one wife, no concubines, no exceptions.]**

28 For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women **[honoring women with purity]**. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

This verse fills my heart with joy as I consider the Lords love for his daughters. Men are to honor His daughters in how they respect, nurture, and serve them. Men who exploit women for sexual appetites or anything else are separating themselves from God. A man and woman who honor each other equally are preparing themselves for exaltation. This is God's purpose for an eternal marriage. The relationships that are nurtured in this life have the potential to become eternal in the worlds to come if we keep our covenants to each other and God. The temple marriage is an earthly ordinance which only has merit if it is made perfect by the spiritual marriage ordinance, which is performed by Christ Himself.

29 Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

30 For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me **[establish a new branch of Israel because you have become ripe in iniquity]**, I will command my people **[from the House of Israel]**; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things. **[And they shall follow the path that you have not.]**

This verse is often used as a caveat to make exception for this commandment. What does it mean "to raise up seed unto me?" It is far more than to expedite the number of children born to a family who worships Jesus. The only time "a people" have been commanded to have a polygamous marriage was in the case of the people of Israel. Moses stated that a man was to marry his brother's widow. It was part of the law to prevent these women from becoming destitute. Brigham Young established polygamy as a law among the LDS. This broke from the teachings of Joseph Smith, as the church made polygamy its core doctrine until it was ended in

1890, 46 years after Joseph was murdered. Section 132 was the revelation cited as the source of this commandment.

31 For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

32 And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

33 For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

The Lord doesn't allow unrighteous polygamy to continue amongst his people when it takes hold, because of the prayers of his fair daughters. Either it is snuffed out, or they are visited with destruction.

34 And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before; and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done. **[Lehi also taught against polygamy.]**

35 Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you. And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds. **[How does a "heart die?" When there no longer exists any trust between a husband and wife, or a parent and child, the heart cannot be fixed. There is a difference between forgiveness and trust. Forgiveness is letting go of the pain. We receive forgiveness from the Lord when he "lets go of our sins," but we must still forgive ourselves. For those who have had their hearts killed by an abuser, they can let go, but are not required to trust them. If they can gain a spouse's trust again the marriage can be rebuilt. For those dealing with a broken marriage it is a difficult thing to determine how to move forward. The Lord makes all things right according to our faith.]**

Questions and Comments:

Is there any more you are able to share with us that defines Joseph's understanding on polygamy especially in relation to the restoration? **[If you read the chapter on Joseph Smith and the Addendum to the book A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations it has all I am permitted to say. PR]**

And yes, as PR indicates, the Lord will lead us. I know that the Lord is very aware of all who truly seek clarity on this. Very aware, very merciful. I love the reminder here on this project a couple of times now that He is in every detail. He was, is, and will be... even or I should say- ESPECIALLY when to us mortals, it looks like things don't seem to fit.

I have always felt in my heart that Polygamy was never part of the Lords will. Being led by the **[In verse 18: “But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.” This reminded me of D&C 6:7: ”Seek not for riches but for wisdom, and behold, the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto you, and then shall you be made rich. Behold, he that hath eternal life is rich.” Here I pause as I consider another trap that Satan lays for the righteous. There are those who may not have great earthly riches, yet are rich of the things of the Spirit. We must use caution to not see ourselves, or others, above another in our standing with God, for “stiff necks and high heads” can also apply to those who have been given much in spiritual blessings. The Lord reminded His servants that he who is greatest of all is a servant. D&C 50:26 Do not covet those who have received what you consider greater blessings, whether that be a 4th estate, or 3rd estate servant. If you are on the path to Eternal Life you are Blessed, and will be expected to sacrifice all things that you too may carry your cross and be considered as the dust of the earth. In such sacrifice comes infinite blessings. PR]**

If the temple of God is our bodies, does that mean the abomination of desolation is a sin of power that is sexual in nature that defiles the body? Is only the body of one who has made a covenant with God before coming to earth considered a temple of God or are all human bodies a temple of God? I’m trying to understand this mystery from Daniel 12:11. **[A temple is a place where God’s glory dwells. Seldom does this occur with people or places. If such a place is defiled in that manner this phrase would apply. PR]**

I’m not sure if you’ve discussed D&C132 before, but I was wondering if you had a translation for that section? **[Maybe at some point in the future. PR]**

Thank you for doing this project. I have looked forward to this chapter! A few years ago when I was severely bothered by polygamy, I disliked Jacob 2:30. The Lord answered my prayers about polygamy FIVE TIMES with the same answer: one man and one woman is His way. As part of the second answer, He asked me to read Jacob 2 and count how many times the words iniquity, abomination, whoredom, adultery, sin, wickedness, etc were used. By the time I was done reading and counting, I was relieved and rejoicing at how much I had overlooked and that the Lord had soothed my fears. The fifth time I asked Him about polygamy, I referenced Jacob 2:30 and said I was worried He might command it at a future time in the millennium, like some men at church claimed. The Lord replied “I used the word seed but did I mention marriage, husbands, wives or sex? Did I not say I was able of these stones to raise up children unto Abraham?” (A reference to Matt 3:9) I giggled out loud as I imagined the men being told they won’t be marrying second wives but will instead be sent out to gather up rocks. (The Savior has a fantastic sense of humor!) He also told me, since I was worried about it, that if He really wanted more children born, the women would all conceive and deliver twins and triplets safely because He is God. He does not punish His daughters for the nine (ten) month gestation period He created by giving their husbands to other women. Needless to say polygamy

pierced and wounded by heart even a hundred years after the fact. I spent almost a year studying, seeking and asking before I received the first answer, which was the Lord asking me how many wives Adam had when the world was in need of populating? And how many wives did Noah and his three sons each have when the world was again in need of seed? This post is another wonderful witness. I am so grateful for you, brother, and I'm incredibly grateful for the BoM and the Lord's patience and goodness!

What are the Lord's definitions of poor, needy and naked? (Does naked mean those who have insufficient protection from cold, the elements or lack of shoes to protect the feet?) **[I think it is anyone within our ability to help, whether it is physical or spiritual. It is good in most cases to pray first for guidance in that we do not run faster than we have strength. Also, that we do not withhold our substance because we judge others unrighteously. How we give is as important as what we give. PR]**

I'd really appreciate it if you'd address the core question most of us want to know...was Brigham Young inspired by the Lord to institute polygamy? Yes, I can seek personal revelation concerning this question, but I fear that there is too much emotion, confusion, etc. surrounding this issue, and I would love to know the truth. **[It is incumbent upon each of us to seek revelation in this regard. There is a reason certain specifics are withheld. If we put away our fears and prejudices and ask God with a sincere heart, He will lead us to the answers we seek. PR]**

I'm not sure what you mean by your comment, "If Emma didn't write it, I would be incredulous"? If Emma didn't write what? **[You mentioned how Emma felt regarding the other "marriages" of Joseph. If it is not from her personal journal I would be skeptical. PR]**

How do we prevent our spouse from becoming an idol?... how do we love our spouse in perfect alignment with the Lord? **[By viewing her as a gift from God, a stewardship of love that requires prayerful and faithful care. PR]**

Declare the Truth – Jacob 3:1-14

1 But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart **[come unto Christ and are made clean]**. Look unto God with firmness of mind **[real intent]**, and pray unto him with exceeding faith **[great desire to receive revelation, His word for you]**, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction. **[He will hear your prayers.]**
2 O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever. **[Receive revelation because you are His children, having been born again of the Spirit.]**

3 But, wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God [**remain in their sins**]; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you [**are not lifted up with pride, and whoredoms**], nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

4 And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will leadaway the righteous out from among you.

As I read this I hear the Spirit of the Lord telling me that this is the same fate for the United States of America, a land which is under covenant, yet the people ripen in iniquity just as those of the Nephites did many years ago. In a similar manner, we are threatened by our enemies and unless we repent the land will be scourged and the righteous will be led out from among them.

5 Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

This verse is clear on the seriousness of sexual sin, particularly how “whoredoms” are to viewed by the Lord. Jacob specifies what is acceptable concerning sexual relations, “they should have save it were one wife; and concubines they should have none.”

6 And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people. [**Jacob may have seen the Anti-Nephi-Lehis, or even the great rise of the Indian Nations in the last days.**]

7 Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children [**Which is the standard for the Lord.**]; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator? [**The Lord has mercy upon those who are caught in generational iniquity. Sometimes it takes an act of God to break these chains, which often includes sending choice spirits of great faith and courage to break from these generational sins. Such families may struggle with abuse of all kinds, or even unbelief regarding the Gospel.**]

8 O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God. **Jacob uses skin color as a metaphor for cleanliness. The Lamanites’ skin was darkened by the Lord as a way to separate them from the Nephites. Our skin color has no bearing in the Heavens with our standing with God. Most of the angels I have witnessed at the Throne were white, but I saw black, brown, and other hues, and they were just as glorious. To be a minority in the Heavenly Realm is something of beauty and praise. Nothing is prized more among the angels than uniqueness of faith and sacrifice. Usually, those of different skin color have had to exercise such magnificent faith to come where they are that although they have the ability to make their skin**

color white, most choose to remain the same as a witness of their sacrifice. It is a beautiful thing to behold!

9 Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness [**Look in the mirror.**], and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers. [**For me, this is more than a speech against racism. We should not revile anyone that is different, whether it be skin color, social class, religion, political affiliation, or nationality. What does it mean to revile? It is to criticize in an insulting manner. This is the common language amongst people today. We revile against everything! It does not mean that we should not stand up for truth and debate those who promote wickedness, but if we wish to draw closer to God we must have His Spirit with us in these endeavors.**]

10 Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day. [**We are held responsible for the sins that we carry to our children, as they continue the same behaviors.**]

11 O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

It's not easy to "shake" free from the slumber of sin. A broken heart is a shaken heart. We must feel the awfulness of our situation. Some repent out of fear – not enough. Some repent out of guilt – not enough. We have the most lasting effects when we repent out of love, and often it begins with fear and guilt until we learn to love. Our love for Jesus is built upon turning our hearts to Him. It is impossible to correct generations of unbelief without trusting and loving only Jesus, with no man, family, or institution between us.

12 And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them. [**I bet that was an interesting second half.**]

13 And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.

14 These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

So far in the Book of Mormon we have heard the words of the prophets Nephi, Lehi, Isaiah, and Jacob. Their words are powerful because they not only tell us what to do, but how to do it. When they tell us to repent, receive revelation, keep the commandments, look to Christ, and they prophecy of His words to us. The language is often harsh and direct. The only pleasing words are to emphasize the blessings that will come to those who keep the

commandments. All of them are prophets/seers/revelators, because they reveal God’s word that has not been revealed before and have boldly declared what they have seen.

Questions and Comments:

In verse 5, what is the correct definition of “filthiness”? **[They were considered filthy by the Nephites for how they dressed, ate, slept, and basically everything about their culture. Not much different than how the early Americans viewed the Native Americans. PR]**

Can you give us a verbal description of Nephite & Lamanite dress, eating, sleeping, etc? Just a snapshot of the interesting things you saw about their culture? This may seem like a random question but sometimes knowing about their lives in some way makes other scriptures suddenly click, especially when the HG brings to mind a tidbit about culture plus what a scripture says to give deeper understanding! **[I will save that for some of the coming chapters. PR]**

What do you mean by “family units for the most part follow each other through the mother’s line”? **[The spirits of our children we bear follow the mother unless there is an intervention. Husbands normally, in most cases, are not bound to their wives the same as their children are from beyond the veil. This will lead to many questions, but that is all I can say for now. PR]**

You mentioned generational abuse. What happens to those who are a part of generational abuse? Do they have to be born in a future mortality again in abuse until they overcome? Or do they choose those families? **[They follow the line of the mother. Every person is given opportunities despite their circumstances to find the Lord, whether in this life or another. PR]**

I find Jacob’s contrast between the Nephites & Lamanites very interesting over this one point of doctrine, in that: The Nephites “have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done. Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren.” Jacob 2:34-35
The Lamanites “have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father . . . wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them” . . . Jacob 3:5-6 (at the end of the BoM this promise is fulfilled) I have pondered much over this consequence that these two peoples experienced hundreds of years into their future wondering if it affects me and my own ancestors and progenitors. I have polygamous ancestors and wonder if proxy repentance can seriously make a difference for them as well and for my own children, for is it possible that the effects of this ‘tradition of the fathers’ has been visited upon us the children unto the 3rd & 4th+ generations? **[Generational sins affect people differently. For some it is an actual genetic propensity. For others, it is an unbelief that is difficult to reconcile or release. In the case of polygamy, people may assume they**

would not be here had it not been for polygamy with their forebears. This is incorrect, because those spirits would have still been given bodies, and family units for the most part follow each other through the mother's line. The Lord sometimes leads people to find each other and be married in order to bring new blood into a line and help in the generational healing. There is much to this, but instead of feeling remorse or anger toward our forebears we can rejoice that the Lord has released us from any cords that bind us. PR]

PR- how does our ancestry play into generational curses? Can you help explain if there is a difference between a "daughter OF Zion" and a "daughter IN Zion." Did daughters of Zion exist in the pre-mortal estate? I gotta take these questions to the Lord myself and I'm hoping you may have some insight on just how I need to formulate the proper questions to him. Much love- M [There is not much distinction between those terms. Typically, it means a descendant of the House of Israel. Yes, they exist in the pre mortal state. It can also be used in our own manner of speaking to simply be a female in the church. PR]

Learn the Mysteries – Jacob 4:1-18

1 Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain; **[It was a slow process of writing on plates. The prophets of old look upon our modern miracles and marvel.]**

2 But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers— **[An incredible amount of thought went into what to include in this record.]**

3 Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents. **[Jacob knew that there was a tendency among the people to look poorly upon the family of Nephi for bringing them out of their homeland. Some saw their influence as a means of subjugation. Jacob, knowing this, saw these records as a source of truth and conversion.]**

4 For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory **[knew that they were accepted of Christ and would be lifted up]**, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

5 Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified **[make holy]** unto us for righteousness **[doing His will]**, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the

wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

There is much in this verse. Jacob identifies the purpose of the Law of Moses in that it points toward a heavenly relationship with the Father. Every part of the temple ordinances of the Jews was a type for our ascension and pointed to the redemption of Christ's suffering for us. Also the feasts and holy days, which were required to observe, pointed to the same.

Then, Jacob says it was "accounted unto Abraham" to be obedient in offering up his son as a "similitude" of the Father's sacrifice of giving His Only Begotten Son. People often wonder what the purpose of Abraham's sacrifice. Was it a test? Did it really happen? Would God ever ask the same of me? There is only one eternal sacrifice required to save the souls of men, and that is Christ. There is only one sacrifice in similitude to the Father, and that is the dispensational head to the House of Israel, and that was Abraham. It is an ordinance. His offering demonstrated to all the House of Israel the incredible sacrifice of the Father to give His future Son upon the altar of God.

6 Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea. **[This is the effects of having a true relationship with God, or priesthood.]**

7 Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions **[plural, God's walk among men]** unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things. **[As a mortal being we have the weakness of the flesh, but through the Atonement, which is the ascension of the estates (grace), we can do these things.]**

8 Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable **[not to be found in this world]** are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him **[They are available through the Lord.]**; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God. **[Do not dismiss these things.]**

9 For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. **[He doesn't say man evolved upon the face of the earth, or that he was brought forth out of the earth, but that he "came upon the face of the earth." Refer to the story of Adam at the beginning of the book, "A Witness of the Temporal Dispensation." However, be sure you have read the other proceeding books first, is my advice.]** Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure? **[One of the biggest miracles to witness is the creation of a baby from its conception to its development into a fully**

functioning and cognizant human. All things are a type for God's creation in the universe.]

10 Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works. **[Who do we seek to counsel with to learn truth? Most all people lean upon the knowledge and wisdom of men and their endless philosophies. When we exercise the faith to learn truth directly from Him, we begin a journey that ends with a relationship we could have no other way.]**

11 Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled **[be born again in the Holy Ghost]** unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh. **[The first fruits of the resurrection is the actual ascension (change in glory) of our spirits after having received the gift of the Holy Ghost.]**

12 And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come? **[Don't just think about it, partake of it!]**

13 Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. **[When we are given truth of God and commanded to share, do it in a manner that others can understand.]** Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old. **[The reality of these things is true, both now and in the future.]**

14 But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people **[unwilling to repent]**; and they despised the words of plainness **[over-analiticized the scriptures]**, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand **[Sought to learn the mysteries through intellectual discovery]**. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark **[Christ]**, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it **[They indeed have many mysteries, yet do not understand the significance of any of it.]** And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

15 And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

16 But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

17 And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner? **[How can the foundation be saved when it is already been built up without the cornerstone?]**

18 Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble because of my over anxiety for you. **[Jacob now sets up his purpose for the next chapter, which beautifully describes God’s purpose amongst the House of Israel.]**

Questions and Comments:

I am very curious to know what type of person Jacob was from your visionary observations? What was his personality like? How was he different from Nephi? I can distinguish some differences between his and Nephi’s sermons, in the way he writes. I’m curious to know what kind of person he was? Thanks. **[My impression was that he was much like Nephi, but not as intense. Completely dedicated to the Lord. These are just my impressions from the little I saw. PR]**

Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions [plural, God’s walk among men] “. Does this mean that Jesus may have condescended as a different great prophet on this earth in another dispensation? Or “ God’s walk among men” meaning that other God’s (Saviors) from other earths may have condescended because of their great love for us? Not just to advance in the different estates, Just trying to wrap my mind around all the possibilities. It been such a mind expanding journey reading all your posts and books. You have amazing insights! **[That is a mystery I am not permitted to write about. But there is only one Savior on this earth. PR]**

Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure? [One of the biggest miracles to witness is the creation of a baby from its conception to its development into a fully functioning and cognizant human. All things are a type for God’s creation in the universe.] I agree it’s a supreme miracle, it is proof God is and was and will be... yet there is such a raging fight against this miracle as of late. My heart is heavy because of the wickedness of abortion, the strangle hold Satan has on the hearts of people. The blindness. The awfulness of our situation.

Allegory of the Vineyard – Jacob 5:1-77

1 Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos **[an unknown prophet from the Brass Plates]**, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:

The following is an allegory to teach God’s purposes for the House of Israel. Like a condensed version of Isaiah’s many chapters, Zenos does a good job showing the great mercies of God, and the mysteries regarding the divine plan to bring about His people’s redemption. The vineyard was understood

for the delicate care required to bring forth fruit, and a perfect metaphor for God's work among men.

2 Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet [**appointed messenger**] of the Lord. [**not of man**]

3 For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame [**cultivated**] olive tree, which a man [**God**] took and nourished in his vineyard [**The House of Israel was a particular people God placed carefully amongst the nations of the world.**]; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay. [**They matured as a nation and began to become sick spiritually.**]

4 And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard [**The Lord**] went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it [**remove the covenant breakers**], and dig about it [**give it room to grow**], and nourish it [**bless them**], that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches [**those people who will repent**], and it perish not.

At first the Lord personally is involved with Israel, as He is in their midst.

5 And it came to pass that he pruned it [**the House of Israel**], and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.

6 And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish. [**The priests and kings appointed to officiate over the people became corrupted.**]

7 And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree [**covenant people**]; wherefore, go and pluck the branches [**from another group of people**] from a wild olive tree [**the gentiles, not of the covenant**], and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned. [**Remove the wicked portion of the people that they not ruin the good fruit. This was accomplished by permitting the gentile armies to conquer the Northern Kingdoms of Israel and Judah.**]

8 And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches [**People who are striving to keep his commandments**], and I will graft [**place**] them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root [**remembrance of their God and covenant**] of this tree will perish, I may preserve [**continue to develop**] the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches [**people who seek me**], and I will graft [**place**] them whithersoever I will. [**This the first Diaspora of the Jews which started with the Assyrian captivity of the Northern Kingdom of Israel in 722 BC, and then the fall of Jerusalem to Babylon in 589 BC.**]

9 Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree [**gentiles**], and graft them in [**Allow them to occupy the land of Israel.**], in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard. [**This destruction laid the groundwork for new branches of Israel to be cultivated.**]

10 And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree.

Notice how in the previous verses the Lord, or Master of the Vineyard, personally watches over the tree (versus 3-6), but then withdraws as the fruit becomes corrupt. When the glory of the Lord rests upon His temple,

He is in their midst. But when it is defiled, the people did not know where to turn. At this juncture, prophets are sent to call them to repentance.

11 And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about [**provided a way to flourish**], and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree [**House of Israel**]; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots [**remembrance of their covenant**] thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

12 Wherefore, go thy way [**speaking to the servants**]; watch the tree [**House of Israel**], and nourish it, according to my words. [**A commandment to the prophets, the Servants of the Dominion, that they help the House of Israel to be led and find God.**]

13 And these [**The prophets**] will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard [**to the four corners of the earth**], whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve [**stir up unto repentance**] unto myself the natural branches [**original bloodline of Israel**] of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season [**at the proper time it will bear fruit**], unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

14 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches [**Blood of Israel**] of the tame olive tree [**those who are obedient to God's commandments**] in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure. [**The northern tribes of Israel, the House of Lehi, and other remnants including some of Zedekiah's children.**]

15 And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

16 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree. [**What has happened to the various branches of the House of Israel during these 600 years?**]

17 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted [**Jews living in captivity**]; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit. [**The Jews returned to Jerusalem and rebuilt their kingdom under Cyrus around 516 BC.**]

18 And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree [**Remnants of the wicked House of Israel from the Northern Kingdom**] have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof [**remembering their God**], that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches [**Taken the remnant out of the land of Israel**], the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self. [**At the proper time shall they be redeemed.**]

19 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard [**Those remnant led away to parts of the**

world.], and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. 20 And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first **[first to be exiled]** that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit. **[The Lost Ten Tribes]**

21 And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard. **[Why did you spare these of the House of Israel who were so corrupt?]**

22 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground **[not a covenant land]**; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit. **[The Lord has the foresight to see how the House of Israel can be a leaven to the world.]**

23 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first **[Not even desirable to the gentiles.]** But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self. **[A portion of the Ten Tribes led to a place of isolation hidden from the world. They are gathered to prepare for their redemption according the Covenant of Christ.]**

24 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit. **[Another branch of Israel taken by the Lord to a land hitherto unknown.]**

25 And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground **[The covenant land of America]**; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit **[righteous Nephites]**, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit **[wicked Lamanites]**; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others. **[Each branch has its own records and prophets.]**

26 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

27 But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season. **[We will not totally destroy them, but give it more time to bear fruit.]**

28 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.

29 And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self. **[The Lord**

prepares to come unto His people to bring forth the first fruits of the kingdom. His personal mission amongst the vineyard.]

30 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree. **[The Jews were in a state of apostasy.]**

31 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. **[The Lord personally walked amongst His vineyard.]** And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.

32 But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. **[The House of Israel has rejected Him.]** And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.

33 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?

34 And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good. **[The Gospel goes from the Jews unto the Gentiles.]**

35 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

36 Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto **[until now]** brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit. **[Before the apostasy from the Gospel, the gentiles were bringing forth fruit into Christ's kingdom.]**

37 But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it. **[Foreshadowing for the restoration of the Gospel under the prophet Joseph Smith.]**

38 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

39 And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

40 And the wild fruit of the last **[The Church of the Gentiles]** had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch **[original Christian Church after His resurrection]** had withered away and died. **It is interesting how both the Christians in the Middle East and in America only lasted about 400 years before complete Apostasy.**

41 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard? **[God's deep love for His people.]**

42 Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees **[nations]** of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire. **[complete Apostacy in the world]**

43 And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard. **[The Americas]**

44 And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof. **[The removal of the previous people, the Jaredites.]**

45 And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away. **[The Lamanites were allowed to remain in the land and led to the destruction of the Nephites. Their remnant is the Native Americans.]**

46 And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive tree **[Those who never made a covenant with God]**, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should lose them.

The entire purpose of this earth's creation is to bring forth fruit unto God. In other words, to bring to pass the Eternal Life of man. All people who occupy this world are given that opportunity, and when it is complete will literally be hewn down and cast into fire. All the souls of this world will either remain without a covenant and move on in a telestial glory, or follow Satan if they partook of his covenant.

47 But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand **[been easy on them at times]**, that I have not nourished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard? **[The Lord knows who, how, and why. This is an allegory to express the Lord's great interest in us and to cause us to consider these things.]**

48 And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted? **[The pride of the people, as they become rich in their blessings, forget from whence those blessings came.]**

49 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees **[nations]** of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

50 But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

51 And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

52 Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came [**Return of the remnant of Jacob.**]; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof. [**establish Zion**]

53 And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose. [**A plan to save the remnant of Jacob in this land.**]

54 And, behold, the roots [**The source of their truth**] of the natural branches [**direct descendants**] of the tree which I planted whithersoever [**in various places**] I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them [**these branches, people**] also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. [**They will know who they are.**] Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree [**The House of Israel**], that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong [**awakened servants**] perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

55 And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild. [**Helped to awaken the fallen House of Israel.**]

56 And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree. [**Restored them to the true Doctrine of Christ.**]

57 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said. [**Be merciful to the Gentiles unless they are overcome with Satan's wrath, that they might be brought to repentance.**]

58 And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire. [**We will gather the Elect and fight for Zion.**]

59 And this I do that, perhaps, the roots [**the call to repentance, to come unto Christ**] thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil. [**They have His Gospel, will they awake and arise?**]

60 And because that I have preserved the natural branches [**House of Israel**] and the roots [**original call to come unto God**] thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree [**restored them to the Covenant**], and have preserved the roots of their mother tree [**The origin of that Covenant**], that, perhaps, the trees [**nations**] of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit— [**Redeem all of Israel, from its beginning until now.**]

61 Wherefore, go to, and call servants [**bring forth the 4th estate servants**], that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit [**The House of Israel**] is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

62 Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard. **[Here we are today, as we approach the gathering of Israel to Zion.]**

63 Graft **[place]** in the branches **[people who are gathered unto Christ]**; begin at the last **[Gentiles]** that they may be first, and that the first **[House of Israel]** may be last, and dig about the trees **[Prepare them]**, both old and young **[various level of estates]**, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time. **[Prepare them for what will come.]**

64 Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh **[There are two surges of preparation leading up to Second Coming. The first was with Joseph Smith, the second is the Davidic Servant.]** And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow. **[Zion shall take hold with these last placements of people.]**

65 And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit **[The destruction of the corrupted Church of the Gentiles.]**, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard. **[Because the wheat and the tares grow together, the tree will not collapse at once, but through a process, so that people will have time to open their eyes and repent.]**

66 For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root **[people of faith]** and the top **[leadership]** may be equal in strength **[They are of one heart and mind, with all equal in the site of God.]**, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard. **[Judgments of God]**

67 And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree; **[The House of Israel will be brought home.]**

68 And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one. **[Zion is established.]**

69 And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard. **[The wicked of the earth will be swept off and the Lord will gather the righteous together.]**

70 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few. **[The 144 Thousand anointed servants of the Dominions, and a smaller number of those who serve as the Gatherers among those in the flesh.]**

71 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come. **[This is the greatest event to take place since the Resurrection of Christ, and will be the most wonderous series of miracles in the history of the world within a concentrated period of time.]**

72 And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things. **[Those who will gather Zion.]**

73 And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly **[Zion is growing rapidly]**; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof. **[There were no poor (in spirit) in Zion. For all knew the Lord.]**

74 And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments **[revelations]** of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees **[nations]** had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits **[those redeemed in Christ]** were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit **[House of Israel]**, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

75 And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. **[The House of Israel, as had covenanted with God from before the foundation of the world.]** And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard. **[The joyful words of God to His Servants.]**

76 For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and dunged it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken. **[These are now the third estate, those who have become Sons and Daughters of God in His image, to receive Eternal Life.]**

77 And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, **[At the end of the Millennium, as Satan begins to tempt the angels of God before the beginning of a new world.]** then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. **[Outer Darkness]** And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire. **[The earth will change and receive its Celestial inheritance.]**

Questions and Comments:

Good fruit: what specifically is it? Can anybody who is hearkening to His voice in even small ways be considered good fruit or are only things like baptism, baptism by fire etc considered good fruit? **[The fruit is the desired outcome. You can be in the process of bringing forth good fruit by repentance and baptism, but the “fruit” is Eternal Life. Alma 32 goes through this. PR]** And evil fruit is just apostasy plain and simple? **[It is the fruit of damnation. PR]** The last grafting in

our day today with the Davidic servant. Will that be in a tandem effort or in concert with the lds church or can you say? **[He will only answer directly to Jesus Christ. PR]** Or does the Davidic servant appear more at the time of tribulations when the church is fractured and/ or divided? **[Yes. PR]**

When the Lord comes down to labor, does that mean He comes to earth in the flesh? (He came in the flesh before the life in Jerusalem in which He completed the atonement?) **[He came only once in the flesh to atone for the sins of men. PR]** Has He come in the flesh since then? Or is He here constantly helping with His glory hidden but He's not been in the flesh again since Jerusalem? **[He walks among men often, similar to how he did on the Road to Emmaus. PR]** (I've already been told that during natural disasters He doesn't just stay up in heaven and watch but that He is down here with us, helping victims. There was a popular book about a vision that hinted at the same thing.)

Who is the main Servant the Lord is always speaking to in this parable? Is it the same servant every time? Or the dispensation head? **[He represents the dispensation head, who is an arch-angel over many other angels or servants. PR]**

70 And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few. [The 144 Thousand anointed servants of the Dominions, and a smaller number of those who serve as the Gatherers among those in the flesh.]” Can you please help me to understand this better. Are the 144,000 Dominions in this world now? Living among us as 4th estate beings that are being awakened? Or do they come from the people of Enoch who will come back to this world? Also, who are the smaller number Gatherers? Are they upon the earth now as awakened beings? Possibly beings who are 3rd Estate who will gather? Thank you so much for opening a greater understanding of these verses to me. **[The 144K are all the anointed servants called before the foundation of the world to assist the Lord in saving the House of Israel. They are the Dominions. Most are not on this earth in the flesh now. The translated City of Enoch included many of them. They are all 4th estate, and there are no more added to the 4th estate until the end of this world's 7th dispensation (Millennium). The Gatherers are a smaller portion of the 144k who will be translated to assist in the gathering of Israel from this side of the veil. PR]**

[These are now the third estate, those who have become Sons and Daughters of God in His image, to receive Eternal Life.]” in my prior question in a previous post you said the 3rd estate beings condescend to the 1st Estate to serve in order to progress to the 4th Estate. **[No, that is incorrect. 3rd do not condescend, they are those of the second who ascend to the 3rd in this life by receiving the Holy Ghost. PR]** So they serve among the spirit children of Father in a war in Heaven similar to what took place here? Are they in their exalted body or as spirits in their service? Can you elaborate on what exactly they are called to do? Are they allowed to retain their knowledge gained before condescending to the 1st Estate? Thank you for your patience

with my questions. I so appreciate all your time spent in teaching us.

In v. 39 And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt. This seems to indicate that all of scattered Israel apostasized, even the portion of the Ten Tribes that were “led to a place of isolation hidden from the world”? If so, was a prophet required to be raised up amongst them to restore them to the Doctrine of Christ? **[Yes, that is correct.]**

I just read [Edit] and every single breakdown of this scripture coincided with my heart felt conviction! I seriously love you PR! (sisterly of course:) Question, I notice you have written mention Sons and Daughter of God.....not Daughters. Anything to that or just a typo? Off topic question as well. Is it possible for a second estate woman to conceive a 4th estate child in this life? Some heavy questions for sure. **[Typo, thanks for catching that. Yes, many 2nd give birth to 4th estate.]**

I've been looking forward to this chapter! Are the 144K anointed servants of the Dominions those who are not presently in a state of mortality but have previously risen to Enoch's city over the course of mankind history on this earth? By extension, are the Gatherers those who are presently in mortality (and are fourth estate) who awake/arise and take up the cause of gathering in similar fashion to the 144K but from a position on earth? I believe you said there are about 3000 Gatherers – a relatively small number. **[That is correct. PR]**

Thank you for explaining the analogies, like how to dig about the roots means to give the people room to flourish. But what does the dung (fertilizer) represent? **[Just part of the preparations to help strengthen the tree's roots. PR]**

Was Zenos before, during or after Isaiah's time? Are Zenoch and Zenos related? Any idea what the Z- prefix means, since the names Enoch & Enos also exist? Or what the names Zenos & Zenoch mean? **[This I do not know. PR]**

Have you inquired about Zenos, similar to the other scriptural figures who you saw visions of detailed events of their lives? Can you share anything? **[I have not. PR]**

Will the female Gatherers also be able to baptize and bestow the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands? **[Yes. PR]** Are the offices of the priesthood manmade? In other words, since women can have just as much priesthood (relationship) with God as men, have the priesthood functions in this Telestial world been determined by traditions and cultures? Or does God require that only men perform/hold these duties and responsibilities? **[The offices of priesthood are a manmade creation for the purposes of helping to organize the functions of priesthood. It is more a temporal necessity which is often dictated according to culture. In Zion, there will be few similarities between the offices of the priesthood as they exist today and what they will be. There will be differences between how**

most of the sisters and brothers use that priesthood, as there are distinct differences in the gifts that males and females often demonstrate. You will see the sisters active in roles that involve the women, children, and humanitarian needs; but not exclusively. PR]

It seems that verse 40 is also talking about the Americas... May dually talking about the church of the Gentiles too?

Could the Allegory of the Vineyard also be interpreted as a way that the Lord works with us personally in our lives? How often does he labor with us individually? Does he send servants to labor for us? Does he let us grow wild for a season? At what point in our private relationship with Jesus Christ would one be able to bare good fruit? I feel like there many layers of meaning within the scriptures that can teach us and draw us closer to God, am I wrong in thinking that? **[Yes, the Lord can speak to us in the scriptures on a very personal level. PR]**

O Be Wise – Jacob 6:1-13

1 And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive tree, must surely come to pass.

2 And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh. **[Two steps before He comes: the servants go forth in power to nourish and prune the vineyard, then His Second Coming. The nourishing and pruning is the act of gathering the Elect. What will that look like? They will heal them, feed them, teach them the doctrine of Christ in purity, baptize them, lay their hands upon them for the Gift of the Holy Ghost, then bring them to Zion. Most of this will happen incredibly fast.]**

3 And how blessed**[Blessed]** are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire. **[The earth will literally be bathed in fire, both physically and spiritually at His coming.]**

4 And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches **[All varieties that relate to the Covenant given.]**; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long **[blesses them and makes their ways straight.]**; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

What does it mean to have a “hard heart?” It is to lack the desire to believe the message of turning to Christ, receiving the ordinances of salvation, and repenting.

5 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart **[determination with no guile]**, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended

towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts. **[I like that word “cleave.” It is holding on for death life and not letting go!]**

6 Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die? **[I like the way Jacob talks. If the Spirit whispers to you today will you ignore Him?]**

7 For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire? **[After all Jacob has spoken to them this day, will they choose damnation?]**

8 Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you? **[You would have to be pretty hard-hearted to do that after having so many witnesses.]**

9 Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

What is the “bar of God?” It is where judgment is passed upon each soul depending upon their degree of righteousness or wickedness. Satan’s servants often come to accuse the sons and daughters of light or to make claim upon them. Other righteous beings, including angels may vouch for us when this occurs. It can happen in mortality and the next life. In the end, we will be judged based upon the degree of light and glory we possess. The unrepentant are an “open book.” Each time the Lord separates the light from the darkness it is a judgment.

10 And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable **[This language is a similitude of the spiritual state of bitterness and anguish, however it is also not too removed in terms of description of the place.]**, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

Justice is not something that can be altered because it is based upon laws of God, which means they are eternal in their scope and determination. These laws are based upon truth, love, fairness, harmony, and perfection. One might ask, “How could a loving God send these poor spirits to endless hell?” They go gladly and willingly, because they choose to do so. Remember, they made covenants to this end.

11 O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.

12 O be wise; what can I say more? **[I have always loved this little verse!]**

13 Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

Questions and Comments:

Thank you for the detailed insights in this chapter! From vs 2 note: “[Two steps before He comes: the servants go forth in power to nourish and prune the vineyard, then His Second Coming. The nourishing and pruning is the act of gathering the Elect. What will that look like? They will heal them, feed them, teach them the doctrine of Christ in purity, baptize them, lay their hands upon them for the Gift of the Holy Ghost, then bring them to Zion. Most of this will happen incredibly fast.]” Is Zion underway/beginning right now, in our day of relative peace or are the gatherers not sent out in the United States until we are in turmoil because Zion was not established until the times of turmoil? **[Gatherers are awakening, but have not been sent forth. This will not occur until after the turmoil begins. PR]** I always imagined that people will be fleeing to the mountains and practically camping to survive. You mentioned the gatherers will feed people, which hints that times will be not normal, yes? **[Yes, far from normal.]**

What does it mean to have a “hard heart?” It is to lack the desire to believe the message of turning to Christ, receiving the ordinances of salvation, and repenting.]” I’m shocked by both the simplicity & complexity I’m realizing is here. It seems simple and easy to turn to Christ but if you think you have the truth in your church already so you ignore humble servants preaching the true doctrine of Christ, that blindness is considered hard heartedness? **[A hard heart is not humble, is proud in what it has, and will not ask God what is truth. This is why often the poor and suffering are more apt to listen, but not always. Those who are seeking a relationship with Christ will respond to the message, for “the Elect shall hear His voice.” PR]** What happens to those who are truly deceived and blinded by the craftiness of men? They get every chance to awaken, right? **[There will be plenty of opportunity for people to awaken. God is merciful and just.]** Will the future turmoil make it a bit easier to awaken to the truth?

12. Oh be wise; what can I say more? “ the perfect verse at the near end of his ministry. Since the last chapter is next, I was wondering if you have any addition information you can share about Jacob? I wish he had written more. Thank you PR for bringing to light sometimes difficult verses to understand. I so appreciate all the time you spend on this endeavor. You have made the BofM even more clear and real for me. Like I was there. **[You are welcome. I have not seen much about Jacob. A quick glimpse is all. He is a great man, not as intense as Nephi in his demeanor is my impression. PR]**

What exactly do Satan’s servants gain from “accusing” the sons and daughters of light? Is it accusing them that they have sinned, broken covenants, fallen? What “claim” do they then have on the children of light? What happens when repentance occurs following these accusations? **[If they come to court for the living it is often to be given permission to increase the load of temptation upon a servant of God. If it is for the dead, usually it is to present evidence that the particular person is under their authority, via covenants, oaths, or sinful behavior. PR]**

“And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away

into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable [This language is a similitude of the spiritual state of bitterness and anguish, however it is also not too removed in terms of description of the place.] , and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.” 1. “Not too removed” I remember you writing about Satan’s realm in deep waters... dark, cold, underworld. How is this not too far removed when Jacob and others describe hell as a firey brimstone hot place? **[That was a reference to where he is now, which is surrounded by water, cold and dark. The fire and brimstone is a visual that resembles Outer Darkness, a different place. In that dimension, the colors remind me of being in a dark lit bar with neon lights. PR]** 2. Either way, if it’s super cold and dark or hot and firey why would anyone willingly want to go there after the bar of God? **[We think of it according to the flesh, but to these spirits its like a trip to evil Disneyland, or Las Vegas. It is the place where they can live according to their depravity and self gratification forever. PR]** Is there a dark translation of sorts that prepares them for that realm? **[Its called a baptism of darkness, yes.]**

For people that are awakening to the truth right now is it possible they may not receive their baptism of fire and holy ghost until they have been gathered? Do you think the Lord will help them get to where they need to be to receive their baptism of fire before the gathering? Hope that makes sense. **[Yes, He will. As long as the people are repenting they are led to receive a fullness. PR]**

Satan’s servants often come to accuse the sons and daughters of light or to make claim upon them. Other righteous beings, including angels may vouch for us when this occurs.” Why would righteous beings vouch for us? **[This reference is not to say that Satan lays claim because they are wicked, but that they are allowed to tempt the protected servants of the Lord. Like Job from the Bible. The angels will vouch for their capacity to overcome. This takes place at the Throne and God allows His servants to endure trial in this life that they may be glorified and bring to pass much righteousness. PR]**

Enos

The Wrestle – Enos 1:1-27

1 Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a just man **[Knowing his father was honest and did not lie, he had confidence in the things his father had taught him. His Father had been declared “Just” of the Lord, born again and exalted.]** —for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—
2 And I will tell you of the wrestle **[A difficult process. This word was also used to describe the patriarch Jacob’s night as he “wrestled” to receive his blessing.**

Genesis 32:24-25] which I had before God, before I received a remission of my sins. **[He desired his baptism of fire and Gift of the Holy Ghost, as he sought to be made clean and holy before God like his father.]**

3 Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart. **[The words of Nephi, Jacob, and all the holy prophets had been taught to Enos. He desired to stand in the presence of God, a “Second Comforter” experience.]**

4 And my soul hungered; **[wanted with all his heart]** and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

This verse describes the intense emotion and desire that Enos had to reach the Lord. He not only prayed but “cried” out to God that he would hear his prayer. The act of crying out is often used in the Book of Mormon for those who connect with God. What does this mean? There are many things that happen when one reaches this level of desire. First, they are overcome to the degree that they vocalize the intense desire of their heart, like Lamoni, who previously not knowing God was willing to give all he had to be accepted of Him, even all of his kingdom. The act of crying out, if done with all one’s heart, is a sign of a broken heart and contrite spirit.

Another interesting aspect of this is how the vocalization typically is accompanied by a change in the tone of one’s voice. These tones have a spiritual connection to the higher realms of Heaven. There is a mystery here.

It is also impressive that Enos prayed all day and into the night. Why is this significant? The patriarch Jacob also prayed into the night for a long time before he received the blessing he sought. When someone, desiring to receive a remission of sins (baptism of fire) has given all that they have, and they fall down having nothing left, God knows they are ready. Each individual’s experience is different. Not all will have to do what Enos did, but the principle is the same.

5 And there came a voice **[He heard it in his mind, not a Second Comforter at this point.]** unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed. **[Confirmation that he had received the baptism of fire and gift of the Holy Ghost.]**

6 And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away. **[Enos is made clean.]**

7 And I said: Lord, how is it done? **[The pattern of asking questions.]**

8 And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole. **[To be exalted is to be whole in spirit.]**

9 Now, it came to pass [**Whenever this phrase is used it means after a period of time, which could be hours, days, or years.**] that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them. [**Enos desired to be a Servant.**]

10 And while I was thus struggling in the spirit [**The process of communication with God, requiring great focus and faith.**], behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

This verse gives an understanding of how to receive revelation. It is a struggle for most everyone as they learn this process. It occurs in the quiet places of our mind. We must learn to discern the Lord's voice.

11 And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; [**He knows God will answer him.**] and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites. [**Prays for his enemies.**]

As we become more familiar with the process of receiving revelation our faith becomes more “unshaken.” Our confidence waxes strong in the presence of the Lord. When this occurs the degree of the gifts of the Spirit that we experience begins to increase exponentially. We begin to recognize the ministering of angels, prophecy, healing, miracles, and eventually to see the face of God.

12 And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith. [**Seeking revelation and acting upon it, this is the basis of great faith; and how we will please the Lord in this life and forever.**]

13 And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation— [**Enos had become one with the Lord because of the Holy Ghost, which means His desires and understanding mirrored the Lord having received a fullness of His Spirit. The Spirit put these desires into his heart, which the Lord had already prepared and was planning to do for the sake of these people.**]

14 For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. [**There is a timing in every blessing. When we struggle to make something happen, even if a righteous desire, and it is not according to the proper timing it will fail. Let that sink in.**] And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.

15 Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it. **[What is your desire?]**

16 And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

17 And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest. **[When we receive a promise of God you know you have the gift of revelation. When you share it according to the Lord's commandment, as did Enos, you have the gift of prophecy. You are a prophet.]**

18 And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine. **[This would put Enos' faith on the level of Lehi, Nephi, and Jacob.]**

19 And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen. **[What had Enos seen?]**

20 And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey **[Not farming]**; dwelling in tents **[Only Native Americans have dwelt in tents in this part of the earth.]**, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us. **[That is a very strong visual.]**

21 And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses. **[These are not the kind of horses you and I would think of. In this case a horse is an animal that is bridled to pull a carriage or chariot. I feel constrained to not reveal what it was.]**

22 And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand. **[That is good that there were many prophets. We need thousands of prophets! Those who are stiff-necked will not turn to consider the words of the prophets and fail to understand the significance of what they say.]**

23 And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them **[This verse describes the kind of language and demeanor of a true prophet. If you hear "All is well in Zion" I would be wary.]**

24 And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

25 And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine

years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem. **[That's almost how long it's been since the death of Joseph Smith.]**

26 And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world. **[Enos was a servant of God, a 4th estate prophet who was called before the foundation of the world (Alma 13). When a servant awakens as did Enos and his heart swells to know to God the next step is to arise, which is to establish a relationship. Then, they receive their calling and election made sure, the decree to "go forth" and fulfill their missions.]**

27 And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, ye blessed **[Blessed]**, there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen. **[This is a description of the state of the soul, having received Eternal Life.]**

In my first book, "How to Have Your Second Comforter," I shared my personal story for when I went into the mountains and prayed all night to know the Lord. The following morning, I had my baptism of fire and gift of the Holy Ghost. It was the most spiritually exhausting thing I had ever done. I know that most don't have to do that. Lamoni's experience came quickly, others simply cry out and with full submission of their hearts to the Lord experience the baptism of fire and Holy Ghost. I feel grateful that the Lord allowed me to experience the sacrifice that I did, for it brought me lower than the dust. I was constrained by the Spirit to do what I did, as do others that feel the need to do as Enos and pray all day and into the night.

If you feel impressed to do an Enos prayer I wrote a post a few years ago that detailed what I did. It may help inspire your faith. Follow the example of Enos and exercise great faith toward having a relationship with God. It is so worth it.

Questions and Comments:

You said: [When we receive a promise of God you know you have the gift of revelation. When you share it according to the Lord's commandment, as did Enos, you have the gift of prophecy. You are a prophet.] Receiving a promise of God, can this occur before you receive your BOF and Holy Ghost? Or can you receive the gift of revelation at any time? **[It means that you cannot know for certain that you have received the Holy Ghost without the gift of revelation. The gift of revelation can occur before the baptism of fire, yet we don't yet have a sure knowledge. It is an act of faith, relying upon the evidence that the seed is good and begins to grow, as we trust that the Lord is leading us toward the fruit. Alma 32 PR]**

You had mentioned before that when Nephi gathered up those that would follow him,

they moved north from their first landing site (Gulf area?) and into Tennessee area. When this is taking place for Enos, is he/the Nephites still in the Tennessee area? **[No, they still were in the same land. Not until Mosiah do the remnant of the righteous flee north and meet up with the people of Zarahemla. Omni 1:12-13 PR]**

There is a timing in every blessing. When we struggle to make something happen, even if a righteous desire, and it is not according to the proper timing it will fail. Let that sink in.]” Is this a hint that it includes Zion, too? That we can’t rush gathering or creating Zion? Does this mean there will first be a false Davidic Servant and a false gathering or mockery to try to get people to jump the gun and then lose hope? **[There have already been such things as that. My main thought behind this statement is that we can’t force the Lord’s hand on anything, whether it is to have our Second Comforter or bring about Zion through our own means. PR]**

I think you mentioned you had done a shorter version of an Enos prayer prior or you returned to a sacred place each year for a number of years without hearing from the Lord. Not a peep you said. Why do you think your experience played out that way when King Lamoni and others seem to trip and accidentally fall into their baptism of fire? Both you and King Lamoni experienced fantastic baptisms of fire. It seems like maybe the answer is along the lines of the mission either of you have to perform in the kingdom...? **[Every person is different and the Lord knows the best way to prepare us. In my case, the Lord was carefully nurturing my faith. Looking back, it literally was like planting a seed and nurturing a young tree for many years before in brought forth fruit. When the time came for my baptism of fire my spiritual eyes were open to the point that I was able to see and hear much; whereas, perhaps if it had happened ten years earlier it would have only been a powerful sensation. Some people, like Lamoni, had a powerful experience from day one. PR]**

I think that i may have experienced the tones! But didn’t know about there being a tone scale. Maybe I’m off but I have noticed a quiet confident, focused stillness in my voice when the Lord is near and there is revelation flowing. It seems like maybe you are intimating there are more vocal tones? **[There is a mystery in that tones correlate to angelic frequencies and even the Lord. I can’t discuss it, but it is a beautiful thing. PR]** Are you talking about praying/singing in tongues? **[That too.]** On that note, Nephi seems to suggest that speaking or praying in tongues and/or shouting praises to the Holy One of Israel only is possible after a baptism of fire event. Am I reading that right? **[I never experienced the fullness of that gift until after I had the Gift of the Holy Ghost, but I think that it is possible to have before.]** Can one pray in tongues without a baptism of fire? **[I have never experienced it without being in the pillar of light, or receiving the baptism of fire. I never thought of that before. I don’t know for sure. PR]**

23 And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying

of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them [This verse describes the kind of language and demeanor of a true prophet. If you hear “All if well in Zion” I would be wary.]” In a prior post you said there are three types of repentance, fear, guilt and love. Love is what lasts... All of these calls to repentance seem based in fear. I understand the people were a hard hearted and wicked people who needed the lowest form of motivation (fear and guilt) to turn their hearts to God... would you say we’re pretty much past the fear phase today? **[That particular scripture is how the message was delivered by prophets to these wicked people. The “fear, guilt, and love” is how we tend to experience repentance. The farther away we are from the Lord the more likely fear and guilt are to be a motivator. People in the world are at all phases. PR]** You dont seem to push fear of God. As many follies as society has, they want to embrace a God that is loving... when would fear be appropriate? In my experience, the fear stuff from religious leaders is from the adversary (like for example, revelations from Fundamentalist leaders or some Christian pastors). **[My mission is not to push the fear. My message is to those already seeking the Lord. PR]**

Do you know what happened with Jacobs hip during his prayer/wrestle? **[I have not asked about that. PR]**

How does intercessory prayer work? **[When we pray on behalf of other people it stirs up the heavenly realm, and according to our faith we can bring about great good. Faith is the root of all righteousness. There is a law in heaven called the Law of Asking. Until we exercise faith most things remain stagnant. If we pray for another, not just a few words, but really express what, why, how, and make our case for them to the Lord, the heavens open in their behalf. It also helps bring us closer to the Lord. There are many facets to intercessory prayer. Some allow the intercessor to take upon themselves the burden, pain, or dark energy of the person suffering. It is important that we are cautious and always seek the Lord’s will and wisdom when performing such things. PR]**

What purpose would it serve to take on someone’s pain and darkness? I asked to take on a loved one’s suffering last week actually, as an intercessory prayer. It was intuitive, not sure how that works. **[Its a selfless act to help them. It must be done prayerfully and with permission or it can cause you great harm. PR]**

So, does the Lord still answer prayers that are not expedient doe us? You said we need permission for intercession or it can hurt you. **[The Lord always answers prayers, but if we can’t hear Him for whatever reason we should not push ahead attempting to wield His power or it may have disastrous consequences. PR]**

Jarom

Be Not Stiffnecked – Jarom 1:1-15

1 Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

2 And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites **[They knew the prophecies, that the record would be used in the last days to convince their brethren the Lamanites to come unto Christ.]**, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me. **[Jarom taught the same things as his father, and grandfather; the Doctrine of Christ. He only adds what he is inspired that may be new.]**

3 Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land. **[Sound familiar? Is our generation stiffnecked, slow to listen, look and feel? God is merciful, as we are probably overdue for a serious correction. The Lord always waits until the last second before He passes judgment.]**

4 And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. **[If you are willing to turn and look away from your rigidity of beliefs the Lord might be able to teach you something.]** And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith **[willingness to look, seek revelation, and act upon it]**, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith. **[Faith is the door to all communication with heaven. Faith is not merely believing; otherwise all would have communion regularly with God on a profound level.]**

I have always loved the above scripture for its explanation regarding how to receive revelation and it had an influence upon me as I was learning to hear the word of the Lord.

5 And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. **[In 1976 the United States had been a country for 200 years. A culture is pretty strong and established by that point.]** They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict. **[The United States didn't last as long as this Nephite nation by that point. Of course, they were not a Republic, but more a theocratic constitutional monarchy.]**

6 And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts. **[A common belief that blood brings added strength to the hunter.]**

7 And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

8 And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war. **[The Nephites were not stone masons and builders like the Egyptians, or even the Hebrews. They did most all their work with earth and timber. They were artisans, yet did not have the technology as did the Jaredites or other more ancient civilizations. Only a few exceptions to this as when Nephi attempted to build a smaller version of Solomon’s Temple.]**

9 And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.

10 And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten **[warn]** the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

11 Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers **[Three categories of priesthood: Melchizedek, Levitical, and Aaronic]**, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given **[teaching the “intent in which it was given” is a critical part of the law of Moses, for without that the people stumble.]**; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them. **[Understanding how the Temple ordinances pointed to Christ makes all the difference. They were to remember that His sacrifice would apply to them as if it had already taken place.]**

12 And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word **[power of the Spirit]**, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

13 And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time. **[About the year 2014 in US time equivalency.]**

14 And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written. **[Those plates are sealed up in the Hill Shim.]**

15 And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

Questions and Comments:

Vs 5: How did the Nephites keep the Sabbath day Holy? How is this done? What does it

look like? **[The Nephites kept a lunar calendar, so they kept their Sabbaths according to the New Moon (Omni 1:21). I don't know what particular traditions they had other than to refrain from regular daily work and focus upon holiness to the Lord. PR]** I've asked the Lord how and instead of giving me a list of do's and don'ts it is like I am learning by trial & error or pure experience. The holy activities also vary and can include things that I used to think was breaking the Sabbath. Is the Sabbath for asking the Lord what He wants us to personally do and then obeying that revelation on that day? **[Yes, seek a revelation for yourself. I use my Sabbath, which happens to be today, to block out a significant time to be holy to the Lord. I spend the rest of the day studying the scriptures. Its fun and I look forward to it! I still serve my family and help others as needed. It is a joyful day of the week for me. PR]** How has the Lord intended it to be a gift and a delight? I truly want to learn because I realize this is a commandment I must keep.

What is the machinery mentioned in vs 8? I've had this underlined in my scriptures for years and wondered about it. **[This is a reference to tools made to help with different tasks such as building, mining, and other things. PR]** Is it the mechanisms that would turn a mill or press of some sort? The simple machines of pulleys or gears? Did they consider chariots "machines"? **[That is possible, I do not know.]**

What does it mean that the plates are small from vs 14? **[Compared to the plates of Nephi and Jacob, he used little space to record his record. PR]**

Can you talk more about verse 11 where you reference three 3 priesthood categories: melchizedek, levitical, and aaronic? I've been studying and trying to better understand priesthood levels and wondering where and how the patriarchal priesthood mentioned in D&C plays in. **[The highest priesthood, which is sometimes referred to as "Patriarchal" is the relationship status and power of those who inherit exaltation in the highest order. Aaronic is telestial. Melchizedek is Terrestrial. And Levitical is interesting because it is those group of people who are coming unto Christ and have tasted of his goodness, but not yet received Eternal Life in the next world. That order of priesthood represents such a status of "servants of God of the Third Estate." In reality, all priesthood is simply the degree of relationship we have with the divine. The Lord gave them names, and status to teach the process of the Everlasting Covenant and how to approach God. PR]**

Omni

Calling Out of the Righteous – Omni 1:1-30

1 Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy— **[Part of the record keeping was to keep a genealogy for the people. This was not the kind of family history work done today for the purpose of redeeming the dead. This was so they would know from whence they came.]**

2 Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done. **[It takes much honesty to admit that one has lived a wicked life. But the Lord freely forgives if we come to Him.]**

3 And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

I think it is interesting that as we read the names of these men, descendants of Jacob, that they are the ones entrusted to keep the records. We hear no mention of the Nephite kings, which were also called Nephi in honor of their first king.

4 And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.

5 Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

6 For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer **[tolerate]** that the words should not be verified **[confirmed]**, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

7 Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment **[sifting and separation]**; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

8 And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

9 Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end. **[Most of these leaders allow the records to sit undisturbed until they grow old, then they add some words before passing on to their son. They don't seem to have the same zeal as their great grandfathers.]**

10 Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.

11 And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations **[Most Nephites counted their generations according to the rule of Nephite Kings.];** and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end. **[A sign of apostasy is when there is a famine in the land of revelation and prophecy. God is the same today, yesterday, and tomorrow, and will provide a continuous stream of knowledge to those with great faith.]**

12 Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness— **[There is always a “calling out” of the righteous before the wicked are slain. In this case the Nephite nation had reached that point. In the future, the righteous will be called out in various ways to prepare them for Zion. Much of this will be as families.]**

13 And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord **[personal revelation];** and they were led by many preachings and prophesyings. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla. **[Mosiah was the spiritual leader of this group, but there were many spiritual leaders too who received prophecy and revelation that contributed to the effort to be led to a place where they would be safe.]**

14 And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. **[This is in the area of Missouri and Iowa.]** Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

15 Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon. **[These were a small number of some of the children of Zedekiah and their servants that fled the Babylonians when they conquered Jerusalem approximately 340 years previously.]**

16 And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.

17 And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them. **[I imagine they developed a heavy accent with plenty of strange colloquialisms. A witness to how the Lord’s wisdom was used in acquiring the brass plates.]**

18 But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla

gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.

19 And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.

20 And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it [**large, flat, and darker in color**]; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God. [**Mosiah had the gift of translation given to him of the Lord.**]

21 And they gave an account of one Coriantumr [**He was at least a whole head taller than any Nephite and had other interesting physical features, but was very old.**], and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons. [**The people of Nephi kept their calendar according to the lunar cycles, not the solar as we do today. This was the tradition passed down to them according to the Jews. The traditional Sabbath was based upon the lunar calendar.**]

22 It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward. [**Above the ground easy to see.**]

23 Behold, I, Amaleki [**The record keeper according to the family of Jacob. It is interesting that these records were not passed down from Nephi's children.**], was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.

24 And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, insomuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla. [**By this time the Lamanites occupied most of the southern part of North America and the Nephites occupied the northern part of the Great Plains, or central United States region.**]

25 And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him [**The records now become the responsibility of the King Benjamin, a righteous man.**], exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord: and that which is evil cometh from the devil. [**The gifts of the Spirit are part of what the Lord gives us when we come unto Him. If they are not present we are not receiving them according to our faith.**]

26 And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end [**until you receive Him, the gift of the Holy Ghost**]; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.

A key component of having a broken heart and contrite spirit is to “offer your whole souls.” What does this mean? It is to give yourself to Him

without reservation. Your soul is everything you are, both body and spirit. If you continue in fasting (focus without distractions of the flesh) and praying, and endure until the day comes, you will find what you seek.

27 And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

28 Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla. **[These are what you could call “Nephite zealots.” History is filled with brave men who charge head first into battle for their noble causes, only to suffer in defeat. These Nephites felt that they deserved to own the origins of their inheritance and were disgusted that the Lamanites would possess that land. They were thirsty for power and did not yield to the enticings of the Spirit, so their quest failed. Whenever a people, including those of our country today, decide to invade a nation, no matter the nobility of the cause, they will fail if God is not with them. In the future, as our country suffers, we need to be cautious not to go to battle or invade anyone before we know the Lord is with us.]**

29 And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.

30 And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.

There are so many details in the Book of Mormon, both anthropological, economical, geopolitical, geographical, and theological. How in good heavens could any man, let alone someone like Joseph Smith, write such a book at the beginning of the nineteenth century? The sheer magnitude and depth of this book is staggering to me. There are so many subtle nuances in the writing that I often find myself stunned.

Questions and Comments:

From your testimony of the Book of Mormon today a memory came to me about the Chiasmus contained in there. I had marked the scriptures about the Atonement in a certain color throughout the BofM. I read an article about Chiasmus contained the BofM when it came out in the early 70's. I discovered that the central color that was contained in the Chiasmus was the color of the Atonement... Alma 36 is a good example... almost verse to verse with the central verses the most important. After seeing that I prayed and received a minor Brother of Jared moment. Every fiber of my body came alive with the light and love. Yes, the Book is filled with light!

PR writes: [A sign of apostasy is when there is a famine in the land of revelation and prophecy. God is the same today, yesterday, and tomorrow, and will provide a continuous stream of knowledge to those with great faith.] I loved that because it's true

for a nation, its true for a church and it's true especially at the individual level... and that individual analysis can be quite painful to examine.

I love the last comment because I, too, have been amazed at the vast depth of information and details included in the Book of Mormon that one person, especially a boy without a lot of education, could possibly write. Just factually, not even with a testimony, it seems impossible that he would have written it. Really anyone at the time. Now, with the internet knowledge explosion, it seems more possible that it could have been forged. But still. I love the word print analysis (not sure the term, but its a writer's unmistakable personal way of speaking) that shows the different authors'/prophets' writing styles are each unique. All these things add to my testimony of the Book of Mormon.

From vs 7, the judgements [sifting and separation] – are these events that have a sort of “natural” cause/appearance? For example, fighting or violence breaks out more often and people feel inclined to move away from the area? In our day, when we choose to move away from city centers and neighborhoods becoming more negative, prone to thievery or violent because we no longer feel comfortable there, is this the same judgement/sifting principle at work? **[There can be a natural selection as those who desire safety move away, but there is also a spiritual kind of separation like Lehi's family or the people of Mosiah. PR]**

Thank you for the note you added in verse 12. Around 2012 the Lord made me aware of the “call out” principle of the righteous being warned to flee or leave and I made a fool of myself with how much I stored. However, I attempted to be obedient to what I received (albeit I was ridiculous; doomsday prepper hoarder is a good description), and in this past year the Lord told me my obedience is what entitled me to receive more. (The “more” has been spiritual preparation and included being led to this blog.) PR, will we need the food we have stored? **[You might need it. The only way to know that is if you receive a personal revelation. PR]** Some days I deal with shame about how zealously I responded to that knowledge.

Will we be aware when we receive a gift of the spirit? **[Most gifts have to be cultivated. Sometimes we are aware and other times not. PR]**

Fasting: elsewhere you have talked about it. I have done the smaller fasts from things I crave for a few 3-4 hours... and these seem to bring as much light as the 24 hour food/water fasts. ... sometimes even more so. I think it's the sacrifice or subduing of the flesh cravings combined with whole focus to the Lord during those 3-4 hours that makes these smaller fasts so spiritually beneficial. That said, how are extended multi day fasts beneficial? Even 24 hour fasts... is it feasible to spend 24 straight hours 100% focused on the Lord? (Like the shorter fasts)... Or is there a different way to do it? **[The longer fasts help those striving to reach a level of full submission and contrition to the Lord. I can be done without it, but it helps. PR]**

PR, do you believe in the heartland geography model floating around out there? The Panama Canal is not/ is the “narrow neck of land”? **[I don’t follow the heartland model exactly, but I think some of it is correct. The narrow neck is not the Panama Canal. PR]**

Sorry this is the one I meant to share:

10 And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

When I was reading this chapter I felt very much like you, so fed by the Spirit, honestly I see why it says to feast in the words of Christ.

It is interesting to see how Grandfather Mosiah had the same gifts as his grandson Mosiah, and I’m sure King Benjamin had them too, especially of being a seer, and being able to interpret the writings of the Jaredites, they both, Mosiahs, shared this sort of same experience, as later we read how the people of King Lemhi brought, King Mosiah, the plates of the Jaredites.

When King Limhi tells Ammon about the place where they found the plates and bones of the Jaredites he says how they also found breast plates that were large, this tells me that this people were a lot larger than the Nephites. Also, was the stone that was brought to the king some of the writings of Ether, I wonder?

9 And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold. Mosiah 8

Words of Mormon

He Found These Records – Words of Mormon 1:1-18

1 And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

2 And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them. **[Mormon’s heart ached constantly for his people. He had witnessed the death of most all of his children and grandchildren. The temple had been destroyed, and even the records were at risk. He trusted in the Lord to help him to finish the record.]**

3 And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of

Nephi. **[Imagine a room filled with records, floor to ceiling. Mormon sifted through all this to gather the most important parts to include in the abridgment.]**

4 And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—**[The vast majority of the records were not as spiritual as what was included in the BofM.]**

5 Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.

6 But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.

7 And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. **[It literally is like a whisper in the ear, when the Holy Spirit speaks to us. These impressions which come in the form of thoughts in our mind are often the angels communicating to us. Our minds take these words and translate them into the language we know, so it often sounds like ourselves speaking. We must learn to discern the Holy Spirit when it is given.]** And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.

8 And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

9 And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

10 Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

11 And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written. **[All the records continue to be preserved in the Hill Shim, just as Mormon left them about 1600 years ago.]**

12 And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.

13 And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down **[forth]** out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban. **[The King's Sword resides today in the Hill Shim.]**

14 And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.

15 And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;

16 And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—**[It is common in scripture for there to be many prophets among the people. Many witness so that the people can discern. At the same time there were false prophets and false Christs (claiming divinity).]**

17 For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people— **[To be holy is to be filled with the Spirit of God and have the light of His glory upon you continually.]**

18 Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land. **[Mormon has a great respect for King Benjamin. I can see that he longed for the day when the Nephites had such circumstances.]**

Questions and Comments:

Pretty sure what we are calling “false Christs” here are among us today. Wikipedia shows a list of 34 of them from 1st century AD to today. I actually talked with a man about 4 years ago who claims the title. Extremely fascinating... but unconvincing. What is the fate of these persons, are they all sons of perdition? There is one right now in Russia who has a growing following and it is interesting to see him on his compound with 3000 followers living there. Over 5000 followers world wide so... this is a definite thing. From him, to the person in Korea that has been going strong for decades to the people’s temple. Thousands and thousands of people convinced one way or another. Discernment is so vital. Yet all those people following the men (and women...Let’s not forget the Shakers) who say they are Christ believe they have discerned correctly... and 3000 have sold everything to go live at that compound. It’s fascinating (to me). Also, very sobering to think through.

Thank you for that answer! I think about my own personal journey, how I struggled to get closer to Christ by following the teachings and traditions of my church and it’s leaders. Leaders I believed to be true messengers. I had reached a road block in my progression and wondered if this was as good as it got? Once I heard the teachings of true messengers and decided to test their fruit, my journey took off. What had felt like a trickle of revelation and spiritual discernment now became a firehouse in comparison! Your first book was my catalyst into truth and learning how to remove my stumbling

blocks. False prophets are absolutely a stumbling block. I have been able to test and taste the fruit and I have my own witness of the difference. But I am unable to convince anyone because the only way for them to learn is to test the fruit for themselves, and almost all are too afraid to do so because they have spent their lives clinging to their prophet for safety. I just hope that a seed will get planted and eventually find good ground to grow in. I absolutely love this journey now, you are feeding us so much. I can't thank you enough!

We're there any records written by women? I know you mentioned Nephi's wife wrote records. Do you know why these weren't chosen? **[There are some, yes. I don't know why they are not in the record. Samuel the Lamanite as well as many other prophet's words were not included either. PR]**

Was Moroni the only surviving child Mormon had? I can't imagine how difficult it would be to watch children and grandchildren killed. Did Moroni have any children (Mormon's grandchildren) that survived at all? **[Yes, he was. And Moroni watched as his family, all but two of his children were massacred at their own home.]**

Oh my goodness – how did Moroni care for his children as a single parent, wandering with the plates (withersoever he would go)? **[All his children were eventually killed. Two older ones survived until the final battle. It was devastating time, but the Lord was close to him, so he knew the joy of the Lord. PR]**

I'm wondering about the definition of a false prophet? There are those who know that they are not a true prophet but try to convince people anyway, then there are those claiming and believing that they are a prophet when they aren't. One is trying to deceive, the other is being deceived. But both end up deceiving others who believe their claims. Does the term false prophet apply to both? **[A false prophet is anyone who declares to be a messenger of the Lord, but is not. A false prophet may actually believe they are true, and yet be deceived. It is the responsibility of each individual to judge for themselves the validity of prophets. If their message is true it will bring others into a relationship with God. If false, it will bring the individual closer to the "prophet" without allowing them to know for themselves by the spirit of Revelation. We often look for the "fruit" of what they preach to determine whether they are a true prophet. This fruit is too often measured according to things that are not of God. For example, the abundance of wealth, good feelings of status and acceptability before God over others, or even whether they can predict future events; but the gifts of the Spirit for them are hollow and do not establish a meaningful relationship with Christ. The follower is left with a need to desperately hang to the prophet as their only means of accessing God. PR]**

Your answer to the comment raises some interesting questions. So, we're not to judge people. But wouldn't the Gift of Discernment (discerning of spirits) also include discerning the spirits of those in your life, or those in positions of authority? In other

words, you can discern a Son of Perdition with this Gift? And not only discerning false from true prophets but their hearts as well? **[Yes, we can discern all deceptions when we are connected to the Spirit. People often are confused regarding whether it is right to “judge” people. We are to judge everything, including people, what we are not to do is condemn, which is the kind of judgment that only God can do. PR]**

When a prophet then is asking you to learn to receive personal revelation in order to survive what’s coming, inviting you to read the Book of Mormon, and to have a relationship with Christ, to come to Him, to learn to hear His voice, and to rely on that than we can judge of him to be a true prophet then?

My question was Moroni killed or was he translated? I don’t know if you are allowed to share the answer...

Where was he hiding? It seems that he had to live a life a lot like Ether’s. **[Ultimately, you need the Holy Spirit of revelation to know who is a true messenger. Moroni was indeed translated. PR]**

We’re to seek revelation for whether a message is from the Lord or not. But what’s the difference between the Gift of Discernment and Revelation? **[The gift of discernment is a specific kind of revelation, but related. Revelation is any kind of communication from the Heavenly Realm through the Spirit. Discernment is to know the difference between whether it is from God or another source. PR]**

Mosiah

The Power of Scripture – Mosiah 1:1-18

1 And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

2 And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, **[Lehi, Nephi, and Jacob]** which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

3 And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God. **[God’s purposes for His people.]**

4 For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he

having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

[The language of using glyphs to decipher meaning.]

5 I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct.

6 O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

7 And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

The power of studying scripture is that it gives the individual an understanding of God's work among men and in their own lives. You see the pattern of communication God has with us, and in turn exercise faith to know for yourself.

8 And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are not written in this book.

9 And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

10 Therefore, he had Mosiah **[named after the original Mosiah that brought their people to Zarahemla]** brought before him; and these are the words which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

11 And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

12 And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression. **[There is a lot of power in a name. One of the things that is done when one receives a fullness, their calling and election made sure, is that they are given a name by the Lord.]**

13 Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto preserved our fathers.

14 For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

15 And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

16 And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him. **[These are all sealed up today in the Hill Shim.]**

17 Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

18 And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.

I have read this book cover to cover more than 50 times and have not bothered to count after that point. I don't say this to boast because I truly didn't understand what I was reading until several years ago. I read the book like everyone else, focusing on understanding the stories, the mercies of God, and the witness of Christ. These are beautiful things, but I have since realized that the value of the Book of Mormon is in its full display of the pattern by which one can establish a relationship with God. More than any other scripture, the Book of Mormon walks the reader through various prophet's witnesses of what they did to eventually part the veil and "come unto Christ." There are numerous scriptures that teach how to receive revelation and exercise the gifts of the Spirit. I am truly grateful for this blueprint given to me. And moreover, it is a manual for those who will awaken to be servants in the last days.

Questions and Answers

Thank you for the time you put into this chapter by chapter study!

Vs 4: Were some of the plates of brass written in Egyptian? (The writings of Joseph of Egypt or Moses I imagine could be, maybe even others.)

As we are going through this BoM study, I feel we keep uncovering details that might help us recognize & discern the real plates of brass and what they would truly contain. I realize these bits of knowledge are useful if we are expecting more records to come forth. I need to keep a running list....

[There is a lot of power in a name. One of the things that is done when one receives a fullness, their calling and election made sure, is that they are given a name by the Lord.]

17 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; To him that

overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it
PR, can you elaborate on this scripture in connection with the new name? **[The new name is who you are, and only the Lord can reveal that to you. Once you are connected to the Father in this way nothing is hidden. PR]**

Amen and Amen!

When you say Servants, do you mean like the leaders/Davidic servants? **[The Gatherers. PR]**

The Great Speech – Mosiah 2:1-41

1 And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them. **[This is the first we hear about another temple in addition to the one Nephi built in the land of Nephi. In order to keep the Law of Moses they needed a temple to perform the sacrifices.]**

2 And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.

3 And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

4 And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men. **[One of the signs that we are a son or daughter of God is our love toward all people, regardless. It doesn't mean we don't recognize sin or depravity, but we feel genuine love toward them.]**

5 And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another. **[Reminds me of how people set up their chairs and blankets before a parade, but a little more expansive.]**

6 And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them; **[This is symbolic of repentance, where we face God and seek His words for us.]**

7 For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

8 And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words. **[Causes me to feel gratitude for modern technology. For these Nephites, this was the greatest gathering to hear God's word they had ever seen.]**

9 And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle **[dismiss as unimportant]** with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view. **[Allow God to speak to you by the power of revelation.]**

10 I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man. **[It is the natural tendency of people to see someone as a celebrity when they are looked up to by so many. Our own society puts people on a pedestal just for being famous. King Benjamin would have none of that!]**

11 But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

12 I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you; **[I ask you, is there such a king or president in our world today?]**

13 Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you— **[False imprisonment, slavery, human trafficking, murder, stealing from the people, all manner of wickedness. Our current society is rife with such abominations. We live in a time that rivals the worst of the Nephites; in fact, it is today as it was in the time of Noah.]**

14 And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day. **[King Benjamin preaches against a heavy tax burden.]**

15 Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day. **[Imagine if an elected politician said this during their reelection?]**

16 Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God. **[Our leaders reflect the state of the people. God works amongst people in**

mysterious ways. Today's political climate has created a great dividing of the American people and the world. It will only continue to become more so in time.]

17 And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellowbeings ye are only in the service of your God. **[What if we all looked at our vocations and service to others as a sign of our love for God?]**

18 Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another? **[Great people lead by example. How is this demonstrated? They don't ask anyone to do what they are not willing to do themselves. I think we will always be able to find faults in others if we look hard enough. I'm sure there were people who were critical of King Benjamin, but he knew who he was and where his heart was with God. The more people love you, the more there will be others who despise you. We must focus our energies upon pleasing the Lord.]**

19 And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King! **[A sign of a true servant of God is that they deflect praise to the Lord.]**

20 I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another— **[We should praise the Lord always. Praise brings upon us the blessing of Heaven, not because God needs our praise, but that as we soften our hearts He can pour His Spirit upon us and we are strengthened.]**

21 I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants. **[What is King Benjamin's purpose for saying this? Sometimes as we serve others we can become prideful in our accomplishments and see ourselves as great in the eyes of others. The fact is that we are nothing of ourselves. The greatest amongst us is merely a servant to all.]**

22 And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments **[follow the revelations you are given]**; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.

23 And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

24 And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast? **[Blessings come in all kinds. King Benjamin mentions our lives, the air we breathe, all that we possess. But, the greatest blessings are**

to those who keep His commandments, to come unto Him and receive of Eternal Life.]

25 And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you. **["Dust," meaning that we are of a temporal element that is not permanent. Our resurrected bodies are of light, which is in fact far more dense than our mortal bodies in the eternities.]**

26 And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth. **[The soul is the combination of the body and spirit. This unique combination helps the individual to learn faith in no other way possible. What we learn in faith in this world has endless ramification in the eternities.]**

27 Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you. **[This is a common expression of a servant of God, that the blood of their generation not be found upon their garments. Otherwise, they would be held responsible in the realm of spirits to do all they can to correct their sins from this life. When we are commanded to preach repentance as a servant of God we must do all diligence to perform that duty.]**

28 I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God. **[Oh my, this is not some cliché, but an actual occurrence of great joy and importance to the spirits of the Just at the Throne of Heaven. It is here, in this act of praise, that the angels of God commune on a one on one intimate level with our Lord. Here they are taught and prepared for what comes next.]**

29 And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;

30 For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

31 And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you. **[This is a unique passing of kingship and also declaring his son as a prophet to the people.]**

32 But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.

33 For behold, there is a wo **[curse]** pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

The sin of contention is a great stumbling block among the righteous. People contend all the time for various reasons. We contend on social issues, politics, religion, music, art, sports, etc. However, for many the most damning contention is in the form of doctrine of the Gospel. When the Savior came to the Nephites (3 Nephi 11) one of the first things he did is command that there be no more contentions amongst them. We are not to divide ourselves according to fringe beliefs, but focus upon the Doctrine of Christ: repentance, baptism, and the Holy Ghost.

34 I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;
35 And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.

[They knew the Doctrine of Christ.]

36 And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—

37 I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples. **[The definition of unholy is to be in open rebellion against God. Those who follow such a path are led to the Adversary where they can eventually enter into dark oaths and receive an inheritance in that evil kingdom. We can choose one of three things: the Lord, Satan, or to stay where we are. However, this third option only applies to those who have not first come unto Christ.]**

38 Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

39 And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment. **[Such is sent to Outer Darkness upon the completion of this world's ascension. These are not the same as a son of perdition, but inherit the same fate.]**

40 O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye

should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

41 And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it. King Benjamin makes the point that those who keep the commandments of God are blessed both temporally and spiritually. Often we assume that if we keep the commandments that God will make our lives successful, smooth, and rich. I think we know better than that. God always blesses us with what we need. Sometimes the blessings are financial, health related, or other temporal things, but the rich life in the Lord is about overcoming and making a difference as a servant of Him. This is the rich life.

Questions and Answers

Great chapter. Question, if our resurrected bodies are denser than our physical, does that mean a Light/Glory is denser than a spirit without glory?... is darkness also denser than a physical body? **[The more light, the more dense in glory. The power to act is increased. The power to create is expanded. Without this light a spirit is limited. PR]**

[False imprisonment, slavery, human trafficking, murder, stealing from the people, all manner of wickedness. Our current society is rife with such abominations. We live in a time that rivals the worst of the Nephites; in fact, it is as the time of Noah.]

It seems to me It's easy to be ignorant of these things unless you look for or study them. When we read about Noahs day we think "oh that must have been really bad" then go about our very peaceful, virtually positive lives. Most people will call you a conspiracy theorist or say it's not that bad, those things happen but are rare etc etc. Was their vast wifull ignorance/denial in Noahs day also as to how bad it had gotten? **[The people in Noah's day would have been amazed to see our time. In some ways we are worse. PR]**

"We can choose one of three things: the Lord, Satan, or to stay were we are. However, this third option only applies to those who have not first come unto Christ."

Does this mean a 3rd or 4th estate being must condescend? Or can they choose to stay in their heavenly station for a time (or eons, or forever) if they choose to? **[At every step of our progression this formula applies. PR]**

39 And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment. [Such is sent to Outer Darkness upon the completion of this world's ascension. These are not the same as a son of perdition, but inherit the same fate.]

Since they are not the same as the sons of perdition can they still be forgiven even in Outer Darkness? Or is it they simply do not want to turn to the Lord even though they are in that much pain and anguish? Does this apply to those that are lukewarm in their walk with Christ? **[Perdition are those who make an oath to Satan. They**

choose their fate and the Atonement has no effect upon them. If they decide later, after going to Outer Darkness to repent they have to start over as a singular intelligence, and few ever do that because of fear. PR]

I was studying Matthew 25 this morning of the unprofitable servant who went and hid his talent and when the Lord came to gather the harvest of the servants he had blessed with various talents, the one with only one talent as we know, hid it in the earth because of fear. It seems there is a lot more going on in this parable because the servant in trying to justify his actions accuses the Lord of reaping where he had not sown, and gathering where he had not scattered. It seems that this is because of the many races of men upon the earth today, those who were not of Israel. Also, that those who are given talents from the Lord must be part of his kingdom in order to be given some of the gifts and talents from it. But, because of fear, the unwise servant didn't do anything with his time on earth.

It seems that these two stories are related, the one from Mosiah and the one from Matthew, the punishment is exactly the same. JST Matt. 25:30-33 But from him that hath not obtained other talents, shall be taken away even that which he hath received. And his lord shall say unto his servants, Cast ye the unprofitable servant into outer darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. When the Son of Man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then he shall sit upon the throne of his glory; And before him shall be gathered all nations; and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats; the sheep on his right hand and the goats on his left.

Part of repentance is our deep desire and willingness to invite others to join us on the path so that they too may partake and receive gifts and talents. This is the true desire of the true servants of the Living God and what Israel covenanted to do eons before.

Surely, for any servant to merit a place in perdition, indicates they had access to greater light and then rejected it. The fact that the servant related to in Matthew only received one talent, would indicate he hadn't received much light yet. Of course, this always leads to more pondering!

Mosiah —

38 Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

39 And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment. [Such is sent to Outer Darkness upon the completion of this world's ascension. These are not the same as a son of perdition, but inherit the same fate.]

“32 But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.”

Have you seen the preachings of Mosiah, father of Benjamin? He sounds like an equally great man as his son. Would you know what he told the Nephite people about the evil spirit, as mentioned above? It seems that he provided, in a public way, some warnings concerning familiar spirits and the tools of the adversary to protect his people. **[I have**

not inquired about what he taught specifically that is not included in the Book of Mormon. PR]

Angels and Demons – Mosiah 3:1-27

1 And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

2 And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me. **[The purpose of seraphim is to carry a message to us from the Throne of Heaven. These are the most common messengers that prophets receive. They speak to you as one man speaks to another. You see them with your spiritual eyes, yet it can be difficult to tell the difference between whether it is physical or spiritual, except that their light is as that of noon day.]**

3 And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy. **[This is similar wording to how the angels spoke to the shepherds in Bethlehem.]**

4 For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy. **[Angels from the Throne always acknowledge the Lord their God.]**

5 For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases. **[It was part of the mission of Christ to perform these miracles to witness of His divinity. Not all prophets are called to publicly do these things. The gatherers of the last days will be called to do much of this too.]**

6 And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men. **[Lying spirits are common amongst many people. A servant of God must know how to deal with the Adversary. It is a part of the job.]**

7 And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people. **[The Atonement required Jesus to suffer everything, to fully know those whom He would redeem. The most difficult part was the spiritual one-ment with each soul He would save, which occurred in Gethsemane. He literally knew each of us at that time.]**

8 And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary. **[It's remarkable how much detail had been revealed to King Benjamin concerning Christ that few knew about in the old world.]**

9 And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

10 And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment [separation] might come upon the children of men. **[The purpose of His coming: to raise up those who will have them be their Father, to become like Him.]**

11 For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned. **[The mercy given to those without the law. Moroni 8:22]**

12 But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ. **[These are perdition.]**

13 And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.

14 Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiffnecked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses. **[This is the reason for its perceived harshness, to help them to learn obedience and prevent them from falling into forbidden paths.]**

15 And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spake unto them concerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood. **[These consist of the holy feasts, the temple sacrifices, the types in nature, and the words of the holy prophets, all pointing to Christ. It was critical to their salvation that they not only perform these symbolic ordinances and duties, but they understand in detail their meaning. When temple ordinances are performed ignorantly it shows that the leadership doesn't know their duty to teach the people and thereby the blood and sins of their generation will fall upon them in the last day.]**

16 And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by **nature [our temporal nature]**, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins. **[The word "sin" is often misunderstood. To sin is to be out of harmony with God's higher laws. By the nature of our temporal bodies we exist in a sinful state. We are born this way. The atonement of Christ prevents those who are innocent from being sucked into the dominion of the Adversary, and in that manner are saved; however, this does not guarantee the soul Eternal Life. Each soul must make that choice, whether in this life or the next. This is a mystery.]**

17 And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent. **[There are those today who believe that Christ is just one of many ways in which a soul can be saved.]**

This is false. Many religions teach peace and a higher law to their people. Some of their religions have existed since before this world, yet they do not exalt. They are teletial in nature.]

18 For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent. **[The damnation of the soul is the finality of their progression spiritually.]**

19 For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father. **[This is a powerful verse to describe the barrier that separates us from God. The flesh is the veil that prevents most from knowing God. This “natural man” or carnal state of being, creates a powerful means for us to learn to have faith, to mold our spirits like no other way, that we might rise up and be sons and daughters of God. The temporal body creates a magnifying glass of sorts upon our passions. We can only focus upon one thing at time, one thought at a time, as we choose each day what we will do. Our hearts do not lie, and our actions come by faith. Our faith is in that which we cannot see, yet we know is true and possible. We seek either the things of the flesh or that of the Spirit. In the end we find what we seek, life or death – spiritually. It is the battlefield of souls.]**

20 And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of a Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people. **[This will be in the very last days before Christ comes.]**

21 And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

22 And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

23 And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

24 And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil. **[When we bear testimony according to the words of the Holy Ghost, as Mosiah did here, those words are recorded by the angels. D&C 62:3]**

25 And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls. **[The damned that follow Satan shrink away from the light. Their worm never dies, as they are tormented by those who oppress them forever. But, they exist in a state which they chose and desire. It is a place of endless self gratification and depravity.]**

26 Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.

[When Adam fell it was required that he be cast out of God's presence to the telestial glory. In like manner Satan's followers will be cast out of telestial glory to Outer Darkness.]

27 And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.

Questions and Answers

[When temple ordinances are performed ignorantly it shows that the leadership doesn't know their duty to teach the people and thereby the blood and sins of their generation will fall upon them in the last day.]

This applies to false prophets/leaders who are deceived in their understanding and were never called of God in the first place? They are still responsible for their generation? Is it because they accepted the position therefore they place the responsibility upon themselves? **[No, it is not. However, it is a sign to those who follow them when they do not teach the people. The Pharisees were blind to the meaning of the temple ceremonies and did not even recognize the Messiah. They looked beyond the mark. Today, we have more knowledge at our fingertips to know and understand, yet we as a whole know nothing. Without revelation we are left to the bickering of scholars to understand the meaning of prophetic scripture, and ordinances. PR]**

Because of the holy nature of ordinances and ceremonies, is it the Lord's way that each individual should rely completely on revelation to understand these temple ordinances? Is it a prophet's responsibility to teach the importance of the ordinances but not the complete meaning? Is there a line you could point out where the responsibility of the leaders ends and the responsibility of the student begins? (I know that's a vague question sorry) **[The Jews were to teach that the Mosaic Law pointed them to know how to recognize the Messiah, and how they would be able to approach God. The prophets specified different parts of Jesus' life which would directly conform to the Mosaic Law. The temple endowment is also to point us to how to approach God. The problem is that because we are so scared of sharing what is holy, we now don't even allow it to be spoken in the temple itself. However, the temple ceremonies are only a teaching tool to spark the mind to seek revelation. PR]**

When you ascend, can your mind focus upon more than one thing at once? Is the speed at which you can absorb new information/knowledge increased compared to the physical? **[The mind's ability to comprehend is equal to the degree of light or glory it possesses. The Highest priesthood, which is often referred to as Patriarchal, is capable of omniscient thought. PR]**

I'm trying to pin point what leads someone to become a Son of Perdition. They seek their own will over the Lord, but what does that look like for a 4th estate? Specifically, what pattern of behaviors or actions lead to it.... I'm sure it happens incrementally, not all at once. Cain and others would have had to exercise some degree of sincere love for

God to still be born again and seek the Second Comforter (does sex become an idol?... do they just keep sinning after the Gift of the Holy Ghost?... do they seek after fame or being a leader in the world?... do they dwell on temptations more than they should?... become frustrated or angry with God's direction for their life?)

Moses in Temporal Dispensation's say's using the Sealing Power without God's permission can lead to perdition, which he did once. I have many weaknesses, just really trying to weed everything out of my heart as much as possible. **[To become a son of perdition requires certain things. First, they are a 4th estate. A second estate can become perdition, but not have the same dominion as a fallen being or angel. If a fourth estate being makes an oath to Satan and then sheds innocent blood (another 4th estate), then they qualify. It is a premeditated, carefully executed sacrifice to Satan. PR]**

It is so evident that the most current teachings coming from the new leaders since the death of President Monson, is just this...teaching the importance of learning to receive personal revelation. I is an amazing journey and one I'm so, so grateful to be on...thank you so much PR for all you do to help those that are on a serious path to this understanding.

March 4, 2019 at 2:24 pmVerse 9 uses the word crucify. Were there already barbaric civilizations using crucifixion as a means of killing and the Jews knew of it? Or did Joseph understand the meaning and use the word crucifixion as he translated? I always wondered how the Nephites would have understood this. **[They had a word for it and Joseph used the English word that he knew of to express it. Crucifixion during the ancient Jews' time was not as far advanced as it was by the time the Romans came along. PR]**

"14 Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiffnecked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses. [This is the reason for its perceived harshness, to help them to learn obedience and prevent them from falling into forbidden paths.]" Does the Lord use false churches to help people in the same way: to learn obedience and prevent them from falling into forbidden paths? (Because at least they are hearing of Christ there and have Him brought to their minds and the scriptures are before them?) **[False churches are like the olive branches that fail to bring forth fruit. The Lord suffers them to continue with hope they will change, and then they are swept away. Refer to Jacob 5 and the Allegory of the Vineyard. PR]**

I can't remember where I read it, but I believe you said that a dispensation head can only be that head once (like Joseph Smith won't be the head of another dispensation). However, can the same spiritual being—condescending as a different mortal—be a dispensation head again? For example: can Michael as "Adam" be a dispensation head, and then later, Michael as "some other mortal" be a later dispensation head? **[That is not my understanding. PR]**

Then how will the first be last and the last be first? What does that mean in context to the coming dispensation head? **[That is a reference to the 4th estate and the House of Israel. It is related to the Everlasting Covenant and I cannot say more. PR]**

I believe you have spoken of different degrees within the fourth estate beings before. How does one advance to the highest degree within the fourth estate? Can that be done during a creation—mortalities—post-world cycle? Or do they need to play out an entire creation cycle as a lower fourth estate, and then come back as a higher fourth estate in a

different creation cycle, with a different heavenly father?

I am assuming those like Gabriel or Uriel are higher in glory and light than many of the 144k. And if so, how is it done?

About 4th estates becoming sons of perdition, that is still very hard to understand.

Because although it's premeditated, someone doesn't just become a villain overnight, I assume for most it's a gradual process, a set of behaviors and steps that lead them there. And Cain would still have had to receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost in the flesh which means a mighty change of heart. I remember one of your books talks about them being Watchers, so they basically would be viewed as pornography in heaven.

1) Before Satan fell and became Satan, had he just been exalted to a new degree of Glory?... as I understand it, one retains their previous glory if they fall like King David (covered by Grace) but they become tainted. **[No, Satan was still 4th estate until he was cast out. David was fourth estate, but was not cast out because he did not deny the Holy Ghost. However he carried the blood and sins of his works into the next life which required reparations.]** 2) Will someone like King David still have an increase of Glory if they don't condescend again?... **[David didn't commit the unpardonable sin. He was forgiven.]** 3) do you know if Sons of Perdition reach a level where they stop receiving glory after condescensions because they ruin opportunities for growth like King David did? **[Sons of Perdition only have dominion in Satan's Kingdom. There is no glory of light. PR]**

You've stated that this earth has beings from 2nd to 6th estate. Is being a dispensation head limited to 4th estate beings? Or can there be 5th and/or 6th estate beings as the head of a dispensation? **[I can't answer that. PR]**

PR, how will those that do not seek the Lord but seek Satan or those that just follow the flesh and family lines view their existence after this life? Will they truly have a nashing of teeth and a guilt of the wrongs they did or will they be fairly complacent because they desired the flesh or following Satan and their wrongs don't mean as much to them? Who truly are those that will have a nashing of teeth.

[It depends upon what they choose. There is a difference between being subject to Satan in the flesh and actually choosing to follow him. These scriptures in Mosiah are helpful:

10 And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment [separation] might come upon the children of men. [The purpose of His coming, to raise up those who will have them be their Father, to become like Him.]

11 For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned. [The mercy of those without the law. Moroni 8:22]

12 But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ. Mosiah 3 [These are perdition.]

Are We Not Beggars? – Mosiah 4:1-30

1 And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them. **[Often when one feels godly sorrow, and desire to repent with a fullness of heart, they fall to the ground in supplication.]**

2 And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. **[King Benjamin's words regarding the carnal man in the previous chapter struck a chord.]** And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men. **[They sought forgiveness and purification, which is the baptism of fire.]**

3 And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them. **[Exceeding faith and contrition leads to a baptism of fire. How is faith involved? They were specifically seeking and asking for purification. Their intent was without guile, and they called out with all their heart. God will always answer such a prayer.]**

4 And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

5 For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—**[a broken heart]**

6 I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—**[a contrite spirit]**

7 I say, that this is the man **[or woman]** who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

8 And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.

9 Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend. **[This is where your faith begins. Be believing. Then act upon every commandment (revelation) He gives you until the perfect day.]**

10 And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them. **[Always begin your personal private prayers asking for forgiveness and seek a washing of the Spirit that you may remain clean.]**

11 And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls **[the evidence of a baptism of fire]**, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel. **[We are to daily revisit this experience if we desire. It does not need to be a one time event.]**

12 And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true. **[What does it mean to “grow in the knowledge of the glory of God?” It means to continue to expand your relationship with the Lord until the day comes when you see His face and receive a fullness. Such a blessing can occur while in the flesh.]**

13 And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due. **[The gift of charity is related to having one’s baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost gift given.]**

14 And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness. **[This applies to adults too. A godly person is a peacemaker.]**

15 But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness [focus of mind]; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another. **[Imagine if this was the purpose of our public schools and universities?]**

16 And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish. **[When I began to learn more about revelation, before having my Second Comforter experience, one of the first things the Lord had me do was to adjust my thinking regarding beggars. He had me create a system for how I gave. I kept various color-coded bills wrapped in paper marked as \$20, \$40, \$100 in my wallet. Whenever I saw a person in need I was to pray and ask for revelation for how much to give. I was told what to say to them as I gave the money in the colored paper. I also applied this principle toward larger interventions which required more funds. All things were done in order and I felt the love of the Lord for them and for me.]**

There is a principle of faith here, as we learn how to offer charity. Which is better, to give indiscriminately, or to offer assistance according to the Spirit? It is always advisable

to follow the Spirit, for in such a manner we can do the most good. How can not giving assistance do any good? There have been some occasions where the Spirit strongly prompted me to restrain from giving. The Lord had another person do the assistance, or there was another thing the Lord had in mind. But, having said this, if you don't get a clear revelation it is best in my opinion to err on the side of giving. All things must be done in order, as we are stewards to our wealth according to our families' needs.

17 Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—**[This is a common excuse today to not give.]**

18 But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God. **[I would recommend paying close attention to how you feel when looking upon a beggar or person in financial distress. How you feel in your heart is a good measure of your spiritual light. Take the time to cultivate love and charity for those who are suffering, even when it seems self inflicted. There are many who because of drugs, alcohol, and other vices, are destitute. In some cases, these heartbreaking situations are part of God's plan in their lives. In this lies a mystery.]**

19 For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind? **[In some cases we are assisting angels unknown to us.]**

20 And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy. **[A great lesson in the similitude of our seeking the Lord.]**

21 And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another. **[When we are generous to our brothers and sisters, God is generous to us. All things must be done according to His will and timing.]**

22 And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

23 I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world. **[For many who are wealthy, often their trial is more difficult than those who are poor. They must be willing to let go of all that they have.]**

24 And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would

give. **[It's important that we not give out of guilt or duty, but because we are a servant of God filled with his love (charity).]**

25 And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received. **[To covet is to attempt to gather that which is not ours and to keep and set it up as an idol in our hearts.]**

26 And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants. **[The act of having charity is to know God's will toward ourselves and all people. It is the pure love of Christ, or God's love. This virtue gathers light around us and literally opens a conduit of the baptism of fire that can follow us wherever we go. It repels the darkness, creating a shield of light. Such a person has the Spirit of revelation, prophecy, healing, miracles, angelic ministrations, and all the gifts of the Spirit at their immediate disposal 24/7 according to the Lord's will. King Benjamin really hit the nail on the head.]**

27 And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order. **[Such good advice. More often than not we don't run faster than we have strength, but jog at a comfortable pace. I find that it is better to run much faster than I should and then slow down a little as the Lord advises me, rather than purposefully measure myself for fear of going too fast.]**

28 And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also. **[I have long since decided that when I loan someone something I just accept that I may not ever get it back. This way I am never disappointed. I even tell people not to worry as I give things to provide assistance. If I ever find myself in a position of needing to borrow I stress over returning the item immediately and not forgetting. I'm a little OCD in that regard.]**

29 And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin; for there are divers **[various]** ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them. **[To sin is to fall out of harmony with God. Imagine a radio station, where you attempt to tune the dial to the exact frequency to hear a clear sound. There are so many frequencies and stations you can tune in to, but only one will give you the music you are seeking. You must find it exactly and keep it there. Sin comes in many varieties.]**

30 But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what ye have heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remember, and perish not. **[This is an ominous warning. How does one watch themselves continually without**

becoming paranoid? I find that the best way to do this is to seek to gather around myself as much charity and virtue as I can.]

I feel I need to say that I am not perfect. I shared some things about myself in this chapter, personal quirks I have; but I am not always consistent. I can be lazy and stiff-necked at times like everyone. But I continue to seek the Lord and he is merciful and forgiving. Each of us need to be in a constant state of repenting, as we seek to retain a remission of our sins. In doing so it becomes more easy to be consistent in keeping His commandments.

Questions and Answers

A question related to S.S. story. On your personal missions of mercy you've been on, don't you have the power to alter time, space or manipulated the laws of physics. Is this because you have the Patriartical Priesthood? An experience I had at 19 years old, I was driving on a foggy two lane road in Nevada at midnight. I thought it safe to pass a two trailered truck. When I was half way passed the truck an approaching transport truck came out of the fog and was one foot from a head on collision. The next thing I knew I was driving down the road with no fog. I pulled over to understand the significance of what happened and the truck I passed went by me twenty miniatures later from when the collision should have taken place. I knew divine intervention had happened. Why do angels intervene in ours lives? Is it because we have a mission to fulfill still on this earth? Or is it just by His infinite love He has for us?

I hope you don't mind but I would like to share how the Lord has guided me about giving to those asking just as an example about how he works with each of us individually. He told me to put \$20 in one dollar bills in my car and give to everyone asking for money that I pass. I always ask how much to give and usually it just \$1. A couple of times I was directed to give \$2 and one time \$4. I have enjoyed this experience. Sometimes I have to creatively drive around, kind of like Silver's u-turns, but it always fills me with such joy that I am willing and able to fulfill the Lords commandment to me. It took way longer to give away the \$20 than I had imagined! It's like panhandlers just disappeared as I started driving around with money.

I realized that for me, it's not about the other person so much as about my heart. My willingness to give and to keep this commandment the Lord gave me. Also, it shows me that the Lord asks what we can do. My financial situation is such that I couldn't do much more than this. I just ran out of funds and asked the Lord if he wanted me to change anything. I didn't get an answer so I just put another envelope of twenty one dollar bills in my car. This has been an experience that fills me with such joy.

What an inspired key word you used "contrition", love of God for His perfections instead of love of God out of fear of punishment (your insight in verse 3). Do these insights flow into your mind from the spirit as you seek to open our minds to a greater understanding? This one just astounded me. **[I hear the words like giving a blessing. There is no preparation intellectually, only relying upon the Lord. PR]**

What a great chapter. So much resonates here. Thanks for the 2nd witness to things I've been following this past year. Some of the most amazing spiritual connectivity experiences come when we give our hearts to those in need and show kindness and

compassion. The Lord truly tells you what to say and how to bring His hope and love to them.

It's not just the money, I'm discovering... it's the chance to bewilder them by spending time with them. They usually appreciate being seen as a person of value because so many view them as a blight. Many are funny, intelligent and willing to give you their opinion on anything under the sun... some real wisdom floating around out there. I'd advise to be cautious and prudent if you reach out, but if you do... you will be blessed abundantly.

On your personal experience in verse 22 to have an "epic life." If we took advantage of these opportunities as they came into our life, I think we would be amazed at our spiritual growth. Thank you for sharing this and in pointing out to let the spirit guide us "And they all cried aloud with one voice," I've always wondered about this. How did they ALL cry out with one voice saying the same words? Is this literal (they all vocalized the exact same words) or is this symbolic of what they all felt in their hearts? Can you shed any more light on this? **[They all were crying out to God spiritually, and many physically. It wasn't in unison. PR]**

From vs 19 note "[In some cases we are assisting angels unknown to us.]"

Do you mean the beggar themselves are angels or we are helping angel servants among us? Do you have a story that could illustrate how this works? **[There are angels who hide their identity as a beggar. Even our Lord has done this on not too few an occasion. After His resurrection, He mingled among His disciples all over Jerusalem. In most cases we will not be given the knowledge of when and where this occurred until we are gone from this life. At that time, it will be the most sweet of realizations. PR]**

"I kept various color-coded bills wrapped in paper marked as \$20, \$40, \$100 in my wallet." I love this suggestion. I always carry cash for the same purpose of giving to the beggar. Why did you wrap the bills in color coded paper? Did you do this to include a message on it? Or is it just to organize them so you knew their value visually without rifling through denominations in front of a beggar? **[It was so I could find the exact amount quickly. There were times I had to hand somebody money at an intersection. Also, I've found that the more creative I am in exercising faith, the more the Lord blesses me. PR]**

I have a humorous little story to share. My kids have grown up always wanting to give money to the "hobos". Youngest daughter and I were out and about and pulled up to a corner where a hobo was standing with a sign. He was closest to my side so I opened my wallet, pulled out a five for him. As we drove away, the little voice that talks to me said "You should have given him the twenty". I made a very fast u-turn and went back and gave him the twenty. The look on that man's face when I came back again was priceless.....

I love this chapter and I love the details and notes that you added! A couple years ago I felt that I should give fast offering money directly to the two older men panhandling at the local grocery store. I'm so glad I did as I learned their names and their stories. I love what you shared and wanted to copy your paper wrapped bills but I felt a little tug at my spirit and the Lord inviting me to get my own revelation and do my own special thing with Him.

Just last Friday as we left a vet office, I saw a homeless man at a gas station. The thought to help came almost in the same second that my car passed the gas station entrance.

Why is it like this? Why such very, very short notice? I feel like my reflexes would need to be extra fast in responding to the spirit. Should I just get good at doing U-turns?

[The Lord is surely teaching you. PR]

This is a very random question but when you go to do a mission in a translated body, are you often wearing a white shirt?

Two of my classmates in high school missed an exit and swerved to try and make it at a high rate of speed, hit the exit divider and flipped the sports car off the road and onto the grassy embankment to the right of the road. The vehicle was upside down and gasoline was dribbling into the cabin when a man in a white shirt knelt next to the car and said to my friends “Girls, you need to get out of the car,” and then helped them each climb safely through a shattered side window. When they turned to thank him he was gone and the first witness of the accident who pulled over was just emerging from their car about 50 yards away. The witness said they were the first one there and they never saw a man in a white shirt. The passenger, Jackie, was previously atheist but came to school with hardly a scratch or bruise and told everyone she now believed in God and angels. Both of them insisting the man who helped them was wearing a white shirt always stuck with me. **[Only about half of the time. PR]**

These things occur because of prayer and angelic purposes to prepare for future events. Time and matter are not unbendable in the higher realms.

“[There are many who because of drugs, alcohol, and other vices are destitute. In some cases, these heart breaking situations are part of God’s plan in their lives. In this lies a mystery.]”

What spiritual qualities do these mortal afflictions teach us? Are you allowed to teach us more about the mystery here? **[Every person’s experience is different. The Lord is merciful. I can’t really say more. PR]**

Ah PR! Once again I’m in tears reading this honest breakdown of scripture. The BEST feeling ever is giving to the homeless/broken/addicted people whenever the opportunities arise. My dad struggled with all of the above and I only hoped someone would help him when we could not or didn’t know where he was. Now fast forward 25 years, it’s an automatic with my sons and daughter to serve or help or aide them without a service project attached. Make sense? I LOVE the idea of color coding what little funds we have to pay it forward with true intent and sincere loving hearts! You inspire me PR! I don’t know if you saw this event in vision, but I wonder how the multitude responded collectively when not all gathered were able to hear his words. The scripture implies the whole multitude fell and were touched by the message collectively. Do you have any further insight? I would love to have been there! **[I have not seen that event specifically, so I’m not sure. However, when the people cried with one voice to the Lord in 3 Nephi it was a singular prayer of unity. King Benjamin’s people were a great multitude and it would have taken a while to gather their votes, and consensus on the matter. PR]**

The Covenant – Mosiah 5:1-15

1 And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

2 And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually. **[There were no disputations among them. That is amazing. They were unified in Christ. Such will be the case for those who gather to Zion.]**

3 And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things. **[They felt the spirit of prophecy fall upon them. An outpouring of the Spirit. This is common amongst those who have received the baptism of fire.]**

4 And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

5 And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God. **[This is the Sacrament Covenant, the covenant of Christ, that existed even before He came to the earth.]**

6 And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant. **[To choose Christ is the only covenant required in this life to be exalted. Other covenants are made before the foundation of the world, and many more will come hereafter. It is important to understand that a covenant with God can only be given by God Himself. Men do not set the terms for this.]**

7 And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters. **[This is an important scripture because it defines the relationship we have with Christ after we have been spiritually begotten of Him. The gift of the Holy Ghost is the turning point in our relationship with Him. From this point we are called His Sons and Daughters, and He is our Father. This is the same relationship that existed between Christ and His Father. This is the At-one-ment of Father and Son/Daughter.]**

8 And under this head **[position of authority]** ye are made free **[from the 2nd estate]**, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives. **[Again, this is the Sacrament Covenant, to take His name upon us. This means that we abide in His light, to follow Him in this life and the next.]**

9 And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God [**divine power and omnipotence**], for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ. [**This Father/Son/Daughter relationship will never change from henceforth. D&C 121:46**]

10 And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God. [**Cut off from His presence.**]

11 And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts. [**What is transgression? It is more than sin. It is to take another path, to circumvent the will of God. It is a premeditated act, that is not always what you might expect. In this lies a mystery.**]

12 I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you. [**Our hearts are the fountain of truth that will judge us. It is our hearts that will protect us from falling after having received all that the Father has.**]

13 For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart? [**This is part of the purpose behind the 4th estate, to serve the Master and save the House of Israel. These are the Saviors on Mount Zion, the Just Men and Women Made Perfect by that which they sacrifice and suffer.**]

14 And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called. [**If you do not know Christ you will have no direction.**]

15 Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his [**The gift of the Holy Ghost**], that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.

The Gospel is rather simple – “come unto Christ.” King Benjamin is one of many witnesses in the Book of Mormon that teach the Doctrine of Christ, or the Doctrine of Salvation. Weaved into these incredible sermons are many of the mysteries of the kingdom. He who has eyes to see shall see, and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded to them.

Questions and Answers

Oh my ... this is so beautiful. Thank you for your continued insights into the scriptures. Truly, my testimony of Jesus and the BOM is increasing. Praise God!

Your comment in verse 13.....[This is part of the purpose behind the 4th estate, to serve the Master and save the House of Israel. These are the Saviors on Mount Zion, the Just Men and Women Made Perfect by that which they sacrifice and suffer.] My question is ...Alma34:36 “And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy

temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, “.....to go no more out.....” ; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.”“ To go no more out” ” Does it mean after the progression through all the estates. And I wonder must each progression of a new estate happen after the ending of each millennial period continually till you have completed them all? I appreciate your patience with me in asking. I know that some things are not to be revealed at this time. Thank you so much for all that you are allowed to share with us who love to grow in the knowledge of the Kingdom of God. Your posts and books have totally changed my life. **[Once someone has received the Holy Ghost they are 3rd estate. They can “go no more out,” meaning that they cannot lose their inheritance unless they deny the Holy Ghost. The progression of the estates is to rise in glory and help save souls in the Father’s kingdom. PR]**

I am Loving all this wonderful inspired commentary thank you. I have 2 questions.

1. If transgression is:

“.. more than sin. It is to take another path, to circumvent the will of God. It is a premeditated act, that is not always what you might expect. In this lies a mystery.”

Then what would you say the definition of sin is? **[Sin is to be out of harmony with God’s law. It is a state of uncleanness. Transgression is to try and go around God’s law, which brings a certain outcome. Those of a higher estate can transgress by seeking their own will, which can lead to various results; one of which is a son of perdition. PR]**

2. Is transgression ‘more’ than sin because it changes the direction/outcome of life, or is it more in that it is more serious because it is premeditated and sin is not always so? I think I’ve just confused my questions, sorry.

When we become the Sons and Daughters of Christ, after this “earth cycle” when this planet is exalted and it is time to condescend into new bodies on a new planet, is Heavenly Father still over us and there is a new person called into the role of Christ OR are we under our Jesus Christ and He is now a Heavenly Father and selects a Christ? **[Jesus Christ will always and forever more be our Father. Heavenly Father will always be above Him and have a place in our heart and duty. I don’t talk of this much because it is a part of the Everlasting Covenant and not permitted to disclose the details at this time. There is a beautiful relationship between the links that bind these exalted relationships. The only thing that we need to know in detail is that when we are spiritually begotten of Jesus, He is our Father. PR]**

I have gotten confused on this progression and I don’t understand if Heavenly Father is always ‘over’ us or if we stay with Jesus as He becomes a Heavenly Father Himself?

Transgression can lead to being a son of perdition? How’s that? **[It’s a series of steps that are used to deny the Holy Ghost. I’ve written much about it. PR]**

Transgression seems like its more serious than I had thought. Did Adam and Eve sin or transgress when taking the fruit? **[They transgressed, but did not deny the Holy Ghost. PR]**

I get a feeling that we have a condensed version of what King Benjamin said, which is not to say that is not a great one, but I wonder how much more there was that is not written. Also, I can’t imagine he being in his old age getting up on a tall tower, or speaking really loud. The people in the back could not hear his voice so they had to read

what he was saying, this sounds like it took a lot of work, and they have to have several scribes and messengers. How awesome it will be to one day watch how this actually happened.

Friends are debating this topic elsewhere, maybe you could clarify:

Is Jesus Christ one version of a multitude of Christs? **[There is only one anointed to be the Only Begotten and Redeemer of this world. The creations of our Lord are numerous as the sands of the sea. He is the only God of our salvation and we should not try and put him in a box and think we are His equal, for we never shall be in all creation. His glory is beyond our own. A day will come when we will be able to stand in His presence because we will be “like Him,” resurrected in the Spirit. But, there will always be spirits greater than another. PR]**

Is Christ a general title of a Savior and Jesus a person who becomes a God as He takes upon Himself the title of a Christ? **[Jesus is his earthly name and happens to have meaning related to His calling. Christ is a title, but they are still one in the same people. PR]**

Is it even proper to talk about this? **[No sin in asking questions, only for me in my answering questions I should not. PR]**

Is Christ some sort of fellowship of Saviors? **[No, unless you count the Church of the Firstborn, which includes the 4th estate often referred to as “Saviors on Mount Zion.” They are sent to assist the Only Begotten, or the Christ. PR]**

Are we really that infinitely small compared to the trillions upon trillions upon trillions of souls assigned to work out a salvation with their particular Christ? **[That question is a little ambiguous to me. In the eternities there are other universes that follow the Everlasting Covenant and have a separate Only Begotten, yes. But, that has no bearing upon us. PR]**

Are there Christ's who are more glorious than other Christs, i.e. did more or accomplished more or sacrificed more while they became a Christ for their world? **[It is all the same glory and follows a pattern, so the answer is no. There are “Fathers” that do ascend in glory for ever, but that is the mystery of heaven and it is a beautiful truth for you to experience some day. PR]**

Reign of Mosiah Begins – Mosiah 6:1-7

1 And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

2 And it came to pass that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ. **[The purpose of records is to stand as a witness to us and to God of what we do. The Spirit put it into king Benjamin's mind to get this list of names.]**

3 And again, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God,

and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses. **[This is the purpose of church for the people: to teach them, and remind them continually of their covenant to the Lord as read in the Sacrament Covenant.]**

4 And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

5 And king Benjamin lived three years and he died. **[It's a good thing king Benjamin set things in order before he passed things on to Mosiah.]**

6 And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he **[the Lord]** commanded him. **[He followed the revelations he received.]**

7 And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. **[an agrarian society]** And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

This is the beginning of an important era in the Book of Mormon that laid the foundation for bringing many of the Lamanites to the Lord. One of the truths that manifest themselves is how God, through small and simple means, brings about great events. It is the faith of people, their desire to seek His will and act upon it, that changes the course of the world. In the last days it will also be by small, unassuming people, that the Lord prepares Zion.

Questions and Answers

What a fantastic experience JB!! I just can't imagine having had an experience like Mosiah 3, 4 and 5 and not teaching my young kids how to go and do likewise. It's (the children falling away in Mosiah) has always puzzled me. I think you are right. The baptism of fire is not taught as much as it should be. I don't know of too many youth pursuing it. I believe that if the conversion doesn't move from your head into your heart, your risk of falling away is significant to say the least.

The little children mentioned here at this time end up fairly hard hearted at the end of the book of Mosiah. They don't believe the words, they refuse to be baptized etc. They didn't even believe in the coming of Christ. However, we just witnessed a group baptism of fire going on in the last chapter or two. People truly converted, yet the very next generation...most of them reject the truth on account of unbelief and hardened hearts. Any insights as to what happened there? Was it just bad parenting? Satanic infiltration?... I think this is important to talk about because we are seeing it more and more in the church. But never have we seen almost an entire generation fall off the radar like this **[I don't know for certain who started it. I do know there was a**

secular movement that influenced the Sons of Mosiah. Not too much different than what has occurred in America since the 1960s. PR]

About a year ago I was closing a bakery at a grocery store (part time Job) here in Utah. I had 5 —17 year old prospective missionaries working different departments around me. In teaching them about how to retain converts by teaching the doctrine of actually receiving the Holy Ghost to be converted, healed, changed etc. to receive as Christ's disciples received and story after story in the BofM— I realized these seminary graduates were lost to this doctrine. One of them asked all chagrined why he had not been taught these things... all of the 5 along with me at different times felt the Holy Ghost witness to this vital doctrine...\

How will they be “unassuming people”, that the Lord uses? **[They do not come from lines of authority or are looked on as outcasts. PR]**

The Limhi Effect – Mosiah 7:1-33

1 And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings. **[These are those, as recorded by Amaleki, who went to the Land of Lehi-Nephi, Omni 1:28-30]**

2 And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi, to inquire concerning their brethren.

3 And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.

4 And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander. **[From southern Iowa to eastern Tennessee roughly.]**

5 And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom **[prosperity]**, and there they pitched their tents.

6 And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.

7 And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.

8 And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.

9 And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the

land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people. **[The original people who left Zarahemla to reclaim the land.]**

10 And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?

11 And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.

12 And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;

13 For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

14 And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.

15 For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.

16 And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

17 And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple, to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

18 And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

19 Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them. **[Limhi had copies of some of the records which they used to teach the people. They had a temple in their land where they practiced the Mosaic Law, but they had become wicked.]**

20 And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

21 And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being over-zealous to inherit the land of his fathers, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman **[Like the original Nephites in the land, the Lamanites called their kings Laman in homage to their first king.]**, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

22 And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

23 And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

When Joseph Smith translated the Book of Mormon the American people did not pay an income or estate tax. Today, we have a progressive tax system that is the most burdensome upon the middle class. Those who are the lowest level of poverty pay no taxes except sales tax and are subsidized by the taxes of others. High taxes in America are a product of the late twentieth century. The original American Colonists rebelled against a 2% tea tax from the King. When taxes creep up on a people in this manner they tend to not rebel, and most Americans are now enslaved to a national debt and tax system that is subversive. Just like the people of Limhi, our bondage is a direct reflection of the wickedness in this country.

24 Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

25 For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold, they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves. **[I'm reminded of the iniquity in America that led to our most bloody Civil War, which cost the lives of 600,000 Americans. More than any war since. This will seem like nothing compared to the wars that will be poured out upon this country.]**

26 And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ. **[I'm reminded of Joseph Smith in this context.]**

27 And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth— **[Joseph taught that as man is God once was. Today, just being a Christian in America can be hazardous in certain places.]**

28 And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions? **[We live in a country and world where the killing of babies in and out of the womb is now legalized and celebrated. The wrath of God will fall upon this country worse than the fate of Sodom and Gomorrah.]**

29 For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them. **[America is the most prosperous country in the world. The lines are being drawn as the grey areas are becoming less visible. The polarization of America is happening today to prepare for what will come.]**

30 And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison. **[Like poison, it spreads throughout the body until we become sick and die. Can you think of the kinds of poison that exist today?]**

31 And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind [judgment of God], which bringeth immediate destruction. **[It will all come down immediately, not gradually.]**

32 And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.

33 But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of bondage. **[This verse is the promise of the Lord to those who seek safety in an unsure world. As we prepare for the destructions and judgments of the last days we must learn to “trust in him.” This requires a level of faith that leans upon revelation and not the arm of flesh. This is His promise to you.]**

I see this chapter as a profound example of what I call the Limhi Effect. His people were zealous in acquiring their lands, but because of wickedness were taken into bondage by excessive taxes and subversiveness. There are so many comparisons to this people and the people of America. Why was a story like this included in the Book of Mormon? Not only does it teach us what happens when a people lose their way, but how the Lord leads out a remnant that will bear His name.

Questions and Answers:

“They had a temple in their land where they practiced the Mosaic Law, but they had become wicked.” What has to happen for a temple to become defiled? Is it one event? Or is it letting in people who have become ungodly? Have you seen why the Salt Lake Temple will become defiled in the last days? Thank you for these BofM daily posts. They cause me to ponder them all day long. You make them come alive by your comments as if I was there witnessing these events. Also, pointing out where they took place, I can picture them even more clearly. Have you in vision seen some of the major events in the BofM? Like when the Savior appeared after His resurrection? **[I have been blessed to**

see much of it. Oh, how different it was in reality. Much more inspiring! A temple is defiled when it loses the Shekinah, or the glory of the Lord that dwells there. This is usually caused by bringing pollution into it, such as idolatry or sexual abomination. It can also happen when the High Priest is not a servant of God and defiles it. The Salt Lake Temple will go away much like the temple of Nauvoo. PR]

Cartels....Wicked Governments....Greed....Pride....Planned Parenthood...Foreign infiltration into our Government....Media....Technology....Rhetoric...Philosophies....New Age religion...Pornography....Human trafficking....Boarders (not just Mexico)...Mexico, Guatemala, Honduras, El salvadore are being used as a front FOR powerful Nations that are behind the scenes....and yet there is HOPE and BEAUTY and PEACE that fills my soul and gives me a desire to move with purpose. It all is becoming so clear. SO FAMILIAR...

30 And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison. [Like poison, it spreads throughout the body until we become sick and die. Can you think of the kinds of poison that exist today?]

well today, actually, I just learned about the council on foreign relations and other groups that seem to have unsavory and unsettling influence on our nation.

Other than that the pornography, drug cartel etc, have been listed by M.M. already but I will add another poison. Idolatry: That “thing” that pulls your focus off or away from the Lord. Nobody sees it, yet most of us are steeped in it. Idolatry brings apathy which leads to apostasy.

Losing the Shekinah via bringing sexual abomination/ idolatry into a temple... 3 things

1. Are you saying that there is Shekinah in LDS temples currently? **[I am not saying that. PR]**

2. How would sexual abomination come into a temple? **[Any sexual act performed outside of propriety within its sacred space. PR]**

3. How does idolatry come into a temple? That seems to be much easier than #2 above. Idolatry is rampant... but can you say to what degree idolatry would have to be present to lose the Shekinah? Like any examples? **[To turn away the focus of worship from God to either a person or manmade object. PR]**

“It can also happen when the High Priest is not a servant of God and defiles it.” ...

You mean through idolatry and sexual abomination? **[By going contrary to the Lord’s commandments, which would include many things such as those you mentioned. PR]**

It’s ok by me if you don’t address this question but I am now wondering: is there a place where Shekinah is found on the earth today? **[I believe there is one, but I am not permitted to say. PR]**

Just from the few comments mentioned here, it is apparent that many people see the unprecedented wickedness that has come upon us. When I lived in Calif. in 1990 I tallied up all the taxes I was paying (at that time, almost 30 years ago) it came to 62% of

my income. I am sure it is even higher now! Just this morning I read that the majority of people who self identify as democrats throughout the US are in favor of socialism. With the newly passed child sacrifice laws in NY and VA, the abortion on demand laws throughout the US which murder a million children per year, the vitriolic hatred in our country being fanned by the media, and the persecution of anything to do with God or Christianity, one has to wonder how much longer the Lord will stay His hand from destroying this country!

Were some of the priests of Noah sons of perdition? **[I don't know. PR]**

There are a people, the people of Alma that leaves, they are spared, but the people of Limhi suffered much until they were able to repent sufficiently, is this a type of what will happen here Before the tribulations or calamities ? some will be called out and leave like Alma and His people ?while those that are not humble will suffer greatly until they are delivered? **[There is a similarity, Yes. PR]**

Was the climate different back then? It doesn't seem to say anything about cold weather, you get an idea that it was more warm than anything, especially when you read about what the Lamanites wore. **[I have not asked about that. PR]**

Interpreters – Mosiah 8:1-21

1 And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.

2 And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

3 And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake. **[They missed the greatest event in their generation, when king Benjamin spoke and the outpouring of the Spirit they witnessed.]**

4 And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.

5 And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them. **[King Limhi followed the path of a righteous king, however his people were not as committed as were those of king Benjamin.]**

6 Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.

7 And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

8 And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters [**Great Lakes region of America**], having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind [**At this point they were in a final state of decay. Today, little remains to be seen of this unless unearthed.**], having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

9 And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

10 And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

11 And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate? [**Jaredite relics exist throughout North America. South America has many ancient stone structures which are pre-flood, and also stone pyramid structures that are of a separate civilization than the Jaredite/Nephites.**]

12 And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

13 Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer. [**This scripture gives an insight into how a seer stone works. They are a gift from God, not something we create on our own. PR**]

14 And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God. [**King Mosiah**]

15 And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet. [**“Greater” implies more access to God’s light.**]

16 And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God [**Highest priesthood, or as it is sometimes called Patriarchal is not available in this world. The greatest power one can possess here is to have the sealing power of the Lord, which is reserved for 4th estate servants called and elected to perform such duties.**], which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

17 But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known. [**One can be a seer, to be shown by the Lord great things both**

past, present, and future, yet not be permitted to share. A revelator is one who is commanded to share.]

18 Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he becometh a great benefit to his fellow beings. **[Faith is the power that makes these miracles possible; to believe, seek revelation, and act upon what is given. Faith is the core principle that leads us to exaltation as we trust in the Lord.]**

19 And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men. **[The interpreters, according to Limhi's words, are the means to reveal such mysteries. Joseph used interpreters to help him focus, which is heavily required when translating.]**

20 O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer **[bear or tolerate]** with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she **[wisdom]** should rule over them! **["Wisdom" is often referred to as feminine. It is an attribute of Heavenly Mother. In fact, one of three pillars of patriarchal priesthood: Charity/Son, Knowledge of God/Father, Wisdom/Mother.]**

21 Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest. **[This is the state of the children of men who do not partake of the Everlasting Covenant of the Father. It accounts for the vast majority of those who inhabit this world.]**

Questions and Answers

This is a wonderful work you are here engaged in doing!

Thank you very much!

Are seer stones always necessary or are they just like training wheels or the magic Dumbo feather("I believe I can fly")? I remember you saying once that scriptures can be used as seer stones. **[For most, especially if they are to do translating, they are helpful. But they are not always necessary. The Lord knows our needs. I never went looking for one myself and don't use it anymore. PR]**

I have read several times in the books that the vast majority, that most people here are uninterested in progressing past the 2nd estate. I see it is true, but I do not understand it.

Why are so few motivated to pursue the 3rd estate? **[They have been 2nd estate long before this earth. For some it is eons of time. They will continue as such, for it is comfortable to them. PR]**

What is the purpose for the billions who just exist here? **[It is an example of the mercy of God. He offers His gift of Eternal Life to all. These people come here by invitation and accept because the pastures are greener. It is a better planet than that which they lived before. PR]**

Surely God loves all of us progressing or not, is it really that rare that one of His children

covenants before birth to hearken to the voice of the Lord and then actually attempts? If so, if it is so rare, (it seems like it's rare!) why isn't there more heavenly help for those who struggle so much in trying to get on the path...? **[The first estate are the only ones who made the Everlasting Covenant. They are the House of Israel, and receive angelic assistance. During the times of the Gentiles there is an effort to help the gentiles to come unto Christ. They are all sons and daughters of God, but some are much more old in spirit and more difficult to bring home. PR]**

Why do so many people I know pray for years, attend church, serve, try to love God only to fall away in discouragement? **[Discouragement is from the adversary. It is like Lehi's Dream. Some find their way to the path, but fewer grab hold of the rod. The Rod is the voice of God and the Gift of the Holy Ghost. Those who get that far make it to the tree. PR]**

Why was Alma senior able to pray an highly convincing intervening angel into the path of his wayward son? (I understand Laman and Lemuel also had this happen but remained wicked, so there's that too). **[Alma the younger was a 4th estate servant like Paul. When this is the case there is often a divine intervention. PR]**

... shoot! I think I have surpassed the question limit for the week ... er.. month. Sorry!

It makes me sad that so few choose to partake of the Everlasting Covenant. I

...Is it always available for someone who desires it to partake of the Everlasting Covenant? And how can we help foster this desire? **[The Beatitudes and Sermon on the Mount were given specifically to help the servants to do that. PR]**

If I understand correctly, unless we are 4th estate, we are either advancing first estate/House of Israel, or continuing 2nd estate. By their outlook, I've wondered just how many LDS are comfortable-continuing 2nd estates.

[The first estate are the only ones who made the Everlasting Covenant. They are the House of Israel, and receive angelic assistance. During the times of the Gentiles there is an effort to help the gentiles to come unto Christ. They are all sons and daughters of God, but some are much more old in spirit and more difficult to bring home. PR]

For the times of the Gentiles, can you explain the process of being adopted in again? Can they accept the covenant before birth as well as in mortality? **[To be adopted is to accept the New Covenant of Christ without being of the blood of Israel. Yes, they can accept the covenant before birth or in mortality. Most gentiles who accept during mortality made an oath before coming here. They hear His voice. PR]**

PR, I have been praying for an answer about something for the last six months. This seems to be a good discussion that fits it. Here is what I'm attempting to understand. I know that the bloodline matters (house of Israel). I am starting to see that this manifests in a few ways that I can see. Consider this scripture, "My sheep know my voice". His sheep will know His voice, whether it comes from Him or His servants. PR, how does having the bloodline make this happen? I have witnessed this myself, and it defies an

earthly explanation. Here is another question. Why is the baptism of fire different for those possessing the bloodline? I know you have talked of this in one of your books, but I am still intrigued with the physical differences this possibly entails. Might this be related to actual blood differences, like the negative blood type? **[Today, few have pure bloodlines extending to the House of Israel. However, many have some of this connection through their ancestry, and many more have covenant spirits being introduced to bloodlines outside of the House of Israel to help bear fruit. This is what the Lord was doing in the Vineyard Allegory of Jacob 5 where good branches are grafted into wild trees to help save them. The Lord has placed choice spirits within many races to be as a leaven to raise up the gentiles. This has occurred all over the globe. As far as how our race determines how we physically manifest the baptism of fire? There is a connection to a certain degree, as those who are adopted often have a major reaction to the experience physically. However, any person whose eyes are open at the time of the event will see and hear much. If our eyes are not yet open, but qualify for the change, we will feel the change of heart and God's love, but may not experience the other manifestations. It depends upon the individual's level of faith at the time. PR]**

And, maybe I need to clarify. I do understand what you have explained before that the House of Israel made the Everlasting Covenant in the first estate. Maybe my confusion comes from thinking of the pre-mortal world in a spiritual sense, and then thinking of the bloodline (telestial abode) as separate from the spiritual side. But then maybe it isn't separate. Now I'm really confused...i better go to bed. **[Our spirits normally follow family bloodlines unless the Lord intervenes. PR]**

The breastplates they found were large, and in good condition. The Jaredites were from reading this scripture bigger in stature than the Nephites, is that because they were a more direct line to Adam?or their DNA hadn't been corrupted as much yet? **[Yes, that is correct. PR]**

The seer stones were around the time the BOM, why do we not hear about them anymore? Have miracles ceased? This Ammon that comes to king Limhi knows of them, and it sounds like it was a normal thing back then.
"How blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men" is this because of the fall or the veil? Or it is speaking of those 2nd Estate that are not interested in ascending? I don't understand why they would be just satisfied with just going from one world to the other when choosing God offers more, way beyond what they get with each probation. **[The Urim and Thummim was passed down with the records. Things of the Spirit are always considered unimportant to the majority of those of this world because they do not understand them. Most choose not to follow Christ because they see the sacrifice as too great. They are caught in the worship of the flesh, which is the second estate. When they seek to descend further into that they become candidates for perdition. PR]**

I know exactly what you are saying as that literally kickstarted my desire to ask the Lord, “Who am I” and “What is the meaning of blood types (RH-). The Lord guided me here to this site (not even what I expected) and now I’m learning to ask questions and wait for the answers. PR “ Edit” shed some light on the topic of bloodlines/DNA. Blood types is a different story (A, B,O,AB) (DNA) . I’m still learning the spiritual blue print and that literally started being directed here to PR. It’s helped me ask some specific questions to the Lord but I never would have done that without the tools and outline that PR has graciously offered to share!

Did the flood cover the whole earth or was it just confined to a certain area? **[Every square inch. A full baptism of water. PR]**

We are awaiting Earth’s confirmation, right? Is there a similar covenant for Earth as for us in that Earth needs the Baptism of Fire so that she can prepare to receive the Lord in person? Has this already happened for Earth? **[Yes, the earth will be bathed in fire, a full submersion. All filth and wickedness will be burned away. This will happen at the Lord’s coming in glory. There is a type in all things, and the earth follows the pattern of the Everlasting Covenant. PR]**

The Walls of Zeniff – Mosiah 9:1-19

1 I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers’ first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

Zeniff is Limhi’s grandfather, the original leader who brought his people from Zarahemla to regain the original land of Nephi. This chapter is backtracking to tell the story of the people of Limhi who Ammon found.

2 Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness, for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere **[harsh and unfeeling]** and a blood-thirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children. **[A mutiny among them for not obeying orders.]**

3 And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God. **[It is not that God causes these events, but rather that He blesses us or intervenes when we keep His commandments (revelations).]**

4 Nevertheless, after many days’ wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers. **[Had**

they not had a mutiny here, they would have all been slain while attempting to possess the land.]

5 And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

6 And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

7 And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it. **[I would have been suspicious about his generosity, would you?]**

8 And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom. **[Nephi had them build walls and a temple, in many ways to replicate the city of Jerusalem.]**

9 And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas **[herbs]**, and with sheum **[a tall grass like hemp]**, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

10 Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

11 Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

12 Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

13 Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land. **[Sounds a lot like how various groups and people stir up the American people to benefit from political conflict.]**

14 For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.

15 Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.

16 And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

17 Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

18 And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

19 And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain. Twelve years of peace and then a sudden, unprovoked attack. It is during times of peace that it is wise to prepare for such things so that peace is always maintained. Today, America is the wealthiest country in the world and also the most hated. Our borders are minimal and many people do not feel a need to protect ourselves sufficiently in this manner. The day will come when America will fall because we have overextended ourselves abroad and insufficiently protected ourselves from within.

Questions and Answers

Vs 3

“...And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God. [It is not that God causes these events, but rather that He blesses us or intervenes when we keep His commandments (revelations).]”

Do you know why the cause and effect of being slow to remember God seems to be almost immediate so many times in the book of Mormon? **[Unless they are born again in the Spirit it is easy to walk away on familiar paths. Not until we grab hold of the iron rod do we continue. Each generation must find their own way to God. PR]**

It seems like the consequences for doing that today are slow and minimal. It also seems like our society would not veer so far off course if the timing was faster today. **[Our society has been adrift for a long time, but there have been enough who were repenting to avoid annihilation, until this generation. PR]**

“It is during times of peace that it is wise to prepare for such things so that peace is always maintained.”

The peace to be maintained is internal peace, no matter what is happening around us, right? **[Yes, the Lord’s peace, which may manifest both spiritually and physically. PR]**

But the word prepare means to prepare both physically and spiritually?

I know you have said the Lord does not give you dates. Are you still being told the coming events are “not imminent”? **[I can’t answer that. PR]**

“Our society has been adrift for a long time, but there has been enough that were repenting to avoid annihilation, until this generation. PR”

You mentioned what a generation is before, but what do you mean in this context? The rising generation of millennials? **[There are fewer people repenting now than before. When I say “generation,” I am referring to those alive today. Our generation has tipped the scale toward wickedness. When it is ripe the Lord will cleanse the land. PR]**

Be Prepared – Mosiah 10:1-22

1 And it came to pass that we [**the people of Zeniff**] again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

2 And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

3 And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

4 And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind. [**Fruit orchards, and fields of grain and vegetables.**]

5 And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land—thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

6 And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people. [**It is common for a new change in political leadership to also bring a change in policy toward our enemies. To stir up the people by means of propaganda to build support.**]

7 But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.

8 And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins. [**This was not a normal way to dress for war, enough that the people of Zeniff took note of it.**]

9 And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.

10 And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.

11 Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.

12 They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of

Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;
13 And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness. **[The Lamanites had been taught that Nephi stole the records and holy relics when he left their fathers; that he had usurped power against the family. In our day different factions continually rile against each other's abuse of power – racial, gender, and social inequality. These contentions will continue to expand until the violence will overflow.]**

14 And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

15 And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.

16 And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.

17 And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi. There are many people in the world today that harbor eternal hatred toward other races, religions, and nationalities because of the traditions of their fathers. In our own country today there are factions that hate. They hate people according to skin color, religion, race, or political ideology. There are words that have been co-opted to only account for certain minorities, to brand those who do not follow their views. These are a tool of Satan to divide people and destroy them. When such things occur we can either sit idle and do nothing, or stand against it. Eventually, if the contention is allowed to grow, it leads to war.

18 For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.

19 And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face. **[There is no more perfect advice to anyone than to “trust in the Lord.” This can only occur for those who have a relationship with Him.]**

20 And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.

21 And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground. **[A peaceful society is an agrarian society, who plant crops and husband animals. Such industry is held by a minority in America today. Why is this important? When our country is broken, few will know how to provide for themselves and there will be an entire collapse of society, without food and sustenance. How**

should we prepare and handle this dilemma? Foremost we must listen to the Holy Spirit and follow the Lord's revelations to us. If you are told to leave the city and move out, do it. Keep enough food and sustenance on hand to provide for yourself in case of an emergency. How much? That is according to your personal revelation. For some, not much is required. For others, you may need a large quantity. The Lord told me I would give away most of the storage I have acquired over the years.]

22 And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.

The purpose of these Book of Mormon chapters is for me to share my revelations and thoughts regarding its content. I was given this commandment from the Lord for the purpose of helping those who are awakening to see a little more, to come unto Him. I would pray for personal confirmation when you read something unfamiliar. Whether to accept or reject, it's up to you.

Questions and Answers

“[I need to ask the Lord what neas and sheum are.]” from the last chapter. When you find this out please let us know. It fascinates me knowing these details. Thank you for making the BofM come more alive then ever before, Thank you for all you share and all the time you spend in doing this.

“11 Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength.” Can you expound more upon this? Is it angels are there to help? Is it a mass blessing upon the armies of the Nephites to make them not weary in fighting? Is it to take away their fears? Is it to place a shield of protection upon them? I can only imagine what a bunch of farmers living in peace seeing these blood thirsty men with shaved heads coming upon them. **[Even though they were farmers, most Nephite men were taught from a young age how to be a soldier. The key was their motivations and the power of prayer on your behalf. PR]**

Go Forth Abinadi – Mosiah 11:1-29

1 And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

2 For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. **[A common digression amongst those who fall from the path. When we follow the desire of our hearts and do not seek the Lord, we may fall to deception.]** And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

3 And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff **[a composite ore]**, and of their copper, and of

their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain. **[20% tax is pretty small compared to what many Americans pay. However, Noah was using this to add to his personal comfort.]**

4 And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

5 For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts. **[A political shift in the kingdom.]**

6 Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

7 Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them. **[When a certain class of people begin to believe they deserve certain privileges, the people become idolatrous. Today, not only the rich and those in power, but also the poor, and those in some minorities expect privileges under the law.]**

8 And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper; **[It was a common practice of the Nephites and Lamanites to adorn wood poles with metal plating, using artistic designs of animals, birds, and other symbols.]**

9 And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things. **[Ornate tapestries would often line the walls of these kingly structures.]**

10 And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass. **[There was little in the form of stone work in most Nephite structures, with the exception of the foundation of some buildings.]**

11 And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breastwork to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

12 And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

13 And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

14 And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots. **[The sexual depravity of the king and his priests, who were considered the holy men of the people.]**

15 And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

16 And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

17 And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

18 And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

19 And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

20 And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger. **[Abanadi was a scribe among the people.]**

21 And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

22 And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people. **[What are iniquities? Typically, these are generational sins of a sexual nature, but they can also be of idolatry.]**

23 And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God. **[The Lord was foreshadowing exactly what would happen to them. Do you wonder what will happen to the Church of the Gentiles in the last days? Much of that is also foreshadowed in the Book of Mormon.]**

24 Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

25 And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God **[a full broken heart and contrite spirit]**, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me. **[This will be the state of many of our neighbors, friends and family when the judgments come upon us before His coming. But there will be a steady cry from many prophets just before this occurs.]**

26 Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

27 Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

28 I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.

29 Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings. **[Free speech is a fundamental right in America, but many democratic countries no longer have protected speech. America is also beginning to slide down this path toward unprotected speech, particularly when it is Christian.]**

I was surprised how different Abinadi, Noah, and Alma were from how I thought they would look. As I witnessed these events and discussed it with the Lord I can see why it was an important story to be included in the Book of Mormon. How much it parallels our day and time. A prophet must first awake and then arise. At this point he waits for the Lord to tell him to “go forth!” There will be many such commands as we approach His coming.

Questions and Answers

“I was surprised how different Abinadi, Noah, and Alma were from how I thought they would look.”

Can you paint us a mental picture of how of how these men looked?

Why were you surprised? **[I described what I saw in the link noted above. I guess I imagined Abinadi older and Noah more evil looking. PR]**

I was wondering if you would in future posts, especially in 3Nephi (Jesus visit to the surviving people after His resurrection) , tell us about any visions you have had of the events in the BofM

that haven't yet been posted on your blog. Your visions give me a vivid idea of what was really happening with all your insights on personalities, descriptions of people and places, and the thoughts of the main people being written about who lived in these days. Just like you did with Alma and Abinadi. It it just amazing how much these insights that you have been given by the Lord, makes the BofM, become more real like I was there witnessing these events too. I can't thank you enough for this holy work you have been doing and the tremendous difference it makes in my life.

Vs 8: Do you know what ziff is? **[I haven't asked that. PR]**

Vs 22: What does God really mean when He says He is a jealous God? **[He doesn't like us splitting our love among idols. We can't receive His gift if we do.]**

Thank you once again for bringing the scriptures to life!

Was Alma pretty young at this Time?

And was he less wicked than the other priest? It sounds like these priest were well learned in the scriptures that they did have, but like Abinadi say they were not written in their hearts.

“A prophet must first awake and then arise. At this point he waits for the Lord to tell him to “go forth!”

Does this mean he (Joseph and/or David) has already awakened and arose and has been prepared and is in standby? **[I don't know the status of David in that regard, but neither has been commanded to go forth yet. PR]**

“But there will be a steady cry from many prophets just before this occurs.”

How many is “many”? The public call for repentance and to seek the Lord from direct messengers as i see so far is very limited.... The vast majority of us are unaware it seems even with modern tech methods. **[Enough that people will notice a trend of there being more than a few. They will gather the people in numbers and teach them with authority. PR]**

Abinadi the Servant – Mosiah 12:1-37

1 And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations. **[Abinadi had left and hid in a cave where he was taught by the Lord directly. He wrote many things, which were eventually discovered by Alma and his people.]**

2 Yea, wo be unto this generation [cursed shall be this people]! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy, saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh. [Often, when the spirit of prophecy comes over an individual they are impressed by the Spirit to stretch forth their arm and hand. This is the sign of a servant. The words that Abinadi spoke were direct and drew a powerful image in the minds of the people.]

3 And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord. **[This was prophetic as it occurred exactly as was spoken.]**

4 And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

5 Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

6 And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

7 And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

8 And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people. **[This is the kind of prophecy that will come upon America soon, as many prophets come forth by the hand of God. They shall preach repentance and future calamities to stir the people's hearts toward God.]**

9 And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

10 And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

11 And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

12 And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities. **[Rarely are a prophet's words accepted by the majority of the people who receive them. Only a remnant of the faithful in following the Lord's commandments are preserved.]**

13 And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man? **[All is well.]**

14 And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain. **[The majority of the people were ignorant of the sin and depravity of the king and priests.]**

15 And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.

16 Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.

17 And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

18 And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them. **[This was like a mix between a church court and closed door secular trial. The government of the people of Noah was a monarchy and a theocracy.]**

19 And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions,

and did confound them in all their words. **[Abinadi used scripture and reason according to the Spirit of Discernment which the Lord had given him to answer the questions.]**

20 And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:

21 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;

22 Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

23 Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

24 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God? **[The priests of Noah were teaching that their status and comfort as a people were a sign of God's blessing upon them. They did not understand the scriptures and God's purposes of salvation. For them, "all is well in Zion" was the standard for their excuse to continue in sin and not teach the people how to come unto Christ.]**

25 And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?

26 I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord. **[To teach false doctrine is a terrible sin, because it leads the people into unbelief and perverts the Lord's way. One way to know whether the doctrine has been perverted is to see whether the gifts of the Spirit are present. See Moroni 10.]**

27 Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding **[gift of revelation]**; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people? **[The perfect question given to Abinadi to ask by revelation.]**

28 And they said: We teach the law of Moses.

29 And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people? **[Abinadi cuts to the heart of their guilt.]**

30 Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God. **[The gift of discernment, as Abinadi knows their hearts and thoughts.]**

31 And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye? **[Again, the Lord places the words in Abinadi's mouth.]**

32 And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

33 But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

34 I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

35 Thou shalt have no other God before me.

36 Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath. **[The entire theatre or judgment hall was adorned with gold and silver plated images of birds and animals. It was a symbol of their idolatry. Not that they worshipped these, but that they worshipped the work of their own hands and did not seek the blessings of their God.]**

37 Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all this? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye taught this people that they should do all these things? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not.

There is so much in this story that mirrors our day. There will be many Abinadis called to go forth and prophesy in the future. Their fate may or may not require them to give their lives, but they will suffer and speak boldly for the Lord as they call the people and their leaders to repentance.

Questions and Answers

Vs 1: Any idea how Abinadi disguised himself?

I have imagined the people of King Noah being like a small town of a few thousand where most people knew each other. Were these populations more in the tens of thousands? **[I wrote about this in the link given. He wore a colorful coat and a broad rimmed hat. PR]**

“Often, when the spirit of prophecy comes over an individual they are impressed by the Spirit to stretch forth their arm and hand. This is the sign of a servant.”

How does this look? The hand is just stretched out in a natural manner with the palm down or is the palm showing where a spiritual mark may be? **[The palm forward, which displays the mark of a servant. This is more for the Adversary to see, but is the divine “salute” which the Lord’s anointed are often impressed to do, often not knowing why. PR]**

Vs 6: “smitten with the east wind”

What is this specifically? What area were they in and what type of weather does an east wind bring to those states? (Sorry, lived in Tx all my life and not knowledgeable about outside weather. East wind is a hurricane for us!) **[I don’t know for sure, haven’t asked. PR]**

Concerning Abinadi and his current status you said, (“ He said he currently works among the dominions and is helping to prepare those who will be a part of the Lamanite remnant that will rise up to save Zion. He is among the 144k.”) Will he have to come down and be born again in a Telestial body to serve among 144,000? Or will he be a resurrected being who serves in the 144,000? Or was he a 4th estate person when he came down originally in the BofM days? I am just trying to understand more about the Estates and the progression. It is fascinating to me. Thank you for your patience with my questions. **[He was 4th estate when he was a prophet among the Nephites.**

Today he is a resurrected being among the 144k who is helping to prepare for the gathering of Israel. PR]

In reading about when you met Abinadi, he told you he works with the Lamanite remnant that will rise up to save Zion. How will they save Zion?

I've noticed that many former prophets that you've spoken with are working among certain groups on the earth. Can you explain how they work with us down here, to prepare us? **[They will save Zion spiritually, meaning they will contribute to the gathering of Israel before Christ comes. The 4th estate work among the living as administering angels to other 4th estate and to prepare the House of Israel (the Elect who have made the Everlasting Covenant) for when they shall be gathered and made whole. They also help in preparing other 4th estate among the living for their missions to come. PR]**

I was wondering how would we know if we are one of the ones who made the everlasting covenant? **[You would have to know by personal revelation, but it is a pretty clear sign if the desire to know God burns within you. PR]**

Abinadi's Court – Mosiah 13:1-35

1 And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad. **[Capital punishment for mental illness? The king suggested judgment to the priests and they acted upon his request.]**

2 And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them: **[Abinadi held forth his hand.]**

3 Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time.

4 But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad. **[His words were filled with confidence and were well articulated. The priests knew he wasn't crazy, but desired to fulfill the wishes of the king.]**

5 Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people [guards] of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord. **[There is a phenomenon which occurs when the Spirit is greatly poured out upon a servant. It is as if the veil around them is thinner and those engaging with them may see visible light around their head. This has been portrayed in art as a halo or disk around the head of a servant.]**

6 And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying:

7 Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities. **[Spirit of Discernment]**

8 Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger. **[The mind of the damned]**

9 But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved. **[With the Lord]**

10 But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come. **[He already knew what his fate would be.]**

11 And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives. **[These priests had sought to use scripture to support their sinful lives. To wrest the scriptures for such things is gross iniquity upon a generation. Such has been the case regarding polygamy and idolatry upon our generation since Joseph's assassination.]**

12 And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image **[anything created by human hands]**, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.

The people of Noah didn't worship idol Gods, but worshipped the work of their own hands. They sought after riches, which included decorated buildings, resorts, clothing, and luxurious living. This was their graven idol.

13 And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me; **[How is this accomplished? Often for three to four generations following the departure from the Everlasting Covenant, there is a withdrawal of the angels from overseeing their seed. It takes an act of mercy as particular spirits are sent to break the chains and restore the family to the covenant. This is related to the saying that the blood and sins of that generation are spotted upon them.]**

14 And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments. **[If you love the Lord you will receive His revelations for you.]**

15 Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain. **[We hear this phrase often and many assume it means to use the name of deity without reverence. Of course this is sinful in nature, but the true meaning of the commandment is to speak as if you have the gift of prophecy, and yet you do not. To speak your own words in vain, and not in His name through the Spirit of the Lord. These wicked priests were guilty of this sin.]**

16 Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy. **[To make something holy is to dedicate it to the Lord fully. To seek His glory to rest upon it. The goal of a Sabbath is to use the day to make ourselves holy. To make our families holy. To make all that we are stewards of holy to the Lord.]**

17 Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

18 But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work **[Labor for your sustenance, not including work associated with the Lord.]**, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy

cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates; **[To inhibit another from keeping the Sabbath is a sin.]**

19 For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it. **[Seven is a holy number. It implies completion.]**

There is much debate as to which day is the Sabbath. Most observe Sunday out of tradition. Some use Saturday, as it is the seventh day according to the commandment, not the first as is Sunday. I use the Lunar Sabbath, which is according to the Moon Calendar, which was what the Jews abided by. The Lord said to me that He will bless those who keep the “seventh day holy,” which is according to what you will; however, if I abide by His day according to its original form, a special blessing is promised. The Lord told me it would bring added spiritual protection. It is not a commandment at this time for all to adhere to a lunar Sabbath. You can seek a personal revelation for yourself on this topic.

20 Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee. **[When we honor the Covenant to God which our fathers made, the Lord blesses us that we will live in peace upon the land of our inheritance. It is a promise of physical protection.]**

21 Thou shalt not kill. **[This is not the best word to use. It should be “murder.” All animal life is given unto mankind for his needs, to be a husband over. To murder is to kill needlessly and with wicked or evil intentions. Such is a damnation to the soul.]**

22 Thou shalt not commit adultery **[sexual abomination]**. Thou shalt not steal.

23 Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor. **[To lie to get gain.]**

24 Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor’s house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor’s wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor’s. **[To covet is more than to desire something that is not ours. It is to plot to acquire a possession unrighteously. The sin of “lust” is both sexual and idolatrous. Anything we desire that exceeds our love of God is to covet unrighteously.]**

25 And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?

26 I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.

Are these commandments obsolete now because Jesus said the Mosaic law was fulfilled in Him? (3 Nephi 15:2-8) This is an unbelief that has crept in among some in our times. The Ten Commandments are the foundation of the New and Everlasting Covenant. They are what will guide a person toward repentance, which will lead toward baptism and the Holy Ghost.

27 And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses. **[This is referring to sacrifices and burnt offerings. 3 Nephi 9:19-20]**

28 And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses. **[The Ten Commandments and all the detailed guidelines of the Law of Moses do not provide salvation in themselves. Without the atoning sacrifice of Jesus Christ it would be in vain.]**

29 And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God; **[Many today see the Mosaic Law as excessively harsh. Stoning was the capital punishment for some transgressions. The law was necessary at a time when the people's very survival and protection required such laws. Had the Law of Moses in its severity not been implemented the people would have perished and all would be lost in regards to saving the House of Israel and bringing forth fruit for the Father's kingdom.]**

30 Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

31 But behold, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come. **[This is a reference to both the performances, such as the feasts and sabbaths; as well as the ordinances, which were to teach the process of our coming to the Father.]**

The Holy feasts of the Jews given by Moses were to teach the literal atonement in detail as it would occur in this world. It was prophetic in nature and beautifully orchestrated. Today, we are yet to see the fulfillment of three final feasts: Trumpets, Atonement, and Tabernacle.

32 And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God. **[They did not understand the need for the Redeemer, even the Christ. The "hardness of their hearts" prevented them from seeing the reason behind the performances and ordinances given. Every ordinance, whether it be baptism, or temple ordinance, is to point to a more perfect consummation of the spiritual self. In the case of the Mosaic temple ordinances, they pointed to the true sacrificial lamb and our personal ascension into the Holy of Holies.]**

33 For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? **[It was recorded in the brass plates, but not included in the Old Testament.]** Yea, and even all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began—have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

34 Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth?

35 Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted? **[Much of the prophecies regarding the Messiah's afflictions and crucifixion were**

removed from the Old Testament record during the First Diaspora of the Jews when they were taken captive into Babylon. It did not fit the narrative of a glorious return of the Jews to power under a heavenly king.]

This chapter demonstrates how far the religious leaders of Noah's kingdom had fallen from the truth. They had a temple, performed the ordinances therein; yet did not teach the people the laws and commandments, nor did they keep it themselves. Abinadi had to teach them the basics to point out their unbelief.

Today, the Ten Commandments are applicable to us, but we also have the complete Covenant, which is embodied in the Doctrine of Christ (2 Nephi 31, 3 Nephi 11). To step outside the Doctrine as given is to go "beyond the mark." In other words, we are not to add any other requirements to come unto Christ but what is given.

All earthly ordinances point the way to the spiritual manifestation of the truth. When we keep the Ten Commandments we align ourselves with God. We then seek repentance (turning our hearts to Him, having a broken heart and contrite spirit), are baptized by water as a witness to the Father that we accept His Son, and then we can receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost. This is the narrow gate which leads to Eternal Life. This is His doctrine.

Questions and Answers

one thing I have always wondered...does the Lord spare those who are martyred from suffering? Was Abenidi protected from suffering the full pains of his death? I have heard speculation that in cases of murder of the innocent or severe abuse, the Lord somehow allows them to be "out of the body" in some way, protecting them from suffering. Can you comment on this? **[From my experience with the Lord: The last thing I asked about was what happens to innocent people that suffer unto death. Those that are tortured, raped, and murdered? Do they suffer, or are their pains softened? The Lord said that there is suffering, but that death is sweet unto the righteous. This means that when they pass through the veil their joy is full and they are comforted. The Lord said that the body will often shut down and the person will pass out or become numb to the pain quickly before death. Also, our spirits may disconnect at times from our bodies and the Lord or angels comfort those suffering. This can happen in the case of innocent children or other individuals. But, in the eternal realms, such suffering is not seen as horrific, but as a stepping stone to glory and understanding. People who receive Eternal Life look upon their suffering as a rite of passage and are grateful. Jesus Himself suffered each and every person's sorrow for these atrocities and knows intimately our thoughts, memories, and pains related to these; and no man has more joy than Him. PR]**

Dear PR..... How beautiful the words this special day.. thank you.... Love you.

One of my favorite chapters so far, thank you! And thank you for explaining each commandment!

Can you explain why the lunar Sabbath schedule is significant, why is observing the moon's cycle more holy, and why the new moon and not the full moon? **[This would take a full post to explain, and because it is not a universal commandment at this time, I haven't gone to that effort. In my first book, How to Have Your Second Comforter, I gave a short chapter about the Sabbath and what the Lord had me do. It comes down to the symbolic and sacred nature of the seventh day. It was a specific day hallowed by the Lord. The new moon is a similitude of the day of darkness before God said "Let there be light." The days begin to count once the light first begins to show itself. On the seventh day the Sabbath is observed. This continues for four cycles of a moon phase or "month," and it starts over again. The ancient Israelites used the moon to count the days of the month and this only changed after the demise of Jerusalem. To use the lunar Sabbath is to use the original recipe as the Lord designed it. This doesn't mean that one cannot receive the blessings of Sabbath observance by using Sunday or Saturday. I could go into detail on how these changes came about, but it is not important. I felt inspired that it was necessary to mention this detail when sharing my thoughts on this BofM verse. PR]**

Thank you for your added insights into the Holy Feasts of the Jews. I read online about the three final feasts.....Trumpets, Atonement and Tabernacle. Very fascinating.

“ [These priests had sought to use scripture to support their sinful lives. To wrest the scriptures for such things is gross iniquity upon a generation. Such has been the case regarding polygamy and idolatry upon our generation since Joseph's assassination.]”
Were Joseph and Hiram murdered from within due to the secret polygamy being practiced by others, as well as blood oaths taken as Masons? My studies of the Nauvoo era keep bringing me to this probable conclusion. Much was going on in secret that Joseph appeared to be addressing right up until the end...but it had become too deeply established as a secret combination? **[He had many enemies. It was not the Masons themselves who plotted against him, but those who were closest to him. In this lies a mystery and is not my place to reveal. PR]**

Thank you for a wonderful explanation of this Chapter!

PR, thanks for the prior answer. It is yet another confirmation of what the Spirit has taught me. The intrigue and betrayal set up much of subsequent history it seems. It was a conspiracy which put Zion on hold for awhile, but it is wonderful to see the Lord's hand now working to complete and establish what Joseph was trying to impliment. I believe Zion is soon to be among us. Thanks for your work in helping this process!

PR are you opposed to doing a podcast? **[The Lord has not directed me to do that. The purpose of this work is not to grow into a large following. It is to remain small and attract those who are led to it because they will be involved in the gathering. PR]**

I have been learning about the lunar Sabbath and wonder how we follow it and teach our children when they have school and events on the weekdays? Do the best we can? Somehow that doesn't seem good enough. **[It is a matter of prayer and revelation. Every family is different. My wife, I, and our younger children do it. The older ones still do Sunday. PR]**

Can you go into more detail about the significance of the number seven and the multiple meanings?? Is there a connection with dispensations?? Thank you PR! **[Seven is the number of completion and perfection. It is the stage where one rests from their labors and this has eternal significance beyond the Sabbath. If you read the Book of Moses Translation you will see there is something there, but I cannot go any further. PR]**

v. 11 – [These priests had sought to use scripture to support their sinful lives. To wrest the scriptures for such things is gross iniquity upon a generation. Such has been the case regarding polygamy and idolatry upon our generation since Joseph's assassination.] In what ways were the scriptures used in our generation to turn us to "idolatry"? **[Whenever scripture is used to point our hope to men and not to God it is idolatry. In our generation the focus upon the authority of men has created a hierarchy of presumed righteousness that brings the focus of individuals upon the arm of flesh rather than personal revelation. PR]**

Isaiah 53 – The Christ – Mosiah 14:1-12

Abinadi now quotes Isaiah to teach the priests concerning the coming of Christ
1 Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed? **[Isaiah said, Who will believe when the prophecy is revealed?]**

2 For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant **[Christ shall come forth in humility]**, and as a root out of dry ground **[There is no reason to look upon Him, for there is no great advantage]**; he hath no form nor comeliness **[no title or expectation]**; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him. **[He has no position of authority that we should follow him.]**

These Isaiah verses are often used to create a visual of Christ's appearance, that he was plain, and even ugly in his appearance. The fact is he stood above six feet tall, larger than most men. He had a pleasant face, almost boyish in His expression. He had the hairstyle of a Nazarite, which included a folded beard, and His hair folded back behind His head, very neatly kept. His hair was a dark red brown, that at times would seem slightly bleached in the sun. He had no official distinction or calling from the Jews, but was considered a teacher, or rabbi, by His followers as His mission progressed.

3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows **[He lived to see many of His followers reject Him, and even some of His closest disciples stood among the crowd that shouted, "Crucify him!"]**, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

4 Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted. **[Many felt pity for Jesus, as they witnessed Him scourged and crucified as a criminal without honor.]**

5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed. **[But He suffers for our sins and iniquities, and by Him are we offered salvation.]**

6 All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all. **[The Lord has taken it upon Himself to gather us home.]**

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth. **[He did not revile against those who scourged Him, spat upon Him, or threw stones, and even those who hammered the nails into His flesh. He called out, "My God, forgive them, for they know not what they do!"]**

8 He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken. **[He suffers for those who are in prison and has taken their sins upon Himself.]**

9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth. **[He was crucified with the wicked, and was buried in a rich man's tomb. But he was without sin.]**

10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand. **[It is the purpose of the Atonement that He must be bruised and filled with the grief of those He saves that he may make an offering for sin, thereby claiming His Sons and Daughters that they may belong to Him.]**

11 He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities. **[The fullness of His love shall justify those for whom He sacrificed.]**

12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great **[He shall be glorified a King of Kings]**, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong **[He shall carry up those who shall accept His gift of Eternal Life]**; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors. **[Because He has made intercession for you and given Himself as a sacrifice to wash you clean. How great is our God!]**

Do you not feel the Spirit as you read Isaiah's words regarding Jesus the Christ? As I read this I saw in my mind the things I witnessed from Christ's life, like a fluid vision of His beautiful moments of sacrifice and obedience. When these things are revealed to the world it will be the greatest event in cinematic history ever shown. Every detail of Christ's life was an example of holiness and love, purpose and sacrifice. He truly was the King of Kings!

Questions and Answers

Wow. What a powerful Spirit of truth in these words and verses!

Thank you for your inspired insights into these scriptures. Especially giving a true account of his appearance. It just makes you weep to picture this in your mind. In verse 3 you state, “ even some of his closest disciples stood among the crowd that shouted ,” Crucify him!” That shocked me. I don’t want to know the names but was it among his twelve disciples? Was it out of fear for their own lives? Also, can you explain the crazy atmosphere of this? Was it mass hysteria? These were not among the twelve that I was speaking. He had a circle of close disciples, more than 40, who He personally knew. How beautiful. I really did feel the Spirit as I read this. Thank you.

Yes, how truly great is our God! Is being washed clean the same as having ones sins remitted?

Does being washed clean/sins remitted happen at the baptism of fire or the holy ghost or both? **[Baptism of Fire brings the remission of sins and makes us clean. PR]**

The Great Resurrection – Mosiah 15:1-31

1 And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people. **[The Jews in Jerusalem lost this knowledge concerning the Messiah, even with so many prophets pointing to this purpose. This is why it was said they “went beyond the mark.”]**

2 And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God **[The Son of God is a title, like “The Only Begotten.”]**, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son— **[Jesus assumed both roles, the “Son of God,” by submitting to the will of the Father; and “the Father,” by opening the gate to those who would be spiritually begotten of Him through the Atonement.]**

3 The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God **[Because He abides in the glory of the same.];** and the Son, because of the flesh **[The Sacrifice];** thus becoming the Father and Son—

4 And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

Recently I met with two men, a father and son team who would help me with a building project. Both represented the same construction company, but with different roles. I sensed that the younger Son ran the company as he followed the instructions and was experiencing all that his father had done previously to do it right. There was a link between them, Father and Son, as the Son had now become the Father in the same role. This helped me to understand more clearly as the Lord impressed it upon my mind.

5 And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father **[to overcome the natural man]**, being one God **[joined with God by the Holy Ghost]**, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people. **[We are**

commanded to “take his name upon us.” We too must follow the path of Christ, to suffer temptation, to know what it feels to be cast out, etc. This does not all come at once, but through the process of Eternal Life, as we are polished and made perfect in the path to progression. In this lies a mystery, but do not fear, it is a beautiful journey.]

6 And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth. **[Abinadi loves to refer to Isaiah and explain his meaning. Even then most people did not understand.]**

7 Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father. **[The link between Father and Son, Mother and Daughter, Father/Mother/Son/Daughter. As we submit to the will of the Holy Spirit in all things we are made perfect.]**

8 And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death [both spiritual and physical]; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men— **[The Atonement, which is the process of sacrificing the perfect Son, breaks the bands that prevent the fallen children of light from ascending, and the Son is able to claim them as His own begotten children. This is the Redemption and Salvation of souls that is the work of the Gods throughout eternity.]**

9 Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice. **[His love is complete, and so is Mother’s. In this lies a mystery.]**

10 And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed? **[Jesus will know His children, because he has suffered for each individually.]**

11 Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God. **[It is us!]**

12 For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed **[children and heirs]?**

13 Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

14 And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

15 And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

16 And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace! **[They stand in great glory.]**

17 And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

18 And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;

19 For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not for this, all mankind must have perished. **[Preordained to be the Only Begotten.]**

20 But behold, the bands of death shall be broken [The seal that holds one to the telestial realm], and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. **[The ascension of the spirit body to a higher glory.]**

21 And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called. **[The first resurrection are those who are received into the Kingdom of God, having received the gift of the Holy Ghost and their spirit bodies made white and glorified in the blood of the lamb.]**

22 And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

23 They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

24 And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part [a preparation for them] in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

25 And little children also have eternal life. **[These two verses are reminiscent of Moroni 8:22. Those who die in ignorance, or little children are given an opportunity to receive the Everlasting Covenant. It is not an immediate judgment of Eternal Life. All must walk through the gate the same. In this lies a mystery.]**

26 But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins **[The key word is “rebel,” which implies knowing the truth and choosing to follow Satan.];** yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection. **[These are those that will follow Satan after this world is finished. There is a difference between sinning and rebelling.]**

27 Therefore ought ye not to tremble? For salvation cometh to none such; for the Lord hath redeemed none such; yea, neither can the Lord redeem such; for he cannot deny himself; for he cannot deny justice when it has its claim. **[Justice is more than an arbitrary choice based on weighing the situation. It is how God divides spirits of all creation according to their light and glory, for all things must fill the measure of their creation and abide in that realm in which they**

exist. It has nothing to do with whether God desires us to be here or there. It is the sphere in which we are capable of existing.]

28 And now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people. **[The Times of the Gentiles, 33AD until now.]**

29 Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion. **[This will culminate in the Great Gathering of Israel before the coming of the Lord.]**

30 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem. **[This is the meaning: that the children will remember the promises to the Father and the Father to the children, otherwise the earth would be wasted at His coming. The redemption of the House of Israel is the keynote purpose of all creation and why He came to this earth and suffered. It is all coming to a glorious finishing point in the near future.]**

31 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

How can anyone not think the Book of Mormon is the most exciting book ever written?!

Questions and Answers

In verse 2 you commented("the Father," by opening the gate to those who would be spiritually begotten of Him through the Atonement.) Is the Baptism of Fire and the Gift of the Holy Ghost being spiritually begotten by Him? Thank you for these amazing insights into this chapter. It's exciting and beautiful beyond words. **[Jesus becomes our Father when we receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. For those of the second estate, the Father of their spirits is different. He is the same Father Jesus prays to. Our relation going forward is the same relationship Jesus has with the Father. PR]**

I'm interested in your comments re: "Son of God" and "Only Begotten" being a title. Is it not literal? Are you saying that Jesus was not part God and part mortal and that His DNA does not have God the Father? **[No, it is absolutely literal, but is also a title. His DNA is 100% pure. PR]**

[Jesus becomes our Father when we receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. For those of the second estate, the Father of their spirits is different. He is same Father Jesus prays to. Our relation going forward is the same relationship Jesus has with the Father. PR] So how does this work for 4th estate? They have already received the gift of the Holy Ghost previously in a former mortality and became a son or daughter of another Father. So who pays the price for the sins of fourth estate beings? And who do they pray to? And which Father and Son do they see at the throne when they receive their second comforter experiences? I hope you understand what I'm asking? I'm carrying these concepts to 4th estate beings. **[In the eternities we come to know the Elohim. Jesus will always be our Father, as there will always be a Father of our**

spirits. There is a mystery in this I can not explain, but it is beautifully orchestrated as part of the Everlasting Covenant. PR]

how near are we to “in the near future?” **[I sense it is near, but the Lord has cautioned me against trying to set times. Unless it is attached to an event or a sign in the Heavens. Watch and pray is the best council I can share. PR]**

[In the eternities we come to know the Elohim.] Per this answer above; am I to understand that Elohim is “The Council”? **[No, Elohim is the ascension of the Fathers and Mothers until you reach the Eternal Father and Mother of the eighth estate. All are involved in our exaltation. “The Council” includes the 4th estate and the Noble and Great Ones. PR]**

I’m very grateful for this ongoing chapter-by-chapter commentary. Extremely helpful. I’m confused on the difference between sinning and rebelling. I always was under the impression they were essentially the same. The LDS website defines sin as “a choice to disobey God’s commandments or rebel against the Light of Christ within us. Sin is a choice to trust Satan over God, placing us at enmity with our Father.” Can you help me understand the difference between the two please? **[They can be the same, but they can also imply something different. To sin is to be out of harmony with God. The nature of the physical body and the world we live in can cause one to be in a state of sin, even if we are not actively rebelling against God. The Atonement covers such people as stated in Moroni 8:22. Remember, no unclean thing can dwell in the presence of God. However, if we rebel against God then we are choosing to fight against the Lord and take sides. For this the Atonement does not have efficacy. PR]**

The first resurrection is the moment a 2nd estate receives the gift of the Holy Ghost and arises to the 3rd estate, or a 4th estate who receives the same and has their calling and election, correct? This implies that when Christ was resurrected, He being the first fruits of the grave, it’s something different than most realize. Many will have already been resurrected into the 3rd estate prior to His coming on the earth, though they died as to the mortal body.

Could you please elaborate on your understanding of the significance of Christ’s resurrection at the meridian of time as compared to this first resurrection of the spirit? The general understanding is that no one resurrected before Christ (He had to do it first) and then those that slept began to rise from their graves and appear unto many and so on. I understand that resurrection is poorly understood and any help to describe these events with their proper meaning would be so helpful. **[Christ is the “first fruits” meaning He is designated as Holy to God. Another wording is of the First Resurrection. His sacrifice is outside of time and space, which means that those who lived before His atonement will benefit from it. PR]**

Does the “preparation” for those who died without the law (and those who died as children) have part in the first resurrection simply mean they will have other opportunities to receive the covenant in a later mortal experience? Does this only apply to children of light or are the children of men also extended this mercy on this

covenantal world? I'd also like to understand better how this could be termed as part of the first resurrection, which seems to be something different. **[Alma 40:15-17 delineates the difference. D&C 45:54 says those who knew not the law also have part in the 1st resurrection (first fruits). Every soul will have an opportunity to come unto Christ. In this is a mystery. PR]**

Thanks!

Of course, it seems you answered a few of these questions in Alma 40 commentary, which I just started reading after posting the previous questions!

The Ascension – Mosiah 16:1-15

1 And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: **[The stretching forth of the hand is as much commanded by revelation as the words spoken. It is the sign of a servant.]** The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye **[have the same privilege of the Gospel] and shall confess before God that his judgments are just. [at the Second Coming]**

2 And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.

3 For they are carnal [of the flesh] and devilish [evil of the spirit], and the devil has power over them **[they follow him willingly]**; yea, even that old serpent **[being of light]** that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall **[condescension]**; which was the cause [and purpose] of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil. **[Only by subjecting ourselves to the struggle of the physical body and Satan's temptations can we learn to know the good from the evil and exercise faith. The refinement of the spirit's ability to comprehend God and Satan can only happen in this realm. As our hearts become pure we are ready to ascend.]**

4 Thus all mankind **[children of Adam, and children of men]** were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people **[House of Israel]** from their lost and fallen state.

The House of Israel is the name for God's people. Israel means, "to come to God," and is the purpose of these people who were the first estate who made the Everlasting Covenant before birth. It is because of them that this world was created. All other children of men, who are also sons and daughters of God, are here by invitation. They are much older in spirit having been second estate for a long time. God provides for them too to obtain the Covenant if they desire.

5 But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God. **[Most people in this world are carnal, but not all are in a rebellious state. If you don't know the law and simply are existing here, or innocent as a child, you are covered under the**

Atonement. Moroni 8:22. If one knows the truth regarding Christ and is in open rebellion, you are in Satan's power.]

6 And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption. **[The effects of the Atonement are as if it had already occurred. Its effect is something that takes place outside of time and space. In this is a mystery.]**

7 And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection. **[If Christ had not exercised the power of the resurrection, to show that He had overcome the world, mankind could not have received the power of the ascension and the resurrection of the spirit body to dwell in immortal burnings. Christ had to show the way in all things. There is the act of showing in a visual way that has eternal consequences, as it shows the pattern for all as an eternal blueprint for each of us to follow. Jesus had studied the process of ascension many times from His Father before Him.]**

8 But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ. **[Christ causes the reality of the end of the physical body to have no sting, for the resurrection of the soul creates an infinite power to feel, think, and exercise faith.]**

9 He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death. **[The light or glory of God is the power by which all things are governed. Death is the process of light exiting the temporal and spiritual body, but when we are filled with light it goes no more out unless we choose to make it so.]**

10 Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil— **[This is the first resurrection of the just, where we are proclaimed clean in the Blood of the Lamb. When the spirit body is resurrected it is immortal and incorruptible in that form. Our physical bodies are of the dust and shall not be eternal. Like a temporary tabernacle to help us to develop faith like no other way. Only by coming here to the temporal earth can we become perfected in spirit and faith.]**

11 If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation— **[Damnation is to permanently restrain them from entering the presence of God.]**

It is important to understand that those who go to Outer Darkness with Satan go of their own free will. It is their choice and not some kind of trickery in the sense that it is accidentally achieved. These spirits go because their desires are self-gratification and they love Satan more than anything. Their worm never dies, and there is gnashing of teeth, and weeping, because they can never escape their carnal desires. It is a horrible state, yet it is a dominion that exists outside of the firmament of God. This is Outer Darkness.

12 Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.

13 And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?

14 Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come— **[Teach the people that the observances, performances, and offerings are all in the similitude of Christ and the redemption of the soul.]**

15 Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.

A resurrection is a day of judgment for all when they ascend from one estate to another. There is also a resurrection of the damned, which is their day of judgment when they are separated from God (John 5:29). This chapter could have been titled “The Great Resurrection, Part Two” in connection to Abinadi’s words from the last chapter.

Questions and Answers

This is absolutely beautiful and answers so many questions on many levels. There is one question I would like to ask, one which I have been pondering on for some time, and that is why our Savior seemingly took upon himself a physical body again when He appeared to his disciples: Luke 24:35-38 And as they thus spake, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and said unto them, Peace be unto you. But they were terrified and affrighted, and supposed that they had seen a spirit. And he said unto them, Why are you troubled, and why do thoughts arise in your hearts? Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself. Handle me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as you see me have. **[His Apostles were thinking of a spirit which is of a lower glory. You cannot touch and feel such a being with a physical body. What Jesus had was a glorified resurrected body which was the kind that could walk among mortals without consuming them with His glory. His resurrected body in which He presented Himself to the Father was not the same. It is the kind that would melt the earth at His presence. In the Celestial realm there is a body of light that has a tangible quality of flesh and bone, but is spirit. When He ascends to His Father, that same body that the Apostles felt is no longer and His glory radiates in a physical manner more glorious than the sun. When all things are revealed it will be understood that condescension and resurrection are the most common events in the Heavenly Realm. There are many kinds of resurrections. All of which allow us to move freely between the heavenly realms and require a certain estate to acquire. PR]** What is your understanding as to why the Lord appeared to his disciples with a body of flesh and bones. This seems to be the reason so many have the idea that we are to be resurrected with the physical body restored. Did it have something to do with His disciples developing “faith like no other way?”

[This is the first resurrection of the just, where we are proclaimed clean in the Blood of the Lamb. When the spirit body is resurrected it is immortal and incorruptible in that form. Our physical bodies are of the dust and shall not be eternal. Like a temporary tabernacle to help us to develop faith like no other way. Only here in the temporal earth can we become perfected in spirit and faith. PR]

Thank you very much for this answer!

The act of ascension and atonement....it seems to point to a law – and I’m using this word for lack of knowledge of the immensity and significance of what this truly is. It seems to point out something far larger and maybe incomprehensible for the 2nd estate children to understand. PR, are we given the version that is only what we can comprehend, and the truth of this is like Joseph Smith said, that if we could gaze into heaven for five minutes we would know more than the most learned person on earth? Think of how little the early members knew at the time of Joseph? Look how much has been revealed since? I have also shared a little. Truly, anyone who sees into the glory of God’s realm for even a few minutes will have a better understanding than any scholar or minister alive today who has not.

This is in context of the resurrection

D&C 88:27

For notwithstanding they die, they also shall rise again, a spiritual body.

Hi P.R

I would like to ask please, when the scriptures speak of “The great and last day of Judgement” when all shall stand before God to be Judged of their works whether they be good or evil, will it be a singular event where everyone is brought to stand literally in Gods presence and then judged and then consigned to their glory or their next phase of progression or reward etc? **[At the end of the Millennium there will be a final judgment or separation and dividing of the righteous and the wicked. At this time God’s all-seeing eye will judge all His works in regards to this world and the earth shall ascend to its Celestial glory, the Telestial spirits shall transmigrate to another world, and those who chose darkness shall go to a place prepared for them. PR]**

How old is a first estate? I know you might not be able to give me years, as time as we know it only exists here, but maybe something like three times the age of the earth, as old as our galaxy, I don’t know it just seems to me that 1st Estates are young ones. Do most or the majority of this group of 1st Estate (House of Israel) will chose God and move up? And a small percentage will chose to continue as telestial beings? **[Our spirits are endless and have always existed, but our first estate is to be born or receive a tabernacle in the image of Father and Mother. I can’t tell you how old they are or were before. The majority of the new first estate, the House of Israel, will ascend to their third estate. PR]**

I was reading Isaiah 66:22-24 For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will

make, shall remain before me, saith the Lord, so shall your seed and your name remain. And it shall come to pass, that from one new moon to another, and from sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith the Lord. And they shall go forth, and look upon the carcasses of the men that have transgressed against me; for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh.

These are the final words of Isaiah. It is interesting to note that the Hebrew word for worm is Towla, which means worm that brings decay, scarlet color or crimson. This is the same word used in Numbers 19:6 where the priest is to take the cedar wood, hyssop, scarlet (towla) and cast it into the midst of the burning heifer. This all has to do with the sacrifices pointing to the Atonement of Jesus Christ. So those who choose not to accept Christ's Atonement are like carcasses, no life of glory in them. There is so much depth here.

“The effects of the Atonement are as if it had already occurred. Its effect is something that takes place outside of time and space. In this is a mystery.”

When the Savior performed the Atonement in Gethsemane, did He condescend with all His complete spirit self?... I ask because the Patriarchal Priesthood allows Him to copy His spirit body infinitum. Was He simultaneously in heaven as well? **[It was all Him. PR]**

PR, did any of the prophets of the scriptures or anytime during the lds prophets understand this understanding of resurrection or is this understanding of resurrection something this coming forth more clearly in these last days? **[Yes, many of the prophets in scripture understood this. Only Joseph Smith knew these things recently. My best advice is to pray to know whether anything I share is truthful. PR]**

Even Unto Death – Mosiah 17:1-20

1 And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

2 But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man **[in his twenties at the time]**, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace. **[It was a severe breach of protocol for a new priest to speak out in this fashion.]**

3 But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

4 But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

5 And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him into prison.

6 And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him. **[To justify themselves for killing Abinadi they needed a strong argument against him.]**

7 And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and thou art worthy of death.

8 For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me and my people. **[To them, this was blasphemy, which was punishable by death according to the Mosaic Law.]**

9 Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

10 Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

11 And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him. **[When the sword of truth pierces the heart of the wicked they cannot deny. There is a literal component to this.]**

12 But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain. **[These priests had more loyalty to King Noah than to their God. This idol in their heart prevented them from repenting and seeing the truth. Today, many people and even leaders are more likely to seek the good graces of their church or ecclesiastical leaders than the Lord Himself.]**

13 And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged **[burned]** his skin with faggots **[bundles of wood]**, yea, even unto death.

14 And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying: **[Abinadi prophesied even in the moment of his suffering.]**

15 Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

16 And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

17 Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

18 And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

19 Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul. **[Such a dramatic final testimony! As all the wicked priests gather around to witness the horrific death of their accuser, the area is filled with evil spirits and the priests are consumed with darkness. In the center of the fire stands Abinadi, his spirit enveloped with light and glory as his flesh begins to burn. Yes, he felt the pain, but death was sweet unto him as he passed through the veil into the arms of our Lord.]**

20 And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

Questions and Answers

When a 4th estate seals his testimony in blood, is that his/her last lifetime for that earth? I didn't know that.

("When the sword of truth pierces the heart of the wicked they cannot deny. There is a literal component to this.") Like the "flaming sword" in Genesis 3:24 to keep the way of the tree of life? Would an angel have been there to use this sword upon king Noah? Is this sword used in the heavenly courts on high? What are the facts concerning the sword of truth? **[This is not the same as what you referred to in Genesis. The Sword of Truth is a spiritual sword that pierces the heart. It is wielded by God's servants and given to us with our spiritual armor. PR]**

Can you tell us what level of the 4th estate was Abinadi completing in suffering this horrific death? Is this kind of death required to complete a level of the 4th estate? Or was this uncommon? Is it the way of the Lord to be there behind the veil to take away the sting of death when these great prophets seal their testimonies? **[All 4th estate have an opportunity to seal their testimony with their blood. I cannot say anything about levels within the fourth estate. The Lord meets all His servants when they pass this life. PR]**

PR,

I remember reading about a vision that I believe I saw in your writings. Yet, I can't seem to find it again.

It was a vision/dream of a man eating himself. He ate his arm and then other arm, etc. pretty gruesome image, but very instructive as a metaphor of modern problems. Do you recall this and if so, where can I find it?

Thank you, **[I do not recall that. PR]**

I have thought much about the death by fire that Abinawdee suffered. To now know that he knew how he would die shows so much courage and love and devotion for the Lord. He had to feel all the pains of this execution? Do you know if this execution was pre planned prior to birth as part of Abinawdee's condescension? Do you know if such servants choose the method of their death? **[I don't know that. PR]**

I feel prompted to ask... Is the death of Abinawdee some format of a small scale atonement? Maybe that is really off there, I don't know... ok so obviously his death brought severe condemnation upon King Noah and his priests but was there any light or glory for this prophet involved as well? **[The suffering of the 4th estate is a preparation for a future event. In this lies a mystery. PR]**

Lastly, There is a "martyr doctrine" (for lack of a better phrase) in other faiths that, to me, is rather disturbing. It is interesting that almost all of the other faiths version of this doctrine is accomplished by inflicting death on one's self but also others as they complete the act.

Is this Satan's counterfeit to the Lord's version (if the Lords actually has a "martyr doctrine)? **[Satan always requires a death upon an innocent. They never kill themselves. The righteous servant submits to the will of His Father for the saving of souls. PR]**

Knowing that every word and testimony included in the B of M was preserved for us in the last days, what lesson do you believe is the greatest we can learn from Abinadi's death and sacrifice? I don't know how many will die for Christ in the winding up scenes, but I have heard so often that none of us will have to suffer as Abinadi did, that our job is to live for Christ. Why then is it important that we learn about his great suffering for Christ's sake and what have the many other numerous scriptures plainly told us about carrying our cross and being persecuted in the cause of righteousness? **[There is a pattern to the story of Abinadi and Alma that helps us understand how the Lord operates in saving His people. The Lord always leads out a remnant who chooses to worship Him over all things. It will take prayerful thought for you to learn what the Lord would have you take from this part of the BofM. PR]**

Alma Establishes the True Church – Mosiah 18:1-35

1 And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—

2 Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven. **[The power of Abinadi, a single individual with no title or position of authority, was accepted as a prophet of God by one of the priests of the King. Alma goes undercover to teach those who will listen to the words of this prophet Abinadi. Abinadi was not popular among the people. He was considered crazy and even possessed by an evil spirit. The Lord's Spirit was upon Alma as he was led to those who would believe.]**

3 And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

[Cottage meetings are common amongst those who seek Christ.]

4 And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon **[Mormon means, "God's gift." Joseph Smith said it meant "more good," which was likely the connotation of the word as it was used toward the end of the Book of Mormon.]**, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

5 Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water **[a spring]**, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.

6 And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

7 And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord. **[In other words he taught: turn your hearts to God, believe in the power of His sacrifice, and learn to hear His voice.]**

8 And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) **[The name “Mormon” adds meaning to the baptismal covenant of which they were about to partake.]** and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another’s burdens, that they may be light; **[Part of the purpose for establishing a church or gathering in Christ’s name.]**

9 Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life— **[Connected to the Sacramental promise to take His name upon us.]**

10 Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness **[Baptism of water is evidence to the Father that you have made this covenant.]** before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you? **[A promised increase in the Spirit or Holy Ghost that may be “poured” upon you. The word “pour” is a good description of the sensation of having a baptism of fire.]**

11 And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts. **[The clapping of hands is a universal sign of joy and part of the Nephite culture.]**

12 And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart. **[A sign of a humble servant, always asking the Lord for permission.]**

13 And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam **[Helam was instrumental in Alma gathering people to hear the words of Abinadi. Helam had been close to Abinadi.]** , I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world. **[A prayer of intention, which is the purpose for doing this.]**

14 And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit. **[We often get lost in the protocols of ordinances. The unconventional manner of Alma and Helam’s baptism show the beauty of how the Lord operates. All things are done according to the Spirit.]**

15 And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.

16 And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God. **[The Holy Ghost]**

17 And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church. **[The power and authority is the priesthood in action. Where did Alma receive this authority? Was it from the priests of King Noah? No. It was from the Lord Himself by means of the relationship that he had established with Him.]**

18 And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained **[set apart]** priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

19 And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets. **[Focused upon the Doctrine of Christ.]**

20 Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people. **[There has always been different opinions regarding the fringe doctrines of the scriptures. Even today there are many different opinions regarding subjects that can lead to contention. When Zion is established it will also be similar, but we will not focus on the differences for the Lord will set all knowledge straight when He comes.]**

21 And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another. **[The key to establishing Zion.]**

22 And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.

23 And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God. **[An important part of knowing God is to take time to be holy. To come to Him regularly with full purpose of heart.]**

24 And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support. **[In no manner are the authorities of the church to receive support for their housing, and sustenance.]**

25 And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together. **[This in many cases was not the Sabbath.]**

26 And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God. **[Again it is emphasized that the authorities of the church were not to depend upon the members, but to focus upon the Lord's graces. A very humbling position to be in.]**

27 And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he

should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

28 And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul. **[This was not a tithing or fast offering. It was a command to give to all according to their needs without treating anyone more or less than another.]**

Tithing is a separate offering that was historically used to help maintain the temple and its purposes. Today it is used in many cases to cover the costs of church facilities and functions. Tithes and Offerings are between you and the Lord and personal revelation should be sought in this regard.

29 And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

The beauty of the church (association of those who worship Christ) is that as we practice charity, we help others to grow into the knowledge of revelation, the gifts of the Spirit, and how to become like Christ. It is difficult to reach that alone.

30 And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever. **[considered a holy place to these people]**

31 And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king. **[was considered a wild land and different geographically]**

32 But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.

[There were whisperings among the people of Noah that the true believers were gathering in Mormon.]

33 And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them. **[It is not uncommon for a large institution, whether government or a church, to do all they can to destroy opposition.]**

34 And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness. **[they headed north/northwest.]**

35 And they were in number about four hundred and fifty souls. **[About the size of an average LDS ward.]**

Alma is a perfect example of a servant of the Lord with great faith. He was brought up in a place that had a particular culture and understanding concerning God. He strived to do his best to be honorable and do God's work. He excelled in his business and was considered an honest man. He was promoted to a priest over a certain district and had a good future among the people filled with honor, wealth, privileges, and God's favor as was taught. In his search for truth he came to hear the words of Abinadi and

his heart was pricked. He had a choice, does he remain in the boat or put his dedication to God above all things. He chose the latter and it cost him his entire world, and in the process saved his soul and was the means to bring salvation to numerous others. God knows who His servants are and places them in critical junctures to have an effect on those who seek Him.

Questions and Answers

Great post today! I just wanted to say that 450 is not a branch size, not even a very small ward. I've been all over. Branches I've been in have been less than 50. and 450 is from I've seen..not a SMALL ward. Anyway. Not sure on the averages worldwide. Been in Germany though and around the US. I'm being nitpicky but I wanted to share my thoughts on that in case its beneficial. **[Yes, thank you for the correction. PR]**

Did you see where the Waters of Mormon were located? **[Somewhere west of Tennessee. PR]**

I feel like I'm reading the scriptures for the first time, like seeing them through new eyes and I love it!

Thank you for the insights on this chapter. The sacrifices involved for anyone who seeks to find Christ are rarely appreciated. It is just like Joseph said:

“For a man to lay down his all, his character and reputation, his honor, and applause, his good name among men, his houses, his lands, his brothers and sisters, his wife and children, and even his own life also—counting all things but filth and dross for the excellency of the knowledge of God requires more than mere belief or supposition that he is doing the will of God; but actual knowledge, realizing that, when these sufferings are ended, he will enter into eternal rest, and be a partaker of the glory of God. Let us here observe, that a religion that does not require the sacrifice of all things never has power sufficient to produce the faith necessary unto life and salvation; for, from the first existence of man, the faith necessary unto the enjoyment of life and salvation never could be obtained without the sacrifice of all earthly things. It was through this sacrifice, and this only, that God has ordained that men should enjoy eternal life;

When a man has offered in sacrifice all that he has for the truth's sake, not even withholding his life, and believing before God that he has been called to make this sacrifice because he seeks to do his will, he does know, most assuredly, that God does and will accept his sacrifice and offering, and that he has not, nor will not seek his face in vain.” (Lectures on Faith-6)

The price seems high and even painful at times (especially when our family and friends view us as fallen or deceived, or having abandoned our faith) but as Joseph described, it is only a sacrifice of earthly things (who needs a good reputation anyway?) Such things cannot compare to the blessings that He keeps pouring down or the promises I now feel I can reach for.

I can see so much of this happening now, as some are forced to worship in secret for fear of being cast out or condemned. And we are all faced with the same dilemma as Alma, do we choose to stay in the boat or put our dedication to God above everything else?

Thank you for this reminder and motivation. I needed this today.

The king gave it the name of Mormon, do you know what Mormon means? Just curious if that ever came up in your conversation with the Lord. How did Alma know how to organize the church? He must've been taught by the Lord or translated beings...or did they have it but somehow lost it because of king Noah ? **[The meaning of the name is "God's gift." He received it by revelation. PR]**

Is your comment about Abinadi not remaining in the boat an allusion to some of the church's counsel to stay in the boat, or is that purely coincidental? **[It's a good visual to explain my point. I imagine the Apostles on the Sea of Galilee when the storm was raging. Peter was the only one who asked permission to come to the Lord and risk the safety of the boat. Who was the Lord more pleased with? For those stuck in unbelief, it is like taking haven in the safety of the boat. I was not making a veiled comment regarding LDS church counsel. PR]**

I love this comment:

The beauty of the church (association of those who worship Christ) is that as we practice charity, we help others to grow into the knowledge of revelation, the gifts of the Spirit, and how to become like Christ. It is difficult to reach that alone.

I have been associating with many different people from various faith backgrounds and have found what I imagine are the seeds of Zion...unity despite differences. So I want to ask, do you know what the first Zion will look like with who is there and what religion their faith grew from? Also is this first gathering of Zion in a specific place like where the people of Alma removes themselves to? I just can't help but see myself in a similar position as these faithful saints who get out of the boat and like Peter leave my nets behind and follow Jesus. **[First Zion will be a mix; however, the New Jerusalem will be predominantly those of the Remnant of Jacob, which are not LDS. PR].**

Alma's priesthood: King Noah's father had the formal priesthood I thought. Noah would have likely had it conferred upon him. Good chance others who were more righteous than Noah had it conferred upon them as well. That's always been my assumption. But coming straight from the Lord is certainly possible? **[To be ordained or have priesthood "conferred" is no guarantee of priesthood as some think. In most cases it is a formal pronouncement that the person has the rite to perform priesthood functions in the church. It in no way guarantees that God will honor what they do. True priesthood is associated with the level of relationship we establish with the divine. PR]**

Thank you for the commentary you included at the end! I had prayed and asked the Lord about staying in the boat once. He replied and asked if the strait and narrow path and the tree of life were on land or at sea?
My husband and I quietly exited the boat.

It says that Alma repented of his sins and iniquities, but you say he was a man of faith and honor, so he wasn't following the example of the wicked priests then? He was

definitely brave to speak up in defense of Abinadi, and to teach the people. When the time comes is this how we will escape the calamities ? We will have an Alma to get us out, I always thought it would come from within the church, like the Prophet, you give us a lot to consider or to ponder, and take to the Lord. **[Alma turned toward God and abandoned his unbeliefs (iniquities). He was not complicit with their sexual abominations and had only been a priest for a short time. PR]**

[First Zion will be a mix; however, the New Jerusalem will be prominently those of the Remnant of Jacob, which are not LDS. PR]

Where will the worthy people of Ephraim be if not at New Jerusalem? **[I'm talking about those who build it. The righteous remnant of Ephraim will fill her stakes. PR]**

3 Nephi 11 explains the doctrine of Jesus and that we should not declare more or less than: "Repent, be baptized and become as a little child." In vs 32 he also says "Repent and believe in me"... and part of the doctrine is also that if we do not believe in Him and are not baptized we will be damned. That's it. That the doctrine that we are told not to declare more or less of.

Yet elsewhere all book of Mormon prophets and even Jesus explain more things are involved in the doctrine of Jesus..

Things like mourn with those who mourn, impart of your substance, act in no hypocrisy, confess your sins (to who? They didn't have bishops back then... It never says who), and many other things are offered as part of the doctrine.

I believe these ARE part of the doctrine. However, I guess my question is this: why did Jesus oversimplify what His doctrine was and pretty much command the people to not declare more or less than that simpleness when he knew there was so much more to it than the simple doctrine He just taught? **[These are stages to our progression. The Doctrine of Christ leads us to Eternal Life. The Beatitudes lead us to a witness in the flesh and a fullness of the Everlasting Covenant. The Sermon on the Mount are instructions for His Servants. His servants are not to teach additional doctrines required to come unto Him; meaning, to add restrictions and qualifications to receive baptism and the Holy Ghost. PR]** And why add the penalty of damnation if one was to go beyond the simple doctrine of repent, baptism and become as a little child? **[If we don't teach His doctrine as it was given, we become a tool of the Adversary in preventing others from coming to Him. We are then in Satan's power, which is damnation to the soul. PR]**

"The offices of priesthood are not in any way required for priesthood"

Priesthood is our level of relationship with the Lord, so it confuses a lot of people including myself as to why Joseph Smith called Melchizedek preisthood a church office.... why is being ordained an Elder called "Melchizedek presthood"? Isn't Melchizedek a 4th estate priesthood? **[These are names assigned to the different priesthoods and the offices contained therein. Just names. To the Lord it is all the same priesthood with different levels of authority. PR]**

This chapter is just what I needed to read today. Thanks so much.

I don't understand why the names are used though. In relation to your understanding of priesthood, what's the priesthood mentioned in D&C 84? It says it was handed down from Adam to Moses (priesthood is handed down?), then the higher priesthood was removed when Moses died, and didn't return until John the Baptist....**[Each generation is administered by a dispensational head who restores the knowledge regarding how to access a relationship with the Lord. The degrees of access were given names by Joseph Smith. PR]** is this higher priesthood a prophet who sees the Lord? Who has the Gift of the Holy Ghost? (Like John the Baptist)... A higher estate servant who teaches to seek the face of God? The mysteries? **[Aaronic prepares one to receive the Holy Ghost, according to the priesthood of Aaron given to Moses because the people would not live up to their privileges. Melchizedek, if one is worthy of it, will allow them to have a personal relationship with God and act as a servant. There are more priesthoods than these, but in this life these are what we hope to acquire. PR]**

D&C 84 25-27

25 Therefore, he took a Moses out of their midst, and the Holy Priesthood also;

26 And the lesser priesthood continued, which priesthood holdeth the key of the ministering of angels and the preparatory gospel;

27 Which a gospel is the gospel of repentance and of baptism, and the remission of sins, and the law of carnal commandments, which the Lord in his wrath caused to continue with the house of Aaron among the children of Israel until John, whom God raised up, being filled with the Holy Ghost from his mother's womb.

Thanks, that makes a lot of sense! I have believed the church office's and callings were originally preparatory to help those willing aspire to true priesthood. But much has changed since the early church, for example Elders (Melchizedek calling... or aspiration) performed traveling missionary work and had a School of the Prophets.

By definition the church including all temple ordinances/Endowment seem Aaronic-(preparatory gospel, outward ordinances, ministering of angels)... is it all Aaronic? Or is the Endowment Melchizedek in nature? **[Yes, the Endowment is Melchizedek by nature, but not administered by the same priesthood as Moses. PR]**

Is it true that priesthood in D&C 84 is the knowledge of coming to God? **[Yes, that is its entire purpose. PR]**

There's a few different ideas and misinterpretations for modern day priesthood- People think either 1) We have Melchizedek priesthood by virtue of a church calling... 2) the church is preparatory for the real thing, it being a telestial structure.... 3) it's preparatory but condemned, so it's a lower law like Moses gave the Israelites.... or 4) the church had Melchizedek priesthood but lost it (even though it was condemned early on).

[The power and authority is the priesthood in action. Where did Alma receive this authority? Was it from the priests of King Noah? No. It was from the Lord Himself by means of the relationship that he had established with Him.]

Alma doesn't receive his Second Comforter and Calling & Election until chapter 26. I assume that after fleeing King Noah and during his repentance, he received the Baptism of Fire and the Gift of the Holy Ghost. Is this the authority he is acting under to be able

to baptize and organize a church? Or did he receive more at the Waters of Mormon? **[Alma was called before the foundation of the world to do this work (Alma 13). His authority came by means of a gradual awakening to that relationship with the Lord. After much prayer and following personal revelation he was led to the Waters of Mormon where he was given the specific authority to baptize. Alma came to know the Lord in increments, as he was obedient to the revelations he received. Eventually, he received a fullness in this life and fulfilled the mission for which he was sent. PR]**

Vs 13: “ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead”

This is the second time I have recently come across the instruction that after we are baptized, we should seek to serve the Lord (many times by following promptings to serve others) as the next step, which will eventually lead us to the baptism of fire.

Is this correct? **[Yes, to be a servant of the Lord is to seek the salvation of His children. This is part of the Everlasting Covenant, and is made when we are baptized with water. It is consummated when we receive the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost. PR]**

Alma

The Rise of Nehor – Alma 1:1-33

1 Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare **[“Fought a good fight.” An expression even the Nephites used.],** walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made. **[Laws are only just if they are “acknowledged by the people.”]**

2 And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

3 And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people. **[This was a popular philosophy of the Nephites that the gifted, skilled, and talented should be expected to have more in life. This new idea extended to those in ecclesiastical authority.]**

4 And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life. **[Today, a popular theology is that all roads**

lead to Eternal Life. Regardless of your religion, all men are equal with God and will be saved. We must simply love another and accept who we are unconditionally. Does that sound familiar? It is a damnable doctrine which stifles faith.]

5 And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money. **[It is a popular teaching that you need to do nothing but be happy. Many Christian sects today teach such things and their preachers become wealthy in the process. Such priestcraft is a sign that they are on a false path.]**

What is “man’s search for happiness?” What does it mean to be happy? I see it as being in good spirits as a result of a good life. Is that wrong? I believe it is more the means by which we achieve happiness that can bring us to God or to Satan. When achieving happiness is the primary purpose, we can be brought into the chains of the Adversary as we seek the mirage of the carnal world. When we exercise faith unto repentance, keeping the commandments of God, we have happiness with the hope of salvation and Eternal Life. We strengthen the bonds of love between ourselves and our families, community, and the world. This brings great happiness. But, when we are sick or afflicted are we truly happy? Happiness is fleeting and more of a temporal sensation. Joy is what we experience on a spiritual level. It transcends time and encompasses charity and truth. A “fullness of joy” is to have all truth before us.

6 And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching. **[Is it a sin to wear costly apparel? Jesus had some nice clothes, but not kingly or extravagant. Why would this be mentioned? Our physical accompaniments often reflect our inner pride. The clothes we wear, our vehicles, homes, and many other things are to be carefully considered. Ultimately, it should be a personal topic one councils with the Lord.]**

7 And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God. **[With the internet it is easy to watch many debates between various ideologies. It is not uncommon to see certain sides become angry and agitated to the level of using insults to gain the upper hand. If they are angry enough, because they feel their pride is hurt, they may physically attack the other party.]**

8 Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage. **[The man was a hero to many of the Nephites.]**

9 Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. **[It was common for well dressed men to carry a sword in the Nephite culture.]** Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

10 And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

11 And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pled for himself with much boldness.

12 But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction. **[Alma in his wisdom sees that this was more than an unfair duel to the death that Nehor imposed upon Gideon, but that he was using violence to impose his priestcraft upon the people. It was not a fair fight and the people witnessed this to Alma, therefore Nehor was guilty of his crime.]**

13 And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance. **[Capital punishment was the law among the Nephites. Today, such things are considered archaic and uncivilized. How do you think criminal people respond when the only punishment to expect is imprisonment or a fine?]**

14 Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law. **[All things must be in accordance to the laws of the land. Therefore, we must abide by how such crimes are punished in today's society.]**

15 And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti **[This place was used to name a city in San Pete County, Utah, where a LDS temple stands today.]**, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious **[humiliating]** death. **[I have not seen this. I will need to ask the Lord more about this event.]**

What is the difference between the teachings of Nehor and Sherum? Sherum taught that there would be no Christ, that such doctrine only subjugates the people and we should be free according to the flesh (Jacob 7). Nehor taught that all are saved and that priests should be rewarded for their work, that all people should strive for fame and fortune as a purpose in life. Both philosophies exist today and are damning doctrines. They come in many nuances and shades of grey.

Here I will add something the Lord showed me since posting this chapter: I saw a marketplace with many people outdoors. Nehor had black hair and deep blue eyes. A very charismatic presence. He wore mostly black with a light shirt, wearing gold chains and pendants over his clothing. I saw that there was a certain attire the men wore, which was considered more dignified. The coat was worn over the shirt without long sleeves. Some of them had a short collar. It was spring, so I think they wouldn't be like that in the winter. I noticed Nehor's clothing had small white circle designs on the front. Nehor looked to maybe be in his late thirties in age. He was a

large man and wore a sword with golden ornaments attached to the hilt. Many men wore their sword when out in public that I could see.

I saw Gideon, an older man with grey hair, perhaps in his late sixties, a little stooped over from age. Both Gideon and Nehor were larger than your average men. Gideon was with a group of people when he was confronted by Nehor.

Nehor attempted to use Gideon as a conversation to make his point publicly regarding his personal beliefs. Gideon stood his ground and embarrassed Nehor saying something to the effect, “You are like the tall grass that will be cut down and forgotten. Your words are not of God!” Nehor then drew his sword and threatened Gideon. After blocking a couple of hard blows from Nehor he was run through by the sword. The people took Nehor to Alma where Nehor attempted to claim legal right for the duel, but too many witnessed against him. He had murdered an honorable and loved man of many of the people.

I saw that he was taken to the Hill Manti, which the Lord said translates as “justice,” and was tied to a pole. The sentence was that he was to be there and people could come and speak their last words, but could not touch him. Some would spit upon him as he stood there. He eventually confessed his sins before asking the guard to carry out the sentence, which was to cut his throat upon the guilty’s request. It truly was an ignominious death.

16 Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor. **[Society in general rewards those who speak things that appeal to other’s pride.]**

17 Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief. **[An interesting law. They could preach anything as long as it was their true belief, but if it was proved to be a deception were punished under the law. That certainly doesn’t apply today.]**

18 And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

19 But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

20 Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.

“They afflicted them with all manner of words.” – the power of a word used against one’s opponent. In today’s society to be branded racist, phobic, misogynist, or many other names is enough to cause people to recoil and avoid confrontation and to stand against evil. Christians often choose to avoid contention because of the fear of words, and so they remain silent. What percentage of those who are defamed are truly the awful monsters

they are said to be? It is a tactic of the adversary to shame people into accepting dark for light, and to seek peace for the sake of smiles, other than truth for the sake of a fist.

21 Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute **[assault or discriminate]** those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

22 Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.

23 Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.

24 For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them. **[The church was seen as oppressive to those who left it.]**

25 Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them. **[They did not retaliate by responding in a like manner.]**

Christians today tend to be fairly patient in dealing with persecution. How does God expect the righteous to handle such things? We often refer to the Sermon on the Mount, which teaches a pacifist approach. When we get to those chapters I will express my thoughts in detail. The answer to us is to follow the Spirit. I will defend myself and my family, but not seek contention and violence.

26 And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength. **[A Zion society requires all to equally care for themselves, unless you are not capable. It doesn't mean we all have the same square footage of house, or the same possessions, but that all have equal opportunity and expectations to contribute to Zion. These Nephites were not even near a Zion society, but closer to living it than we are today. When Zion is established it will be because of priesthood power, meaning that the baptism of fire will rest upon the city as both a spiritual cleansing and protection.]**

27 And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, **[This was the extent of their tithes and offerings. The temple was already built and self-sustaining.]** to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

28 And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.

29 And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth. **[Many in the church used a co-op structure to provide for themselves.]**

30 And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

[The people of Nephi did not have taxes or non profit charitable organizations. The church was the primary means to distribute welfare to those in need. Similar to how it was in early America, but the Nephites did a better job of it.]

31 And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

There are many that like to compare the law of consecration to communism (All property and wealth is government owned and distributed according to the people's needs). Communism is a forced participation governmental system. The Nephites operated under a non-compulsory system of communal living. This is the difference.

32 For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries **[magic, astrology, and incantations]**, and in idolatry **[pleasure seeking, and objects of attraction]** or idleness, and in babblings **[gossip]**, and in envyings and strife **[business and political strategies to gain wealth and favor]**; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible. **[Such activities are the carnal man and have always existed since the beginning.]**

33 And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering **[punished]** according to that which he had done, they became more still **[discrete]**, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

How quickly the people of Nephi slipped into wickedness and division. It usually doesn't take more than a generation for this to occur, and then it is simply a matter of ripening in wickedness. America has followed a similar path. For many years the American people remained fairly obedient to the commandments, but we saw an increase in all the same wickedness that Alma describes. It begins around the turn of the twentieth century, escalates in the 1960s, and has steadily risen to where we are today. In the

chapters leading up to the great destructions we will see how the Nephites fell as their society declined and became entrenched with secret combinations.

Questions and Answers

I haven't understood why people follow guidance of a random person who writes astrology columns.. Books etc. But do you know if there is any truth characteristics attributed to birth time of year? **[I was told it is not of Him. There are occasions when the stars herald the coming of a servant, but astrology today is not the same thing used by Abraham. PR]**

Thank you for the explanation on compulsory vs non-compulsory contributions! And for the comparison of the Nephite's arrangement to a co-op. It has invited my pondering! Today I've been thinking of the flooding that is happening in the bread basket States. Those who produce so much barely subsist and now face certain ruin. Are those floods going to impact our food supply as severely as folks are saying? Is this the beginning of higher prices and lower supply? **[I don't know that specifically.PR]**

Would we be wise to learn from the industry of the righteous Nephites in this chapter and give up some useless time wasters in favor of producing food on our own? **[It would seem wise. PR]**

Law of consecration is actually fairly easy. You build up the people bit by bit until everyone has for example, 10 chickens, 2 cows, a horse, 2 pigs and 5 goats. Then houses are built according to family size. Similar transportation, clothing. Everyone brings a skill or talent or profession from dentistry to knitting socks. The community counts on 15% to 25% of the people to be unable to provide or contribute... so those are taken care of.

I've never understood why it fails. Seems strait forward. Even easier if it's done with currency instead of chickens and goats. Just give your money every week and everyone receives according to their needs. Needs are established and agreed upon at the beginning by the group.

Sounds easy but I have a friend who tried to do this with a few families for over a year or whatever... he said it was great for a few months but ended disastrously. So fascinating! **[The main thing that prevents a communal system from working is pride. Contention concerning how things are to be done, both physically and spiritually. Without an abundance of charity it is doomed. PR]**

If we found ourselves in a situation where we needed to share communally but not everyone had the baptism of fire (or willingness to even talk to God about their pride), do you have advice on how to help it work?

Is it possible to have some peace if people can understand that once something is given by them, it is now out of their stewardship and others can use it how they need to, which agency should be respected? **[When the New Jerusalem is established it will have an inner and outer city. The inner city will be those who abide in the**

light of Christ. The outer city will benefit from its protection, but are those who have not yet repented fully yet are peaceful. The angels of God will determine this. PR

(“ When the New Jerusalem is established it will have an inner and outer city. “) Can you give anymore details about the functioning of the New Jerusalem? Will the area outside the city be farmed for food? Will any of the modern conveniences of today be used? Or will it be more like how people lived in 1800’s? What will the structure of government be ? Will there be a free flow of visitors from the heavenly realms? Will the temple ceremonies be changed? Or will they remain mostly the same? **[I haven’t seen as much of the New Jerusalem as First Zion. The outer area of the city is where the farming is done and both the righteous and those repenting will commingle. I can’t say much about its economy or structure because I haven’t asked about that. It will have all the same things as First Zion in many respects. The book, A Witness of the End of Times, has many notes about that. PR]**

In the End of Times book you mention ” I saw myself preaching repentance, baptising, giving the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands, and bringing them to safety, either by guiding them or taking them directly to Zion” I am so grateful to you for all you are teaching! I have a few questions ...

1. Will the New Jerusalem be terrestrial in glory from day one or will that glory be applied to the city after the Saviors return? **[It will not be terrestrial until Christ helps the city to ascend. Until then it will be protected like the children of Israel as they traveled to the promised land. However, it will have more of an outpouring of the Gifts of the Spirit than any place since the City of Salem before it was translated. PR]**

2. Is the requirement to enter into those gates the fact that you have received the Gift of the Holy Ghost and entered your 3rd estate, or is it that you have both been baptised AND received the Gift of the Holy Ghost – do you have to be baptised to enter there as well? **[You must be clean, which requires the baptism of fire. I don’t know how that will be regulated. Most of the people that gather to Zion will live around the perimeter of the city. PR]**

4. How do you process the fact that we are strictly taught you must be a baptised (member of the LDS church) to qualify for the Gift, when the scriptures teach something else? This is a personal question as I have come to conclude myself that I am OK with discrepancies for various reasons. I would love to know your thoughts particularly what you felt when you were discovering all this information for the first time? **[Everything was new and shocking for me. One of the foremost requirements to know Him is to trust in Him and not the arm of flesh. There is much more going on in this big world to prepare for His coming than what is happening in SLC, Utah. PR]**

In your book “A Witness of the End Times” when you translocate you wrote, (“ . I then handed her a passport, then some money, then some food, and then some water in a container. I left her without a word.”) . Are these things just provided by the spirit instantly as you gave them to the woman or are they given to you before you translocate?

I've always wondered about this as it happened in some of your other translocations, Also, thank you so much for sharing the added content the Lord showed you, It just makes the Book of Mormon come to life like I'm there seeing it myself, I am so excited each day to read the next chapter you post. Thank you so much! **[It is much like the fishes and the loaves. As I think it in my mind it becomes tangible and I was able to provide assistance. Those are incredible experiences. I'm glad this BofM project is helping. PR]**

Thank you so much, that's excellent because I don't know anything about what's happening in SLC, I live in Australia, lol so if you're ever inclined to ask about what's going to happen over here towards the end, then that would be VERY interesting to us! **[You will have points of gathering where the Lord will lead you. At the right time you will be brought to Zion. PR]**

[You will have points of gathering where the Lord will lead you. At the right time you will be brought to Zion. PR]

Does the same apply to Europe? For those of us living in other parts of the world, how will the gathering to Zion happen? After the collapse and without infrastructure in place, how are we going to cross the ocean? Are we going to have to build boats like Nephi and brother of Jared? Also it seems like most of the scenarios in the Book of Mormon are parallels of what will happen in America. Will Europe have it as bad? **[The entire world will have it bad. Europe will be highly affected by the rise of the Kingdom of the Beast, and there will be intense persecution of Christians before the end. What will occur there will be the same as all places throughout the world. The righteous will gather, praying day and night for deliverance. The Lord will send His Gatherers, which will bring them to Zion. How? Using the powers of God which include translocation, and other means. The best we can do is stand in holy places. See the following scriptures: 2 Nephi 21:10-16 (refer to the BofM Thoughts for my commentary.), Joseph Smith-Matthew 1:27, the "eagles are the Gatherers. PR]**

Alma seemed quite set on executing Nehor for his crime. Was there more to this than just setting an example? Is there a doctrinal principle behind this? **[Alma did not condemn Nehor to set an example. It was according to the law of his people. PR]**

When you mentioned the City of Salem being translated, it occurred to me, just as we will have Zion in the New World and New Jerusalem in the Old World, the City of Enoch was established in the New World, and the City of Salem was established in the Old World. It seems, then, that both of these translated cities will return to the earth after Christ returns. **[Only after the earth has been changed to its resurrected glory. PR]**

Battle of Amlici – Alma 2:1-38

1 And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law— **[The Order of Nehor.]**

2 Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be a king over the people. **[Promises of power and money, to overthrow the power of the Church among the people.]**

3 Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people. **[There were more against the Order of Nehor than for it.]**

4 Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

5 And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another. **[Today, Americans are in a great debate as to what direction to take our country.]**

6 And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges. **[The Nephite form of ballot voting.]**

7 And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.

8 Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor. **[The voting process is under great duress in America today. It has become the standard for the losing side to not accept the outcome of an election. Eventually such division can lead to war.]**

9 And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

10 Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him. **[This is a coup against the current government of the Nephites.]**

11 Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlicites, being called Amlicites; and the remainder were called Nephites, or the people of God.

12 Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind. **[A civil war only a few years after going from a monarchy to a democracy.]**

13 And thus they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers. **[They did not have a large standing army before this day.]**

14 And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their brethren.

15 And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, **[The hill's name means "high point" or where you can see all.]** which was east of the river Sidon, **[Mississippi River]** which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.

16 Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.

17 And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.

18 Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to flee before them.

19 And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

20 And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

21 And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

22 Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

23 And it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

24 Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course **[which leads towards]** of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them; **[Allied with their enemy. This would be similar to having a faction of America making allies with a country like China or Russia to overthrow the United States.]**

25 And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children be slain. **[Their armies had been led out of their cities and from the heart of their land leaving them vulnerable for the enemy to take occupation.]**

26 And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

27 And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

28 Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

29 And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another. **[As was the desire of Amlici.]**

30 And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

31 Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword. **[Alma was skilled with the sword, but the Lord did strengthen him when it appeared he would lose.]**

32 And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma. **[It was the custom of battle to have the leaders fight each other.]**

33 But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.

34 And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.

35 And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.

36 And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.

37 Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts [“place of death”]; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

38 And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

I find the geography of these lands of Zarahemla interesting. They extend from Missouri, Illinois, and Iowa, and then the wilderness goes North and West to the land Hermounts. I will spend more time on this in coming chapters.

From my personal journal:

How did the Nephite culture prepare soldiers? This was interesting to me to see. For over a hundred years the culture of the Nephites had annual games where they would compete in various events that required skill with the sword, bow and arrows, spear, wrestling, and other warlike preparations. It was very popular among the people. In addition to this, each male was required to join the Nephite army for a year during their early twenties to protect the kingdom and learn the methodology of Nephite battle and war preparations.

Each young man would learn to make his own battle armor and accompaniments. I saw the preparation of swords, using the iron ore mixed with other ingredients to create something they called ziff. This was a type of steel that could be pounded into swords or spearheads. It would be pounded out thin and shaped, usually not more than 24 inches or less in length.

I saw the preparation of armor, which was usually made from thick cut hard rawhide, about 2X3 inch in size, sewn together to cover the body and worn over the head and neck in a helmet of sorts. Some would have similar sized metal plates worn over certain areas for additional protection. They wore colored scarves to identify their companies. A tall narrow banner on a pole would identify the ranks they would follow. I thought it was interesting that Alma wore a light blue scarf and his banner was the same color with what looked like a white bird image on it. I wondered if this was the sign of the dove or an eagle. I'm not sure. Many of the soldiers took great pride in their armor, often pressing images and words into the leather, which was made from heavy hide, probably from a larger animal. I noticed that the Nephite army was often recognized by this manner of armor, the sewn together small and hard rawhide plates.

The Lamanites wore less armor if any. They often painted black or white on their skin and covered themselves with animal skins. Their use of bow and arrow, and cimeter clubs was more common.

I watched as they battled on an open area on the west side of the river. The soldiers were spread out over many miles. It was bloody and hard to watch, as grown men cried and moaned. I haven't seen much of this even in the movies. I don't like to watch such things. I felt sorry for the Lamanites. They were not as impressive to look upon, not exactly specimens of great physical intimidation. The Nephites had imposing battle armor and sword, resembling something between a Babylonian and Samurai warrior, I don't know. I'm not sure I'm describing it very well. Their armor often looked red, bathed in the blood of the Lamanites. The armor made the Nephites look more foreboding to their enemy.

I saw how when they crossed from the east to the west side of the river they were racing to get to the other side. The Lamanites, who were far more numerous, were crossing further north on the river and another group just south of the Nephites, I think attempting to surround them.

After Amlici was defeated and the Lamanite king retreated, the Lamanite army which was north of them lost their courage. These soldiers tried to flee, but were chased by the Nephites and many were lost in the land of the Hermounts.

Questions and Answers

(“Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.”) Was Amlici a fourth Estate dark being sent by Satan, with a mission to cause contention to overthrow the church? Does Satan have the power to determine when 4th Estate dark spirits come upon the earth? **[No, he was second estate. PR]** Does Satan have the power to see future events and can then send his dark spirits to try to thwart the plans of the Lord upon the earth at critical times in our future events? **[No, there is no thwarting God’s plans, and Satan knows it. He knows how all this will end and is eagerly awaiting its outcome. His kingdom is secure in the realm of Outer Darkness. PR]** Was it just a coincidence that the Amlicites ran into the Lamanites already to go to war? **[No, they had sent an envoy to the Lamanites to ally with them to overthrow the Nephite kingdom. PR]** Could it be a plot by Satan to have the Amlicites and Lamanites join together to defeat the Nephites? Is this life like a game of chess between the Lord and Satan? Satan always trying to cause as many problems to delay the inevitable victory of the Lord? **[It is a battlefield of souls, where Satan attempts to expand his dominion by bringing as many to him as possible. The Lord does the same for different purposes. God desires us to have His love, joy and glory. Satan seeks His own. PR]**

(“ Many of the soldiers took great pride in their armor, often pressing images and words into the leather, which was made from heavy hide, probably from a larger animal.”) Was the buffalo one of the sources of thick hide and meat for the people upon this land in that time period? I was just thinking if the buffalo was here like it was in the 1700’s it could be a rich source of food and clothing like it was for the Indians. **[Yes, buffalo was a central part of their lives. Also, the other animals. The hides used would likely be buffalo, elk, or other larger animals. PR]**

I posted some additional information today on yesterday’s post regarding Nehor and Gideon. I am in awe of the history. PR

Since there were only 3 Nephi kings after joining with the Mulekites, (Mosiah, Benjamin, Mosiah) before disbanding the monarchy and establishing a democracy, I’ve wondered if Amlici was a descendant of the Mulekite monarchy and maybe thought

since the Nephites were giving up the monarchy it was his by right. Is this something that came up when you were learning about this episode. Thanks. **[I don't know anything about that. PR]**

There are so many deep thoughts and insights in this chapter! Thank you, PR. I see many parallels here between not only what is occurring in America today, but also in how the "war" in our pre-earth life began.

For those who seek for hints on the timing of events to come, there are great hints here in this chapter as to when events in America will unfold.

"So likewise ye, when ye shall see all these things, know that it is near, even at the doors."

How did they cross the river? Was it any larger or wider than it is today? **[Good question. I had to rethink my answer on this. I didn't see boats, but perhaps it was because I was focusing on watching the Nephites cross. I didn't know how the Amlicites or Lamanites crossed for sure. I assumed they floated. However what I saw with the Nephites looked like wading up to their waists, so they would be walking. I'm not sure how this is possible if the Mississippi is as it is today. PR]**

"The voting process is under great duress in America today. It has become the standard for the losing side to not accept the outcome of an election. Eventually such division can lead to war."

This seems like a hint. 😊

Every election seems to bring more vitriol. It's as if somewhere in me I have this knowing that the 2020 election will be difficult in some way, even if it is just difficult to witness the seething and anger. (I have grown to dislike Presidential election years as we are pelted and hounded from all sides by propaganda and political robo-calls that will not stop.)

We know there is election rigging. Whether it is people voting multiple times or the machines switching votes, it seems something is happening. Is the outcome of an election what finally sparks civil war? Or is it one of many issues that, together with economic issues, contributes to the flare-up of civil war? **[Many issues will lead to this. PR]**

I find it interesting that it mentions the names of the spies that Alma sent out:

"Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites."

We don't see names in the BOM unless they're important to mention, these men must've been heroes.

Also, you said that they crossed the river using some sort of floating device, so were they not on horses? Did they fight on foot? I can't imagine how they would cross horses?

When Captain Moroni fought the Zoramites, His army came prepared with armors, and the Lamanites and Zoramites were astonished to see the Nephites this prepared, and they were fearful because of the armor and shields. They were not as prepared, in fact it says that the Lamanites wore very little clothes. **[I did not see horses like what we**

have today. PR]

19 And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing.

Was this more of an advanced type of armor than the kind that Alma and his army wore? Head-plates, breastplates. **[Alma's army had armor, but it becomes more sophisticated with time. PR]**

And why wouldn't the Lamanites and Zoramites wear an armor seeing that it was not a new thing?

Thanks!

This is what I understand when I read about the battle, that the river must've been not very deep, or even as wide as it is now, do you think that maybe after all the destruction that happened to this continent when Christ was crucified the rivers just as the land changed drastically? **[That is possible. They could not have walked across as it is now. PR]**

Many Died – Alma 3:1-27

1 And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children. **[The challenge of burying their dead, the mass graves, would have been a difficult undertaking. Many of the Nephites also suffered from battle wounds, including Alma. They could not return to their families until they buried the dead. Many of the Lamanite bodies were left or were thrown into the river.]**

2 Now many women and children had been slain with the sword **[in large group executions using Nephite swords]**, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men. **[The level of evil amongst the blood thirsty Lamanites.]**

3 And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

4 And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites. **[I wonder if some were accidentally slain by the Lamanites during battle. Their armor was similar to Nephites.]**

5 Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor **[Which was not much,**

usually a small plate over the chest.], which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

6 And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men. **[It was the same skin color as modern Native Americans.]**

7 And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

8 And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

9 And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed. **[a dominant gene]**

10 Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

11 And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth. **[The Nephites, although distinguished by their skin color, from this time forth were more a political faction. Now that the Amlicites had joined with the Lamanites it was more difficult to set them apart.]**

12 And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

13 Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

14 Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

15 And again: I will set a mark upon him that minglenth his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

16 And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

17 And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

18 Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them. **[They were proud of their rebellion.]**

19 Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

“Curse” is another word for judgment of God. The Lord makes it clear that it is brought upon by ourselves, not Him. The Lord’s judges righteously,

which means He separates and organizes according to the laws that are truthful. It's not that he loves one more than another, but that we must be divided according to the glory and intelligence which we possess. Those who keep His commandments in this life are given particular blessings in that course.

It's important to understand that often innocent people die, notwithstanding they keep the commandments. In the eternal view of this mortality, they see their suffering and death as a great blessing and sacrifice. Whether we live or die is usually dependent upon what we are called to perform in this life.

20 Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites. **[north east of Zarahemla and the river Sidon]**

21 And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

22 Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;

23 But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.

24 And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.

25 Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

26 And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

27 For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth **[chooses]** to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth **[justice of God]**. And thus endeth the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

Questions and Answers

PR, thanks again for these chapter by chapter insights! I wish you would do this for all the scriptures. 😊 It's been a fantastic journey so far.

God “separates and organizes according to the laws that are truthful. It's not that he loves one more than another, but that we must be divided according to the glory and intelligence which we possess. Those who keep His commandments in this life are given particular blessings in that course.”

[Edit. Unfortunately, I cannot post any names of institutions, people, or links. Thank you. PR]

That word “curse” in regards to skin color and the Book of Mormon viewpoint has been troubling to me my whole life but especially now as I have 4 children born in Ethiopia. Their patriarchal blessings suggest they are of royal descent (tribe of Judah) and aren't

in the least cursed. We understand this but as a church culture people still tease that they are cursed. Ugh. So, is your take that skin color curse is useful in our day? And what use? To me it is just divisive which is not of the Lord. All of the bloodline stuff seems so racist and I have such a hard time reconciling it all with my heart and head. **[The seed of Cain was destroyed in the flood and were actually white in skin color, but dark as night in spirit. The House of Israel is now spread throughout the world, even sprinkled into Africa. The Times of the Gentiles is where all races are given the blessings of the Everlasting Covenant. All races who are without the everlasting covenant are cursed, and yet there are islands of blessed among all people as well. Interesting how the Lamanites were more blessed than the Nephites in the end. When Zion is restored it will be these remnant of Jacob which shall do this. PR]**

(“ according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.”) I have a close relative who says that his grandfather who is dead (who was not religious in this life but was a good man as far as I know) is teaching him about heaven and all things regarding his life in this world. He says that his grandfather claims to be an angel who welcomes people into heaven and helps them to adjust. My relative says he feels great love from him, so he believes him and what he says. My problem is he teaches things I know to be false. That God is an unknowable being and that the LDS church is false and Joseph Smith is a false prophet. He has stopped believing in his religion he has followed throughout his life, I have tried to tell him it's a familiar spirit and he really doesn't know who he is talking to. That he should be cautious. Even if it was his grandfather he never was religious in this life and is just telling him his earthly feelings. Do you have any ideas of how I can help this relative? He is angry with me for not believing that this spirit is his grandfather. His grandfather is not related to me on my side of the family, He lives in Germany now so I only talk to him on the phone. If I tried to cast this spirit away, because he believes him, he would just come back. I have thought and prayed about this. I felt I should ask you as you have lots of experience in the heavenly realms and what goes on. Do you have any thoughts on this matter at all? Is there anything I can do at all or just let things run its course and hope the truth is revealed to him through my prayers on his behalf?

Thank you for mentioning the river Sidon is the Mississippi. I had that thought a couple years ago but never let myself fully believe it was right. Sigh. How the Lord stays so patient with me I will never know!

It does sound like a familiar spirit. He could ask the angel to tell him what he knows about Jesus. If he can't bear testimony of Him as the only light and way, it's a clear indicator that the spirit is dark. But if your relative does not have a truthful heart it will not make any difference. Keep praying. PR

Alma Leaves to Preach – Alma 4:1-20

1 Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;

2 But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites. **[famine]**

3 And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

[Humility in the wake of hardship often brings people to repentance.]

4 And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand **[stewardship]** of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.

5 And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

6 And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel. **[Only two years after their devastation they began to become proud again.]**

7 Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

Interesting that they were grieved because of the pride of the people. No mention of whoredoms, murder, or secret combinations. They simply had become idolatrous. The way they dressed was the focus of the priest's concern. Why would this be an issue? How would this manifest to us today? Expensive designer clothes, cars, jewelry, status. Could the seeking of influence on social media also be a form of idolatry? The word idolatry is to place something in your heart over the Lord in its importance. Ask yourself whether you have any idols in your heart.

8 For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure. **[Have we not seen this in our culture today?]**

9 And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not

belong to the church of God. **[How one dressed was a huge thing in the Nephite culture. They would often divide themselves into classes or respectability depending upon such things. It would be the equivalent of a man with a PHD looking down upon the man who was a road worker. Such class division exists within America today, and even within the churches.]**

10 And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.

11 And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity **[sin from unbelief]** to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people. **[of their souls]**

12 Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

13 Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;

14 Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death. **[How we succor the poor amongst us is a sign that we are a disciple of Christ.]**

15 And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him. **[Sometimes when we become discouraged we forget the Lord and the Spirit cannot be reached in our hearts. Alma cried out to the Lord even more, and the Spirit remained strong with Him.]**

16 And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

17 Now this man's name was Nephiah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people. **[A law according to the Nephites that if the chief judge were to step down, the next in line was to take his place. Nephiah would be responsible for making laws to deal with the new crimes of the people. This was perhaps something Alma was concerned to do because he was also the High Priest amongst the church and it would seem a conflict of interest.]**

18 Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephiah.

19 And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the

pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them. **[Many outside the church had accused Alma of having biases against them for not being in the church.]**

20 And thus in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephihah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy. **[The gifts of the Spirit, particularly the gift of revelation and prophecy, are the most essential to preach the word of God.]**

Alma had served nine years as the chief judge of the people of Nephi. An office which was the equivalent of an elected President, Congressman, and Supreme Court Justice all wrapped up in one person. He was appointed according to the voice of the people, and then chose to leave it to preach the gospel amongst all the people of Nephi, which were in the hundreds of thousands. They did not have the ease of communication which exists today, so many of the rising generation only knew Alma vaguely, if at all. All these things taking place while the sons of Mosiah were attempting to preach the Gospel to the Lamanites. There may have been times Alma wished he had also followed with his friends to their far away mission. Watching the people continually fall into forbidden paths from God would be disheartening.

Imagine the head of the church leaving his comfortable office and security, to travel by foot, without immediate communication to family and friends, to go among the non-believers to preach the Gospel of Christ. He gave up everything according to the commandments given him, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy. This is the kind of faith Alma the younger had. We will see in the coming chapters how walking into the unknown with only our faith in the Lord can yield enormous blessings.

Questions and Answers

Was the river Sidon as dirty as the Mississippi is now? I have wondered if the rivers and waters in BoM times were as filthy, green-brown and silty as the waters now. Did the people get most of their water from springs and wells? **[I do not know that. PR]**

. [The gifts of the Spirit, particularly the gift of revelation and prophecy, are the most essential to preach the word of God.]

The gifts of the Spirit are dependent upon having charity or the gift of the Holy Ghost (per pg 119 of Gifts of the Spirit).

In my experience, charity waxes and wanes. There are days where I am one with everything, everything is in focus and opportunities to bless others just fall in my lap and it's like a Walt Disney movie. Then there are other days where this is lesser. I know what

Charity feels like... it's like I can read people like books but only to increase the light in their life. I know who needs help and how to help them. It's so strange that it isn't more constant. I'm about to assume you are like everyone else in that you have off days. If no, then please lend empathy 😊 **[You may have charity and the gift of the HG yet because of sin or some other physical distraction be unable to sync with the Spirit. Repentance is a continual process while we are in the physical body. After having received the Holy Ghost, when we sin we simply succumb to the buffetings of Satan and have trouble hearing the Lord's voice. As we continue to pray for help we are forgiven and continue the journey. Yes, I have to continually ask the Lord for forgiveness to know His will. PR]**

The concept of "lighting up" as you put it. Is that THE best way to combat against the doldrums? Right now I just read the scriptures. Listen to a podcast, serve or pray that the closeness to Him returns soon. Sometimes it's even days. I'm ok with that for now as it seems to be teaching me patience. **[I don't "light up" until I've asked the Lord for forgiveness and hear Him tell me He will. Then I ask for permission to have His light poured upon me to make me clean. This always helps me to get it together. The only time I have trouble is when I'm sick or having an argument with my wife. It does take effort most of the time to repent and overcome my weakness. PR]**

Lastly, if I teach on an off day, does that negate my chance to teach by the spirit? **[Yes, it could. If you don't have the Spirit with you. But then you would be like most teachers. Most don't know what it feels to teach by the Spirit, and even if you were present you may not even know someone was if you were not repenting yourself. The teacher is the most important calling in the church. To help others light that fire of faith is the greatest thing a servant of the Lord can do. Alma gave up his prestigious Judgment Seat to go and teach the people of Christ. PR]**

I like the above comment! I experience the same thing – some days I just can't hear the Lord. I know it is my fault.

Is the Lord talking to us constantly and we just cannot hear Him? Or does He actually go quiet and wait on us? **[As we walk in the Spirit we are continually open to revelation. Sometimes administering Angels will speak to us. When we specifically ask God questions He will answer as He will, which often comes in curious ways if not directly. PR]**

I have found reading Isaiah, deliberately to keep the commandment the Lord gave in the BoM, is one of the fastest ways to get back in touch with the spirit. (Sometimes it works within 20 minutes.) But why does this work? Is it because I turned back to God by deliberately seeking to keep a commandment in the best way I could? **[You responded in faith by following a revelation. This always brings us faster to Him than any checklist of duties. PR]**

PR

I struggle to see light as being poured... To me, light breaks forth in an instant bursting out from a source filling the sky and all dark corners.

What sort of light pours? Like from a container? Do you see it as a liquid? **[For me, the baptism of fire pours down upon me. It even splashes sometimes. It is not**

as much liquid as a flowing energy or glory that falls upon me in a way that the word pour seems applicable. When I first began to see light it emanated from me and I was seeing what was already there. PR]

Mosiah 4:20 “...he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy”

D&C 84:45

“For the word of the Lord is truth, and whatsoever is truth is light, and whatsoever is light is Spirit, even the Spirit of Jesus Christ.”

I found the above connection in the two scriptures but still... I always thought of “pouring out His spirit” as a metaphor. You seem to experience it as literal

This post was incredibly helpful. Thank you.

Interesting that they were grieved because of the pride of the people. No mention of whoredoms, murder, or secret combinations. They simply had become idolatrous. The way they dressed was the focus of the priest’s concern. Why would this be an issue? How would this manifest to us today? Expensive designer clothes, cars, jewelry, status. Could the seeking of influence on social media also be a form of idolatry?

So interesting here... There are many active church members who are literally called “Influencers” on social media. And many many more (sorry, mostly women) who “follow” these “Influencers”..... Companies send these women products for them to wear and model and use and they take pictures of themselves and post them to influence the people who “follow” them. It reeks so badly of worldly idolatry and covetousness and spiritual darkness I can’t even stand it. “Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet...”

Don’t worry Brothers, we certainly have our own problems too!!!

Alma Prophecies to Zarahemla – Alma 5:1-62

1 Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land. **[He started in Zarahemla the capital city.]**

2 And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:

Alma teaches the history of the church to the people.

3 I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon. **[On the Northeast border of the Land of Nephi, which had been ruled by King Noah.]**

4 And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.

5 And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity **[in the land Helam, north of Mormon]**, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.

6 And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell? **[It is common for many to become apathetic over time as the newer generation forgets the sacrifices of their fathers.]**

7 Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. **[Remember the phrase, “Awake and arise! To “awake” is to repent and turn to God.]** Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

8 And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

9 And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand **[enlarge in glory]**, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved. **[They did “arise” and receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.]**

10 And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?

11 Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God, and my father Alma believe them?

12 And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true. **[The Lord looks upon the heart of our desires. To change our desires and seek the Lord is true repentance, which is the foundation of our salvation.]**

13 And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved. **[Be humble, trust the Lord, and endure until you receive the promised blessing.]**

14 And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts? **[Have you received the gift of the Holy Ghost? This is the question we should all ask ourselves.]**

15 Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption

raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body? **[When we receive the gift of the Holy Ghost we are redeemed. Our mortal body is raised in its light to a state of incorruption where we are literally judged of God and found worthy to stand in His presence.]**

16 I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth? **[Alma evokes the people to “imagine.” The power of sanctified imagination is the touchstone of great faith. We must reach our minds to the very Throne of God and prepare ourselves for Him to take us by the hand and guide us.]**

17 Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say— Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you? **[Its hard to “imagine” that we could lie to God. Alma is framing his words with a visual scene for the people to imagine and consider.]**

18 Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God? **[Those whose hearts are repentant would have a vision open to them as Alma lays out this sacred visualization. The power to preach by the Holy Ghost as a servant of God.]**

As we read the scriptures it is critical that we pray for the Lord to open His gifts to us that we may understand and “see” what He wants us to see. For many the Book of Mormon can be like a seer stone to help us comprehend the truth of this record. It requires the reader to put away everything they’ve been taught, to read the words as if for the first time, with no judgment or presupposition. Allow the Lord to show you things. I am continually amazed at some of the insights shared in the comments during this BofM project. I know the Lord has shown you these things. Do not be afraid to visualize as you read and pray for the Lord to open your heart and mind.

19 I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances? **[When I pray and ask the Lord for forgiveness I ask Him to bathe me in His light and glory. I usually look up as I am made clean. At that point I am ready to come to Him.]**

20 I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil? **[Where your heart is, there will be your master.]**

21 I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white **[Your spirit is made clean and you are spiritually begotten of Christ.];** yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins. **[The baptism of fire cleans the spirit and the gift of the Holy Ghost elevates the light within us**

according to the power of the Atonement. Christ redeems by lifting us to our 3rd estate or an arising from previous glory.]

22 And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you? **[This would be to remain in our temporal state, or worse, to be claimed by Satan by choosing to follow him.]**

23 Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

24 Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white? **[Even if they could they would not desire it because they would be unclean.]**

25 I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil. **[God is “just” because with Him all things are separated and organized according to eternal laws of justice and mercy. He is truth and love, which is in opposition to lies and hate. Satan’s kingdom is built upon such principles.]**

26 And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now? **[Alma asks them where is their heart now?]**

27 Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? **[Are you in a state of repentance?]** Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

28 Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. **[Pride is like a form of personal idolatry, where you seek the flesh and not the Spirit according to the commandments of God.]** Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand **[An expression which means that God’s blessings to you are here now at this moment in time and juncture.],** and such an one hath not eternal life.

29 Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? **[Envy often accompanies pride. You could say it is the ingredient that feeds it, as we compare ourselves and desire to place ourselves above others for our own benefit.]** I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

30 And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions? **[One of the main reasons Alma left His judgment seat to preach to the people.]**

31 Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

32 Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it! **[Iniquity is sinful traditions and unbeliefs that bind the heart and prevent us from coming to God.]**

33 Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you. **[Knock and I shall open unto you.]**

34 Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely; **[This is more than a figurative expression. Each who are received into His kingdom shall eat the real fruit and taste of the water of life.]**

35 Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness **[exercise the doctrine of Christ]**, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—

36 For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

The Lord is constantly using the phrase “to bring forth good fruit.” What is this? The Lord placed the entire church under condemnation in 1832 because they had not brought forth “fruit meet for their Father’s kingdom.” (D&C 84:55-58) The fruit is the equivalent of coming to Him and receiving His fullness. If the people are not ready to stand in His presence they stand in condemnation until they repent.

37 O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice! **[Read this carefully.]**

38 Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd. **[Do you hear the Lord telling you anything?]**

39 And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil. **[If you deny that God calls out to you, you are not listening to Him, but are cloaked by the adversary and must awaken.]**

40 For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil. **[What is good? Anything that points our heart and mind to God. What is evil? Anything that causes us to seek personal gratification at another’s expense, at the expense of our very soul.]**

41 Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil **[receives the baptism of darkness]**, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

There is a difference between wicked and evil. Wicked is to act sinfully as one breaks the laws of God, but often do not realize they are doing so. Evil is to purposefully fight against God, to knowingly plot to expand the influence of Satan’s realm.

42 And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death **[separation from God and no light]**, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

43 And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God. **[the revelations Alma received]**

44 For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God **[The mission of the 4th estate, given from Christ.]**, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come. **[in the spirit of prophecy]**

45 And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? **[Do you think I'm making this up?]** Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?

46 Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me. **[A great description of the process of receiving revelation. It takes many days of prayer and focus, removing all distractions which sometimes includes going without food. This helps us to draw closer to the Lord, but long term fasting is not always required. Simply using your holy time on the Sabbath or another day to seek him with fasting of heart is often enough to know for yourself.]**

47 And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

The spirit of prophecy is the commandment of the Lord to share his word which we have received by revelation with others. This can be in the form of rebuke, teaching, encouragement, or warning of future events.

48 I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace **[glory]**, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

49 And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free **[These were those who were bonded servants to pay off their debts. Today, every American is a bonded servant in many respects to our national debt.]**; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again. **[The Doctrine of Christ]**

50 Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: **[When**

the Spirit comes upon you and you feel compelled to say, “The Lord wants me to say..., or I feel the Spirit telling me to say..., you are prophesying.”]

Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

51 And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

52 And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

These are three specific prophetic utterances from Alma: Christ is soon to come, tell them to repent, and your days are numbered. He didn’t have to say much, but the words are clear. The Lord wants me to say that the same exact prophecy is applicable today.

53 And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

[The first step in the downfall of the Nephite people.]

54 Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God **[The Everlasting Covenant]**, wherewith they have been brought into this church, having been sanctified **[made holy]** by the Holy Spirit **[gift of the Holy Ghost]**, and they do bring forth works which are meet for **[continual]** repentance—

55 Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?

56 And finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire **[of hell]** except they speedily repent.

57 And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things **[that which separates you from God]**; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

58 For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life **[Which constitutes the Church of the Firstborn]**, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

59 For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him. **[God will stand by His people.]**

60 And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.

61 And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you. [**“Go forth and do as I have commanded...”**]

62 I speak by way of command [**revelation and instruction**] unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life. [**Baptism opens the door that we “may” partake of the reception of the Holy Ghost and eventually eat of the fruit.**]

The words of Alma not only teach beautiful doctrines, but are a powerful example of how to preach the Gospel of Jesus Christ.

Questions and Answers

(“ Christ redeems by lifting us to our 3rd estate or an arising from previous glory.”)

When the BofF and the Gift of the Holy Ghost are given if it feels like you have attained this before “previous glory” and you are now where you were before in another lifetime, is that a clue that you are a 4th estate being and you need to go farther to awaken to the mission you have been given? Did you have that feeling after your BofF and GofHG ? Is there an inner drive that makes you feel that you have something you must complete in your life? Like you must push forward to receive your Second Comforter experience.

Because only those who are 4th Estate will receive their full Second Comforter experience? And then be given their mission to fulfill upon the earth? [**How we feel is not an indicator of whether we are 4th estate. This cannot be personally understood until the Lord explains it to us. Most 4th estate don't ever understand that such a thing exists, because they have not asked to know these particulars of the Everlasting Covenant. They only know at some point that they are preordained to perform a mission. All the Elect from the House of Israel made covenants before birth to come to Christ. This can feel the same as what you described. I would never worry about what estate you are. Each of those who are redeemed will have that opportunity to sacrifice at some point. It can become an idol in our heart if we seek anything but to come to the Lord. Those of the Third estate can also have a Second Comforter experience, it just may come in a different way. PR**]

Vs 57 come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things [that which separates you from God];

Moroni 10:30 And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing

Are these two prophets talking about the same unclean thing? Are unclean things merely idols?

Is there a difference between an unclean thing and an evil gift? [**An unclean gift is a**

manifestation from a Satanic source. An unclean thing can be that or simply anything separating us from God, such as pride or sinful behavior. PR]

Question- I will ask this delicately as I know this Is a very sacred topic. How does the name we receive in the Temple correlate to who we were or who we are? Is this name what the Lord calls a person who receives their second comforter? I understand if you cannot respond. **[My name was different than what was given to me in the temple, and the same with my wife. The new name in the temple is symbolic of the order of things in the eternities. Much of what Joseph taught was in the original ceremony, but Brigham did add many things for theatrics, and changed the meaning of a few things. PR]**

The definition of “church” is still tangled in my mind and I want to uproot the false beliefs surrounding it. (I want to uproot the incorrect definition I was taught by businesses who masquerade as following Christ. It was God who pointed out today’s churches have signs at the curb of their property, just like a business does, to advertise to passers-by the name of their business which attempts to sell salvation, bought at the price of my time and money. He said they are a business.)
How does God define church when He uses the word? **[There are many churches in the world where people gather to worship according to their beliefs, but God only classifies two churches: the church of the devil and the Church of Lamb of God (2 Nephi 14:10). To know whether you are in Christ’s church, here is the criteria: (D&C 10:67-69) PR]**

A body of believers who have individually repented and turned to Him?

Vs 9: To sing the song of redeeming love – is this a literal song? Is it something we knew before this life and after the Baptism of Fire, we remember it? **[There are many songs in heaven, and some are uniquely our own. In this case it is the harmony that exists between the individual and the Heavens that vibrates in our soul like music. PR]**

“38 Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd. [Do you hear the Lord telling you anything?]”

I had the mental picture of myself praying in my master closet. Seeking Christ on my own. I also had the faint thought that belonging to a group or church called by any other name (such as a leader’s name or book author’s name) means I might be missing out. It seemed to be a church name (like Church of Christ/Church of the Firstborn) or “Bride of Christ” that He was helping me recognize as I wondered how He would call me in His own name. **[The Celestial church is called “The Church of the Lamb” to the Lord, or “Church of Christ.” In the next world it is referred to as the Church of the Firstborn, which are the exalted ones. PR]**

I had to follow a prompting to go get my personal paper scriptures to read to help me.

Vs 37: The calling after us that He does – are those the gentle ideas and nudges that we dismiss so easily yet they seem to be there every day? **[In many cases, yes. PR]**

What does it mean that He calls to us in His own name? I didn’t fully understand.

“My name was different than what was given to me in the temple, and the same with my wife.”

Were you and your wife on “the same page” throughout your journey or did one of you seem to begin before the other did?

I ask because my husband is still deciding what to believe about Joseph and the BoM. We are on different pages. **[We have been on the same page, yes. She has been a couple of steps ahead of me most of the time spiritually. But, it is not uncommon for couples to not see eye to eye on this journey. The Apostle Paul’s wife would have nothing to do with him after his conversion. Couples who struggle to see eye to eye must be patient and trust in the Lord. I’ve seen many who had once lost their belief come around to have great faith. One of these friends is now filled with the Spirit and has had their Second Comforter. PR]**

Seriously so grateful for your words of wisdom and all your insight...Know that I pray for you and your family yet have no idea who the heck ya are other than my “friend.” So again, thank you. Real quick question about heavenly music, songs and instruments. Have you witnessed any sacred instruments and how do they appear if so? Are there any symbols? Or tapestry on them or through them? Makes any sense ?? **[Thank you. I have not studied any instruments. PR]**

Names are often titles or roles and each serves a different purpose. What is the purpose of a new name given in a temple?

I am learning that the Lord is mindful of all things and allows imperfections to exist within human/Christ centered churches, do these imperfections also serve a purpose? **[The new name is symbolic of the name given to a servant before the foundation of the world. The name is usually revealed when you have your calling and election made sure. It does have personal meaning to the individual and not a name that is randomly given. PR]**

Thank you so much for your comments of this chapter and chapter 4. They have been piercing to my heart and I love the visualization. This Book of Mormon experience has truly been as if reading the Book of Mormon for the very first time. How powerful this book is in completely changing ones heart. Thank you for your work on this.

Something that really stuck out to me about this chapter when I was reading a couple of months ago were verses 14 & 26. I had never considered that Alma was actually talking to two different groups of people in the church. It was brought to my mind that Alma addresses three groups of people two of which are members in the church, the third are those he invites to be baptized. The first group is addressed in Vs 14 which is a series of questions to members who had not received the gift of the Holy Ghost. It appears as if he then asks them a series of questions to help them to repent and be born of God, then Vs. 26 is addressed to those who had received the Gift of the Holy Ghost followed by a series of questions for them. All of the questions, of course, in some way, I believe, apply to all, but I just felt prompted to share that insight, hopefully it will help someone that reads your blog. I hope I’m not off in the rafters. I know you have mentioned it, and even

hinted at it here in this post, but It just confirmed to me that one can have been baptized, be a member of a church and not have received the Gift of the Holy Ghost.

Alma Passes the Keys – Alma 6:1-8

1 And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church. **[Because of the growth of the church it was necessary to ordain additional priests and elders to watch over the church. Alma's father had originally established the church toward the end of Mosiah's reign. (Mosiah 25:19-24)]**

2 And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church. **[The only qualification for baptism was repentance, meaning that they turned their hearts to God.]**

3 And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous. **[The only qualification for rejection from the church was not repenting of wickedness, which was usually manifest by pride in their hearts. Alma had made it clear in the previous chapters this was according to class distinction often made manifest by their wearing of fine apparel and persecution of their brethren.]**

4 And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla. **[A more regulated (vs. 7) approach to those receiving baptism and those who were excommunicated.]**

5 Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God. **[All were invited to come, even those whose names were blotted out.]**

6 Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God. **[Often on days other than the Sabbath.]**

When we meet together in homes or chapels to worship God how often do we join in fasting and mighty prayer for the benefit of those who don't know the Lord? What kind of prayers do we usually offer? It is common to pray for those with whom we associate, but what about those we do not?

7 And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the

east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon [west Illinois], there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword. 8 And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.

Having a large church with many branches requires people to be ordained to administer over the needs of its members. This is a priesthood responsibility because it is expected that these ordained people are righteous and have the Lord's approval. The laying on of hands for ordination does not guarantee that the Lord will uphold them if they are not faithful. There are many examples from scripture where this has occurred: the sons of Eli, or the priests of Noah. Often when we use the word "keys" in priesthood we are referring to keys of authority to administer in the church. We must not conflate the meaning to also encompass the power of God, which can only be maintained upon principles of righteousness. D&C 121:36

Questions and Answers

Hi PR, thanks for being humble enough to be awesome! Questions: In the highly probable event that ordinances are performed by people who are not righteous and/or given to people who are not repentant [edit], when and where will these things be rectified, if indeed they can be? Is it sorted out in the same way as worthy repentant persons baptised into various other faiths without the correct authority? How are the records of heaven kept and when if ever would a person be able to access them? (On a side note: I had the impression once that with my spiritual permission my journals/records that I keep in this life could be read and accessed by my family beyond the veil who are assisting me here. Does this sound probable to you. Perhaps they know everything and don't need to read records anyway?) Also if the requirement to enter into Zion is to be clean (and that can occur without ordinances) should we be concerned about previous ordinance work at this stage anyway? I am thinking that as we gather literally to Zion events like those described in Acts 10 will occur and it will be a joyful time of faith and ordinances. As always brilliant. I share as much as I can with my loved ones. **[The only physical ordinance that must be received in mortality is the baptism of water. All other ordinances are for learning purposes to prepare us for the spiritual manifestation, and has always been the purposes of temple worship. Baptism of water is the outward witness to the Father that we accept His son. If the recipient is worthy, but the administer of the ordinance is not, the Lord will either honor that baptism or arrange for another depending upon the circumstances. For example, the people of Noah had received baptism, yet they were rebaptized under Alma at the**

Waters of Mormon. The people who gathered at Bountiful were rebaptized after Christ came. There are different kinds of baptism. Some are a baptism of renewal. PR]

What does it mean “to know the Lord?” **[To have a personal relationship, which implies recognizing His Voice, and for some to have a personal witness. PR]**

“The only qualification for rejection from the church was not repenting of wickedness, which was usually manifest by pride in their hearts. Alma had made it clear in the previous chapters this was according to class distinction often made manifest by their wearing of fine apparel and persecution of their brethren.”

We have class distinctions now in America but I don’t seek to wear expensive clothing or make other people feel uncomfortable. The sin is rooted in our state-of-heart, right? So something that is not a sin for someone else could be a sin for me because the behavior + my pride makes it wickedness?

Is this why lists of “good and bad” behaviors don’t work? Because eventually following the list becomes an idol that supposedly makes you look righteous to others? **[Perhaps some focus more on outward appearances and a checklist for their righteousness, which we know is not how the Lord measures us. The church in Alma’s day dealt with significant prejudice which was causing contention within the church. Today’s churches deal with these and other issues. The purpose of church gathering is to help others to find the Lord and in the process find Him ourself. If anything we do is preventing that from happening it is best that the person not participate. Ultimately, our relationship with God does not hinge upon our church standing, but our faith in seeking him individually.]**

In my life I have found that there are great benefits from sharing our faith with others as it helps to motivate me to reach higher. I personally associate with many small groups. My own ward, my family, groups of friends, and occasionally a group I don’t know. Some of these are manifesting the gifts of the Spirit in their fullness, and others can’t get past the teachers manual. The more faith they have the more I feel compelled to speak. I think the Lord is the same with all of us. PR]

Alma 6:1 And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watchover the church. [Because of the growth of the church it was necessary to ordain additional priests and elders to watch over the church. Alma’s father had originally established the church toward the end of Mosiah’s reign. (Mosiah 25:19-24)]

Priests and teachers were originally ordained by Nephi and continued in the church indefinitely, however, Elders did not make their appearance in the Book of Mormon (except when referring to the Jews) until Alma the Younger (Alma 4:7). Priests administered the law of Moses in the temple and teachers taught the people the strict word given to them by the prophets, but there is no indication as to the role of Elders except to assist in “watching over the church” and in Alma 4:16 where it seems to insinuate that Elders in the church administered in civil affairs (laws & crimes). Do you

have any insight into why Alma instituted this position when judges already existed in the land? What was the purpose of Elders specifically? **[The Elders were like a council which was utilized when invoking excommunication, church decisions, missionary activities, and other functions which required a level of trust knowing that these people were righteous and had a relationship with God. Many of these Elders had a witness of Christ to one degree or another and were often called upon to administer blessings. Because of the growth of the church it was wisdom to do this, as did Moses when he organized the affairs of the Hebrews. PR]**

How do we better encourage revelation and the Gifts of the Spirit in a church setting that doesn't primarily seek this? **[What I do is voice questions while sharing scriptures. For example: I might read Mormon 9:7-9 and ask, "How often are we observing on a personal level things such as revelation and the gifts of the Spirit; the gift of tongues, prophecy, miracles, etc.? What does that mean if we are not? 3 Nephi 29:6-7" I bear testimony of the importance of revelation and the gifts without being overbearing. People always do better when they come to understand on their own. There are a lot of these questions and scriptures in the book A Witness of the Gifts of the Spirit.PR]**

Teachings of the Atonement – Alma 7:1-27

1 Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language **[way of speaking]**; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you. **[Speaking to the people of Gideon on the other side of the River Sidon.]**

2 And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you. **[A short explanation of why and how this came to be.]**

3 And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace **[light and salvation]**, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

4 But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

5 And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so

much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

6 But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief [**false belief and lack of faith**] as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols [**seek things and not God**], but that ye do worship the true and the living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins [**baptism of fire**], with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

7 For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people. [**The Lord would be born in about 85 years. The words “time not far distant” doesn’t imply within ten years, but more than a generation. We need to keep this in mind when we hear prophets say such things. The Lord has told me to be careful to not set a time, but to watch for the prophesied events and signs in the heavens.**]

8 Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. [**Some had conjectured that Christ would walk amongst them in the flesh.**] Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word. [**A foreshadowing of the day when He would show Himself to them.**]

9 But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand [**is close to you**], and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.

10 And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God. [**A very specific prophecy, not included in the Bible.**]

11 And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind [**A description of the sufferings of the Atonement.**]; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

12 And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities. [**The Atonement looses the bands of a telestial being that they may ascend, because Christ has claimed them as their Father and they are one with Him.**]

13 Now the Spirit knoweth all things [**God knows all things**]; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony [**knowledge by the gift of prophecy**] which is in me.

It is hard for many to understand the need for an atonement. Why can't Jesus just save everyone because He can? There is a law in the universe which is the Law of Attraction. To bind something to itself requires a

familiarity. In order to raise up something of a lower glory it requires the higher to condescend and then to overcome while bringing those with Him that will choose to ascend because of the One who has suffered to know them. There is a link which transcends time and space. A link between the Father/Mother and their Sons and Daughters, established by great sacrifice, which is called “grace.”

14 Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven **[To inherit the blessing of this Atonement it requires one to be born again in spirit. This is why the baptism of water points to that end result, which is accomplished by a baptism of glory/fire that creates a literal change within our spirit, making us holy to the Lord.]**; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance **[to witness to the Father that you accept His Son]**, that ye may be washed from your sins **[baptism of fire]**, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God **[The Great Sacrifice which you have witnessed all these years at the temple when the priest lays the lamb upon the altar and sacrifices it.]**, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

15 Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction **[broken heart]**, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism. **[contrite spirit]**

16 And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life **[Dwell with God]**, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit **[Holy Spirit of Promise]**, which testifieth in me **[Christ]**.

17 And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. **[gift of discernment]** And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

18 For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.

19 For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight. **[They are on the path. Now they must grab hold of the iron rod which is the Gift of the Holy Ghost and pure revelation.]**

20 I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his **[God’s]** word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.

This scripture is insightful in light of how much society today is conforming to social trends. What was once sinful is accepted and even taught as godly.

God doesn't change His commandments or revelations, they remain steady. There is not a single doctrine taught by Joseph Smith that does not apply to our time. A prophet cannot change a doctrine, but he can preach repentance and offer warnings according to the spirit of prophecy which is in them. If they are a revelator, they will reveal what has not been revealed before; but not change the doctrine. If they are a seer, they will see the past, present, and future, and the Lord will have them reveal according to His will. This pattern is unchanging – one eternal round.

21 And he doth not dwell in unholy temples [**our spirits**]; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness. [**Relating to the final judgment when the telestial earth is no more.**]

22 And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received. [**This is a reference to the covenant made before birth. The House of Israel has a duty to come unto Christ according to the Everlasting Covenant of the Father.**]

23 And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated [**persuaded**]; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate [**disciplined**] in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God [**following through on the revelations you receive**] at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive. [**the Law of Asking, and the Virtue of Gratitude**]

24 And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, [**repent, be baptized, Holy Ghost (the Doctrine of Christ)**] and then ye will always abound in good works.

Faith is a step beyond believing, where we turn our hearts over to God, seeking His will for us by revelation, and then doing all in our power to act upon it. We are baptized with a hope that our witness to the Father will bring about a remission of sins. We continue toward a realization of this hope, following the Holy Ghost/Spirit until the day that we are bathed in fire/God's glory, made clean to enter the presence of the Lord and receive the gift, which is the change of our spirit, made holy in the blood of the Lamb (the gift of the Holy Ghost). This is faith, hope, and charity; which brings about all righteousness.

25 And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out. [**This is Eternal Life.**]

26 And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.

27 And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And thus I have spoken. Amen.

What is the “peace of God?” Does it mean things will always go our way and life will be smooth and blissful? It simply means that God will watch over us and have a relationship with us that brings peace through His Spirit. We should ask the Lord for all that we need both physically and spiritually, and then be at peace knowing that the Lord is in control – to trust in Him.

Questions and Answers

So should a génération be considered 85 years or 50? [A generation can be defined in different ways and does not conform to a certain number of years. Usually it is a block of time that represents the life of a human. But it can also be a period that represents a group of people before they change. Often a dispensation can be referred to as a generation. In the case of this verse from Alma, it means the span of a life. PR]

Nathan! I have someone close to me with a very similar scenario. I think that the best source of comfort would be the Lord. Know that we love you and sustain you and pray for your well being. I believe often times the most valiant and beautiful souls weave their lives through the most heart wrenching trials on earth. There is much beauty in that tapestry there ...but usually I think that it takes a more eternal perspective (one borne out of not being on earth anymore I would imagine) to see it in full. One thing I know for sure is that the Lord brings us peace like a river in all of our trials. God Bless you, my friend. Peace to you

PR, thanks for all of your posts. I had a question. Have you had the opportunity to observe anyone who had a different gender in their earth life and their eternal life? I ask because I experience severe gender dysphoria. I've had it as long as I can remember and have tried my best to sacrifice my own desires and follow the Lord. However, this particular feeling has never left. It's very difficult and uncomfortable to talk about, and the Church has no advice and seems to pretend people like me don't exist.

I've had a number of remarkable spiritual experiences as I've tried to seek and follow the Lord's will. I have no intention of doing a gender transition in this life. I do believe that gender is eternal, but I wonder sometimes if in this fallen world, we can have some mismatch. **[I have not been aware of this, so I can't say. However, I know that our intelligence is housed in a tabernacle of gender from the beginning and does not change. This life is a curious thing in the kind of trials we endure. There are so many challenges people face, especially those who have a rare condition like yours and it cannot be passively dismissed. Having said that, the world will say that we should embrace our feelings and not to suppress them. My only advice is to seek a relationship with the Lord, with full intent, a broken heart and contrite spirit, and have him reveal what you need to do.**

To repent is to turn your heart to God and allow Him to work out the details as you seek His will in all things. PR]

Hi P.R

Could you please describe Alma's appearance and preaching style if you have any knowledge of that as well? He is one of my all-time favourite prophets, and I am very interested in having an idea of how he was. **[So far I have only observed Alma as a young man when the angel came to him and when he was in battle against the Amlicites. He has dark hair, medium build, and is very serious and motivated. He has a distinguished look about him. He dresses well, but not with the flair that some of the more prideful people among the Nephites do. His teaching style is much like what you read in the Book of Mormon. He touched upon the mysteries of God much, which you will see in coming chapters. I think you would find that you would not be disappointed in him in person, for he truly was a passionate, humble servant for the Lord. PR]**

And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind [A description of the sufferings of the Atonement.]

It says he suffers temptations of EVERY kind... what does it mean though.

PR- Do you know if the Lord experienced the act of the sin in order to descend below all things (sins)?... or did He just experience the misery accompanying the aftermath of the sin?... or...? It seems like He would also need to experience the temptation relative to every kind of sin, what it is like to succumb to that temptation, commit the various sins, and then experience the guilt, remorse, regret of the aftermath of these things. This is the first time I have ever allowed myself to think through this- sorry if it is profane in any way. **[The word “Temptations” can also mean trials. Jesus faced every kind of trial during His life, in Gethsemane, and on the cross. Yet, he was without sin having overcome them all. Hebrews 4:15 PR]**

Thank you for this scripture project! Thank you to both you and God! **[It's all the Lord. PR]** This chapter in particular has soothed my heart with how simple the truth is, especially since I make things so complicated.

Vs 6: “ye do worship the true and the living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins [baptism of fire], with an everlasting faith, which is to come.” I have fretted over the baptism of fire since I learned about it in 2013. This chapter is the first time I saw the words “look forward for”, as if I should be relaxed and looking forward to it, instead of wondering daily if I am like to be cast off, which disheartens me. You and the Lord answered the questions I had about grace and the broken heart & contrite spirit. I read verse 15 and realized I didn't have to break my own heart. It has been broken the whole time as I realized that sin “besets me so easily” and I am helpless without Christ. My struggle has actually been with the contrite spirit portion. I have understood that I am a failure without Christ but I have not been willing to enter into a covenant with the Lord to keep His commandments (the things He tells me to do) because I KNOW I am a coward, I don't speak up when I probably should and I will still mess up. I haven't trusted or found a way to believe that He could possibly be more loving after my covenant screw ups so I haven't dared covenant lest I break my end of the deal and make Him angry. I have been suffering from a debilitating unbelief in the

characteristics of the Lord that I couldn't see until now.

Can you tell me about the Lord's nature to help my fears? How does He act after even willful sins? How can He both abhor sin and not wink at it yet be SO forgiving, like I believe He is? **[Fear comes from the adversary, and perfect love for the Lord casts out all fear. If we love Him perfectly, without reservation, then our spirit is contrite, like a child, and we are capable of receiving all the gifts He desires to give us. Full submission of our heart, might, mind, and soul is enough to bring the baptism of fire as we cry out to the Lord. PR]**

What are the signs in the heavens that we should be looking for? **[They are spoken of in scripture, particularly in Revelation. It will require the spirit of Revelation, but if you read the book "A Witness of the End of Times" some of it is clarified. PR]**

I was asked the following question:

In the context of how he can succor others in their trials through sin. How does he succor murderers or rapists or pedophiles who repent. I can't imagine Jesus committing those sins. Maybe a mystery I don't know. Maybe more "out in left field" stuff I am prone to think about. **[When the Savior suffered in Gethsemane he spiritually suffered both for those who were victims and those who perpetrated the harm upon others who repented. It was as if he stood in their shoes and experienced it Himself. If someone was murdered He felt it on both ends spiritually, which although is not in the flesh was so traumatic it might as well have been. He suffered everything without having to literally commit the sin Himself. And thus, He is capable of succoring us in our sins because He understands it all. I hope this makes sense. PR]**

When the Savior spiritually suffered for our pains and sins, was part of His spirit outside His body? How could His physical brain/tabernacle comprehend so much experience in so little time? (Our brain's focus one thing at a time). **[It is a function of the highest priesthood, which is sometimes referred to as Patriarchal. It allows our spirit to split and experience things simultaneously. PR]**

In light of the above comment, I've often wondered if Jehovah grew & performed His earthly assignments and at the same time was administering in His heavenly role? **[When he condescended as the Only Begotten he was all in. PR]**

Alma and Amulek – Alma 8:1-32

1 And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea,

he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed. **[Alma spent an entire year preaching the gospel to the people in Zarahemla and Gideon.]**

2 And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

3 And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness. **[The angel that I was first introduced to before I had my personal Second Comforter, his name was Melek. I later learned that he lived during the Nephite times. I wonder if this city is named after him or it is a coincidence.]**

From my journal: "I asked about the city of Melek. It is the same name as my friend in the room above the earth. The angel that I first met the day I had my Second Comforter. Is the city of Melek in the Book of Mormon related to him? The Lord said, "Yes." That the city was founded by Melek in the days of King Benjamin. That Melek was the founder and governor of that land which at the time of Alma had about 35,000 inhabitants, which is not many. The city is north of Zarahemla in the Iowa area near the borders of the west wilderness called Hermounts. When Alma the younger visited them, he was glad to see that the people had remained good."

4 And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek. **[When it reads "according to the holy order of God" it is referring to the commandments of God given to Alma. Priesthood is more than simply to join an organization. It is to actively be about the Lord's errand.]**

5 And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;

6 So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.

7 Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.

8 And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

9 Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma. **[They had their own false traditions which were contrary to the words spoken by Alma.]**

10 Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.

11 Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast

established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

12 And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephihah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.

13 Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words **[argued against]**, and reviled him **[spoke disrespectfully]**, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

14 And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

15 Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you. **[You would think that Alma would recognize the angel after receiving the Lord's word from him before. Often, when angels come we hear and see light, yet do not see their face. It is a curious experience. At times we may hear and see, and other times only hear. The flesh of our bodies is the veil that separates the carnal mind from the spiritual realm. Unless the angel is a translated or resurrected being unto the flesh, we will only see them with our spiritual eyes.]**

16 And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

17 For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people. **[This must have been alarming to Alma, and yet not surprising considering the hostility he experienced in that city. Now, he would be entering a dangerous situation and he knew it, but his trust was in the Lord. Alma was a brave man, having faced death during the great battle with the Amlicites, having slain Amlici himself. But, this was different.]**

18 Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

19 And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat? **[He was given these thoughts to ask by revelation. Reminds me of Elijah and the widow.]**

20 And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house. **[Amulek saw the angel in vision, meaning with his spiritual eyes. When such a thing occurs it is like a**

detailed dream that can be so acute and random that to reject it would be to deny the power of God.]

21 And it came to pass that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

22 And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God. **[Did he eat the meat? Eating after a long fast is dangerous to the body. Alma must have eaten very carefully.]**

It is interesting that all of these seemingly insignificant details regarding Alma's meal with Amulek are included in the record. It helps to establish the faith of Amulek and Alma, and their relationship.

23 And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the church of God throughout the land.

24 And behold, I have been called to preach the word of God among all this people, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land and they would not receive me, but they cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever.

25 But behold, I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to testify against them concerning their iniquities.

26 And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days. **[To walk long distances while fasting from food is terribly difficult. When I did a two week water fast I could hardly stand for more than fifteen minutes before feeling faint. But fasting has incredible benefits of clarity that can hardly be accomplished any other way.]**

27 And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people. **[Alma was teaching Amulek and preparing him to be his companion according to the revelation he had received.]**

I have added this portion from my journal, a vision the Lord showed me similar to the kind I have written in *A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations*.

I then asked the Lord to show me what occurred with Alma the younger when he was in Ammonihah. What happened between him and Amulek? I have been studying this in the Book of Alma and there seems to be more involved. The Lord took me to a place in time. I saw Alma walking south along a dirt road with trees to his right. He was walking slow. He took a right turn toward the trees and was drinking from a brook. Alma saw a bright light like a cloud of light in his mind and an angel appeared. This was a special meeting for the angel was the first one that had come to Alma when he was on the road with the sons of Mosiah.

I asked the Lord who the angel was and was told I could not record his name, but that he was of the 4th estate, a Nephite prophet, and that he had also appeared to many. He was acting in the role of a Seraphim, a messenger from the Throne. It was a joyful thing to witness as the angel

smiled and Alma in his weak condition was visually overwhelmed with gratitude and love.

Alma was given instruction to return to Ammonihah and that he would be shown what to do next to preach to the people. In the meantime, the angel had also made an appearance to Amulek.

Let me describe Alma in detail from what I witnessed. I had seen him as a young man and as the leader in battle, but not yet in this circumstance. He looked to be close to forty, I think. His hair was very dark brown with some white in his beard which was mid length, a little longer than I had seen before. His hair was combed straight back and was down his neck. There seemed to be something added to his hair to keep it in place, not greasy, but prevented it from flying around. He smelled like fragrant herbs. Not lavender or perfume-like, but pleasant. He wore brown clothing that seemed part like a mix of middle-eastern and Native American. I say that because there was something like leggings with a girdle around his waist. Not as much leather as cloth, no feathers, but the clothing cut reminded me of something Indian. He had a small pack over his shoulder. Alma had dark eyebrows and kind eyes, deep set, with a slightly wider face.

Amulek was told by the angel to help the man who would ask him for food. Alma responded to the spirit of revelation when he was compelled to ask Amulek. They knew nothing about each other, although Amulek knew of Alma and greatly admired him without knowing his identity until after the meal.

Amulek had brown hair, not as dark as Alma, was thin, and looked younger. He had a small family, I saw several children. He was a merchant that helped sell other's tapestries, bags, and other things. His home was small, made of a kind of cement and wood. Looked like middle eastern homes from Christ's time.

Alma was served a broth from a cooked animal and some small cakes made from maize corn and other herbs. He ate slow and very little. The cake was almost green in color. Both men were overjoyed to learn of each other and especially Amulek to learn he had offered food to Alma. Amulek shared his experience with the angel and they spent the next few weeks discussing the Gospel and Alma shared much to help Amulek prepare. It was interesting to see these two men coming together to do the Lord's work.

28 And it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities.

29 And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger away. **[Both Alma and Amulek received their own separate revelation from the Lord as a witness that it was time.]**

30 And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

31 And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them. **[They were not translated, yet were protected by the power of God, much like Paul in the New Testament.]**

32 And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

When the Lord desires to call a people to repentance much is coordinated from the other side of the veil. People are brought together and the ministering of angels becomes very busy. Even today, the Lord is organizing and preparing his servants as was Alma and Amulek to call the people to repentance. Until the collapse, much of this will take place on the internet, and with small groups, and will only increase as we grow closer to the gathering.

We have the example of Alma, a highly esteemed servant of God and former judge of the land meeting Amulek, a regular man without status, yet chosen of God. The servants of the Lord are chosen according to their faith.

Questions and Answers

“Today was my Sabbath, so I took many questions to him including to understand more clearly regarding the interaction between Alma and Amulek. I will add my journal entry to the annotations.”

How does the counting work? According to a moon calendar, the new moon was last Friday 4/5 at 1:50 AM? Is the first day, the first day after a sliver of light appears? I thought that put the lunar sabbath on this Friday 4/12 starting at sunset on Thurs 4/11, seven days after. I was planning on doing a few small things to make tomorrow night and the day following more holy, but do I have this wrong? Thanks for your help.

I checked your book *The Witness of the Temporal Dispensations* and Amulek was not in it. I was wondering if since that time have you seen or conversed with Amulek? Do you know what he looked like or have any more details about him? It really brings the Book of Mormon to life knowing these details. I also checked the search feature at the top of the page which is very handy so we don't ask repeat questions you have already answered. **[Today was my Sabbath, so I took many questions to Him**

including to understand more clearly regarding the interaction between Alma and Amulek. I will add my journal entry to the annotations. PR]

It is interesting to think on how while Alma and Amulek were teaching the Ammonihah people Ammon and his brethren were doing the same among the Lamanites, how they are both able to soften the hearts of many, but as their hearts are turned back to God they are persecuted and many have suffered death, both the Lamanites and the Ammonihah converts.

That is correct. I started two days too soon. Extra holy day for me!. I have to remember to adjust for each new moon. It was much easier when it was simply the calendar Sunday. My wife is going to give me a hard time about this! PR.

Wow! Thank you so much for taking the time to ask the Lord. It's amazing to actually know what they looked like and all these details about their lives. It just adds so much to the story to know all these particulars. Amazing! I so look forward each day to reading your Book of Mormon posts. It's exciting to learn all these new insights you receive from the Savior. In a world in great turmoil it's so refreshing to be uplifted everyday by your posts.

This chapter was beyond fantastic! But then again I'm also the guy who watches bible videos almost every day just to see a depiction of what the Lord in His majesty looks and sounds like. I love doing that. I'm very visual. I've reread the depiction of Alma and Amulek here and am able to see so much more. Thanks!

I was wondering if Nehor was from Ammonihah. They were his followers after all, or he just happened to have much success there. **[His teachings were very popular among the people of Ammonihah, so that could be true. PR]**

Why are names of messengers kept hidden? Even in other ancient religions entities would guard their names and mortals would seek to find them out believing that knowing the name would give the mortal some sort of power or something over them. **[Often angelic messengers prefer that their names not be written to not distract from the message given. PR]**

What parameters does the Lord work with when it comes to a mortal taking the life of another mortal?

The thought of me taking the life of another is unpleasant, but is it justified when doing so to protect others or one's self? I know Nephi and Alma had taken lives. I am asking this in the context of the collapse of America in the coming days and what hardships that will bring. It weighs heavily upon my mind. **[When the Lord decrees that a person or people must die it is according to the principles of justice and mercy. IF we are required to take a life it must be according to the same laws. To kill unrighteously brings upon the sinner damnation to their soul. How is this defined? According to the purpose of our heart in accordance with the Spirit of God. PR]**

Any insight as to how Alma and Amulek or Lehi or Nephi3 captured an audience? Was it mostly just go outside on a busy street corner and start preaching loudly to the winds until people gathered?

Was it indoors? Did they gain access to large organizations because Amulek was well connected in society?

Are there any insights with how the sons of Mosiah and Alma/Amulek were able to preach to large crowds that would work for our day?

I'd love to give some sort of well thought out approach a try. (The older I get, the more it seems I don't care about what folks think of me, I guess) 😊 **[If they had the internet or large conference centers I'm sure they would have tried that. Mostly they went where people gathered and just started talking. It would seem out of propriety in our culture today in some respects, but less so to them. Of course, if the people didn't like what they were saying they could end up in jail. PR]**

“Amulek saw the angel in vision, meaning with his spiritual eyes. When such a thing occurs it is like a detailed dream that can be so acute and random that to reject it would be to deny the power of God.”

Was Amulek awake for this or actually asleep? **[He was awake. PR]**

When it has happened to you, were you awake or asleep? **[I was awake. All my experiences happen while awake. I will note that it is a dream if that is the case. PR]**

I've had the Lord come teach me in dreams a couple times (and even typing that makes me miss Him; I wish it was more than just a couple.) I'm trying to learn if a night vision is a clear dream and a vision is while you are awake?

And what does your body do while you are seeing with your spiritual eyes? Stare into space? Collapse? (Would explain why Joseph was lying on his back in the woods when he came to.) **[The Lord or His angels will often communicate with us in our dreams. But, if we are sufficiently awakened we may experience a vision. When this occurs it feels like a trance, as we are awake, yet we see in our mind something that feels absolutely real, yet outside our body and physical world. Often I don't notice what is around me. I have finished a vision before to find myself laying or in a different position. The first couple of times I ever experienced this I thought maybe I had hallucinated and was rebuked forcefully by the Spirit to the point I wept for joy for almost half an hour. PR]**

“The first couple of times I ever experienced this I thought maybe I had hallucinated and was rebuked forcefully by the Spirit to the point I wept for joy for almost half an hour.”

PR

Whoa...so what does being rebuked forcefully by the Spirit look and feel like? And after being rebuked are you weeping for joy because of the truth of the reality of your vision, or because you have been so favoured to be given it? **[I was remembering one of my first experiences when the veil was rent. I was in the temple during a marriage sealing when my brother who had passed away many years previously appeared to me and we had a short conversation. The moment it**

ended I was in a state of shock. My first thought was, “You were just seeing things.” The Spirit came over me with such power and I heard the words, “Do not deny the power of God!” It was like getting hit in the head with a 2X4 and shook me to my core. As I realized what had occurred I cried like a baby through the entire marriage sealing. Everyone thought I was a little emotional seeing my sister get married. Haha. It was a beautiful experience and came many years before the Lord revealed Himself to me. PR]

Take this as you will, since I am just a commenter, and this is not my blog. However I found people’s experiences helpful when trying to understand the unknown, so here is my two cents.

The first vision I experienced was during deep prayer, and light suddenly filled my closed eyes. (As in, if you are outside on a sunny day, through your closed eyelids you can tell it’s incredibly bright.)

Well I kept my eyes closed and the light grew ever stronger. Then a scene opened up to my mind, as if watching a movie, with the spirit narrating to me what was happening. When the vision closed, I was so stunned I didn’t dare move. All I could do was marvel for what felt like a good 30-40 minutes, hardly able to pull myself out of the shock and simultaneous elation. I continued to pray on the scene and the spirit continued to confirm its validity and teach me. **[That is certainly the pattern for many. I love to hear others’ having these experiences! PR]**

It has been the same expansion of light accompanied by a profound sensation of love/peace every time I have since ascended in the spirit. My physical body is not a concern of mine. My spiritual eyes and senses take over until it ends and I notice how I’m sitting or laying etc. It’s not something I can force or coerce to happen at my will (believe me, I’ve tried). They happen when the Lord has something to teach me and on His errand, not mine. I wish mine were as frequent and vast as PR’s but I suppose everyone has a different role. Thank you for sharing your incredible knowledge with us, PR. It leads us all to Christ. **[It is impossible to coerce the Spirit. If such a thing was attempted it would surely open the door to the Adversary. However, we can act in faith, knocking on the door of Heaven, and the Lord will open to us if done properly. Once permission is given all things are possible. PR]**

Kind of a quirky question:

Does eating too much food on a daily basis or even once in a while make it more difficult to see in the spirit? **[No, but I find when I eat unhealthy that it is more difficult. PR]**

I know there are chemicals in certain foods, like pesticides and preservatives. I also know white flour and sugar can act like a drug. Is it these chemicals/ingredients that tend to dull our spiritual senses?

The Lord slowly led me to a keto diet (even though I didn’t want to do keto) after years of praying for Him to heal certain things. Joseph recorded in D&C 89 that conspiring men in the last days would seem to have some influence over food. I was trying to live exactly what D&C 89 said when the Lord told me that I needed to be getting my own ongoing, personal revelation so He could ‘instantly update’ me with warnings about foods and revelations tailored to my unique body. (I was also encouraged to produce

much more of my own food for a number of different reasons and benefits.)

Is the genetic modification what D&C 89 was trying to warn us about? Or was it a whole spectrum of issues with things being added or taken away from our commercially produced foods?

Is it going to get worse and worse, which is why so many are being prompted to grow their own food? **[We need to follow the Spirit in not just what we do spiritually, but what we do physically. Our physical health is greatly impacted by our nutrition and whether we ingest harmful substances. Section 89 gave good advice to follow. PR]**

Preaching to Ammonihah – Alma 9:1-34

1 And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

2 Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away? **[This was part of the reason the Lord had prepared a companion for Alma, knowing the hearts of the people of Ammonihah.]**

3 Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away. **[Alma is clarifying that they did not understand, and he was not teaching that.]**

4 And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

5 Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people. **[It is the nature of people to think their world will not change, that they are secure in their comfort and beliefs.]**

6 And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

7 And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

8 Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation **[people of this time and place]**, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.

9 Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?

10 And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?

11 Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth

long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

As I read this it reminds me of our generation, which does not remember the sacrifices and divine providence of the original American colonists, the Founding Fathers, and those who brought forth this country. They came seeking a new land where they could worship Jesus Christ without oppression. The Lord blessed this country and it has become wealthy and proud. Today, many of our generation have forgotten this heritage.

12 Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away. **[This occurs in Alma 25:2]**

Again, this is the same message for our day. Unless the American people repent (and all nations for that matter) they will be wiped off the face of the earth. There is a cleansing coming and you must be found standing in a holy place or you will not survive the storm.

13 Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land? And again it is said that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. **[This scripture has both a temporal and spiritual meaning.]**

14 Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.

15 Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.

16 For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land. **[This demonstrates the Lord's mercy in how those who are born under circumstances where they do not know the truth because of their false traditions are often extended the mercy of God.]**

17 And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name. **[Moroni 8:22]**

18 But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord. **[When America falls it will come like the sudden storm without warning.]**

19 For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

20 Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come; **[At this point the Nephites were more blessed than the Jews living in Jerusalem, having received more revelations and prophecies than them.]**

21 Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation; **[This is a good synopsis of some of the most basic gifts of the Spirit, which stand as signs of God's favor amongst a people when they are manifest. Refer to the book A Witness of the Gifts of the Spirit to learn more.]**

22 Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now **[They knew that when they overcame in battle it was miraculous having been greatly outnumbered.]**; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

23 And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

24 For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth? **[Transgression has a slightly different meaning than the word sin. To transgress is to deviate from the course the Lord has given you. To sin is more to act or be in disharmony to God's laws. To Transgress is sin, but to sin is not necessarily to transgress, as a sinner may not know that they are transgressing.]**

25 And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand; **[There are always multiple witnesses and prophets sent to cry repentance to the people, to the nations of the world, in boldness, without concern for their feelings or how it might affect their status.]**

26 And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer

their prayers. **[Christ came in His glory, but the world did not see it. When He comes in the future it will be cataclysmic.]**

27 And behold, he cometh to redeem **[by fire]** those who will be baptized **[by water]** unto repentance, through faith on his name. **[Doctrine of Christ]**

28 Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord **[get ready]**, for the time is at hand **[right before you]** that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivation of the devil. **[the day of judgment]**

29 Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people. **[These are the words I have been commanded to give unto you!]**

30 And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people. **[A final plea from Alma.]**

31 Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people. **[So often people become angry when the truth is spoken.]**

32 And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.

33 But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.

34 And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book. **[When Amulek stepped forth the people paused, surprised that another witness was among them.]**

Questions and Answers

PR this part just leapt off the page when I read it:

28 Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord **[get ready]**, for the time is at hand **[right before you]**

Are you commenting on Alma's words alone for his people? When Alma is speaking here this is about 80 years before Christ's birth. For me I felt a strong witness that the words you added emphasized that the events that for our day are so close that where we are now and our immediate choices will prove our destruction like the city of Ammonihah or preservation as disciples of Jesus. Was this also your intent when you added these comments? **[Yes, it all is relevant to now. PR]**

Powerful!

21..(" the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation")
I'm sure he's talking about translating languages. It was just interesting the order he put it in right after the Gift of the Holy Ghost. It made me wonder. The Gift of the Holy Ghost makes you a 3rd Estate being. Is there any "tie in" to being translated? A 3rd

estate being lives in the Terrestrial Realm as shown in your chart. Anyways can you tell us more about the process of being translated. Why are certain people translated? Why is it a process instead of just happening? Is it a long period of change? Is it to fulfill a preordained mission? Are the righteous going to be translated in the last day instead of dying? Can a translated being live in both the heavenly realms or still must live on the earth? Is translation so that a person can live in the millennium to experience the Terrestrial Estate and serve in preordained righteous callings? By so doing he is prepared to live in the Celestial Realm? Anything you can say would be appreciated.

[The gift of translation is a kind of resurrection where the physical body is changed, yet the person maintains the same physical appearance as in mortality. That body can interact between this world and the Throne of Heaven. The change to the body is not a process and does not happen gradually, but does take a while to get used to its effects. As far as I am aware it only happens to 4th estate preordained servants for the purpose of doing the work of the Lord more efficiently. PR]

TSJ, I can also add verse 29 Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people. [These are the words I have been commanded to give unto you!] to what jumps out at us!

“[When America falls it will come like the sudden storm without warning.]”

Is this the stock market crash that is the beginning of the end that you mentioned in the End Times Book? Is that what comes like a sudden storm without warning?

Or is it another event even worse? **[The war. PR]**

Verse 22 ... (“having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind”) I wonder if there is a real danger concerning vaccinations now being required by our government, as some have speculated that they are poisoning us? Are many of these diseases sent forth or allowed to come among us because of our wickedness in these last days? Or as some have claimed some diseases are being designed by conspiring men and purposely released to kill off populations and make billions of dollars on vaccinations required by government? Is the real answer, if we are righteous we won't have to deal with these diseases sent among us? Also, the great plague which is coming in the near future. Do we just need to not fear as the righteous will be spared? **[There has been disease in the world for a long time. Today, they offer vaccinations to help control them. But, we must seek personal revelation for ourselves and family to know where we are safe in such things. PR]**

Heed the Words – Alma 10:1-32

1 Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:

2 I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God. **[I need to ask about this.]**

This is a journal entry describing what I was shown related to the above verse:

“The Lord showed me the temple that existed in the Land of Nephi. It was made of large stones on the foundation up to perhaps 4 feet and then the rest of the temple was made of wood. There was an outer barrier of wood poles, which was at times covered with white cloth. Two pillars stood in the front of the temple, which was similar to the Temple of Solomon, but much smaller and more simple.

Aminadi was a priest in the temple, a descendant of Nephi, and a prophet amongst the people during the time of Jarom. In fact, the Lord had me go to Jarom 1:10, which is a reference to this event, not specifically described. During this time of Nephite history, the people had become very wicked and had forgotten the Lord, setting their hearts upon riches and their own strength. Aminadi would stand at times facing the laver on the south side of the temple. The sun would shine upon the wall and he saw the same thing all the time. When I saw him he had a dark, almost black beard and hair. He wore clothing that was white with colors and a hat.

One day he noticed some writing on the wall, each character about the size of a man’s palm. It was in an unknown glyph, which reminded me of Jaredite writing I have seen before. The words were translated by Aminadi to read “If my people do not remember the commandments of their God, they will be removed from the land of their inheritance.”

Aminadi showed this to the high priest and the people were made aware of it, but most felt it was a hoax and dismissed it as such. In the days of Amaleki, Mosiah led a people out of the land of Nephi to avoid its destruction.”

3 And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren. **[Here we are told directly for the first time that Lehi was a descendant of Manasseh. There are essentially three tribes of Israel represented in America: Judah (Mulekites), Ephraim (Ishmaelites), and Manasseh (Nephites).]**

4 And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry. **[A merchant of woven cloth, and other related products.]**

5 Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea,

even in the preservation of the lives of this people. **[Having said this, Amulek was a great seeker of God, he just didn't know where to look. Many of us are like Amulek with great desires to know the Lord, but not understanding how to exercise the faith to open that door.]**

6 Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear **[He dismissed the thoughts as his imagination.]**; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know **[the effects of unbelief]**; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart **[sinning without knowing]**, even until the fourth day of this seventh month **[around September]**, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges. **[How the Nephites counted the years.]**

All of us are guilty of dismissing the promptings of the Holy Spirit at times. Some may even have daylight visions to get their attention, yet see them as fancies of the imagination. The Lord will often speak to the less faithful in a dream, and those are usually brushed aside by those of a carnal mind. What should you do? If your heart is filled with virtue and a desire to know the Lord, you must pay close attention to every thought and image that crosses your mind. You must know that the Lord will speak to you. As you follow through with these revelations, your spiritual senses will be strengthened until the time comes that the gifts of the Spirit will manifest themselves to you in their fullness.

7 As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.

8 And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.

9 And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

10 And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house. **[That is a direct and powerful witness!]**

11 For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake. **[Amulek cared for his parents and extended family.]**

12 And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

13 Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the law, and that they might be slain or cast into prison, according to the crime which they could make appear or witness against them. **[If it could be proven that their words were a lie, that their beliefs were to cause fear in others, they could be sent to prison according to their laws.]**

14 Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

15 Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

16 And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

17 Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts **[gift of discernment]**, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundations of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

18 Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

19 Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction. **[A good reference because the people knew well the laws that had been implemented since the time of King Mosiah.]**

20 And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

21 Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

22 Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword. **[Again, this verse has application to our time today. America is hanging by a thread, and if it were not for the prayer of the righteous it would be destroyed already.]**

23 But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent. **[And this shall be the end result of our country, as the wicked and the righteous divide until there is no grey line. Can you see this happening? At that point the judgments of God will be unleashed.]**

24 And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

25 But Amulek stretched forth his hand **[the sign of a servant]**, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation **[people]**, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?

26 For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation. **[To seek to overthrow the law was a crime, but to condemn according to the law was not.]**

27 And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.

28 And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it. **[The equivalent of treason in our day. Freedom of speech was not a Nephite' right.]**

29 And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.

30 And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.

31 And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.

32 Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.

This chapter demonstrates the complexity of maneuvering the Nephite judicial laws of their day. What Alma and Amulek were doing was a risky venture and this was well understood by them. Alma, being the former chief judge knew how such things worked and with the Holy Spirit was able to plan accordingly.

Questions and Answers

6 Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear [He dismissed the thoughts as his imagination.]; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know [the effects of unbelief]; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart [sinning without knowing], even until the fourth day of this seventh month [around September], which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges. [How the Nephites counted the years.]

PR- the month, day are very specific mentions in this account. To us it looks like July 4. Now I'm REALLY curious as to WHY they interpreted that as September. I know John Pratt has a breakdown of sacred calendars but I'm INTRIGUED now!!! **[Two weeks before the Exodus, the Lord showed Moses the crescent new moon, instructing him regarding the setting of the Jewish calendar and the**

mitzvah of sanctifying the new month. “This month shall be for you the head of months, the first of the months of the year” (Exodus 12:2). This ushered in the first Jewish month and commenced the lunar calendar that Jews have been following ever since. It was the first mitzvah (“commandment”) given to the newly born nation of Israel, even before the exodus from Egypt. Today, it is called Nisan, and is the month of the Passover. The Jews followed the lunar months and Sabbaths fervently until the time that the Gregorian calendar was enforced. PR]

Was the Lunar sabbath always observed by Israel/God’s people since Adam? [I don’t know the particulars of that, but I would assume that Adam and his descendants were taught the Sabbath. PR]

Your comment on verse 6 (“ If your heart is filled with virtue and a desire to know the Lord, you must pay close attention to every thought and image that crosses your mind. You must know that the Lord will speak to you. As you follow through with these revelations, your spiritual senses will be strengthened until the time comes that the gifts of the Spirit will manifest themselves to you in their fullness.”) Thank you so much for these words of encouragement that I have been seeking. In paying close attention to every thought, is this training for us to be able to distinguish good from evil spirits so that we are not deceived ? Is it the law of the universe that we must struggle so immensely, to be tried and tested, in order to receive these gifts? It seems some have even harder trials than others. Is that because the Lord is more doubtful with some or that perhaps they need these individual trials to strengthen themselves in ways others are already strong in? It is a very difficult struggle but well worth it. **[Each person has the opportunity to develop faith in this life. It begins with repentance, turning their hearts to God. This leads towards a gradual increase in the gifts of the Spirit until they are finally able to partake of the fruit. The Adversary is always allowed to tempt us, and only is given more latitude the closer we get to the Lord. But in the process we learn to discern the difference, are strengthened, and our faith is made perfect in Christ. Don’t despair if you make a mistake in discernment. Like the musician or athlete that makes a mistake, learn from it, and move forward. The Lord is smiling at you as you are strengthened. PR]**

“For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women...”
PR what does Amulek mean when he uses the term “women”. There are diverse opinions on this, that Amulek must have been a polygamist; or that his wife may have died and therefore when he doesn’t mention her specifically he was referring to the female servants in his household. Have you seen Amulek and his household in this light? **[I have not asked the Lord for a synopsis of who Amulek was caring for. I saw several children and what appeared to be extended family living with him. Polygamy was considered a sinful lifestyle to the people of Nephi. PR]**
Also I want to tell you how grateful I am. Thank you for sharing all of your revelatory insights. And for being an example for so many of us to follow. I am sure I am not the only one here striving to gain personal revelation from Jesus. I believe in my heart it was Him who led me here.

Your addendum was pure revelation to me, God bless you PR.

I am needing to repent of acting as Amulek, and ooohhh how I desire my own “Amulek moment” to awake and arise with an angel!

I am one of those who has never seen ANYTHING with my spiritual eyes. Part of me wants to try and force it, and the other part of me accepts the Lord’s will, without giving up of course.

This stuff is all SO exciting! I know it is wrong of me, but I am TIRED of living in Babylon, waiting for this war/collapse.

[What should you do? If your heart is filled with virtue and a desire to know the Lord, you must pay close attention to every thought and image that crosses your mind. You must know that the Lord will speak to you. As you follow through with these revelations, your spiritual senses will be strengthened until the time comes that the gifts of the Spirit will manifest themselves to you in their fullness.] **[Learn to exercise faith. I would suggest reading and applying some of the information in the book “How to Open Your Spiritual Eyes.” PR]**

“...he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children,...” Women- plural. Not a reference to polygamy, correct? **[No, polygamy was considered a sinful lifestyle to the Nephites. PR]**

“The Lord will often speak to the less faithful in a dream.”

I needed that dose of truth as I read this last night!

(I then had two dreams with a theme of famine. I’m going to be paying a lot closer attention to my waking thoughts and impressions.)

I know the Lord can “get through” to me out of the blue if He needs to. For example, and I’m sure this sounds silly, but in preparation for this post, on Friday night the Lord seemed to enter my thoughts gently as I was getting dressed that I was going to win money at the girl’s Bunco night I was about to attend. He then asked what I would do with it? I paused, discerning that it did seem to be the Spirit and replied silently that I would do as He willed. Bunco is a dice rolling game and I “won” by being the biggest loser of the evening, who receives some of the money pot as a consolation prize. I actually won twice, both in the biggest loser categories. (The Lord has a fantastic sense of humor!) The combined prize was \$15. I was verbally accosted by the hostess three times for no reason other than my dice rolls won the prizes. When I remembered what the Lord had and winning had now happened, I asked Him what He wanted me to do with the cash? The answer was too hard to hear (the adversary was whispering about my wounded feelings) but I felt I should quietly leave it for the hostess who had been so verbally sharp with me. I did. At home I asked why and felt that the Lord was trying to soften her heart.

My question is this:

Why doesn’t the Lord kind of “burst in” our thoughts more often so we can hear Him so clearly? I like hearing from Him! Is there a “penalty” that goes along with such clear communication that the adversary gets to deliver so the Lord keeps this to a minimum?

Why are some messages so clear and others so subtle and obscure? **[When angelic messengers speak to us it is often a blunt thought that comes to mind. When the spirit of the Lord communicates it is often after we reach out to Him and**

the thoughts are like a whisper, steady and clear. This is just some of the typical distinctions I've noticed. PR]

That makes sense. My poor angelic messenger. After I had the thought about winning and discerned that it seemed to be from the Lord, I actually said to God that I didn't like angelic messengers because they sound slightly different than Him. Of course I complained about being able to hear clearly. Ugh. *Facepalm*

Was Joseph correct when he said angels were easily offended? (Or something along those lines – that if offended they may not come back but another would be sent?) I don't have a reference for where or if Joseph said it, I just remember being taught that. **[Angels will only attempt to communicate with us when we are in the right mindset, or holiness. When we are entertaining dark spirits they will keep a distance. Yes, they can be offended, but they know the nature of mortality and don't hold anything against us. They are rooting for us, but will not encroach upon our agency. PR]**

Sometimes I will have a question that I choose to not post because I only post questions that contribute to the content of the original post. There is a blog called "Pure Revelations Discussions Group" on Facebook, which is a private group you are welcome to join that will allow members to discuss more freely regarding the information on this blog. They have participation rules, but most anything is acceptable as long as people are respectful.

I'm curious to know who these men were, Giddonah, Ishmael, and Aminadi, especially Aminadi? He interpreted the writings on the wall of the Temple, like Daniel, he too had this gift. I wonder about the story behind this writing. Was it a Nephites Temple? Or an ancient temple left behind by the Jaredites or others? I know there was a stone brought to the first King Mosiah that had a writing on it, that the king was able to interpret, but it was from the Jaredites, written by them. **[These are questions I need to ask the Lord. PR]**

Amulek Confronts Zeezrom – Alma 11:1-46

During these chapters when you read narration in the third person it is the words of Mormon condensing and adding context while abridging the plates.

1 Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged. **[paid by the hour]**

2 Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped **[removal of his possessions]**, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

3 And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given. **[In today's currency we float "treasury notes" that have little or no value. There have been times in America's past where a portion or all was attached to gold or silver redemption, but it was so constricting to the US that the laws were changed in 1933 and became progressively less gold standard. The Nephite currency was very straightforward and consistent with ancient currency standards.]**

4 Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah. **[Over five hundred years of currency evolution since the days of Nephi.]**

5 Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold. **[from least to greatest in value]**

6 A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver. **[from least to greatest]**

7 A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

8 Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

9 And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

10 And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

11 And an amnor of silver was as great as two senums.

12 And an ezrom of silver was as great as four senums.

13 And an onti was as great as them all.

14 Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their reckoning—

15 A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon for half a measure of barley.

16 And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.

17 And a leah is the half of a shiblum.

18 Now this is their number, according to their reckoning.

19 Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.

20 Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, because they received their wages according to their employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riotings, and all manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they might have more employ, that they might get money according to the suits which were brought before them; therefore they did stir up the people against Alma and Amulek. **[The Nephite lawyers were literally the wolves amongst the people, creating contention where possible within the constraints of their laws.]**

21 And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, saying: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek: Will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto you? **[A device of the devil is a strategy to deceive and cause others to transgress the laws of God. Today such devices are rampant in our media and education as people are taught and compelled to rethink their beliefs of God and His commandments.]**

22 And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being. **[An incredible sum of money, enough to tempt most people.]**

23 Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations?

24 Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you, Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou lovest that lucre more than him. **[gift of discernment]**

25 And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me; and it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living God, that thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward.

26 And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?

27 And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.

28 Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

29 And he answered, No.

It is unclear how much Amulek knew of the mysteries of God. To our purposes in this 2nd estate, there is only one God to whom we must know to be saved.

30 Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?

31 And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me. **[Amulek had been not only alerted to Alma's coming, but taught pure doctrine from an angel of the Lord.]**

32 And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of God?

33 And he said unto him, Yea.

34 And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word. **[This would be like asking: "Shall the Son of God save people without removing their sin?"]**

35 Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things; for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people—as though he had authority to command God. **[A clear twisting of Amulek's words.]**

36 Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast lied, for thou sayest that I spake as though I had authority to command God because I said he shall not save his people in their sins.

37 And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except ye inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye

cannot be saved in your sins. **[Must receive the baptism of fire, made possible because of Jesus Christ.]**

38 Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal Father?

39 And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;

There are some that use these scriptures to teach that Jesus is the Father and that there is no hierarchy of heavenly beings in the Elohim. The “Eternal Father of heaven and earth” is a true description of Jesus Christ, as he is both the creator of this earth and all things around it, as directed by the Father. He is one with God, and is the beginning and end of our salvation.

40 And he shall come into the world to redeem his people **[those of the covenant]**; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life **[The gift of the Holy Ghost and the resurrection of light which manifests itself in the world to come.]**, and **[this]** salvation cometh to none else.

41 Therefore the wicked remain **[telestial]** as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

42 Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death. **[Lose the bands that bind us to this world.]**

43 The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt. **[The resurrection of the just is where our spirit and bodily form are united permanently in perfection, which means in its state of light or glory.]**

44 Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body **[its visage and form without corruption]**, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil. **[Every soul in one manner or another, depending upon the glory in which they abide, shall be judged of the Lord and sent to their place of glory.]**

45 Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. **[What kind of life is a resurrection in relation to the mortal body?]** I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal **[without death]**, that they can no more see corruption **[decay]**.

The key words to consider, “the whole becoming spiritual.” The resurrection is a spiritual manifestation of the glory in which we reside, where our bodies and spirit are combined to a perfection of light and substance that cannot be taken away.

46 Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zeezrom began to tremble. And thus ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.

The power of the Spirit of God had overwhelmed Zeezrom that he was overcome with fear and began to tremble. It was clear to Zeezrom that he was out of his league as he stood before a prophet of God.

Questions and Answers

(“ the whole becoming spiritual.” The resurrection is a “spiritual manifestation” of the glory in which we reside, where our bodies and spirit are combined to a perfection of light and substance that cannot be taken away.”) Our Telesial bodies are never brought out of the grave are they? Some bodies are never buried and are scattered to the four winds. Are new bodies made according to the glory we will receive either a Telesial, Terrestrial or Celestial? And my question is how are these bodies made? Are they made from the elements of the glory we will receive? Do they have to be exactly like the one we have in this life? Can they be made according to our desires? Not in vanity but some have bodies that are a struggle for them. I have always wondered about this. Can you shed more light upon this subject? **[The elements of our physical body do not form the resurrected body. Our bones do not regenerate and become a perfect body in that manner. Our resurrected bodies are light according to the glory we inhabit, which is matter more refined, perfected, and with greater permanence than the dust which our temporal form dwells. We will appear according to our desire and familiarity. PR**

Verse 45...(“ I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal.”) When we condescend in the 4th estate what happens to our resurrected bodies from the 2nd estate? And our new body in the 4th estate? Is it just left in “ the grave “ and we go back to the body we had previously? Or because we receive new glory from the 4th estate condescension we are given that new body in a higher glory? One more question, when in the 3rd estate are we in our resurrected body from the 2nd estate or because we have agreed to condescend to a 4th estate we wait to have that body resurrected? Thank you for your patience with my questions. I just wonder about these things and I love learning all there is to know. **[We do not rise from the earth in a resurrected body in that manner of speaking. When a person condescends they leave behind their glory and condescend beneath their status in order to help save souls, which is a great sacrifice. Jesus did this, yet He condescended beneath all things for the eternal sacrifice He fulfilled. Our spirit is the body we are concerned with, not the physical body. The spirit is**

resurrected in a body that is perfected according to the grace it has received. PR]

Was Zeezrom House of Israel? Second estate? An undecided among the children of men? Dark estate being? **[Zeezrom was the House of Israel, but I do not know his estate. PR]**

“To our purposes in this 2nd estate, there is only one God to whom we must know to be saved.”

I have been wondering how, If intelligence has no beginning and cannot be created, how were the animals “created” when they obviously have spirits and intelligence like we do? Are there animal “Gods” who their spirit bodies descend from? Or were their spirits truly created by Heavenly Father by organizing intelligence somehow?

I can’t figure out how Heavenly Father and Mother could call forth intelligences that responded to them and those become their spirit children but a similar organizing of intelligence produces the spirit of my sweet pet dog instead of a spirit child.

(I also had a dream experience years ago where I knew the horse I was riding in Heaven was the sister twin of the male horse my son – who was actually one of my favorite spirit brothers – was riding. The horses seemed to be born/organized in male/female pairs like our spirits are.) **[All intelligence has a different capacity for growth. For example, the elements consist of gold, silver, copper, etc. In the darkness God calls forth the intelligence and organizes them according to their capacities, which do not change. Some will be animals. Some animals are greater than others. After they are created there are angels of God that nurture them and prepare them to fill the measure of their creation. PR]**

Are you allowed to answer this mystery?

“The “Eternal Father of heaven and earth” is a true description of Jesus Christ, as he is both the creator of this earth and all things around it, as directed by the Father. He is one with God, and is the beginning and end of our salvation.”

I pray to Heavenly Father in the name of Jesus Christ but sometimes I find myself talking directly to Jesus, silently throughout the day. Or at least talking to “God”, knowing both He and HF can hear me but expecting Jesus to answer.

Is this incorrect? I’ve wondered about this. The Nephites prayed to Jesus when He was with them in 3rd Nephi but the Lord’s Prayer prays to “Father who Art in Heaven”, which is kinda both Christ and Heavenly Father together.

Who should I pray to normally? **[You should pray to Heavenly Father until the Spirit directs you otherwise. I was told to pray directly to Jesus after receiving the gift of the Holy Ghost. But, sometimes on rare occasion I am told to pray to the Father in His name. PR]**

When is praying to Christ a prompting one might have?

Am I showing disrespect if I’m silently talking to Christ throughout my day as “God” because it seems to be Christ who answers?

I’m sure this is such an elementary question but I don’t fully understand!

Why spend so much time in engraving so many words on limited plates about their currency? Just to show the level of bribe/ temptation offered to Amulek? Why not just say “And Zeezrom offered an exceedingly great sum of money....” **[I believe everything that was included in the Book of Mormon was inspired by Mormon to include because it had relevance to our day. By showing how currency was used and abused by the wicked to undermine a society gives an interesting viewpoint for us to consider. PR]**

Alma11:20 & Luke11:52 “Woe unto you, lawyers! for ye have taken away the key of knowledge: ye entered not in yourselves, and them that were entering in ye hindered.” Is the key of knowledge the gift of the holy ghost? or something else? —thanks **[Jesus Christ is the key of knowledge for us, by the power of the Holy Ghost we may know the truth of all things.] PR**

Hi PR, as far as the resurrection goes I understand we inherit our bodies of light and glory not made up of the dust of this earth but a more refined matter. Just curious what happened to the Saviors physical body, since the tomb was empty? Just quickened into non existence? Or he entered back into it (i remember now i think that was mentioned in one of your books) and it became quickened/changed into matter more refined than flesh and blood? Would that be a sufficient description of how it works? Thanks **[There are many kinds of resurrections. The use of the word “quickening” is a good one to describe the change of physical matter. This is the same thing that occurs when a body is translated. The old body is no more. PR]**

Vs 3: Is the reason we don't find Nephite coins because the ancient way of money being measured weights of gold/silver was what the Nephites used? It would make sense if they were digging up their own gold that they would be trading by weight/measure as opposed to what we think of as coins. (Because who would oversee the making & stamping of coins? Weighing nuggets of gold would be easier for all the people.) Have you been shown whether they formed the gold & silver into bars, ingots, coins, etc? Did they stamp them in any way or just leave them plain? **[That's a good question. I never saw anything like that. PR]**

Open the Mysteries – Alma 12:1-37

1 Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him **[Sometimes we just need to open our mouth and speak when the Spirit tell us.]**, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

2 Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise: **[It's not every day that the former Chief Judge of the land and leader of the church of Christ speaks in your town, and that a prominent citizen of the town claims an angel taught them, and at the same time they silence the most ruthless lawyer that the town knows. This is alarming to them.]**

3 Now Zeezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

The spirit of discernment is where we are given clarity regarding another's thoughts, intentions, or even the dynamics of a situation, so that we may be a servant of the Lord for others, or be protected ourselves from the scheming of the adversary.

4 And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out— **[As I read this I think of the many social issues in America today, and the many who work to lie and deceive the people.]**

5 Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

6 And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity. **[There are three things that easily bind a people down to destruction: a passionate false belief in something that is contrary to God's laws, an addiction that is not thought to be harmful, and idolatry for someone or something. All of these are the result of pride, where we place personal gratification above our faith in God.]**

7 Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy. **[The difference between the spirit of discernment or revelation, and the spirit of prophecy, is that prophecy means you are commanded to speak what the Lord has given to you.]**

8 And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works? **[Asking questions is a sign of a repentant heart.]**

9 And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

This is one of my favorite scriptures. Here, Zeezrom begins to ask questions regarding something that is considered part of the mysteries, the truth regarding the resurrection of the dead. There are rules regarding how the Lord imparts this knowledge to us. Many are given the mysteries and receive according to their faith and the questions they ask. The “heed and diligence” that Alma is referring to is another way to describe faith – seeking revelation and acting upon it.

10 And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

What does it mean to “harden his heart?” Our heart is the foundation of our desires and willingness to believe. When we place stakes in the ground and our unbelief is rigid we prevent the Lord from giving us His revelations. When we have a “broken heart” we are willing to hear and see all things without limitations. From there, depending upon the questions we ask (a sign of our faith), we are taught line upon line until we know all things. What are the mysteries? All things which are kept from the world. These begin with an understanding of the Everlasting Covenant and God’s dealings with men. They encompass his creations, both of heaven and earth and all things associated with them. The mysteries of heaven are the most beautiful and sacred of the Lord’s word to us and should be sought with all one’s heart and mind until you are able to stand in the presence of God and ask questions uninhibited. This is His desire for you when you have reached that level of faith and holiness.

In my writings I have touched upon many mysteries, which the Lord has allowed me to share. However, it only scratches the surface and you are invited to come to Him and drink of the living Waters of Life and partake of the Fruit yourself.

11 And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell. **[The vast majority of those who live upon this earth believe only the lesser portion of the word, and some are taken captive by Satan because they seek to know him more intimately.]**

12 And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works. **[The nature of a telestial realm is that we endure mortality. The higher realms are immortal, where death does not exist. To say we are judged, is to mean we are separated and organized according to the intelligence or glory which we possess, and sent to a sphere where we may abide.]**

13 Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, insomuch that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned. **[When we are bathed in the fire of God's glory our hearts are made pure and white, which is a sign of our standing before God.]**

14 For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence. **[Our words, works, and thoughts are a record of who we are. When we repent and come unto Christ we begin to acquire the virtues of godliness until the Father declares that we are worthy, and the virtue of charity is bestowed upon us, and the baptism of fire makes us clean. Then the blood of the Lamb makes us holy as we are given the gift of the Holy Ghost and born again as a Son or Daughter of Christ, worthy to stand in His presence.]**

15 But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance. **[We are all standing before God every day as we make choices of what we desire and whom we serve. His all-seeing-eye knows all things. There is a day of judgment for all men and women, which is according to our day of reckoning in this life or the next.]**

16 And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness. **[Death of the physical body is where we see our immediate standing with God. To be prevented from entering His presence is to know we have not yet been washed clean from the blood and sins of our generation.]**

17 Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will. **[These are those who have chosen the adversary. They have received the baptism of darkness, which is an oath like covenant to seek that which Satan would give them in exchange for their love.]**

18 Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption. **[They cannot try again, because they will not be allowed to inherit a body. These shall be sent to Outer Darkness.]**

19 Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished; **[To hear the highest authority of the church preach such divisive (true) doctrine with such an authoritative way must have both shocked and angered the proud people of Ammonihah.]**

20 But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die?

21 What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever. **[a beautiful mystery]**

Cherubim are the angels that guard the gates, particularly the gates to the Throne of Heaven where God dwells. There is an actual Tree of Life there, but the flaming sword is the glory of God that prevents all things unclean and unholy from entering. When Adam and Eve condescended they were clothed in skins (mortal flesh) and began the process of redemption for themselves and their posterity.

22 Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain. Now we see that Adam did fall **[required to condescend]** by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word **[commandment]** of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind **[seed of Adam]** became a lost and fallen people. **[was separated from God]**

23 And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time **[chosen to remain in the presence of God]**, there would have been no death **[mortality in the second estate for his posterity]**, and the word **[commandments of the Elohim]** would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die. **[This would have thwarted the work of the Lord.]**

24 And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life **[mortality]** became a probationary **[transitional]** state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead. **[The purpose of life is to learn how to have faith sufficient to stand in the presence of God. Our resurrection is when our spirit bodies are made holy and capable of this ascension.]**

25 Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption **[Everlasting Covenant]**, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

26 And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect. **[They would have never progressed, and all creation would cease to move forward.]**

27 But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end. **[This is the final judgment at the end of the Millennium where all people are separated according to their glory.]**

28 And after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

29 Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men **[and women]** to behold of his glory. **[Angels converse with us often, especially when we are awakening to the Lord, or have made previous covenants.]**

30 And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works. **[Adam and Eve went through this same process. Your faith, repentance, and holy works will open unto you the mysteries of Heaven as the angels prepare you to receive all things.]**

31 Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they **[Adam and Eve]** having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal **[required to condescend to enter mortality]**, and becoming as gods, knowing good from evil **[learning to have great faith]**, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

Faith is the greatest principle which we learn in this life. It is the power of creation, according to the Spirit of Truth which is in us, to see in our mind's eye the reality of what must be, and power of God to its fulfillment.

32 Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil **[follow Satan]**, the penalty thereof being a second death **[separation from the dominion of God]**, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness **[Outer Darkness in the Dominion of Lucifer]**; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice **[dividing of glory]** could not be destroyed **[altered]**, according to the supreme goodness of God.

33 But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;

34 Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest. **[The Atonement]**

35 And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

The Atonement is the link between Father and Son, Mother and Daughter, an eternal sealing that allows for the raising of our glory through the graces (estates), according to His word.

36 And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts **[not repent]** ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation **[testing]**, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting

destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first. **[Our first death was when we were required to enter our second estate and leave the presence of God. The second death is for those who choose in the second estate to follow Satan and are permanently disconnected from the Father.]**

37 And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments **[revelations]** which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

The people of Ammonihah were after the order of Nehor, which means they believed that all men were saved equally. To hear this new doctrine regarding the justice of God must have been shocking to their current beliefs; therefore, Alma emphasized that if their hearts were hard they would not accept it.

It is not a sin to share the mysteries of God when the Lord requires it. Usually, the Lord opens these things when there is a purpose. For those who read my comments, understand that there is a purpose to these mysteries, which is to inspire your faith to seek the Lord for yourselves. I have only exposed a tiny portion of these mysteries in my writing. You must come to the Lord and ask questions so that He may teach you all that you need to know.

Questions and Answers

23 And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time [chosen to remain in the presence of God], there would have been no death [mortality in the second estate for his posterity], 26 And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect. [They would have never progressed, and all creation would cease to move forward.]

Is this saying that Adam and Eve could have remained in the garden and had second estate children/posterity? I've heard of this before but I never looked into it, I couldn't understand how second estates could dwell in a Terrestrial Eden? **[No, a second estate can only dwell in a telestial sphere. It means Adam and Eve would have remained in their current estate and not been able to progress and their posterity would also not progress, thereby frustrating the entire plan of redemption. PR]**

Is Outer Darkness located in a Black Hole? **[Those are gateways to those places. There are also gateways to higher dimensions which appear as light. PR]**

My heart is bursting with joy from that limited reply. Thank you PR!

Are you allowed to share more about Adam's role here on Earth and Michaels role before he became that Adam? And Eve? Has she always been the Mother of all living and known by other names? I know there's apocryphal works which I have been VERY enlightened with yet so many members of many faiths have no idea about them. Indeed, the Holy Ghost whispers truth to us when we are prepared to inquire with some deep questions. I'm so grateful for your candidness and willingness to prompt us to dig a little deeper! **[I wish I could, but those questions are forbidden for me to talk about. They are directly related to the Everlasting Covenant and are mysteries beyond this world. I will tell you this – it is SO BEAUTIFUL and the love of God is breathtaking! PR]**

Are there mysteries that the Lord would never tell you? Or that He would never have His servants reveal?

For example, there's a lot of people who believe they were revealed who they were in a past life, etc. **[There was one time I asked a question and the Lord said, "It is best that you not be shown this, but it is given unto you if you desire." I said, "Then Lord, please do not show me." He seemed pleased with my response. PR]**

According to the Garden of Eden story, it seems that the Adversary/opposition has a direct role in influencing higher estate beings to partake of mortality and condescend. What is the nature of the transgression the Adversary tempts them with? Is the Adversary required in this thing, otherwise condescension/falling in glory would not be possible? **[At the Grand Council, before the beginning of a new world, Satan is loosed for a season to tempt the 4th estate. He then will confront them here upon earth to offer them a place in his dark kingdom. PR]**

If it's not a "be good" gospel, or even a be extra good for 30 or 40 or 75 years gospel... and it's not a matter of checking off boxes each and every day... then "What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us? (Heleman 5:40) That right there is a mystery for many!

Aminadab explains: "And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you."

Repent, cry unto the voice until you have great faith in Christ. Jesus added later: be baptized, be as a little child, come unto me so you can have the gift of the Holy Ghost. There seems to be a sticking point though. The 300 people in that Heleman 5 prison didn't go through weeks or even months or years of repentance... Neither does Zeezrom. There is something I am missing here and it points to faith... and more crying to the voice.

How does one get to that overnight or 'a matter of days' repentance? It seems like they were put in check by what they were seeing and it caused much humility to sufficient repentance

Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise: [It's not every day that the former

Chief Judge of the land and leader of the church of Christ speaks in your town, and that a prominent citizen of the town claims an angel taught them, and at the same time they silence the most ruthless lawyer that the town knows. This is alarming to them.] Did you see this same event happening in our future? **[No, but that's an interesting thought. PR]**

There is an actual Tree of Life there, but the flaming sword is the glory of God that prevents all things unclean and unholy from entering. Is the Tree of Life still hidden on/in this world, or is it perhaps with the city of Enoch? **[It is at the Throne of God. PR]**

Thank you PR, this has been such a rich chapter. It's very motivating to be reminded that these mysteries are available to all. It's very inspiring. Thanks again.

Can the mysteries only be known after one's Second Comforter? Can it really come before if you ask?

From the looks of your blog, it appears that you learned many of these mysteries prior to receiving your 2nd Comforter. Most of the mysteries I've learned have come from your hints. I'm grateful the Lord has led me here and grateful for the mission the Lord has given you at this time. How did you get such detailed information so early on? **[I began to learn about revelation at the end of 2014, but the Lord did not expose what I consider the mysteries until after my Second Comforter. My first book "How to Have Your Second Comforter" documents my journey. PR]**

What is happening during the millennium if no mortal, telestial children are being born (because the earth is now terrestrial)? What do we spend a thousand years doing? **[Learning everything about God and the universe. There are few restrictions where you can visit. The experiences are unfathomable. PR]**

In my case the greatest mysteries were revealed after my Second Comforter. I would refer to Alma 26:22.

Does condescension of the Great and Noble require them to transgress? If so, are the beguiled to do so? Or do they volunteer in the Great Council? **[The Great and Noble are the 144k, which include the dispensation heads. Only Adam and Eve transgress. The rest are chosen to condescend to mortality directly. PR]**

Did Adam and Eve have to transgress? I thought they were meant to wait on God's timing to partake of the fruit. **[No, they did not have to transgress, but they would have at a future point been allowed to partake of the forbidden fruit. The transgression required them to leave the Garden immediately; whereas, they would have stayed longer had they been obedient. It is the equivalent of someone learning the mysteries before they are ready. They suddenly have to choose whether to believe or reject and are placed at a crossroads. In fact, the forbidden fruit was the knowledge of the greatest of mysteries. PR]**

So are you saying that the process of Adams and Eves transgressing is not a part of the plan on every new world? We now seem to like to paint Eve as kind of the “enlightened” one who understood what was necessary to have children and sacrifice, with Adam kind of content to shoot the breeze forever in the garden... If they stayed in the garden longer until permission was granted, would a Savior still be required? Is the Savior a provision for this anomalous situation of transgression? Or is transgression at the end of the millennium – with the subsequent desire to return to God’s presence always part of the eternal round? **[God knew that Adam and Eve would partake and thereby require a “fall” or condescension to occur to bring about a redemption and salvation of the children of Adam. Every world that brings forth the first estate into mortality begins with an Adam and Eve in this scenario. What may differ is the way in which a fall occurs. PR]**

There is an Adam and Eve for every Eternal Round, does this also mean that every new world has a House of Israel, an Enoch (and city of Zion), a Noah, an Abraham, a Moses, seven dispensations, etc.? Are these just titles that 4th Estates take on as prophets as they condescend on every new world? I guess I’m wondering if each new world repeats itself following an eternal pattern, the only difference really being the choices individuals make and the details of how those choices play out during that particular Eternal Round? **[Yes, that is true that there is a pattern, but the names may vary. PR]**

I am under the impression that the Father created our spirits, but did the son create our bodies? If so, does this allow us if we choose to become one with them? Also was Adam/Michael a steward with **[The Father created our spirit tabernacles. At each stage of our ascension we are given access to God through the Father. Jesus is our Father by means of the resurrection. There is a mystery in this. PR]**

Sorry I am sometimes clumsy with my phone.
Is Adam assisting in creation? Following or directing with God the Father? **[Adam played a key role in the creation, under the direction of Elohim and Jehovah, as they have been called. PR]**

What would you say is the particular element that makes us telestial, when we arrive with the same amount of agency, personality and opportunity that we had as 1st estate? I don’t believe it’s our body or our location. As I understand it you can reside here in your unchanged body while your spirit becomes terrestrial after a baptism of fire and receiving the gift of the HG. So what is it exactly that makes us fallen, unclean and natural. What is it that makes our ‘natures evil continually.’ Thank you so much. **[The spirit combined with a temporal body is what constitutes a soul. This temporal body is the “dust” that is temporary, but plays a powerful role in helping us to develop faith, which can be accomplished in no other way. The element that determines what degree of glory we obtain is the glory of God, which is the intelligence that abides in us. I don’t know enough about physics to categorize it, but it seems to resemble intelligent plasma. Perhaps that is not even the best way to describe it. PR]**

When Adam and Eve entered the garden did they have their full memories? Your account would seem to suggest they had their memories and only lost them after they were expelled from the garden into mortality. It would make more sense that way, but I'm still not entirely clear on the sequence of events. Also, did Lucifer really appear as a serpent to them in the garden / temple or was that imagery to describe an angel of light? **[Adam and Eve were born into the Garden. They didn't step out of the mud or some other strange way. They had forgotten all, just as we do, but were abiding in a higher realm where they were capable of walking with God. The serpent is a symbol of a being of light, or higher estate that has the ability to die and live again. Lucifer was the source of the temptation which gave Satan the task of tempting Eve with the forbidden knowledge. PR]**

So Adam and Eve condescended (in a sense) by being born into the garden without their prior memories, though they maintained a station where they could walk with God and were near to the throne? The temple was located within the garden where they were approached by Satan after they reached a certain age? What kind of body did they have after their birth into the garden? Did the world in which the garden was located fall as well and become this world we live on, or did they leave that world and come to this one? **[It was a terrestrial realm in which Adam and Eve were placed. The earth condescended as well and entered into a telestial glory. PR]**

Thank you, I think I shouldn't have used the word element, it denotes a scientific matter. What I more wanted to know was, what is it that makes us unclean/fallen in the first place? Is it the fact that we have knowledge? **[I believe that spirit matter is a kind of element, but more refined. Only a spirit body which is in harmony with God's light can stand in His presence. That harmony does not exist in a temporal world unless we are standing in the pillar of light and received the gift of the Holy Ghost. Knowledge is not related to being clean. The fruit of knowledge in itself was not unclean. It was the transgression that required them to leave the Garden at that time to fulfill all righteousness. PR]**

Foreknowledge of God – Alma 13:1-31

1 And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds **[as an example]** forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children **[the followers of Christ]**; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

2 And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption. **[The**

actual manner in which these priests were called and chosen is the same manner in which we receive redemption through Christ.]

3 And this is the manner after which they were ordained [**set apart and chosen**]—being called and prepared [**chosen**] from the foundation of the world [**before Adam came to this earth**] according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works [**as a second and third estate**]; in the first place [**in mortality**] being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith [**sought the Lord’s will in all things**], are called with a holy calling [**from God**], yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption for such [**They belong to Christ from before the world was.**]

This verse is specifically referring to the 4th estate, the Just Men and Women made perfect through that which they suffer as they condescend for God to help save the souls of the House of Israel. These are the Saviors on Mount Zion, the prophets and prophetesses, priests, and priestesses of the Highest, the Anointed Ones, the angels of the Dominions, and the Gatherers in the last days.

4 And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren. [**Referring to a time before the foundation of this world.**]

5 Or in fine, in the first place [**In mortality**] they were on the same standing with their brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared— [**The Atonement of Christ, from before this world, made it possible for these to be exalted, and then to be called with this holy calling because “they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them.”**]

6 And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God [**Melchizedek or priesthood of the Son of God**], to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

7 This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—[**The pattern that is without beginning or end, an eternal round of ascension, which is the Everlasting Covenant.**]

8 Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end—[**This event took place after the Grand Council at the end of the Millennium in the previous world. Their ascension was sealed upon them as they chose to give up all things to gain all things. To sacrifice their glory to save souls,**

to bring them to the Only Begotten and thereby prepare all to ascend again according to the grace and mercy of the Father.]

9 Thus they become high priests **[and priestesses]** forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. **[fullness of glory, perfection of His word, and complete understanding]** And thus it is. Amen.

10 Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God **[144k]**; and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish;

Faith is the most powerful principle of the universe. The desire to seek the Lord's will and then to act upon it. Many angels of the 3rd estate after they leave this life do not move forward for a long time. It is difficult to give up one's glory to sink back into the hell hole of mortality, but the greatest of all do this because of their love for the Father and desire to save the House of Israel.

11 Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

12 Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God. **[This is a reference to the gift of the Holy Ghost, the ascension to the third estate.]**

13 And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest. **[Eternal Life in the world to come.]**

14 Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever. **[a mystery]**

15 And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

Why would Abraham give a tenth of all his possessions to the King/Priest of Salem? Because God commanded it for the sacrifices.

16 Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord. **[Here, we are given the purpose of temple work: to learn the pattern by which we are made clean and become like Him.]**

17 Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness; **[much like the Jews]**

18 But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his

days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father. **[Father]**

19 Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

20 Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction. **[The Nephite scriptures and the Jaredite records had more information regarding the city of Salem than exists in our scriptures today.]**

21 And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand **[sign of a servant]** unto them and cried with a mighty voice, saying: Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh; **[coming of Christ]**

22 Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us. **[the angels]**

23 And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

We are also tremendously blessed in our day, as angels visit us and bring good tidings regarding the gathering of the Elect and the establishment of Zion.

I once asked the Lord if there were many having these experiences like me. He said there were more now than there has been in a long time. But they all see different things depending upon the questions they ask.

24 For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

Ministering angels come to us in different ways. Some speak to our hearts and minds, some come in vision or dreams, or other ways. Often we don't realize the source of these messages.

25 And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice. **[Joseph Smith would speak like this, hoping the Second Coming would be in his day. We don't know exactly when He will come, but the angels are busy preparing us and we look for the signs.]**

26 And it shall be made known unto just and holy men **[prophets]**, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

27 And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

28 But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering; **[To “watch and pray continually” is the key to opening your spiritual senses; to hear, see, and exercise the gifts of the Spirit. When we are close to the Lord we can overcome every trial or temptation we face. A daily walk with God is a state of holiness that opens every door to heaven.]**

29 Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

30 And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

31 And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book. **[Mormon edited out much that was written in the record. The words of Alma are rich with nuance and deep into the mysteries of God. I hope these annotations I have included for this chapter will help you to formulate questions to seek further revelation for yourself.]**

Questions and Answers

I have prayed and received answers that there are fifth and sixth estate beings on the Earth right now, is this correct? I was just wondering if there are 8 Estate beings or even higher here that might not know it yet as well? And any insight and advice you can give to these diff estate souls to prepare, I would be eternally grateful 😊 I try and read your posts everyday, and I'm filled with the spirit! You have enlightened my mind and helped my heart to catch fire! Thank you PR **[There are no beings higher than 4th estate living in mortal bodies on the earth at this time that I am aware of. PR]**

Why is it so difficult to leave the 3rd estate and come down again? I don't see this world as a terrible place but then again, the Lord saw fit to bless my family in ways that bring ease to this temporal existence. But then again, I'd come down in a less favorable living condition in a heartbeat if it meant adding glory to Father.

I just want to be a useful cog in the celestial wheel... very much so. I can't imagine attaining 3rd estate and then telling the Lord, no I am good here as is, someone else can go.

Could you elaborate on why there is difficulty for 3rd estate beings to condescend once more? **[It is rare that people live so comfortably on the earth as we are now in America. For most who experience mortality it is a constant struggle, with a few moments of joy sprinkled here and there. When someone experiences Eternal Life, it is the most incredibly liberating and joyful experience, the thought of condescending to a physical body again is like jumping into a septic tank. The only reason one would consider it would be**

to go in to save someone. It is our love for God's children that creates the willingness to give up our glory to do such a thing.]

Now these ordinances [in the temple of Salem] were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord. [Here, we are given the purpose of temple work: to learn the pattern by which we are made clean and become like Him.] Was it then, like it is today, where people would return to the temple to learn by having some sort of proxy name of someone who's past? Or was it for themselves? Can you perhaps elaborate God's views on family history work and blanketing everyone who's ever lived with baptism of water? **[With the exception of baptism for the dead, the temple experience in an Enochian level temple was for the husband and wife only, and not a proxy experience like is done in the LDS temple today. The Mosaic temple was different in that it mostly taught the telestial ascension. The Enochian, or Terrestrial level taught the fullness of the pattern by which we ascend to the Eternal Father. PR]**

And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand [sign of a servant] If one could see with his/her spiritual eyes, would they see marks on the servant's palms? **[Yes, they would see the marking of light, a tau symbol on both palms. When they receive a fullness of the sealing power there is another mark that lights up on the forehead. A servant is born with the mark on every cell of their body, yet must be awakened to that power like turning on a light switch. PR]**

Ministering angels come to us in different ways. Some speak to our hearts and minds, some come in vision or dreams, or other ways. Often we don't realize the source of these messages.

Are we ever taught in our dreams, then upon waking not remember or have any recollection that anything out of the ordinary happened? If so, once we become closer to the Lord, will those memories and messages be recalled to us? **[Unless we have a physical ailment, we all dream at night where our subconscious minds experience many things. When the dreams become particularly acute, it is often either the angels of God or the adversary affecting the mind to see certain things. When you awaken and the memory of the dream is with you, no matter how strange, it is good to think of the dream and ask the Lord if it has meaning to your life, and where was the source. For many, it is the beginning of the spiritual senses awakening. PR]**

of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.

Did Alma not have the words of Nephi in 1 Nephi 10:4 that gave them a fairly specific time when the Messiah would come to them, or was that information sealed from them? Or was he speaking of the end times? **[In 1 Nephi 19:8, Nephi is told by an angel that Christ would be born 600 years after his family left Jerusalem. Yes, I**

would think that Alma was aware of that prophecy, but perhaps not. Alma desired to be on the earth when Christ would come. Alma would later be translated and likely saw the fruition of his desire, “Oh, that I were an angel!” PR]

The thought of coming back to earth at a different time than this does make me cringe, it makes sense that it would feel like going into a septic tank. I can't imagine Jesus in all His glory coming down here, especially when He did, His love! Amazing love! I sometimes get sick of this telestial life, and we have it good! In comparison to others. I hope this doesn't mean that I'm a selfish daughter, because if we want to be like Jesus and love Him we would want to fight next to Him to save others. Thank you for this insight, especially in a day like today.

“The actual manner in which these priests were called and chosen is the same manner in which we receive redemption through Christ.”

PR...this is quite the statement. It seems chiastic.

I am wondering if your intent is to say by receiving redemption we are chosen as priests and priestesses? The choice is ours if we heed that call?

Thank you [When we repent we are called, and when we receive the gift of the Holy Ghost we are chosen. When we are willing to ascend to the 4th estate we are Called, when we are sealed up we are Chosen. And so it is with each step of our sacrifice and ascension. PR]

Would you be able to elaborate on Enoch and Melchizedek and their cities being “taken up” because of their righteousness? There is something so special about Enoch/Raphael. Your book sheds much light and my own confirmation brings me peace but I would love to hear any other stories you are allowed to share regarding Enoch and ABEL. Thank you PR! **[Oh how I would love to! I had to edit out much of those details, but there is still plenty to think over when reading “A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations.” PR]**

[It is rare that people live so comfortably on the earth as we are now in America. For most who experience mortality it is a constant struggle, with a few moments of joy sprinkled here and there. When someone experiences Eternal Life, it is the most incredibly liberating and joyful experience, the thought of condescending to a physical body again is like jumping into a septic tank. The only reason one would consider it would be to go in to save someone. It is our love for God's children that creates the willingness to give up our glory to do such a thing.]

Does it mean anything significant if one is born into an “easy” life vs a “difficult” life? **[If life is too easy it is a curse. If life is too difficult it can hamper a servant's mission. It is the responsibility of the angels of the principalities and the Guardians to ensure that the worthy House of Israel are given the experiences they need. If they break covenants or are not careful things can get out of hand. This is not the only time in history that a people has been overly comfortable. PR]**

D&C 82:3

3 For of him unto whom much is given much is required; and he who sins against the

greater light shall receive the greater condemnation.

If one who finds themselves with an easy American life finds this blog, makes an effort to open their spiritual eyes but doesn't quite get there, that's where the condemnation being spoken of occurs? **[No, not at all. The only condemnation is if we are not repenting and coming unto Him. All we are required in this life is a broken heart and contrite spirit. After that we have been redeemed we are expected to continue to seek Him and the Lord will guide the individual according to their faith. The Beatitudes and Sermon on the Mount help in this process. PR]**

Easy American life defined as: able to provide all temporal comforts in abundance plus ample free time to pursue the things of God.

Honestly, it seems like the difficult Haitian or Congolese life has the advantage in celestial terms. **[The best life is the one where you have only what you need and nothing more. An excessive life can lead to pride and idolatry. If you struggle for basic survival it may be difficult to trust in the Lord. The Hebrews were led in the wilderness under these conditions and the Lord had to give them rigid laws to protect them and keep them in the right way. Today, most of the people of the world who live in terrible conditions are without the covenant of God because they chose not to have it. This is from before birth and is a cultural thing, although there are sometimes pockets of souls who are born with the covenant in different races and cultures prepared to receive the Gospel in this life. This is a condition related to the Times of the Gentiles. An interesting note: the evil spirits that follow Satan in the spirit world are promised bodies born to a life of great comfort if they prove their valor for him in the spirit realm. PR]**

I have read, not on your site, that those who will be Saviors on Mt Zion (4th estate, I assume) will undergo more trials in mortality than most 2nd estate under covenant. "more trials" meaning harder/lasting longer/happening more frequently/etc. [Like Job; or Joseph of Egypt's trials versus his brothers' trials; or Joseph Smith's trials versus your typical 2019 Christian]. So that they can, not only empathetically (not just sympathetically) succor while gathering, but that their heavier trials qualify them and leave a spiritual mark that can be physically recognized by those whom they will help save. Is this true? **[Not that they will have more trials, but more specific trials. Everything about mortality is a physical challenge, but those of the covenant, and especially the 4th estate, are watched over by the angels so they are safe and protected according to the Lord's will. At some point the Lord allows Satan to be loosed to a degree to test His servant. This is similar to what occurred in the life of Job. What happened between Satan and God was a real thing, as Job was tested. A fourth estate will face Satan like no other person. The test is different for each, but the Lord knows their strength and doesn't allow more than they can bear. PR]**

[sign of a servant]

If one could see with his/her spiritual eyes, would they see marks on the servant's palms? [Yes, they would see the marking of light, a tau symbol on both palms. Do these markings have relation to the nail marks in the Savior's hands? **[They are**

like spiritual tattoos of light, for lack of a better description. Yes, they are related. PR]

Do higher estate beings have marks also in their wrists? **[I cannot say. PR]**

In pictures, or people's descriptions of seeing the marks of the Savior, they usually mention the marks on the hands and feet, and perhaps his side, but rarely do they mention the marks on his wrists, does he still bear those marks? **[Yes. PR]**

Thank you again for all the additional insight on things we've known, but never fully understood. It's so filling.

"It is rare that people live so comfortably on the earth as we are now in America."

What is the reason for this blessing? What should we use it for? **[We are the recipients of the sacrifice of our forebears, the goodness of previous generations. It gives great opportunity to the righteous and also the wicked to grow in power, so the Lord allows it and all things are building to the events that are prophecies in scripture. No, it's not for the purpose of doing family history work. PR]**

(I'm not sure that I buy the idea that it is to do family history work and endless endowments for the dead.)

When a soul is fulfilling the Christ role, is the death by crucifixion the same on each world? Is the pattern of a lamb sacrificed but no bone broken the same?

Or, because unique sacrifices are notable in Heaven, is the death and the mark(s) it leaves different for each Christ? **[I do not know the answer to that, only that Jesus said, "The Son can do nothing of himself, but what he seeth the Father do: for what things soever he doth, these also doth the Son likewise." John 5:19 PR]**

[Not that they will have more trials, but more specific trials..... At some point the Lord allows Satan to be loosed to a degree to test His servant A fourth estate will face Satan like no other person. The test is different for each, but the Lord knows their strength and doesn't allow more than they can bear. PR]

Moses did face Satan, Joseph Smith did. How God saved you when you face that? (did Angel or the Christ come down to comfort you or did you cast him like Moses?? **[The Lord gives you a head's up that it is coming. When it does you are advised not to allow your fears to overcome you, this is Satan's only power when confronting a servant of God. Usually, Satan will offer a great temptation which is exclusive to each servant, their greatest weakness. Very rarely is he successful in this environment. The 4th estate that fall are most often succumb before the foundation of the world and finish their dark oath after coming to mortality and joining Satan here. PR]**

[Not that they will have more trials, but more specific trials..... At some point the Lord allows Satan to be loosed to a degree to test His servant A fourth estate will face Satan like no other person. The test is different for each, but the Lord knows their strength and doesn't allow more than they can bear. PR]

Moses did face Satan, Joseph Smith did. How God saved you when you face that? (did Angel or the Christ come down to comfort you or did you cast him like Moses?? **[Yes,**

and I was shown how to handle the situation, but I have not yet faced Satan's temptation. The Lord has given me counsel for how to prepare for that in the future. Each servant, depending upon their mission, will face the Adversary. PR]

*there must be something for me to learn!

I had the following question:

What happened? We are black (Africans)? [There are many races on this earth. The African people are very old souls compared to the original House of Israel. When the Times of the Gentiles commenced the Gospel began to be preached more heavily amongst all races, mostly on the other side of the veil. Those who choose to make the covenant were placed under the watch of the angels and these covenant beings are born in all parts of the world, including Africa. All whose hearts love God and seek Him are covenant beings and have greater favor in the eyes of God than most white people who have abandoned the Lord. If your heart burns within you as you seek Jesus Christ you are what is called "The Elect."]

Is it related to a choice we made before here? Which one? [Yes, the Everlasting Covenant is to follow God's way of eternal progression.]

It is said that white people dominate Africans because of the curse of Noah on his son Ham and his posterity? **[Ham's posterity is not the black race, although they did mix with them. In my book "A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations" I discussed those details. Every time a culture has risen to a higher level it is because the House of Israel has blessed them. The greatest example of this is when the Tribe of Ephraim migrated into Northern Europe and the British Isles. Much of the great innovations of the world have come through this bloodline, which has both blessed and cursed the world, as Satan has used this to his benefit. Both the greatest and evil of all the souls of men have come through the House of Israel. Africa has not dominated the world because it is fractured into many countries. Egypt is the one example of a powerful nation in the African continent, but it's greatest days were before the flood of Noah.]**

PR, what do you mean by "more specific" trials in this statement? **[There comes a time in a 4th estate's life where Satan will send an envoy to the Throne to ask that the limitations against a servant of God be loosed so they can tempt them. It is part of the pattern, which is allowed in heaven to tempt the servants that there may be opposition in all things. The Lord does not allow it, unless the servant is properly prepared and at that stage of the journey that they can resist Satan. The Adversary's servants that administer over this don't usually expect to be successful, but find it to be a great opportunity to have collateral damage when those who witness the fallout often lose faith. PR]**

[Not that they will have more trials, but more specific trials. Everything about mortality is a physical challenge, but those of the covenant, and especially the 4th estate, are watched over by the angels so they are safe and protected according to the Lord's will.

And by, ‘watched over by angels’, can that actually be living persons too? **[Not usually.]**

Thank you for the time and effort you put into these.

“There comes a time in a 4th estate’s life where Satan will send an envoy to the Throne to ask that the limitations against a servant of God be loosed so they can tempt them.” Does this happen before or after they receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost? Or both? **[After. PR]**

Do 4th estate servants have a time of testing after they receive the Second Comforter as well? **[They have already been tested and found worthy of Eternal Life, but Satan is given an opportunity to seduce them. PR]**

There comes a time in a 4th estate’s life where Satan will send an envoy to the Throne to ask that the limitations against a servant of God be loosed so they can tempt them. It is part of the pattern, which is allowed in heaven to tempt the servants that there may be opposition in all things. The Lord does not allow it, unless the servant is properly prepared and at that stage of the journey that they can resist Satan. The Adversary’s servants that administer over this don’t usually expect to be successful, but find it to be a great opportunity to have collateral damage when those who witness the fallout often lose faith. PR

-Can a 4th estate (or other estate) actually ASK to EXPERIENCE opposition in order to grow before coming to earth to fulfil their role in Earth? **[The nature of the calling requires it, so I’m not sure why they would ask. God sends them on their missions. Their purpose has nothing to do with experiencing things to give them a well rounded view. PR]**

– When I hear “pre-existence “and “pre-mortality”, I often think of that being the place where we were right before we were born into this world. I know there are the Virtues that teach spirits before we come to earth but wondering if it’s still called “pre-existence” while being taught by the virtues? **[They don’t use that term there. PR]**

– Last question- We often see the word “strength “ used throughout the scriptures and various definitions. What are your thoughts on receiving “strength” prior to mortality? Kinda like nourish and strengthen our bodies but as spirits as well. **[Everything related to strength in the spiritual sense is light, which is truth, and knowledge, and glory. When Alma and Amulek were strengthened in prison they were filled with the light of God, which also has an effect upon the body if it is used for that purpose. PR]**

Blessings to you and your family PR as well as all those who have BEEN blessed from your words of wisdom.

Regarding the 4th estate beings on this earth – Did they live on another earth as a second estate being with another Christ? **[That is part of the mysteries. The fourth estate are tied to Jesus Christ only. PR]**

Torture of the Innocents – Alma 14:1-29

1 And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures. **[It was a big event for the city of Ammonihah, and many talked about the famous exchange between Alma and Amulek, and the leaders in the city.]**

2 But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges. **[To lie about one's beliefs was a criminal offense in the Nephite culture.]**

3 And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily. **[without anyone noticing]**

4 But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land. **[An excessive use of force.]**

5 And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land. **[the land of Ammonihah]**

6 And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell. **[Similar to Alma the Younger, but without the angelic encounter.]**

7 And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them. **[Accusing of devil possession, spitting upon, and throwing stones is a traditional way the Jews dealt with criminals.]**

8 And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire. **[Such capital punishment was usually after being convicted of murder or treason in the highest court. This was mob violence from a people overcome by the adversary.]**

9 And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire. **[Satan uses fear, discouragement, and violence to manipulate his followers. Here he would test the righteous in the city of Ammonihah.]**

10 And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

This is a powerful story to include in the Book of Mormon. Here we have two prophets of the Lord, forced to witness the horrific murder of women and children, whose only crime was worshipping our Lord. Amulek wanted to exercise the faith to save them, and God would surely save them! Why wouldn't He? There are many instances in history and in even our own lives where we wonder why God does not intervene when we could have used Him the most.

Last week I attended a funeral of a young man who had been killed in a car accident. He had just repented of a life of sin and abuse. His future was looking good, when suddenly his life was taken. The mother was distraught, as you can imagine, and she was angry at God.

11 But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth **[To experience this is have the Spirit come upon you in a way that you cannot prevent yourself from taking action or inaction. The power of God moves upon you to do the Lord's will.]**me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

In the case where we see horrific murder, genocide, abuse, and wickedness amongst a people and we wonder why the Lord allows such things, we must remember that justice requires that a people become ripe in iniquity before the Lord allows the floodgates of His wrath to come upon them. Those of His followers who perish under this evil are brought home to Him. Today I consider the many lives that are taken around the world. The tens of thousands of innocents killed by radical Muslims. The tens of millions of babies killed in the womb. The millions of slaves, women and children, human trafficking that is far greater now than any time in the recorded history of the world.

12 Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

13 And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not. **[Alma was not afraid to die. He trusted in the Lord, which is the key to enduring all things.]**

14 Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will

ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone? **[Words put directly into his mouth by the adversary. Fire and brimstone is a great description of the kind of light and matter that exists in outer darkness. More importantly, the misery represented by the uncomfortable anguish of the soul.]**

15 Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves? **[Satan's main tactic is to use fear to prevent people from coming to Christ. This is why he attempts to torture and brutalize the followers of Christ, so that all people on the other side of the veil will be afraid to make the Everlasting Covenant. If you want to see where Satan's kingdom is today on earth, only look as far as those using fear to crush Christians and anyone seeking Jesus.]**

16 Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon. **[They believed all men were saved and that preachers should be rewarded for their good words.]**

17 And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison. **[Do not ever attempt to speak or converse with a devil, unless the Lord constrains you to do so.]**

18 And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing. **[These would be the equivalent of today's politicians.]**

19 And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.

20 And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves? **[They had been commanded by revelation to hold their responses from these people.]**

21 And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned? **[These individuals were literally possessed by evil spirits.]**

22 And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison. **[This is similar to conditions of prisoner of war: torture, starving, confinement, bindings, and psychological manipulation.]**

23 And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, **[middle of winter]** in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.

24 And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words. **[This reminds me of the priests of the Sanhedrin who smote Christ in the House of Caiaphas before He was sent to Pilate.]**

25 And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet. **[This must have been a shock to those witnessing, considering the weakened condition of their prisoners.]**

26 And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them. **[Such super-human strength was beyond anything these evil men had seen before.]**

27 And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

28 And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway **[without hesitation]** came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city. **[Had a person's spiritual eyes been open they would have seen the angels of the Shahophalim, the great warriors of God, shaking the earth and loosing the bands of Alma and Amulek. Their bodies were healed and invigorated, so that they could go forth and preach to the people.]**

29 Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

Questions and Answers

“Do not ever attempt to speak or converse with a devil, unless the Lord constrains you to do so.”

Why is this? Does speaking to them somehow acknowledge them in a way that gives them more power over us?

(I'm not planning on trying it!) **[Most of these beings are deceptive and play upon our emotions. It is playing with fire. My annotation is what the Lord has directly told me in this regard. PR]**

Vs 21: “gnashing their teeth upon them”

How does this look?

I've wondered if it is that nasty way of speaking through gritted teeth, like a snarl, where the speaker conveys barely restrained aggression. **[Yes, it is an expression to describe the unrestrained behavior of a possessed soul. PR]**

Vs 23: "And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, [middle of winter]"

About how many days did this torment last? **[I do not know how many days this lasted. It was very cold, but not enough to kill them in the prison conditions. I have not asked to see this event yet. PR]**

And was their winter similar to how cold it gets in mid-America now with snow? Or no snow and more like the winters in south Texas & Florida where it is subtropical and only freezes a couple nights per year?

Do you know what happened to Amulek's family? He eventually moves in with Alma in Zarahemla so I've always wondered why. **[There is certainly a gap in the story. I hope to ask the Lord more about this in the future. PR]**

Or is it Zeezrom who moved in with Alma? I need to look it up again. but I always wondered about Amulek's family and if they were among the martyred believers?

As a goat fleeth with her young from two lions.
It's funny how I just caught the symbolism here.

Were the women and children of Amulek's household killed? **[I have not yet inquired this of the Lord. I will post after I learn more. PR]**

("10 And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained")I just cannot even imagine having to witness this. Did the Lord in His mercy cause that the spirits of the women and children who were suffering this evil, have their spirits quickly leave their bodies so that they don't have to suffer such horrific deaths? Or is the pain of this quickly healed as they are caught up into heaven as it is stated in verse 11(" for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory")? Can you elaborate on this verse, what does it mean? Some people who suffer horrible painful events in this life are scarred psychologically for a long time. They struggle to be healed. Is the only true healing when they are eventually taken into heaven by the Lord? Is the beauty of heaven a healing beyond our comprehension? On a related topic, in Mosiah 17 you said, (" In the center of the fire stands Abinadi, his spirit enveloped with light and glory as his flesh begins to burn. Yes, he felt the pain, but death was sweet unto him as he passed through the veil into the arms of our Lord.] When it says "death was sweet unto him" , does it mean it is quickly forgotten? I understand a 4th estate, like Adinadi, being required to seal his testimony with his death to prepare himself. Did Abinadi know that he would be required to die this way when he was in preparation for his 4th estate experience? Are many of the major details of a condescension for a 4th estate person reviewed so they know what is to be required of them? Or do they go because they trust in the Lord to not have them put into a situation that they cannot come out victorious? Do some 4th estate fail and have to be sent another time? Is it a one time only experience? Thank you for your patience with my

questions. I struggle at times to state my questions adequately. I thank the Savior daily for being led to your blog to find answers to many questions I have had in reading the scriptures. It's an amazing adventure everyday for me to learn new things from your commentaries. Thank you PR! **[Yes, they feel the pains of the flesh in their death, but it is quick and the entrance to heaven is far more joy than the sorrow of death. The sacrifice of the individual is a crown of honor in the heavens. There is no exalted person who looks upon the horrific circumstances of life and regrets those experiences, as they are stepping stones toward exaltation. A 4th estate being is usually prepared in some ways for what they will experience. Just as Christ was prepared step by step up until his last 24 hours of the eternal sacrifice. If a 4th estate stumbles hard in their life, not to the extent that they deny the Holy Ghost, it is a lost opportunity, but they are not damned. They often are required to make restitution in some way. PR]**

I have wondered.....Does every negative or bad thought come from an evil or ill-intentioned spirit that is nearby trying to influence us by putting that thought in our mind? Or is it possible for me to have a bad thought that strictly came from my own mind, with zero influence from an evil or ill-intentioned spirit? Reading this post has made me wonder about that. **[Not every bad thought is from an evil spirit. The answer to this question would depend upon the holiness of the individual. If you are filled with virtue and surround yourself with God-centered thoughts, things of beauty, and honorable intentions and visual stimuli, when a dark thought enters your mind you will immediately know that the Adversary placed it there. For someone whose mind is clouded with dark thoughts, and unvirtuous imagery, it is not always necessary for the devils to place those thoughts there, as our minds become a constant ricochet of dark thinking, which only we can give the credit. PR]**

“Fire and brimstone is a great description of the kind of light and matter that exists in outer darkness.”

Does Outer Darkness have spiritual “light”?

I thought that dark energy was the antithesis of Light (spiritual matter), how can it generate light photons? **[The color spectrum is far greater than what we can see with our mortal eyes. Outer darkness has a kind of light that is what I would call dark light. For me, it resembles something like a neon light. Fire and brimstone, like volcanic light, has the effect of appearing like a neon light, surrounded by the haze of gas and heat. I remember watching a Doctor Strange movie once where they interpreted a fantasy universe. The colors reminded me somewhat how Outer Darkness appears. PR]**

What better way to spend an Easter Sunday morning! I missed the local sunrise service because of the cold weather and being sick last week....but this morning's scripture reading came alive, it was awesome! What a testament of the justice, love, and power of our Lord!

[Satan's main tactic is to use fear to prevent people from coming to Christ. This is why he attempts to torture and brutalize the followers of Christ, so that all people on the other side of the veil will be afraid to make the Everlasting Covenant.] This tells me that those on the other side of the veil have more access to what's going on here in mortality than I thought. Can you share any more insights on this? **[There is much written in the book "A Witness of the Heavenly Realm." Yes, there is much going on there, and the outcome of the situations regarding this life have much to do with what we choose in the spirit realm. PR]**

How does one become a Shahophalim? Can you say more about them? **[It is a hierarchy of the angels and all exalted beings will experience it. There is more information about them in the book "A Witness of the Heavenly Realm." PR]**

I felt that this chapter was very insightful and valuable...

17 And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison. [Do not ever attempt to speak or converse with a devil, unless the Lord constrains you to do so.]..... Were these men actually devils or just possessed by devils?... **[possessed. PR]**

I think when someone's spouse gets angry and chews you out for no good reason, they're also speaking by a devil though right? (Haha)

When someone with good intentions is sharing false revelation/visions to you, should we usually ignore them? For example, if I meet someone who says he's Nephi reincarnated and has a message for me. **[That's an extreme example. If anyone ever comes to you as a messenger you need to put all emotions aside and seek a confirmation from the Lord. Not all prophets are from God, and many are deceived by how they appear to our ideals. PR]**

"...and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet. "

Were only their hands tied? Were they tied to the ground? Trying to get a picture of what happened. **[They were tied on the ground, stood, and their bindings were loosed. PR]**

"11 But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth [To experience this is have the Spirit come upon you in a way that you cannot prevent yourself from taking action or inaction. The power of God moves upon you to do the Lord's will.]"

What do you mean that you cannot prevent yourself? I haven't heard this before. Do you still have the choice to act against the Spirit? **[A servant of the Lord can hardly not follow through because the power of the Spirit is so strong. PR]**

After Ammonihah – Alma 15:1-19

1 And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded **[by the Lord]** to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

2 And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

3 And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.

4 Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

5 And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

6 And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation? **[It is always best when performing a healing blessing to have the person seeking the blessing to do or say something as an expression of their faith. This increases their faith unto healing.]**

7 And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.

8 And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.

9 And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words. **[These words were given to Alma by the Spirit of prophecy.]**

10 And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ. **[Combining the faith of the afflicted with the faith of the healer contributes to the gift of healing. By crying out his intentions, Alma was able to witness to those around what was about to occur.]**

11 And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

12 And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

13 And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom **[southeast of Ammonihah, near the river Sidon]**, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

14 And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized. **[Out of the horrors of Ammonihah came the saving of many souls.]**

15 But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the

power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins. **[They believed that it was not necessary, because all were saved.]**

16 And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred; **[Like Paul of Tarsus, Amulek lost his family's respect and all his possessions by choosing the Lord.]**

17 Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check **[change in their standing with God]**, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—

I was shown a vision of these sanctuaries that the church of Christ had in the Nephite land. These were like the synagogues where the members would meet to worship. Each had a distinguishable feature, a modest sized altar, like a pew, where members could stand and either read the word of God, bear their witness of the word or of Christ, and even exercise gifts of the Spirit. Often, they would express their heartfelt desires to repent at these altars. This understanding helped me to see the true apostasy of the people who would build the rameumpton as their altar to themselves.

18 Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord. **[The sorrow of Amulek required attention from Alma.]**

I then asked specifically about Amulek's family. He lived with his family in a dwelling that included his extended family. When Alma and Amulek were in prison, all those who were of Christ's church had to flee the land of Ammonihah. Amulek's wife and children were among those killed in the fire. It was terribly hard on his heart and Alma had to console him and bless him to overcome his grief. All of Amulek's extended family disowned him and they were killed in the Desolation of the Nehors. Amulek literally lost everything to be a servant of God, but gained even more in the process.

19 And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

I have many questions from this and the proceeding chapter regarding Amulek and some other things. I often will add edits to what I write in these annotations after the Lord shows me something, so in a week or so I may be adding more comments here as I have in previous chapters.

The Lord will reveal to us according to our faith, according to the questions we ask Him. When I write a detailed description included from my journal it is not simply words that are given, but my description of what has been shown to me by the Lord. I usually cut out the before and after and only include the pertinent information in what I write here. If I was to include the entire experience you would see that the Lord's mercy in how he interacts with us and answers our questions. I hope that you will have these experiences for yourself, hopefully while you are living this world. The angels of God have full access to these events and are taught and experience all things by the Spirit of God in the Heavenly Realm.

Questions and Answers

Vs 3 “And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.”

So this burning fever was an illness caused by a demon influencing him (since illness has a demonic component) because why? If Zeezrom's mind was harrowed up, isn't this a state of repentance? Was it allowed in this case because it was part of Zeezrom's descent before ascent? **[He was being tormented for His sins and did not know how to release it. Alma's blessing was needed to do this. PR]**

(“ 10 And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ. [Combining the faith of the afflicted with the faith of the healer contributes to the gift of healing. By crying out his intentions,”) To me it's difficult sometimes to understand healings. If you have great faith can't you just ask for an affliction to be healed in prayer? Do you have to ask for a blessing from a priesthood holder? Is the added great faith of another a key to a healing? I know God can heal any affliction. When an affliction is not healed I suppose it is the Lords will for me to suffer, as perhaps I need to learn something from this affliction. Is this assumption correct? Then when the desired knowledge is gained the Lord will heal the individual. Do you have any other information you could enlighten me with? I know many others struggle on this subject too. I would greatly appreciate any other added knowledge? **[It is important that the Lord's servant receive a revelation to know what to do before acting in the Lord's name. Great faith can accomplish all things, even healings. The healer can help the faith of the afflicted by strengthening them as needed. When someone has the sealing power they immediately know the Lord's will and the situation, so they can know what to do very quickly. PR]**

v17 Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom,..... and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar,

watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—
to be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction is to be baptised with the Holy Ghost? **[Yes. PR]**

Wicked Destroyed, the Righteous Prepare – Alma 16:1-21

1 And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.

2 For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, **[the west]** into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city. **[Most of their fortifications faced south and east, toward the Lamanites main kingdom.]**

3 And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

4 Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness. **[rescue mission]**

5 Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites. **[Zoram was a man of faith and also a great warrior and leader.]**

6 And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

7 And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.

8 And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands. **[They meant to take them slaves to the king of the Lamanites.]**

9 And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

10 But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

11 Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

Why did the Lamanites go to such great efforts to destroy the city of Ammonihah? It was on the far side, a great distance from the Lamanite lands, and a risky thing to attempt. The Lord showed me that at the same time Ammon and the other missionaries were attempting to teach the Gospel to the Lamanites, the religion of Nehor had sent emissaries to the Lamanites to convince them of their religion, promising great wealth and power. They spoke of plans to overthrow the Nephite government and of making alliances with the Lamanite king. During the time that the Nehors were teaching the Lamanites, the king became angry, feeling that they were actually seeking to have power over them, that it was a lie and a plan against them. In the king's fury he vowed to destroy every person of the religion of Nehor. He sent his best army to go into the Nephite land and completely destroy them. The army brought captives with them on their return to help enrich the king, but chose to release them in order to return safely and avoid conflict near the southern part of the River Sidon. The people of Nehor had sealed their own destruction.

12 And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.

13 And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews. **[There were more than one temple built after the manner of Solomon.]**

14 And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

15 And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites. **[Alma initiated, under the Lord's direction, a great evangelistic movement to help the people to repent.]**

16 And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming— **[This**

was planting the seed for a people who would be prepared to receive Christ.]

17 That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God. **[When we receive the gift of the Holy Ghost we are literally made one with the Holy Spirit, our spirits joining the vine of Christ, the Father, and the Holy Ghost; which is Mother and Father in mind.]**

18 Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—

19 Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

20 And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness. **[They asked where Christ would come? Did they know it would be in the land Bountiful?]**

21 And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. **[Still 110 years before Christ would show Himself to the people in the land Bountiful.]**

There are many today, just like in the days of Alma, who wonder when Christ will come “Will I live to see the events prophesied of His Coming?” they ask. Nephi had prophesied of the birth of Christ, being 600 years from the time they left Jerusalem, but when would He actually come to them in their land? For those of us who look forward to the great events in the future (the destruction of America, the establishment of Zion, the gathering of the House of Israel, the Battle of Armageddon, and the coming of Christ in His glory) we must patiently trust in the Lord. Some of the prophesied events have occurred already, and some not even known to the world. This is an exciting time to be alive as a son or daughter of God. All the prophets look upon our time in history with awe and admiration.

Questions and Answers

Verse 17 [“When we receive the gift of the Holy Ghost we are literally made one with the Holy Spirit, our spirits joining the vine of Christ, the Father, and the Holy Ghost; which is Mother and Father in mind.] Concerning the Gift of the Holy Ghost, can you elaborate on “our spirits joining the vine.....which is Mother and Father in mind.” Do we then have the spiritual nature of Father and Mother which is my feelings (example; we no longer have the desire to sin) or is there more to it? Like do we then know the will of Father and Mother concerning us? Any other thoughts you have would be very much appreciated PR. Thank you for all you do!

[We are still connected to the flesh, so if we succumb to the buffeting of Satan it will make it impossible to access the Spirit. However, we are a part of that vine, which means our spirit will never be cut off unless we choose to deny the Holy Spirit. This would require a series of difficult acts deliberately made to disconnect from the vine. PR]

Vs 5 “now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren”

I feel like I’m in some kind of trouble with the Lord when I ask you something! I’ve felt a twinge in my spirit that tells me I need to be going to the Lord myself with my questions. That twinge is probably good counsel but I am grateful that you answer my questions here!

But Zoram didn’t seem to feel guilty about going to ask Alma to ask God for him and an answer was received. Why did it work out like this in this instance? **[When people exercise faith miracles are possible. Zoram exercised faith and certainly there were many praying that they would be rescued. Alma had the faith to ask the Lord and receive an answer. PR]**

And am I allowed to do that? 😊

“and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—“ was this the same Lehi that fought with Captain Moroni ? Also, interesting Captain Moroni also goes to Alma for revelation to know on where the Lamanites would attack them. **[I do not know. Much to ask indeed. PR]**

PR,

About your comment on verse 11:

“I have to wonder why the Lamanites would travel such a great distance to attack Ammonihah. They had to penetrate into the Nephite land to destroy that city. I will need to ask the Lord the context regarding this mystery.”

There is a lot of information in chapter 24, as well as this from Alma chapter 25:
1 And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.
2 But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them.

The Sword of Ammon – Alma 17:1-39

The history now reverts to unfolding the story of the sons of Mosiah, as they meet up again with Alma, journeying home from the land of the Lamanites.

1 And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the land of Zarahemla. **[eastern side of the Mississippi River]**

2 Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Lord; **[after fourteen years]** yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God. **[It had not been long after their conversion that the sons of Mosiah had left to preach to the Lamanites. Their knowledge of the Gospel and scriptures were very rudimentary when they departed.]**

3 But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God. **[Prayer and fasting is the key to open the gifts of the Spirit. To break this down: praying, asking the Lord for that which we desire in righteousness. Fasting, as we learn to separate from the carnal man and focus our entire heart, might, mind, and strength upon establishing a relationship with Him, to be a servant of God. By doing this we prepare ourselves to receive the blessings.]**

4 And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him. **[The “altar of God” is an expression meaning to lay our sins before Him and pray with full intent for forgiveness and redemption.]**

5 Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much labor in the spirit. **[The journey of a servant of God is not an easy one. It is filled with suffering, sacrifice, and heartache; but the reward far outweighs the sacrifice.]**

6 Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having refused the kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and also this was the minds of the people; **[The people had desired that the monarchy end and another government be established.]**

7 Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

8 And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

9 And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct. **[If there ever was a reason to fast, it would be to have the Lord’s Spirit abide in us so that we could be His servant. They specifically desired**

to help their brethren the Lamanites. These men would not have attempted this had the Lord's Spirit not inspired them to go forward. Alma the elder had also given his blessing upon their efforts. These were brave men with great faith. Our faith precedes the miracle. We must see it in our mind and then have the courage to move forward and make it so, according to the Lord's revelation to us.]

10 And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted. **[He gave them confidence and assurance that they were doing the right thing. As we follow through on a revelation (commandment) the Lord will give us this comfort. Here is how we know and discern it is from the Lord. If things do not go as planned and seem to fail (as will happen with these young men at first) we must not give up hope. The success is rarely realized until after the trial of our faith.]**

11 And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls. **[By revelation they were told that they would be afflicted, but that if they were patient and showed a good example to the Lamanites they would have success. Keep this in mind as you consider the demeanor of Ammon as he confronts the king of the Lamanites and dwells amongst them.]**

12 And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

13 And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from another **[A good call considering they would have appeared as a war party had they not disbanded.]**, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.

14 And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

15 Thus they were a very indolent **[lazy]** people, many of whom did worship idols **[pursuit of pleasure and power]**, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

Our society today is much similar to the Lamanites of old. Many focus their energies on entertainment and the quick acquirement of riches and pleasure. The things of God are of little importance to many. How we have fallen!

16 Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.

17 Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

Today, the servants of the Lord are spread out upon the earth. They mingle amongst those who are much like the Lamanites at the time of the sons of Mosiah. As you read their accounts consider how their story applies to you, if you are a servant of God.

18 Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them **[He was not elected, but demonstrated faith unto leadership as he prophesied and set the example for the group.]**, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land. **[It was agreed that they would divide in several directions and priesthood blessings were administered. These were not as we would see today. Ammon stood, as he was filled with the Spirit and prophesied to them according to the revelation the Lord gave Him concerning the different brothers and what they needed to know.]**

19 And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

20 And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

21 And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

22 And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.

23 And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.

From my personal journal:

I then asked if I could learn more about Ammon, as written in the Book of Mormon. Ammon was the son of Mosiah and refused to be king at the death of his father. He was a noble man, who was a seeker of truth. Being the son of a king gave Ammon great opportunities. He was taught much concerning the history of the people, the Church, and also dissenting philosophies; which is what led to the period where he, his brothers, and Alma the younger were active in that cause. The shift of paradigm came when they were jolted on the road and were spoken to by the Spirit of the Lord together. Their hearts were pricked and they repented.

I got a good look at Ammon. He was noble looking, brown hair and a short beard. He was athletic, thick arms and wide in his girth and face. He looked like a Rugby player. My impression of him was that he was very

sober, serious, and thoughtful. I wondered how cunning and attractive the secular doctrine must have been to trick them all before their repentance. Ammon fasted and prayed many days with his brethren and some without before the Lord put it into his heart what he needed to do. I saw Ammon walking very humbly into a village with his shield and sword laid over it in front of his body. He held his shield out in front of him with the sword on it as if he was delivering something. His sword was about 20 inches long. It was an act of surrender and when the Lamanites saw him they approached and he spoke to them that he wished to see the King. Had he not said that he would have been killed immediately. These Lamanites were basically good people in that they were honest and kind to their families and tribes. The Nephites had a reputation for deceit and they were in a constant state of war with them.

The Lamanites reminded me of Polynesians. Their clothes resembled native Americans somewhat. Ammon was taken to King Lamoni. The buildings were like large huts made of wood, grass, and animal skins. Some were very large. At the opening to one of the largest structures was an open court with large wood poles embellished with metal decoration and symbol. Everything had a very native American feel, but even a little Eskimo in its look. I don't know much about native American things, so I may not be doing a good job describing. King Lamoni seemed to be in his forties, dark hair. He wore a crown of tall black feathers that went up. He wore clothing that was decorated with metal and some designs, and sat in a chair at the head of the building. The people were gathered around and the place of the King was shaded. I saw him smiling as Ammon expressed his desires to the king. Ammon was deadpan serious and spoke in the same language as the Lamanites. I think they speak the same, or closely the same language. The King agreed to what Ammon desired, but he appeared more amused, perhaps thinking he was a little crazy after offering himself without accepting his gifts. I'm not sure Lamoni intended to really give the gifts, like it was a test.

24 And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

25 But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And it came to pass that he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

26 And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—

27 Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

28 Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

29 Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

30 And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

31 And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

32 And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

33 And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

34 Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

35 Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

36 But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

37 But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.

38 Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

From my personal journal:

I saw that Ammon became a servant of the King, which was more like a slave. All the king's servants wore color-coded skins with a metal piece worn around the neck. He was required to cut his facial hair and undergo a kind of initiation from the other servants where he was kicked and

punched by each of them. He took it without a complaint. They mocked him for who he was, an outsider. Ammon was given back his sword, shield and sling again as the Lamanite servants mocked him. Their weapons of choice were a bow and arrow, bludgeon, and spear.

As he went forth with the servants of the King, the flocks were scattered and it looked hopeless, but Ammon organized the servants to regather the flocks and went to contend with the Lamanite thieves.

The Lord then showed me a couple of interesting things. One was some background about Ammon. He was very skilled with his weapon, as he had been trained to do things from a young age. The people of Zarahemla had a yearly game where they used their weapons, much like an Olympics but less grandiose. Ammon knew how to do things that were amazing. I saw him approach each of the thieves very methodically with his shield in front of himself and do certain maneuvers that allowed him to smite off their arms. It almost looked unfair. Their stones would bounce off his shield or miss him. He was very confident. I didn't see the part where he slew some of them with stones.

The other thing I was shown is how the Lamanite culture didn't look upon stealing as anything bad. If they could get away with it, they were justified. The thieves wore hoods to hide their identities. Many of those who lost arms or families to these maimed men actually joined the people of Lamoni later in their conversion. They saw Ammon as a servant of God.

39 And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.

Questions and Answers

Could you tell me if any Ammon or Alma the Younger and the others were ever married? It seems in order to perform their mission they had to be single, at least in their early years. **[Alma was married, but the rest didn't marry until later. Ammon eventually did marry a daughter of King Lamoni. PR]**

Your comment to verse 17: ["Today, the servants of the Lord are spread out upon the earth. They mingle amongst those who are much like the Lamanites at the time of the sons of Mosiah."] Are you talking about awakened 4th estate beings? Or people who are good Christians spreading the gospel message? Or both? I just wonder mainly about the 4th estate beings holding forth great power like Ammon, are they awaking and starting their missions on the earth? **[To awaken is to repent and come unto Christ. To arise is to begin their mission. There are many of both 3rd and 4th estate around the world today preparing for what is to come. PR]**

Humbling to read this.

Of all the acts of holy personal consecration a servant can perform to the Lord in order to draw near to Him, is fasting/prayer #1 on the list? (Extended fasting).

I know it's the subjecting of the carnal to the will of the spirit that causes things to happen spiritually. But why does extended fasting thin the veil, how does it? **[To forgo our physical for the spiritual is a powerful way to invite the Spirit. There are many ways of fasting and water fasting is only one way. When we focus our entire energy on the Lord for any period of time, this is fasting. PR]**

I have seen a map of the Nephite America, but can not remember where I saw it, would you direct me to it? **[I am not familiar with a map. PR]**

Curious if you might possibly know if Jesus' 40 day fast was a water fast. **[Yes, it was. PR]**

Vs 7: Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

Did the Lamanites live on the east or west side of the Mississippi? When they said "go up to the Lamanites", which cardinal direction did they go?

I also noticed the BoM says "wild beasts" in some places, specifically mentioning them as "wild". Is this because some of these same species of animals had been domesticated by the Nephites? **[The Lamanites were mostly at that time on the east side of the Mississippi River in the southern states. The sons of Mosiah traveled east and south. Yes they had some domesticated animals. PR]**

I'm super excited to read this!! Can you explain the language they spoke? Do you know anything at all about the Algonquian language spoken by many Native Americans? Just wondering if there are any similarities. Thank you!! I absolutely love how you break down these passages. **[I don't know anything about Native American language, but what I heard them speak had a sound of Hebrew and became different over time. PR]**

I know you don't like to speak of specific groups or titles, so if need be, I'd love an emailed response. About the fasting thing? Is the Essene Gospel of Peace truth? It's about Christ teaching the people how to cast out devils—the kind that will only come out through fasting. He guides them in fasting 40 days on water with a daily water enema to clean the parasites/devils fully out. I have done extended fasts and the clarity of thought, enlightenment, revelation, and health benefits were/are profound. I'm wondering if that apocryphal book is truth? And if the 40 day water fast is the process to translation? And also, was Jesus a vegetarian? **[That's a lot of separate questions. I'm not familiar with the Essene Gospel of Peace. When Christ spoke of fasting to remove devils, He was referring to the spiritual purpose, which was to receive revelation for how to proceed. – Fasting does have health benefits, but also contributes to receiving revelation. – When the Lord selects a person to receive translation they will be asked to do a 40 day water fast if they have**

not already. – Jesus ate fish and lamb. He abided by the Jewish dietary law. PR]

Conversion of Lamoni – Alma 18:1-43

1 And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

2 And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks, and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders? **[These Lamanites would be very superstitious by today's standards. They believed in a spiritual realm, but had little knowledge of it other than what their own shaman would do and say.]**

3 And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

4 And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

5 Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit, they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

6 For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

7 Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

8 And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

9 And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi **[south of the land of Ishmael]**; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

10 Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

11 Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

The last thing I saw was the event that led up to Ammon teaching Lamoni. I wish I had seen all of it, but I will ask to see the rest in the future. I saw the servants speaking with the King. A large blanket held the arms from the battle. The King was so surprised to find that Ammon was caring to his horses because it was considered one of the most menial of jobs in his kingdom. Most of the servants had to be pushed regularly to do it. Here is where I saw something that surprised and confused me. I saw Ammon in a shadowy stable caring for the horses. I saw a tight stable. Ammon had removed much of the dung and was feeding the animal. It was in a narrow stable. [Edit] I asked the Lord what this was and was told that they were domesticated to carry the coach of the King. They were not ridden, but would be harnessed. Somehow these people learned to do this. Are these the horses described in the Book of Mormon? I know that they are not technically horses, but perhaps the word used in the translation is something different. (from my personal journal)

12 And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

13 And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desireth thee to stay.

14 Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for he knew not what he should say unto him.

15 And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest thou of me? But the king answered him not.

16 And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. **[gift of discernment and revelation]** And he said unto him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?

17 I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do. **[A bold thing to say to a king. Whether a request was right or wrong was not the choice of a slave, but Ammon declared he only would do that which was right.]**

18 Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

19 Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

20 And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

21 And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

22 Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken **[listen carefully]** unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

23 And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile. **[the skill of Ammon's crafting of words]**

24 And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

25 And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

26 And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

27 And he said, Yea.

28 And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

29 And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

30 And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

31 And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

32 And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

33 And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?

34 Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

35 And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God. **[These two verses give a concise description of a servant of God: called by Him to teach, a portion of His Spirit in them makes this possible, and it is according to their faith and desire in Him.]**

36 Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem. **[Likely shared 2 Nephi 2.]**

37 And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.

38 And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he

expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time. **[This was helpful considering the false traditions of the Lamanites concerning the deceptions of Nephi to their fathers.]**

39 But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

40 And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king **[answered more questions and explained further]**, that the king believed all his words.

41 And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people. **[Interesting that the king cried for mercy upon not just himself, but also his people.]**

42 And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

This is not a normal situation for someone who is converting to the Lord. Why did this happen to Lamoni? A pivotal moment that would change the course for tens of thousands of souls. Lamoni was of the House of Israel, and Lamoni was a covenant soul who was foreordained to help bring his people to the Lord. This entire event was prepared by the angels of God according to the commandments of our Lord. Lamoni was taught and instructed, given his baptism of fire and Holy Ghost so that he could stand in the presence of God. His heart was sufficiently broken and contrite to allow for this.

What is also remarkable is how Lamoni was forgiven for his sins, which included the taking of many lives as a king of the Lamanites. God was able to judge Lamoni in his sins and make it right. This is something to consider when weighing the heaviness of our own sins.

43 And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

There was a thread of life that had remained attached between Lamoni and his body, but he appeared dead to those who looked upon him. It reminds me of the stories of people who are pronounced dead and suddenly awaken in the mortuaries to the surprise of those who are there.

Why did these Lamanites have such an incredible miraculous series of events when others do not? Much has to do with the faith of people like Ammon, but also the Lamanites themselves and the covenants made before they were born. These people were ready to receive the Lord at that time. And so it will also be for many people throughout the world when the

Gatherers are sent to bring them to Zion. They will be ready and when they call out to God and will be made clean.

Questions and Answer

What would qualify one for becoming a recipient of being gathered to Zion? Is it a desire to follow Christ but don't know how, understanding they do not have the Holy Ghost? Or is it that these are elect people already received the HG?

Will those who struggle to receive the HG be left behind so to speak? **[Those who repent and fully submit to the Lord will be made clean. Zion is the pure in heart, which can only come through Him. Yes, they will have the gift of the Holy Ghost. PR]**

35 And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God. [These two verses give a concise description of a servant of God: called by Him to teach, a portion of His Spirit in them makes this possible, and it is according to their faith and desire in Him.] It seems like having a portion of his spirit to dwell with you is only reserved for 4th Estate beings. Or is it not? Can anyone have this gift? Or do you have to be called to be a teacher of men as 4th estate beings are? If you have sufficient faith and desire in Him can you obtain this gift? **[The gift of preaching or prophesy is available to all who come unto Christ. The 4th estate have a particular calling to help gather the House of Israel, and are called because of their faith before the foundation of the world. They have an aptitude for these gifts, but are not the only ones permitted to use them. PR]**

“Lamoni was of the House of Israel, and Lamoni was a covenant soul who was foreordained to help bring his people to the Lord.” “What is also remarkable is how Lamoni was forgiven for his sins, which included the taking of many lives as a king of the Lamanites. God was able to judge Lamoni in his sins and make it right.”

With these insights, I'm wondering about King David, and his sins. It is evident that both of these men were foreordained to their respective missions and it is also evident that King Lamoni did commit some very terrible sins before coming to the Lord. It would seem that especially because the Lord even declared that David had a heart after His, that he too, would be forgiven his sins and not be punished forever, as we are often taught in GD classes. In fact, I have often thought that with Jesus' teaching the higher law that our thoughts convict us, many souls would perish were it not for the redeeming blood and love of our Lord and Savior, and His infinite forgiveness. I also realize that David had greater light and knowledge than did Lamoni. Still pondering.

Just out of curiosity, if your calling as a 4th estate being is to gather/teach the house of Israel, what are some of the things 4th estate may be doing now to prepare the people? You are clearly undertaking a calling that is helping to prepare people spiritually through your books, do you have an idea of what others might be called to undertake? **[I think that most 4th estate are preparing themselves to begin their callings and still awakening. There are some that are awake that are preaching repentance and have been with God, but most are yet awakening. PR]**

“There was a thread of life that had remained attached between Lamoni and his body” Was this what we today call a “Near Death Experience”? It’s my understanding that during an Nde, someone’s body is clinically dead and their spirit separates to enter heaven... the thread that attaches you to your body is what people explain during “Astral projection”. But their body isn’t dead... it’s more like a copy of their spirit projects out. Also, when you ascend is this thread of life attached to your body? **[This thread is always attached to your body unless you are dead. PR]**

Your reply from a comment above: “I think that most 4th estate are preparing themselves to begin their callings and still awakening. There are some that are awake that are preaching repentance and have been with God, but most are yet awakening. PR” Will there be certain personal life events and/or events we suffer as a people together that help speed this along so to speak? **[The angels are assigned to prepare the House of Israel and the Dominions (144k) for the fulfillment of all covenants. All things come in their proper time. PR]**

Is astral projection incorrect or wrong to do? Is it simply a name given to an ability some have discovered and exercised involving our spirits? Is there a greater risk of encountering the adversary’s minions and deceptions while astral projecting? Is there any wisdom in learning to do this?

(I do not practice this. I experience an uncomfortable gut reaction to people online mentioning astral projection. I noticed that reaction and am trying to uproot all unbelief and replace it with thoughts that are more calm and light-filled so I do not inadvertently block myself from progressing because of unbelief and incorrect traditions.) **[I discuss this in chapter 19. PR]**

I love the questions after the chapters and find them so enlightening. Sorry my question is a little less spiritual, but my curiosity has been peaked, (I saw a tight stable. Ammon had removed much of the dung and was feeding the animal. It was in a narrow stable. [Edit] I asked the Lord what this was and was told that they were domesticated to carry the coach of the King. They were not ridden, but would be harnessed. Somehow these people learned to do this. Are these the horses described in the Book of Mormon? I know that they are not technically horses, but perhaps the word used in the translation is something different. (from my personal journal)) Is there a reason you edited this information? I’m trying to understand why this information would be withheld. Does this animal still exist, I’m now imagining them riding mountain goats, or cows, buffalo, Elk, perhaps unicorns. It may be silly, but do you have anything more that can be said on this? **[I did not write it because I was constrained by the Lord to not reveal it. I have found when this occurs there are two reasons: first, is that the Lord prefers we ask Him for this knowledge. Second, the information may overshadow more important principles as people prefer to dwell on the sensational aspect of it. I have edited out many pages of detailed information regarding sensational topics that would attract people to the blog for the wrong reasons. PR]**

In Every Detail – Alma 19:1-36

1 And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.

2 Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.

3 And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.

4 And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

5 Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink. **[The Lamanites knew well the smell of death. Lamoni did not have it.]**

6 Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief **[traditions of his fathers]** was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God **[baptism of fire]**, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul **[gift of the Holy Ghost]**, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—

Lamoni was experiencing an ascension. Typically, when this occurs the person does not disconnect to the extent that they would appear dead. In the case of Lamoni, the Lord handled it as such so there would be no interference in their experience.

7 Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

Ammon saw the great potential of this event to help with the conversion of the family and court of king Lamoni. The Spirit was preparing him for what was about to proceed.

8 And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not. **[Three days he would appear dead and then to rise again. Similar to Jonah in the whale, a similitude of the resurrection.]**

9 And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall

be according as thou hast said. **[An example of the first step of faith, to simply believe upon the words of servant of God.]**

10 And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites. **[The queen sought understanding from a servant of God and believed what would be considered impossible. Ammon’s statement that her faith was above all the Nephites is an indication of a kind of childlike trust that is not common. This is important to understand when asking what is required to have a broken heart and contrite spirit, enough to open the windows of heaven.]**

11 And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

12 And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou. **[We are so blessed!]**

13 For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down **[laid down]**, being overpowered by the Spirit.

This is a beautiful moment. I love his expression, “as sure as thou livest,” for it expresses the reality of what he has experienced. I am often asked if my experience is in or out of the flesh, as if it were not it would be less. My answer is that it is more real in that environment. In many ways it feels tangible, but the level of communication and awareness is more heightened compared to the temporal body. This is what they experienced – as sure as I am standing here now!

14 Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth. **[Ammon is filled with the Spirit of God as he kneels within the pillar of fire and glory, which was surrounding where they were. He is inspired to pray out loud as a witness of what was happening and was also invited of the Lord to ascend.]**

15 Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear **[great respect]** of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

16 And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth **[the Lord is no respecter of persons]**, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father— **[I will need to ask the Lord what this is about.]**

The Lord showed me a vision of the scene. Abish was a middle-aged woman, somewhat short and medium build. She was dark skinned and her face was full. Her hair was done up in a way that reminded me of old Hopi photographs. She was the daughter of one of the king's most trusted servants who had since died. Her job had something to do with the preparing of meals, and only the most trusted servants were allowed to do such things for the king's court. I was shown that her father had a vision where he was taught by angels about Jesus Christ and told that the day would come when his people would be converted and receive the Gospel. Abish means loyal or dedicated daughter. I think her name fits her very well. Abish' family had prayed to Christ since her father's conversion and had kept it very private. She had a role to play, which she fulfilled when she introduced the people to this holy event.

17 Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

18 And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

19 And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land. **[It would appear as a conspiracy to those without knowledge.]**

20 But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

21 And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king. **[Many held feelings against either the king or Ammon because of the bloodshed at the waters of Sebus.]**

22 Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead. **[They were protected by the angels of God.]**

When a spirit leaves a body it is always important that this is done according to the Lord's will. In such a case, angels will be assigned to guide and protect the person in their journey. When someone attempts to leave their body with the use of mind altering substances, or simply self induced travel, they risk an attack from the adversary. I would never recommend

dabbling in the spiritual realm without the Lord's Spirit as a guide and protection.

23 Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

24 And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

25 And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit; **[They now recognized there was something spiritual happening. The Spirit of God was all around them, which is a tangible experience to those who first encounter it.]**

26 But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them. **[Fear of the unknown opens one to the lies of the Adversary. A person can be standing within the pillar of light and know it not. If their hearts are closed it will not benefit them.]**

27 And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

28 And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

29 And it came to pass that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people! **[The Lord delights in every detail.]**

30 And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood **[Expressing the majesty of the Heavenly Realm would be difficult to describe to such a people.];** and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.

31 And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord. **[child-like faith]**

32 But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way. **[In the presence of the majesty of God, the wicked will flee.]**

33 And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame

thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil. **[A sign of the gift of the Holy Ghost.]**

34 And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness. **[When an angel comes to you it will not be with the physical eyes, unless it is a translated person. It will be in the spirit.]**

35 And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them. **[All of Ammon’s afflictions and acts of service culminated in this miraculous event because of his patience and faith in God. We must also be patient in our quest to know God and be His servant. The Lord is in every detail.]**

36 And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name. **[The Lord is no respecter of persons. Never think you are unworthy of the glory of God, his miracles, and gifts. Those who come to Him in humility with a pure heart will see God.]**

Questions and Answers

I notice the words often used are “detail” and “delight.” It’s used in scripture often:)

Vs 16: And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth [the Lord is no respecter of persons] What did they say that brought such a swift answer from heaven in this way? **[Their hearts were ready and the timing was right. PR]**

Vs 16 “... save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father”

Had Abish already obtained her baptism of fire and ascended to the Lord for her Second Comforter?

Did she have to hide what she knew from her people for the most part?

That would be lonely but it makes sense if she’s being prepared for this day.

How long was the “many years” she had been converted to the Lord? **[I don’t know anything about Abish. It’s on my list of questions for the Lord. PR]**

[I have amended the text above to include the vision of Abish. PR]

This was before the Time of the Gentiles, we’re King Lamoni’s people just a very rare exception? I thought the gospel wasn’t extended to anyone outside of Israel until after Christ’s Resurrection. It was to the extent that past dispensations weren’t even allowed to marry outside of Israel. **[King Lamoni’s people were House of Israel, not Gentiles. PR]**

So the Lamanites falling to the earth was an ascension! I always wondered why they had to fall. I don’t know of any accounts in our day of people falling in the church but hear

and have seen videos of others in other churches who do this. Also in the burnt over district where Joseph grew up in falling down during sermons was fairly common. Very interesting **[I can't say that is true in all cases. PR]**

Are second estate gentiles that make the Everlasting Covenant before birth, Israelite? Or elect? **[Elect, but are considered spiritually the House of Israel. PR]**

[Three days he would appear dead and then to rise again. Similar to Jonah in the whale, a similitude of the resurrection.]

So the story of Jonah being swallowed by a whale for three days literally happened? **[Yes. PR]**

It seems in the scriptures that when people desire the Lord and repent and cry unto the Lord they get swift answers. They receive their baptism of fire right then. Is it more difficult now to receive because of the traditions and things that we are living in? **[The main culprit is our false traditions or “unbeliefs.” We have all kinds of expectations or doubts that often get in the way. To have the baptism of fire you have to completely let go of everything, a full submission. PR]**

How did you get over your greatest fear before your baptism of fire?

As a parent, how did you also surrender your children's lives? (Isn't that part of what you have to put on the altar: The fear of them being taken from you by death because it's the Lord's plan?) **[Perfect love (for the Lord) casteth out all fear. PR]**

Two questions I have, well I shouldn't give a number of how many questions I'll ask because I always end up asking way more, so I apologize in advance. One, did Ammon and his brothers marry Lamanitish women? Or were they already married before leaving their country? I would think not, but they did live with the Lamanites for close to 14 years. King Lamoni offers Ammon one of his daughters but Ammon declined, but I wondered if this changed after Lamoni and his wife were converted. Why is it or seems very common for people when they had a strong spiritual experience to fall to the ground unconscious, and be out for a while? I here of people and other churches where they are filled with the Spirit and they faint, is this similar to what the Lamanites experienced. I knew I would end up with more than two questions. **[The first question is answered in the comments on chapter 17. I can't say whether similar descriptive accounts today are the same as what Lamoni and his court experienced. It was unheard of even for his day. PR]**

Thank you! I thought I was in chapter 18, haven't read your translation of chapter 19 yet.

Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief [traditions of his fathers] was being cast away from his mind,

So this is an instance where the Lord or angelic entities act upon humans in removing unbelief? Do they help us too or is it all us, our own power that must dispel our own unbelief?

It seems like King Lamoni was being taught in the spirit world **[Typically, when we**

are overcoming unbelief it begins with sincere prayer followed by the ministering of angels as we are prepared both spiritually and in the physical realm for more of the doctrine of Christ. In the case of Lamoni, he was taken directly to the spiritual realm where he was taught before returning to his people. That part of the story is rare, but for each individual we must, like Lamoni, cry out to God to have mercy upon us and help us to come to Him. PR]

A couple years ago I got an audio book with aid in having an out of body experience through relaxation and meditation, I felt like I was getting out a few times, passing through, what he called the Vibrational state. Though, at the time I felt guilty because I had heard the church leaders frowned upon such things, and I felt I was bypassing the Lord.

Now a few years later, I'm contemplating trying mushrooms to get past my veil, but after reading this chapter, you mention it may be a bad idea.

I feel like my veil is unusually thick and at times get frustrated waiting upon the Lord for "the right time"

If you don't mind, can you shed some more light on this concept? **[The overall purpose is not to pierce the veil, but to develop faith. The result of which is to come unto Christ. This usually comes in increments for most people, and the Lord works with us. When we use substances, or take a back door to simply see beyond the veil, we don't develop faith and the process is in vain. I would be so careful in this regard and never do anything without permission from the Lord.PR]**

I have a friend who doesn't believe in the historicity of Jonah and the fish. He believes this in part because the LDS bible dictionary seems to conclude it's a beautiful poem. A respected scripture scholar also concludes it's just a story. He says, it's possible for a story to be true even if it isn't historical.

I couldn't find mention of Jonah in your books, so I was hoping you would share your understanding of this account. Many thanks! **[100% true story. If someone has a problem believing this story, the entire Bible has far more improbable things to consider. PR]**

Ammon Defends Lamoni – Alma 20:1-30

1 And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi **[south and west]**, that he might show him unto his father.

2 And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life **[The same king that sent an army to**

destroy the people of Ammonihah.]; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

3 Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.

4 Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?

5 And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

[Ammon had seen in a vision along with the voice of the Lord commanding him to go there.]

6 Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots. **[Only the king traveled in this manner. These were not horses as we normally think. And they were not prehistoric horses. They were harnessed animals and this is all I will say about it.]**

7 And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.

8 And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

9 And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?

10 And he also said: Whither art thou going with this Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar? **[Associating with the people of Nehor and the descendants of Nephi.]**

11 And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.

12 And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared.

13 And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.

In defense of the Lamanites, they had many dealings with unscrupulous Nephites in the recent years and this only solidified their cynicism and hatred for a people they saw as corrupt and evil.

14 Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.

15 But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.

16 Now when his father had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.

17 But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved.

18 And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst forbear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.

19 Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.

20 And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.

21 Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.

22 But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.

23 Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.

24 Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.

25 Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.

26 And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—
27 And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.

I am curious about the circumstances of this meeting between Lamoni, his father, and Ammon. Surely there were many guards for both kings. Why was either king in danger of their life? Were they in a private tent or place when conversing?

28 And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

29 And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they

were patient in all their sufferings. **[It's important to understand that the Lord does allow the righteous to suffer. Their sacrifices are beautiful monuments for the eternities. The Lord will either release them to finish their work, or they will be called home to glory. We must trust in Him. In the final days the Gatherers will be translated for the purpose of expediency, without pain of the body, but the heavy weight of sorrow will afflict them daily as they witness the carnage and depravity that will flood the earth.]**

30 And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiffnecked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

This chapter used to be my reminder as a church missionary that some elders go to fruitful lands to teach the Gospel and others to a more stiff-necked people. I served my mission in Asia and it was not easy to teach the Gospel there. I have a much different view of missionary work today than before. I know very clearly now that as a servant of the Lord I am only called to do that which the Lord has me to do. I cannot expect anything without listening to the Spirit of revelation and acting upon it. When I was a missionary I did everything as I was commanded by my leaders. I wonder how things would be different had I been able to exercise faith like Ammon to serve the people and only preach when the time was right? When the Gatherers are sent forth for the last time they will act autonomously like Ammon in most cases, only answering to the commandments of the Lord by revelation, and under the direction of the Great Servant.

Questions and Answers

Why won't the Lord let you talk more about the "horses"? Is it to avoid the BoM being scoffed at and taken too lightly? Or because He wants to reveal it to us Himself? **[Too much of a distraction. But when I was told that I wondered about other things I have been allowed to say and wondered how it could be any more so. But I suppose it would be. PR]**

Did it require two or four (or more?) harnessed animals to pull the chariots? Were the chariots heavy? All wood? Two wheels? Can you describe the chariots? **[Usually an open carriage pulled by two animals. PR]**

Vs 17: "...but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved."

Does he mean that the father of Lamoni would not have achieved salvation/baptism of fire in this life and if killed without it, would have to again attempt to progress in another later mortal probation? **[He would lose his opportunity to repent and receive Christ. PR]**

Were Ammon and Lamoni closer in age, like peers, and Lamoni's father middle aged? Or was everyone much older than Ammon? **[Ammon was in his twenties. Lamoni was around forty five years old.]**

("When the Gatherers are sent forth for the last time they will act autonomously like Ammon in most cases, only answering to the commandments of the Lord by revelation, and under the direction of the Great Servant.") your comment in the last paragraph. Are the Gathers all 4th Estate beings ? **[Yes. PR]** Will the 3rd estate beings have any missions in the last days? **[Their main mission is to come to Christ. After that everything they do is a witness of their faith. Many will contribute to the building of Zion. PR]** Have these Gatherers already started to awaken and to receive their missions? Or are they waiting for a specific last day event? **[Many are awakening, but few have yet arised. For many, they will receive the Savior similar to how Christ came to Bountiful. PR]** Do you know what this event is? **[Yes]** Will these servants work out of the many Zions on the earth ? **[Yes]** Are the cities with LDS temples all going to be Zions in the last days? **[No]** Forgive me for my many questions. I keep a journal of all your answers, arranged by subject matter. Thank you so much for your patience. **[I admire your faith. Of course, receive your own confirmations from the Lord. PR]**

Is Salt Lake City going to be a Zion City? With its many LDS temples in this area I wonder if this area will be a huge city of Zion. Do you have any visions or insights on this topic? Also, I use the search bar at the top of the page before asking so I don't ask a question you have answered before. I admire all the time you spend helping us to grow in knowledge. You have made the Book of Mormon come alive with your insights and visions from the Lord. It amazes me! I am so thankful everyday for each chapter you post! **[You are welcome. I do not have permission to name where the outlier Zion cities will be. PR]**

What period of time will the majority of the gathering take place, the end of the 6th dispensation, or the beginning of the 7th? **[There is an overlapping of the sixth into the seventh dispensation. PR]**

Will the Gathers be Men, Women, and Children of all ages? **[I only saw men and women. PR]**

You said about the Gatherers, [Many are awakening, but few have yet arised. For many, they will receive the Savior similar to how Christ came to Bountiful. PR]

When Christ came to the righteous people in Bountiful, it was only after all kinds of calamities and disasters had happened and after the destruction of the wicked. Will this also be the case in the future as well? Will the event leading to their awakening be of a catastrophic nature? Also, wouldn't this require for many of the Gatherers to be physically present at one place. Wouldn't that exclude many of them since they are spread out across the world? **[It will come after a significant disaster, but not before the final judgments. There will be an initial group of Gatherers,**

about 70 of them, with the rest to follow until there are about 3000. Each will be personally touched by the Lord and sealed up to do this. PR]

The 3000 Gatherers that you mentioned, are they part of the 144K? Would the rest of the Servants work from the other side of the veil to help prepare the Elect or do they have other missions? Are there as many men as women among the Gatherers? Are there couples who will serve together to gather in the Elect? Do you know how many Elect there will be who would need to be gathered and brought to Zion? **[Yes, the 3000 are from the 144k, and the rest are on the other side of the veil. Yes, they are preparing the Elect. There is an equal number of male and female amongst the 144k. I don't know how many of the Elect will be brought to Zion, but it is not a few. PR]**

Are those living now, who receive their second comforter, part of the 3000 gatherers? Or better stated: if someone living now receives their second comforter experience while in the flesh, can they assume they're part of the 3000 gatherers? Or do 3rd estates sometimes receive their second comforter? **[It depends on you would define a Second Comforter experience. The Lord has shown Himself to many, not just the 4th estate. However, the kind of Second Comforter where a person is taken up to the Lord is for those called to perform a 4th estate mission. Those who will be Gatherers are all living upon the earth today. PR]**
And are all 3000 living on earth right now?

Who is the Great Servant? **[He is the one who will lead the Gatherers in establishing Zion and gathering the House of Israel before Christ's coming in glory. His identity has not been revealed publicly. PR]**

From a comment above: "Who is the Great Servant? [He is the one who will lead the Gatherers in establishing Zion and gathering the House of Israel before Christ's coming in glory. His identity has not been revealed publicly. PR]"

Does this Servant currently know in mortality what his mission is?

Is he currently starting his work?

Or not quite yet because not all of the Gatherers are awake yet?

[I have seen him in vision. At that time he had not yet awakened to his mission. I would suspect the Lord is preparing him now and he may be fully awake. I have not asked. I do know that there are many who claim to know his identity and are telling people. Many saying "Lo here, and lo there!" But, I have yet to hear anyone share his truthful identity as it was revealed to me. The Lord desires to keep it hidden from the world. However, the Joseph Servant who is a direct descendant of Lehi is fully awake. PR]

Is the Great Servant the Davidic Servant or someone else? **[Yes, it is the same. Sometimes people confuse the Joseph Lamanite Servant as this person, but they are different. Also, FYI, if I don't answer a question it may be because I do not understand the acronyms, or if you post the names, institutions, or links of others. This is a rule for the blog, thanks. PR]**

How to Teach the Gospel – the Land – Alma 22:1-35

The words of Mormon abridging the plates:

1 Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.

2 And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison. **[A brave move by Aaron and his brethren. A similar act occurred with Ammon to King Lamoni. The idea must have greatly motivated them after hearing what had occurred with Ammon.]**

3 And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.

In order to teach someone the Gospel they must first have reason to trust you. When the Gatherers in the last days go forth they will protect, heal, and feed those to whom they are sent. Then they will preach, baptize, and give the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands. Often, this will all occur within a single day.

4 And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.

5 Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble **[confuse]** me.

6 And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?

7 And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.

The Amalekites are the people that separated from the Nephites after following Amlici who was slain by Alma. These people were of the order of Nehor. It is interesting that the spelling changes, although it is of the same origin.

8 And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.

9 And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

10 And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?

When a servant of the Lord teaches by the Spirit it is given to them to know the very words which they will say by the moment, often using a method of questioning to prepare the heart and mind of the person to be taught.

11 And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.

In order to exercise faith in Jesus Christ we must understand our relationship with God and why these things must be. Then the process of repentance can begin as the individual strives to come unto the Lord with all their heart. The scriptures are the best way to do this because they keep things simple and give credibility to the servant, as they read the words of prophetic witnesses. They follow up by sharing their own witness, as a servant of God, to assist the person in exercising faith.

12 And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king—how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

The very best scripture we have on the subject of the fall of Adam are the words of Lehi in 2 Nephi:2, and the Book of Moses, which is the inspired translation of the Bible given to Joseph Smith.

13 And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

14 And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself [**could not save himself**]; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory [**limited to the telestial**], and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory [**3rd estate**]; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.

I often make reference to the various estates of our progression. These distinctions are not important when teaching the Gospel to others. They are for your understanding when considering the purpose of the Gatherers and our progression in the Everlasting Covenant.

15 And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at

the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy. **[What a beautiful question! Aaron had just taught the king the solution to our fall in this world, that we could be redeemed and made clean through Jesus Christ. But how does this happen? Now, Aaron can teach him the fullness of the Doctrine of Christ, which is repentance, baptism, and the Holy Ghost. 2 Nephi 31, 32, and 3 Nephi 11.]**

16 But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest. **[First you must repent, and this is how you begin.]**

17 And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

18 O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead. **[A complete submission of the king to the Lord, crying out as he lay prostrate on the ground. This was for him a complete broken heart and contrite spirit. What does that look like for you?]**

19 And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them. **[This was a violent culture, where death and treachery was a constant threat to the people. The Lamanites did not trust the fair skinned Nephites and the king was often quick to accuse them of conspiracy.]**

20 Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them. **[The Lamanites were also a very superstitious people, believing in magic and the occult.]**

21 Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.

22 Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength. **[Aaron prayed and the Lord told him to do this via the Spirit.]**

23 Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

24 Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

25 But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

26 And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

27 And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west [**Great Lakes region, yet it looked different then than it does today.**], and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla [**The land of Hermounts, which was north and west of Iowa and the headwaters of the Mississippi River.**], through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

28 Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west [**The Great Plains area of the midwest part of the United States**], in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore [**west coast**], and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore. [**Gulf of Mexico, further west, but not passed where the Mississippi drains into the ocean.**]

The Lamanite land was mostly the southern part of the United States, originating in the southern states area. The Nephites mostly dwelt in the upper midwest regions, surrounded by Lamanites, except to the north of them.

29 And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.

30 And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation [**near the Canadian border and northeastern United States**], it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed [**Jaredites**], of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, [**Descendants of King Zedekiah, Mulek, and those who came to America separate from the Lehi group.**] it being the place of their first landing.

31 And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it

being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.

32 And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward. **[This terrain looks different today, having changed somewhat in the last 2,000 years.]**

33 And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

34 Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom in the Nephites—as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have a country whither they might flee, according to their desires. **[Bountiful was considered a place of refuge and fortification in the case that the Nephite lands were ever over run.]**

35 And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

This is an important chapter to understand the foreshadowing of what is to occur with both the Lamanites in their conversion, and the wars that will ensue leading up to the events in 3rd Nephi.

Questions and Answers

In order to teach someone the Gospel they must first have reason to trust you. When the Gatherers in the last days go forth they will protect, heal, and feed those to whom they are sent. Then they will preach, baptize, and give the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands. Often, this will all occur within a single day.”

Have you gotten to see examples of this in vision? **[Yes. PR]**

And I have an odd question: If the Lord is not bound by time, are you able to go help with these future tasks NOW, as you kneel in your closet in 2019, but are ministering to the people in a future time? **[I have been in the past and future, but could not influence what was occurring there. In the present I was able to slow time according to the Lord's will while performing a rescue. I have only seen one occasion where people participated in an event while out of time and space. I don't understand it completely. PR]**

The land Bountiful, was it in the Illinois/Indiana/Ohio area? Wisconsin? Michigan? I'm trying to visualize where it was roughly located. (I'd like to use colored pencils to shade a modern state map to help me grasp the geography. I've asked about this for years. You are helping deliver the answers to my questions from nearly a decade ago!!) **[Michigan area. PR]**

Also, were the Great Lakes larger in the BoM times (before the destruction in 3rd Nephi)? **[The shapes were a little different, but I don't know about larger.]**

PR]

Does the BoM give a name for the Saint Lawrence River? **[I'm not aware of that. PR]**

If Michigan is the Bountiful region, then it would stand to reason that the Jaredites and Desolation are in present day Canada? I've heard many people make the case that the USA is the land of promise and that Canada (or Canadian regions) aren't. We have "a monarchy" in place, they say, though that has not been true in over 150 years. I've always felt that the promised land extended into Canada, at least that which applied to the Jaredites, and these comments seem to suggest such. Thanks!

My heart absolutely burns within me as I read this chapter! The king's full submission is so amazing. Such humility... can you even imagine a king or prime minister of a country in our day having this experience? I believe something like this will happen and if I may humbly say... I know that many of us will be a part of it.

(Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.)

My question is, The King was ready to give up all that he possessed for this great joy. I then think of Jesus and the Rich Young Man, Matthias, the Lord did require him to give up all he possessed and give it to the poor. Is it that our hearts need to be in the right place, and for some people this is required, and others, it wouldn't matter to them if they gave all they had, they would if they could? **[There was more going on with Matthias than what the story shows. The Lord was calling him to be a disciple knowing he was an anointed servant. He later repented and became the replacement for Judas. The point is that only the Lord can choose the sacrifice required of us. Matthias had to choose between his parent's obedience and the Lord. He eventually made the right decision. PR]**

For me, I feel I would love to sell all I had and give it to the poor, but that would only leave me with a furious wife and hungry kids, or is that a sign of a lack of faith on my part, a crutch or excuse to not do so? **[As I say often, faith is seeking the Lord's revelation and acting upon it. It doesn't help us to offer sacrifice where none is required. PR]**

]I guess another question I have while I ponder on this- I think of the Queen, I imagine her standing over the King's shoulder wide eyed, appalled at what her husband just said. How often, did you see when meeting or seeing these people in the scriptures, families breaking apart because one member was ready to give it all to the Lord and the spouse wasn't able to make that leap?

Is it better to wait for the spouse, or better to make the leap and rely on the Lord?

Sorry for so many questions, I suppose you can see what's happening in my life...

[When the Lord issues the call you shouldn't wait on anyone. Sometimes the spouse is supportive and other times not. But I'm not referring to seeking the Lord, I'm referring to the Lord personally commanding His servant to begin His mission. When seeking the Lord we should do all we

can to bring our spouse along with us, praying for assistance and communicating every thought and feeling to our spouse without manipulation or compulsion. PR]

Vs 14 "...could not save himself".

How do you respond to someone who says that no matter what Jesus did, it is us who saves ourselves because we ultimately must DO things, righteous acts that submit our will to the Lords... or even simpler, the doing is found in that submission. If we do not submit, we cannot enter the kingdom of heaven. Thus, ultimately it is us doing the submission who saves us.

Is this a chicken/egg scenario? **[We could do any kind of act or submission, but without the sacrifice of the Only Begotten it would be for naught. After Christ's work, we are simply invited to walk through the gate. Certainly we must exercise faith in that process, but I cringe at those who profess that they save themselves. PR]**

Anti-Nephi-Lehies – Alma 23:1-18

1 Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any part of their land.

2 Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries. **[Few were ever given such status amongst the Lamanite people. The official seal of the king would be required for this honor.]**

3 And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

4 And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and thus they began to have great success.

5 And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records

and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time. [**“Thousands” would only be a small percentage of the Lamanite population, but it was the rapid increase of a movement amongst them.**]

6 And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—[**The Gospel cannot be taught properly without the exercising of the gifts of the Spirit.**] yea, I say unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away. [**These were true conversions.**]

7 For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their brethren.

Such weapons are not only the kind that inflict bodily harm, but the kind of unbelief that prevents others from coming to Christ. The weapons of rebellion that are used against us today might include the following:

- **The focus upon an ecclesiastical leader as our access to God, instead of reaching for Him directly.**
- **Assuming we have the Holy Ghost or divine priesthood authority because we have had such pronounced upon us by a man.**
- **Assuming we are accepted by God because we are pronounced worthy by a priesthood authority.**
- **Not taking upon us the New Covenant of the Book of Mormon and seeking Christ, to be idle in our desire to come to Him.**
- **The weapons of pride, self gratification, and fear have prevented many from receiving all that the Lord desires to give us.**

In the coming chapters we will see how these people would face death rather than raise their weapons again. Such was their desire to repent.

8 Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

9 The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael; [**People of King Lamoni**]

10 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni; [**northwestern area near the Amalekites**]

11 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi; [**Those closest to the palace and city of the king of the Lamanites, in the central part of the Lamanite land.**]

12 And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom, and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilom. [**North and east of the land of Nephi,**]

13 And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were all Lamanites.

14 And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt, yea, and all their villages and all their cities. [**the north west part of the land of the Lamanites**]

15 Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

16 And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.

17 And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies [**The word “Anti” means “like unto.” Nephi and Lehi were considered the two great prophets of these people. They represented men who were both faithful and industrious. When someone is called “anti-Christ” it is to say that are an opposite to Christ. The word “anti” is used in its original usage for names in the BofM and in its English vernacular for antiChrist.**]; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

18 And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

Questions and Answers

17 And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies [The word “Anti” means “like unto.” Nephi and Lehi were considered the two great prophets of these people. They represented men who were both faithful and industrious. When someone is called “anti-Christ” it is to say that are in opposite to Christ. The word “anti” is used in its original usage for names in the BofM and in its English vernacular for antiChrist.]; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

Can you give more clarity to your “Anti-“ definition. I do not understand as I have only ever encountered the meaning of this word as being in opposition or against. Is this from personal revelation? Is this something that only comes through asking the Lord? I look at that and see how I have for decades never questioned the meaning for something different than what I was taught was its meaning. Is this the whole reason why the scriptures hide what is in plain sight because everything one experiences must be questioned and taken to Jesus? [**I would look at every word in scripture without presupposition. I asked the Lord and have shared my revelations in the annotations. Now you can consider these Anonymous thoughts to seek personal revelation for yourself.**]

I love these people. Do you think they are still among us? 🤔🤔

Thank you for your thoughts. [**Some of their descendants are. PR**]

Indeed they are. 😊

“The weapons of pride, self gratification, and fear have prevented many from receiving all that the Lord desires to give us.”

I have never thought of these as weapons that I’m using against the Lord. (I deal with all of them, but especially fear that I’m not saved/baptized with fire and things are about to go down in the world that may kill me and my family before I could be gathered. My

fears tend to NOT happen and I'm later blindsided by something I never would have guessed could happen!) I appreciate this insight!

“The weapons of rebellion that are used against us today might include the following:
– The focus upon an ecclesiastical leader as our access to God, instead of reaching for Him directly.

– Assuming we have the Holy Ghost or divine priesthood authority because we have had such pronounced upon us by a man.

– Assuming we are accepted by God because we are pronounced worthy by a priesthood authority.

– Not taking upon us the New Covenant of the Book of Mormon and seeking Christ, to be idle in our desire to come to Him.

– The weapons of pride, self gratification, and fear have prevented many from receiving all that the Lord desires to give us.”

At first read, these seemed to be quite bold statements. However, after a little thought they are actually all common sense and align with other teachings. No mortal can intermediate or pronounce us clean or worthy.

This was another thought-provoking chapter and commentary. Thank you, PR!

I think that this is a good discussion of the word “anti-” that gives a basis for the definition provided above.

Etymology

When analyzing this composite name, the first question that should be asked is whether the first element, anti, is a translation or whether it is a transliteration of a NEPHITE word.

If anti is a transliteration, it might come from the EGYPTIAN relative marker nty (Coptic ente) meaning “which is,” which can be nominalized as “that which is”. Since the gentilic of the term is used in the plural, if it were pluralized as EGYPTIAN it should be ntyw. This would mean something like “those who are Nephi-Lehi”. In later stages of EGYPTIAN, the relative marker and the genitive marker were confused. If this term derived from such a situation, it would mean something like “those of Nephi-Lehi”.

If anti is a translation, the meaning could be “facing Nephi-Lehi,” from the HEBREW word that means approximately “anti,” (neged), i.e., “facing, opposite, etc.” (HWN). It is the HEBREW Vorlage in Genesis 2:18 of “help meet.” (The Greek Vorlage of English “anti” can mean “opposite, against, in exchange, instead, representing, rivaling, simulating.” See OED.) Perhaps from such considerations, it has been suggested that the significance of ANTI-NEPHI-LEHI is “those who imitate the teachings of the descendants of NEPHI and LEHI” (Ludlow, A Companion to Your Study of the Book of Mormon, 210).

Verse 3 and verse 6 use the phrase “converted unto the Lord”. Oh how we need to pray for so many people to understand just what that phrase means. Ironically it seems that oh so to many are converted to these “weapons of rebellion” as you listed in this chapter instead of being converted unto the Lord.

I was wondering what different types of worship did the Lamanites have in their synagogues, sanctuaries, and temples then did the Nephites? Then when the father of

King Lamoni gave access to Ammon, Aaron and his brethren in Alma 23:2, (“ to their synagoguesand also their temples, and their sanctuaries. “) to preach the Nephite traditions (“ 5 And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time. “) Has the Lord revealed to you what was the type of worship that took place in these structures according to the Nephite traditions? Did they have temple ceremonies in any way similar to our day? Were their synagogues for sabbath days of worship in any way similar to Jewish customs today? What would happen in a sanctuary? In the dictionary it says a sanctuary is a holy of holies as in biblical days. I just was curious as nobody has asked about this before that I remember. Thank you so much for making the BofM come alive more so than ever before. **[I do mention some of this in previous chapters when the Nephites still dwelt in the land of Nephi. I do not know how the Lamanites worshiped. PR]**

Bury Their Weapons – Alma 24:1:30

1 And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about **[area south of the Ohio River]**, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.

2 And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi. **[The divide that occurs when religious views differ is similar to the political climate that exists in America today.]**

3 Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi. **[a title]**

4 And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God. **[Many of these Lamanites felt that their country had been infiltrated by Nephites and that all those who followed them were traitors. It was a political movement.]**

5 Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Midian, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

6 Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.

7 Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren,

the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.

8 And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.

9 And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

10 And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son. **[For many, the most difficult part of forgiveness is to forgive ourselves. Many struggle to release the guilt of previous sins, but the Lord even forgave them of murder. Whatever sin you carry, it is important to remember that we can be forgiven if we give it to the Lord and have faith enough to let it go.]**

11 And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—**[Part of the baptism of fire is a removal of the very desire to sin from our hearts. A “new heart” is often how the gift of the Holy Ghost is described by those who receive it.]**

12 Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

13 Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

14 And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations. **[As the Lord made it known to the father of Abish concerning the future salvation of Lamoni and his people. Lamoni was taught by the angels of God in the Heavenly Realm, and his joy was full!]**

15 Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us and has made us clean thereby. **[There is something to be said for the symbolic acts we perform as a witness to God of our desires and intentions. They stand as a monument of our faith. Keep this in mind as you wish to demonstrate your desire to the Lord by doing something creative to express your faith.]**

16 And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright,

as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

17 And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

18 And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands. **[The latter part of this oath is specific to their identity as Anti-Nephi-Lehies.]**

19 And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

20 And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

21 Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

22 And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

23 Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—

24 Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done. **[How dark must a person be to kill their own people, even when submitting without resistance?]**

25 And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.

26 And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved. **[Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends. John 15:13]**

27 And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people. **[This verse gives a clue to the purposes of God. Why are the righteous allowed to suffer and die? The Lord's purposes are always for the greater good, to save as many souls as He can.]**

In the Heavenly Realm, those who have suffered in this life are embraced by the Lord and gain eternal treasure as their sacrifices are offered in faith.]

28 Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors. **[Those who rebel against God carry more darkness than those who are subject to the traditions of their fathers.]**

29 Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel. **[Amalekites were from the original followers of Amaleci who dissented from the Nephites. Amulonites are the people who were of the priests of Noah who married the daughters of the Lamanites.]**

30 And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God **[experienced the gifts of the Spirit]**, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness **[will of God]**, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

What causes a person or people to fall away after having received the Spirit of God? It is human nature to seek our own self interests, to find fault in others, and to rebel against social constructs. When the love of self overshadows the love for others, we offend the Spirit and begin the descent to Hell.

Questions and Answers

These last 2 chapters have taught me a lot more about false traditions and the damage they inflict. It is not just unbelief or false doctrine that gets passed down, but it is the pride, greed and vanity or vain ambitions that were at the root of them as well. This was shown to me in a dream as the “sins of our fathers” It was then that I realized that it was the false traditions. Your added insights PR were confirmation of this, thank you.

Idolatry causes us to fall away. Our idols, good grief! I believe idolatry bears out any form of a preference for “other than God” which then creates rationalization and justification to put “other than God” in the place of Him. That gives way to apathy and indifference... vices and addictions in many forms and I have seen how that only increases and settles in as we gain and embrace these new appetites for the new God’s we have installed in our lives.

That’s what kills us spiritually I think

Thank you for another chapter.

One thing I have always wondered is about the Amalekites and Amulonites in this story. Once the wicked Lamanites hearts had been softened and they stopped the slaughter of defenseless people of God, why did the Amalekites and Amulonites stop killing also?

It was the Amalekite and Amulonites who stirred the Lamanites up to battle (again). We are told they were hardened and did not repent, even when the Lamanites would fight no more and fell prostrate to the ground themselves. I’m sure the

Amelikites/Amulonites were still or even more filled with hate and rage as their Lamanites quit fighting. Why did they stop and not finish the slaughter? There seems to be more to this story of divine intervention to save the righteous than is being told.

Thank you, this is such a beautiful chapter! After reading this I am filled with so much love for Lamoni and the Anti-Nephi-Lehies. They as a community must have had an enormous amount of trust in the Lord not just by laying down their lives but to also leave their wives and children behind unprotected. Did the Lord add increased protection to widows and fatherless? Did they make plans ahead of time for those who remained living and how they continue on? Or was it simply just complete submission to God by everyone involved? How can we prepare ourselves to become more like this? **[There were no plans made. Complete submission. Perfect love for God removes all fear. PR]**

Was Lamoni among the thousand and five who were slain? **[He lived to see his people relocate to the northern lands under the protection of the Nephites. PR]**

22 And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

26 And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved. [Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends. John 15:13]

This is first hand testimony!

Please, PR, Is this a Blood atonement?

[This was a doctrine taught by Brigham Young. Only Jesus Christ can atone for the sins of another. Those who give their lives for the Lord as a witness of their testimony are worthy of Eternal Life. There are people that believe the spilling of one's own blood, or the killing of another can atone for sins, this is false doctrine. PR]

And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God [experienced the gifts of the Spirit], and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness [will of God], and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

Through your journey, did you ever have the fear I tend to have at times that the higher in light I climbed, the greater my fall would be? I fear one day becoming a son of perdition, that I may eventually know the Savior and afterwards be pulled back by Satan. Did Lucifer always plan on falling, or was he promised something towards the end he couldn't resist? Even Peter denied his Lord, is it normal to fear that you may someday betray the Lord? **[First, you must be a 4th estate to become a son of perdition. Only about 3% of the 144k take that route. It is a deliberate move that is not easy to do, and one doesn't accidentally make that choice. The Lord told me that to develop temperance in this life is a great step toward eliminating**

that possibility in the hereafter. Most sons of perdition all make the choice to become such before birth. PR]

Thank you again for your speedy replies and diligent posts in the Book of Mormon. Correct me if I'm wrong in my thinking, Would not most of the followers of this blog be 4th estate beings in the process of being awoken? In my circle of family and friends I haven't found one person who finds this information as delightful and inspired as myself, they might find it interesting, but have no further desire to find the Savior for themselves. I feel like anyone who is drawn to this information would be among those who would at some future date take place in gathering and awakening the Lord's people and establishing Zion. Am I off in this thinking? **[That is for whom this is written, but I have no idea how many or what percentage that come here will be the Gatherers. I have to believe that the Elect (House of Israel) hear His voice, but the Called and Chosen (144k) are born with an insatiable desire to serve God. PR]**

Remember the Prophecies – Alma 25:1-17

1 And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren **[the Anti-Nephi-Lehies]**; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.

2 But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them. **[These were the source of the Order of Nehor, which the Lamanites hated.]**

3 And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

4 And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

5 And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—

6 For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

7 And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.

8 Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness. **[The far eastern parts of the current United States.]**

9 And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

10 For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

11 And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

12 And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

It took many years for this realization of this prophecy to occur. The degree of wickedness and suffering caused by these abominable priests of Noah stretched for more than a generation.

13 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

14 And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.

15 Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them. **[Unlike the Jews, these people understood the purpose of the law of Moses.]**

16 Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy **[words of God given to His servants to share]**, which spake of those things to come.

How did the law of Moses strengthen their faith in Christ? Every part of the law pointed to a Savior, repentance, and coming to Him. Much of these laws and observances require us to have faith, which is to seek revelation and act upon it. Everything in our lives points to Christ if we open our eyes and look.

17 And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had also verified his word unto them in every particular. **[Every promise from every blessing had come to pass.]**

At the end of this chapter I pause to think of how the Lord always keeps his promises. Abinadi prophesied regarding the demise of the priests of Noah and their posterity. The sons of Mosiah and their brethren were promised they would have great success amongst the Lamanites. I have marveled at how the Lord has kept his promises to me in my life. Many priesthood blessings have been given to me, which seemed too miraculous to be true. I would write down the words and date them. Years would pass and I would ask the Lord, “Is it true? Are these promises still valid?” In my mind I could not comprehend how these blessings could be realized outside of the time constraints I had made. In the end, every word and promise from the Lord has come to be a reality. I TRUST IN HIM. I continue to trust in the word of prophecy He gives even now.

Questions and Answers

In the first verse you have: therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites [Amalekites];

I assume that what you mean is: therefore they [Amalekites] swore vengeance upon the Nephites; **[Yes, that was confusing. These Lamanites had a great hatred for the order of Nehor, which the Amalekites were a part of. They decided to enter into the Nephite land and destroy Ammonihah, which was the origin of this religion. Why they did not attack the Amalekites, I do not know. PR]**

“ [Many priesthood blessings have been given to me, which seemed too miraculous to be true “] If it’s not too personal to ask, were these blessings given to you in a Patriarchal blessing , a family member, a church leader , answers to prayers or directly from angels sent by the Lord? I have an important reason for asking this question. Can you expound more about who to seek blessings from? **[The blessings I was referring to were a patriarchal blessing, father’s blessing, ministering of angels blessing, and also things told to me while experiencing the Lord. So often they are almost impossible to imagine in my mind. I believe them now, and have learned to be patient. Even the scriptures are filled with examples of the Lord’s word coming only after much time has passed, and many years in some cases. I have had to learn to trust the Lord’s word like so many others. PR]**

I have had priesthood blessings given to me but one giver admitted to saying what he thought I wanted to hear. (When he said I would be blessed with something soon, the Holy Ghost immediately and mercifully told me no, that was not true.) My patriarchal blessing and one other priesthood blessing I received seemed to have the Lord’s words and power in them. The rest, no.

My assumption has been that I’ll have to accept that some blessings were just made up by the guys giving them and that I need to take everything to the Lord and ask Him, because heaven is not obliged to deliver on their made-up blessings.

But my patriarchal blessing did seem to have the Lord’s words and power but mentions specific things that are the polar opposite of my reality. (A “multitude of children unto my name” yet I married someone with infertility.) I struggle with feeling like the Lord plays “word games”. For example, the multitude of children could turn out to be the

great grandchildren of my only child, who will be born after I die, but will be “unto my NAME” through the family tree.

Did you find the Lord delivered exactly what He told you or was it in a “word game” kind of way and how it came about was unexpected? **[It is true that many priesthood blessings are uninspired, including patriarchal blessings. Whenever a blessing is given we should carefully consider the words and seek personal revelation. Every item I have received confirmation about for a blessing has come true. This includes my career, marriage, home, children, relationship with the Lord, and current events. There are times that will feel confusing, but this is where we exercise faith and patience, always remembering that the Lord will lead us toward Him and what is required for our benefit. PR]**

I find verse 16 to be very comparable in our day, meaning the Jews felt or believed that their salvation came By obedience to the law of Moses, but did not understand that the law of Moses was only pointing them to Christ and to come unto Christ fully. Vs 16 indicates that the Nephites understood the purpose of the law of Moses. Is it accurate to see the same thing happening in our day similar to the Jews in which many believe that their salvation is secured or waiting for them because they have been baptized by water, are active in a church, and or have gone to the temple, but don't understand that all these things don't secure salvation but point us to fully come on to Christ? Not understanding these things places us in false securities and is a tool of the adversary?

I remember you once said something like you found out that a person you greatly looked up to had given you an uninspired blessing? I see that you have already answered most of what i wanted to ask but in this case how did you find out? Just prayed about the blessing and asked if it was revelatory or not? **[Immediately after the blessing both my wife and I felt the Spirit witness it was not from the Lord. Even prayed about for a confirmation. In this particular instance we first really learned the importance of not leaning on the arm of flesh. PR]**

Also when God wipes out the seed of the wicked generations after the wicked have passed what is the greater significance of this punishment? If you have no living family left on earth is your progress hindered in the eternities?

Thank you so much **[Our progress is not tied to our blood kin. It is our sealing to Jesus Christ by the gift of the Holy Ghost that exalts us. There are many different dynamics in relation to family. Our love for Jesus Christ and keeping of covenants is what bind us together. PR]**

Learn to Praise – Alma 26:1-37

1 And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings? **[God's glory encompasses a fullness of joy.**

Not because He has all things, all knowledge, and all peace; but because He has overcome all things as He does the will of the Father. When we do God's will and follow through to bring about great righteousness we experience joy. Joy is the culmination of our faith; first we seek revelation. Second, we act upon it. And third, we watch it bear fruit.]

2 And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can ye tell?

3 Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work. **[This is the heart of a servant of God, to be an instrument in the Lord's hand to save souls.]**

4 Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

5 Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted. **[This is the purpose of the Lord's servants, or Gatherers. When the field is ripe they are sent.]**

6 Yea, they **[those who come to Christ]** shall not be beaten down by the storm **[Satan's kingdom]** at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds **[demons]**; but when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place **[glory of God]**, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them. **[The most important day of your life is the "last day."]**

7 But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day. **[What is the last day? For us, it is the "last day" when we are born again in Christ, counted amongst the good fruit to be laid up for the harvest..]**

8 Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

9 For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have been strangers to God. **[Few things bring down the glory of Heaven faster than praising, singing, and shouting words of love to our God. And then if you want to magnify the experience – pray in tongues!]**

10 And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto boasting.

11 But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

It is common in our culture to find robust praising of Jesus to be irreverent, inappropriate, or unnecessary. Singing, dancing, shouting, the gift of tongues, and other forms of expression are frowned upon by some. If you are not expressing your heart to Him, at least in private, you may be lacking in faith. Why do I say this? Understand that praise is not for the Lord, but

for us. It cleanses our hearts and helps us to come unto Christ. Like an innocent child seeking their Father, we must fully submit and trust in Him. When we release our spirits in this manner the glory of heaven descends, our sins are forgiven, and we are made clean. Then, the pathway of the spiritual realm is opened, and we are ushered into the presence of God! Praise with all your heart, might, mind, and strength. What the Lord desires is our hearts; and then we are capable of receiving all He desires to give us.

12 Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

13 Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?

14 Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.

15 Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.

16 Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? **[No, never!]** Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.

17 Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

18 Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.

19 Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?

20 Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

Every time I approach the Lord during my personal holy time I take the time to express my gratitude to the Lord in great detail, remembering what He has done for me. This is my praise. I don't worry about how beautiful the words sound, I just express them from the heart. When your heart is pure before God, He will pour out His Spirit upon you and you will be ready for more light.

21 And now behold, my brethren, what natural man **[without God]** is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent. **[humble and repentant.]**

22 Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

One of my favorite scriptures! Ammon explains in this order:

- **Repent, turning your heart to God.**
 - **Exercising faith, seeking revelation.**
 - **Bringing forth good works, acting upon that revelation.**
 - **Praying continually, walking in the Spirit as we seek the Lord's will.**
 - **They will be taught the mysteries, which are a more complete understanding of our relationship with God.**
 - **Reveal new things? To have the spirit of prophecy, and other gifts of the Spirit.**
 - **You become a servant of God, no greater privilege in this life!**
-

Our priesthood is in direct proportion to our relationship with God. Those who follow the words of Ammon will indeed know the Lord, and all things will be revealed to them.

23 Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn? **[Anyone who attempts to exercise faith in Christ at this level will be laughed at and ridiculed. What is the Spirit telling you to do? Is it not a foolish thought according to the world? What will you do?]**

24 For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.

25 And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

26 But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.

27 Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.

Little known facts about how the Lord operates: He loves to work with the least of us to bring about the greatest of events. He chooses those who are pure heart, with faith in Him to do His commandments (revelations). The Lord is in every detail and loves a great storybook ending. He will allow us to struggle, suffer, fail, and doubt; but in the end He knows it will be victorious as we learn to trust in Him.

28 And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God. **[They attempted to see God in every outcome and event. This is difficult to do when we see ourselves as victims of our circumstances.]**

29 And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again. **[The angels are jealous and rejoice in our opportunities to express this kind of epic faith!]**

30 And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some. **[Even one soul is worth such sacrifice.]**

31 Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.

32 For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.

33 And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

34 For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God **[Eternal Life]**, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.

35 Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God **[PRAISE!]**; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

36 Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.

37 Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of every people **[Children of Men]**, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he numbereth his people **[House of Israel]**, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. **[All will be given the Gospel.]** Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.

I never fully understood the importance of praise in coming to the Lord until I began this process, which led to the baptism of fire and my Second

Comforter experience. I am a shy and reserved person by nature; but, the Lord taught me the value of expressing with all my heart my greatest desires. I learned to praise Him and to be pure in my intent. He taught me to express my heart using gratitude, love, desire of relationship, and to extend that to others.

My suggestion to you would be to write a list of all the reasons you are grateful to the Lord. In your prayer read that list out loud to Him with all the love, emotion, and heart you can muster. See what happens when you praise.

Questions and Answers

Beautiful, thanks for your continued insights and wisdom.

Thank you.

This chapter and your comments really touched my heart!

Thank you so much for the profound explanations and insights into this chapter! I loved reading it beyond measure. It truly is the chapter of “Learn to Praise”. And thank you for your ideas on praising Him in a more joyful manner. I am excited to try them. I have a question that I’ve struggled with. At what Estate level is the ability to be omnipresent given? Is being omnipresent the same idea as having your spirit split so you can be in two places at once? But at a higher level of operation with many places at once instead of just two. As when you are in your holy place your spirit is there and in the Heavenly Realm or performing a mission somewhere in the world at the same time. Or is it a part of a higher priesthood such as the Patriarchal Priesthood? I tried the search feature on your site with no results for omnipresent. I’m just trying to understand this idea more fully. Thank you for your patience with me. **[Omnipresent is the ability to split your spirit and be in more than one place at a time. It is a function of the highest priesthood, which occurs after the 4th estate. I am not permitted to go into detail regarding much beyond the 4th estate. PR]**

Blessed is the name of my God! 😊

I love the focus of this verse so much!

I really like what you say about praise. I find it to be very helpful. It is a practice I started about 2 years ago. I listen to contemporary Christian music and I have started to feel the spirit in a way that I had not felt it before. It was real peace and relaxation. It has helped me so much! There are a lot of good songs out there that help me to connect with the lord.

God is so good! Last week I read something else about spending time just praising God if you feel like your regular prayers are getting you “nowhere”. I’ve been dabbling with the practice and today I read this; a second confirmation! Praise is easier! Going to try your list tip!

Love these tender mercies from the Lord. My heart is happy! Quick question and sorry if my questions are redundant but as I grasp and read words in a different light, I am finding the significance behind their true meaning at times. When I read about “ALL THE DAYS OF ADAM OR SETH OR ENOCH and many others, approx 7, does that have a direct meaning? Like the first will be last? I get certain words that really impress my heart and DAYS (estate) is one of them. Is there a deeper meaning you can elaborate on? Thank you as always PR. You are that servant that inspires us to dig deeper, praise differently so that we can GROW in HIM

The most important day of your life is the “LAST DAY.”]

7 But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day. [What is the LAST DAY? For us, it is the “last day” when we are born again in Christ, counted amongst the good fruit to be laid up for the harvest..]

[A day represents a period of time in this context. There are seven dispensations for this world before the eighth begins. We should not procrastinate the day of our repentance. PR]

I am crying with joy and a repentant and seeking heart as I read this! PRAISE our DEAR GOD!

“Understand that praise is not for the Lord, but for us. It cleanses our hearts and helps us to come unto Christ.” I love this! And the timing, on one of my walks recently I was feeling the energy of the plants and birds and rocks around me on my pathway, and I felt them praising God, giving praise and thanks. I was doing the same with them, and at that moment I was told that the action of praising Him was filling us with light, and healing, love, cleansing, so to see your words here confirms to me that revelation. It is not for God, it is for us!! Thank you so much!

The People of Ammon – Alma 27:1-30

1 Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi. **[many joining the Anti-Nephi-Lehies, Alma 25:2,3,13]**

2 And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.

3 Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

4 Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting

destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

5 Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

6 But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

7 And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go? **[It is highly advisable to seek personal revelation for every important decision that will affect you or your family. There is an unbelief that teaches we must figure everything out on our own and do our best, simply asking the Lord for his blessing. This is counter productive to exercising faith in God.]**

8 And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them. **[He was willing to do anything the Lord required. This opens the doors to great blessings when we trust in the Lord.]**

9 But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.

10 But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

11 And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:

12 Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them. **[That is a powerful blessing!]**

There will come a time in the future when the Lord's people will be commanded to step away from society, from the places designated for them by their leaders, and seek refuge according to the revelation the Lord gives them. It will seem counter intuitive, but will literally save many of their lives.

13 And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.

14 And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land. **[north west]**

15 And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.

16 And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.

17 Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.

18 Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness. **[I have felt this joy a few times in my life. I literally fell to the ground, as my heart was overwhelmed with love and gratitude. I would pray and ask the Lord to experience this in your life, and you will if you trust in Him.]**

19 Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.

20 And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.

21 And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi. **[This was the proper protocol amongst the Nephites for such actions. The chief judge held great power, but was appointed by the people and expected to abide by their voice.]**

22 And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful; and this land Jershon is the land which we will give unto our brethren for an inheritance. **[eastward between the Ohio River and the Great Lakes]**

23 And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

24 And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.

25 Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.

26 And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

27 And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they

were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end. **[Few have such faith today amongst those who profess to be followers of Christ. But, there will be many in the future.]**

28 And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

29 Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

30 And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

The courage and strength necessary to abstain from picking up a weapon rather than break their covenant with God – such commitment! This was their promise to the Lord. What is your promise? When we make an oath to the Lord to do something of great sacrifice we open the power of Heaven to bless us. It is good to seek personal revelation before doing this to be sure it is pleasing to the Lord.

Questions and Answers

“There will come a time in the future when the Lord’s people will be commanded to step away from society, from the places designated for them by their leaders, and seek refuge according to the revelation the Lord gives them. It will seem counter intuitive, but will literally save many of their lives.”

Are the “places designated for them by their leaders” camps and refuges that are set up by church leaders to which a family may be told to not go or to depart from? **[Both civic and church leaders. PR]**

[“ There will come a time in the future when the Lord’s people will be commanded to step away from society, from the places designated for them by their leaders, and seek refuge according to the revelation the Lord gives them. It will seem counter intuitive, but will literally save many of their lives.”]When we are commanded to step away from society, will this happen quickly or over a period of time? Are these leaders, government leaders? Is this revelation going to be individual revelation? Are these people going to be brought together to help each other to survive or be on their own? What will happen to these people eventually? Will they be the people to begin the New Zions? **[Things will happen rather quickly. Situations will vary depending upon where people live. Those who lean on the arm of flesh will suffer, but some will eventually be led to Zion. PR]**

Are most large churches in conspiracy with government to control the people? **[I don’t know that. PR]**

“It will seem counter intuitive, but will literally save many of their lives.”
What about it would be counter intuitive? **[Logic will say to do one thing, but the Spirit will tell another. PR]**

I love the Kings submissive heart still on display here
A truly changed soul, Praise God! 😊

I just love these chapters thank you! The Anit-Nephi-Lehies have taught me what it means in 3 Nephi 16, when the Lord warns the Gentiles to “repent and return.” I wondered over that phrase for a while and I can see that the repentant Lamanites are a perfect example for us, the Gentiles. They repented of their false traditions and unbelief and returned to the truth.

They let go of and laid down their weapons of war and embraced the Lord. We can look to them to show us how to repent of our false traditions handed down by our fathers and return to the covenant restored through the Book of Mormon. We can let go of our weapons we use against our brethren who we feel are in the wrong, and cease contending with each other. We can turn to Christ and let go of the arm of flesh. And then Lord promises that we will be numbered among and receive the promises of the House of Israel, the same path the Lamanites returned to.

So my question is, when are the Gentiles numbered among the House of Israel exactly? When I was beginning to awaken the Lord told me to “repent and return.” I had no idea what that meant until I began to search the scriptures and found it in 3 Nephi but it took another year to understand it. Since the Book of Mormon is to us, the Gentiles who have received this book and been baptized, when will we know if we have been adopted in? The Lord was letting me know that we needed to RETURN to the Truth of the everlasting covenant so that we can again be as Salt (D&C 101:39) and numbered with His covenant people.

Is repenting and turning to Christ, letting go of our false traditions and unbelief enough? Do we need to receive the Holy Ghost first? **[To “repent and return” is to accept the Everlasting Covenant and to come unto Christ. The fulfillment of the covenant in this life is to receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. PR]**

Do you identify the process of the offering of the broken heart and contrite spirit and subsequently receiving the baptism of fire / gift of the Holy Ghost as what it means to begin to accept The Everlasting Covenant? How does this acceptance relate to the Church of the First-Born, are they essentially different definitions of the same thing? Thanks! **[The portion of the Everlasting Covenant that is made in this life is to repent, be baptized, and receive the Holy Ghost. The Church of the First Born are those who have received Eternal Life. The Church of Christ in the telestial world has many who are repenting and coming to Christ. The Church of the Firstborn have come unto Him, raised to their 3rd estate and are preparing for more in the covenant. They are the Church of the Firstborn, which we will always be a part of. From here, as you exercise faith, you will ascend to the Noble and Great, which is part of the 4th estate. Then there are kings and queens... PR]**

So among these people of the Anti-Nephi-Lehies you would be seeing some in all these differing situations...

– Some are repenting & baptised but have yet to receive the rebirth = Celestial Church of Christ

– Some have received the rebirth + Gift of The Holy Ghost = Church of The First Born

– Some have received the rebirth + Gift of The Holy Ghost and are in fact awakening 4th estate beings = Noble and Great Ones

The latter two have engaged The Everlasting Covenant fully in mortality. Correct? **[Yes, but I cannot say whether there were 4th estate among them. The only thing that matters is whether we are following the Doctrine of Christ, which leads us to Him as fast as possible. If someone happens to be a 4th estate the Lord will lead them toward their mission. PR]**

Sorrow and Rejoicing – Alma 28:1-14

1 And now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a church also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

2 And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad. **[The greatest battle in the history of these people since Lehi arrived takes place when the Lamanites followed the Anti-Nephi-Lehies into the wilderness.]**

3 Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land. **[Because of the sudden attack of the Lamanites against Ammonihah the Nephites were wise to have watchtowers set up throughout the land.]**

4 And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi—

5 Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

6 And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

7 And thus endeth the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; **[So much has happened in just 15 years. So much war and death.]**

8 And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

9 And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.

10 And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

11 And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless woe.

12 While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult [**are elated**] in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

13 And thus we see how great the inequality of man [**difference in circumstances**] is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

14 And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

This world is filled with good and evil, love and hate, happiness and death; but few are willing to take hold of the iron rod which leads to Life. The devil truly ensnares the hearts of people with lies, fear, discouragement, and pride. What does it take to awaken our family, friends, and neighbors? We can serve them, show love, and be an example, but it is not enough. The only way we can truly be a servant of God is to have charity.

You might ask, “But, isn’t that what you just listed?” Yes, but those are the fruits of charity, not charity itself. True charity is to know the mind of God, or as it is written, “the pure love of Christ.” This is to know God’s will regarding ourselves and others. Without truly knowing Him, we are “nothing” in the kingdom of Heaven.

Questions and Answers

Thank you so much for your comments at the end of this chapter. Your posts are so inspirational to me. They so inspire me to press forward, to show the fruits of charity, and know the will of the Lord in all things. Only He knows the way . Thank you so much. Your blog makes such a huge difference in my life. God bless you in all your works.

A few years back I realized that when Mormon abridged these records, he had seen our day and that no one in his days would ever read these words. They were meant for us... a message/warning across time. Now, when I read small insertions, like this chapter, I read them very differently than I had traditionally. This chapter is, to me, a very sobering warning.

[What does it take to awaken our family, friends, and neighbors? We can serve them, show love, and be an example, but it is not enough. The only way we can truly be a servant of God is to have charity.] I ask myself the above question every day. My wife and I are diligent in our efforts of service toward the above list; yet I never feel it is enough, or that my family, friends, and neighbors are awake!

[You might ask, “But, isn’t that what you just listed?” Yes, but those are the fruits of charity, not charity itself. True charity is to know the mind of God, or as it is written, “the pure love of Christ.” This is to know God’s will regarding ourselves and others.] My question: What does that look like in my daily life...to know God’s will regarding ourselves and others? Am I to perceive what to do for others as the Lord would act and do for them? Regarding myself; am I to be brutally honest and obedient with my inner knower which tells me what the best in me should do or be? How do I identify “True Charity”?? **[True charity is to walk in the Spirit of God knowing His will for you and others. When such light is bestowed upon us we are worthy of the baptism of fire and gift of the Holy Ghost. This is the promise of the Sacramental Prayer, “that the Spirit shall always be with them.” When this is the case we will know exactly how the Lord desires us to do His will in regard to our family and others. PR]**

It seems like what needs to happen is to know the mind of God so well that you can intervene in subtle ways without impingement of agency but just enough to stir them up to remembrance. Just enough to get them to turn their head back to the Lord.

I believe that Charity is the full endowment of the Holy Ghost... who shows/tells us all things that we must do.

Is there any room for this sort of intervention?

If loving and serving is not enough shouldn’t we be striving to hear how the Lord would have us work miracles in people’s lives to help bring them to a state of turning back to Him?

Ammon, as we just read, did it with King Lamoni... is that what a full manifestation of Charity looks like? **[Yes, Ammon fully demonstrated this virtue and gift of the Spirit. As we pray for others the Lord can show us how to be an instrument in His hand. It is more important that we be an advocate for those we love, as we pray in their behalf, and the Lord guides us to do what He would have us do. PR]**

If I Were an Angel – Alma 29:1-17

1 O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

Every servant of God desires to have the means to do more in His service. Here, Alma expresses his deepest desire. The funny thing is how much the Lord will often give us the desires of our heart when we serve Him righteously. Alma's efforts, even after such sorrow and repentance, led to the saving of many thousands of souls. What he didn't see was that his words would be read by millions, including those who would gather the Remnant of Jacob and the House of Israel in the last days. Alma is indeed an angel of God, and his trump is heard far and wide!

2 Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth. **[He is expressing the desire of every 4th estate servant. The final Gatherers of the last days will do just that.]**

3 But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

As I read this verse the Spirit touches my heart. Alma was blessed to do much for the Lord during his life because of such great wishes as these. To those he was called to minister he did speak with a voice of thunder, calling repentance, and bringing many souls to our Lord. What is the desire of your heart? Do you desire to share the Gospel with the trump of an angel? If so, this is not a sin, but a desire of faith. We always must wait upon the Lord, as He makes us worthy for whichever work we are allotted to do.

4 I ought not to harrow up in my desires the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction. **[Truly, our desires are the foundation of our faith in Christ. What we seek after, that we will find. Most people in this world desire comfort, pleasure, status, etc. Few desire to know the Lord, to be a servant of God in bringing others to Him. The Lord will grant your desires if they are righteous. If we desire to see God, to know we are accepted of Him, this is not enough. We must seek the Lord because we love Him and want to be His servant, to bring many souls to the Lord, like Alma. When our desires are righteous, the Lord moves His Spirit upon us to the fulfillment of His words.]**

5 Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience. **[There are many in this world who are blameless without the truth. The truth is that these people made such a choice before they were born. Most choices are made in the other realm. Those who chose to find God made an Everlasting Covenant before they came. Some made a covenant to find Satan. All are given according to their desires.]**

6 Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

7 Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth? **[I think the Lord will forgive you, Alma. It was because of these great desires that you condescended as a Servant of God to help in this great effort to save souls. Alma 13]**

8 For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true. **[Every nation, every soul upon this earth has, and will yet have, an opportunity to accept the gift of Christ if they will have it. There is far more done on the other side of the veil than occurs here. This world is truly the harvest of souls, and the field is white.]**

9 I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy. **[And this is why you are Chosen.]**

10 And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent **[humble and repenting]**, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me. **[his own repentance]**

11 Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage. **[The bondage of sin, for the Lord taught them how to come unto Him.]**

12 Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage. **[both physical and spiritual bondage]**

13 Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.

14 But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.

15 Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward! **[To bring forth “fruit” is to bring a soul to Christ, which is the baptism of fire and gift of the Holy Ghost. This is the fruit the Lord desires. D&C 84:57-58]**

16 Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy. **[He feels himself ascending to God. When the Spirit comes upon a person in such manner this is the sensation.]**

17 And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.

Oh that I were an angel! To be an angel is to be an unfettered servant of God. These divine messengers come from the courts of Heaven bringing good tidings, comforting our souls, and destroying the evil opponents of the Lord's anointed. What we don't realize is how many angels there are among us. Some are veiled in physical bodies, and some in translated bodies. Each is doing exactly what the Lord has allotted to them to do. Be like Alma and cry out your desires to the Lord! He will hear you and set your course to that end according to your faith.

Questions and Answers

Beautiful!

4 I ought not to harrow up in my desires the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction. [Truly, our desires are the foundation of our faith in Christ. What we seek after, that we will find. Most people in this world desire comfort, pleasure, status, etc. Few desire to know the Lord, to be a servant of God in bringing others to Him. The Lord will grant your desires if they are righteous. If we desire to see God, to know we are accepted of Him, this is not enough. We must seek the Lord because we love Him and want to be His servant, to bring many souls to the Lord, like Alma. When our desires are righteous, the Lord moves His Spirit upon us to the fulfillment of His words.]

I've been studying the wonderful words here for some time now. The above words hit home which are: "We must seek the Lord because we love Him and want to be His servant, to bring many souls to the Lord, like Alma. When our desires are righteous, the Lord moves His Spirit upon us to the fulfillment of His words.]" Thank you so much for that sacred key and truth.

Oh, that I could be an angel and serve my God according to His desires.

It's so difficult when you see loved ones and family members caught up in the deceptions of Satan. You so want them to taste of the fruits of repentance. The joy and gifts of the spirits that are available to them. There is no joy in sin! There's only addiction, degradation, and filth. Seeking one depravity after another. You desire to be an angel and save them. Your heart cries out to the Lord to be an instrument in His hands to save them. Thank you for your inspirational words in this chapter. You make my heart sing with love for our redeemer, Jesus Christ!

PR...when you make this comment here:

15 Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward! [To bring forth "fruit" is to bring a soul to Christ, which is the baptism of fire and gift of the Holy Ghost. This is the fruit the Lord desires. D&C 84:57-58]

I see that this is exactly what you are doing here with all of us...helping us to become fruit. What I wonder is that even though many will be fruit, will there be those of us who

will be fruit and also gatherers? I really want to be a gatherer. **[Yes, there will be those of you who will bear fruit and gather fruit as well. PR]**

From vs 8: "... For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word..."

Does this mean the Lord will send people to a nation who are from that nation, speak the language and understand the culture to teach the people? Is this His preferred way? **[In our time, the Times of the Gentiles, he is placing anointed prophets in every nation. Those who will hear will hear in their own tongue. In the last days, when the Gatherers go forth, this will escalate and there will be many prophets, many using the gift of tongues to gather in a hurry from all nations. PR]**

This chapter makes me want to rejoice and to overcome anything holding me back from becoming an instrument in the Lord's hands. Praise be the Lord our God and thank you, PR.

I absolutely love this chapter and the lord inspiring these pages to come forth. It brings so much joy to my heart that the lord will bring about the desires of our heart if they be righteous and according to his will. Praise the lord.

Truly, our desires are the foundation of our faith in Christ. What we seek after, that we will find. Most people in this world desire comfort, pleasure, status, etc. Few desire to know the Lord, to be a servant of God in bringing others to Him. The Lord will grant your desires if they are righteous. If we desire to see God, to know we are accepted of Him, this is not enough. We must seek the Lord because we love Him and want to be His servant, to bring many souls to the Lord, like Alma. When our desires are righteous, the Lord moves His Spirit upon us to the fulfillment of His words.]

The truth is spoken here

Thanks dear for this amazing truth

My heart burns within me as I think through the righteous desires I have in my heart. I just love Alma's enthusiastic consecrated heart. I love it! So much light in this chapter.

To All:

Isn't this collective rejoicing we are all feeling today just so special... so sublime? I don't know you but I know I feel love for you and a keen awareness of wanting to serve among you. Can I just also say that I was already so full of light and the love of God after reading this chapter... but then to see the rest of my fellow travelers caught up in this glorious spirit just makes my heart soar with even more joy!

OH... my goodness... Praise God in Heaven, Amen?? 😊 Are we not blessed?

Praise His holy name for we are so loved, so blessed, so edified. He is mighty to save.

What a glorious thing it us to be with you all during this project. Much love to you all.

Brother Mike 😊

So blessed Mike Ross! It actually moved me to the core when I read this . I know our friend PR is not giving his time and talents in the pursuit of his own glory but to truly

bring the Lords glory to us! I feel it. I know it. It's that deeper sense of purpose we all have yet to fulfill and blog has been critical for me to peel back layers of mortality from to recognize glimpses of HIS will for my spiritual growth. PR and many of you are a blessing on and in this journey:) Amen and Amen...

To All:

Isn't this collective rejoicing we are all feeling today just so special... so sublime? I don't know you but I know I feel love for you and a keen awareness of wanting to serve among you. Can I just also say that I was already so full of light and the love of God after reading this chapter... but then to see the rest of my fellow travelers caught up in this glorious spirit just makes my heart soar with even more joy!

OH... my goodness... Praise God in Heaven, Amen?? 😊 Are we not blessed?

Praise His holy name for we are so loved, so blessed, so edified. He is mighty to save. What a glorious thing it us to be with you all during this project. Much love to you all.

The Words of Korihor – Alma 30:1-60

1 Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—

2 Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.

3 Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God [**temple worship**], according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.

4 And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

5 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.

6 But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ. [**An “Anti-Christ” is a person who preaches against the Lord, but the Anti-Christ in the last days will be a particular individual who will be a spiritual leader sent by Satan to deceive the world.**]

7 Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

8 For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

9 Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

10 But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this wickedness they were punished. **[according to the law of Moses]**

11 For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.

How true is this in America today? Can a person be punished for believing a particular political philosophy, or religion? This is evident in many colleges, universities, professions, and even on the internet. In some communities, people become violent toward others simply because of their beliefs.

12 And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying: **[There are many Korihors in the world today.]**

13 O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come. **[A popular approach is to suggest Christians are bound to mindless dogma; that no miracles exist, even that Christ was not a real person, or certainly not what you claim him to be.]**

14 Behold, these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers. **[It is difficult to live in a world where scripture and prophecy is considered the focus of a weak mind. We must be faithful and not allow the mockery of others to deter us.]**

15 How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ. **[Here is the state of the carnal mind. Such a person will not believe unless they can measure it in a laboratory.]**

16 Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so. **[The tactic of the Adversary is to call names, to embarrass us into submission. No person wants to be the focus of ridicule. The servants of God are always laughed at, but the Lord always has the last word.]**

17 And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature; therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

Sound familiar? This would be true if nothing mattered. Until the last 150 years there was little to explain the mysteries of the universe. People relied upon superstition or whatever explanation for the time was the most widely

accepted. In recent history science and all kinds of scholarly research have devised theories and hypotheses for how to explain nature, creation, and the unseen universe. They claim to know so much while knowing so little. The belief in God has become the ridicule of the intellectual elite. Such arrogance!

18 And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, yea, leading away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms—telling them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

One of the greatest deterrents to sexual improprieties is the belief that we are accountable to God. People who view families as sacred, treat marriage as a holy relationship and respect the relationship between a man and a woman. When sexual appetites are sought as self gratifying activities the culture declines and the Spirit of the Lord departs.

19 Now this man went over to the land of Jerushon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites.

20 But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a high priest over that people.

21 And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land. And he came over into the land of Gideon **[in the west]**, and began to preach unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

22 And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

23 Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to thy words.

24 Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do not know that they are true.

25 Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. **[Adam and Eve]** Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents. **[misconstrues the doctrine]**

26 And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—

27 And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

Korihor is much like Sherum who preached similar doctrine to the Nephites in Jacob 7.

28 Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be. **[There are ecclesiastical leaders that do in fact yoke others according to their desires. But, we must learn to discern. When a Korihor comes into your life you must be careful not to throw out your faith because of the accusations of another.]**

29 Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land. **[It was the custom of the Nephite people to bind up a dissident amongst the people and bring them to the judge. When someone is clearly unwilling to communicate without becoming angry it is best to not continue the conversation.]**

30 And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme. **[Blaspheme is worse than to deny something is true. It is to defame God in a manner which is not only disrespectful, but to lie about the truth regarding who God is and His works.]**

31 And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people. **[In today's society many are condemned by others before they are proved guilty. Accusations can ruin a person or institution, whether they are true or not. Korihor is making false accusations against Alma and those who serve in the church of God.]**

32 Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

33 And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one seninefor my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

34 And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren? **[Alma rebuts Korihor's accusations.]**

35 Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts? **[He begins by asking questions. A powerful way for the Spirit to lead a conversation.]**

36 And Korihor answered him, Yea.

37 And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

38 And he answered, Nay.

39 Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.

40 And now what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.

41 But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?

42 Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, **[gift of discernment]** and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about **[dark revelation]**, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.

43 And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words. **[Sign seekers are always possessed with an evil spirit. Those who seek spiritual gifts for amusement, curiosity, or gain will only find the dark gifts, for God will not be mocked.]**

44 But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator. **[The Nephites were very aware of the technical intricacies of the sun, moon, planets, and constellations. The exactness of the natural world was a constant witness of God's majesty and power.]**

45 And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

46 And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

47 But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more. **[This is the spirit of prophecy, as Alma spoke the words the Lord put into his mouth.]**

48 Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God **[a common view today of agnostic believers]**; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

How would you answer someone who denied God in this manner? I think Alma has done a pretty good job up until this point. The fact is that with such people there is nothing you can do to convince them. They can only come to that realization on their own.

49 Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

50 Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance **[could not speak nor hear]**, according to the words of Alma.

51 And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

52 And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God. **[I believe that many who deny God often do because of anger toward God, religion, or some other personal reason. They often justify their beliefs to meet their needs. These kinds of atheists are often the most vehement against Christians.]**

53 But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

The Adversary will visit people as an angel of light. This occurred to Joseph Smith when he was commanded to practice polygamy or he would be destroyed. This second hand account is often used to show that Joseph was reluctant, but obedient. In fact, he cast out the dark spirit in the name of the Lord. I have had similar encounters. It is not hard to discern that they are not true messengers. A true messenger doesn't threaten you in the name of God. Their light is pale in comparison to an angel from the Throne. Their words are not uplifting or point to Christ, but often speak to our comfort, pride, and carnal desires.

54 Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

55 But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

56 And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.

57 Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.

58 And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

59 And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

60 And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.

I find it interesting that Korihor would choose to go to the Zoramites of all people, who had a reputation for not being generous. It may be he thought he would get sympathy from them. The land of the Zoramites was not a short distance from Zarahemla.

There are many deceivers amongst us. They speak well, use flattery, and love to stand in the spotlight. If you ever hear preaching that appeals to your carnal desires: telling you that you are worthy of God's greatest blessings, that you are chosen, that God will bless you with great wealth, fame, prosperity, comfort, pleasure, and other self-gratifying promises – run as fast as you can. Such people will use intimidation to coerce and manipulate their followers to be obedient. The key to remember is whether the focus is upon them, or the Lord. Do they teach to ask God, or to just trust them. Be wise in who you follow. Don't even follow me. Everything I write you should consider and ask the Lord.

Questions and Answers

Wise words for us to remember with all the many false teachers and leaders among us today seeking after fame, wealth and status . To build up themselves instead of the Lord. It's so difficult as many speak truth with mixed in deceptions. I have a friend who reads and listens to this material just to glean a few truths. Isn't this dangerous to do as you are opening yourself up for trouble? If I feel any darkness in someone's teachings I avoid it all together. Isn't this a better course to follow? Some of the most righteous men and women have been led astray by these teachings. "Trust in the Lord " is always your apothegm. If we don't let Him guide us we will be deceived and led astray too. Also, thank you for testifying of the truth about polygamy and Joseph Smith. I had never heard the account of Joseph Smith and a "dark spirit " he cast out. Thank you PR for all you do!

Everything you touched upon today has been on my mind big time. I DO believe light recognizes light (it's a feeling of peace) I believe is directly associated with that enmity we so often recognize. I believe our very SOULS can feel something even when no words are spoken at times. Is this related to those angels sent forth to watch over those fulfilling covenant missions here on Earth? **[Yes. PR]**

Vs 2: Was fasting at a loved one's death something that was done in Nephite culture or was it part of the Law of Moses? (After touching a dead body you are unclean – a commandment relating to sanitation.) **[I do not know. PR]**

“the Anti-Christ in the last days will be a particular individual who will be a spiritual leader sent by Satan to deceive the world”

Will Satan himself inhabit that person's body to act and exist in our realm or just direct him? **[He will direct Him. He is a son of perdition, not a literal son of Satan. PR]**

Or is it a mockery of Christ where the father of lies sends a “son”?

Vs 16: I feel like the “crazy” argument is still used today if you believe in heavenly things. Do we mortals look pretty much like blind, deranged zombies to the heavenly realm when we suppose we are being “normal”?

Vs 17: I feel like Korihor is quoting Darwin's ideas here. If that is the case, was it the adversary who inspired Darwin? **[I haven't asked the Lord that. PR]**

Vs 59: What event caused Korihor to die by trampling?

And why did he have to beg for food? Why did he not return to where he had come from and farm family land? **[I do not know. PR]**

Hi PR,

Thank you for sharing your insights!

The Adversary will visit people as an angel of light. This occurred to Joseph Smith when he was commanded to practice polygamy or he would be destroyed. This second hand account is often used to show that Joseph was reluctant, but obedient. In fact, he cast out the dark spirit in the name of the Lord.

This is a powerful testimony of the actual account of the angel of darkness that came to deceive Joseph. Do you know why the Lord sees fit to allow this account to be perpetuated today? Along with all the other errors regarding polygamy? Also do you know of other errors that are being taught as gospel? **[The Lord has always allowed people to make choices. We saw this throughout the BofM. But he always provides a way for the penitent. PR]**

Praise Jesus, he is the Light, Life, and Truth!

17 And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature; therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

I'm amazed at how much we believe this doctrine for ourselves. In the Christian world we hear how we need to do everything we can to get an education so we can compete with the world. We start our kids at a very early age to excel in sports and be the strongest and fastest so they can somehow be the lucky and few that can make it in the professional world. I don't see a lot of evidence that the Christian world believes that whatever a man does is no crime but I think that some Christians, particularly those that

put a great emphasis on works do in fact believe that there can be no atonement made for the sins of man. We deny Grace, which is, in my opinion, denying the atonement. We don't think ourselves worthy of grace until we have somehow worked for it. We disbelieve the story of Alma himself when he was saved and stated clearly that it was "not of any worthiness of myself" (see Alma 36:5)

I think Korihor would be very proud of many of us for believing and living by much of his doctrine.

I spent over a decade as an Atheist and then tapered off as an agnostic. Every time I read this chapter I shudder at how spot on it describes that world view!

For me, the ONLY thing that saved me from that darkness was the fact that I once knew the peace, joy and light of the Lord as a youth and missionary. I learned about Joseph's polygamy and that so deeply disturbed me I lost all hope over the course of 17 years. The thing that saved me was the abandonment of ANY management of my creature.

I submitted to the Lord. I asked Him what things I should do in order to come back. He told me. So I acted on faith and instantly as I did the things that came to me from on high my "creature" was flooded with love and light. I became full of hope. Over 14 months just about every day as I did His instructions I was filled with His love and light to the consuming of my old self. I felt like it was purged out of me. I had no desire to do evil but to do good continually.

I praise Him... His name and if you know any atheists or agnostics and desire them to come back ... they must first "come to themselves" but if they will do so, please know that the Lord God almighty HE WILL RUN TO THEM at breakneck speed to succor them and to bring them back into His fold....

And it is one of the most beautiful things a human soul can witness.

Can you tell us any more about how you know what Joseph's experience was with the angel of light? This is claimed to be a foundational experience for why Joseph had women sealed to him. Can you say any more about the later claims that many women were sealed to him? **[I think I may have included some of that in my book A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations. Joseph told me about it as we discussed the whole polygamy topic. The part with men, women, and children sealed to him was related to a proxy ceremony where he stood as the Savior, and people were sealed to him to represent coming into the Church of the Firstborn. The account with the "flaming sword" did occur, but it was a dark angel and Joseph cast him out. Much different than the narrative that was shared in church history. PR]**

You said the Lord has the last word, does He literally for everyone on this planet? They will stand before Him and be judged after this earth ascends? **[Every soul of this world will be judged of God. PR]**

Will they be judged in the courts of heaven before God? I've been under the impression that perdition and telestial being's just go on their merry way after the earth ascends. **[To "go on their merry way" implies that they can choose to do whatever they want. That is not the case. To be judged by God is to be divided according to their glory and sent to a sphere in which that glory abides. PR]**

After being judged by God, telestial beings go to a telestial sphere and glory. I have learned that this earth is a telestial sphere with a telestial glory. So would those abiding the telestial glory be sent to dwell on an earth like this? I am also curious as to what their life will be like. Will it be exactly like we are living here today on this earth? Are there numerous spheres of telestial glory? For example, this earth is so... so beautiful and inspiring to live on. Would this earth sphere be a higher order or example of a telestial glory? **[This earth is a 4th estate being. Most telestial worlds are 2nd estate and not as beautified. They will go to a 2nd estate earth to dwell. PR]**

What does a 2nd estate planet tend to look like? (A bit monochrome and rocky? Maybe like Mars?) **[Not a set standard, but they tend to be harsher environments than earth. PR]**

Wow, thanks PR! Now my mind is racing 😊
Ok, so these other 2nd estate worlds that aren't as beautiful as our earth have people living on them? **[Yes. PR]**

Are 4th estate planets kept isolated from these inhabited 2nd estate planets? (Lest the 2nd estate migrate to the nearby 4th estate planet?) **[Yes, for the most part. PR]**

What is a 4th estate planet? **[This is a planet that has accepted a calling and was chosen to condescend to assist the House of Israel according to the Everlasting Covenant. The earth is such a planet. PR]**

What is the purpose then of 2nd estate planets that house 2nd estate beings that are not under covenant? Do they have opportunities to ascend and covenant with the Savior (albeit less available than here)? Are there lives prolonged beyond 100 years in a type of resurrected body? **[All planets follow the Everlasting Covenant in a similitude of the sons and daughters of God. That is all I can say about that. PR]**

Rameumptom – Alma 31:1-38

1 Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols **[a focus of faith other than God]**, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

Any kind of doctrine or practice that takes our focus away from Jesus Christ is a dumb idol, because it has no power to save.

2 For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites. **[The Zoramites had separated themselves according to Zoram's teachings on the far eastern side of the Nephite lands.]**

3 Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

4 Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites. **[As had previously occurred with the Amalekites and the Amulonites.]**

5 And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

6 Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

7 Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblon and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word. **[It must have been a pleasing thought to go and preach to these people with his great friends, the sons of Mosiah, after seeing the great success they had in the conversion of so many Lamanites. Their faith was overflowing in the Lord.]**

8 Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

9 But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses. **[It does not take very long for a people to “fall into great errors.” It is the nature of men to change the laws and ordinances to their liking, or even to bend with cultural norms.]**

10 Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

Is this a “performance of the church” today, to pray to God that we not enter into temptation? I don't know if I ever hear of this today. It is left to the individual to seek such protection, for ourselves and our family.

11 Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.

12 Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld; **[It was not as**

much that they built synagogues and worshipped one day a week, but how they did it that was alarming.]

13 For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head; and the top thereof would only admit one person. **[The typical altar of the Nephite synagogues and sanctuaries were waist level and was wide enough for more than one person. Kind of like a Sacrament table. This altar was more like the podium of a chapel, set high above the rest.]**

14 Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

15 Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy **[So far, so good.]**, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever. **[This last statement suggests that there would not be a Messiah, or that God would condescend in the flesh. This is to break from the Church of Christ.]**

16 Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers **[Suggesting that the Jews and the family of Lehi were archaic and not as enlightened as them.]**; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ. **[A separatist movement where they are the chosen people.]**

17 But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God. **[How they were able to divide the belief of Christ and have a belief in God is interesting. The Law of Moses and the words of the prophets all point to Christ. Zoram had distinguished himself as a prophet amongst his people and his words had dusted off all previous words to the contrary. This is why it is a good practice to judge the words of a modern prophet against those of the past. Then we can seek personal revelation for discernment.]**

18 And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.

The people of Zoram followed a religion which stated that only they were honored to be saved by the Lord. All others could not be saved. This kind of exclusivity doctrine is a great snare of the Adversary. As one continually thanks God and expresses resolve in prayer regarding what is considered a blessing, you can become convinced that it is true, whether or not the Spirit has confirmed this. Emotion is an easy substitute for the Spirit of God. When the Spirit of truth is given it is not an emotion. It manifests as clear thoughts. Sometimes emotions can be a byproduct of our joy, but never the evidence.

19 Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure. **[How could anyone reach this point of deception?]**

20 For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers. **[To know the true nature of a church, religion, or ideology, all one needs to do is listen to the speeches, prayers, testimonies of their members to get a sense of what they worship. If more than half of what is spoken is not centered upon Christ, it has likely been adulterated.]**

21 Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand. **[The Sacred Podium]**

I then asked the Lord about the Rameumptom that I am studying now in Alma 31. I was shown a vision of the scene. It was an outdoor area with a perimeter. There was a podium built between 10-15 feet up, like the podium in a large chapel. It was made of wood and had sheets with symbols draped over the stand. One person at a time, from the most respected men in the community would take turns ascending the podium once a week to offer the prayer. There was special seating in front of the podium where only men would sit. In the back, the women would stand. There were various levels of or degrees of worthiness that determined who could be close to the Rameumptom. Zoram was considered their prophet and a priest would teach his words followed by the devotions. At the end of each devotion the congregation would say, "Halem!" Which I think was something similar to how we use "Amen." There were many of these Sanctuaries around the city and some were enclosed for when the weather was bad.

22 Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.

23 Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner. **[A mighty repetitive prayer offered once a week. Such a prayer as Alma described would be so prideful and repugnant to the Lord.]**

24 Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods. **[dumb idols]**

How many dumb idols can you think of?

-
- Homes
 - Cars
 - Career
 - Clothes
 - Entertainment
 - Social Media
 - Vacations
 - Beauty
-

25 Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride. [**“Look at all we have been blessed with. Surely, we are God’s chosen people!”**]

26 And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men? [**It helps to look up and throw out a prayer to God throughout the day. Yes, He hears everything.**]

27 Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

28 Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish. [**Many do this today.**]

29 Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

In a similar manner I hear today:

-
- **“I don’t expect the Second Coming in my lifetime.**
 - **God doesn’t show Himself to people like in the old days.**
 - **Just be a good person, it all works out.**
 - **I know the Church is true because I’m so blessed!**
-

30 O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul. [**Alma first prays for strength, or the faith necessary to exercise the gifts of the Spirit.**]

31 O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

32 O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ. [**The comfort Alma desires is a portion of the Lord’s Spirit, which will give them the power to do the work necessary to help these people.**]

33 Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people. [**He prays for the faith of his companions.**]

34 O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

35 Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.

I have learned that a proper and effective way to approach the Lord when asking for a blessing is to reason out your case before Him. The more prepared you are when you pray, the more faith you will exercise. Always prepare to come before the Lord with the big questions and requests as if you are about to plead your case before the Supreme Court.

36 Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit. **[The Spirit of the Lord instructed Alma to do this. Often when a servant touches another, whether it is for a blessing, or some other act of the Lord, a touch can create a conduit of light to that person. The Savior often would do this during His ministry. The laying on of hands has many functions.]**

37 And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on. **[A Commandment specific for a servant while performing the Lord's work. 3 Nephi 13]**

38 And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

What does it mean to pray in faith? When someone is living a virtuous life, continually repenting and coming unto Christ, they abide in the Spirit of God. Their thoughts are channeled to creatively approach problems and receive revelation by the Spirit in the form of visions and words. When such a person approaches the Lord with a solution, the Lord will honor them with the resolution or blessing according to their faith. Much like what occurred to the Brother of Jared with the sixteen stones. Alma prayed in faith regarding him and his companions before they began to preach to the people. When we seek to pray in faith we must come to the Lord with our situation and a possible solution. The Lord will direct us from there according to His will. We must always pray in faith.

Questions and Answers

This chapter has never hit me so hard. It is almost a perfect parallel to our day and circumstances!

I have also felt as Alma and his brethren, the pain and sorrow that follows the thought, "how have we come to this point...where is Christ in our worship?"

Thanks PR for adding clarity to this chapter and making possible the Spirit teaching me beyond your words. So much truth in these verses. I love this chapter! I get confused

about dumb idols. When you list vacations as a dumb idol...does the Lord look down at us when we travel or take our kids places? Things like that confuse me because I don't want it to be an idol, but can we not enjoy life with our kids? Thank you for all of your comments, I have really enjoyed your scripture posts. **[These are only sins when**

our hearts place them above our desire to find the Lord. One test is to ask yourself what you think about most during idle time. As long as idle time is not idol time. PR]

So the Zoramites were a people and a church that built buildings to gather in and meet weekly and members took turns bearing testimony that they were the only true church and a chosen people and everyone else was wrong. They denied the grace of Christ and then spent the rest of the week chasing the things of the world and spent a lot of time looking good and attractive. Beauty seemed very important to them.

Why does this story seem so familiar to me?

Another dumb idol could be sports team loyalty. As a student at BYU in a Book of Mormon religion class the professor had privately asked the opening prayer giver to pray as the Zoramites—praising God for all of our good fortune and to belong to the Lord's school which is more blessed and holy than the other schools, to bless the Lord's team to dominate the other to show superiority etc... The scariest thing was that we all said Amen and hardly raised an eyebrow. When the professor went over these idols we were all ashamed we hadn't said anything. It is a lesson that has stuck with me all these years later. It almost hurts my stomach to see the pride and sometimes animosity that we call Cougar sports—there is a fine line of competition. The Zoramite's attitude so easily creeps in. This chapter calls us out on so many levels I know I need to repent of often.

I love this chapter. I've waited in anticipation for months to get to this one. When I asked the Lord a critical question in March 2017 – one I thought I already knew the easy answer to – His answer came slowly over several months. On February 7, 2018 He told me to go read about the Zoramites. I had to search "Zoramites" to even find what chapters they were in. I remember staring at the page as I finished Alma 31, my eyes opened, knowing I could never unsee what the Lord had just gently revealed.

Thank you for this scripture project and for posting everyone's comments! I love what I learn here!

Do you know how the Nephites gathered and worshiped in comparison to this? Was it unusual for the women to be standing at the back or was that something that they always did? I thought it was interesting that as they fell away from the Lord the women were pushed to the back and perhaps not even allowed to go up the Rameumptom, 'they did offer up every man, the self same prayer' I never picked up on that before. Thank you again! **[The Nephites would sit together as families. Their altar was set lower and wider, so more than one person could come up together and offer prayer. PR]**

Wow! This chapter was wonderful. I, and I'm sure most of us, have the same plea to the Lord,

(30 O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.)

So, my question is- Will there come a time when we too should help awaken our brothers and sisters of this traditional error? Will it begin once the Lord reveals his

Servant? Or should we be nudging softly now?

My problem is I fight to keep from judgment while watching these false traditions get reinforced, then I walk away frustrated and hopeless. Did you experience this?

Thanks again. **[We are to always call people to repentance. This is not to tell people all the many ways they are astray, but to simply point them to Christ for truth, to seek revelation from God, and become holy in Him. I go further on this blog that I do in my daily associations. With friends and family I simply point them to seek a relationship with the Lord. “Let no man stand between you and God.” PR]**

This chapter has racked my heart. How so much of my life I have been a Zoramite type yet have always felt that something was wrong about it's pride, inclusivity, and competitive praise at a pulpit to measure who was the most spiritual appearance when so much of the gain of the world was a focus of the heart. How grateful I am for the Book of Mormon and these words that pierce the heart. How grateful I am for Christ, the atonement, and his redeeming love that breaks away these awful chains of deception. How joyful repentance is to submit one's heart completely to the lord.

What is Faith? – Alma 32:1-43

1 And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.

2 And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel— **[This is typical of missionary work. The most humble among the people are the first to usually listen to the message.]**

3 Therefore they **[the poor]** were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart. **[This would also explain why Korihor was discarded among them.]**

4 Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart **[exceedingly humble]**, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.

5 And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?

6 And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled

them, and that they were in a preparation to hear the word. **[How often do our afflictions humble us to where we are capable of receiving the Lord's direction? In the future, when the destructions come to America, there will be many who will turn to God when their leaders have failed them.]**

7 Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

8 I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.

9 Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?—for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.

10 Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only? **[I have heard many say, “When I need revelation I go to the temple.” The temple is a place of learning and one can receive revelation, but you must stand in holy places, which is anywhere you have the Spirit of the Lord abiding with you. You will not receive any revelation at the temple more that you cannot receive in your own closet.]**

11 And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?

Our Sabbath is the day we make holy to the Lord, but every day we should walk in holiness, as we allow our minds and hearts to call out to Him.

12 I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble. **[For many it is a greater test to endure wealth than to endure poverty. Wealth can be a dumb idol for most who experience such a life.]**

13 And now, because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance **[to turn their hearts to God]**; and now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end **[Receive the Holy Ghost]** the same shall be saved.

14 And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?

15 Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty. **[The word “Blessed” is more than receiving a favor from the Lord, it is to receive more light as we ascend in glory.]**

16 Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe. **[Those who choose to believe without full knowledge.]**

17 Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

18 Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it. **[Like the person that will not attempt something because they have no ability to perform it. “Show me that I will be great at this, or I will not try!” Like the artist’s first attempt at painting a picture and decides he will not continue without a sign that he is a master. We must first believe.]**

19 And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression? **[The Lord is merciful to those who are repenting. He knows you are not perfect. Those who know for certainty the truth and choose to rebel are more accountable.]**

20 Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other **[Look at your options.]**; and it shall be unto every man according to his work. **[Get what you put into it.]**

21 And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.

This is a powerful statement concerning faith. The most important thing a person can learn in this life is how to exercise faith, for this is the means by which we learn to become like God. When we learn to visualize the possibilities, to see what can be according to the will of God, and according to His Spirit, anything is possible.

What we learn concerning faith in this life will rise with us in the next, to the degree that we will be able to utilize the same principle and power of faith unto the creation of all things.

If for example one has faith that they can stand in the presence of God while in the flesh, what would you do? First you would imagine in your mind what that might look like. Imagine how you might work toward making this a reality. To study, plan, act, and plot a course toward such an event. Finding every scripture, written account, and build a “hope” based upon what you have learned, without knowing for sure how such a thing would transpire. Then, you would ask God to help you do it properly.

22 And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful **[will provide help]** unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.

23 And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times, which confound the wise and the learned. **[This is an important verse in the Book of Mormon. Often I hear women express concern that they cannot experience the same things as men. This is partly due to the fact that there are few published testimonies from women regarding these things. I testify to you that women receive an equal amount of spiritual blessings as men. I know as many women as men who have entertained angels and even walked with God in this life. Do you believe?]**

24 And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true— **[I’m not just judging you on what I see.]**

25 For I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might. **[Each of you have your own story and circumstance.]**

26 Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge. **[You cannot know by just my speaking unto you that what I say is true, as much as you can have faith in God by simply hearing the words.]**

27 But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties **[be willing to get up and try]**, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words. **[Every act of faith begins with desire. The Lord judges our hearts based upon the desires we entertain. What do you want? Pure intent is to have desire which is without guile. Only such a heart will have the proper foundation to see your faith grow.]**

28 Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me. **[A perfect metaphor for faith. When teaching the Gospel it is always advisable to use a visual to help the person imagine in their mind the possibility. Here, the Spirit of the Lord can open the possibility of the person’s faith.]**

Alma mentions the most likely reason that the “seed” will not plant is because of “unbelief.” When our hearts and minds are cumbered with false traditions, they block us from receiving what the Lord would give us. Here is a short list of some unbeliefs that would prevent us from receiving the gifts of the Spirit that will bring us closer to the Lord:

- I won’t believe what I cannot prove.
- It’s just in my head.
- This is just made up by people to control others.
- God won’t notice me, I’m like a drop in the universe.
- I don’t have time for this.
- I could be deceived.
- If I want anything bad enough I can convince myself to believe it.

Alma encourages them to try and if the results are good and enlightens their understanding, becoming as “delicious” to them, they should continue to explore what he is teaching them.

29 Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

What is “perfect knowledge?” A perfect knowledge of God is to handle Him, to speak directly with Him. To have no reason to doubt, because you know! I remember as a young missionary being told to bear my testimony by saying, “I know that God lives!” But, I didn’t really. I wanted to believe with all my heart and I did have spiritual witnesses that He was there, but I was lacking still. Is that bad? No, because this is how we learn to develop faith. We are strengthened in the process as we learn to trust in Him and to develop the ability to see in our mind and spirit the power of God. It is a beautiful process.

30 But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. **[Again, using a visual aid to help the imagination of the person to see how the process unfolds.]** And now, behold, will not this strengthen your faith? Yea, it will strengthen your faith: for ye will say I know that this is a good seed; for behold it sprouteth and beginneth to grow.

31 And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness. **[A seed has within itself everything it needs to become a mature creation. Every person, from the moment they are born, has the seed of Eternal Life within them. God desires us to fill the measure of our creation. You will become what you are capable, but you must have faith to see what that is and allow it to grow. We can only see that possibility by gazing upon a fully mature tree (God) and then to be patient as the process develops.]**

32 Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away. **[Some will not attain Eternal Life.]**

33 And now, behold, because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.

34 And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because you know, for ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand. **[This is for those who have planted the seed of faith and seen results, yet you reach a point where you are “dormant” because you think you have a fullness. But, no, you have not yet matured in your faith.]**

35 O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?

36 Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good. **[As you exercise faith and mature in the Gospel you will**

experience the gifts of the Spirit. This “light” is discernible and gives strength to your faith. It gives you knowledge, but it is not yet perfect.]

37 And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root [**Holy Ghost**], that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit. [**You begin to see the truth and power of your experiences. You seek to grab hold of the rod of iron and are vigilantly striving for the Tree of Life, to partake of the fruit, which is a true witness of the love of God, even Jesus Christ!**]

38 But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorcheth it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out. [**If you do not listen to the Spirit and keep the commandments of the Lord (his revelations to you), you will fall into forbidden paths and the roots will die.]**

39 Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof. [**What constitutes barren ground? This would be someone who builds their testimony upon anything other than Jesus Christ. If your faith is based upon an institution, a person, a doctrine, or any other “dumb idol” that is not Christ, you have the potential to be lead astray. Those who have barren ground will fall to pieces and abandon their faith at the first sign that their trust is broken in that sandy foundation. 3 Nephi 11:40**]

40 And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith [**not losing sight of your purpose**] to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

41 But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life. [**This verse specifically teaches the importance of the effort required to come unto the Lord. “Great diligence, patience, and look forward” are the words Alma uses to describe the process. The people who grabbed hold of the iron rod had to press forward to come to the tree. Our faith requires effort. The “grace that the Lord provides us is free, in that we are given the gift of salvation, but Eternal Life is for those that endure to the end. If you desire to have Eternal Life you must receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. If you desire to partake of the fruit of the Tree in this life you must diligently follow every command the Lord will give you, no matter how challenging.]**

42 And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you [**gift of the Holy Ghost**] behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof [**experience the Lord**], which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst. [**The Second Comforter**]

43 Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.

There is much in this chapter to contemplate. We must work out our salvation with fear and trembling, as we set a course to come unto Christ (literally). Remember, the seed is already planted in your heart. It is who you are. You must now do all you can to nourish and grow your faith until you are prepared to be ushered before the Lord by the angels and have Him teach you all things.

Something that many do not realize is that Lehi's Dream, and the allegory of the Tree of Life has a literal aspect to it. There is a Tree of Life that the Lord will take you to, and you will eat of its fruit. At that time the significance of this will be opened to you. It is a part of the Everlasting Covenant and is eternal in its scope and implication. Alma has a beautiful way of introducing powerful mysteries and at the same time teaching the most basic of Gospel principles.

Questions and Answers

I added a notation to yesterday's post about the Rameumpton if you desire to read that. PR

Would there ever be a personal plan where you are specifically not meant to come into the presence of the Lord in your lifetime (Lords timing) or is this always available and based on the persons broken heart / contrition / faith / effort etc. I believe the later but was curious. Thank you. **[If someone were not to make the Everlasting Covenant before birth it is unlikely they would be in the presence of the Lord during their lifetime. However, all who take hold of the iron rod will find the tree. There are very few that do come to the tree during their lives. Every person who grabs hold of the rod (Holy Ghost) will eventually partake of the Tree (Eternal Life). PR]**

Wow. Just amazing thank you! I am grateful that you broke down Alma's analogy because I had always felt I had a rough understanding of it and now you have given me a more complete picture!

Regarding faith, you said something in the last chapter in verse 1 about Zoram and their leaders teaching the people to bow down to dumb idols being a focus on faith other than God. Are you saying that they were being taught to have faith in the wrong things, or to focus on their faith in them (their leaders and church) instead of exercising faith in God? Could you elaborate on this some more? Thank you! **[In the Zoramites case, their focus was the prophet Zoram and he was like a celebrity to these people. His priests were given high status. They taught that one's acceptance before God was connected to their wealth and beauty. They took great pride in how they appeared, their clothes, homes, and all that was around them. To touch a person of lower standing was to defile themselves. PR]**

In the note on vs 28, the "I could be deceived" one is for me. It is my exact fear. I've been deceived before. Badly. It hurts. What if it happens again? And then something whispers "Well, what if it happens again? You won't die and the atonement covers you. Why not

try again?"

Sometimes I think your lists are incredibly inspired and are the issues those you teach are facing. 😊

You say that when Christ takes you to the tree to eat it's fruit a significance of it will be open to you, does this happen gradually? Or the first time you partake? Also, have you seen the seed of the fruit? **[It happens the first time you partake. The seeds of the fruit are ingested and the significance of what you are doing is immediately understood. Each couple who are sealed together will eventually partake of the fruit and will plant their own Tree of Life together. PR]**

Phew... this is awesome! Thank you! This is an incredible time of God's mercy to have his Anointed expand and expound truth and to move forward and receive similarly because of this aiding truth / clarity... 😊

It happens the first time you partake. The seeds of the fruit are ingested and the significance of what you are doing is immediately understood. Each couple who are sealed together will eventually partake of the fruit and will plant their own Tree of Life together. PR]

Would this be part of procreations significance and the New and Everlasting covenant? And if so, does this happen with certain estates who are called to serve in certain roles? Am I even making sense? I know what it is I'm asking but wording may be off a bit. **[It is related. PR]**

Where to Begin – Alma 33:1-23

1 Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith. **[That is a reasonable question. How do you begin? Where do you start?]**

2 And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them. **[There are some today that believe this, that they cannot worship God except in a chapel or temple environment. Or at least that they would be unworthy without such participation to approach the Throne of Heaven.]**

3 Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?

Zenos was a popular prophet to the Nephites who was quoted in the writings of Lehi. He lived after the days of Isaiah and before Jeremiah. He preached of Jesus Christ, which was not popular amongst the Jews and led to his being slain.

4 For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness **[completely separated from God]**; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me. **[released me from the bondage of sin]**

5 Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field **[When I was dealing with the hardship of life.]**; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.

6 And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer. **[When I was dealing with the hardship of raising a family and home.]**

7 And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me. **[When I learned to pray intimately to you concerning my deepest desires.]**

8 Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them. **[The Lord hears your prayer when no one else will hear.]**

9 Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations. **[The God of Heaven can hear me in an infinite ocean of voices. He knows you!]**

10 Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine enemies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction. **[This can be related to earthly foes, but more likely it means to give you strength to overcome your weakness of sin and be forgiven.]**

11 And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity **[real intent]**; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son. **[The power of the Atonement of Christ unto forgiveness of sins.]**

12 And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

13 Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son. **[Alma is teaching the Zoramites the power of repentance to come unto Christ.]**

14 Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God? **[The Zoramites had a tradition of denying the reality of Christ. Alma points out that Christ is the fundamental tenet of the Gospel.]**

15 For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things— **[Zenock lived before Zenos, a contemporary of Isaiah.]**

16 For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.

17 And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.

18 But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

19 Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live. **[Moses clearly taught that the “type” was the son of God, the Messiah which would come. But, those teachings were removed from scripture by the Jews during the first Diaspora to Babylon.]**

20 But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them. **[A hard heart is a symptom of unbelief. Many today will not seek Christ because their hearts are set upon the things of the world, or they are cemented with the traditions of their fathers.]**

21 O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish? **[How to begin? Just look toward Christ! Just believe, and allow the blessings to manifest themselves.]**

22 If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works. **[Here is the fundamental essence of what a person new to the faith must know about Christ: That He is the Son of God, sent to redeem His people, suffered and died for their sins, raised from the dead, that all men could also be raised up to stand before Him at the last day and be judged. From here you would need to explain the nature of God, sin, and judgment.]**

When the Gospel is taught by the Gatherers for the last time before Christ’s coming it will be a speedy process. There will be no focus on teaching the Restoration, Joseph Smith, Institutional Church hierarchy, Word of Wisdom, or any other peripheral commandments. It will be simple. It will mostly consist of this:

-
- **An introduction and provide for their immediate physical needs.**
 - **Will you repent and come unto Christ?**
 - **Turn your hearts to God, who will make you clean and save you from this hell on earth. At this point they will answer questions and teach the fundamentals of Christ’s mission, of sin, resurrection, and judgement.**
 - **Listen to the Voice of His messenger, choose to have faith, and believe, and I will baptize you in the name of the Father.**
 - **In the name of Christ I give unto you the gift of the Holy Ghost. Ye are clean! (It will be instantaneous, because the Lord has personally touched them and given them the power to perform this ordinance by the laying on of hands.)**
 - **Come, we must go to safety.**
-

23 And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen. **[How are our burdens “light” through Christ? He lifts the damning effects of sin, that we may be made clean. The effects of the atonement are that we can rise above this world to stand in holiness before the Throne of Heaven and partake of a fullness of God. One cannot ascend in glory unless our burdens of sin are taken away.]**

Questions and Answers

Where to begin indeed. When you mentioned the “cemented” traditions, I recalled the comments I received when I decided to separate from the church of my youth. My ecclesiastical leader sat stunned and repeated, “What will your kids and family think?” And, “My boys used to look up to you.” I realized they were his motivations not mine. I have come to see that so much of what I believed was actually tradition, including what I thought were the character and attributes of God. So much for me to learn and unlearn. This fresh journey through the Book of Mormon has been extremely helpful.

“Listen to the Voice of His messenger” Is His messenger the gatherer or someone else? **[In this context it is referring to the Gatherers. But generally, when it happens like this it is some kind of anointed servant. PR]**

This-

“An introduction and provide for their immediate physical needs.

Will you repent and come unto Christ?

Turn your hearts to God, who will make you clean and save you from this hell on earth. At this point they will answer questions and teach the fundamentals of Christ’s mission, of sin, resurrection, and judgement.

Listen to the Voice of His messenger, choose to have faith, and believe, and I will baptize you in the name of the Father.

In the name of Christ I give unto you the gift of the Holy Ghost. Ye are clean! (It will be instantaneous, because the Lord has personally touched them and given them the power to perform this ordinance by the laying on of hands.)

Come, we must go to safety.”

Because the Lord has personally touched them? But the Gatherers are doing the touching though in these teaching/ gathering instances, right? How does the Lord personally touch them here? **[The laying on of hands for the gift of the Holy Ghost will occur under these circumstances when an anointed servant touches them as instructed by the Spirit. The gift of the HG is given directly by God. The Servant is assisting the faith of the person receiving. PR]**

Another question: These teaching moments– what sort of time frame? Hours with one individual/family... or days? a week? There seems to be a LOT of urgency in the above paragraph so I am thinking that these people are already prepared well in advance but just do not know where to find the truth. **[Some will be short, others will take**

many days. It will be a time of haste. PR]

Is there any teaching from the Book of Mormon... there has to be! It's the missing link for the Jews to accept their Messiah. **[Consider the circumstances of the people who gathered to Bountiful and the Savior spent time with them. Kind of like that. PR]**

PR

I know you have mentioned that you don't try to put a time and date when the gatherers will be sent out and many of the events that precede the coming of Christ will begin to happen, but as I read your comments you make it sound as if they are just around the corner. I can't see why you are doing what you are doing unless you felt that it was to prepare your readers for these events.

You brought up that "A hard heart is a symptom of unbelief. Many today will not seek Christ because their hearts are set upon the things of the world, or they are cemented with the traditions of their fathers"

I think that is true but my hard heart isn't because I seek the things of the world or I haven't let go of many of my false traditions. My hard heart comes from hearing and reading of these events that never seem to happen and then get tired of waiting. People have been predicting the coming Christ for years and years and they have come and gone with the wind. The church during Joseph Smith's day kept looking forward to things that never happened.

I have been born again and I seek nothing more than to bring people to Christ. That won't change for me if nothing ever happens. I've experienced these things and I'm not going to let them go.

Here's my question, how do I stay believing that all these events that you talk about really will come to pass when history continually tells me that we keep waiting for something that will never happen?

I'm guessing that many of your readers have the same question and have similar feelings. **[That is certainly a fair question. I've thought that before too. The Jews and Nephites both had similar thoughts before Christ came to them. I've seen some of the things shown me come to pass, but the vast majority have not, and I can't say when it will occur. The Lord told me to pay attention to the events to know how soon. Our salvation doesn't hinge on how accurate we are in determining the exact time. If you keep your lamp filled, then when He comes you will be ready. That is all we need to do. But, the Lord gave us prophecy of these events so that those living would have hope. Without such knowledge most would give up. PR]**

You said the Gatherers would begin with an introduction. I am wondering as to how they would introduce themselves. Would they say they are a Servant of God/Gatherer? Would they just give their name? Would they sometimes assume a different identity to appear to people so they wouldn't even know who it was that was teaching them? How will we know that we can trust them? There will probably be so much deception before the Lord's return.

You also said the Gatherers would provide for people's immediate physical needs. Does it mean that they won't come to us until we find ourselves in the most dire circumstances and only then save us from physical peril? **[Each and every situation**

will be different, but what I have seen is that in some cases they will come to particular individuals and request they gather the people, then they will appear at an appointed time and place. It will be under dangerous circumstances, and the righteous will gather and the wicked flee from their presence. It will resemble when Christ taught the multitude and multiplied the fishes and loaves. It will be a miraculous event in many cases. For some it will be less that way. But the purpose will be the same, to gather the Elect and bring them to Zion. PR]

I love the deeper understanding of the praying in the field, then the house then the closet as we draw closer to the Lord!

In response to Mike's question about the Jews coming to accept their Messiah, there are many Jews today who have already accepted Him, in the thousands! Many believe quietly because of the persecution, which is very real. Jesus has appeared to numbers of them, and there are numbers of groups of Messianic Jews who are teaching their own people in Israel at great personal cost and through much persecution. Some testify they have been called personally by Jesus Christ to this very mission. I truly believe there is a lot more going on behind the scenes so to speak, than we are even aware of.

It is challenging to wait for these great events to take place! I often wonder if they will come in my lifetime, but the thing that impresses upon my heart the most is that my heart is one with His.

Psalm 27:14 Wait on the LORD: be of good courage, and he shall strengthen thine heart: wait, I say, on the LORD.

May 29, 2019 at 4:02 am

One of the things you have stated that the Gatherers will teach is the resurrection. There seems to be much about 'resurrection' that is shrouded in the mysteries of heaven. I've heard or read of different explanations of what resurrection is. Can you shed a little light here for me? On my mission we used 'the hand in the glove' object lesson to teach that the spirit will again take on a physical body. But I believe there is more to it than just that, isn't there? **[There is much misunderstanding regarding the doctrine of resurrection. It's not like a glove over a hand to represent resurrection. Our bodies are made of dust and simply create a temporary tabernacle to house our spirits, like a restrictive glove, or a caterpillar in a cocoon. When a body resurrects a butterfly is released, its full beauty and purpose is expressed. PR]**

Also, what are some of the things you have been shown that have come to pass already? Besides Trump winning the 2016 election? **[There has been much in my personal life, things which I edited out of the books, and also things related to the current presidency, and some world affairs. What has not happened in some cases is interesting to watch, like watching someone about to sneeze. PR]**

Are there some people who are "assigned" to be married to asleep spouses but prepare their families as best they can physically & spiritually for these hard times so the entire

family can perhaps be saved together by the humbling of the disasters/calamity and the work of the gatherers? **[Yes. It is not uncommon for one spouse to be more awake than another. Even Lehi's wife didn't believe until later. Each situation is different and we need to seek the Lord's council in these matters. PR]**

"Come, we must go to safety."

Is this going to safety mostly done on foot or instantaneous travel in the spirit as the servant is directed by God? **[Both will occur, but I don't know which is more. PR]**

Is the commenter Mrs. Anonymous THE Mrs. Anonymous, wife of PR? If so, I'm very excited for her book coming later! 😊 **[This is not my wife, but a dear person. My wife has not commented on my blog yet. I look forward to sharing her experiences in the future, as permitted. It will open a new way of seeing things, especially for the sisters. I would not have had the experiences I know had it not been for her encouragement. PR]**

Dear Mrs Anonymous

I have watched many YouTube testimonies of Messianic Jews who have been called forth by the Lord. These testimonies stir my soul and I think that there are only a few more beautiful ways we can watch the Lord in real time moving in His majesty with respect to the gathering of Israel.

I know the book of Mormon... ok, I feel strongly that the book of Mormon in the hands of Ephraim will play a significant role in gathering Israel. We are the nursing Kings and Queens that will carry them on our shoulders to Zion with joy and rejoicing.

My personal feeling has been that the Jews are in a 2 stage conversion process. 1. Acknowledge Christ has died for them and risen the 3rd day and 2. The book of Mormon will then teach them the restored truths of the Gospel and they will seek out an immersive baptism of repentance by one having authority ...

That has been my understanding. I'm trying to understand why PR feels the book of Mormon will not be a major part of the 2nd stage of their conversion. I don't mean to place words in his mouth and may have mistaken his explanation on this. (The gathering will take place in haste kind of like Bountiful in 3 Nephi).

Loved your comment!

"Turn your hearts to God, who will make you clean and save you from this hell on earth. At this point they will answer questions and teach the fundamentals of Christ's mission, of sin, resurrection, and judgement."
This will be taught mostly from the Book of Mormon. PR

PR, I have a question concerning the Elect and who they are. Through my studies there appears to me to be dual meaning or missions of the elect that I don't fully understand. Back in 2 Nephi 29 after vs 2 you stated "Whenever I read the House of Israel I think of the literal sons and daughters of light, those who made the everlasting covenant before birth. Only a small portion of those who inhabit this earth have made this covenant. These are the Elect, and they respond to the message. In the very last days, as the

Gatherers are sent out in the midst of the judgments of God upon the world, the elect will be gathered to them and receive the Doctrine of Christ in its fullness.” From this I come to understand that the elect are those who made the everlasting covenant and those that are to be gathered to Zion. They are those to progress from the 2nd estate to the 3rd estate? Through other studies of the book of Isaiah, there appears also to be a mission attached to those that are the elect. That the elect are referred to as god’s sons/daughters/servants. They serve in a capacity of proxy saviors in helping to gather others unto Christ and unto a Zion stature? Are the Elect also gatherers/have specific missions unto the lord or are they simply those that will be gathered by the gatherers and taught how to ascend to their next estate? **[The Everlasting Covenant includes higher estates as well. Usually, the higher Elect are referred to as anointed. PR]**

9 Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations. [The God of Heaven can hear me in an infinite ocean of voices. He knows you!]

“infinite voices”

I have thought about this a lot. I can’t get to the end of it but I think I’m close. Christ died on this planet 2000 years ago. Yet we believe in millions (billions?) of other planets out there in our universe.

Did Jesus’ atonement on our earth 2000 years ago cover other people on other planets? **[I cannot fully answer that without discussing the Everlasting Covenant in ways I am not permitted. Sufficient to say, it covered this world and beyond. PR]**

If yes, how do they know about him? Did he go and perform a 33 year lifespan on millions of planets?

When people pray on other planets, are they praying to our God that we pray to? (it seems likely since God created so many habitable planets)... Are they praying In the name of our Jesus or was there another Jesus who died for them that they do that through?

Power of the Atonement – Alma 34:1-31

1 And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:

2 My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us. **[Before you followed the words of Zoram you knew these things. (It had not been many years.)]**

3 And as ye have desired of my beloved brother [Alma] that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat

unto you to prepare your minds [**make a place for your new understanding**]; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—

4 Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.

Everything about developing faith implies that we “experiment” on the Word of God. The challenge is to not give up. When some fail after trying, it is common for them to reject their faith thinking it just doesn’t work. Is this not a modern unbelief? We expect instant results, but like a seed we have to give it time to germinate and grow. When I look at my personal journey in coming to the Lord, I spent 18 years searching until my mind was prepared to experiment on the principles of revelation that made all the difference. I was doing everything I was told to do by people, but not listening close enough to what God would have me to do. When we are ready to listen to Him, the path is made clear and we begin to move toward the light. We go from the path to grabbing hold of the rod of iron.

5 And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ. [**This was the decisive doctrine that separated the Zoramites from the Church of Christ.**]

6 And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

7 My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true. [**Three prophets that spoke directly concerning the coming of Christ, and all of these words are no longer included in the Bible.**]

8 And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

9 For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

10 For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice. [**The very similitude of the Temple animal sacrifice, which these Nephites were well aware.**]

11 Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

12 But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

13 Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice, and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall

the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

14 And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.

Four times Amulek says that there must be a “great and last sacrifice” to atone for the sins of mankind. All the many thousands of animal sacrifices point to the reality of this one sacrifice, which will wash clean the souls of men if they will repent. It is a powerful and humble thought that a perfect being, the creator of this world, would offer Himself as a sacrifice in order to make us clean, to help lift us to a higher resurrection that we may become like Him. There is no greater love or power in the universe that can do this.

I was asked by a young man the other day why it is necessary for Christ to die and suffer. Why can't He just wave His hand and take us all to Heaven? How does suffering do anything? My answer was that the “Atonement” is about the binding link between a Father/Mother/Son/Daughter. We are bound to each other because of our love and sacrifice for each other. Because Jesus has carried our sins He knows us, and claims us. We can become spiritually begotten of Him (resurrection), and be lifted up to a higher ascension if we in turn sacrifice for Him. Like a law of attraction, we morph into that which we identify with. If God did not come down to us, how could He bring us up to Him?

The power of faith is that we become exactly what we seek and follow. Either to life, stagnation, or damnation. We become “one” with that which we seek. God's AT-ONE-MENT with us and for us makes it possible for us to move into a glory of light otherwise impossible.

15 And thus he shall bring salvation [**to escape the second estate**] to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice [**separation according to glory**], and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance. [**be made clean**]

16 And thus mercy [**God's love**] can satisfy the demands of justice [**separation of one glory from another**], and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.

17 Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you; [**Amulek's list of what to do:**]

18 Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save. [**With your entire heart, seek His love.**]

19 Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him. **[Be patient and don't give up, but continue to pray.]**

20 Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks. **[With your entire heart, seek Him while you are working.]**

21 Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening. **[With all your heart, seek Him while you are home with your family.]**

22 Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies. **[With all your heart, seek to overcome your sins through Him.]**

23 Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness. **[With all your heart, seek to overcome your temptations through Him.]**

24 Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them. **[With all your heart, seek His blessings upon your livelihood.]**

25 Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase. **[With all your heart, seek that He will bless your efforts.]**

26 But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness. **[You must establish a relationship with Him.]**

27 Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you. **[This is what it means to never cease to pray. Our hearts, continuously reaching out to Him. The pure in heart will see God, this is a promise.]**

28 And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith. **[Charity does not abide in us if we are not tuned into the needs of others. However, service and kindness without Charity is no indicator that we are His servants. Service with Charity is the pure love of Christ, to know His will toward others. This is a sign that we have received the gift of the Holy Ghost, that His Spirit will be with us always.]**

29 Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross **[not clean]**, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.

30 And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance. **[turn your hearts to Jesus Christ]**

31 Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you. **[This is Amulek prophesying, for he is expressing the Lord's words to these people.]**

32 For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

It is during our temporal existence as a 2nd estate that we prepare to ascend to the 3rd estate. Only in this transitory, chaotic world can we learn to exercise the faith unto salvation.

33 And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance **[turning your hearts to Christ]** until the end; for after this day of life **[2nd estate]**, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

Amulek is teaching the principle of temporal ascension, that it is only in this sphere that we can fill the measure of our creation and become exalted. How do we “improve our time while in this life?” Learning to exercise faith in Christ, to seek revelation and act upon it, to use our sacred imagination to allow the impossible become reality. Whatever intelligence we gain in this life will rise with us in the resurrection. This is not to say our smarts will save us, but the glory we obtain through our faith in Christ will prepare us for exaltation in the eternities to come.

34 Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world. **[Our spirit already contains the glory that will rise with us when we die. The moment you pass through the veil you are already telestial, terrestrial, or celestial in your glory. What priesthood do you hold? This is the equivalent of your level of resurrection. This is why it is not a gender specific principle. We confuse priesthood with perfunctory duties in the church. True priesthood is simply the degree of light that reflects our relationship with God.]**

35 For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

[Those who rebel against God, knowing that they are doing so, are sealed to Satan at the final judgment. Those who are wicked and yet are not under the law are saved from hell through the atonement, but are not promised eternal life. They remain telestial in glory. See Moroni 8:22]

36 And this I know, because the Lord hath said he **[His Glory]** dwelleth not in unholy temples **[bodies]**, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous **[those that do His will]** shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out **[to never lose their place in that kingdom]**; but their garments **[eternal spirits]** should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

37 And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear **[great respect]** before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

38 That ye contend **[make excuses or debate]** no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ **[Become one with Him]**

through the gift of the Holy Ghost.]; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in **[wherever you stand]**, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

39 Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing. **[This is a great verse concerning discernment. We must be watchful and careful always when it comes to the adversary. I pray continually that I can discern his deceptions. The more experiences I have with the Lord the easier it is to spot a dark spirit's attempts to deceive. The Lord always allows it, and at times the Lord is pleased knowing that I am learning in this process.]**

40 And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort you to have patience, and that ye bear with all manner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

41 But that ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

These last verses are directly addressing those of us who suffer affliction. Amulek encourages us to be patient in our afflictions and not to revile. Don't get negative, or allow the adversary to overcome our hearts as we seek to lash out on someone to lay blame. Hand it over to the Lord and trust in Him. Some day, whether in this life or the next, we will rest from our afflictions and labors knowing that we overcame this world with the help of our dear Savior, Jesus Christ!

Questions and Answers

Why am I in tears reading this? LOVE

Really wonderful thank you!

This-

“... why it is necessary for Christ to die and suffer. Why can't He just wave His hand and take us all to Heaven? How does suffering do anything? ...”

I hope it's alright to share this. This literally just came to me: I think that I can see why HIS suffering is so key. I think that I know why he would never just wave His hand to commence salvation. All through scripture the struggle to overcome the natural man is discussed, analyzed, debated– and the natural man is represented as “the flesh”, is it not?

To me, Jesus giving His perfect life up upon the cross and then amazingly coming back from that is the ultimate and final representation of scriptures like Mosiah 3:19- where a full and completely sanctified version of “overcoming the natural man” is finally on display. The symbols offered here are so rich. We are to follow Him and do the things we have seen Him do. “Overcome the flesh” doesn't look like crucifixion and resurrection for us, but there it is. He overcame the flesh in every sense of the word. There is no

further or farther meaning beyond what Christ did that can be added to this concept... He completes it entirely.

How exactly do you personally “hand it over to the Lord”? A friend recently also said give your temptations to the Lord. **[That is not a phrase I use. I hand my heart over to the Lord (repentance), and avoid all that is unclean so that I can be worthy to be with Him. All temptations exist in this mortal sphere and they are always nearby. We simply need to abide in His Spirit and do our best. If we endure to the end (gift of the Holy Ghost) we will have Eternal Life. PR]**

Your description: “We go from the path to grabbing hold of the rod of iron.” People can be on the path (to the tree of life?) But simultaneously not be holding onto the iron rod (revelation, personal commandments)? **[Yes. PR]**

Is that a “Jack Mormon”? Or is it more subtle and widespread than that? I’m guessing your description can be found from GA’s down to the ward librarian? **[The path is anyone who is seeking Christ but has not yet established the relationship. Until you make that connection you are susceptible to be lured down forbidden paths of the doctrines of men. PR]**

Is an accurate example of your description found in people placing too much emphasis on checking off “to do” lists and boxes in doing the gospel task sheets? **[Perhaps, but more so, someone who doesn’t have the sure understanding that God is speaking to them, whether that be through revelation, the scriptures, or another. There is a difference between hearing the voice (word) of God and blindly accepting the words of another. No person once they grab hold of the iron rod will fail to find their way to the Tree of Life and partake of the fruit. PR]**

Is this a representation of “they draw near me with their mouth and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me”?

I’m asking because you seem to say it’s not enough to be on the path, one must be on the path while holding to the iron rod. I always thought the path was the iron rod

Brother, PR’s description in connection to a second witness to his answer to you are found through this description:

2nephi 31

16 And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall *endure to the end*, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

17 Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

18 And then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

19 And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I

would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

20 Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, *having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men* / iron rod blessings). Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, / ungrafted flow of his revelatory word / iron rod blessings) and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

21 And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and *the only* and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

I see the term “beloved “ used quite a bit as well as many words BEginning with BE. Like the BEatitudes, BEhold, BELieve, BEhold, BEginning....would love a little more light on the representation . Kinda like the breakdown of Bless-ed” you mentioned in one of your replies to a comment a while ago. So enlightening!! **[My understanding is that it means a completeness that transcends this world. PR]**

Zoramite Excommunication – Alma 35:1-16

1 Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon. **[north and east]**

2 Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.

3 And it came to pass that after the more popular part **[Those of authority and high standing]** of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words. **[The Zoramite doctrine taught that an individual’s greatness among men equaled their worthiness. Alma and the others taught this was false.]**

4 And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

5 Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people. **[They did a polling to know the minds of their people. Such things are very common amongst institutions and political factions today.]**

6 And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon. **[They were excommunicated from the people of Zoram and then exiled.]**

7 And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.

8 Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

9 And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon **[the Anti-Nephi-Lehies who lived in the land of Jershon]** did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.

10 Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them. **[This was Alma's original fear, that the Zoramites would ally with the Lamanites like the Amalekites and Amulonites.]**

11 And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

12 And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

This next section is a preface for the chapters to come:

13 And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.

14 And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.

15 Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

16 Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments **[revelations and instructions]**, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

Questions and Answers:

Would it be correct in saying, an institution that claims direct revelation from God, then polls it's people before implementing a new practice to ensure it's going to be successful,

indicates a floundering leadership? **[It depends upon the leadership of the institution. If they have vision, they do not need the study poll. If they seek to see what they can do according to the favorability of their constituents, they will follow polls.]**

“There are many that live with their sins without any sign of guilt, but when a House of Israel person comes to the realization that they are not clean their pain is exquisite.” I have experienced a broken heart and contrite spirit at certain points in my life, during those occasions I have cried out to the Lord and experienced his wonderful love and blessings. But now, on a quest to receive a remission of my sins and the GoHG I find it hard to be broken hearted to this ‘pain is exquisite’ level on a daily basis. Apparently (revelation) I have issues with my heart (walls I have built to protect myself) and am wondering if i will ever feel that true level of broken heart and contrition needed to receive these blessings. Can you help with advice on repentance/broken heartedness/contrition for those who are worried their daily repentance seems shallow. Thank you! **[I don’t believe it means you need to have exquisite pain every day before you have your baptism of fire. When a sinner realizes they first have sin and desire to come unto Christ their sorrow for sin may be intense. The broken heart and contrite spirit is the attitude of full repentance, which means a full submission of your desires to the Lord. You make Him first in your life. And then, as you call out to Him in meekness He will make you clean and give you the Holy Ghost. The question to ask yourself is “are you holding back anything?”. Are there any idols in your heart? This is a good topic for prayer. Then the Lord promises to give you the Comforter (HG) and make you clean. Moroni 8:26, John 14:18,21,23 PR]**

Vs 3: If you are supporting priestcraft by giving money to a person or institution and you are NOT aware of the priestcraft, is it a sin? Or iniquity? Or “not under the law” because you had no knowledge at the time you did it and thought you were doing good with your money? **[The priestcraft sin lies upon the person doing it. If we contribute to that person or institution, whether it is a sin or not, depends upon our motive. If we are repentant and turning our hearts to the Lord it does not matter what was done in the past. PR]**

Vs 6: Do you know how many were exiled from among the Zoramites that went into Jershon? **[I do not. PR]**

Vs 8: Why would the leader of the Zoramites demand the exiles also be cast out of Jershon? For what purpose? **[I don’t know for sure. I haven’t asked. PR]**

Do you foresee a time when more awakenings begin to occur within the ranks of institutional Christianity and these institutions begin to take a more aggressive approach at casting out those who have truly been born of Christ because it threatens to “destroy their craft”? **[We are already seeing a form of “casting out” in society today of those who profess Christian beliefs. Churches are losing their numbers across the board, some are forcing those out who don’t follow the leader’s beliefs. Will it increase? Most certainly. PR]**

Trust in the Lord II – Alma 36:1-30

1 My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land. **[This mantra was the advice of every prophet. “Trust in the Lord.” If we follow the revelations given to us we will be led to do all things that the Lord commands and will be blessed.]**

2 I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.

The story of Lehi’s family, led by the Lord to safety, from destruction in Jerusalem, led through the many years in the wilderness, coming to know the Lord in their sufferings, and the arrival in this promised land. A story Alma told his sons many times.

3 And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day. **[Helaman did not join the others in their labors among the Zoramites because he was still in his teens.]**

4 And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God. **[No person can know the things of God through the temporal body because the Lord communicates through the spiritual. Until we understand that the carnal senses are not the means to such communication we will struggle with unbelief.]**

5 Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself; **[You do not earn these things by righteousness. We receive them according to our faith and others’, which is made whole for us by repentance.]**

6 For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way. **[Mosiah 27]**

7 And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us. **[Their entire bodily frames were shaken.]**

8 But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

9 And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.

10 And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

I find this interesting. If this were to occur today, many would call it a hallucination caused by some kind of seizure. Perhaps they were exposed to some kind of poisonous gas? All five of them had their spiritual senses opened that they could hear and see.

11 And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

12 But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

13 Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

14 Yea, and I had murdered many of his children **[figuratively]**, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

15 Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

16 And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

Interesting that he was unable to move or speak for three days and nights. It is in the similitude of Christ in the tomb, or Jonah in the whale. This was the time Alma took to feel the sufferings for his own sins. There are many that live with their sins without any sign of guilt, but when a person who is of the House of Israel comes to the realization that they are not clean their pain is exquisite. At some point all men and women will have an understanding of their state and judgment before God. The pains of a damned soul is the knowledge that their suffering is inescapable.

17 And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

18 Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

19 And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

20 And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

The key to Alma's repentance was laying his sins upon Jesus and believing that he could be forgiven. There are two parts to this: to accept Christ's

ability to take the sin and our willingness to forgive ourselves, or to allow the forgiveness to take place.

21 Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy. **[To be clean before the Lord is the most joyous of experiences.]**

22 Yea, methought I saw **[early colloquialism to mean “like a dream”]**, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

Was this a real experience even though it was like a dream? It occurred within Alma’s mind and felt real yet was fluid like a dream. This is the first time I have read this and realized that this was exactly what I saw when I had my gift of the Holy Ghost. Each person’s experience is different depending upon the degree in which their spiritual eyes are open.

23 But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God. **[He had received the gift of the Holy Ghost.]**

24 Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost. **[This is the description of a true servant of God: to preach repentance that others may know Jesus as well.]**

25 Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

26 For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen eye to eye as I have seen **[The same spiritual witnesses.]**; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

27 And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me. **[This is part of the training of a servant of God: to know that God will deliver them in their trials. There is no smooth sailing for those who are called to serve.]**

28 And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

29 Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

30 But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.

I make it a point that when I meet any notable servant of God, on the other side of the veil, to ask them if they have any advice for me. Almost every time I hear the same thing: “Trust in the Lord.”

No matter how dark, discouraging, or impossible the task may seem, trust in Him. If you feel you are not progressing in your spiritual awakening, continue to ask the Lord to teach you and trust in Him to lead you along as quickly as you need to be. He knows you. Your experience will be exactly what you need to have in order to come to Him as quickly as possible.

Questions and Answers

“At some point all men and women will have an understanding of their state and judgment before God. The pains of a damned soul is the knowledge that their suffering is inescapable.”

Is part of being a damned soul caused because they refuse to accept the Atonement of Jesus Christ and with it the accompanying forgiveness of their sins and the grace He offers for them to be able to forgive themselves? **[You cannot fully be forgiven until you release your hold upon your sins. This is why we need a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Those who are never given the law will be saved from hell because of the atonement, because they are innocent without knowledge. However, they cannot receive Eternal Life without accepting the Everlasting Covenant. PR]**

[I make it a point that when I meet any notable servant of God on the other side of the veil to ask them if they have any advice for me. Almost every time I hear the same thing, “Trust in the Lord.” No matter how dark, discouraging, or impossible the task may seem, trust in Him. If you feel you are not progressing in your spiritual awakening, continue to ask the Lord to teach you and trust in Him to lead you along as quickly as you need to be. He knows you, and your experience will be exactly what you need to have to come to Him as quickly as possible.]

Thank you for this counsel. I will ask the Lord to continue to teach me and I will put my trust in Him.

“The pains of a damned soul is the knowledge that their suffering is inescapable.” Inescapable because they are perdition? **[Yes. PR]**

“...continue to ask the Lord to teach you and trust in Him to lead you along as quickly as you need to be. He knows you, and your experience will be exactly what you need to have to come to Him as quickly as possible.”

So much comfort in these words

With the “pains of a damned soul” referring to those who qualify as perdition, what about those second estate folks who choose to continue in that state, are they considered “damned” or stagnated or growing within that sphere? Do they sorrow as they move to an earth or planet of lesser quality or are they content in their states and situations? Knowing the love and goodness of God I expect that He does all He can to extend that love in blessing to them? **[Their very existence on this earth is evidence of His mercy. Perdition are those who will follow Satan. Damnation is to not progress in the Everlasting Covenant. PR]**

Vs 2: “the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob”

I believe the specific way this is worded has meaning. Does it mean He was their personal God because they talked with Him face to face? (Similar to how Nephi uses the phrase “my Jesus”?) Or does it mean something else? **[It simply identifies the God of their forebears and their bloodline to the Everlasting Covenant. PR]**

I find it interesting that the angel that visited Alma appeared to have delivered a threat of destruction, similar to the supposed angel who visited Joseph Smith in relation to taking plural wives. Perhaps I am overlooking something.

Regardless, everything here resonates with truth, and I am and will continue to trust in the Lord, even though sometimes I feel like I am trying to force this spiritual awakening. Thx PR for the reminder!

The Records and the Liahona – Alma 37:1-47

1 And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

2 And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept. **[The Book of Mormon is a small fraction of the record, which is today, kept in the Hill Shim.]**

3 And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning— **[This record also shows the genealogy of Abraham all the way back to Shem, and before the flood. We don’t have that today.]**

4 Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon. **[The Book of Mormon contains some of these mysteries in its current form, but there are far more amongst the other records.]**

5 And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is

holy writ. **[This means that they will not decay or be destroyed; the power of God will sustain them. It doesn't mean all the records are untarnished by age.]**

6 Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

That is such a truthful statement! Often, the insignificant acts we do, as we are constrained by the Holy Spirit, lead to incredible results and events in our lives, and others. There were so many little, confusing tasks the Lord had me do leading up to my Second Comforter experience. Pay close attention to the little things the Lord impresses upon you.

7 And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls. **[There will be times when what you are impressed to do will bring criticism and rebuke from those you know: your family, leaders, and friends. What will you do?]**

8 And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls. **["These things" were the brass plates and the writings of the BofM prophets. These true prophets bore witness of Christ. They did not contradict each other, but taught repentance, baptism and the Holy Ghost. Their records showed what happened when they were not obedient. There is a continuity that expresses truth and holiness.]**

9 Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer. **[How hard would it have been to convince the Lamanites if the actual records were not available? Ammon and his brethren had seen the original records and had such a witness. Such will be the witness of those who will teach the Remnant of Jacob in the last days- the Jews, and the House of Israel.]**

10 And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?

11 Now these mysteries **[the Lord's purposes with the House of Israel]** are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear. **[refrain from theorizing]**

12 And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom **[full understanding of the events and their context]** over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round. **[He knows the course from beginning to end in this cycle of creation]**

13 O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye

keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence. **[I always emphasize that “commandments” is another word for revelations. If we listen and act upon every revelation given to us we will prosper in our lives and have His Spirit to guide us toward Him in all things.]**

14 And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations. **[Mostly for our day as well as a future time when the House of Israel is gathered.]**

15 And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy **[as the words of the Lord are placed in Alma’s mouth]**, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind. **[To “transgress” is to deviate from the Lord’s commandments. Whenever a servant of God does this they are susceptible to the buffetings of Satan, and may lose their way unless they repent. You know you are under Satan’s power if you feel disconnected from the Lord. All that must be done at this point is to fast and pray, seeking forgiveness. He always forgives.]**

16 But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) **[always seeking revelation]** behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words. **[I have seen this occur so many times in my life. In blessings, revelations, and prophetic visions and promises. No matter how outrageous and impossible the words are, the Lord always follows through. There have been times I have thought: “He didn’t keep His promise. Why?” And later it became painfully clear that I was mistaken and the promise was fulfilled with exactness.]**

17 For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

18 For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

19 And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved. **[Alma prophesying]**

20 Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

21 And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates **[Some of the most sacred of all the Nephite writings- the history of the Jaredites and the writings of the brother of Jared.]**, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robbings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

The Jaredite writings were a rare find. Found with the Urim and Thummim (two of the original sixteen stones made by the brother of Jared), by the

people of Mosiah, these writings contained the most sacred of truths regarding the Everlasting Covenant of the Father. Also, much related to the secret combinations of the adversary, which would be useful against the powers of darkness to the Nephites, as well as us in the future, when the Kingdom of the Beast is unleashed upon the earth in its fullness.

22 For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth. **[These secret combinations have existed since Cain, and the Adversary has used them to overthrow nations and subjugate the world for thousands of years. Even today, the very same oaths are made by evil men under the direction of the Adversary and Sons of Perdition. The Servants of God must know and understand how these operate to prepare for what is coming. This will happen in the Lord's time, as all these records are revealed, and the truth of these things will be made plain to us. Until then, if we come to the Lord, He can reveal all mysteries to us according to our faith.]**

23 And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone **[Unto my servant, a "seer stone"]** which shall shine forth in darkness unto light **[reveal light from darkness]**, that I may discover **[reveal]** unto my people who serve me **[my servants and anointed ones]**, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations. **[Gazelem is the word for seer.]**

24 And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

25 I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land. **[Sons of Perdition have existed on this earth since the days of Cain. Their power has waxed and waned, but it will reach a zenith during the end times, and the fall of its earthly glory shall be great.]**

26 And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us. **[Examples of the Amalekites, Amulonites, and now the Zoramites.]**

27 And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into darkness also and be destroyed. **[This is one of the purposes why the sealed portion has not been revealed as of yet. The details of this abomination are a recipe for gaining access to power by means of the Adversary through various oaths, sacrifices, and rituals. It is darker than most minds can imagine.]**

28 For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed. **[There is a ripening**

taking place today amongst the evil purveyors of these secret combinations, and their days are numbered.]

29 Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them; and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

[Abortion and infant sacrifice is a part of these abominations.]

30 For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations. **[Even today people are murdered in America for attempting to stop these abominations.]**

31 Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

[A prophecy relevant to our time.]

32 And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity. **[We are to detest with all our heart, to even “hate” the act of sin. It is hard to live in a world and country where abortion is not hated. Where abuse and slavery are not aggressively punished and pursued. We must trust in the Lord.]**

33 Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

34 Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls. **[This is the purpose of the Church of Christ.]**

35 O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God. **[Learn to receive and act upon personal revelation the Lord gives you.]**

36 Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever. **[This is the kind of prayerful living we should have. All things are to be centered around His will. Too many balk at such living, they teach that we are to do it alone. “The Lord wants me to do it myself, that’s what life is about. I don’t need to pray!” they think. Most people only pray when they need a blessing or when asked upon.]**

37 Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day. **[Not just some of our doings, but “all” our doings. How do you do that? You don’t need to ask, “Lord, which shirt should I wear?” But, you can say, “Lord, I’m preparing for the day...” You abide in a prayerful state of mind where the Spirit can**

prompt you. You can speak to the Lord as you go about your daily duties, making Him your constant companion.]

38 And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

39 And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

40 And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day. **[It is interesting how the Lord gave them this sacred relic and not a seer stone. It was much more user friendly for these new prophets on a wilderness journey.]**

41 Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

This verse about the liahona is a similitude for each of us to receive personal revelation. The revelations are not usually earth shattering or cataclysmic, but subtle like a whisper. When we are diligent in seeking answers to questions and act upon the inspiration and insight we receive, we move forward and receive more. When we do not, we do not progress. Are you actively seeking revelation?

42 Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions. **[You can only travel a direct course, following the rod of iron, when you are connected to the word of God (personal revelation.)]**

43 And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.

44 For behold, it is **[just as]** as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

45 And now I say, is there not a type **[pattern]** in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise. **[Eternal Life]**

46 O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever. **[Also, the similitude of the brazen serpent lifted up by Moses.]**

47 And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

Questions and Answers

I thought Helaman was his oldest son. If not Helaman, who was his oldest son? **[Yes, Helaman was his oldest son. Thank you for noticing that mistake. PR]**

Once again you have come through with answers to my questions I had last night while praying. I feel the Lord literally uses you as the Liahona for me at times! I have a question about Abel's wife you mentioned in your book... can you elaborate on how she was deliberately poisoned? Was this via offspring? You mentioned it was calculated..Does that carry forward to our current times and the wickedness we see with planned parenthood, abortion, child sacrifice? I can't shake this question but understand if you cannot delve further. Thx PR **[She was poisoned as a means for Lilith to secure her daughter of Perdition status. PR]**

Was Lilith Cain's wife? **[Yes. PR]**

["These things" were the brass plates and the writings of the BofM prophets. These true prophets bore witness of Christ. They did not contradict each other....].

In many online groups, there are numerous present day visions and revelations discussed and debated. Many accounts are being written and shared/received by NDE and / or by 2nd Comforter. While there is a great deal of consistency in these accounts, there are also many things that seem to contradict each other. The adherents of these can be even more diverse in their opinions of the others, and the qualities and trustworthiness of their accounts. Some of these authors even speak negatively about the others. Some are of Spencer, some are of Julie, some are of PR, some are of Robert, some are of Denver, some of Nelson, and so on. Some say, "well this part seems true, but that part must be false because " fill in the blank reason.

So little ole me is thinking like young Joseph Smith, who amongst all these is correct and trustworthy and a true messenger? How can they be partly correct and partly wrong at the same time? Why don't their accounts always seem to line up? Are some deceivers or is it just that they are manifesting the weakness of men in relating their witness? Yes, I know the answer is that I must seek the Lord myself to find out the truth – I'm working on it! But I still marvel at how so many witness accounts seem to vary and at times contradict, and how there seems to be very little unanimity in their pursuit of publishing their works. I wish they would all come to unity as you suggested the "things" in the brass plates did – written by true prophets. **[People have always had to contend with different prophetic voices. In Lehi's day, before they left Jerusalem there were many claiming that the people had nothing to worry for, that they were a righteous people. Even some of the Lord's anointed servants bickered amongst themselves. Prophets are human and have their own weaknesses. Lehi sought his own revelation and it saved his family. Today is no different in many respects. "Lo here, lo there!" I have published much information that is unconventional and contradicts popular teachings. My message as a servant is always the same: "Learn to hear the Lord's voice for yourself." Each person should be like their own island unto the Lord. PR]**

Earlier you said that Helaman was too young to go to the Zoramites, yet his other two sons went. If Helaman was too young to go why were the other brothers able to go? I always thought Helaman was the oldest until you said he was too young to go to the Zoramites. It then made sense to me that Helaman stayed back with mom while the older brothers went off on the mission with dad and the others. Now you are saying that he was the oldest which takes me back to my original thought that Helaman stay back to take care of the affairs of the church.

Either way works with me but if you could clarify why Helaman didn't go to the Zoramites it would be appreciated. **[Helaman was the oldest son of Alma. He was still in his youth though. I don't know why he stayed home on the first trip to the Zoramites and the other brothers went. I will ask the Lord to help me learn more. PR]**

Vs 40: Is a seer stone not "user friendly"? Is there a learning curve to it? **[There seems to be a process of learning to use it. That was the case for me. PR]**

PR, you make mention of "my servants and the anointed ones". Is there a difference between servants of the Lord and the anointed ones? **[3rd and 4th Estate respectively, but the words are used interchangeably in both cases. PR]**

Bridle Your Passions – Alma 38:1-15

1 My son **[Shiblon]**, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

2 And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.

It must have been an interesting upbringing having been the son of Alma. Their father was the head of the church, the Chief Judge for a time, the great warrior on the battlefield, and was the fearless servant of God going forth to preach the gospel. Imagine the stories told, including the witnesses of people like Amulek and the Sons of Mosiah. It was a household of faith, to be sure.

What does it take to raise a child unto the Lord? Sometimes, children come with their own aptitudes and desires no matter what we do. But the environment of a family of faith has more power upon a child than any other influence.

3 I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.

4 For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee. **[Incredible faith for a young man to bear such things for the Lord.]**

5 And now my son, Shiblon, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day. **[Always remember to "Trust in the Lord."]**

6 Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things. **[What is to be born of God? This is to receive the baptism of fire and the gift of the Holy Ghost. To be born again in the Spirit, a new person in Christ. In Alma's case, his repentance led to an outpouring of the Spirit within three days of his broken heart and contrite spirit, and then he learned the power of trusting in God.]**

7 But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.

8 And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.

9 And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.

10 And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things. **[Temperance is an attribute of godliness that helps us to overcome the flesh and all the fiery darts of the adversary. We must watch our thoughts, our actions, and all we do, so that we are not overcome by the flesh. This includes how we eat, sleep, how we spend our time, and anything that has an addictive component; for all things can become an idol to the heart if we allow it.]**

11 See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength. **[Arrogance is a weakness. We should always return the glory to our Father, as Jesus would do, leaning on Him for our strength.]**

12 Use boldness, but not overbearance; **[We do not beat the Gospel into people, we lead by invitation.]** and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love **[Passions come in all kinds. If charity is our bridle, we will know how to properly do all things.]**; see that ye refrain from idleness. **[Always exercising faith, seeking after revelation and acting upon it. Idleness is not seeking.]**

13 Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom. **[Don't worry about what others think of you.]**

14 Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times. **[We cannot be made worthy until we acknowledge our reliance upon the Lord. Then we are made worthy.]**

15 And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this people. Be sober. My son, farewell.

I like the word Joseph Smith chose to use in the translation, “sober.” It appears that Shibleon was a passionate person, filled with desire, and at times a little over the top in his way of preaching to the people. I remember as a young nineteen year old missionary dreaming of how I could preach the Gospel in Japan. Calling the people to repentance with the roar of a lion and the Lord striking fear into the hearts of the wicked. I was zealous, but I soon learned that people responded better to love and reason. To pure testimony based on the Spirit. We must be sober and completely in control of our faculties. Our passions will motivate us to have faith, but they must be bridled by the Spirit, only doing that which the Lord commands.

Questions and Answers

Temperance in ALL things. Is that a never ending process or constant battle? It seems to be. I think that I succeed in the major areas commonly expected of a “true” disciple but still fail here or there like with my passion for carrot cake type desserts or not managing my time as efficiently as I could. Or is being able to be consistently or constantly temperate in all things a fruit that comes after a baptism by fire/ gift of the Holy Ghost? **[Temperance is one of the virtues of godliness, that we can control our**

bodies, passions, and desires in order to seek after that which is of great worth. It is exercised before receiving the baptism of fire. The Lord said that we have the capacity to overcome all of our weakness. It must be continually cultivated even after to prevent being subject to the buffeting of Satan PR]

Lastly temperate in ALL things... doesn't that mean you have achieved perfection or have now become perfect in Christ? **[We must temper the appetites of the flesh so that our spirit controls the carnal man. Temperance is not the same as perfection. PR]**

Is there more to the definition of Temperance than just keeping an activity or habit within the bounds the Lord has set? **[It is the control or restraint of the carnal man. PR]**

Vs 8: Where was his spirit being held if his body was weak and collapsed (unconscious?) on earth? Is it a special place of learning? **[Are you referring to Alma the younger? He was unable to speak or move his body, but was not unconscious. When he had his baptism of fire and Holy Ghost experience he was here. PR]**

What is the carnal man? What makes us carnal minded? Is it that we abuse our body by the choices we make? We make our body weak by not controlling passions, appetite, thoughts. "The carnal man," does this start with thoughts and not necessarily the flesh? I'm curious to know, because we tend to blame the body for our weaknesses, but the body obeys us, so if we are not being righteous our body will do what we want it to do, so then who's to blame?

Many of us believe that because of the flesh we are weak or wicked, but could it be the other way around? That because we are not good to the flesh we are weak? **[The carnal man is simply the weakness of the flesh. It is what prevents us from seeking the things of the Spirit, which are not easily identified by the carnal senses. To be carnally minded is to shun the Lord, but all of us will be subject to this weakness until we die. PR]**

Hi P. R

I know we have not arrived at that chapter yet, but I am curious to know if you have seen what exactly happened to Alma after he finished giving his last counsel and blessings to his sons and then left? Was he really translated? How was he translated? When you can, can you please describe to us what happened? Alma was one of the greatest servants ever, I would really like to know what happened. **[I have not asked the Lord about Alma's translation. I do not know. PR]**

Thanks

Seeking After Harlots – Alma 39:1-19

1 And now, my son **[Corianton]**, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother **[Shiblon]**; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy

brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

2 For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom. **[What does that look like? Publicly stating that you know more than everyone, that you are greater than others, or that you have more favor with God, which you profess guarantees you more power. One should never boast of their priesthood relationship. Usually, those who do so have less a relationship with the Lord than they declare.]**

3 And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel. **[This is a two part transgression. He left the ministry he had been entrusted and sought out a harlot, which were both signs that his heart was not with God.]**

In our day this would come in various forms. Many young men have infatuations with women celebrities, performers, and other illusions that the adversary uses to drag them down. Young women follow the same pattern. Chasing after an idol in the heart can lead to gross sin. Pornography is a unique disease of our age. Its prevalence in movies, TV, social media, and easy access makes it a constant threat to your spiritual sensitivities.

4 Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted. **[Isabel was a popular woman amongst the Nephite men.]**

5 Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost.

Why is sexual sin considered the third greatest abomination behind denying the Holy Ghost and murder? Because it is the most difficult to free yourself. There are certain chains that bind the carnal man more than any other. All things can be repented except denying the Holy Ghost. But that doesn't mean it is easy. The only way to free oneself from sexual sin is a complete broken heart and contrite spirit. This means a full submission to the Lord and laying every link to the former sin at the Lord's feet, forever choosing to avoid all contact with any temptation that would awaken that part of oneself. It is the only way.

Sexual sin comes in different levels of seriousness, meaning some are easier to overcome than others. All relations outside of marriage between a man and woman, whether heterosexual or homosexual are an abomination to Him. Do not be deceived in this matter. Today's world would have everyone believe in a telestial view of marriage, but it is a solemn covenant between a couple and the Lord to bring forth children to raise unto Him.

6 For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness. **[It is not easy, but can be done. The Lord requires us to account for every life we take in this life. In the case of David, he had to do much beyond the veil to compensate for the murder of Uriah the Hittite.]**

There is much confusion regarding the “unpardonable sin.” What does it mean to deny the Holy Ghost? It is far more than making a false statement concerning the Holy Ghost, or to speak against God. No person ever accidentally becomes a Son of Perdition. There is a very specific requirement to do so. First, they must be an anointed servant of God, the fourth estate, having received Eternal Life, walked with God, and then made a conscious decision to deny Him. How does this happen? Usually, the decision to become of Son of Perdition is made before this world. A covenant is made with Satan. Then, during this life, the person is groomed to do the act. It requires an oath to Satan, followed by a blood sacrifice where they murder another anointed servant. This is the case with Cain when he murdered Abel, and became the first Son of Perdition in this world. There have been many who have made these dark covenants during the history of this world, and more now than ever.

7 And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

8 But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day. **[Adam said similar things to his son Cain, as he demonstrated a rebellion against God.]**

9 Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things. **[What we allow our eyes to view, both physically, and in the shallows of our mind, are what determine who we become. To “cross” ourselves is to stand against the temptation.]**

10 And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel. **[Corianton had a rebellious nature, that required correction and accountability. Alma was clearly stating that he needed to follow their leadership.]**

11 Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words. **[How many “vain or foolish things” do we allow to distract us? How often do we lust after the things of the world that are idol dreams, hollow in their purpose and meaning. If the Lord is not the focus of**

our desires we should turn to Him fully and reconsider our lifestyle. This is the definition of repentance.]

12 And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;

13 That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.

Raising children is difficult. They each come with their own strengths, weaknesses, and aptitudes. We can counsel, encourage, and guide them, but ultimately they will choose their own path. When a family is sealed together it only means that their relationships are sealed through Christ as we keep our covenants.

14 Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you. **[Vanity, fortune, power, and gratifications of the flesh – these are the seductions of the carnal man. These are what prevent us from coming to Christ; and thus, the natural man is an enemy to God. Mosiah 3:19]**

15 And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people. **[Corianton's understanding of Christ was lacking.]**

16 And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming. **[The calling was not just from Alma, but from the Lord.]**

17 And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming? **[Why worry about something that is not to happen until the future? Because we are to be prepared in all things for when He will come. Sometimes the emphasis is on the earthly preparation, food, clothing, safety. These are important, but far more important are our spiritual preparations. At the top of the list is to have a repentant heart, to be seeking the Lord through the baptism of fire, the Holy Ghost, and the gifts of the Spirit.]**

18 Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

19 Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming? **[This also applies to His second coming. Many today are having visions and angelic visitations regarding what is to come. Learn to receive your own revelation, and never trust in the arm of flesh.]**

Questions and Answers

It struck me when reading verse 16 that the name of Jesus means Salvation. So when Alma says that “salvation might come unto them” it has hints of the meaning of Second Comforter.

Thank you for posting these inspired versions ... they are greatly blessing my life.

Hi PR,

Have you asked the Lord about this exchange between Alma and his son Corianton? I was hoping to know if you had an opportunity to interview both Alma and Corianton about this chapter’s events. How did Alma come to know of Corianton’s actions? Did Alma receive revelation about his son? What kind of reception did Corianton have toward his father’s counsel? **[I have not asked that. The Lord has blessed me to see many things, but there is much I have not. PR]**

Thank you, these exercises in opening up the scriptures have helped me as I endeavor to be led by the Lord as I do my own personal scripture study.

The harlot Isabel – is she mis-using a gift of beauty the Lord has given her or does the adversary have power to bestow such physical “gifts” to some he knows will use it for evil? **[Many scenarios. I don’t know anything about Isabel. PR]**

“When a family is sealed together it only means that their relationships are sealed through Christ as we keep our covenants.”

What does it look like to have a family sealed together? You have mentioned that a couple sealing only occurs at the 4th or 5th Estate, so how are our children today related to us if we have more eternal rounds to go through before we become prepared to enter into an eternal union? Likely, that would mean future families and other children – how are they linked to us? You have also mentioned that children often come through the mother’s line, so how is the father linked to their children? **[The link with our children began before this life. They are not sealed to their parents as much as the entire family can be sealed to Christ if they keep their covenants. If we arise to our 3rd estate in this life we are sealed to Christ and this is what is necessary to continue as a family unit after this life. Further sealing is required for couples to be permanently sealed after this life. PR]**

A second query – if a child rebels against the Eternal Covenant while the parents remain true, can the parents’ faith / righteousness / prayers have an influence on their children following this life? I think of Lehi and Sariah with respect to Laman and Lemuel.

Thanks,. **[There is room for that, but it doesn’t guarantee their salvation. They must still come to the Tree of Life like all people. PR]**

Is Isabel a title? **[Good question. I assume it was her name. PR]**

[...In the case of David, he had to do much beyond the veil to compensate for the murder of Uriah the Hittite.]

I didn’t know this was a possibility. Alma also taught in Chapter 34

“32 For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

33 And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I

beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.”

If David was doing things after his death to make resolution for murdering Uriah were those things done in a separate future mortality or in the spirit world? **[David, after his death, spent an amount of time making restitution to Uriah for what he had done. I don't know the specifics of what David did for him, but when a fourth estate does such an act the have means that others do not. PR]**

And what type of things can one do, then, after this life to go about making restitution? **[This could involve helping his family remaining in this world, and preparing a way for Uriah to have the missed blessings because of His death. That part I am not permitted to delve into. PR]**

The unpardonable sin can never be repented and forgiven of, correct? **[It cannot, because it is a blood oath only made by a 4th estate servant to Satan himself. The Atonement does not cover such a sin, and it is not easy to acquire such a deed. PR]**

About Resurrection – Alma 40:1-26

1 Now my son **[Corianton]**, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried **[anxious]** concerning the resurrection of the dead.

2 Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal **[telestial]** does not put on immortality **[higher glory]**, this corruption **[sinful state]** does not put on incorruption **[forgiveness of sins]**—until after the coming of Christ. **[Our spirit body in its telestial state does not advance without the resurrection of Christ. This event is outside of time and space and those who lived before Christ will obtain the blessing, as will be discussed in the coming verses.]**

3 Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. **[for you]** Now, I unfold unto you a mystery **[show you in layers]**; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept **[not yet revealed]**, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know **[All mysteries require us to pray and receive revelation in order to fully understand for ourselves.]**—that is concerning the resurrection.

The Doctrine of Resurrection is one of the least understood mysteries of God.

4 Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. **[The Lord determines the time. For some it comes quickly, and others they must wait. In all cases it requires faith.]** Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

The term “come forth from the dead” or “resurrection” is the ascension of the spirit body to a higher glory (gift of the Holy Ghost). It is a physical manifestation, yet not like the physical that we think of. The spirit is also matter, but more refined and in its higher glory more energetic. Our physical bodies are literally “dust” compared to the reality and permanence of the higher resurrection.

5 Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead. **[These designations of resurrections are referring to different times in which the Lord will judge the righteous and the wicked. See D&C 88:96-102]**

6 Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

“Death” is the moment we enter our second estate or the telestial realm. This includes both mortality and the spirit realm. To be separated from God is considered death as an eternal consequence of mortality.

7 And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection? **[What is the purpose of entering the second estate?]**

8 Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men. **[During the span of this earth’s existence there are many opportunities to escape death. In this is a mystery.]**

9 Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead **[A time appointed for each person to enter mortality and to come unto Christ.]**; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection **[an opportunity]**. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

10 And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man. **[At the final day of judgment, all shall be understood regarding the Lord’s great plan for us. This is the Everlasting Covenant.]**

11 Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body **[die physically]**, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life. **[Return to the spirit realm of this earth, the abode of the former first estate.]**

12 And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their **[physical]** troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

13 And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and

take possession of their house [**baptism of darkness**—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil. [**Having made covenants to Satan**]

14 Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection. [**final judgment**]

15 Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection [**That which I am writing about in these notations in regards to the change of the spirit by the gift of the Holy Ghost.**], the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignation to happiness or misery [**judgment**], according to the words which have been spoken.

16 And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead. [**These are those who received the gift of the Holy Ghost before Christ came.**]

17 Now, we do not suppose [**imply**] that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignation [**finality**] to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.

18 Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ. [**The literal reuniting of the bodily form to its perfect state from before the foundation of the world.**]

19 Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; [**For some it is, and others it is not.**] let it suffice, that I say that they all come forth [**in time**]; or in other words, their resurrection [**change**] cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

Corianton was concerned that he could not be born again until after Christ came. This was a common unbelief amongst the Nephites. The very baptismal ordinance of water is a similitude of the resurrection. The baptism of fire followed by the gift of the Holy Ghost is the consummation of this ordinance.

20 Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ [**It comes at various times before Christ.**]; but behold, I give it as my opinion [**You must seek revelation on this matter for yourself.**], that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

The soul is the connection between the body, mind, and spirit of each individual. The body is the glory of that individual which determines their judgment and to what degree of eternal life they will abide. The term

“reunited” is to imply a refreshing of a glory that once was. In this is a mystery.

21 But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say **[It will be different for each individual.]**; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works. **[You have an appointed time to come unto Christ between the period of “death,” and to choose what you desire regarding the Everlasting Covenant.]**

22 Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things **[The relationship and presence of the Lord for those who come to Him.]** of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

23 The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame. **[Our “proper frame” for many is not how we see ourselves in the mirror today. The proper frame for most is how they appeared in their perfect form before the foundation of the world. However, we can appear in the form we wish in the eternal realms.]**

24 And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets— **[Faith, repentance, baptism, Holy Ghost – Perfection.]**

25 And then shall the righteous **[resurrected]** shine forth in the kingdom of God.

26 But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

You will notice that Alma does not go into detail regarding the different resurrections, or degrees of glory. He divides it simply between those who choose Christ and those who follow the adversary. There are those who are telestial in glory, terrestrial, and various degrees of celestial. All these are separate from Outer Darkness. The doctrine of resurrection is an integral part of the Everlasting Covenant. See D&C 76.

Questions and Answers

WOW!! PR. You have literally blown the doors off of all my preconceived (learned & taught) notions about the resurrection. There is much here to take to the Lord and from the looks of it many mysteries yet to be uncovered. I can see why you say resurrection truly is one of the least understood mysteries. So let me know if I have this straight:

1. Resurrection is an ascension in the glory of our spirit which one achieves through the baptism of fire and gift of the Holy Ghost and is NOT the reuniting of our spirit with our dusty mortal bodies?
2. We are all currently in the period between death (2nd estate mortal separation from God) and the resurrection as defined in #1.

3. At some point, there will be a final judgment (division & separation) and a resurrection (refreshing of our former glory) which determines our glory (telestial body, terrestrial body, or Celestial body).

4. None of this has anything to do with the spirit reuniting with skin & bones. **[This is a correct synopsis, except a couple of things. Number 3, the final judgment is where we are separated from those of a different glory as the earth is finished and all are sent to their place. Number 4, the resurrection is a body of flesh and bones, but skin is a word that connotates the physical body. The resurrected body is a spiritual body of light, with flesh and bones. See D&C (93:33, 1 For 15:44, Alma 11:45 PR]**

I must say the mysteries and works of God are not in the least bit boring at all. Thank you for sharing these insights.

What's the difference between a Terrestrial and Celestial resurrection?

The earth will be terrestrial, so does that mean it will be a 3rd or 4th estate? **[Those who abide the terrestrial are transitioning to a higher glory. PR]**

So what is the difference between this first Resurrection and the first Resurrection, if your patriarchal blessing states you will come forth on the day of the first Resurrection? 16 And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead. [These are those who received the gift of the Holy Ghost before Christ came.] **[The “first resurrection” is a category. It is the resurrection of the Just. PR]**

Note from vs 8: “During the span of this earth’s existence there are many opportunities to escape death. In this is a mystery.”

Those of the city who were taken up with Enoch, is that considered an example of having taken advantage of an opportunity to escape death?

Did Nephi, Isaiah and Timothy take advantage of an opportunity to escape death? **[Yes, but more specifically I was referring to ascending to the 3rd estate. PR]**

In your comments you stated “The soul is the connection between the body, mind, and spirit of each individual.” More recently in Alma 42:9 you again stated that the soul is the “spirit and mind connected to the body.”

Can you further explain what the mind is, how it relates to the spirit, and how they are different? I have always considered them to be the same thing. Is the mind simply our intelligence that Heavenly Father organized into spirit form? **[The “mind” is the depository of memory. It is the experiences of the flesh that help an individual to have the “toolkit” needed to exercise the principle of faith in the eternities. With experience and each step of grace given, we ascend the ladder of the Everlasting Covenant until our minds are filled with knowledge, and we reach exaltation. The Holy Spirit is the “mind of God” (LonF 5:2) and by its power we may know the truth of all things. Moroni 10:5 PR]**

What replaces our blood once our bodies are resurrected? We've always heard the "flesh and bone" part, implying something takes the place of our blood. What is it? **[Our blood is a specific attribute of the mortal body. A Resurrected body does not need blood to work properly. Every organ and tissue's cells are eternal, filled with light and energy. PR]**

Why is blood precious to the Lord? It is part of the sacrificial lamb and the atonement and the scriptures tell us it cries from the ground when spilled unjustly. Why is something telestial so noted in heaven? **[Blood is the symbol of life in a telestial world. The sacrificial blood of the Only Begotten cleans us of our sins. As we sacrifice our lives to Him we are made clean, and at such time the very DNA of our bodies change. PR]**

15 Wherefore, hearken and I will reason with you, and I will speak unto you and prophesy, as unto men in days of old.

16 And I will show it plainly as I showed it unto my disciples as I stood before them in the flesh, and spake unto them, saying: As ye have asked of me concerning the signs of my coming, in the day when I shall come in my glory in the clouds of heaven, to fulfil the promises that I have made unto your fathers,

17 For as ye have looked upon the long absence of your spirits from your bodies to be a bondage, I will show unto you how the day of redemption shall come, and also the restoration of the scattered Israel.

18 And now ye behold this temple which is in Jerusalem, which ye call the house of God, and your enemies say that this house shall never fall.

These verses from D&C 45 are interesting. The Lord says to Joseph and his brethren He will reason with them as with his disciples (the apostles in Jerusalem) when He told them of the signs of His latter day second coming. But right out of the blue, he makes the statement "for as ye have looked upon the long absence of your spirits from your bodies to be a bondage..." as though He was suddenly talking to the dead. It's possible He is making reference to the fathers in verse 16 being absent from their bodies, but that doesn't seem to make sense with the context of the verses and conversation. Rather, He is talking directly to the disciples about their long absence from their bodies to be a bondage. That would seem to align with what you've notated in this chapter about this earthly probation being death and the separation from their glorified spirit bodies (assuming the 12 are 4th estate?) to have been a bondage. Have I got that right? **[Yes, this life is a bondage, and the servants of God have sacrificed much until the day of restoration. PR]**

Principle of Restoration – Alma 41:1-15

1 And now, my son **[Corianton]**, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration **[judgment of the soul]** of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested **[manipulated for personal use]** the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of

this thing. And I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will explain it unto thee.

Another definition of the principle of restoration is that you reap what you sow. Corianton had reconciled himself with the belief that he would simply be forgiven.

2 I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself. **[The principle that the body, spirit, and mind of an individual is restored according to its glory.]**

3 And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged **[divided and separated]** according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good. **[receive a glory in proportion to that faith]**

4 And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other—**[These are the two opposites.]**

5 The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

One might ask, “Why would anyone choose to follow Satan?” The great divide between righteousness and evil is that the followers of Christ seek the will of the Father, and desire good that they may save souls – it is Christ-love. The followers of Satan seek the will of self and the desire to have power, dominion, and self-gratification. This is self-love and is the temptation that leads all fallen beings to become perdition.

6 And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

7 These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness **[telestial world]**; and thus they stand or fall; for behold, they are their own judges **[they separate themselves]**, whether to do good or do evil.

8 Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved. **[This is the mercy of God, that every soul will have a way prepared that they may come unto Christ. In this is a mystery.]**

9 And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.

10 Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

Alma describes a distinct difference between wickedness and happiness. Some would argue that free expression and self gratification is happiness, but Alma preaches that its result is agony and despair; whereas, righteousness (harmony with God) is true happiness.

11 And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature [**without the law, subject to the natural man**], or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

12 And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature? [**Like saying, “Can you place a square object through a round hole? This is why there must be a separation and judgment that all things may be in harmony according to God’s laws.**]

13 O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful. [**That our spirit body will be resurrected according to the glory it possesses. We cannot simply hop from one state of glory to another. A popular doctrine amongst the Nephites (and even today) is that God will excuse all our sins despite our nature and we will be made holy in the next life. The belief that we need not worry for we shall be forgiven. (2 Nephi 28:8, 21)**]

14 Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously [**Recognize the difference between good and evil according to the Spirit.**], and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward [**You will find what you seek.**]; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.

This is the principle of “Blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.” When we are compassionate to others we qualify for greater light and mercy from Christ. To have Christ-love instead of self-love is the path to righteousness.

15 For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

There are many Christians today that believe God loves them just as they are and that if they simply are good people, all their sins will be taken away. That all religions are a part of a great whole, where love is the only way. But, this is not truthful, there is only one way. 2 Nephi 9:23-46

Questions and Answers

“That every soul will have a way prepared that they can come unto Christ”
Like you said about the Resurrection, that all have a time appointed to them to come

unto Christ, is that all a part of the Lord awakening us? That we can awaken at a certain time to get on the path? **[Yes, this is why Alma said there is a time appointed. The angels carefully prepare the House of Israel at all times. PR]**

Vs 5: What is the definition of “the night that cometh”? **[When the adversary comes. The opposite of the “light” when Christ comes. PR]**

You said before that that there are three types of repentance. Repenting out of 1) fear, 2) guilt and 3) Love. Love is what lasts.

Did perdition never truly love God to begin with? **[In the beginning all were innocent. PR]**

I get a feeling that there are a lot more people out there than I can imagine having the opportunity to receive this awakening, or could be on the path if they will, but somehow they are not taking it, is it in some case because of their traditions? Maybe just all the distractions around us are mainly to keep us from taking the path. **[Our hearts lead us to our destination. There are many distractions and unbeliefs that affect people. But, there is a time appointed for each of us if we have accepted the Everlasting Covenant. PR]**

Is that time appointed for each of us during this mortal probation or maybe not necessarily? **[There is a time appointed for each person to have the opportunity. Even beyond the veil. Each must choose and then exercise faith to receive the baptism of fire. PR]**

The Law of Justice – Alma 42:1-31

1 And now, my son [Corianton], I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be consigned to a state of misery. **[Many think that God must be a mean and spiteful God, but they do not understand.]**

2 Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden **[condescended from a higher glory]**, to till the ground, from whence they were taken **[a terrestrial realm]**—yea, he drew out **[removed]** the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden **[the gate to the Throne of Heaven]**, cherubim **[angels that watch over the gate]**, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—**[a great barrier]**

3 Now, we see that the man **[mankind]** had become as God, knowing good and evil **[The ability to pursue one or the other, to learn the value of faith, which has eternal consequence]** ; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, **[so that Adam and Eve would not stay in the Heavenly Realm and foil their own progression]** the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit— **[There was a divide between the higher and lower realm.]**

4 And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent **[turn to God]**, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God. **["Probationary" implies testing.]**

5 For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life **[returned to the Throne]**, he would have lived forever **[remained in his current state]**, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance **[to bring to pass the salvation of man]**; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated. **[The entire plan to save the House of Israel would be void.]**

6 But behold, it was appointed unto man to die **[to be separated from God]**—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life **[presence of God]** they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man. **[entering the telestial realm]**

7 And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally **[in a physical sense]** and spiritually **[in their glory]** from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will. **[do as they wish]**

8 Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness. **[no going back]**

9 Therefore, as the soul **[spirit and mind connected to the body]** could never die **[without end]**, and the fall **[condescension of Adam]** had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death. **[brought back to the presence of the Lord]**

10 Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish **[seeking their own will according to the flesh]**, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state. **[To prepare for the eternities by learning to exercise faith in Christ.]**

11 And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption **[Christ's redeeming blood]**, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

12 And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man **[both Adam and mankind]** had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

13 Therefore, according to justice **[the laws of God and the separation of all creation according their glory]**, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state **[not another]**; for except it were for these conditions **[of a Redeemer]**, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God. **[God is the source of all order within His dominion. If He did not abide by the laws of order, all would fail.]**

14 And thus we see that all mankind were fallen **[separated from God]**, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

15 And now, the plan of mercy **[the plan to be made whole and clean through the act of another]** could not be brought about except an atonement **[a link made between the Father to the sons and daughters of God]** should be made;

therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also. **[The means to raise us up to Eternal Life.]**

16 Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment **[suffering]**, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

17 Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment? **[There must be one before the other. We had to descend to this life in order to rise to the next.]**

18 Now, there was a punishment affixed **[a suffering prepared]**, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man. **[requiring a broken heart and contrite spirit]**

19 Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder? **[Without a law there is no consequence.]**

20 And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin. **[If God did not give his laws to men then we would have no reason not to sin.]**

21 And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature? **[You cannot justify a punishment unless a law is given.]**

22 But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance, mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God. **[A recap of everything just written.]**

It's important to note that we have this scripture because Alma was inspired to preserve the letters to his sons, which outlined much of this deeper doctrine he had learned by revelation.

23 But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth **[Jesus Christ claims these souls]**the penitent **[broken heart, contrite spirit]**, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead **[the ascension of our spiritual body]**; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works **[that which they have done to receive repentance]**, according to the law and justice.

24 For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved. **[There is no other way but to reach out and grab hold of our Savior, Jesus Christ, and be lifted up through Him.]**

25 What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God. **[Do you think Jesus can simply grant that all will be saved?]**

There are many today that assume all men who are nice and loving will be saved, whether they worship Jesus Christ or not. Or, they assume that only a group within their own gathering has such status. The only way to enter the gate is through Him, without any man standing there. 2 Nephi 9:41

26 And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. **[even before the Garden of Eden]** And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.

27 Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds. **[All may come and receive at some point in their existence, none are denied.]**

28 If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God. **[The desires of the heart determine where we will eventually go.]**

29 And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

30 O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

It is the nature of most people who call themselves followers of Christ to assume that they need only believe and their sins will be removed and they will be lifted up at the last day. Without true repentance there is no forgiveness.

31 And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

Questions and Answers

So when it comes to being saved, many think about going to heaven. I remember your post on suicide says when an Elect who has made the Everlasting Covenant commits suicide, they are met by angels and return to heaven.

So someone can be in heaven and not have their baptism of fire... I believe that's also true for all sinners as long as they choose the Lord (The Lord is incredibly merciful). What exactly is salvation? **[Salvation is to be saved from perdition. This is different than Eternal Life. Those who accept Christ are brought into Paradise, which is the First Heaven here on earth in the spirit realm. PR]**

Vs 24: Why is justice male and mercy female? **[That is the traditional way many view it; however, justice is simply the dividing of all things according to their purpose and glory. Father and Mother reign over all from their Throne in heaven. Mercy can be viewed as the means by which we can be saved from a lower sphere, and this requires a Father/Mother, Son/daughter dynamic hinging upon the great sacrifice of the Only**

Begotten Son. Such is what we call the atonement. So, in answer to your question: they are both male and female. PR]

My question about the gathering Israel. What exactly does that mean? **[It is the literal gathering of all those who made previous covenants before birth. Israel means “come to God,” according to what the Lord has told me. These are the Elect as described in scripture. They must come forth and be brought to Zion in the last days before the Lord’s coming. PR]**

Can you please describe/explain the first, second and third heavens, sorry if you have done this already. I thought the spirit prison was the first, paradise was the second and the throne of God was the third? Also, I would love a definition of living waters or waters of life. Thank you. **[The First Heaven is the realm of Paradise in the spirit realm of this earth. It is the dwelling for those who have accepted Christ. It abides within the atmosphere of this earth. These await the resurrection and mingle with the angels of God. The Second Heaven is where the angels of God dwell, and it is of a terrestrial nature. It encompasses all the universe, but they must have permission to enter the Throne of God. The Third Heaven is the Throne of God. Each of these three abodes are guarded by the angels. The Throne is protected by the Cherubim, which are high angels of God. They are like ushers to those who enter the Throne. At the Throne there is a place where the Tree of Life exists, and there are what are referred to as “living waters” that come forth from beneath the tree. Christ is the source of the living waters, as He is the one who can bestow Eternal Life upon those who partake of the fruit of the Tree. PR]**

Thank you, so when we can come and ‘partake of the waters of life freely’ is it just an expression meaning that no man is denied a relationship with Christ should he seek it, or more literal that one day on top of our relationship with Him, all people who seek can hope to enter into eternal life and partake of that ordinance/fruit of the tree? **[All those who go to the Throne will eventually be invited to do this. It is both literal and figurative. PR]**

Is spirit prison also on the earth? **[Yes. PR]**

“At the Throne there is a place where the Tree of Life exists, and there are what is referred to as “living waters” that come forth from beneath the tree.”

Is this place where the tree of life is, in a garden or courtyard right outside the Throne of God? Or is it inside ?

And is this where you go? **[Yes, it is near the Throne. PR]**

What’s at the sun? Is this the second Heaven where angels of God dwell and the city of Enoch went to? Thanks PR! **[There are angels there, but I cannot answer more than that. PR]**

Why is the Throne literally protected by the cherubim, when we know that the Lord is endlessly mighty & powerful? **[The Lord administers all things through His servants. The Cherubim are more like the caretakers of the gates. They**

greet new arrivals and help them prepare to meet the Lord. The Shahophalim are the warrior angels that deal with the Adversary directly. The Lord has angels perform many duties to give them different experiences just as any Father would for their children to help them prepare for more responsibility. PR]

Nb: Please can you add more to what we already know about Adam and Eve and why they could not go to the Throne and eat the fruit of the tree of life before repenting. I know it is real and literal, but why is it so? **[If Adam and Eve had not left the presence of the Lord it would have prevented them, as well as their posterity, from advancing in the Everlasting Covenant. The fruit of the tree is the equivalent of returning to the Third Heaven without accomplishing the plan of redemption. PR]**

“The fruit of the tree is the equivalent of returning to the Third Heaven without accomplishing the plan of redemption. PR”

What does this mean exactly? **[To dwell with God eternally without progression which requires Adam and Eve to condescend to earth in a fallen state. PR]**

Also, does the General Assembly and Church of the Firstborn begin at the Second or Third Heaven? **[The Second is where they dwell, but it begins when you receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. PR]**

John 7:37-39 implies that living water is the gift of the Holy Ghost. Does that relate to the living water at the Throne? To get to the throne one would have already had the gift of the Holy Ghost already. Perhaps it is by this act (of drinking) one chooses to accept a commission from Christ to ascend in the estates by condescending to serve?

If the living water is given from Christ, is the imagery of the fruit of the tree of life Christ himself (His love being thereby realized in the act of partaking)? Is it similar to Him being the bread of life? (ie: things we eat or ingest to make them part of us, and us them)? **[The bread of life is our partaking of the Atonement in this life. The fruit of the Tree of Life is what comes next. The living waters flow out from under the tree, and this is more than metaphorical, for the Tree and the Water are very literal, as they exist at the very Throne of Heaven. One must partake of these in order to move forward in the Everlasting Covenant. PR]**

The Armies of Moroni – Alma 43:1-54

1 And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

2 Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy **[the word of God given to them to share]** and revelation **[specific instructions and enlightenment from**

God]; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

[calling of the ministry, by direct commandment]

3 And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges. **[The following war came about after the righteous remnant had been exiled by the Zoramites.]**

4 For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon. **[refer to Alma 35]**

5 And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum **["Anti" means "like unto," which means to the Lamanites, "like unto Onum."]**, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

6 And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore, Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites. **[They also claimed to know the Nephite strategy and ways, it made them more effective leaders.]**

7 Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

8 For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

9 And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.

As I read this it sounds like the purpose of the original American colonists who sought autonomy from the British Empire.

10 For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy. **[the freedom of religion, declared in the Bill of Rights]**

11 Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren **[Because in their eyes they had defected from their country to join the Nephites.]**, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.

12 And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.

13 And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah. **[Amulonites]**

14 Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.

15 And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum [**central eastern area of the United States**], behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jershon. [**Area beneath the Great Lakes area.**]

16 Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni; [**Not to be confused with the Moroni who finished the abridgment of the plates.**]

I asked to see Captain Moroni. I saw him working amongst his people. He was a strong man, very serious and committed. He had a short cut black beard and wore armor of mostly leather. His parents were killed by Lamanites when he was a boy. He was committed to fighting for his people his entire life. He wasn't a prophet like the later Moroni, but was led by ministering spirits and had the baptism of fire. (personal journal entry)

17 And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites. [**This is typically when a young man is in the height of their physical abilities. Moroni had proven his valor on the battlefield and had the deep respect of the army.**]

18 And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.

19 And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—[**These were mostly leather with small metal plates attached.**]

20 Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;

21 But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.

22 Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone. [**They went up into the northern wilderness and around back toward the headwaters of the Mississippi River.**]

23 But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites. [**Moroni did not yet know how to receive revelation from the Lord.**]

24 And it came to pass that the word of the Lord **[revelation]** came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni. **[Alma had also previously revealed where to head off the Lamanites along the Mississippi in the lower region, when the Lamanites destroyed Ammonihah. Alma 16:6]**

25 Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon, lest by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land and take possession of the city, took the remaining part of his army and marched over into the land of Manti. **[On the west side of the Mississippi, above Zarahemla, near the wilderness.]**

26 And he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites. **[They were able to make a straight course to the land of Manti, pre-empting the attack of the Lamanites. This was a great act of faith on Moroni's part; if he was wrong they would have lost all of the land of Jershon.]**

27 And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness. **[above the land of Manti]**

28 And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the camp of the Lamanites should come.

29 And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

30 And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore, he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take. **[To use deceit to make gain was a crime amongst the Nephites, but Moroni did not abide by those rules in regard to war.]**

31 Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley, and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;

32 And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.

33 And thus having placed his army according to his desire, he was prepared to meet them. **[He could literally surround their army.]**

34 And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.

35 And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear. **[This is the son of the general Zoram who was the previous head of the Nephite army. Alma 16:7]**

36 And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.

37 And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.

38 While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their armshields, and their head-plates; and thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.

39 And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon.

40 And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross. **[The Mississippi River had places easy to cross at these times, which is not the case today.]**

41 And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

42 And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

43 Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.

44 And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

45 Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.

46 And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies. **[This is the Lord's counsel regarding war. That it is justified to kill if it was unprovoked. Many soldiers have died on the battlefield defending what they believe is a just cause. The Lord is merciful and judges righteously.]**

47 And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion. **[Are we defending the lives of our families and country, or seeking to expand our economic interests outside our country, through acts of war? These passages of scripture are clear on this.]**

48 And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts

of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage. **[He reminded his troops what was at stake.]**

49 And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage. **[They cried out to God in prayer to give them victory.]**

50 And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.

51 Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.

52 Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

53 Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

54 Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood.

It has helped me greatly to have the Lord give me revelation in regards to the visual aspect of these events, such as where they took place, and the reality of how they transpired. I have not seen everything, but enough to know that such events are a mirror to future events and that we too will need to call out to God in our darkest hour to have Him bless us with the victory we need to preserve our families.

Questions and Answers

Incredible....I FEEL this familiarity/posterity connection in my heart. I believe you are describing the Lenape (original people) who worshipped VERY similar to us) and the Iroquois (who became wicked beyond measure.) I am learning much about my personal heritage and Joseph Smith played a HUGE part in bringing the gospel of Christ to these precious people on the East coast who had to scatter/flee northward and into surrounding areas. I believe this happened on our American soil. I have no proof other than a testimony of truth in my heart. Mind blown.

Vs 46: “Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.”

Do you have to wait for the second offense to be judged as justified or not guilty? For example, someone breaks into your home with wicked intent or is attempting to kidnap your child – the first offense. Are we to wait for the second offense before defending ourselves? **[This is specifically referring to war. In the case of protecting one’s family, we are obligated to take all measures to do this, and we are justified in doing so. PR]**

Vs 40 note: “[The Mississippi River had places easy to cross at these times, which is not the case today.]“

Is that because during BoM times there was less snow/more mild weather so there was less run-off to fill the Mississippi? Or was it simply a younger river then? **[The land has changed somewhat since after the coming of Christ. PR]**

Verses 8 & 9 The war in Heaven summed up. This is the pattern of the enemy and his followers. Different battlefields same tactics. The desires of the righteous are to protect, to preserve, to maintain, to worship God, and to defend. This is done all out of love, thinking of others and loved ones. The desires of the enemy are to usurp power, to control, to use, to abuse, to take away, selfishness, and is not for love towards anyone but themselves.

It's a shame that the United States doesn't run it's military like Moroni did. He never went into the enemy's home land to defend his own land as we do today. He sought for help from men of God that had the spirit of prophecy that could help guide his directions for his army. From what I can see, we have neither men with the gift of prophecy or military leaders that would even consider seeking out prophets to help them. I'm reminded of the words of one good religious leader that some believe was a prophet. After the 9/11 attack he gave words of encouragement to his people but from the quotes below, he even admits he didn't have the gift of prophecy and revelation to help the leaders of our country.

"We do not know what it will cost in lives and treasure. We do not know the manner in which it will be carried out."

"No one knows how long it will last. No one knows precisely where it will be fought. No one knows what it may entail before it is over. We have launched an undertaking the size and nature of which we cannot see at this time."

"I do not know what the future holds. I do not wish to sound negative,"

I pray that when the United States comes under attack there will be men that will be able to say they know where we need to go and how the enemy will seek to destroy us. Maybe a better thing to hope for is that I will have the spirit of prophecy and revelation so I will know where to go and how to defend myself and family.

3 And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges. [The following war came about after the righteous remnant had been exiled by the Zoramites.]

Does this parallel a latter day event when the Gentile churches begin to actively cast out the humble followers of Christ from their congregations. If so, what form will this take on in the future? **[There will continue to be an exodus from the churches of the humble followers of Christ. Christianity is under persecution throughout the world, and it will become even more so in the United States in the future. There will be no room for indecision, as each person will need to decide where they stand on these issues. PR]**

"There will continue to be an exodus from the churches of the humble followers of Christ. Christianity is under persecution throughout the world, and it will become even more so in the United States in the future. There will be no room for indecision, as each will need to decide where they stand on these issues. PR"

If the humble followers of Christ are leaving the churches, how will they be found in

order to be persecuted? **[They are persecuted from within and without. How were the Jews discovered in Nazi Germany? It won't last long before the cleansing occurs. PR]**

Battle of Two Opposing Views – Alma 44:1-24

Other than telling an interesting story regarding how Moroni defeated the army of Zarahemnah, what is the purpose of this chapter? The original record did not have chapter divisions, so this is essentially part two of the story.

1 And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zarahemnah: Behold, Zarahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.

2 Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.

3 But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

4 Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

My first thought when reading these verses was of the great faith of Moroni. Also, how much of a contrast this is to our country today. Would any United States general make such a declaration to a leader of a conquered enemy? Only a country who has an allegiance to God would declare such a thing. America was founded upon Judeo-Christian beliefs, but today such things are relegated to traditional protocols which have little meaning in Washington and across the country.

5 And now, Zarahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—

6 Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

7 And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

8 And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

That is how our soldiers should deal with captured soldiers of ISIS and those who seek the blood of Americans. If they are willing to make an oath upon the name of their God that they will not take up arms against the United States again, we will release them. If not, they will be executed. However, such terms would not be allowed under the Geneva Conventions for today's treatment of prisoners of war.

9 Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you. **[This is true, yet such inspiration came from the Lord. It is common for people to dismiss good ideas and results as if it were our own ingenuity, when often they come from a source above ourselves.]**

10 And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

Zarahemnah was a man seeking power amongst his people, and was a man of war. He was filled with hate against those who worshipped Christ. Today, many hate Christians because they hold a view that embraces the freedom of self at the expense of others. There is no accountability for one's actions, whether it be the murder of the unborn or late birth abortion, the stealing of resources through unjust laws, how we enforce taxes and immigration, or the unbalanced treatment of minority groups with special treatment under the law.

The Lamanites were a political opposite to those who sought equity and freedom according to God's law. The United States, today, suffers from the same division. Similarly, we live in a society divided by Nephites and Lamanites.

11 Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

12 And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

[This is one of the most dramatic scenes in the Book of Mormon from a story point of view. The kind of narrative from which great movies are made. To remove the scalp of an enemy is a symbol of domination and humiliation.]

13 And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

14 Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

15 Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness.

16 Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.

17 And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.

18 But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.

19 Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their lives, that they never would come to war again against them.

20 And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

A great act of mercy for an army set upon their destruction.

21 Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the greatness of the number; yea, the number of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.

22 And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

23 And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to their houses and their lands.

24 And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus ended the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates of Nephi.

War is a sad reality of the world in which we live. There will come a time when the peace that this country enjoys will be swept away by the suffering of war and famine. How did Moroni deal with these challenges? He sought out help from a servant of God he trusted and he army prayed mightily for God to deliver them. For us, the greatest protection will be our access to revelation, like Alma, to know where to go and how to protect ourselves.

As the United States continues to divide itself according to fundamental beliefs regarding the rule of law, government, sovereignty, individual rights, life, and liberty, the divide will grow until the hate between the two groups will lead to great violence.

Questions and Answers

Vs 4: "...and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith."

Is this generally true of the Lord? I know some are martyred but does the Lord tend to prefer that we live long lives upon the earth? **[When the Lord speaks it is always spiritual, which means He is looking at the bigger picture. To be destroyed is to have a permanent separation from God. PR]**

"There will come a time when the peace that this country enjoys will be swept away by the suffering of war and famine."

If you can tell us, which have you seen occur first, the war or the famine? **[They seem to coincide. PR]**

"and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers...To remove the scalp of an enemy is a symbol of domination and humiliation.]" I was wondering if for some reason this experience inspired others to remove the scalps of their enemies as a symbol of domination? or trophy kind of thing, And it got passed down through generations, and perhaps that's why Native American tribes did practice back in the days. Or there could be no connection whatsoever. **[That I do not know. PR]**

Have the first stages of the coming famine begun now? **[What is now is unrelated to the famine coming. PR]**

Alma's Farewell – Alma 45:1-24

1 Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore

they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

2 And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

3 And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

4 And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

5 And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

6 And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

7 And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

8 Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

9 But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

10 And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

11 Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct— **[A very precise prophecy given to Alma, which he would not be able to witness in his mortal flesh.]**

12 Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall into the works of darkness, and lasciviousness, and all manner of iniquities; yea, I say unto you, that because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come. **[Here Alma divides a generation as one hundred years. Sometimes a generation can mean a block of time for a particular people.]**

13 And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

14 But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.

15 And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous' sake.

[Alma had sisters, daughters, grandchildren, and friends. He quietly said goodbye, giving his blessings to those whom he loved. This account only mentions the sons, because they had been gathered for a specific purpose.]

16 And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

17 And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the church, yea, all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

18 And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

I asked the Lord if He would help me to understand what happened to Alma the younger when he left Zarahemla never to be seen again. The Lord opened a vision and answered my questions as I watched different things unfold. I asked the Lord how Alma could leave his family. The Lord said that his wife had died from sickness and he had been instructed to leave and go north and west to fulfill another mission.

Alma was alone. He traveled through two Nephite cities as he left the land, seeing a few people on the way. He then traveled through the Hermounts and all the way toward the northern lands near Alaska. There were isolated people who he was instructed of the Lord to share the Gospel. Alma brought a condensed copy of his records to share with these peoples. Alma spent at least ten years traveling through the wilderness and along the western coast of America teaching the Gospel alone. There were three tribes that he had a profound effect upon. He was not translated at the time, but was protected by the power of God from wild animals and violent people.

The last thing I saw was Alma at a beach alone. The Lord said that he was taken up to heaven when he was in the southern California region. It was the same kind of translation that occurred to Elijah when he was taken up to heaven. The chariot of fire descended and Alma was taken up as a translated being. Alma later played a part in helping Mormon to gather information when abridging the plates. Also, in helping some of the righteous remnants of the Nephites when the great destructions came to America. He is no longer in his translated state, but now dwells in the Second Heaven with the angels of God. (Journal Entry)

19 Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial.

20 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

21 For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.

22 Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.

23 And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;

24 But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God. **[When the church divides according to class and wealth the Spirit withdraws. O be wise, those who seek Christ.]**

Questions and Answers

Vs 16, is that cursing by Alma applicable still in our day? Meaning, will the land be cursed by Alma's cursing when it becomes sufficiently wicked? **[YES. PR]**

How did Alma aid Mormon in finding records? In v. 19, Mormon states : "we suppose that [the Lord] has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial." This seems to suggest Mormon also did not know what had happened to Alma after he departed Zarahemla. Was Mormon constrained from revealing Alma's activities even though he saw Alma in his day? **[Translated beings rarely reveal their identities. Mormon may not have even known he was assisted. I don't know the circumstances of what occurred. PR]**

Thank you so much P.R for sharing! I really really wanted to know what happened to Alma. Man, this is epic! This has definitely made me respect Alma so much more. Amazing dedication and devotion to the Lord! God help us have this kind of devotion to God!

Vs 15: I believe the Lord does things for wise purposes. Why are so few women mentioned in the Book of Mormon? It is disheartening to read about masses of unnamed women when they are being heartbroken by their husband's polygamy, carried off, raped, burned, victimized by war or otherwise afflicted and I think only two are named in the entire text: Sariah and Abish. There has to be a wise reason for this. Do you know why? **[When Zion is established and the sealed portion is translated, at that point, many of the women's records will come forth. The Book of Mormon also follows a procession of prophets, or record keepers, telling their specific stories. Even Samuel the Lamanite's record is not included because he is not a part of that line. There is one break away when we get to the book of Ether. In the book "A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations" it mentions some of the female prophetesses who also wrote records. PR]**

Vs 8: What does the Lord mean when He says the righteous will prosper in the land? I always imagined it meant having offspring that lives and the land bringing forth the fruits of your honest labor and that your family has what is needed for survival and enjoys some comfort. But I think my definition is limited and blind to other blessings that I am likely overlooking!

This adds so much to the story of Alma! Thank you. How old was Alma when he departed?

And the tribes that he had a profound effect on are they still in existence today? Where did they come from? Who were they? **[I do not know the answers to those questions. PR]**

Great chapters thank you, is translation a state available to all mortals – what would be the disqualifying factors if not? **[Translation is only given for a purpose to help further the Lord’s work among His anointed servants. It is not a saving ordinance, or necessary for exaltation. PR]**

OH MY GOODNESS! I can barely speak after reading this. My husband and I just got home from our week in Baja Mexico. On our snorkeling trip, our guide stopped at many coves. However, there was one cove in particular we could not snorkel at, as it was considered too sacred. As I sat on this boat with 10 others, I couldn’t control my crying. The guide who spoke Spanish just smiled and nodded. TOTAL PEACE. I told my hubs that this place was overwhelmingly filled with spirits who made sacrifices to follow the Lord at all costs. I asked the Lord to reveal WHY I felt so much peace but didn’t get an answeruntil just now reading this about Alma being at a beach. My heart is on fire PR. Singing praises today my friends for the Lord does allow us our own Personal Revelation! Truth! You have helped “prepare” to turn our hearts to the Lord to just ask questions and receive in our own time.

Did his wish to be like an angel to take the gospel to every nation come to pass when he became a translated being? Why did he not remain like that until the second coming like the 3 Nephites? **[Yes, his desire did come to pass. I don’t know why he didn’t stay. Elijah also did not remain in that state, nor many others. The Lord can do as needed to further His work. PR]**

Does Elijah yet have an end times role to play in the flesh? Does Alma? **[Elijah is the arch angel that administers over the Dominions (144k), Alma is of the dominions, and therefore will be involved in the end times. Most of the Dominions perform their duties from the other side of the veil. PR]**

Title of Liberty – Alma 46:1-41

1 And it came to pass that as many as would not hearken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were gathered together against their brethren. **[Because of class separation according to status and wealth. The Nephites dealt with this contention from before the time of the Judges.]**

Today in the United States there are seeds of such contention, as the states with the largest cities are seeking to eliminate the electoral college. This would remove their ability to have a voice in national elections. The contempt for middle America is alarming in today’s politics.

2 And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, insomuch that they were determined to slay them.

3 Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

Who was Amalickiah? The Lord showed me that he was chosen by his people like Amlici before him. Amlici means King-man, Amalickiah means the chosen King-man. Both are a title for their status among their followers, and the name by which they are called. Their followers are called King-men, or people of high status.

4 And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power. **[Essentially, a coup against the government of the land.]**

5 And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and establish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.

6 Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissensions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceedingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.

7 And there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the church; **[The political divide existed even within the church.]** and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

8 Thus we see how quick the children of men do forget the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

What is the division that exists within the church today? The most obvious contrast can be seen with political views. Compare the two largest party platforms of the country and how people choose between the one or the other even within our church assemblies. However, this is not to say either are without evil influences. In today's world, a follower of Christ must be vigilant in seeking personal revelation.

9 Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the children of men. **[Watch your leaders very carefully. Appearances can be deceiving.]**

10 Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.

11 And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.

12 And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole. **[Such a pole was often used in battle to gather a battalion under a commanding officer. By hoisting this banner in such a way was a clear sign to his soldiers.]**

13 And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breastplate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—

I wanted to learn about Moroni, the general of the Nephite armies. I saw him, a man that appeared to be in his thirties. He looked rugged with a short dark beard, piercing eyes. He stood on a hill looking out at many of his troops. He took his robe, which was the colors of the general, white with a red border all around it. The robe would appear rectangular when stretched out. In a dramatic fashion, he tore it in front of his troops right down the middle. All knew this was a sign of great distress. He then wrote in black with large letters from the top down:

**Remember
God
Religion
Freedom
Peace
Wives
Children**

He then placed it on a banner pole, like a flag for these Nephites, and had great power in rallying their people behind the cause. Having the rip down the middle made it more dramatic and emphasized all that was at stake.

14 For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

15 And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

16 And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.

17 And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine **[ultimately]**, all the land, both on the north and on the south **[of Zarahemla]**—A chosen land, and the land of liberty. **[North America]**

18 And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

19 And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

20 Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

21 And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token **[sign]**, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

22 Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward **[The Battle of Zarahemnah, and the City of Ammonihah]**, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

23 Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

24 Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment. **[A reference to the remnant of Jacob, for which the Book of Mormon was written to convert in the last days.]**

25 Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

26 Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.

27 And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

28 And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

29 And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi. **[Very similar to Amlici from fourteen years previously. Alma 2]**

30 Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

31 Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

32 And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

33 And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.

34 Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.

35 And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

36 And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites. **[This was the Nephite's equivalent to the American flag. A symbol of their covenant to God, nation, and family. Such meaning is lost to most Americans today.]**

37 And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.

38 And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the church.

39 And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.

40 And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate— **[Interesting that the Lord had Mormon mention the plants and roots used to fight disease amongst the Nephites.]**

41 But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.

Questions and Answers

Speaking of climate in verse 41: Do you know why there is no mention of snow in the book of Mormon? **[It mentions seasons, but not snow. I haven't asked the Lord that question. There are a handful of points that critics of the BofM bring up. It simply hasn't been important enough for me to ask. PR]**

Vs 40: I've thought that verse was a useful aside and placed there for a reason. If God created the plants and roots to remove the CAUSES of diseases, does that mean God is not the cause and it is either the adversary, possessing spirits or the weakness of the flesh? **[An example of justice and mercy. God rarely if ever causes our afflictions. PR]**

From the note after vs 8: "In today's world, a follower of Christ must be vigilant in seeking personal revelation."

If personal revelation does not seem to be coming, do you have any advice for how to re-connect with the Lord quickly? **[When I feel like I'm in a rut I begin fasting. This means I turn my entire thoughts toward God avoiding any outside distraction. In that state I ask the Lord for forgiveness and express my gratitude for all He has done. If I'm really in a rut I will begin writing my questions and ask for revelation as I begin to write. This almost always works for me. These days I just go and pray and listen for Him. PR]**

Thanks for drawing my attention to verse 40. My wife and I have been conscious of plants, herbs and food for many years but have never picked that out before. You and others have commented on the problem far too many will have, when in the days to come, their pharmaceutical dependency will increase their vulnerability. It is interesting though how hard it is to find information about natural plants and herbs. What seems to have been common knowledge in Mormon's days is very obscure, and even marginalized in our day. **[The Nephites had to learn which plants were medicinal, because when they came to the Promised Land these indigenous plants were not known to them. PR]**

Hi PR. Do you have any insight to the geographical location (in verse 17) where Moroni blesses the land, first naming the land south, then in fine, both north and south. I have always loved this verse, I feel it's power. **[It is North America. PR]**

You said, "God rarely if ever causes our afflictions." Are you using afflictions as a synonym for trials or do you mean simply diseases? And if trials, are you referring to the law of attraction where we bring trials to ourselves because of our own negative thoughts and energy? Or are you meaning what we chose pre-mortally for ourselves to experience trials for our gaining knowledge/growth potential? **[When I say afflictions, I mean the hardships of life. In most cases it comes with mortality. Even that which we are born with is our own choice. The few times God causes something is when one of His servants intercedes to protect the righteous. Sometimes what we think is a trial may be a blessing in disguise. There is much nuance in how God operates in our lives. I would always look upon our lives as a blessing in every form and trust in the Lord. PR]**

I have been pondering herbs and faith as a means to healing our physical ailments. I think the power to be whole is within us, but we lack the faith and even the understanding of how to access this power. I too found it interesting that the Lord added

this verse about herbs for healing disease. In D&C 42:43 He also says :” Whosoever among you are sick, and have not faith to be healed, but believe, shall be nourished with all tenderness, with herbs and mild food.” Here he says Faith is the first method of healing. I am trying to learn how to have this kind of faith. I realize our thoughts create our emotions which manifest in many different ways, which include causing illness and disease. I also know that we create our own life and many of the experiences we have. I have an image in my mind – of Heavenly Mother dressing me in garments of light, including a large pouch that held a precious stone and other healing tools. I sensed that I am a” life giver”. A bearer of light. I did not have armor on, like I would have thought, but was still strong and powerful. I felt I was a healer of some sort. And yet in this world I do not know much about how to heal the body or the soul. I have learned how to grow many nourishing and healing plants, but I am just a mother and wife with no education or experience to heal, so I wonder how to learn these skills- in my own life – let alone in the lives of others.

How Evil Gains Power – Alma 47:1-36

1 Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he had taken those who went with him, and went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

2 And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

3 And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

4 Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.

What did Amalickiah say to compel the king to want to go to battle against the Nephites? By appealing to the pride of the king and offering information the king trusted would ensure victory.

5 And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

6 And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.

7 And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

8 Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

9 And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.

10 And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

11 And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.

12 And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.

13 And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

14 And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

15 And it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded, they pled with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.

16 And it came to pass that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dethroning the king.

17 Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

18 And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

19 Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

20 And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.

21 And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.

22 But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

23 And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

24 And it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.

25 Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying: 26 Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold, come and see.

27 And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth and see what had happened to the king; and when they had come to the spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they may be slain.

28 And it came to pass that all they who loved the king, when they heard these words, came forth and pursued after the servants of the king.

29 Now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

30 And the army which pursued after them returned, having pursued after them in vain; and thus Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the people.

Because the servants of the King came to the people of Ammon, we know the details regarding the treachery of Amalickiah and how he became king over the Lamanites. If Moroni had not taken such a strong stand against the coup amongst the Nephites, Amalickiah would have gained power over them as well. Today, such treachery occurs within our own country and other places of the world. Conspiracies to gain power are true, yet many laugh and scorn at such ideas. Where does one look to know the truth regarding our leaders in government as well as the affairs of the country? Can you trust the news sources that are readily available? Without firsthand knowledge, the only way to know the complete truth is to receive it by personal revelation. The times we live in today are treacherous and deadly, far more than the days of Amalickiah.

31 And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the city.

32 And now it came to pass that the queen, when she had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had made their escape—

33 Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he

should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.

34 And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all them who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

35 And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time. **[Amalickiah was the most deceptive and evil of all men to rule amongst the Lamanites. Today, there are those in power, and rising in power, that will someday be compared to the conspiracy of Amalickiah. These are the methods of secret combinations.]**

36 Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

How do these stories regarding the political intrigue, assassinations, and the rise in power of wicked people contribute to the message of the Book of Mormon? We must remember the purpose of the Book of Mormon: to show the Lord's hand in delivering His people, to convince the Jews, gentiles, and the remnant of Jacob (descendants of the family of Lehi) that Jesus is the Christ. All things about this book are to prepare those who will help to usher in the Second Coming of Christ. With that in mind, chapters such as this should awaken you to how secret combinations work. Today, we are in the midst of the same kind of treachery: murder, conspiracy, lies, extortion, and manipulation of the truth. Do not be blind to such things. Seek a witness from the Lord for how you are to protect yourself and your family.

Questions and Answers

Vs 7: Do you know where the mount Antipas is located geographically? **[I do not know. PR]**

I've always been intrigued by this chapter. The lust of this man, Amalickiah, is like none other in the book. Or at least no wicked man in the Book of Mormon is portrayed as lustful as he. King Noah was an evil man also but I think Amalickiah has him beat. When he doesn't win election he incites rebellion, then violence, makes a pact with the enemy, lures people to do things they don't want to do, betrays and kills his new allies, not once but twice, and then to top it off he sleeps with the wife of the man he killed. It must have been a real trophy to him to do that. The lust that ran through his blood is

eerie. I believe there are men out there today like that but I have yet to see them. If we were to see a similar thing play out today we would see someone run for president and then lose. That person would try to start a rebellion and then be found guilty by our laws by going against the constitution. Before he could be tried he would fly over to our greatest enemy and with a smooth tongue become the leader of that country. it's something that could play out if the new world order gained great strength and that became the new enemy to freedom and the constitution. This time though, I don't see the good guys winning. The Book of Mormon seems to make it clear that the gentiles are destroyed. It will be a very sad day. It looks like only a people of God who have been more righteous than the gentiles will have a chance to be spared. I think this is where your message, PR, has great value. We must be born again and be baptized by water, fire and the Holy Ghost.

How can receiving revelation on modern day secret combinations be a protection or applicable to our lives? It seems like almost all people go through life without any problem. **[What these secret combinations do affect everyone's lives, even now. PR]**

What secret combination "activity" (doings or agendas) were you most surprised by when the Lord told you about it? **[Some of their secret combination rituals and oaths. I'm not permitted to talk of it. PR]**

Some of the things are obvious – like pushing for atrocities to be accepted as normal in society – but I know there are things we are completely blind to. Can you share what you were warned about? **[Everything in the book of Alma through the end of the Book of Mormon has clues to what we need to be vigilant in watching for. As more of our rights and freedoms are taken, and depravity takes hold upon the people. PR]**

One of the reasons I love the Book of Mormon so much is because it brings light to the dark machinations of the Adversary, i.e., reveals predictable patterns. I have always wondered at the pure evilness of some people throughout history and in modern times. Amalickiah's actions seem to be head and shoulders above the usual wickedness. Hitler, for example, seems to be in that category as well as others in positions of power or influence. Are men and women like these Sons/Daughters of Perdition? **[Sons of Perdition tend to lurk in the shadows these days as they influence and call the shots of others. But not always. PR]**

Is Magical art & ritual a base of their secret combinations? Or is there nothing to do with that? And what are your thoughts for those who practice magick art? **[There is an opposition to all things. The gifts of the Spirit are God's priesthood in action. The gifts of darkness are Satan's works. Sometimes those gifts are referred to as magic or witchcraft. Such things should be avoided at all cost. PR]**

The Sons of Perdition that lurk in the shadows – are these individuals very wealthy, live in large homes/sprawling estates in certain countries that have enjoyed no wars and maintain a fairly private life except that they are constantly meeting in secret with those

who publicly appear to have world power?

Do they tend to be found clustered in the same area? (Such as Europe or specific first world countries) or have they infested pretty much every region to some degree?

I can't imagine the princes of selfishness being willing to live without earthly luxury but maybe I'm mistaken? Maybe some live low-key lives to better hide themselves? **[They all live lives of luxury and depravity. The details I am permitted to share are in the book A Witness of the End of Times. PR]**

Books and movies about magic and witchcraft have become popular in the last decade or so. Are these items – the actual books and DVDs – demonically influenced items? And should we use our agency to remove them from our homes? Are they allowing demons some kind of “legal” access to our families and children? **[There has always been alluring tales of magic in our culture. Most are not evil in themselves, but if they become an idol in the heart they can become so. Our children should be fed the stories of scripture. Where your treasure is there shall your heart be also. PR]**

This secret combination is controlling us in many ways, so I wondered : chem-trail, the food industry, vaccination, human trafficking, Hollywood, and the pharmaceutical industry, are all these tentacles expanding out from this big band of children of perdition? **[I haven't asked about some of the things in that list, so I don't know. But there are plenty of insidious acts perpetrated by those who answer to Satan. PR]**

Preparations for War – Alma 48:1-25

1 And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.

[Today, the “towers” that are used are the news media, social media, academia, and all forms of entertainment.]

2 And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites. **[The desires of Amalickiah are a smaller version of the globalist leaders of today.]**

3 Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites. **[The act of stirring up people to anger against one another is how wars are made. It is caused through dividing by race, ideologies, political parties, religion, and more.]**

4 For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

5 And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.

6 And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness. **[A bold move to go toward the heart of the Nephite capital.]**

7 Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

8 Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land. **[Remnants of these mounds exist today.]**

9 And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites. **[America should also seek to reinforce its weakest points of entry into our country.]**

10 And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

[The Title of Liberty]

11 And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

12 Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

13 Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood. **[Many of the notable founders of America also had such attributes. Captain Moroni was a called and chosen warrior for his time. Such individuals are sent by God to do such a mission, even today.]**

14 Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives. **[Here, the BofM preaches against conscientious objection and refusal to raise arms in defense of one's country. In today's wars, in foreign lands, sometimes the lines can seem blurry.]**

15 And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

16 And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity. **[Imagine if this was the core belief of the United States military? It used to be.]**

17 Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

18 Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.

I asked if Captain Moroni was a prophet. He looked strong and had a noble air about him, a dark beard cut short. The Lord said that he was raised in the land of Gideon and greatly admired the stories of Gideon as a youth. He was a young man when his parents were killed in the battle with the Amalekites. He then devoted his life to fighting for the Nephites and defending their liberty and religion with all his heart. I asked the Lord, "Was Moroni a prophet?" The Lord said that he was, but not like unto Alma who preached the Gospel. Moroni was given revelation to assist him in his divinely appointed calling to defend the Nephite people. The Title of Liberty was a prophetic revelation given to Moroni. He was told what to say and write for this critical act that would unite the people. A prophet is one who speaks the words of God given to him from the Lord directly to the people. (personal journal)

19 Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hearken unto their words.

20 And thus they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, insomuch that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, yea, even for the space of four years.

21 But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nineteenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.

22 Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwithstanding their much reluctance.

23 Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, unprepared to meet their God.

24 Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented from their church, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

25 Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

Imagine a scenario where the country were to divide according to fundamental political beliefs and we have a new civil war. This occurred in 1861 between the Union armies of the north and the Confederate armies of the south. The death toll was close to 600,000 Americans. Today, America is poised to begin a similar conflict as political ideologies are divided much like the Nephites and Lamanites of the Book of Mormon. This war will be far more bloody than the Civil War; millions will die unless the country is again united in peace. But this war will not be the same, for it will involve many outside influences which will both destroy and protect according to the Lord's will. Much prophecy is yet to be fulfilled.

Questions and Answers

Vs 1: The truth is so beautifully plain and simple. Media uses TOWERS to broadcast to us. How do we not make these connections?

Is it because education has been deliberately dumbed down so we are not taught critical thinking skills? Or is it hidden in plain sight and can only be "seen" by revelation? **[An eternal truth: we see only what we desire to see. PR]**

Vs 15: If the people in this land keep the commandments of God, will He still warn them to flee?

The commandments to keep are those in the BoM, the Ten Commandments, the Beatitudes & what Christ taught to the Nephites? **[The commandments are all revelations we receive. Sometimes we are commanded to flee, as was the case of Lehi's family. We must trust in the Lord in these things. PR]**

[An eternal truth: we see only what we desire to see. PR

Years ago I asked in prayer as I was driving home from work why certain family members were choosing certain paths. immediately the answer came "we gravitate towards and validate the things we nurture to our soul." This phrase was repeated to me. I asked out loud what then should we nurture. The reply was "the two great commandments"

...and the second civil war was prophesied by Joseph Smith. Beginning in Chicago. Issues of race, and the devaluing of the dollar will be some of the reasons they will stir up to war.

Shield of Protection – Alma 49:1-30

1 And now it came to pass in the eleventh month **[the Spring]** of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

2 And behold, the city had been rebuilt **[previously completely destroyed by the Lamanites (Alma 16)]**, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city,

and they had cast up dirt round about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.

3 Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

4 But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

5 Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

6 Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

7 And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

8 But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

9 And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war. **[Thank you, Moroni.]**

10 Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

11 But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

12 Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

13 For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

14 But behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.

15 And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.

16 And behold, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon. **[Lehi, the son of the Nephite General Zoram.]**

17 And now behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.

18 Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

19 And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

20 Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

21 And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

22 Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

23 Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.

24 There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

25 And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.

26 And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.

27 Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.

I asked whether Amaleckiah was a son of Perdition. The Lord said he was not, but had been taught by dark spirits. He was deeply involved in the occult, and believed in dark rituals, which included the drinking of blood. (personal journal)

28 And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.

29 And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

30 Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God **[revelations given]**, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblon, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God **[authority from Heaven]**, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

This entire chapter focuses on how those who are led by revelation, such as Moroni and the Lord's anointed, are able to preserve the lives of the righteous against their enemies. The Lord, knowing the desires of the Lamanites under Amaleckiah's rule, forewarned the righteous that the Lamanites would come to battle.

How are we to view this chapter in our modern days? Can you think of how you can prepare for the difficult times that are yet to come? By seeking revelation from the Lord, you can be guided in how to best protect your family. It begins by having a relationship with God and learning to hear His voice. We exercise faith by seeking revelation and then acting upon it. You might be asked to do some unconventional things, but it may be the literal shield of protection that will save you and your family.

Questions and Answers

I'm in California, it's a little anxiety inducing to see these earthquakes going off. 12 to 16 to 24 inch wide fissures in the earth opening up for miles. I pray and I am not told either way about staying or going.

It's a bit unsettling but still I trust Him.

Vs 4: How high was the ridge of earth they threw up for defense? **[I have not been shown that. PR]**

Vs 30: The people give heed to the words of God, which are revelations, but they are delivered to the people through the righteous men listed.

Do you know what some of the revelations were? **[The idea to build the mounds was a direct revelation. PR]**

Couple questions- when Amalakah swore to drink Moroni's blood, it makes me stop and think that this must be some sick pattern that has existed since the beginning of this earth. These oaths were so foul yet so eerily profound. My stomach turns thinking that somehow planned parenthood is part of these current paths. Am I correct in this assumption? Also, these mounds. Are these Hopewell? Is this where Joseph found "Zelph?" I don't know much but again, this genealogy thing is leading me to ask A LOT of questions. Any direction would be helpful! **[The drinking of blood is a part of the dark oaths. The Hopewell were related to the BofM people. I don't know anything about Zelph. That was a revelation to Joseph Smith. PR]**

"Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood." I feel that Satan and his follower on both sides of the veil feel this way, this kind of hate, and just like Captain Moroni and his people we also need to be in direct connection with the Lord, so we can be prepared for the attacks, expected or unexpected, build forts, put on armors. The Lord wants us to be instruments in His hands to go rescue others, and protect our loved ones.

I see how comfortable we have gotten as a people. We pay no heed to much of the revelation about what is coming because we are too confident in our current circumstances being stronger, or better suited, then all those who have come before us. Many do not understand the need to "block" the onslaught of the adversary. Seeing how he attacks where we are weak, hoping to bring us into bondage, is so perfect for our modern day. So perfect for my life. But because of this "lulling" away from the reality of this world, we tend to never think the armies will come. Why build a wall when you can go see a movie? Why dig a ditch when you can engage in lustful pursuits, such as video games (Call of Duty, WarCraft, MineCraft, etc.), food (types of food that replace health with ease, no matter the cost, and are all one thinks about throughout the day), and pornography. We do need to turn inward and build up walls around our inner temple. We must dig ditches and protect our inner sanctum so that Yeshua sits on that throne, and no one else. That is protected inwardly so that when the outside comes crashing down, we have Shalom. We have Salvation in Him, no matter the mayhem that surrounds. I love all of you. God is good! MMR, we will pray for you.

This last week I was prompted to research a lot of the information on Book of Mormon Evidence and I came across some amazing discoveries by Rod Meldrum and his discoveries about the mounds and the Hopewell people... The dates match up in the Book of Mormon that are listed in this chapter to the sites that he found! And this has helped many people's testimony be strengthened or come back to the church! His website and YouTube videos have helped me in this regard and I pray that it will shed some light on some of the comments and questions in this chapter.

Fortify the Land – Alma 50:1-40

1 And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should

commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites. **[It is in times of peace that defenses should be strengthened. Peace has always been a fleeting security.]**

I wanted to understand the mounds which Moroni caused to be built by the Nephites to protect the people. I saw that the people took many months to dig deep trenches around their central city areas. They dug deep and piled up the earth over seven feet high, to protect the tallest man. The trenches would be dug out in front, which created an even higher wall of protection. They dug out from the ditch to make the wall appear around twelve feet high. The walls would slope slightly, which would prevent people from climbing them successfully. The dirt was plastered smooth, which was impossible for a man to cross on their own. After the Lamanites' first encounter with these fortifications, Moroni was inspired to give further reinforcement by adding timbers to the top, usually adding another 4 to 5 feet of height and allowed for easy access of soldiers to point their arrows and stones down upon the enemy. The mounds typically followed a circular route around the city. When danger was seen of an enemy approaching all the people living or working outside the mounds they would flock to the protection of the city. This is what I saw in the vision the Lord gave me. (Personal Journal)

2 And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

3 And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

4 And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

5 And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

6 Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land. **[Are American cities today strengthened against our enemies? Are our citizens protected against those who would do us harm? In most places, no.]**

7 And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla. **[These are the lands of Jershon and to the sea.]**

8 And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

9 And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

10 And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

11 And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla [**Nephite country**] and the land of Nephi [**Lamanite country**], from the west sea [**beginning with what is now Lake Superior**], running by the head of the river Sidon [**Where the Mississippi and the Ohio River meet**]**—**the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

12 Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

13 And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea [**near what is now Lake Ontario**]; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

14 And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephiah.

15 And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

16 And thus ended the twentieth year.

17 And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

18 And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

19 And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

20 Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land. But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. [**A popular saying amongst the Nephites.**]

21 And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrelings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

22 And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

23 But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

24 And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

25 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

26 For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

27 But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

28 And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

29 Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward. **[north of today's Great Lakes]**

30 And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

31 And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.

32 Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty. **[They had seen how different factions, such as the Zoramites, Amulonites, and Amlekites had done this previously. It was strategically important to maintain control of the northern country.]**

33 Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

34 And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east. **[Between Lake Michigan and Lake Huron and Erie, but it was a different topography, at that time, before Christ's coming.]**

35 And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Before Zion (the New Jerusalem) is established, you will see different American cities and areas divide up and choose to become their own sovereign lands. It will not last for most of them.

36 And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.

37 And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephiah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

38 Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his fathers to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

39 Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephiah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

40 Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

The time of Moroni is one of great war, but also of peace, as the land is fortified and the people are united.

It is interesting that people struggle to identify the Nephite lands of the Book of Mormon. The Book of Mormon descriptions made perfect sense to the Nephites, but we often assume things according to our own understanding.

Questions and Answers

Never before has any chapter affected me in the Book of Mormon as this just did. From names, locations, scenarios, I am once again in awe. The Law of ASKING and the blessing of RECEIVING further light and knowledge just shook me. Indeed, you truly are servant of the Lord who is inspired to share all these things. Can you elaborate more on Morianton? And why is there so much contention regarding locations in the BofM? I never studied scripture like I do now or even had a desire to know however it kinda just came to me like a blueprint. Is this another ploy from the adversary to divide? Or does the Lord want his people to just ask him to receive answers? Or does geography have a direct connection to our ancestors and posterity?? **[The details are left for you to ask the Lord. It seems that I am sharing many details, but not really. I do most of my sharing in regards to the doctrine. The geography is mostly important to those who would be descendants of these people. PR]**

“Before Zion, the New Jerusalem, is established, you will see different American cities and areas divide up and choose to become their own sovereign lands. It will not last for most of them.”

What causes the people to make such decisions?

Is it civil war or plague outbreak or something else that causes these secessions? **[In my book “A Witness of the End of Times” it lists the different events that will occur in our country. I don’t know which comes first, but it seemed to happen all at once. The civil unrest increases and at some point the country is attacked. The plague comes after the country has fallen and the divisions are made. I think they divide according to ideologies and for protection. Each will have their own reason. PR]**

“Are American cities today strengthened against our enemies? Are our citizens protected against those who would do us harm? In most places, no.”

America spends more on its military than the next seven countries combined. What is it that makes us not able to defend against our enemies? Is it possible that the enemies are within, the political corruption and secret combinations? We will see in the next few chapters that that is the case with the Nephites. the Kingsmen prevent the government from helping its own people. **[Yes, exactly. The gates are wide open. PR]**

PR, do you see the weakening of the nation from within before other countries have a chance to come in and take over? In your book, A Witness of the end of times, I believed you wrote that other countries come in disguise as peacekeepers. **[Our military is strong, but the country in many cases is led by wicked men who undermine its interests for power and wealth. The political turmoil in the country is opening a door of opportunity for the evil designs of our enemies. PR]**

Flee to Safety – Alma 51:1-37

1 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

2 Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

3 But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law. **[Having a single judge appointed by the people to make a final decision is better than a king, but it can seem to be constrictive to those who disagree with the judges’ decisions. In some ways the Nephites operated like having two branches of government: the executive and judicial were combined, with a legislature functioning as a lower branch for the people.]**

4 Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed. **[It appears that once a judge was appointed, it was a lifetime position, unless revoked by the voice of the people, much like US Supreme Court Justices today.]**

5 And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

The “king-men” were those who believed the power to make decisions should be delegated to those within a higher class among the people. In today’s society you might consider these the establishment elite, the lobbyists, and special interest groups who dictate much of our country’s policies. Frustrated with the limitations of their own “Nephite Constitution,” they desired to appoint a king who would sustain them in their purposes.

6 And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government. **[Freemen today are those who make an oath to sustain and protect the Constitution of the United States and abide by that oath.]**

7 And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. **[voted]** And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

8 Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people. **[mostly the wealthy and those of prominent families]**

9 But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

There is a similar dynamic in the United States today, as different factions seek to undermine America’s sovereignty in favor of their personal ideologies and agenda. Do you see what is happening?

10 But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites. **[Who are the “Amalickiahs” of today?]**

11 Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

12 Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

Although the years that are recorded in the record regarding these wars and secret combinations leading up to the coming of Christ are critical, they only show a pattern for us in what will also come upon this nation.

13 And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country. **[In America, today, there are many different factions with various agendas. Some desire to take advantage of these sovereign nations for their personal benefit, and others hope to weaken the United States for their own political ideologies. Any person who fights for preferred rights and privileges of groups over that of the individual, follows the path of a modern day king-man.]**

14 And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.

15 And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death. **[Moroni sought the authority to end the rebellion for the sake of the Nephite's safety, because of the imminent threat of the Lamanites.]**

16 For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.

17 And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

18 And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.

Could such a thing occur today? It would require that a majority of Americans were willing to begin a Civil War against the elite establishment and those who support anti-American ideologies. As things are now, the percentage of American votes required to take such measures do not exist. But, America will be brought to its knees because of its wickedness according to the prophecies of both ancient and modern prophets.

19 And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.

20 And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.

21 And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.

Something to this effect occurred when America won its independence from Britain.

22 Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore. **[Near today's southern part of Lake Ontario.]**

23 And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications. **[It was a relatively new city, not yet sufficiently fortified.]**

I saw a little of the battle of Amalickiah's army with the Nephites in the city of Moroni. The people had not yet fully built their fortifications. The Lamanite army planned to overwhelm the mounds by attacking at its weakest point in the early morning hours. They traveled swiftly and had the means to ramp over the wall before enough resistance could be gathered by the Nephites. They overwhelmed the city with their numbers and the people fled as quickly as possible. Amaleckiah's army followed the same strategy until they were met by Teancum's highly trained army at the borders of the land of Bountiful. (personal journal)

24 And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephihah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

25 But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephihah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

26 And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephihah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

27 And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

28 And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many. **[Current area of the state of Michigan.]**

29 But it came to pass that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

30 And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

31 But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, insomuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

32 And it came to pass that they did harass them, insomuch that they did slay them even until it was dark. And it came to pass that Teancum and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the seashore, and after this manner were they driven.

33 And it came to pass that when the night had come, Teancum and his servant stole forth and went out by night, and went into the camp of Amalickiah; and behold, sleep had overpowered them because of their much fatigue, which was caused by the labors and heat of the day.

34 And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king immediately that he did not awake his servants.

35 And he returned again privily to his own camp, and behold, his men were asleep, and he awoke them and told them all the things that he had done.

36 And he caused that his armies should stand in readiness, lest the Lamanites had awakened and should come upon them.

37 And thus endeth the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus endeth the days of Amalickiah.

Teancum was the bravest amongst all his men, and the chosen leader to defend the most strategic parts of the Nephite lands. Why was Amalickiah successful in taking the cities along the eastern parts of the Nephite lands? The Lord allowed these Lamanites to successfully take these cities because the people were fleeing toward the land Bountiful and a central gathering was taking place.

As the wicked and the righteous become more pronounced there will be a fleeing to areas of safety within the United States and abroad. Such will occur before the establishment of Zion. Be sure that you are able to hear the Lord's voice of revelation when this time comes. There will be many saying "Follow me to safety!" Be careful who you follow.

Questions and Answers

"As the wicked and the righteous become more pronounced there will be a fleeing to areas of safety within the United States and abroad. Such will occur before the establishment of Zion."

Can it be assumed that the Lord will have the people fleeing in the general direction of First Zion, which will be established in the Everlasting Hills?

Or will we be surprised by where we must initially flee to?

Will there be angels and servants among those fleeing to help and continue teaching?

[In America many will flee for the general direction of the Rocky Mountains at first. In other parts of the world people will seek safety and be led to particular areas. First Zion will not be widely known at first. There will be

various outposts of Servants gathering. After a while more will seek refuge, but the big gathering will come when the New Jerusalem is established in the central US region around Missouri. Where you are required to flee to will be different for each. Some may be told to stay where they are. The key is to stand in holy places -that which is consecrated by the Spirit of God which is in you. PR]

This chapter is so close to what we have happening in the United States today that it makes me realize that Mormon and Moroni really did see our day. Today we haven't as yet gotten to the point of total rebellion but it seems frightfully close. It seems to me that if and when the bubble finally bursts the end result will be a bit different. The day of the Gentile will be over and this country, as we know it, will no longer exist. Instead of saving the country we will gather to Zion or places of refuge.

How do you see the role of a Captain Moroni being played out in our day. I get that there will be very brave men like Lehi and Teancum but Captain Moroni saved his country. If our country is lost I still imagine a mighty man lifting our hearts demonstrating that not all is lost and that the Lord still reigneth. I know you have talked about the two great servants that will come but I have never thought of Captain Moroni as a great holy man as much as he was a man of great love for God and his country and yet was as great as the holy prophets. Do you see that kind of a man playing a role in our day? **[I see George Washington as a kind of Captain Moroni, but in our day he would have to be a warrior prophet. Such may be the case for the Joseph Servant that will be a descendant of Lehi who will lead the remnant of Jacob. Just a wild guess. PR]**

When people first begin gathering in First Zion (where the Hill Shim is), how will most of them know where it is? **[The Lord will lead those there that need to be there. Some will come by invitation. It won't be the only place of safety. PR]**

I added journal notes to chapter 48, 49, 50, and 51. These are what the Lord showed me when I asked some specific questions. Any time I add notes like this they are from my experiences standing with the Lord. I would ask my questions and both hear and see as my answers were revealed. As with everything I write, pray for your own confirmation.PR

Many groups are advocating for their rights. Some of these groups are diametrically opposed to the laws of God. Moroni dealt with the King Men with executions. I don't see that likely happening in our society today, it doesn't fit how we do things. I have felt prompted to be more vocal among some of these groups this past year and so I have done so in calling them out on their hypocrisy. erbal resistance and accusatory backlash is all I have met ... which is fine. There seems to be more I can do but it's not coming to me. ther than standing on a street corner with a big red X on my forehead in opposition, what else... is there anything else to do that is more effective right now? Or is it not time to do anything more substantial? (TO BE CLEAR: I'm not advocating or talking about or suggesting violence haha) **[First thing to do is to pray and seek personal revelation. Each of us has our own talents and circle of influence. If the Lord "anoints" you to do a work, then He will back you. Part of what is**

happening in our country is an orchestrated process and design to sift the wheat from the tares. PR]

Enemy Occupation – Mark of the Beast – Alma

52:1-40

1 And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day.

2 And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward, and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought protection in their fortifications.

3 And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron, the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

4 And it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood; for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

5 And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should attempt to attack them in their forts.

6 But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war; yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.

7 And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.

8 And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

9 And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side. **[It is no longer a narrow pass today because of the land changing after the destruction following Christ's resurrection.]**

10 And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

11 And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.

12 Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.

13 And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power, according to the power of their armies.

14 And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. **[It is amazing to me that within the short period of just 26 years the Lamanites would gain such an advantage over the Nephites.]**

15 But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they had lost—

16 And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

17 And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army. **[To take the city it would require two things: The willingness to sacrifice at least 50% of the lives of his men (as the Lamanites had done to take the city), and the element of surprise, which they didn't have.]**

18 And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

19 And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

20 And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains.

21 And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

22 Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

23 And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

24 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

25 And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

26 And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.

27 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.

28 And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.

29 Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.

30 Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.

31 And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand, and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

32 And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

33 And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

34 Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

35 And it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

36 And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whither to go or to strike.

37 Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

38 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had heard these words, their chief captains, all those who were not slain, came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also commanded their men that they should do the same.
39 But behold, there were many that would not; and those who would not deliver up their swords were taken and bound, and their weapons of war were taken from them, and they were compelled to march with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.
40 And now the number of prisoners who were taken exceeded more than the number of those who had been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain on both sides.

This chapter is interesting to me because it focuses solely on battle stratagem. There is no spiritual discourse, so why is it included in the Book of Mormon? There are countless battles that were fought that never were abridged into the book.

From a military standpoint, the story shows how Moroni was able to strategize the means to free the city of Mulek. I don't believe anything is in the Book of Mormon by coincidence. What is the message to us today? Will there come a day when a similar stratagem will be used to free a people in bondage? Will there be a need to exchange prisoners? There is also the fact that Mormon did not see these stories divided by chapters, so chapter 52 is connected to the narrative of both the preceding and following chapters. We see that the Nephites are becoming more and more hedged up to a single area of safety, and their lands are shrinking because of their enemies' control over them. Before Christ comes the geographical areas of safety will become more hedged in for us as well.

As it says in the book of Revelation, "That as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed. And he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or their foreheads: And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name." (Revelation 13: 15-17) This is not what most assume it to be.

Questions and Answers

As it says in the book of Revelation, "That as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed. And he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or their foreheads: And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name." Revelation 13: 15-17 This is not what most assume it to be.

I presume this to be an rfid chip implanted into either the hand or the forehead. Is that the physical manifestation of what the scripture describes or is it a spiritual mark? Are you able to share what the mark, name, and number really means and what it is supposed to be?

Thank you for sharing your own personal revelation.

[There is both a physical and spiritual manifestation of the mark, but it is not an RFID chip or some other imposed mark as speculated. The mark is

upon our very DNA. The Lord has a mark upon his children as well. It comes when we receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. This changes our very DNA and is qualified on both a physical and spiritual level. Those who “worship” or pay allegiance to the Adversary, the gratifications of the flesh, and the ideologies of the carnal man, which include all forms of subjugation, are subject to the buffetings of Satan. In the last days, if one does not conform to the kingdom of the beast it will reach a point where they cannot buy or sell in that society. They will be persecuted even unto death. To be 2nd estate is to carry the mark of the beast. To be third estate is to carry the mark of God. PR]

Vs 9: I know the narrow pass ran between the Great Lakes. Is it the strip between Lake Huron & Erie on our maps today that used to be the narrow neck? **[It was narrower then and there was a pass. Much has changed around that area. PR]**

When we flee to places of safety, will we live more agrarian type lifestyles? Is this why many feel inspired to learn the old, useful skills of gardening, cooking from scratch, food preservation, etc? **[It will be industrious, and agrarian. It will be an adjustment for many. PR]**

I'm noticing the order these chapters go in and the short summary titles used:

Preparations for War

Fortify the Land

Flee to Safety

Enemy Occupation

Is this order of ancient events a clue to us in our day, since history often repeats itself? **[That I don't know, as far as future wars; however, it does follow a pattern in which we battle the adversary spiritually. PR]**

The number of his name, 666. Can you please give some insights on this? **[When I asked the Lord, I was told it meant “telestial.” How the number 666 computes to that I have no idea. PR]**

Will some followers of Christ [those who have received the gift of the Holy Ghost and do not have the mark of the Beast] be charged with the mission of fighting against foreign armies that invade our land? In other words, is fighting in the battles/wars that will occur in our homeland setting the individual up for spiritual failure, or are some called to fill those positions to fight for righteousness?

Or have those who have received the HG transcended beyond the nature of violence that will occur and simply be Gatherers or be helpers in other non-violent ways? **[There will be future “Captain Moroni’s,” but most of the protection and battles will be fought like how Enoch defended Zion. PR]**

I love S. Silver's question regarding the pattern of battle, could you expound a little on the pattern in which we battle the adversary spiritually? My awareness of the adversary is awakening and just when I think I am making progress I get hit from a different angle. I am not a very good “warrior” yet and I would love some insights for how to anticipate

spiritual enemy attacks and better tactics for battle. Thank you for these posts, they have helped strengthen my relationship with the Lord. **[That is a broad question, but a good one. I would review what is written in the “Adversary” category on the website. I have experienced a wide range of things while contending with the dark realm, but the Lord didn’t want me to write a book on that. He wants you to step into the dark and trust in Him. The key to this part of a servant’s training is to learn to “Trust in the Lord.” As the scripture says, “Perfect love (for the Lord) casteth out all fear.” As you allow the Lord to dictate what is allowed to happen and you lean on Him to know how to proceed at each moment, you will learn about revelation and the power of priesthood more than most any other way. This is how Jesus Himself spent most of His forty days in the wilderness. This is my advice. PR]**

Is this scripture likened unto Enoch’s Zion? And what does “falling upon their neck” mean in a literal sense? **[To embrace. PR]**

Your books have been my Liahona in searching, pondering, praying and asking. Just love you PR

Revelations 14:1 “And I looked, and, lo, a Lamb stood on the mount Sion, and with him an hundred forty and four thousand, having his Father’s name written in their foreheads. **[I am likening these circumstances in terms of gathering to what will occur before Zion, yes. PR]**

Thank you so much for sharing your understanding. It is so enlightening and helpful! I was wondering if the time referred to in the above, (Those who “worship” or pay allegiance to the Adversary, the gratifications of the flesh, the ideologies of the carnal man, which include all forms of subjugation, are subject to the buffetings of Satan. In the last days, if one does not conform to the kingdom of the beast it will reach a point where they cannot buy or sell in that society. They will be persecuted even unto death.) has already started with those who boycott certain items because of the production methods and how workers and animals are subjugated? **[I was specifically referring to the subjugation of people by limiting their freedom. Cruelty to people and animals in all forms is a part of this world we live in. When people are forced to participate in such a society, that is subjugation. It hasn’t quite reached that level in its fullness in America today like it is in other parts of the world. PR]**

Do you think it will reach a fullness in America (the faithful will not be able to buy and sell and will be persecuted even unto death) before we are given the opportunity to retreat to places of refuge? **[When the Kingdom of the Beast is fully established America as we know it will not exist. PR]**

Will Christians be persecuted before we flee to places of refuge?

It seems to me that the United States goes through a period of judgement first, before the rise of the beast and before the world-wide tribulation. That it gets bad here in the states first and we have to flee when we are invaded. But I’ve heard that Christians are going to be persecuted even before we are invaded. Is that true? That Christians in the US are going to be persecuted before the full invasion by Russia & China? **[They are**

persecuted now, but if you mean like they are in the Middle East, not until the country collapses and only in certain areas of the country. This is my understanding from what I have seen. PR]

Do you believe that events will transpire as you and others have seen, or do you believe that you have seen one possibility, and the events, sequence and timing may change depending on choices made by us all? **[I have never offered a “timing” to what I have seen. The Lord has told me to focus on the events. I was never given the instruction that what I saw were only possibilities. PR]**

Stripling Warriors – Alma 53:1-23

1 And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea, and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors. **[This would be a very sobering task to be compelled to bury your own people who had been slain by your captors.]**

2 And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi. **[Moroni and Lehi had been friends for over fifteen years, having fought side by side in battle. They were highly respected by the Nephites for their leadership and sacrifices.]**

3 And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

4 And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height. **[Like a retaining wall with a sloping dirt facade.]**

5 And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

6 And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nephi; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

7 And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications

to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

8 And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue **[inappropriate actions of leaders]** amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

9 And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

10 And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who, in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla **[the words to denote the land of the Nephites]**, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

11 And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.

12 And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.

13 But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.

14 But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.

15 And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.

16 But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.

17 And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage. **[This is the covenant all soldiers made when they joined the defense of the Nephite lands.]**

18 Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.

19 And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.

20 And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted. **[Such qualities were highly**

rated amongst the Nephites and were noted as prominent amongst the sons of the people of Ammon.]

21 Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him. **["Soberness" is to treat with seriousness that which you are entrusted, typically speaking of spiritual matters.]**

22 And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling **[young]** soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.

23 And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Unlike the rest of the Nephite population where young men learned to use the weapons of war from a young age, competing in games for glory, the children of the people of Ammon (the stripling warriors) had no such background. Their focus was upon their strength and courage in all things, often volunteering to do things very dangerous for the protection of their people. There are some things I need to ask the Lord...

Questions and Answers

Vs 7: It seems Moroni had the people busy making preparations to withstand war and had people actively working to plant & grow the food needed, since some lands, including growing lands and their crops, had been lost which could bring the threat of famine if there was not this big push for work being done. (Is this accurate in what you saw?)

All of this seems like a good idea to do any time there is approaching trouble, like with what we have been warned is coming. My husband doesn't mind me actually gardening and growing food but he is bored or moody when it comes to talk of spiritual things.

What can I do to spiritually fortify my home on my own? **[My best advice is to follow the Spirit and receive personal revelation. The needs for each individual are not the same. PR]**

Hang in there! I can relate but the good news is we have been led here and are blessed to receive counsel from other priesthood holders and FRIENDS. The Lord is so amazingly merciful!

Political Vengeance – Alma 54:1-24

1 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

2 And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

3 Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, [**The only reason for them to take women and children captive is to use as forced labor or for trading prisoners in the future.**] and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.

4 Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:

5 Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

6 Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

7 Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

8 But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

9 And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

10 But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

11 But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

12 And behold, if ye do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

13 Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

Who will be the next great Moroni of our time? It will be the rise of the Joseph Servant who will help to cleanse this land of the depravity which will exist after the collapse of the United States; however, he will be more than a general of an army, for he will also be the leader who will gather the New Jerusalem. 2 Nephi 3:9-11, 3 Nephi 21

14 Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.

15 Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:

16 I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

17 For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

Across the world today is a movement to fundamentally change the ideologies of people, nations, and religious institutions. This insidious movement is driven by political vengeance, where if you do not conform to the subjugation of these people you will be stripped of your rights, liberties, and branded as a hater and a menace to society. It has grown across Europe, and other parts of the world, and now is digging in its heels in the United States. It is still in its infant stages, but will fill the earth with death, slavery, and destruction before Christ comes.

18 And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more. **[This is the promise of those who would subjugate the righteous; however, the cost is great, for if you do not convert to their ideologies you will be destroyed.]**

19 Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.

20 Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction. **[This is the ultimate plan of the Adversary in this world. He wishes to annihilate all Christians and Jews in the last days. This will come about through the Kingdom of the Beast, the AntiChrist and the False Prophet. They are amongst us now, but shall gain prominence and power in the coming years.]**

21 And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a being, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

22 And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.

23 I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem. **[Zoram was a good friend of Nephi; yet to his descendants who rebelled, Nephi is remembered as a tyrant.]**

24 And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; **[The term “Lamanite” by this time had a distinction beyond simple blood lines. It identified a political class that hated the Nephites.]** behold, this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs, and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the government; and I close my epistle to Moroni.

The day will come when people who are citizens of the United States will no longer identify themselves as Americans because of what they consider are wrongs perpetrated by previous leaders upon them. Our country will divide in a manner similar to the Nephites and Lamanites, but more segmented. And then the blood and carnage upon this land shall be like it has never been seen in our history. The catalyst for this war will begin here, but it escalates from outside sources.

Questions and Answers

Vs 13: Is Moroni invoking the law the Lord has taught them that if they were not guilty of the first offense, neither the second that they could kill the person(s) trying to murder them? It seems clear the Lamanites are wanting to murder to gain lands, resources and control/power over the Nephites and the entire land mass. Is this the true definition of murder – to kill so that you get some gain? **[Murder is on an individual level. Moroni was defending his people in a state of war. The Lord judges the heart, so if we are defending ourselves or our family the Lord will judge one based on their heart's intent. PR]**

Vs 21: Were the Lamanites atheist by this time? **[They were everything except followers of Christ. Many variations of beliefs depending upon familial heritage. PR]**

Following in “A Witness of the End Times”:

“I was told Shassafat is the Anti-Christ. This is the first time this has been shown to me. He would gain more power after he appears to be weakened. Galem is the False Prophet and Baashabu will be the Beast that leads that Kingdom for a while. These men are all Sons of Perdition and there are thousands of Sons of Perdition who have and are walking this earth.”

Is there anything more you can add to the record regarding the kingdom of the beast, the anti-Christ, and the false prophet? Do they work together or are they separate actors? Where are they from? Etc. Thanks! **[I am only permitted to say what was included in the book. But those who seek personal revelation will know who they are when the Lord wants them to know. PR]**

I keep wondering why it has been prophesied that this dispensation will be the only one where good triumphs over evil, yet how can this be accomplished if this country falls, as well as other nations that will be run by evil leaders? How can the righteous be destroyed because of their faith in Jesus Christ and yet good triumphs? The tribulation is foretold to be so hideous I don't see how there's much hope for most of us. It looks beyond bleak. It looks....well.....hopeless. Why would a loving Savior allow this country to be destroyed when there are millions of faithful Christians, as well as millions of good people from other belief systems still remaining true and faithful to their faiths?? Why aren't the good people enough to preserve the liberties we strive to protect and live by? If the triumph is because Christ returns to stop the carnage it sounds to me like it won't be the good people who triumph at all—it will be God who has the victory. I feel nothing but despair when I look ahead, especially for my children and grandchildren. And why

are sons of perdition allowed to run amok over the good in the world? And why does the gate of hell open to unleash more evil?? Don't we have enough to deal with already? What kind of plan IS this? — it's certainly not one of happiness. **[The scenario for what will happen in America has happened throughout history. I'm reminded of Lehi's family and what befell the Jews in Jerusalem. There were still good people living in Jerusalem at the time of the Babylonian attack. Only a remnant survived. Only a few were led out of the city like Lehi and his caravan. Currently, the United States is ripening in iniquity, but at the same time the righteous are ripening in their knowledge of the Lord. We must trust in Him, despite the hardships. The way God works among us is clearly made visible in the Book of Mormon. We must be faithful and trust in Him. We must also trust that He is a just and merciful God. Many worry about the fate of their children, extended family, and friends. The "Plan of Happiness" is the Everlasting Covenant, which extends far beyond this life. There is much to be joyful about, yet at this time it is best to seek a relationship with the Lord and know how to receive personal revelation to help us for what will come. Do not despair, that is what the adversary wants us to do. The gathering of the Elect will be a joyous triumph before the coming of the Lord. PR]**

You mention that across the world today is a movement to fundamentally change the ideologies of people, nations, and religious institutions. I am trying to understand this more fully. In the Western world we typically think this is Islamic in nature. Christians often seem to blindly support the Jews and Israel. However, I tend to believe that there is a more hidden conspiracy that has infiltrated Islamic, Christian and Jewish religions all together... With time, it appears to me that there is a very evil and insidious force behind the political Jewry (particularly sects like Chabad Lubavitch). It seems this sect has members who are some of the richest and most powerful in the world, which run whole industries – such as large portions of Hollywood and other businesses, with very very powerful political allies and lobbies (such as the ADL)... Could it be that these cult-like sects are trying to destroy Judaism from within? Could it be that these sects will ultimately be the influence which will provoke the Islamic Kingdom of the Beast to destroy Jerusalem and millions of Jews? Is there a Satanic coordination behind the scenes which runs this great secret combination through infiltration of world Jewry, Christian megachurches, and much of the Islamic world? **[You have touched on many things that are considered conspiratorial to the world, yet in essence are true. Most of what we think we understand is only scratching the surface of the truth. Most of what I can say on the matter is in the book "A Witness of the End of Times. PR]**

Vanquish the Enemy – Alma 55:1-35

1 Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that

Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

2 And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.

These chapters remind me of how the United States exchanges prisoners with countries who are not friendly with us. We have even exchanged known terrorists for the exchange of Americans held prisoner, often for the political value and how it is viewed by the American people. To return a terrorist is to surely allow them to fight again and take an unknown number of lives.

3 Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

4 And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them. **[dark skinned Nephite]**

5 And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah. **[Joseph Smith surely translated this because Laman is the most coincidental obvious name for this man. But it was common amongst the Lamanites.]**

6 Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

7 Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.

8 And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their wine and brought with us.

9 Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.

10 But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

11 For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites. **[Wine was considered a healthy drink to help strengthen the body for these people. They knew that in excess it would dull the mind, but it was considered a celebratory drink as well. The Nephites also viewed wine in the same manner. It was taught to only take in moderation.]**

12 And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

13 And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its

strength. **[There were many different ways to prepare wine. Some have hardly any alcohol content. In this case, the alcohol content was much.]**

14 And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

15 And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

16 And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, insomuch that they were all armed; **[This is an amazing thing to consider... weapons of war being thrown over the walls to the prisoners.]**

17 Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence. **[All Nephites were taught from their youth to fight with a sword as well as other weapons.]**

18 But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.

19 But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.

20 But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.

21 And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.

22 Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.

23 And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.

24 Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.

25 And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

26 And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.

27 And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues **[trickery]** of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.

28 And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

29 Many times did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.

30 And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

31 But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners. **[Wine is one of the easier drinks to mask the taste of poison.]**

32 And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.

33 And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.

34 And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.

35 And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

In this day of modern warfare, where missiles and attacks are more likely than hand to hand combat, the last days seem like a vulnerable time to consider. However, when the Gatherers go forth they will do things that will leave the enemy completely overcome with defeat. I look forward to witnessing the realization of what I have seen.

Questions and Answers

PR, are you allowed to tell us stories about what you have seen?

I have told a couple of your experiences to my son, in the hopes that if anything ever happened to me, he would remember stories of servants who literally and physically come to help during times of need when people pray and ask the Lord to help them. Stories stick so well in our mind and seem to be easily recalled in times of need. They may be nothing but borrowed light but sometimes we only need a little spark to remind us to ask God for help! **[I have included many of my experiences in the Witness books. I am not permitted to share much, but the Lord will tell the best stories of all! PR]**

Our Mothers Knew It – Alma 56:1-57

1 And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle **[official letter]** from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land.

2 And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land.

3 Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi—now ye have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father Lehi;

4 Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concerning all these things—

5 Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

6 And now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren to shed blood. **[Their parents were the Anti-Nephi-Lehies and descendants of Laman.]**

7 But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.

8 But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.

9 But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.

10 And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

11 Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy. **[The state of those who die defending their country and God.]**

12 And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

13 And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

14 The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

15 And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

16 Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.

17 And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.

18 And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.

19 And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but thus were we preserved. **[Through just their presence, the Lamanites withheld attacking the fatigued army of Antipus.]**

20 They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.

21 Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.

22 And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.

23 For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but behold, we were disappointed in this our desire.

24 They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.

25 Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.

26 And thus, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.

27 And now it came to pass in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the fathers of those my two thousand sons.

28 And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.

29 And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth **[to step out confidently]**, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.

30 Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.

31 And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

32 And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.

33 And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.

34 And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.

35 And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.

36 And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;

37 Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

38 And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

39 And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.

40 Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

41 And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

42 But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.

43 And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;

44 Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?

45 And now I say unto you, my beloved brother Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.

46 For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus. **[These are young men, of high school age, who are willing to go to battle and give their lives to protect their Nephite brethren.]**

47 Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them. **[This is a beautiful scripture for two reasons: it is a tribute to the faith of their mothers, who taught them and prepared them to be faithful to the Lord. The second is the principle that if they do not doubt God would deliver them.]**

How can we apply this principle? It is a part of the natural man to doubt what we cannot see. Unless we have evidence that our efforts will yield fruit we may not attempt to even try, whether it be a career, a relationship, a goal, our health, finances, and anything in our life! Even more difficult is to attempt to develop the gifts of the Spirit, to come to the Lord when so few have seemingly had success. Do you doubt? Will God deliver you? To “deliver” is to be given something. When you seek revelation, God will guide

you to go and do what is required to be delivered. This is the definition of great faith.

48 And they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew it. **[We do not doubt because our mothers' knew from experience and we believe them!]**

These young men were mostly between the ages of 15 and 18 years old. Their faces were youthful, but they were athletic looking. The one's I saw in armor had a look of great desire. Their eyes were determined and hopeful. They were identified to the Nephites by their armor, but also, they had a white paint swash either over their foreheads, bandannas, or head armor. The armor is mostly leather, like the Nephites.

Another interesting thing I saw was most every one of these young men wore a textile attached to their waste. Either an embroidery or weaving gift of some kind that reminded them of their mothers, their heritage, and family. They held it with their hand as they expressed their courage to Helaman and each other.

The Lord showed me that there was a yearly celebration for remembrance amongst the people of Ammon, as they rehearsed the great miracles of their deliverance from the Lamanites who were set upon their destruction. They saw themselves in some ways like the Israelites fleeing Pharaoh. One particular miracle happened as they fled northward, the Lamanites pursuing them. The men hoped to divert the pursuing army by heading a different direction and the women and children attempted to hide themselves. The armies were not fooled and were about to come upon the women and children. They prayed mightily to God and a flood came, separating the Lamanites and prevented them from reaching them. Every year the Mothers would tell the story of their deliverance from their enemies by the God of Heaven. (from my personal journal)

49 And it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

50 The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.

51 For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.

52 And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

53 Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

54 And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

55 And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.

56 But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

What is remarkable about this verse is not only had the two thousand young men all survived, but that they fought with greatness. They were not schooled in the art of war. They had no special tricks or battle finesse. The Lord blessed them with strength and aptitude to rise to the moment. This is what He can do for us when His power is given. There is nothing that we cannot accomplish when God's hand is upon us!

57 And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling [young] Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.

This chapter rehearses much of the details regarding what led to a significant battle where the children of the Ammonites fight on behalf of the Nephites for the first time. It speaks to the power of faith and the power of how a mother can mold the faith of her children. What is the greatest quality a parent can instill in their children? How is it done? These Ammonite mothers had been through much, and experienced great events where they witnessed the intervention of God on their behalf. They shared these stories with their sons and reminded them continually of how God would always deliver them if they were faithful. This is a beautiful lesson to be included in the Book of Mormon!

Questions and Answers

I'm in tears.....I think of 2 words. MotherHOOD and PriestHOOD.....THESE COVERING VEILS OF PROTECTION that bless and protect through pure Faith. Beautiful

After receiving the prompting to home school my son years ago, I prayed to ask if it was right and good to do. One answer I got was "the Stripling Warriors were home

schooled”, which seemed to be true from what I could find in scripture. Is it true that the Stripling Warriors were educated at home and through apprenticeships as opposed to “public” schools? **[They did have some schools like we do today, but more like what existed in ancient Israel. Mentorships were common for different types of schooling; however, much was taught at home. PR]**

As I read about the sons of Helaman I can't help but think about the Gatherers and the Builders of the New Jerusalem as well. Makes me wonder about connections to them that may exist, whether in the terms of 4th estate spirits and/or through blood lines.

Thank you for taking the time to pray and receive these tremendous insights concerning the “children of Ammonites. “It’s one of my favorite stories in the Book of Mormon! It is so inspirational and relevant to our time and in what we can accomplish if we trust in the Lord.

Law of the Last Second – Alma 57:1-36

Sometimes as I read these long passages about the wars and stratagem of these people I wonder, “What is the Lord trying to teach us from all of this?” I am always astonished at how each chapter has a unique series of thoughts that the Lord reveals. Every portion of the Book of Mormon teaches something new.

1 And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.

2 But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.

3 And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.

4 But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.

5 And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

6 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.

7 And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.

8 And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions. **[The degree of stratagem used to fight, between the Nephites and Lamanites, is impressive. The Lamanites certainly had their successes too.]**

9 And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

10 At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

11 And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

12 And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni.

13 But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

14 For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, insomuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

15 Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

16 And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless, we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla.

17 But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now behold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.

18 And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

19 But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

20 And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.

21 Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did

remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them. **[Helaman was incredibly impressed with the valor and faith of these young men. Twice he has mentioned, in the record, that their mothers had taught them.]**

22 And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.

23 And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

24 And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

25 And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds. **[Often as we read over this, we forget that these young men did receive terrible wounds during battle, yet survived. Those who have faith and believe will still stumble and have suffering, but if they are faithful the Lord will see them through the battle.]**

26 And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

This is a good place to mention a particular principle that the Lord has taught me. It is called the “Law of the Last Second.” When the Lord makes a promise, He always keeps it, yet our faith is often required to persevere beyond what we consider to be impossible odds. There will be times we feel that the Lord has not kept His promises, yet we endure. You must not doubt when the Lord has promised you something.

I remember in the past receiving specific priesthood blessings. I would write them down and date them. I would remind the Lord what was said in my private prayers. Years went by and still the blessing had not been realized. Finally, after I had become numb to it and simply trusted in the Lord’s timing I saw the exact realization of the blessing. And that has occurred many times in my life, so now I have learned to expect it. It is important to have a confirmation beforehand to know it is indeed from the Lord, but then we “trust in Him,” that all will be made manifest.

Another principle that is closely aligned to the previous principle is another called “The Law of Asking.” Most blessings require us to officially “ask” the Lord, to petition Him for that which we desire. If we ask in faith (seeking revelation and acting upon it, *Moroni 7:26*) without wavering (not doubting) God will grant it unto us if it is His will. (James 1:5-6) Do not be

afraid to ask God in all things that He may bless you, and be prepared to endure in faith, even until the last second.

27 Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.

28 And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who were many, behold, we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had started to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

29 Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.

30 And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

31 And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.

32 And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.

33 And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.

34 And behold, when they had fled and we could not overtake them, we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the city.

35 And behold, we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done this great thing for us. **[Moroni and Helaman had received priesthood blessings and promises during their stewardships of these wars. What do you think was promised to them? That if they were faithful and trusted in the Lord, then they would have success in leading their people to safety. Of course many would die, but the Lord would help them. What does this cause you to think in regards to your own life? Do you trust in the Lord?]**

36 Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.

Questions and Answers

PR, thank you! I had a cool revelation while reading the notes you wrote after verse 26 about Faith. I had asked months ago if the definition of faith that you gave (seeking for revelation and then acting upon it) was true. I believed and highly suspected it was true but we are still supposed to ask and get our own witness.

Months ago I sprinkled somehow-expired fertilizer on some cherry tomato plants, which nearly killed them within 24 hours. I prayed for the Lord to spare them, lest I lose my

efforts of growing them from seed. I had the tiniest thought to water them heavily, diluting the fertilizer and flushing it away from the roots, which I did. There was nothing else I could do. I prayed for them to be spared more than once every day until it was clear the plants would live. As I read what you wrote, the Lord took that experience and in that instant download, flash-burst kind of way taught me about faith. Your definition is truth. Faith is taking the deliberate step of asking God with the intent to act. It is not lazily wishing and hoping, acting as if God was a wishing well or a genie. It is the act of doing some action. It is asking for help and looking for the thoughts/revelations that distill on our minds to then follow by doing the action revealed. (Even if that action is “be still”.) This is the “works” that make faith alive. I get it now!

Remember to Trust – Alma 58:1-41

The words of Helaman to Moroni, a continuation of the former chapter:

1 And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

2 And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

3 Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

4 And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.

5 But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.

6 And the Lamanites were sallying forth [**stepping out without fear**] against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.

7 And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

8 But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.

9 And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction. [**Why would their country not do more to provide for their needs to protect themselves?**]

10 Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people. **[The Nephites were a praying army. This is hardly seen today, and it is even prohibited in formal US military settings.]**

11 Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him. **[Personal revelation gave them comfort and at times knowledge of their fate.]**

12 And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty. **[They carried the Title of Liberty with them.]**

13 And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

14 And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.

15 And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.

16 And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

17 Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.

18 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

19 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, insomuch that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

20 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

21 And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

22 Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness. **[Another example of stratagem to win battles.]**

23 And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And it came to pass that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.

24 And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which they had come.

25 And behold, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti.

26 Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

27 And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

28 And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood.

29 And it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.

30 Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land. But behold, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.

31 And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.

32 But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.

33 But behold, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own. **[“Trust in the Lord” the most important advice of the Noble and Great Ones.]**

34 Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.

35 Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.

36 And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent. **[At this point, the Spirit is whispering to Helaman that something was amiss; that those who do not support liberty were withholding support for his armies.]**

37 But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

38 Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi. **[south]**
39 And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord has supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain. **[Another witness to the miracle of their preservation.]**

40 But behold, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come. **[Do you remember the Lord from day to day? What does that look like? To allow your prayers and thoughts to continually rest upon the things of the Spirit. Where your thoughts are, there will your faith reside.]**

41 And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and may he favor this people, even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our support. And now, behold, I close mine epistle. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

It is interesting to think that while all this is happening Alma the older is preaching the Gospel to remnant peoples living along the Pacific coast. As I read this chapter my thoughts rested on the idea that just because you are righteous doesn't mean things will always go your way. Even Helaman was tempted to murmur because of the lack of supplies coming from Zarahemla.

When the difficult days ahead are upon us, it will be easy to doubt, to murmur, and to despair, because many will feel that hope is lost. The previous chapter teaches us to trust in the Lord, to remember the "Law of the Last Second." Such principles were important for the Nephites, as they also struggled in their attempts to secure the land from wicked Lamanites. Yet they continued to pray with all their hearts for the Lord to preserve their lives, their families, and their liberty.

Questions and Answers

Vs 7: While the men were away, were the women, children and elders growing & producing as much food as they could? **[Yes. PR]**

"Alma the older is preaching the Gospel to remnant peoples living along the Pacific coast."

Who were these remnant people? **[They were isolated people. I don't know anything about them. PR]**

Do you have any inspired thoughts, as to the sons of the people of Ammon, how the Lord is able to save their lives that not one of them dies. They have many wounds but do

not die in battle. I thought of shielding from the Lord or possibly angels were there to heal them. But it is a mystery to me. Have you had any revelations on this matter? Also, God bless you for all you do on this blog. Everyday I look forward to your posts on the BofM. They are amazing, all the insights make the BofM come alive like never before. I have grown spiritually like I never thought possible with all your posts on various subjects. Also like S Silver, on her post on July 21, I am very excited that you will in the future share more stories on your exploits in helping people around the world. I pray the Lord will allow you to share even more. They are so inspiring. In these last days, stories like yours uplifts my spirit with great joy. With so many horrible tragedies happening daily, it can be depressing to our souls. Thank you so much my friend. I feel like for these last several years you are a friend (even though I have never met you) as you have been a great source of enlightenment, joy, and given me great hope to make it through these latter days. **[In a couple of days I plan to set aside a block of holy time to ask the Lord more Book of Mormon related questions. I plan to ask regarding the Sons of Helaman. I feel there is far more there than what is written in the record. This Book of Mormon project has been an adventure for me as well, and I'm glad it is strengthening your faith. This is why the Lord has me do it. As far as the rescue missions, I will be adding more to the Addendums of the Witness Books at the end of the year. I hope that more of all of you can experience this in the future. Alma understood when his prayer was finally answered, "Oh, that I were an angel!" PR]**

“When the difficult days ahead are upon us, it will be easy to doubt, to murmur, to despair, as many will feel that hope is lost. The previous chapter teaches us to trust in the Lord, to remember the “Law of the Last Second.””

In the last several chapters I feel like you have been trying to gently coach us so we are better prepared for what we must one day face, without overstepping bounds or divulging the details of what you've seen and been told you cannot share. Thank you for that!

A Crack in Their Armor – Alma 59:1-13

This chapter teaches a key to the downfall of the Nephites. It also reflects what will eventually destroy our country preceding the rise of Zion before Christ's coming.

1 Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands which were lost.

2 Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

3 And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran **[the chief judge]**, desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen

Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in regaining.

4 And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had taken from them.

5 And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephiah, who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

6 Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the Lamanites in this part of the land.

7 And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth against the people of Nephiah, and they did begin to slay them with an exceedingly great slaughter.

8 And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephiah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and joined the army of Moroni.

9 And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city of Nephiah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

10 Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

11 And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephiah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren. **[Moroni gauged the loss of Nephiah and possible future losses to the wickedness of the people. As I have considered the success of America since its founding, I feel that although our people have died in many wars, our country has not been conquered. This is due primarily to the righteous that inhabit it. Those days of protection are coming to a close, because there is a serious “crack in our armor.” The wickedness of our country far exceeds Sodom and Gomorrah of old, at this time. The Lord is allowing for the division of the wicked and righteous to become more acute, or in other words, the ripening of wickedness to occur.]**

12 Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

13 And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

It saddens my heart to read that last verse. “Indifference” is the poison of the Adversary. Do you not see great indifference today amongst our people? Indifference toward the loss of freedom, the killing of millions of unborn babies, the attacks against our sovereignty, decency, and the followers of Christ. It is important that the righteous fortify themselves from such things. How is it done? By reasoning with our spouses, children, and families in love and according to the Spirit. By being in a constant state of repentance (hearts turned to God.) We need to avoid the unclean things of

the world and be willing to speak out against evil when the Lord directs it. The day has come when those not standing in holy places will have no promise.

Questions and Answers

““Indifference” is the poison of the Adversary...It is important that the righteous fortify themselves from such things. How is it done? By reasoning with our spouses, children, and families in love and according to the Spirit.”

Thank you for writing this. I've seen online that you simply cannot reason with internet strangers. I am the gentle type, who finds it easy to hold my tongue. That is mostly good and sometimes bad. I find it a relief (and something I can now take to the Lord) that perhaps He only expects me to stand up or speak up lovingly to loved ones, friends, and family. This feels so much more doable than being digitally slaughtered online among strangers. And yet I suspect there will come a time when we will wish for the days when it was ONLY words we were attacked with.

I keep telling my teens that what we see today as a society has shifted radically away from where we were not even 15 or 20 years ago. it's so obvious. Apathy is rampant. I just want to go out and hold up a sign on my street corners that says "Abortion is not the Answer". I am so heart broken.

Corruption from Within – Alma 60:1-36

This chapter is filled with comparisons to our day. It is discouraging, yet enlightening to our situation. Many prefer to focus on the uplifting and inspirational messages, yet when the Spirit of prophecy speaks we must acknowledge the uncomfortable truth regardless of what any may say.

1 And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

2 For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

3 And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

4 But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

5 But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

6 And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state. **[Why has the chief judge not supported the armies? In the case of the Nephites, there was a single judge over the land that held all the responsibility, with many smaller judges under him. Our society today has a bureaucracy of countless government officials. The indifference toward our liberties is like a disease, and once a liberty is taken away it is near impossible to get in back.]**

7 Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea, while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

8 Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

9 But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea, and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger, because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them. **[I'm reminded of the neglect many of our veterans' experience today. Also, the degree to which our own citizens are impoverished while billions of dollars are sent to assist foreign countries and people that are unAmerican and do not believe in our values.]**

10 And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

11 Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain.

12 Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation; **[Not all who die do so because of wickedness; sometimes the good are allowed to perish so that the wicked may be justified in receiving the wrath of God upon them. Such was the case with the people of Ammonihah before.]**

13 For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

14 And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their

brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain. **[This same fear echoes in our time.]**

15 For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head **[amongst our leaders]**, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.

16 Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word. **[The great loss to the Nephites came because of the alliances of wicked Nephites with the Lamanites: the Amlicites, Amulonites, Zoramites, the dissenters from Amalickiah, and the now the King-men.]**

Today, in America, there are many groups which resemble the factions that led to the demise of the Nephites. These groups do not share the same values of liberty and freedom on which our country was founded. We have our own “king-men” that rule every aspect of our society.

17 But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.

18 But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.

19 Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies? **[There are many that ask similar questions to the elite in Washington. Why do you neglect the security of our country? Where are your allegiances?]**

20 Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?

21 Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

22 Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding? **[Can you see the similarities? What is the Spirit telling you?]**

23 Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that

God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also. **[You cannot overcome a weakness until your thoughts and desires have changed. This has application both physically and spiritually. America cannot change unless the philosophies and ideologies that guide our youth, the academia, and media have changed. The inward vessel of our country is sick, and nothing less than a purge will heal it.]**

24 And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government. **[The only thing that could save our country is if it turned inward for a while and placed all focus upon ending corruption. I'm afraid that this will not happen without the shedding of blood.]**

25 And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—

26 And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—

27 And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct. **[Moroni threatens a coup.]**

28 Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

29 Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

30 Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

31 For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

32 Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?

33 Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.

34 And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

35 And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.

36 Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. **[I have not seen such a general in America since George Washington.]** And thus I close mine epistle.

The civil war and purging that will come to America in the future will not be like the Civil War at the time of Lincoln. This war will come when America has been brought to her knees by outside influences. The land will divide up according to territories and the cleansing force will be the Remnant of Jacob before their conversion.

Questions and Answers

["The land will divide up according to territories and the cleansing force will be the Remnant of Jacob before their conversion."] Can you please clarify this comment "the cleansing force will be the Remnant of Jacob before their conversion.", with additional information? I looked it up online and got widely held and different ideas that got me so confused. If you are allowed to clarify this by the Lord, I would appreciate it. Thank you for revealing the Lord's truth in a day with so many confusing and differing ideas. God bless you on this mission of truth. **[The Remnant of Jacob are the descendants of the BofM people. They will be the people who will cleanse this nation, and then they will be converted in a single day as the BofM records, in their fullness, are given. PR]**

Many of these individuals who are the Remnant of Jacob....is it fair to assume many of them, if not all, were fore-ordained in the pre-earth realm to have this be their mission? That mission, being the cleansing force you speak of, will rid the land of evil-doers and their philosophies? How will they know it is their calling? **[I do not know if they will think of it like that. PR]**

"the cleansing force will be the Remnant of Jacob before their conversion."

I was struck by "before their conversion".

This opened up interesting things.

Is the remnant of Jacob made up of a specific race or is it more encompassing? **[It is all those who are partakers of the Everlasting Covenant in the last days. It encompasses many races, but will be predominantly Native Americans in this land according to the prophecies. PR]** Are many of them awakening and preparing or is it another example of waiting on the Lord's timing? **[The Lord's timing is always a factor. PR]** Is this role of a "cleansing force" something that will

happen before Zion is established? **[Not before Zion, but before the New Jerusalem building is begun. PR]**

Does the “cleansing” that will be done, in the context of this chapter’s history which is meant to serve as a shadow of our time, mean this Remnant will be slaying corrupt government or public leaders? **[No. These will be leaders of gang factions that will terrorize parts of America after the collapse. PR]**

The gangs have been getting worse and worse on the Indian Reservations. You can watch a documentary about it on Netflix or Amazon called The Seventh Fire.

I always wondered about how this would happen in 3 Nephi 20:16 “Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.”

So it makes sense that they will be in their “gang” mode wreaking havoc before having their big conversion as written in the scriptures.

2 Nephi 30:4 And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

5 And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

6 And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightsome people.

And D&C 49:24 But before the great day of the Lord shall come, Jacob shall flourish in the wilderness, and the Lamanites shall blossom as the rose.

Thank you, PR, for helping this become more clear.

22 Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding? [Can you see the similarities? What is the Spirit telling you?]
what a fantastic chapter! I totally see the similarities, thx.

In the Face of Violence – Alma 61:1-21

1 Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:

2 I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

3 But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

4 And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

I next asked the Lord about Pahoran, the Nephite chief judge I am reading about now in Alma 60-61. Why did he not contact Moroni earlier? I saw him in a vision. He was a stately man, with longer grey hair. His face looked tired and sad. The Lord said that he did not know what to do when he was forced out. He went west to the Land of Gideon and sought protection. Most of the men were older and not capable of raising an insurrection. He wondered whether it was even proper to rise up against the people and shed blood. It seemed as if this was what they desired. The entire series of events culminated over about six months and Pahoran had only recently been pushed out when he received the chastising epistle from Moroni. [personal journal]

5 And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get. **[The land of Gideon was similar to “middle America.” It was a place where more appreciated the tenets of the Title of Liberty.]**

6 And behold, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs. **[In today’s society, what Pahoran was doing would be seen as unlawful.]**

7 And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

8 They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, **[These Nephites had abandoned the Constitution that governed their people.]** and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; **[committed treason]** in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

America has not reached the point of collapse as did the Nephite government at this point. But those who desire to change our Constitution and usurp our freedoms in the name of power are numerous.

9 And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people.

My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free. **[This phrase is part of the oath that a Nephite official makes to their country. It is used to remind each other of their duty and resolution.]**

10 And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

11 We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

12 We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do. **[These are the prerequisites when God allows a people to take up arms unto bloodshed.]**

13 But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us. **[The reminder to “Trust in God.”**

14 Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

15 Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them.

16 Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.

17 Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

18 And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.

There appears to be a tone of desperation in Pahoran. Why had he not contacted Moroni beforehand? Was it because he was trying to deal with his recent expulsion from the judgement seat and the gathering of patriots in Gideon? I will pray for more knowledge concerning this.

19 And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.

20 But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.

21 See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

I have been asked, “Will there come a time when my children or I will be required to raise up arms in defense of our lives as the last days approaches? In certain parts of the country and world the answer is “Yes.”

However, we are constantly reminded to trust in the Lord. In the last days, when America has fallen many will receive knowledge that if you are not willing to take up arms against others, you must flee to the Rocky Mountains.

If you are wondering what you should do, the best answer is to develop a connection with the Lord. Learn to receive personal revelation. More than any home security, food storage, and exit strategy, direct communication with the Lord will do more to protect the ones you love than any other course of action.

Questions and Answers

I used to wonder why such a big portion of the Book of Mormon was devoted to warfare. Several years ago, it seemed so foreign. But now, reading headlines, it all fits. Thank you PR, for your efforts in teaching us, and thank you Lord for making this happen. He is so merciful to us.

I have added a portion of my personal journal to Alma 56 in regards to the Sons of Helaman. Usually, when I amend something it is because of more clarification I have received after an experience with the Lord.PR

You mentioned in Witness if the End Times that our brothers up north (in Canada?) would also gather, or words to that effect. You've mentioned First Zion a number of times but I wonder if you could say more about your brothers up north? Many in both lands are very far from the Rocky Mountains and have no life or connections there. Will gatherers come to eastern lands to bring people to safety, or is it mostly upon the people to have God direct them how to avoid conflict? Many thanks. **[I cannot say anything about the brothers up north, but the Gatherers will go to all lands when they are sent. PR]**

“If you are wondering what you should do the best answer is to develop a connection with the Lord. Learn to receive personal revelation. More than any home security, food storage, and exit strategy, direct communication with the Lord will do more to protect the ones you love than any other course of action.”

Thank you for writing this! I had received the same answer. I also got the answer that I will perhaps regret my useless fretting and wish I had just asked the Lord what my next steps should have been and then done them.

There is much said about the collapse of America at the end of times. Will there also be global destruction? I imagine global domination is a highly sought after thing by those who follow Satan. **[I have written extensively about this in the book “A Witness of the End of Times.” PR]**

Peace in the Land – Alma 62:1-52

1 And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

2 But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

Mormon, through much of these chapters, is abridging the history and including portions of the epistles of these leaders to create a narrative for us, the reader, to understand. Of the mountain of records available to include in the Book of Mormon, he was commanded of the Lord to include these parts related to the corruption and wars of the Nephites. It is important that we consider what the Lord is trying to tell us.

3 And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon. **[Across the river from Zarahemla and a stronghold of supporters for liberty.]**

4 And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon. **[He rallied support along the way.]**

5 And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

6 And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land. **[Zarahemla would be the equivalent of Washington DC to us today.]**

7 And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

8 And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

9 And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death. **[capital punishment for treason]**

10 And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

11 And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.

12 And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

13 And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

14 And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephiah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.

15 And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

16 And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

17 And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.

18 And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephiah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephiah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephiah, which is near the city of Nephiah.

19 Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.

20 And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

21 And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

22 And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

23 And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

24 And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.

25 And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

26 Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephiah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.

27 Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

28 And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

29 Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.

The Nephites provided a means for their enemies to make an oath and live peacefully. Of course, there is the fear that they may break that oath, but after years of battles and much suffering, it was a tempting offer for these Lamanites.

30 Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephihah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephihah to the land of Lehi.

31 And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

32 And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

[Near the eastern shores of Lake Ontario.]

33 And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

34 And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

35 And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

36 And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

37 Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for

his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

38 Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

39 And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.

40 And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.

41 But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility. **[The suffering of war often humbles a people to seek repentance.]**

42 And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.

43 And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moronihah; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.

44 And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.

45 Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

46 And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.

47 Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.

48 And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.

49 But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

50 Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions, and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

51 And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

[How quickly things changed after the war ended and the people were taught the word of God.]

52 And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

After such a Great War, the Nephites have been able to reclaim their lands and fortify their cities, and again be taught the Gospel. They begin to become rich and prosper without falling into pride. This chapter marks the end of the leadership of Helaman and Captain Moroni.

Questions and Answers

Vs 36: Was Teancum justified in killing Ammoron? **[Yes, it was a justified war. PR]**

“27 Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.”

This verse made me really wonder what life was like for the Lamanite people under the reign of the evil Nephite dissenters, Ammoron and Amalickiah. Do you think many felt like they were in bondage and longed to be free?

Thank you so much for your insights! I look forward to every new post! And...thanks to all who ask questions at the end, I love the additional teaching given because of the questions. I am so very grateful for your time and effort in writing these books and posts, and making them available for us!

Northern Migration, Passing the Record – Alma

63:1-17

1 And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblon took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

2 And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.

3 And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.

4 And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

5 And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward. **[The west sea is Lake Michigan. There used to be a waterway that led up to the northern country. The land has changed much since the destructions following Christ's death.]**

6 And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.

7 And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

8 And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

9 And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.

10 And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblon died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.

11 Therefore it became expedient for Shiblon to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father. **[The great grandson of Alma is now the keeper of the records. Instead of Shiblon passing the records to his own son, he followed the revelation given to him to confer those records upon whom the Lord chose.]**

12 Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth. **[The amount of stories and history which must have been available was immense. Even handwritten copies of the brass plates. Because of the difficulty of reproducing these records, much was kept in libraries connected to the places of worship, and read before the people.]**

13 Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblon.

14 And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.

15 And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

16 And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

17 And thus ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shiblon, who was his son.

This grouping of records encompassed the generation of Alma, which includes him and his son's history.

Questions and Answers

I was wondering if the Nephites had Temple ceremonies like unto the ones we have today. In Alma 23:2 (and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.) mentions this fact that they had temples. Were their sanctuaries like places of worship? **[That is a hard**

question to answer briefly. They did not have temples like we do. Their temples up until the time of Christ followed the Mosaic pattern. After Christ came it was different. Their sanctuaries or “churches” were a little different too. I may cover this in a longer post at a later date. PR]

Vs 4: The northern country they went into, was it to live on the land or to be hidden away somewhere? **[They were settlers on the land. PR]**

Could you draw a map of the US area before Christ’s Death? Just to give an idea of water formations and how the shape has changed? I’d love to know more than just a waterway. I know there are predictions of a large division of water along the center in the future. **[I would not attempt to draw a map unless it was perfect. I have seen glimpses of how it used to be, but the Lord has instructed me to be more general in this regard, locations, etc. These kinds of things are only important to giving context. Maps are not necessary, but thank you for asking. PR]**

As the Polynesian people were populated about the time that Hagoth was lost at sea, can you explain how Hagoth got from the Great Lakes to the Humbolt current in the Pacific ocean? **[I have not received any information regarding a connection to the Polynesian people from Hagoth and the people who went north. PR]**

Why do you think so many people wanted to head up north? **[These were new lands that were appealing to the Nephites similar to how the early Americans saw expansion to the west.PR]**

Helaman

Secret Combinations – Helaman 1:1-34

1 And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

2 For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

3 Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

4 Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran (for he had many), but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

5 Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi. **[The chief judge position was like an appointed judge/president of the people. They served in this capacity until their death or until they gave up the position. It was customary that a son would assume the position, but not always.]**

6 And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

7 But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

8 And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people. **[The Nephites had seen this behavior before with Amlici, and Amaleckiah.]**

9 Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat. **[Kishkumen is an interesting name. I know that “kumen” is a word that denotes a leader or head of a tribe.]**

10 And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

11 And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

12 Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

Here we see the first example in the record of an organized secret combination. The oaths and covenants of the darkness were not completely hidden from the Nephites. Much had been kept from the Jaredite record regarding these practices. Such is concealed in the sealed portion of the Book of Mormon. Today, these dark oaths, rituals, and murderous activities are common amongst the powers and institutions of the highest level of our own government.

13 And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

14 And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breastplates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

15 And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr **[A popular name amongst the**

Nephites since the Jaredite king was amongst them for a short while. His size and stature was considered remarkable.] ; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

16 Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth [**Nephew to Amaleckiah**], who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—

17 Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.

18 And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

19 But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.

20 Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay every one who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city. [**This was a massive defeat for the Nephites. It would be the equivalent of losing Washington, DC to an invading army.**]

21 And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni. [**Within twelve months we see the death of three chief judges.**]

22 And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.

23 And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land. [**This was the second most strategic city in the land.**]

24 And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

25 But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

26 For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as

they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

27 But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

28 But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

29 And thus he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

30 And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, insomuch that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; yea, many were slain, and among the number who were slain Coriantumr was also found.

31 And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat either way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites.

32 And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

33 And it came to pass that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace.

34 And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign of the judges.

By the use of an assassin, the political process of the Nephites was thwarted and a plan was made to weaken and conquer the land. We will yet see in our country in these latter days the untimely deaths of important people, and the attempt of modern secret combinations to control the highest level of our government. Foreign armies will invade, but will not succeed.

Questions and Answers

I worry about a particular leader of our nation being the target of those who want to take his life....these secret combinations are terrible.

Yes, Hate is very strong in our society right now.

When you say Foreign armies will invade but will not succeed, do you mean they will not be able to take over the US? I thought Isaiah talked a lot about the invasion of Russia/China. Is this different? **[They will invade, but then withdraw. PR]**

Can people know where secret combinations are happening with the Gift of Discernment? **[Yes, but more particularly they can know this by the gift of the Diversities of Operations. PR]**

Interesting how KISHkumen has the beginning letterS of the name A-KISH, the Jaredite that formed the first secret combinations of the Jaredites. Also, do you know if our president knows how bad it is “amongst the power and institutions of the highest level of our government”? Does he know of the darkness part? **[I do not know how informed the President is on such things. PR]**

When we are invaded, are we occupied by these foreign troops for a significant length of time, like several years? **[I don't know the length of time. PR]**

Is this still relevant for us today? ... was this just Josephs opinion?

D&C 123:12-15

12 For there are many yet on the earth among all sects, parties, and denominations, who are blinded by the subtle craftiness of men, whereby they lie in wait to deceive, and who are only kept from the truth because they know not where to find it—

13 Therefore, that we should waste and wear out our lives in bringing to light all the hidden things of darkness, wherein we know them; and they are truly manifest from heaven—

14 These should then be attended to with great earnestness. **[Joseph was speaking specifically to the injustices the church was suffering in Missouri. Of course, darkness is active today and we should not sit idly by, but we should follow the Spirit in all we do, for our protection and the eventual destruction of the Adversary's control upon this earth. PR]**

15 Let no man count them as small things; for there is much which lieth in futurity, pertaining to the saints, which depends upon these things. **[Joseph knew that darkness would attack the church from the outside and from within, but he didn't know exactly how or when. PR]**

A Nephite Conspiracy – Helaman 2:1-14

1 And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.

2 And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

3 But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

4 For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen. **[It sounds like organized crime, but it is more. Such works have been used since the days of Adam when Cain murdered Abel.]**

5 Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be

placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.

My last question was regarding the Gadianton Robbers written about in the Book of Mormon. I saw what Gadianton himself looked like. He was taller, black hair, blue piercing eyes. He seemed to hunch a little. He was a scribe of sorts, I'm not sure. It was as if he was a historian, but different. He spent much time in the library of records, which were open to the public. One of the records was the Jaredite records that were previously translated. There was a particular part that was sealed which contained the hidden secrets of darkness of the Jaredite people. Gadianton broke the seal and transcribed these portions without being caught. He became obsessed with the occult and organized his first "brotherhood" to practice these dark oaths in order to get gain.

Kishkumen was his first assassin. The word literally means chief assassin. After their deaths, the followers continued these dark oaths. Today, the very same dark oaths are practiced around the world by those who are led by sons of perdition. There are signs, and handshakes and secret words. Showing two fingers in a particular manner is what to look for. The Lord did not allow me to go into detail. Their blood oaths involve human sacrifice, which often involves women and children, sexual deviancy, drinking blood, and even cannibalism. They promise protection, power, and wealth, in exchange for secrecy. These secret combinations are exercised in almost every institution, and many of the greatest religions, at the highest level. It is like a disease that infects and eats away under the nose of innocent people who often look to their leaders with hope and admiration. But the Lord knows their doing, and they will be held accountable. (personal journal)

6 And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—

As you read the next few verses, ask yourself if such things take place in modern day? Are people murdered to protect and to further political ambition? Ask the Lord to answer that for you.

7 And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; **[Similar signs are used today.]** therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.

8 And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan,

and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

9 Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

10 And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

11 But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

The secret combinations that exist today are far more advanced than those of Kishkumen and Gadianton. The fullness of the Dark Gospel, its oaths, covenants, and duties are practiced within a multi-tier system that spreads its tentacles into every portion of this world. At the very top are those who are Luciferian, sons of perdition who govern and are not seen in the public eye.

If you desire to understand these things it requires a gift of the Spirit. The gift of discernment helps, but particularly the gift of the Diversity of Operations, which unfolds to you both the Lord's and the Adversary's acts among the all people in different institutions and religions. It also opens to the seeker the works of God in this earth which are hidden from the human eye. There is much that goes on behind the scenes of which we are not aware.

12 And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

13 And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

14 Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, [**Mormon is referring to the entire BofM record.**] from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

At the time of Helaman many Nephites denied that such things existed amongst them. They had their own term for "conspiracy theories." Not until they were pursued by Helaman after the attempted murder and exposure of their plans did they flee the country, but it was not the end of it.

Questions and Answers

Years ago when I asked for the gift of discernment, I was put through a bit of an ordeal with the adversary then had an experience with the Lord. I did gain discernment! When we ask for gifts, do most (or all?) of them require sacrifice to receive?

If so, is the sacrifice required sometimes our time spent studying? **[All gifts are like talents. We are given the desire to excel, which brings a time of development as we exercise faith. In time we are able to perform them in their fullness. Each gift of the Spirit requires a process of learning to wield it properly. This is why we see so little of the gifts of the Spirit in today's society, as many are embarrassed when they fail and give up hope completely. PR]**

[Do such things take place in modern day? Are people murdered to protect and to further political ambition? Ask the Lord to answer that for you. PR]

My answer is Yes, they do.

From 2010 to 2011 in a civil war just to settle a new Président, around 3thousand poeple lost their lives ! **[Africa has seen much suffering because of such things. PR]**

Couple things stand out to me...first, once again the Lord is SO gracious in allowing our hearts and minds to be observant and aware of everyday gestures, signs, logos, trademarks, etc. Social media is becoming the “tool” or “weapon” being used to perpetuate Luciferian doctrine.....I see it with “challenges” issued to the youth to participate in seemingly harmless “funny finger gestures” (like a peace sign) but more illuminati based. The Book of Enoch talks about this in great detail and who taught who the secret combinations/oaths/etc. Fast forward to today and it's the same game but different time!! Second, I think about Joseph Smith's days and our days. The government, the persecuted, the hypocrisy of those followers of Christ. Is this why he was martyred? Were there those in the “brotherhood” who were fearful of being exposed for something? We are repeating this very pattern today and when evil works are exposed, it's no longer considered as an evil act. It's considered morally “acceptable.” We live it daily here in So. Cal. but it's everywhere at every turn. BTW- it's amazing how Russia is the focus of most contention. Why? Can you elaborate more regarding your Witness of the End of Times? I feel something but can't explain it. **[In Joseph Smith's time he referred to it as the “secret chamber.” (D&C 38:13, 28 JS-Matthew 1:25) Russia has a role in the end times, but only a part. I cannot elaborate more than I have in the book A Witness of the End of Times. PR]**

Did Joseph Smith's death seal the executioner's place in perdition? **[No, he was 2nd estate. It was simply murder. He will be consigned to the Telestial realm unless he repents with sackcloth and ashes. PR]**

[Do such things take place in modern day? Are people murdered to protect and to further political ambition? Jeffrey's Epstein comes to mind as well as behind the scenes forces. We are getting closer aren't we....? Those evil forces are ready to battle. I feel it. Something REALLY hit me brother PR....Greenland./Tribes. Not from news reports I JUST heard about last night but something deeper and profound. Any thoughts? My mind is on overload! **[In recent years the level of secret combinations has been more forthright and so-called conspiracies are accepted as real. As far as Greenland and connection to the tribes? I don't know anything regarding that. PR]**

“...particularly the gift of the Diversity of Operations, ”

Does one need the gift of discernment to have this gift? pr. are they independent of each other? **[All gifts require the gift of revelation and discernment, but the gift of diversity of operations is to have a clear understanding of the workings of God around you. To see Him working through priesthood, whether that be institutions, churches, or the natural world. PR]**

Nephite Expansion – Helaman 3:1-37

1 And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

2 And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

3 And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land. **[These people were seeking a place with no land restriction or regulations. Most of which were motivated by the opportunity for wealth and prosperity, not the kingdom of God.]**

4 And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

Here we are seeing a Nephite migratory expansion. Reminds me of the western expansion of the United States during the nineteenth century.

5 Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.

6 And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate. **[Referring to the Jaredites.]**

7 And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell. **[Cement is the laying of stones, gravel and mortar. The Nephites were not rock masons like many of the ancient cultures of Egypt, Israel, or even the Mayans in South America.]**

8 And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east. **[They spread through Canada and across America from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean.]**

9 And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea,

their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

10 And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

11 And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

12 And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

13 And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

14 But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robbings, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work. **[The Nephites were very industrious during this period of expansion. The ship building and settling went far beyond the North countries, as ships were sent from other parts of the land occupied by the Nephites.]**

15 But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites. **[There were books on every topic, from science, to shipbuilding, war, and even the mysteries. None of it exists today, except that which has been sealed up in different locations unknown to the world.]**

16 And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites. **[Here Mormon jumps ahead explaining what happened to all these people who migrated away from the Nephite lands.]**

17 And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

18 The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

19 And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year. **[Contention arises as a new generation disagrees with the traditions of the past and demands change to both the culture and the institutions. This is fueled by those seeking power, much like today.]**

20 Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

21 And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

22 And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

23 And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, **[the older, more established cites]** which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

24 And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, insomuch that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto repentance.

25 And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure. **[What constitutes “prosperity” to the Lord? Is it the expansion of new sanctuaries, church houses, or temples? Is it the statistical rise in membership? No. This kind of prosperity is the increase of the gifts of the Spirit amongst the people. The gift of charity (gift of the Holy Ghost), healings, visions, prophecy, and many more miracles. These are the fruits of Heaven.]**

26 And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper **[bless them spiritually]** unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.

27 Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name. **[repent]**

28 Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven **[gifts of the Spirit]** is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

29 Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God **[personal revelation through scripture, the words of others, and direct revelation]**, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil **[lies and false traditions]**, and lead the man of Christ in a strait and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery **[struggles of life]** which is prepared **[by the Adversary]** to engulf the wicked—

30 And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out. **[Lead to the Resurrection of the Just, to dwell in Everlasting Burnings in the Highest Heaven.]**

31 And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

32 And it came to pass that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.

33 And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church—not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God— **[Members began to divide according to class and wealth. Such distinction occurs regularly today amongst those who call themselves disciples of Christ.]**

34 And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.

35 Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft [**focusing only upon their Lord**], and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility [**seeking Him**], and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ [**following all revelations and commandments given**], unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation [**peace and comfort knowing they are accepted of God**], yea, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God. [**This verse is a perfect definition of how to acquire holiness, the power to call down the glory of Heaven upon us and be worthy to stand in the presence of God.**]

It is important to understand that although they were purified by the baptism of fire and sanctified by the reception of the gift of the Holy Ghost, most all had not yet stood in the presence of the Lord in the flesh. Such blessing would befall those who lived to see Christ coming in Bountiful. I will discuss this in detail when we reach 3 Nephi.

36 And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.

37 And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.

We have seen the passing of many prophets by this time; Alma, Alma the younger, Helaman, Helaman the younger, and now Helaman's son Nephi takes the position as chief judge and keeper of the records.

Questions and Answers

Vs 4: The large bodies of water and many rivers seems to describe Hudson Bay and the rivers that cut through Ontario. Is this the area they are describing? [**Possibly, I do not know. PR**]

Will you comment on vs. 30; “to go no more out”? [**Once a person has received Eternal Life, that blessing is fixed and cannot be taken away. It does not mean they can never leave from sitting down next to the Patriarchs with God, but they become the emissaries of the Great Jehovah to build the kingdom forever. PR**]

How does one pray for sanctification while fasting? How are we to pray during our fasts? Would you provide examples? I fast but not sure how to pray during those times.

[Prayer while fasting depends upon the kind of fasting you are doing. If it is a prolonged time without food or water you will feel fatigued. Such prayer will often be focused in praise and simply stating to the Lord your desires.

As you continue in a state of prayer throughout the day you will find that revelation will flow unto you. If your fasting is the kind where you fast from the cares of the world and separate yourself from all distractions, you may want to follow the pattern suggested in the book “How to Have Your Second Comforter”. PR]

Stand in Holy Places – Helaman 4:1-26

1 And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed. **[How quickly the people begin to divide amongst the Church. What is the source of this contention? It was due to differences in political views, doctrinal views, opinions on rights and privileges, and the question of who, exactly, has the “keys.”]**

2 And the rebellious part **[those people who took up arms]** were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

3 And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

4 But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war. **[The Nephites were viewed by the Lamanites as arrogant, imperialistic, untruthful, barbarous, and evil. They often felt justified in their hatred for them. Interestingly, this is how much of the world views the United States of America. Often their views are justified by some of the people they interact with. There are today those who work for government who actually do display these characteristics. The same can be said for how we view countries that are opposed to us.]**

5 And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea, insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful. **[This is a major accomplishment of the Lamanites. Imagine if all of America was conquered with the exception of the Mountain West? Little is said in Mormon’s abridgment about how this was accomplished.]**

6 And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful; **[considered the gateway to the Northern countries]**

7 And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day’s journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country. **[At the time there was roughly a 20 mile gap between the two lakes.]**

8 And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land

southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

9 And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

10 And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

11 Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

12 And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi [**Leaving to the land of the Lamanites.**], among the Lamanites—

13 And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

The interesting thing in how Mormon describes the wickedness of the Nephites at this time is they sound similar to our society today. Most people living in such wickedness do not consider themselves bad people. They feel justified in their behavior and judge their worth as a person by their passion toward causes that they believe are noble and righteous, yet they forget everything else that is important. Mormon says they make a “mock of that which was sacred.” This is a sign of a society in decline. Do you see that in our world today?

14 But behold, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, yea, and did prophesy [**speaking the Lord’s word as given to them**] many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.

15 And it came to pass that they did repent, and inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

16 For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands. [**Moronihah organized them to go to battle to regain their lands.**]

17 And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.

18 And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.

19 Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain

more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

20 And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

21 Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God; **[They recognized the reason for their suffering.]**

22 And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

23 And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face. **[When the leaders of the church are guilty of sinful behavior the people lose faith.]**

24 And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples— **[This phrase “unholy temples” has two meanings. It refers to an edifice that houses those who learn of God, but also refers to our individual bodies. What causes the temple to become unholy? It requires a state of perpetual sin, where the people do not repent and actually invite the Adversary to dwell there by their wicked thoughts and actions. It then is considered unholy. The best way to reclaim such condemnation is to repent with sackcloth and ashes, which means to fully submit to the Lord. To call out to Him so that He will make you clean, and He will.]**

25 Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief **[false traditions]** and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God they must unavoidably perish.

26 For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.

The Lord does preserve the righteous. How does He do this? It means that He blesses them with an increase of spiritual power. The righteous have an increase of discernment and revelation, sometimes even physical strength and stamina to do what needs to be done. The Lord advises us to “stand in holy places” as the judgments of God are about to be released. (D&C 45:32, D&C 87:8, D&C 101:22)

Questions and Answers

“The righteous have an increase of discernment and revelation, sometimes even physical strength and stamina to do what needs to be done.” = Joan of Arc!

I added some additional insights to Helaman 2 regarding the Gadiantons based on a new experience I had with the Lord. It should shed some additional light. As with everything, please pray for your own confirmation regarding these inclusions. PR

Baptism of Fire and the Holy Ghost – Helaman 5:1-52

1 And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

2 For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted. **[The voice of the people had chosen corrupt laws that Nephi could not with his own good conscience enforce.]**

3 Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction. **[Even the just laws they refused to enforce or obey.]**

In our society today such things exist where the laws are not enforced and wickedness is spread through the government and society.

4 And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days; **[The tradition of their fathers since their great-great-grandfather Alma.]**

5 For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:

6 Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names **[Lehi and Nephi's names]** of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have done that when you remember your names ye may remember them; and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

7 Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and written of them. **[What is good? To be the means to save many souls in the Father's Kingdom.]**

8 And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you, which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast, but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our fathers.

People do not realize the memorialization of the good deeds we perform on earth and how they are monumental in eternity, never forgotten and always witnessed by innumerable souls forever. How is this done? During the course of a life we experience many things. The accomplishments, accolades, wealth, fame, and positions of authority among men have no remembrance in the eternal views of Heaven. However, when we make epic sacrifices for others and to bring souls to Christ, these stand as a memorial which the angels look upon regularly and it never ends. When you help the beggar in need, suffer hardship from your enemies in the name of Christ, or do any kind of selfless act – it is eternal in it's scope. I myself have witnessed the same great deeds, as I have been taught from witnessing some of the actual acts of these great men and women.

The Lord Himself has beautiful statues near His Throne which memorialize these great acts. I have seen them! People whose lives are forgotten to time are never forgotten, ever!

9 O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come; yea, remember that he cometh to redeem the world.

10 And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom, in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins. **[This means that they do not remain as they were, but are changed. The soul must ascend from the 2nd to the 3rd estate by the gift of the Holy Ghost, which is to be born again. You cannot be saved in your sins or unholy state.]**

11 And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance **[to fully choose Christ without reservation]** ; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls. **[These “angels” are messengers from both the Heavenly Realm of the spirit, and those who are sent to teach His Gospel in the flesh. Alma 13]**

12 And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

This is so important. Today, many seek to build their foundation upon good will. They focus upon love, spiritualism, acceptance, philanthropy and charity, and other good things, yet their foundation is not in Christ. There is an unbelief that all religions and people will find salvation in one way or another. If Christ is not the focus, all things will fall. (3 Nephi 14:20-27)

13 And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

14 And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful; **[The city of Bountiful was a spiritual center for many of the Nephites.]**

15 And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek; 16 And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites. **[These are those who politically identified as Lamanites living in the land of Zarahemla. Many of these who were associated as Lamanites were light skinned.]**

17 And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

18 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them— **[This is the definition of the gift of prophecy. It is not only to speak the Lord's words regarding future events, but to say that which the Lord commands them to speak. When one is overcome with the gift of prophecy, they cannot hardly resist the need to speak and the words are given either before or during their preaching. What did they say to them? Exactly what would cut their hearts like only the Lord can do.]**

19 Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

20 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi. **[A dangerous attempt, like unto the days of the sons of Mosiah. However, the Lamanites were accustomed to fair skin people walking amongst them.]**

21 And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi. **[In the central northern regions of the Lamanite lands, near eastern Tennessee.]**

22 And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

23 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire **[White fire, the glory of God, what is often referred to as a pillar of fire.]**, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

24 And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage. **[This is the same as a baptism of fire, which occurs each time one mingles with the angels of God or prepares to be in the presence of the Lord. No unclean thing can be in such a presence. Normally, such things cannot be seen with the naked eye, but these men’s spiritual eyes were opened that they could see.]**

25 For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

26 And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

27 And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth **[A similar sensation that the sons of Mosiah and Alma experienced when the angel appeared to them.]**; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters. **[both white and brown skinned Lamanites]**

28 And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness **[They could not see what was happening, they were feeling confused and afraid as the Adversary attempted to gain control.]**, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

In the scriptures, when our natural man is unable to spiritually see into the spirit realm, it is considered the “cloud.”

29 And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings. **[They heard the voice of the Spirit of God speaking to each of them. As the words come forcefully to the mind, they sound like one’s own voice to a degree, yet there is a distinct and unexpected signaling of a source beyond one’s own conscious.]**

30 And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—

When the voice of the Spirit of God speaks to us it is usually subtle and gentle. It comes with perfect clarity and has an effect of stilling our mind. It may sound like our own voice, yet it is not. For those who live in as busy of a society as we do, it is important that we make room for this voice to have a place in our life.

31 And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—

They heard the good voice, yet were still encompassed by the fear and despair of the Adversary. Often in our great suffering we feel that God is close, yet we are encumbered by despair, discouragement, fear, and confusion. Watch how it is overcome in the coming verses.

32 And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, **[Come unto me! Turn your hearts to me!]** for the kingdom of heaven is at hand **[Your opportunity to be saved is NOW.]**; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

33 And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder. **[What kind of marvelous words did God utter to them that cannot be shared? It was personal revelation to these men regarding their sins and what God would do for them.]**

34 And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

35 Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.

36 And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. **[His spiritual eyes were opened.]** And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld. **[Who do you think they saw? Were they not conversing with these beings within the pillar of fire? Had they not been so transfigured this could not have occurred. This is a glimpse of what occurs when someone converses with angels. Had it been an ascension to the Throne of Heaven they would have been still or laying down.]**

37 And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

38 And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

39 Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

Before anything, these Lamanites began to exercise a small degree of faith. They began to believe, they beheld the glory of God and the administering of Angels.

40 And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us? **[Asking questions is always a preliminary step in receiving any gift of the Spirit.]**

41 And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent **[turn your heart to God]**, and cry unto the voice **[a physical crying out to God]**, even until ye shall have faith in Christ **[keep at it "until" you receive an answer]**, who was taught unto you by

Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom **[in Ammonihah years ago]**; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

42 And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

There is great power in approaching the Lord as a group. Some of the greatest outpourings I've seen amongst people who have never experienced revelation, visions, prophecy, and healing (and other gifts), occurred in a group gathering. When the baptism of fire comes down upon an entire group it is electric and powerful.

43 And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire. **[This is a sign of having received the gift of the Holy Ghost. If one's spiritual eyes are not open they will not see it. I have witnessed this on occasion and it appears as a twisting white flame, like plasma, just above the head or around the body.]**

44 And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory. **[Joseph Smith described something similar in one of his accounts of the First Vision, as the flames of glory appeared that they would consume the trees, yet they did not.]**

45 And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words. **[Another sign of the reception of the gift of the Holy Ghost, is that they are given a new heart. It is white and pure, when seen with the spiritual eyes. The disposition to do evil is burned away. Their words are spoken by the Spirit, often exhibiting the gift of prophecy and the words (the voice) of angels. It is likely that one would shout out praises to God as they are overcome by the Spirit. This is one of several ways it may be displayed, but people may respond differently.]**

46 And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

47 Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world. **[They received the first portion of the Holy Spirit of Promise, which comes from the Father. This is charity, and prepares them to receive all things.]**

48 And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them. **[At this point their spiritual eyes are opened. It is important to see how their faith made this possible. They believed the words spoken to them. They acted upon what they had been told. They "cast up their eyes" believing that what they had heard was more than an epiphany, or some kind of random thought. They did not doubt. They did not question. They did not ask themselves if they were conjuring or using hypnotic suggestions. They simply looked, and the heavens opened.]**

49 And there were about three hundred souls **[the number 300 represents “chosen of God.]** who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt. **[After such an experience it is common to doubt or wonder. Always seek a confirmation with the Lord, but when the witness is given do not ever doubt.]**

50 And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

51 And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

52 And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

What caused this great event to occur? This was the greatest unprecedented conversion that Nephi and Lehi, the sons of Helaman, had ever experienced. During their deepest suffering, while being forced to fast for numerous days, they prayed with great faith for the souls of their captors, the very people they had come to save, and the ones who wanted to kill them. The Lord came in their darkest hour, to anointed servants of the Most High who were fulfilling a sacred mission, and gave them the power to affect 300 Lamanites to their salvation. They didn’t know what to expect. They simply did as the Spirit commanded them.

In 3 Nephi 9:20 the Lord later revealed regarding this event:

“And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.” (3 Nephi 9:20)

Questions and Answers

What an astounding chapter of pearls from the Lord... thank you Dear Lord..!

I love this chapter. For the Lamanites was this a really a Baptism of Fire/Gift of the Holy Ghost(from Christ), or a baptism of the Holy Spirit (from Father)? **[In the link “Our Temporal Progression” on the Menu Bar of the homepage it details the process that leads toward our reception of the gift of the Holy Ghost. Both the Father and Christ play a role. PR]**

Beyond beautiful...

What is the role of the conferral of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands? This is virtually unseen in the Book of Mormon. But the revelations in the Doctrine and Covenants point to it as the appointed way it was to be done in the church... Is the laying on of hands typical when a new dispensation is going forth, such as in the Book of Acts (though many appear to receive it without the laying on of hands too)? How is this

power received? When is the laying on of hands required, if ever? When is this authority lost? And when lost, is it more difficult for individuals to receive the Holy Ghost? Are there times where it is much more difficult to receive the Holy Ghost because the Lord is “hiding his face”? **[The reception of the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands is to be performed by the Lord’s anointed. The servant must be anointed by the Lord Himself. It can be received without the touching of the servant, but is a blessing to those who receive it by the laying on of hands. How it works is the servant, by revelation, is told when and how to touch the person. It doesn’t always have to be a formal touch to the head. It is done much like a healing, yet the person is then overcome by a baptism of fire and born again new in Christ. The purpose of touching is to strengthen the faith of the person receiving. PR]**

Thank you so much for your reply. It then would seem that the revelations given to Joseph Smith on the matter of the laying on of hands were for a Zion people, since at that time they were actively seeking to establish Zion? Clearly, the Brethren in the 1820s and 1830s hadn’t been appointed by the Lord himself to this power, but they were instructed about the laying on of hands, like in D&C 35:6... Why does this appear so central to the teachings of Joseph Smith before they received this “power from on high”? Is it because they were seeking to see the face of the Lord in Kirtland, hoping for an endowment of the Spirit at that time (though few actually did)? **[Joseph was ordaining the brothers to a higher order of priesthood (Melchizedek). They still had to establish that relationship with the Lord. Many assume that an ordination is enough, but it is an invitation to receive. Had the early Elders during the Kirtland days lived up to their privileges they would have been able to offer the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands and build Zion, as Joseph had hoped. PR]**

I love this chapter and have been waiting for it! I have always loved thinking about Aminadab. Someone who was clearly at a low point in his life, probably left his family and people before dissenting to live with the lamanites and then sunk even lower to find himself in prison! Not to mention all the other prisoners in there. Yet these people received the greatest blessing as referenced by the Savior himself. You can never judge your life or others from outward appearances. Do you happen to know anything else about Aminadab I would love to know his back story? Thank you so much. **[I do not know any details about Aminadab. I’m sure there is a great back story there. There always is one. PR]**

It’s so bewildering to me that 300 people can go from intent to commit murder to baptism of fire and hearing the voice of God the Father and seeing with their spiritual eyes. How is it possible? So many would love to have this happen and have tried for years only to fall short. It’s like they tripped and fell into a pool of baptism by fire by accident. I understand you explained Nephi and Lehi prayed and interceded in their behalf. But is there no one to intercede in my behalf? **[I have learned in my life that the Lord is in every detail. Often there is a timing involved, and the Lord always makes it possible. Sometimes it happens in a group like these Lamanites (or**

myself), but usually it comes as we seek out the Lord alone. **Did the Lord tell you that you fell short? There is a reason, and you should try and discover what that is. Sometimes the process of finding the Lord has great significance. PR]**

I ask half not expecting the answer so I will hazard a guess of what I think here. Am I too far off do you think if I say what happened in that prison and the righteous prayers that brought it about is a recipe for end time chosen servants and proxy saviors on what they will be call on to do? Maybe many who are trying so hard now will become discouraged short term only to be awakened later by their own Nephi Lehi prison type experience? **[That could happen, but when the Gatherers go forth they will be dealing with a crisis situation for many people. The Lord will help them to gather the “Elect,” which are those who made prior covenants, or are actively seeking Him. When the Lord says, “Now is the day of your salvation,” He is often being very literal. PR]**

Did the Lord tell me I fell short? No. I think it’s more like He is waiting for me to do the next step. I have re read what I wrote and I meant it to be a post about whether there was a possibility for some person to intercede in my behalf more along the lines of such a powerful witness. Intercede in terms of opening my spiritual eyes. There seems to be a key there. We probably could do it alone but, actually, I bet there are ancestors on the other side interceding frequently on our behalf as we try to do our part. Are there ancestors who are involved in our spiritual path? **[Often, that is the case, or some other angel with whom we have a familiarity. No person can truly do it all alone. PR]**

“I have learned... the Lord is in every detail”

Well I just found more unbelief in my heart. .. every detail, like EVERY detail? It is difficult to try to visualize that. That is a lot of detail. 10,000 details a day. You probably mean every detail that concerns my spiritual path, not like whether I chose eggs or oatmeal for breakfast this morning... or what tie I wear, not those details. I have seen you state this so many times, it always pricks me... I should probably ask Him about it. **[Everything in the world exists because of the Lord’s power. Our mundane decisions including when we sin are not caused by Him, but the current of events that create the tapestry of what transpires in this earth are directed by Him. The Lord is a God of justice and mercy, which means He organizes and separates continually, and provides a path for the salvation of all. When I use that term “the Lord is in every detail” I am emphasizing that what may seem like random, unplanned, fortuitous events are indeed carefully orchestrated by the Lord. PR]**

These Lamanites had murderous hearts set to kill prophets of God. Why did they receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost so suddenly? That’s amazing! One would assume they would receive at most just the Baptism of Fire. The Gift of the Holy Ghost seems to be something people work hard to receive. Not doubting, just wondering. **[People sometimes mistake qualifying for the gift of the Holy Ghost as having to do a series of sacrifices and paying their dues first and eventually it happens. Those who take a long time to receive the gift usually do so because they hold on to an**

unbelief, even if that unbelief is unknown to them. In the case of these Lamanites that were mortal enemies to these Nephites, their repentance was so pure, their desire to give away their sins so absolute, that there was no restraint in receiving the baptism of fire and gift of the Holy Ghost at that time. PR]

If someone takes a long time though, that may be on the Lords timing right? **[The Lord doesn't withhold the gift when the requirements are met. There are some who have received, but do not know it. The gift of revelation and discernment sometimes take a long time to acquire, even after the gift of the Holy Ghost is given. Each person is unique, the Lord will guide them through the process. PR]**

Infiltrated by the Gadianton – Helaman 6:1-41

1 And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, insomuch that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites, because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith. **[This is the first time this had occurred since the division of the people at the time of Nephi.]**

2 For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, insomuch that they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them. **[The people had become secular, and sought the pleasures of the flesh.]**

3 Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another, and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

4 And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance. **[The many that had been converted by Nephi and Lehi.]**

5 Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb. **[When you speak by the power of the Holy Ghost it has a powerful effect upon others. Without God's approval (authority) it will not prosper.]**

6 And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.

7 And behold, there was peace in all the land, insomuch that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

8 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free

intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

9 And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

10 Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

This is an interesting way that the Nephites chose to name the lands. Lehi's vessel came into the Gulf of Mexico and landed somewhere just west of Florida. Mulek's vessel went farther up the eastern coast of America and landed in the Northern part. They went inland eventually built the city of Zarahemla in the upper Missouri area. Thus the land was considered Mulek in the northern regions and Lehi in the southern. The designation of Nephite and Lamanite had become more clouded as they mingled freely with each other.

11 And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

12 They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

13 Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.

14 And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. **[Many of the people, both men and women without church position, began to exercise the gift of prophecy as they approached the coming birth of the Messiah.]** And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.

15 And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.

16 And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

17 For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.

18 And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among

the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers. **[The ease at which those who joined this secret organization were able to acquire wealth and power caused that it grew quickly in influence. The same thing occurs today amongst the powerful elite in government and other institutions including corporations, churches, schools, and the media.]**

19 And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found. **[Do you not see the same thing today?]**

20 And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

21 But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings. **[They would cover for each other.]**

22 And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

23 And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God. **[There is an undercurrent of sex trafficking that occurs within this secret organization. It is far worse than you can imagine.]**

24 And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen. **[These are meetings where death sentences are ordered and executed.]**

25 Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction. **[The record was sealed.]**

26 Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit— **[The desire to learn of these things did not come from the record itself, but was put into Gadianton's heart by the Adversary.]**

27 Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

28 And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts **[the desire]** of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell. **[Mormon prefaces much**

of what will be studied in the Book of Ether regarding the history of the Jaredites.]

29 Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time. **[It is a fundamental tenet of the Adversary's oaths and covenants, to promise self-gratification and dominion in exchange for loyalty and death.]**

30 And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men. **[The death cult of secret combinations has existed on the earth since Cain and has never once left. See the history as recorded in "A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations" to learn more.]**

31 And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver. **[The search for wealth and the possession of things became their idol. Much like we see in our culture today.]**

32 And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

33 And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also, to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous.

34 And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief **[false traditions]**, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

35 And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

36 And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words. **[An attribute of those who receive a larger portion of the Lord's Spirit is their "easiness and willingness" to accept the gifts of the Spirit, to hear the words of prophets.]**

37 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites. **[The Land of Lehi in the southern regions was cleansed.]**

38 And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations. **[Even the leaders of the church amongst**

the Nephites had become infiltrated with the Gadianton. The mark of the beast had made its claim upon them.]

39 And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God. **[As is much the case in America today.]**

40 And thus we see that they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

41 And it came to pass that thus ended the sixty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Questions and Answers

Vs 2: Does everyone born on this earth have the Light of Christ in them? (I have understood this to be our conscience.) **[Yes, in various degrees. PR]**

Or is it only those who are House of Israel, that already chose to follow Christ who have His light with them? **[They have the Everlasting Covenant, which was made before birth. But, they still have to receive more light through the gift of the Holy Ghost as everyone else. PR]**

Do the evil have to “kill” this light/conscience within them or is it not there if they are already Perdition? **[There are some who come to mortality having made covenants with Satan. They must kill that light and embrace the darkness fully to be perdition. PR]**

Vs 23: Where are they getting these children from? **[A little internet search into the topic of sex trafficking will easily answer this question. PR]**

I thought the mark of the beast is to have telestial DNA? **[It’s an expression which means they have sealed their fate. If they make oaths to Satan they will be perdition and be sent to outer darkness. PR]**

PR, in VS 5 you indicate that god’s approval means his authority. Does this have connections to anything that requires authority like baptism and to indicate God is no respecter of persons/faith/church and that this authority for baptism or anything else that requires authority can occur with any person of any faith to perform such things if they qualify for that approval? If so, what would you say qualifies that person for that approval/authority? **[Only a church can grant authority to do the works of that church, So also, only God can grant authority for an individual to do works in his name. D&C 121 covers the particulars of this in regards to priesthood. PR]**

“[5 Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb. [When you speak by the power of the Holy Ghost it has a powerful affect upon others. Without God’s approval (authority) it will not prosper.] I love this verse! I have just past it by when reading it before till I read your comment on it. Many times I have wondered why some religious speakers talks never seemed to have a great

effect upon me. Then there would be one that just touched me in a profound way. I just love this insight PR!!!!

Nephi Prophecies from His Tower – Helaman 7: 1-29

1 Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward. **[beyond Bountiful in the north country]**

2 For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

3 And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity. **[birth]**

4 And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men; **[We have the equivalent of Gadianton Robbers filling many of the judgement seats in America today.]**

5 Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills—

At the time Joseph Smith brought forth the Book of Mormon there was corruption in the government and some of the courts. Today the corruption is as wide spread as it ever was with the Nephites before Christ’s coming. This is a type for us to consider.

6 Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

7 Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—

8 Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.

9 But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren.

It is interesting to see Nephi, the son of Helaman, lament regarding his “consignment” to be among such a stiff-necked people. Nephi understood

his mission with the Lord. In the days to come it will feel as if the entire world has lost its mind before the redemption of Zion occurs.

10 And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

I asked about Nephi and the tower, a story from Helaman in the Book of Mormon. I saw the area and saw around much of it. Nephi's home was the family place which had been originally built on the land acquired by Alma the Younger. It is in the foothills near the heart of Zarahemla, perhaps a half mile from where the busy part of the city began. I saw a spread-out home, made of adobe, cement, and timber. It had a pioneer look to it, but more artistic. Toward the front was a large area surrounded by a wall of timber enclosing it. The "garden" was more a natural area with trees, shrubs and tall grass, mostly unkept, except for a path that led to an open area with logs laid out for sitting. I guess that as many as a hundred people could meet there. Against the wall was a tower made of timber. It had a ladder which led up the side to a platform maybe 8 feet square. There was a cone shaped roof that covered the platform. The Tower looked out at the sitting area in the garden and the road that came along outside the wall. I was shown that this place was used by both Alma the younger and Helaman to speak to groups of people during their lives. The place had been passed down through the family.

I saw inside the home briefly. There were many tapestries, the fireplace reminded me of Pueblo Indian kinds with the plaster. I saw hammocks, which was not something I expected. The door going out was wood and was colored a pale blue.

The road outside the compound was paved with small stones and almost resembled cement. There was a short hill and a ditch between the wall and the road. Nephi's tower was about a ten-foot height above the road. Helaman lived in an affluent area where many of the wealthier lived, such as judges and merchants, but his home seemed much older and simple than the others. I noticed that the judges traveled with escorts or security I think. The day Nephi prayed aloud and spoke to the people he was not doing as he normally did when praying. The Lord had him go upon his tower and get the attention of the people passing by so as to cause a series of events to happen that would lead to his mission of preparing the Nephite people for what was to come. (personal journal)

11 And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people. **[Sometimes the Lord**

inspires us how we should pray, where to go, and whether to raise our voice or to speak only in our mind. Nephi often would go to his private place to communicate with the Lord, but this day he felt inspired to go to the tower overlooking his garden and pray vocally. The Lord is in every detail.]

12 And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

13 And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

14 Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

15 And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts. **[All these people knew that the former chief judge and church leader, Nephi, lived at that location. They had never seen him openly pray in that manner.]**

16 Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

17 O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

18 It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you. **[How would people react to such a spectacle today? How many would keep walking? How many would consider the words spoken to them?]**

19 And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts. **[A prophecy concerning their fate.]**

20 O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

21 But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

22 And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies. **[A prophecy of the destruction of their cities by their enemies.]**

23 For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those who repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.

24 For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent. **[A prophecy to a future time when the Nephites will be utterly destroyed.]**

25 Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianton! **[All the people knew of Gadianton by this time. It was no longer a secret that they existed, or to be denied or ignored as a “conspiracy theory.”]**

26 Yea, wo **[a cursing]** shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

Pride is the downfall of most righteous generations. To lean upon one’s own understanding and not to seek the Lord in all things is the seeds of pride. The fruit of pride is the breaking of the commandments of God.

27 Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!

28 And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

29 Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.

Nephi was overcome with the gift of Prophecy. The Lord had made these things known to him and he was required to tell the people. Everything that has been prophecies in this chapter will come to pass upon the American people if they do not repent.

Questions and Answers

Vs 11: Can you describe the tower that overlooked the garden? What was this tower used for? Why did they build them? **[I have not asked about that. If the Lord shows me something I will add an addendum. PR]**

“To lean upon one’s own understanding and not to seek the Lord in all things is the seeds of pride. The fruit of pride is the breaking of the commandments of God.”
I feel like this description of pride is an apt description of the culture we were born into. We are taught to be tough, do things ourselves, and trust the professionals. It is difficult to come to terms with the idea that almost everything we picked up from society – literally the ideas taught in grade school – are prideful and we need to change them. I feel like I’m still in the early stages of ferreting out the well-hidden lies, falsehoods and unbeliefs!

“To lean upon one’s own understanding and not to seek the Lord in all things is the seeds of pride. The fruit of pride is the breaking of the commandments of God.”
One of the things I was taught growing up is that we shouldn’t be seeking revelation for everything in our lives. The idea is that the Lord wants us to use our own wisdom in certain situations.

D&C 58:26-27 is usually cited:

“For behold, it is not meet that I should command in all things; for he that is compelled

in all things, the same is a slothful and not a wise servant; wherefore he receiveth no reward.

Verily I say, men should be anxiously engaged in a good cause, and do many things of their own free will, and bring to pass much righteousness;”

I’ve heard an example that we should not be seeking revelation for things such as deciding what can of soup to buy while standing in the grocery store.

How would you describe when it is and isn’t appropriate to seek revelation? Is there any limit? Should we be constantly asking the Lord what to do even in the most menial decisions of our lives? I’d love to know your thoughts on this. **[To lean on your own understanding is different than making menial decisions in life. It is to approach life from a self-centered view, to see all decisions as an act of personal enrichment. To not involve the Lord in our goals, stewardships, family, and profession. PR]**

Thank you so much for the addendum! I love how detailed your descriptions are! It seems to me that the Nephites lived in a way that did not harm the earth and left very few evidences. This natural, harmonious way of living is something I have been pondering on.

Only by Revelation – Helaman 8:1-28

1 And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

2 Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?

3 For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God. **[He only spoke that which he received by revelation.]**

4 And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

5 Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

6 And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

7 And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass

except we repent; **[What happens when someone speaks out against the powerful and corrupt today?]**

8 Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;

9 Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things. **[Nephi was not the only one who was aware that the people were wicked. Many living in sin are often times aware of their situation, yet choose to ignore the signs.]**

10 And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

11 Therefore he was constrained **[by the Spirit]** to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite **[exercise the power of God]** upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither **[began to move]**, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

I have seen this in vision. The waters gathered up in the distance in two mounds like a tide.

12 And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

13 But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah. **[Much of these words were removed from scripture by the Jews while captive in Babylon.]**

14 Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he **[Christ]** be lifted up who should come.

Why is the serpent a symbol of Christ in this act of Moses? The “serpent” is a symbol of a being of light, a higher being who has the power to lay down his life and take it up again. A serpent’s ability to shed his skin is where this comes from. It was a “serpent” that tempted Eve in the Garden, or in other words, an angel of light.

15 And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith **[turn to God seeking His will, having a broken heart]**, having a contrite spirit **[willing to do all that He requires]**, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

16 And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

17 Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

18 Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God **[according to previous covenants under the 4th estate]**; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

19 And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

20 And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

I asked the Lord about Zenock and Zenos mentioned in the Book of Mormon. The Lord said they were two prophets of Israel that lived before the time of Nephi. Zenock was alive at the time of Isaiah and was stoned for preaching the Messiah would be the Son of God. Zenos came later and was run through with a weapon for preaching similar doctrine. Zenock was called the preacher of righteousness. Their words and identities were lost after Jerusalem was destroyed. There is some quoting of their words in later books of the Bible, but their names are not mentioned. The doctrine of the Messiah giving His life was removed by the Jewish Rabbis after going to Babylon, considered heretical. (Personal Journal)

21 And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—

22 Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

23 And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

24 And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received; yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

What evidences is Nephi referring to? They know that the prophecies regarding Jerusalem were true according to Lehi and Mulek who fled the destruction. They have also witnessed the history of miracles amongst the

people since the time they came to the Americas. God had given the House of Israel many signs in the Heavens to watch and observe. The Nephites abided by the Holy Days established under Moses. All things pointed toward Christ and God's majesty in this world. But like today, many had brushed this aside for a secular view of life and the gratification of the flesh.

25 But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

26 Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication **[sexual sins]** and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

27 Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

28 And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianton and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men. **[A direct prophecy given to Nephi in the very moment. It was not even thought through, but blurted out as the Spirit testified.]**

Questions and Answers

“Why is the serpent a symbol of Christ in this act of Moses? The “serpent” is a symbol of a being of light, a higher being who has the power to lay down his life and take it up again. A serpent’s ability to shed his skin is where this comes from. It was a “serpent” that tempted Eve in the Garden, or in other words, an angel of light.”

Oh my goodness, when I read this everything suddenly made sense and was clear in a flash. It felt like a lightbulb went off and my heart burned inside of me. The word “seraph” means both “serpent” and “burning ones” in Hebrew. It clicked in a way it never has before. Thank you for sharing this!

Vs 5: I just realized the Gadianton Robbers were calling for social justice. But the record says the Gadiantons still feared the people.

“The “serpent” is a symbol of a being of light, a higher being who has the power to lay down his life and take it up again.”

Does this mean Lucifer had that power? Or he was ‘in line’ to receive it soon? **[He was 4th estate when he tempted Eve in the Garden. He does not have that power now. PR]**

Wait, Eve was tempted by an “angel of light”? Lucifer was considered an “angel of light”? I’m confused. Can you help me understand please. **[He “was” an angel of light. He will have no part in the Resurrection of the Just, but only the resurrection of the damned. There is no light in Him now. PR]**

Was it Lucifer or Satan that tempted Eve? I had understood that Satan (a title) had gone to Outer Darkness to make oaths with Lucifer. Did Satan tempt Eve after covenanting with Lucifer, or was it following his ejection from the Garden? **[He became Satan because of what He did to Eve. After which he was cast out from the presence of the Lord. PR]**

...I meant to say: ... or did Satan make oaths with Lucifer after he was cast out of the Garden? **[Satan made covenants with Lucifer, who instructed him in all things related to darkness. This was before the fall of Adam and Eve. PR]**

How did Lucifer get into the garden? **[All 4th estate were invited to come. There was a familiarity with all involved, but Satan's intentions were only known to God. PR]**

I think, I meant Lucifer the father of Satan, they are two different people/positions. Those answers can be found in A Witness of the End of Times. God allows Lucifer to send emissaries into the Terrestrial world for a short season to tempt the servants of God. This is what happened to Satan before he fell, he sought his own will and saw all Lucifer had to offer.

Did Lucifer tempt Eve expecting to get away with it? Or did he know he would be cast out and lose his glory? After his plan was rejected he went about trying to turn all God's children against Him, or as many as would believe him, so was the garden of Eden a part of this that he was doing? To frustrate Gods plans and turn His children against Him? **[It is the plan of Lucifer to defy God and establish His own dominion. The Lord knows this and allows it. It does not frustrate God's plan, but creates a natural state in the temporal world where people can choose between good and evil. The Lord sets the bounds that Satan cannot cross. Understand that God does not create evil but allows it to exist to bring about all righteousness. Only in the temporal world can both live together. After the final resurrection God judges and divides according to their glory. PR]**

Did Satan's interaction with Eve involve something sexual in nature? **[No. PR]**

Nephi Exposes the Murderer – Helaman 9:1-41

1 Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

2 Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

This is a very human approach to determining the validity of a prophet. Those with little to no faith react in such a manner. Often, the truth doesn't reveal itself right away and the doubters scoff and congratulate themselves that they knew he or she was false, but the Lord always keeps His word.

3 And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

4 And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

5 But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth. **[A natural reaction in the face of shock and despair.]**

6 Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy **[A cloak of secrecy: this expression was Joseph's best translation to explain the hidden nature of this Gadianton practice.]**, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

7 And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

8 And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us. **[Despite the people's wickedness and lack of faith, they still maintained a strong belief that God could intervene in their lives. They believed in witchcraft too and were very superstitious.]**

9 And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

10 And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

11 And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial. **[Wanting to know what those men had seen, being that at least a portion of Nephi's words had been true in their eyes.]**

12 And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

13 And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

14 We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

15 Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi. **[I am reminded how the Lord is in every detail. Nephi was led by the Spirit to pray upon his tower when he did, the Lord knowing that these judges would be there to witness the prophecies.]**

16 And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet. **[And this was put into the judge's hearts by the Adversary. The gift of prophecy has a dark equivalent, which is to say that which the Adversary gives you to say.]**

17 And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

18 And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one, insomuch that they did confound them. **[These five men's hearts had been changed, for they did not believe that Nephi could have known or was involved in this murder.]**

19 Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers **[unexpected]** ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

20 Saying unto him: Thou art confederate **[accomplice]**; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him. **[The equivalent of offering a plea deal.]**

21 But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised **[unclean and not under covenant with the Lord]** of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked **[unwilling to look and consider spiritual things]** people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

22 O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

23 Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man **[working together]** that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

24 And because I have done this, ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are angry with me, and seek to destroy my life. **[By walking them through their thoughts and intentions Nephi demonstrates his prophetic discernment to them through the power of God.]**

25 And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me. **[We will see if you still desire to destroy me after this second sign.]**

26 Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Seezoram, and say unto him—

27 Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?

28 And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.

29 And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?

30 And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

31 But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak. **[bottom of his robe]**

32 And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

33 And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

34 And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.

35 And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

36 And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God. **[Seantum's fear is not only that he was caught, but that a prophet of God had been the means of his undoing. The fear of God had come upon Seantum.]**

It is also important that Nephi emphasized that he was an honest man. That this information was given to him by the power of God and that he was sent by God to deliver it. Nephi gives the Lord all the credit.

37 And it came to pass that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. And behold, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

38 And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

39 And there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of Nephi; and there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

40 And now there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet. **[Some were converted because they saw direct evidence that Nephi was a prophet because of these circumstances. But why did the Lord have Nephi prophecy of Seezoram's murder in such a dramatic fashion? There had been several murders of judges already without a spiritual intervention of this kind.]**

41 And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge. **[Nephi became quite the topic of conversation among the people for this act of prophecy. Some placing him up to a godlike status.]**

We will see in the coming chapters the Lord’s purpose in having Nephi prophecy of Seesoram’s murder. This would be a test for the Nephites, as well as a test for the prophet Nephi. The Lord is in every detail.

Questions and Answers

Would you expect similar modern tests to come forward among the various peoples of this nation? Nephi’s prophetic experience here seems to have been very well publicized even after the initial very public outworking of the account, might we also see a similar level of publicity in modern equivalents? **[Yes. PR]**

Is there a way to tell when the Lord is testing us? If we ask Him, will He tell us yes, this is a test? **[Everything in life is a challenge. The Lord doesn’t test us, but allows us to struggle to develop our faith. Even when things don’t happen as expected, we learn to trust Him, as not all things are as they seem. The only real test is when we reach a point of spiritual maturity and the Lord allows Satan to test us as was Job. Not all people receive such a test. Only the servants of the Lord. PR]**

Sealing Power of Nephi – Helaman 10:1-19

1 And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them. **[What was the division amongst the people that would cause them to suddenly divide up and go leaving Nephi alone? The Adversary is a master at creating confusion.]**

2 And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

3 And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying: **[This is a distinct voice, one that Nephi recognizes. It is not heard with our normal physical senses, but by the Spirit, which cuts to the very heart. See 1 Kings 19:12, 1 Nephi 17:45, Helaman 5:30]**

4 Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unweariness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments. **[It is important to understand that the Lord watches everything we do and knows our hearts. Many believe that they are too insignificant in the vast cosmos to warrant such attention, but they underestimate the Lord. When we exercise great faith, especially toward the conversion of others, the Lord sets things in motion to help us prepare to do more as His servant.]**

5 And now, because thou hast done this with such unwearyingness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

The Lord blesses Nephi because of his “unwearyingness.” It is not that Nephi wasn’t tired, but his consistency to seek His will and exercise faith (seeking the Lord’s will and acting upon it) is what leads to the forthcoming blessing.

6 Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

This is a declaration of the God of Heaven at His Heavenly Throne, in the presence of the angels regarding Nephi’s authority to act in His name. This is a pattern in the Heavenly Realm, where God governs all things. The angels are His witnesses and the order of the Principalities will watch, assist, and record all the events related to the works of Nephi in this capacity.

7 Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth [**command in my name**] shall be sealed in heaven [**honored by God**]; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth [**curse in my name**] shall be loosed in heaven [**cursed by God**]; and thus shall ye have power among this people. [**specific to this people only**]

8 And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain [**collapse**], it shall be done.

9 And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done. [**Power to control the earth, to cause earthquakes, and level the earth.**]

10 And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.

11 And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent [**turn your heart to me**] ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction. [**both spiritual and physical**]

12 And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent. [**It would be the inclination of most after having such a powerful revelation from God to go home and think about it. To talk with your family and prepare for that mission. But Nephi, like a parent with an urgent need to save their child from danger, feels compelled to go out immediately to save others.**]

13 Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord. [**People often refuse to listen to people who tell them they need to change their lives and do that which is outside their**

comfort and lifestyle. We all know people like this and they will usually do fine until tragedy hits them.]

14 Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord **[as was received by revelation]**, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

15 And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison. **[Anyone accused of causing contention amongst the people was subject to being thrown in jail according to the will of the people, until they appeared before the judge.]**

16 But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

This is a power of the Spirit given to those who hold the sealing power. It was demonstrated by Enoch, Elijah, Jesus Christ during His mission, and the Apostle Paul. He was not translated, but his body transfigured briefly to allow for this to occur. In the Spirit, there are many things that are possible which are beyond the laws of physics.

17 And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people. **[The sealing power creates an open conduit between the person and the Lord, which creates an immediate understanding of where you are to go and who you are to speak with. The thoughts and intentions of others, and also the Adversary are made bare to Nephi. It is the ultimate authority as a servant of God in this world.]**

18 And it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, insomuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.

19 And thus ended the seventy and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Questions and Answers

Just WOW! How can we as Sisters in the Gospel of Christ be His voice? Not withstanding many thoughts and impressions I have felt, I just don't know HOW to initiate conversations to testify His truths. I want to BE a better servant in my limited knowledge of scripture. I love to speak about my personal convictions of Christ but without quoting scriptures or pointing to a tangible account, it's just my heartfelt testimony. How can I learn from others who hold the Priesthood here on Earth? My mind is a sponge soaking up all your council as well as constantly asking the Lord questions....probably too many every day but I just am excited to share what I FEEL and KNOW are truths. Further council would be terrific! **[I would simply be willing to share my love of the Lord with others. You can preach without being preachy! For example, letting people know that the Lord loves them and how it has affected your life. I wouldn't be pointing out other's faults unless**

the Spirit tells you directly to do it. In that case you are justified, because it is the Lord talking. You will be speaking with love and people will feel it unless they are past feeling. And you don't need to worry about it because when the Lord gives you that requirement you can't help but do it. PR]

I am always in awe at the level of trust Nephi was given. I have read through the Book of Mormon many times but only recently did the story of Nephi, son of Helaman, register with me. He was truly one of the great and noble ones whose story seems to be hidden in plain sight.

I have three questions.

Is this level of trust from the Lord (sealing power) rare? **[Not all prophets are given this power, so it is rare. But, before the Lord's coming there will be a greater number exercising this power than ever before in the history of the world. PR]**

Who else in the Book of Mormon was given this power? **[Alma the younger, the Three Nephites, Moroni, and perhaps others. PR]**

Did Joseph Smith have this level of trust and authority? **[He certainly had the level of trust, but the kind of sealing power exercised by Helaman is given out of necessity. Joseph's mission was different. Even the Savior did not receive the sealing power in its fullness until His mission began after He spent forty days on the Mount of Temptation. PR]**

Does everyone who receives the Sealing Power need to be temporarily transfigured?... did Jesus Christ?

Was anything given when He transfigured His disciples in Mathew 17:1-8 **[To be "transfigured" is to have your body changed as you stand in the pillar of fire, thus allowing you to converse with God and angels. It typically is not a permanent situation. The sealing power is to have the Lord declare that you have open access to a fullness of His Priesthood in a temporal world. It is like having the Spirit's access go from a garden hose to a fire hose. This occurred with the Lord on the Mount of Transfiguration, but is not the same as being translated. PR]**

Delicious stuff— Grateful P.R. for your willingness to adhere to our Lord's will with what you share. The prospect of WHOLLY coming unto Christ by relying WHOLLY upon him through the insight of scripture and personal revelation and the illumination YOU share etc, is mighty appealing. 😊 Greater light and truth (which transcends the prevalent predominate "lesser law" teachings today) has a wonderful way of inspiring one to lay hold upon all that is good and accesible through our gracious Savior.

19 And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying WHOLLY upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

20 Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

21 And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

Joseph Smith said much of the power of Elijah, to come in the last days. I feel it will involve a great servant, similar to Nephi. Joseph said, first Elias, then Elijah, then Messiah. It would appear that Joseph largely was blessed with the spirit of Elias and restoration of knowledge. However, as Joseph Smith said, “the power of Elijah is sufficient to make our calling and election sure” and will turn the hearts of true Saints truly to the Fathers. Who can we be looking for in our day, in America, to have the spirit and power of Elijah? How might he first come on the scene? **[The power of Elijah is the sealing power, which is held by the 144k. In the Last days they will be led out by the “Joseph Servant” which is a descendant of Lehi. The 144k are led by the Spirit of the Lord, but there are particular servants that play a role before the Gatherers (144k) are sent.]**

The Lord received the Sealing Power after his 40 day fast in the desert, so on the Mount of Transfiguration was this power augmented for the rest of His mission? **[It was there that Jesus was instructed on the details regarding the final requirements for the Atonement. He stood in the presence of Moses and Elijah, and the Father. Peter, James and John were also transfigured to bear the glory of the presence of God. PR]**

Was Joseph Smith transfigured for the first vision? **[Yes. PR]**

As I understand from reading your books, when we receive a Gift of the Spirit (tongues, discernment, prophecy, ect) the sealing power is activated in us for that specific gift. So what is the difference between the Gift of Healing and the healing as the Lord did? Can healing be fully activated with only exercising the gift? **[It all comes from the same source. Sealing power is a more full measure of the gifts, where it flows without any compulsion. See D&C 121:45-46. PR]**

Can women receive this sealing power? **[Yes. There will be women amongst the Gatherers that will have the sealing power. PR]**

“But, before the Lord’s coming there will be a greater number exercising this power than ever before in the history of the world. PR]” those that will exercise this power before the coming of the Lord, are those the ones receiving the BOF and and the Holy Ghost? **[They have received the BOF and the Holy Ghost, but were also called and anointed before the foundation of the world to do this. These are the Fourth Estate. PR]** How do they know when they have received it? **[Because the Lord will personally touch them and they will have an ascension. PR]** Do you start small? God knows He can trust you with it and that you will use it wisely. **[They will take about a month to acclimate before they are in full swing. PR]**

This might be a bit off topic apologies, I grew up without priesthood holders around and still struggle to understand the priesthood roles, functions etc. As I have been increasing my own spiritual relationship with the Lord and particularly as a single mum I have

noticed a decline in the previously great respect and trust I had in the power of priesthood 'holders'. No longer seeking blessings, as I receive my own detailed revelations, no longer seeking healings if my children are sick etc, as i trust in the power of my own prayers more. I cant work out how to balance my attitude so that it's not prideful, because I do believe that as a women i have access to power and miracles, revelation and of course personal relationship with Christ. Do you have any advice for women trying to balance between trusting the Lords priesthood as held by men and receiving their own power. (I hope i have explained this correctly) Thank you so much. **[That is not a uniquely women's view, as many men also feel they can go straight to the Lord for relief via revelation, or healings. Is it wrong? Only if it is done in pride. Often the blessing of receiving priesthood assistance from another is when we don't have the strength and ability to receive it on our own. As for women and the priesthood... they have the same right to experience the powers of heaven as the men. PR]**

"It is important to understand that the Lord watches everything we do and knows our hearts. Many believe that they are too insignificant in the vast cosmos to warrant such attention, but they underestimate the Lord. When we exercise great faith, especially toward the conversion of others, the Lord sets things in motion to help us prepare to do more as His servant"

If you could find a way to weave this message into every chapter, that would be great. 😊
That message, I think,... to believe that the Lord is aware of you in that detail and frequency is a key component for combating against ascension prohibiting unbelief. And is it not ironic that "belief" actually does combat against unbelief... which is why I think it is such a tricky adversarial tool.

Gadanton Expansion – Helaman 11:1-38

1 And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions **[dividing of political factions]** did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

2 And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last. **[The Gadanton knew that by creating contention based upon skin color, ideologies, and anything that would divide the people, they could use it to their benefit to control and gain power over them. The same tactic is used today.]**

3 And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

4 O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee. **[This thought was put into Nephi's heart by the Spirit of the Lord.]**

5 And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year

the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

6 And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

7 And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi. **[In the future, as the United States suffers from the effects of famine and plague, the people will both repent and become ferocious, as the righteous and wicked divide more. At this juncture the Remnant of Jacob shall come down like a whirlwind upon the wicked and cleanse much of the darkness from these places.]**

8 And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

9 And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

10 O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianon from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

11 Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.

12 O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

13 O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain. **[Even though the Lord said to Nephi that He would honor His words upon the land, Nephi continues to seek the Lord's approval and asks if it is good to lift the famine curse.]**

14 O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

15 Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

16 And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said. **[The "anger" is the translated word used to describe the Lord's actions. The Lord delivers justice according to righteousness. The word "judgment" would be a better word.]**

17 And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth, insomuch that it

did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

18 And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

19 And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness. **[The same brother that stood with him in the prison of the Lamanites on the day of their conversion.]**

20 And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east. **[The people did mingle freely with the Lamanites and spread throughout the continent.]**

21 And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people **[higher percentage]**, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

22 And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

23 And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year. **[It literally requires a steady stream of revelation to know what is truth and what is error. It takes much time and effort, continually struggling to know the voice of the Lord before such confidence in personal revelation is reached. Nephi and Lehi had developed this gift. You can too.]**

24 And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

25 And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

26 And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton. **[These Gadianton Robbers were not a part of the original Gadianton Group, but learned of their ways and adopted the dark ways into their methods.]**

27 Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

28 And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them. **[This group would be similar to modern day terrorists that also use organized crime to forward their plunder and search for power and control.]**

29 But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

30 And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

31 And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness. **[These robbers infested both the Appalachian Mountains, and later the wilderness areas of the Rocky Mountains (more so after the coming of Christ)]**

32 And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, insomuch that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land. **[This is because they could not identify them as friend or foe based on their appearance only.]**

33 Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea, and more especially their women and their children. **[They dealt in human trafficking.]**

34 Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

35 And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

36 And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways. **[How quickly people forget.]**

37 And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for destruction.

The ripening in iniquity is something that often ebbs and flows, eventually becoming fully ripe. At this point the Lord will intervene for the sake of future generations. If they are not under the everlasting covenant they are allowed to do as they wish until it interferes with the Lord's purposes, at which time they are removed.

38 And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.

Questions and Answers

It's not hard to see the ripening and the division happening...so we wait...and watch...it is almost breathtaking...and so tragic.

7 And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi. [In the future, as the United States suffers from the effects of famine and plague, the people will both repent and become ferocious, as the righteous and wicked divide more. At this juncture the Remnant of Jacob shall come down like a whirlwind upon the wicked and cleanse much of the darkness from these places.]

What is your definition of “Remnant of Jacob?” Would that be a lost tribe of Israel? Would that be inhabitants from Latin America? **[These are those who are descendants of the covenant people who remember the Lord and rise up to establish Zion in the last days. They will mostly consist of the descendants of Lehi, but also the faithful of the Gentiles. 3 Nephi 21:22 PR]**

Reading the Book of Mormon I have to wonder sometimes, where are all their people’s evidence today? Instruments, weapons, records, buildings, whole cities ect... everything from the Nephites, Lamanite’s to the Gadianton Robbers in the mountains. Their civilization would have had far more materials than Native American tribes proceeding the Book of Mormon times. **[The only thing of the Babylonians that survived is that which was made of stone. The Nephites did not use stone. They used timber and cement (adobe). There is much that has survived in terms of mounds and walls, and other artifacts. PR]**

Vs 7: Is the Remnant of Jacob found among MS-13? **[Central America contains both native and Spanish blood. Some of the native blood has some of the original Remnant of Jacob, but only a small amount. I cannot say whether MS-13 would qualify as such. When the time comes that the Remnant of Jacob begins to rise it will come up from the south, but it will not be a gang of that nature. It will be led by a man of God. PR]**

By “come up from the south” do you mean the southwestern states (New Mexico/Arizona/Nevada/Texas) or south of the border in Mexico? **[I don’t know for sure. PR]**

What were the Nephites swords and library records made from? Would any of these have survived today? **[Most of their swords were made from a material called ziff. A formula using iron and other additives. These swords would have corroded over time. Much of their writings were on parchment and hides, which unless sealed up would also deteriorate. The most prized records were on plates, which were buried up. There is more than one place where records are stored, but the most prominent is the Hill Shim. PR]**

... some think there’s a conspiracy to hide all artifacts and remains in the North American content of developed past civilizations.

Where is evidence for the pre-flood civilization? **[All over the world. Most anything that predates about 4000 BC. PR]**

Where is evidence for the pre-flood civilization and the Jaredites? Bones, etc. **[It exists, but much of it is poorly archived. PR]**

“Most of their swords were made from a material called ziff. A formula using iron and other additives.”

Is ziff like iron-nickel or nickel steel? **[It would harden like steel, but I don't know how to answer your question between those two choices. PR]**

We don't really find pioneer's cast iron frying pans laying all over the ground and that was only 200 years ago. I'm beginning to realize anything left either deteriorated or was melted down into something else long ago.

[When the time comes that the Remnant of Jacob begins to rise it will come up from the south, but it will not be a gang of that nature. It will be led by a man of God. PR]

This man of God would have the sealing powers correct? When all the plagues and calamities start, will it be this servant who commands it to start? **[The calamities that will start will be caused by both war and famine. The judgments that we read in the book of Revelations will mostly come directly from the Throne of Heaven. The Servants will use the sealing power to preserve the righteous. PR]**

[It literally requires a steady stream of revelation to know what is truth and what is error. It takes much time and effort, continually struggling to know the voice of the Lord before such confidence in personal revelation is reached. Nephi and Lehi had developed this gift. You can too.] In your comment to verse 23.....Do you have any ideas or exercises on how to make this a reality in your life? I thought if the answer was wrapped in the spirit (that feeling that accompanies when the spirit speaks)that it was the Lord. . But I am beginning to find out the adversary can mimic this. Is this feeling of mine a correct assumption? Anyways, I would appreciate any ideas you have. It seems sometimes we must wait on a fulfillment of a prompting. When you saw the Lord in person and heard His voice was that the final defining knowing? Or can Satan mimic His voice still? It is frustrating . One more thought, if you are in a sacred holy place like the temple, can Satan still deceive you ? **[The only place on earth where Satan cannot tempt you is when you are in the pillar of light, or in other words, standing in the glory of God. This only happens to me when I'm taking my holy time and am in the process of asking for forgiveness and praying in tongues. 99% of time for me I'm hearing both voices. I've heard people say that when you reach a certain point of righteousness that Satan cannot speak to you. That is a lie. Even Jesus Christ had temptations up to the moment He died on the cross. But, there is a purpose to this. The closer you get to the Lord the easier it is to discern His voice, especially after you've been with Him in an ascension. My advice is to continue to pray and listen for revelation, always asking if what you've received is from Him. The more virtue that you surround yourself with the easier it is to discern when a familiar spirit is speaking to you. For much advise on this topic refer to the book "How to Open Your Spiritual Eyes." PR]**

Grace for Grace – Helaman 12:1-26

1 And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him. **["Trust in the Lord." The most important lesson for a servant of God.]**

2 Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art **[creative method]**; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them **[The Lord can, often through His holy angels and the prayers of the righteous, speak to the minds and hearts of our enemies and foes. Remember this when you pray for assistance and you exercise faith.]**; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity. **[Why does ease and property often lead to wickedness amongst the people? Is the acquiring of wealth and fortune a greater burden than to be poor? Could you give up everything you have if the Lord required it? Do you care more for the needs of others than for your own desires? If you are blessed with wealth seek to know the Lord's will and be very cautious.]**

3 And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him. **[Often those who are of the covenant, or the people of God suffer when they fall into iniquity. The Lord allows them to stumble that they may be humbled and remember to repent.]**

4 O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

5 Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!

Why is the world so wicked and slow to come unto the Lord? The answer lies in the kind of covenants that were made before birth. Most people come into this world with no intention of following Christ or the Adversary. They just want to live. Many of the children of men are very old souls, having existed in a telestial state for a very long time. Those who are born under the covenant are often the younger of souls, born in the first estate to the Father, and learning through their experiences to choose the good and reject the bitter. But, there is a time of reckoning and as the Times of the Gathering of Israel commences all must decide what they will finally choose.

6 Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.

7 O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth. **[Even the dust obeys God's command.]**
8 For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.
9 Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.
10 And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.
11 Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;
12 Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.
13 Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.
14 Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;

Mormon is describing the power of God, which is also the power of those who hold His sealing power.

15 And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun. **[The Nephites were well aware of the cosmos and the moving of the planets and stars.]**
16 And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep **[oceans and seas]**—Be thou dried up—it is done.
17 Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done. **[This has occurred historically in the days of Enoch.]**
18 And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.
19 And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.
20 And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed forever—it shall be done. **[The Lord has in the past hid up the treasures of the world and even the remains of entire civilizations. One of the miracles that will occur before the Second Coming in glory will be the discovery of entire civilizations hidden from the world by snow and ice.]**
21 And if the Lord shall say—Because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my presence—he will cause that it shall be so. **[The banishment of the damned to Outer Darkness.]**
22 And wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it shall be unto him that will do iniquity, and he cannot be saved; therefore, for this cause, that men might be saved, hath repentance been declared. **[Those of perdition are claimed by the Adversary, Satan, and the dark realm, never to be redeemed worlds without end.]**
23 Therefore, blessed are they who will repent and hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; for these are they that shall be saved. **[Those born without the law are saved from perdition, but must accept Christ to receive Eternal Life. Moroni 8:22]**

24 And may God grant, in his great fulness, that men might be brought unto repentance **[change of heart]** and good works **[covenants]**, that they might be restored **[resurrected]** unto grace for grace, according to their works. **[This is a simple definition of the Everlasting Covenant, and it extends far beyond this life. “Grace” is another word for estates or glory. The individual must pass from one estate or glory to another until they are perfected in all things.]**

25 And I would that all men might be saved. But we read that in the great and last day there are some who shall be cast out, yea, who shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord; **[Outer Darkness, or to a telestial world where the Lord does not go.]**

26 Yea, who shall be consigned to a state of endless misery, fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall have everlasting life; and they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation. And thus it is. Amen.

There is some confusion regarding the state of the damned. Yes, it is misery, but it is a conscious choice. These souls seek self gratification and dominion. No spirit is tricked or accidentally chooses Satan’s path, it is their desire. many of these spirits are as repulsed by the works of righteousness as you are by their terrible deeds.

Questions and Answers

v. 5 ...Most people come into this world with no intention of following Christ or the Adversary. They just want to live. Many of the children of men are very old souls, having existed in a telestial state for a very long time....

Are these eternal Second Estates (telestials) a combined percentage of Second Estates from other worlds who just did not exercise enough faith to obtain eternal life (3rd Estate)? For example, you have said that there are approximately 300 million children of Adam connected to this earth. Will there be a percentage of those Children of Light who made the Eternal covenant with Heavenly Father but who will not exercise enough faith, or desire not to progress, and will just become an eternal Second Estate (telestial) joining the other billions who were invited to this earth to try their chance at Eternal Life or Damnation? And once judgment (or separating and organizing according to our light) occurs, that percentage will join the other billions to transmigrate to another world to continue having experiences in the flesh? **[Yes. PR]**

[Those of perdition are claimed by the Adversary, Satan, and the dark realm, never to be redeemed worlds without end.]

Please may you put light to the “worlds without end” ?

Does it(world without end) means thé perditions going To increase darker and darker in that realm ?

Thank Pr.

[Yes, they become more dark as they progress in their realm. There is no end to its darkness. PR]

The thought of any of the house of Israel/Children of light being damned to a telestial existence is terrifying to me. I hope the percentage is small. I think you mentioned somewhere that it would be. **[It is small. PR]**

You said the souls of the children of men are very old, and lived on other telestial worlds, so I wondered, was a sent into a family that is a mixture of the covenant people and old souls? I'm a convert and most of my extended family are nonmembers, some Catholics, but not active, more of cultural type of thing, but they are the nicest people ever. They love their families, but want almost nothing to do with Christ, and then I have some that are members, that struggle being nice, and loving, more of a cultural thing too. So are we sent to rescue these old souls that have no desire to chose either way.. **[We live in the time of the gentiles, where the House of Israel bloodlines are rare and many of the covenant beings are spread throughout the gentiles today. Often a covenant being will be born into a family to help lift them, like leaven raises the dough. Those who made such covenants are drawn to the Gospel, for the Elect hear His voice and come to Him. PR]**

You say the House of Israel bloodlines are rare, what do you mean? **[That means that they are not mixed with other races. PR]**

Most of the Elect (I assume they're elect) don't seek or don't care about the Gifts of the Spirit and the Second Comforter. Is it just that most Elect don't care or that the Elect on the earth today are rare? **[When the Gatherers go forth they will gather the Elect, and they will hear their message. Today there are some awakening early, but not nearly enough. PR]**

"Today there are some awakening early, but not nearly enough."

🙄 That makes me sad. I'll give it my best.

Thank you for answering my questions. I do have another one, the souls of the children of men are very old and they are just interested in having an earthly experience, telestial life, this makes me wonder, what do they do in between these earthly lives? Spirit prison? Who decides when is time for them to be born again? And in what family line? Do they come back to the same family line? Is God still calling the shots for them like when and where they go for their probation? Sorry, I guess I had many more questions. I know one of your books touches on some of this stuff. **["Spirit Prison" is the modern term for the place where the spirits of men dwell before the resurrection. It is a prison because they are confined to this world, and basically walk the lands of their inheritance, their familiar places, and people. If they are House of Israel and under covenant, their placement is decided according to the Principality Angels and their lives are prepared. If they are not of the covenant and of the children of men, they are allowed to be born into bodies according to their family lines. Those who express desire, or have prayers offered in their behalf, are often met by angels at their death and given an opportunity to come unto Christ. At that point, they are taught and may be released from prison to the First Heaven. PR]**

Do children of men between one earth experience and the next one dwell on the other planets of our solar system and the planets with many moons represent certain dominion? **[No, this is why it is referred to as "spirit prison," as they are confined to this world. The exception are those who ascend. PR]**

Since in children of men's Spirits are confined to this earth until their next round, are they able to influence us as familiar spirits etc.? **[Yes, they can be recruited by the Adversary. PR]**

Hi P.R.

Are our spirit bodies the same colour as our mortal skins? **[Usually, yes. However a spirit can often change how they appear. PR]**

Are all first estate spirits that are born of Heavenly Father and Mother white? (I am going from what you taught a while ago that Black Africans are very old 2nd estate souls) **[Yes, they are in the image of God. PR]**

If so, what would make the skin color (spirit and physical) of these ancient souls change? Is it their choice? **[In many cases it is a kind of evolution, but sometimes from DNA manipulation. When an old soul comes into the Everlasting Covenant they usually keep their skin color and visage. The uniqueness of the physical form in the Celestial Realm is considered beautiful and a symbol of their faith and journey in the eternities. PR]**

See, I am black, and if by the grace of God I ascend to the 3rd estate I would want to remain black. Do people who do not ascend have the choice to change their skin colour? Can 2nd estate spirit beings also manipulate their appearance by will like the ascended beings can? **[Yes. PR]**

Thanks PR for being the channel through which the Lord is teaching me the baby steps. I DO AND WILL ALWAYS TRUST in Him, that as I follow the steps you so aptly detail to opening my spiritual eyes, at some point I will know my calling, and will have The Lord himself direct me to my end time mission of Gathering. This truly is Pure Revelation to me, even if it seems that the progress is so gradual.

RE: Those who are born under the covenant are often the younger of souls, born in the first estate to the Father...

Question: Who, if anyone is NOT born in the first estate to the Father? **[All people on this earth were born to the Father and were first estate at some point. This does not mean they would be outside the dominion of our God. It would be like going to a family reunion and there are the kids, the cousins, the uncles, but all come down the same line. PR]**

Thx for the additional clarity on the Everlasting covenant. I am all about CONTEXT, so it helps.

Can't wait to see what is under Antarctica, that place has always fascinated me.

Also, I look forward to your reading of Moroni 8, as your comment hints at something I have always pondered.

May God continue to bless you. And praise the Lord for the Prophet Joseph and the Book of Mormon!

“If so, what would make the skin color (spirit and physical) of these ancient souls change? Is it their choice? [In many cases it is a kind of evolution, but sometimes from DNA manipulation. When an old soul comes into the Everlasting Covenant they usually keep their skin color and visage. The uniqueness of the physical form in the Celestial Realm is considered beautiful and a symbol of their faith and journey in the eternities.

PR]”

Among the original races of men (2nd estate) who came to this earth, were any of them white like people are today? (European/Scandinavian- white skin, blue eyes, blonde and brunette hair) **[Yes. PR]**

Samuel the Lamanite – Helaman 13:1-39

1 And now it came to pass in the eighty and sixth year, the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, yea, in great wickedness, while the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

2 And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And it came to pass that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

3 But behold, the voice of the Lord **[Revelation, the word of God to Samuel.]** came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart. **[We must pay close attention to the thoughts and feelings that come into our heart, for if we are in the Spirit it will come forth as prophecy and revelation. If you have pure intent and filled with virtue it will be a spring of inspiration for you.]**

4 And it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart. **[The city of Zarahemla was surrounded by a mound with a timbered wall for protection, as built previously during the great wars.]**

5 And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people. **[A very specific prophecy regarding the fall of the Nephites.]**

6 Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

7 And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.

8 Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.

9 And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.

10 Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this

shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction. **[In this verse the word “generation” is used to mean a hundred years.]**

11 But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger **[judgment]**, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.

12 Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

What does the Lord do when a city becomes ripened in iniquity and there are still some righteous living there? Sometimes the righteous suffer before the storm, and other times they are led to safety. What determines who and how? Often the difference is those who ask the Lord for direction as to what to do.

13 But blessed are they who will repent **[turn their hearts to me]**, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

Such was the case with Sodom and Gomorrah. How wicked must a city be to earn such a judgment? There have been such evil cities before, and often they were destroyed by famine, war, or plague, but fire? To receive such a judgment would require an overly insidious decline into the Satanic cult of secret combination and their abominations that the Lord requires they be wiped clean. The city of Zarahemla was rife with the Gadiantons, human trafficking, murder, and human degradation to the extent that they were beyond saving. Samuel was sent to preach and to stand as another witness to these people before they would be wiped clean.

14 But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you **[either by murder or exile]**, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

15 Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

16 Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

17 And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

Even today there stands a great curse upon certain places in America. I don't even need to mention their names. The Spirit can point these cities out to you if you ask.

18 And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

19 For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

20 And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

21 Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

The Nephites did not have banks to store their wealth. They literally would bury their money in the ground. Samuel uses this common practice among the Nephites to teach them, like the one who hides his riches but later cannot find them again. All is lost to them because of their wickedness.

22 Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling [**seeking even more**], envyings, strifes [**contentions**], malice [**revenge**], persecutions, and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

23 For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities. [**The Lord will take away their blessings.**]

24 Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

25 And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

26 Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil. [**These were the very thoughts the people had toward Samuel as he preached to them, he discerned their hearts and prophesied according to the Spirit.**]

27 But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your

own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet. **[Many today teach such doctrine, as they preach to those eager to be justified in their sins and iniquity. Even among many who call themselves Disciples of Christ.]**

28 Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him. **[How many who are raised up among the established churches are sustained with great wealth and comfort for their positions of authority? Their words are accepted as scripture because of their position and they say to us, “All is well!”]**

29 O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people **[you will not change your ways]**, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light? **[A “blind guide” is one who has not the Spirit of God to guide them, yet sets himself up as a light. You have the blind leading the blind. How would one know that they are being led in such a manner? If the gifts of the Spirit are not in abundance – you must ask God for direction.]**

30 Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

31 And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

32 And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:

33 O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.

This passage of scripture is prophetic for our day as well. How many of us trust in our own finances, savings, investments, and wealth to protect and secure our lives. The day will come when it will be gone, taken in a moment, and all we will have is our faith and protection according to the priesthood within us. Wealth is a slippery thing if not managed properly. Trust in the Lord.

34 Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

35 Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

36 O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them. **[In the last days the only protection of any value will be our ability to receive**

revelation because we have an established relationship with the Lord. Such a commodity can only be acquired by consistent repentance.]

37 Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days. **[And such is our day.]**

38 But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.

It is almost impossible to repent when destruction is at the gate. Fear is not enough to make us clean. The Adversary fears the power of God, they cry and howl, but are only pushed back and sent away because theirs is not a true repentance. To repent is to seek God out of love and desire to know Him, to give away your sins because you want to be with Him. Often it requires a time of cultivation to make way for the fruit to come.

39 O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.

I then asked the Lord about Samuel the Lamanite. I wanted to understand more about who he was and what he did. I did not expect the scope of the question and the beautifully weaved tapestry of backstory that Samuel brings.

The following text is from my personal journal having had an experience with the Lord. Pray for your own confirmation:

I then asked the Lord about Samuel the Lamanite. I wanted to understand more about who he was and what he did. I did not expect the scope of the question and the beautifully weaved tapestry of backstory that Samuel brings.

Samuel was indeed among the 2000 sons of Helaman, the people of Ammon who had been brought out from the Lamanites after their conversion. I saw in vision as the Lord showed me him as a young man, with a thin build, eager to serve the Lord in all things.

I saw him standing upon the wall. He looked to be in his thirties, but it is hard to tell. He had a look in his eyes that looked older. His eyes were filled with love and wisdom. His hair was black. I didn't notice much gray. It was cropped to the neck and his hair pulled straight back. He wore a natural white colored coat with a narrow crimson neck scarf that went down to his waste when it draped around his neck. His family tapestry was attached to his belt under his coat. It must have been in the fall, because it was cooler outside. He was very lean and reminded me of some of these marathon runners. He had no facial hair and his skin was darker. I felt the Spirit greatly as I watched him preach to the people from the

wall. He was imploring them, almost crying as he spoke. He came day after day to different locations along the wall.

The Lord then expanded the vision to help me understand more of who Samuel was. His grandmother was Abish, who was instrumental in helping the people of Ammon convert to the Lord. She had been given a dream where she was told that her posterity would bring forth great prophets to the Lord, something she held close to her heart and very sacred. Samuel lived in the land of Jershon, but moved just southeast of Zarahemla for a time. His son's name was Isaiah, and would become one of the twelve chosen disciples of the Lord in Bountiful, and the third of the three Nephites that would be translated. He was considered a Nephite, because the word was used as a social designation in that context. The Lord reminded me that He was in every detail. My heart felt it would gush forth in joy as this information was shared to me.

Questions and Answers

One of the things that has stood out to me so much as I've read your Book of Mormon posts is that preparing ourselves spiritually is more important than anything. I often talk with family members and friends who are preparing in some physical way for "the end" or just retirement. Food storage, solar panels, 401ks, housing investments, stock investments. Oftentimes they're not interested in asking the Lord what they need to do to prepare. They lean to their own wisdom and understanding.

Sometimes when reading about the things that are going to come upon the nation and world it's very tempting to start thinking and planning for what I would do. I've gotten caught up in researching earthquake retrofits, solar panels, mass food storage and reading everything earthly about what to do in a disaster situation without counseling with the Lord.

I have loved and appreciated your counsel to seek the Lord and ask him what to do. Then we can with confidence "prepare" in some physical way according to his knowledge and will rather than our own.

I added more information in Helaman 7 from my personal experience with the Lord. Pray for your own confirmation as you read the amended journal entry. PR

Vs 34 & 35: Does the "slippery" possessions mean they are being stolen or literally disappearing from this realm because of the curse? **[They are stolen and lost. In some cases swallowed by the earth. PR]**

"Fear is not enough to make us clean. The Adversary fears the power of God, they cry and howl, but are only pushed back and sent away because theirs is not a true repentance."

Huh, interesting. So when we repent but of fear we are like the adversary? **[The adversary does not repent. They withdraw. Unless they are in Spirit Prison, repent and choose to go to the light of God.PR]**

A lot of prophets in the scriptures preach eternal damnation (which we know now does not occur in the traditional Christian/Mormon school of thought), fear and guilt. Why does God have them do this if He Himself is love and wants repentance out of love? **[The prophet's role is to call a people to repentance. For a covenant people the prophet is required to remind them of the consequences of disobedience. PR]**

“Such was the case with Sodom and Gomorrah”... “To receive such a judgment would require an overly insidious decline into the Satanic cult of secret combination”
Growing up in the church, many of us have heard many times that Sodom and Gomorrah was destroyed over the sin of homosexuality. I still hear that today. But to set the record straight, you are saying in actuality the cause for its destruction was not simply homosexuality but secret combinations? (satanic oaths, human trafficking and human sacrifice)... which makes sense, at Lots house the men of Sodom wanted to actually rape them.

Are these the same conditions that lead to the Lord commanding Israel to destroy the Cannanite/Amorite tribes? **[The Satanic cults combine every kind of depravity. God is merciful by destroying these people to preserve the innocent. PR]**

I have often wondered about Samuel the Lamanite. Who was he? How was he called by God? Where did he come from...the Land of Lehi or from the North? Did he have some sort of family connection with Nephi? What I mean by that is did he come from the “Priesthood” line like so many descendants of King David had claim of “Kingship”. Sorry I don’t have better terms to describe specifically the blood and covenant connections I am speaking of that could have been part of a family line preparatory for his mission. Also is Samuel the Lamanite a type and shadow of the End Time Lamanite Servant – Joseph? **[Good questions. I plan to ask the Lord more about Samuel. PR]**

I have always found the story of Samuel the Lamanite to be fascinating. Nephi, son of Helaman, grandson of Alma the younger, great grandson of Alma... A prophet who had been given the sealing power from the Father... Nephi is “the” prophet and yet God calls on Samuel to deliver his warning to the people of Zarahemla. In my religious heritage, I’ve been taught that “the” prophet is God’s mouthpiece and yet... Here stand Samuel on the wall... Obediently delivering God’s words. For me there is great application for today.

Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle. Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land. When I think of this scripture in relation to us on a national level it looks quit bleak, To have our tools taken from us would be to have our manufacturing and production capabilities stop producing. To have our swords taken from us would be equivalent to having our great defense capability destroyed and to have our treasures slip from us would be like our whole financial system collapsing. You seem to indicate this in your book. I wonder if it will occur in the order that Samuel puts it, meaning will we see our manufacturing go first and then our defense and then then our banking system. I guess it really doesn’t matter, it looks like once one thing hits the fan everything else will

follow.

One thing of interest to me with this chapter is Samuel predicting the Nephi destruction in 400 years. Why would they care? We gentiles hardly think of what is going to happen in a one, two or five years little lone 400 years from now. If someone came up to us and told us that in 400 years America would be wiped out and no longer exist we would hardly care less. I'm left to wonder if the Nephites thought differently than we do on future events. It almost seems to me that they had a belief in some kind of multiple probation where they would somehow be connected with that destruction.

We see the same kind of thing in 3 Nephi when Jesus is telling the Nephites of future events. He tells them that both they and their seed will see the fall of the gentiles. Do you have any insights on that? **[He was speaking of their descendants, the modern Native Americans who would rise up in the last days. Often prophetic utterances focus upon generations and future posterity. It may not mean as much to them at the moment, but it is recorded and has great importance to those who read it later and realize the power of God unto the fulfillment of His words. PR]**

[The adversary does not repent. They withdraw. Unless they are in Spirit Prison, repent and go to the light of God.PR]

But Sons of Perdition cannot repent, what do you mean by the Adversary? **[In the realm of the adversary there are Sons of Perdition (higher level of Satan's servants), there are those of perdition (damned souls who have made covenants with Satan), and evil spirits (disembodied spirits doing Satan's bidding to seek favors). The disembodied spirits do most of what we see on a basic level with much of the havoc that occurs in our daily lives. Their fate is not sealed and if the Lord instructs a servant to intervene they can still seek repentance. It doesn't happen very often, but can occur. There are too many spiritualists that try to commune with these spirits and personally teach them of Christ. Without direct revelation from the Lord and His involvement it can be extremely dangerous. PR]**

Thank you for sharing this amazing addition of Samuel the Lamanite! My heart is about to burst at how beautiful this is.

"He was considered a Nephite, because the word was used as a social designation in that context. The Lord reminded me that He was in every detail."

How much of the details is the Lord involved in? What are names our on earth? **[Our lives are like a finely woven tapestry, especially those who are born in the covenant. PR]**

Did you see the arrows being shot at Samuel on the wall? **[I saw them from a perspective close to him, like standing next to him. They came within inches and at times seemed to actually veer away, many at once. I could hear the sound of the arrows and see his clothing and hair move from the wind created by this. This continued for only a short time and he turned to go back down the wall. PR]**

OH THANK YOU so much how wonderful!!!

Samuel spoke on the wall in 6 b.c. and Helaman lead the 2000 striping warriors in 66 b.c... that would mean Samuel was in his 70's when he preached to the Nephites. Why did he look to be in his 30's? **[That is a good question. When I write what I see in my journal the descriptions are very raw as I describe my impressions and the details I see. Let me give some more understanding regarding what I saw of Samuel: In the vision the Lord gave me I descended to the right shoulder of Samuel as he was upon the wall. I saw him best from this angle for about 5 seconds, before the angle changed and I was looking at him from about 20 feet away down below. I then was right next to him on his right as the arrows were shot at him. My impression when I first saw him was that he was thin, reminding me of a dark skinned marathon runner. I noticed a little grey, but his hair was dark. His eyes looked old, even wrinkled, but his skin was mostly tight. After my experience with the Lord I wondered how old he was? I had no idea, because I had not paid any attention to the timeline. Whether he had been translated, I did not know. He seemed both young and old at the same time. I remember as I wrote my impressions wondering whether he was in his late forties or thirties. When I write "it seems" or something to that nature it means that I am not clear for myself. I will need to ask the Lord for more information to understand his age more clearly.**

Another thought that comes to mind: When people read my notes on these Book of Mormon chapters I know there will be things written that at times make no sense. As I began this undertaking as the Lord commanded me, I wondered how many mistakes I would make along the way. I am certainly no scholar of scripture by the world's standards. I don't consult any scriptural commentary, or prescribed theories to the meaning of different passages. I don't check much of what I write. It is raw and from the Spirit. As a reader it is upon you to study, ponder, and pray for your own confirmation. Often, the Lord gives us just enough information to either ask more questions, or to choose to disengage because what we have learned does not match our current perception. When I realized that I had written that Samuel seemed to be in his "thirties" and he clearly was older I wondered why I had written that. I will keep it that way in the text and trust in the Lord there is a reason, and seek further understanding. PR

First off – THANK YOU! Secondly- Thank you again! Without this format added to my personal study, I would be lost at times. Last, can you explain more about Samuel's family tapestry?? His earthly family or possibly something more "eternal?" Or was it more of a Native American heirloom fabric identifying their peoples?? Thanks PR **[It was some kind of special weaving that they would tie to their belt, unique to each family. It would contain symbols, colors, and meaning to them. I only saw quickly and it was colorful and seemed to have much detail. PR]**

The Signs of His Coming – Helaman 14:1-31

1 And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written. **[Cannot be included in the Book of Mormon record because the amount was so large.]**

2 And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

3 And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day. **[The Lord manifests the big events to this earth with a sign in the heavens. This has always been the pattern used by the Throne of God to witness of His works.]**

4 Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born. **[A mystery. I will ask the Lord.]**

5 And behold, there shall a new star arise **[in addition to the night without darkness]**, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

I saw the star, kind of low on the horizon. It was the combining of two stars and was bright and I knew it was the star talked about in scripture. (personal journal)

6 And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

I asked the Lord, “What were the signs that manifest themselves according to the prophecies of Samuel?” I saw the vision open as the Lord spoke to me. Soon after Samuel gave his prophecy there began to be an increase in solar flare activity. The Northern lights could be seen all the way down to the area where Zarahemla was in the current state of Missouri. When Christ was born there was a massive solar flare ejection that lit up the night sky to the extent that it appeared to be as light as day. The Lord said that such an event is a type to represent the glory of God coming down to this earth. There was also great acts amongst the righteous, not just among the people of this continent, but throughout the world, as the veil thinned and many angels appeared bearing tidings of great news regarding the birth of the Messiah. When the star made its appearance at Christ’s birth, it shined even brighter as the solar flare reached the conjunction of planets. It was certainly a light show in the heavens! (Personal Journal)

7 And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth. **[in prayer or in fear]**

8 And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life. **[Repentance is the key.]**

9 And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord. **[Today, the message is the same!]**

10 And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you. **[Yes, there was racism in ancient America. Today prophets are cast out because of their poor standing, lack of perceived authority, and their unfamiliarity of persona.]**

11 And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye might hear and know of the judgments of God which do await you because of your iniquities, and also that ye might know the conditions of repentance; **[Not just the judgements of God, but also how you may avoid them!]**

12 And also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name. **[Christ was indeed the Son of God, the creator of this Heaven and Earth, and all things from the beginning of this creation. He wants us to know the signs of His coming so that we may know Him and prepare.]**

13 And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits. **[Only through Christ can we receive the remission of sins, which is the process of ascension.]**

14 And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

15 For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord. **[This is the Atonement. We are bound to Him through His suffering, and He is bound to us if we choose Him. Without such a blood sacrifice it could not have been.]**

16 Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual. **[“All mankind,” except those who choose to reject Him and the gift. These will follow Satan to Outer Darkness. Those who do not choose to receive baptism and the Holy Ghost will not have Eternal Life, but avoid the eternal misery of Outer Darkness.]**

17 But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord. **[Through Jesus’ resurrection, we all are saved from eternal damnation. This verse alludes to the reality of progression beyond the grave.]**

18 Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness. **[The**

Spirit Prison is where all departed spirits go until they choose to come unto Christ. They linger, follow Christ, or follow Satan in those circumstances.]

19 Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second death.

20 But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead. **[This only occurs upon their land, and not a global phenomenon. I will explain this more in detail in 3 Nephi.]**

21 Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

22 Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath. **[The earth shall fracture in many places. This shall be felt globally.]**

23 And behold, there shall be great tempests **[tornados]**, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great. **[This is a prophecy concerning the Nephite lands which extended from the central northern regions of America into southern Canada.]**

24 And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

25 And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many. **[This is a use of language to explain that many of the former inhabitants and family members who have passed away shall appear to people.]**

26 And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours.

27 And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

28 And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men— **[Referring to the coming of Christ amongst them.]**

29 And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation.

These verses are important to consider in the context of those preparing for the coming of Christ in our day!

30 And now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are

free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

31 He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death; and ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

Reading Samuel the Lamanite's words are helpful in considering how the Lord would speak to us today. There is a type in these things. Who are the Samuel the Lamanites amongst us today? They are many, of all colors, races, and genders.

Questions and Answers

You probably knew this question was coming, so here it goes. Are there any signs that you can tell us of? Signs in the heavens. Will you be the one to declare the signs, or is there another with that assignment, or will there be a multitude of prophets declaring the sign or signs? Which leads me to ask also, is there a sign for any of us to watch for to know if or when Adam-Ondi-Ahmen has, or is to occur?

There is much belief amongst us, but I think a lot of us are wondering what to look for. Personally, I'd like to be able to take a deep breath at the start.

[John the Revelator has given us the whole revelation. I have commented on everything I am permitted to say in the book "A Witness of the End of Times." PR]

Samuel mentions a couple of times to believe "on" the name of Christ. I'm wondering if you (or anyone else following) has an idea why Samuel says believe "on" the name of Christ rather than "in" Christ. Perhaps these terms synonymous, though I'm coming to realize that how and where and in what and whom we place our belief is important, and getting the terminology and grammar might be helpful. Thanks! **[My understanding is that "on" implies directed towards, and "in" is to exist and abide with. It's subtle, and the word Joseph Smith felt best carried the meaning of the record's intent. PR]**

Will a similar increase in heavenly signs, northern lights activity, ect., occur before Zion? Are we in the middle of those signs right now? **[Very little has yet occurred on the kind of scale this is referring to. PR]**

Was the star a new star? Did it merge with another? I wonder if we all have a star when we are born, and it is a portal, maybe that's another link of light coming from Heaven.

[A star is any light in the heavens. In was a conjunction. PR]

"many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many." Is this what Christ asked Nephi, why they didn't write it down, that many saints raised up from the dead, in 3Nephi. **[The Lord knew which particulars were not included in the record as spoken by Samuel. I do not know what those particulars are. PR]**

Lamanite Prophecy – Helaman 15:1-17

The words of Samuel the Lamanite continued:

1 And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate. **[You will lose everything and have nothing.]**

2 Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish. **[This is reminiscent to the Lord's words in Matthew 24:19-21 referring to the last days.]**

3 Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

This verse gives us a glimpse into the reasoning behind the Lord's motives. Why does a parent discipline a child? It should not be out of anger, but for love, knowing that such action will help to instruct the child so they do not err again. The discipline is given in a measured and thoughtful manner. The Lord passes judgment against His chosen people when they step outside the bounds of propriety to help correct them and preserve their covenants if possible. If they become ripe in iniquity (beyond return) He removes them to limit the degree of abomination on future generations. He is truly merciful.

4 But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days. **[The word "hated" in this context is to have His face turned away from them. It is not used in the negative connotation as is used today.]**

5 And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly **[cautiously]** before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

6 Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them **[Lamanites]** are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily. **[They had a great missionary zeal.]**

Missionary work creates anxiety for many who are followers of Christ. Only a prophet is called personally by the Lord to stand before a people and call them to repentance and prophesy to them. Most who are servants of the

Lord are required to do it a different way, to preach nothing but repentance to our generation. This is not to spend our time pointing out other's problems, sins, and mistakes, but to express our love to the Lord with others and invite and encourage them to also partake. It is to live an example of the believer, a disciple of Christ. As we hunger and thirst after righteousness we are led by the Holy Ghost to know what, where, when, and how to be a servant of the Lord. As we progress spiritually we will exercise the gifts of the Spirit to the extent that we begin to prophesy and to do works like unto Samuel.

7 And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them— **[What is this “change of heart?” To repent is to turn your heart to God, and there is a literal change. The ultimate change of heart is the remission of sins which comes by the reception of the Gift of the Holy Ghost.]**

8 Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free. **[Made “free” from the blood and sins of this world, born again in Jesus Christ – the reception of the Holy Ghost.]**

9 And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ. **[Referring to the group of Lamanites called Ammonites, the people of the Sons of Helaman.]**

10 And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their **[former]** iniquity—

11 Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth— **[2 Nephi 3:11, 24, 3 Nephi 21:4-12]**

12 Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times **[in the near future of our day]** the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them. **[This is a very exact prophecy regarding the American Indian.]**

13 And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep. **[This has not yet occurred.]**

14 Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent. **[because the Nephites shall be utterly destroyed]**

15 For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief. **[Samuel explains why their judgment is more harsh than the Lamanites. To be a witness of mighty works gives a higher expectation that those who are influenced by false traditions of their fathers. Many of the Nephites went from a righteous people to turning away within a short period of time.]**

16 Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom **[understanding the full picture according to God's works]** they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

17 And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the Lord.

Questions and Answers

I just learned while reading vs 12 that in Joseph's day, the Trail of Tears and driving of the Native Americans from their land did not begin until around the time of an 1832 Georgia ruling and other events that occurred through 1840 and beyond. (Trail of Tears was 1836.) Joseph was done translating the plates around July 1829. These events were still a few years future in his time when this portion was translated. I had never realized that before this revelation came into my mind!

“The ultimate change of heart is the remission of sins which comes by the reception of the Gift of the Holy Ghost.” I thought BOF was remission of sins and Gift of the HG was increase in light and glory. Is it correct to say that a remission of sins specifically comes when receiving the Gift of the HG and that the BOF is becoming clean and pure of heart? Thank you **[The way I phrased that is confusing. The “change of heart” is the reception of the gift of the Holy Ghost which comes through the baptism of fire for the remission of sins. PR]**

Where is Your Heart? – Helaman 16:1-25

1 And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not **[A requirement for baptism was to confess their sins, or rather confess the need to be made clean through Christ.]**, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord. **[It is interesting how**

one prophet works with another through the Lord coming from different places.]

2 But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

3 Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized. **[For some it takes a miracle to believe. More blessed are those who come to repentance without a sign. Why is that? Because those who seek signs are easily influenced by the Adversary. Often the first test of their faith leads to great despair.]**

4 For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

5 Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins. **[How many true prophets today are prophesying of the second coming of Christ? Many, as if on the wall of the city, are preaching repentance while they are mocked and marginalized by the public. How do you know if it is a true prophet? There are some things to look for. They will not praise you and say all is well, but will call you to repentance, to seek a closer relationship with the Lord, to seek the gifts of the Spirit, to keep the commandments given of God, and to seek the Lord's will in all things.]**

6 But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him. **[The people tried to assault Samuel with deadly weapons, like shooting a firearm today, and yet they were not successful. They knew it was something supernatural, but would not admit it to be the power of God. They called their version of the police to take him into custody, but Samuel was able to escape.]**

7 And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.

8 And behold, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.

9 And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

10 And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.

11 And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

12 And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.

13 But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled. **[I will need to ask the Lord more concerning this.]**

14 And angels did appear unto men, wise men **[men and women of God]**, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

15 Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts **[they would not believe]**, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:

16 Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.

17 And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

18 That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

19 Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?

[This is the language many use today when discussing the Second Coming of Christ? “It is not reasonable...”]

20 But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true. **[Christianity is often described as a controlling religion, only to be used to subjugate and prevent people from free speech. This is only the case when government and church combine to rule, but if kept autonomous it can be a beautiful balance for good.]**

21 And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives. **[They considered the prophetic events as something like astrology, or fortunate coincidences.]**

22 And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come. **[Mormon uses the phrase, “to imagine up in their hearts.” This means to only see what one wishes according to their own paradigms or reality. This is why the heart is the key to revelation. When our hearts are soft and broken, willing to believe all that the Lord wishes to give us, we are open to receive the gifts of the Spirit. The word “imagination” has a negative connotation in today’s society. However, if**

combined with a broken heart in Christ, it is the seed of faith and opens the windows of heaven for the faithful.]

23 And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

24 And thus ended the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

25 And thus ended the book of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman and his sons.

Questions and Answers

I would love to know more about Samuel the Lamanite. Where did he come from and where did he go after this? How did he awaken to his calling as a prophet? Is he an example of what the Josephic servant will be like in the end of times? **[I plan to ask the Lord. PR]**

I am so thankful for your literal breakdown of scripture. Like clock work, you touched upon the very questions and exact words impressed upon my mind and heart this AM. Everywhere we turn today, rhetoric is the weapon of choice for the wicked. Holding tight to the iron rod/word of God is now more of a blanket of comfort and protection that I am seeing in my own life. Is this equivalent to the “confounding of languages” spoken of in Babylon? Not so much a foreign language but more language of confusion to create conflict in our time? Just love you and your absolute testimony of the Savior. **[When the tower of Babel fell, the Lord caused that the people could not work together, as their language differences broke them apart to go their own ways. I suppose this occurs in a way when the wicked and righteous choose to separate. It was more dramatic after the fall of Babel. PR]**

Note from vs 22: “When our hearts are soft and broken”

I read this and asked again “What does ‘broken’ mean?” since I haven’t received a clear answer before. Into my mind came “broken like a horse”. This makes SO much more sense! Our hearts become gentle, more accepting, more patient and we are willing to wait, be taught, learn and try to do good!

[Edit], the Lord used this same analogy with me 2 years ago when I was studying D&C 59 intensely . I love the second witness that this is one of the correct understandings of broken.

PR, were these repented Nephites baptized for the second time in their life? I assume they were baptized and in their recognized fallen state they felt they needed to be baptized again? If so, were Nephi and Lehi prompting them to be baptized again or was that the tradition of the Nephites to be baptized again due to their great repentance? **[Baptism can occur when one first accepts Christ and they are baptized unto repentance, but can also come as a baptism unto renewal. It depends upon the individual. PR]**

3 Nephi

There Was No Night – 3 Nephi 1:1-30

As a note: the various books within the Book of Mormon were originally not given chapter headings. Also, the original Book of Mormon manuscript was presented to the publisher without any punctuation or chapter divisions. The following caption was written by Mormon to precede the Book of 3 Nephi, as it was named.

And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, the king of Judah. **[Here we are given an exact timing of when Lehi left Jerusalem.]**

1 Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

2 And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, **[Where did he go? He seems to have followed the pattern of Alma the Younger. I will inquire of the Lord.]** who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem. **[The plates of brass were the bedrock of the Nephites scriptural record.]**

3 Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

May I ask what happened to Nephi, the son of Helaman? It says at the end of Helaman that he left Zarahemla and was never heard of again? He handed the records over to His son, also Nephi. The Lord said that he went to preach to the same people his grandfather Alma had been. Nephi knew what had occurred with his grandfather and had seen him in the spirit. These people had begun to waver and the prayers of the righteous had made it possible for Nephi to go to them. Nephi followed much of the same course as did Alma, going North into the region near Alaska and then going down the coast toward California. Nephi was older and filled with desire to help these people like his grandfather had done. He handed the records over to his son, also named Nephi, and began his journey. The people were called Marantah, or that's how it sounded to me. They were a mix of Nephite, Lamanite, and had some other race too. Many were white skinned. Nephi ended his time among them and went south to almost the same area where he too was translated and taken up to heaven. Both he

and Alma helped to prepare the final record, assisting Moroni before the record was sealed up. Both of them are no longer in a translated state. (Personal Journal)

4 And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

5 But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

6 And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

7 And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

8 But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain. **[This shows the great influence the prophet Samuel (the Lamanite) had amongst the people. His words regarding the coming of Christ were considered scripture to them and recognized by the unbelievers as the standard of their belief regarding His coming.]**

9 Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

10 Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

11 And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers. **[Reminds me somewhat of the story of Esther in the Old Testament. The people about to be destroyed because of their belief in God.]**

12 And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord **[clear revelation]** came unto him, saying:

13 Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfil all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

14 Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world **[since the Council of Heaven before the population of this world]**, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son **[a combined effort]**—of the Father because of me **[Jesus' Spirit]**, and of the Son because of my flesh **[Jesus' body]**. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

This verse is significant for two reasons: first, it emphasizes the manner in which the Lord operates amongst His people. He requires them to exercise faith, even until the last second. He reveals his will to Nephi the day before

He is to be born. The second thing this shows is that the Lord had not yet entered the body of the fetus to be born. The Lord has told me that it is the choice of the spirit as to when it will enter the body in the womb. The spirit does not usually enter the body at conception, but much later, often just before it is ready to be born.

15 And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

Similar miracles will occur at Christ's coming, yet they will be in reverse: there will be no light in many places due to catastrophes, and then there will be no darkness, as light rises and envelops the earth at His coming. The Lord always shows great signs and wonders in the heavens to announce His great works. When these signs begin to occur in abundance you will know that the countdown has begun and a rapid escalation will occur preceding the Lord's coming.

16 And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand. **[In a like manner shall the world fall down when they see the great sign of the coming of the Lord, the light coming out of the east. It will appear as a planet or new star approaching, and will cause fear to overwhelm the wicked.]**

17 And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth **[the American continent]** from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

18 For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

19 And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given. **[Where did this light come from? I have yet to inquire of the Lord.]**

20 And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.

21 And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word. **[This star was a conjunction, which arose from the eastern horizon.]**

22 And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen **[people began to have other explanations to dismiss what had occurred, much like how some scientists**

dismiss miracles today]; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

23 And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. **[The Holy Ghost was bestowed upon them.]** And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.

24 And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures. **[They did not understand that Christ's birth was not the end of the law, but the beginning of His life, which would end in the fulfillment of the law.]**

25 But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults. **[Even among the Nephites there were many diverse opinions concerning doctrines and religion, similar to today but more limited.]**

26 And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.

27 And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

28 And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to increase in a great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land. **[The Nephite version of organized crime amongst their people. These Gadiantons used many of the Satanic oaths to gain power.]**

29 And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to join those Gadianton robbers.

30 And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising generation. **[Mormon specifically notes that after the countdown to Christ's coming, after the sign had been given, the people began to turn toward darkness, specifically the "rising generation."]**

In America today, the rising generation is more at risk than any time in the history of our country. It took 33-34 years before Christ came to America after the sign of the night without darkness. What is the sign for this generation and how long will our last rising generation ripen in iniquity

before His coming in glory? (Read more details at “A Witness of the End of Times.”)

There is a type to this, and it doesn't mean the years will match, but the pattern should be prayerfully considered.

Questions and Answers

Is there any connection with Moroni atop the Temples? I have never truly asked but have heard different opinions. Thoughts?? Is this a sign or type of sign to the Gatherers? Or symbolic of Adam on Diahman and the Council? My heart and mind is racing with questions.! **[Moroni said he was not pleased that a representation of his image is used atop the LDS temples. A golden statue, trumping a horn on top of the “House of the Lord.” PR]**

There are quite a few words underlined, is there a reason for that? **[No, I fixed it. PR]**

Hi P.R

You have mentioned before that for all mortals, the combining of spirit and body while in the womb is done via a sacred ordinance. Who does this ordinance? **[The Principalities Angels. PR]**

So a spirit can choose when to enter the fetus. So now my next question is about abortions. Do spirits still enter their assigned bodies despite having full knowledge that their mortal bodies will be destroyed? **[I don't know. PR]**

If they do, how does that benefit them?

Are there situations where an abortion is justifiable in extremely sensitive and life-threatening instances where perhaps the Lord allows it through revelation to the affected parties?

Vs 5: Why did some think that the time had passed for Samuel's (really the Lord's) words to be fulfilled?

I wondered if it was because the Lord is so generous in His time that when they were told by Samuel in Helaman 14:2 that five years more cometh, that meant they would have all of the current year plus five more years after the end of the current year (so closer to six years) to prepare to see the sign of His birth? **[It is the principle of the Last Second. The Lord always comes through, but often when we think that the time is past. In the minds of the wicked Nephites the time had lapsed. PR]**

Yes! This rising generation is being assaulted. It came fast and it seems to have come with unlimited availability of internet. I've seen a definite difference between my older and younger children in this regard. My very most faithful friends have the very most “turned” children. It hurts my heart like no other. I went over the “Witness to End of Times” and one particular sign doesn't stand out as a sign like Samuel spoke of—unless it's the American eclipse a few years ago which means we have about 5 more years before the next one? I never hear prophecy with time or dates associated, except for Samuel. Is this because of the conditional nature of prophecy? Can you clarify at all?

[Very rarely are exact times given by a prophet of the Lord. We are usually given a sign in the heavens to mark the event, but in the case of Jesus's birth they were given a number of years. That particular prophecy tripped up many of the Nephites and tested their faith. PR]

Just lil ok me with another question:) sorry if i bug!! When talking about Day and Night, I realize it's according to separation aka in the beginning he created Day and Night. You asked "what" the sign is given in our day before Christ comes and after reading this again, is it concerning Days without light? Or Without A type of glory? Light not shining? Make any sense what I'm trying to ask?? **[Christ's birth brought a day without night, and His death brought days with no light. Before His coming there will be days without light in some places, but His coming in glory will flood the earth with light like nothing ever experienced before. PR]**

You have mentioned before that for all mortals, the combining of spirit and body while in the womb is done via a sacred ordinance. Who does this ordinance? [The Principalities Angels. PR]

Is there written somewhere more about this ordinance? Have you seen it? Can you talk more about it? **[I'm only aware of it and saw only a glimpse. I do not know of any scripture that mentions it. PR]**

From your journal entry, "Both him and Alma helped to prepare the final record, assisting Moroni before the record was sealed up. Both of them are no longer in a translated state. (Personal Journal)"

— What do you mean by both are no longer in "translated" state? **[Translation of the body occurs for a specific purpose. When that purpose is fulfilled the individual is resurrected. PR]**

Yes, when I previously asked if translation was a state available to anyone you mentioned that it occurs for a specific purpose. What I am wondering now is, why couldn't Alma and others have been taken up to heaven via death. If they had completed their mission without the need of being translated, what was the purpose of it? Because if they were able to achieve this state once they finished their work on earth wouldn't it be available to all who were in a similar position and relationship with God? Thank you **[They were translated because there was a purpose. Later, after fulfilling that purpose, their bodies were resurrected in perfection. PR]**

"These Gadiantons used many of the Satanic oaths to gain power."

Are satanic oaths being sworn today by people in power? If yes, are they the same oaths as the ones Gadianton used?

What does the Lord have in place today to provide "opposition in all things" to the Gadianton/ Satanic oaths? What is the "light" version of the satanic oaths? **[Yes, they are used today and very similar to the ancient rites. Those seeking Christ and coming to Him are the opposite, which also requires us to make covenants with the Lord. PR]**

The people Nephi went to teach, as well as Alma had before him, Were a mixed of Nephites/ Lamanites and other race, do you know where that other race you mentioned came from? Were they from the house of Israel? And did they spread all the way down central and South America? **[I do not know. PR]**

Does one have to go through a temple and it's ceremonial rites in order to make covenants with Christ? **[The only covenant needed to receive Eternal Life is the Everlasting Covenant. We witness to the Father at baptism that we are ready and then when we receive the baptism of fire and gift of the Holy Ghost the covenant is consummated. All ordinances in the temple are simply to prepare the individual for future progression in the Everlasting Covenant. They do not guarantee anything, but prepare the mind and spirit for what may be. PR]**

Escalation of Internal Strife – 3 Nephi 2:1-19

1 And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen— **[And so it will be in the end of times, as the world ripens in iniquity, and the judgments of God increase. People will refuse to acknowledge that these are events foretold and by the hand of God. They will justify and attribute them to natural courses of nature, even blaming “climate change” and other natural forces for what is occurring.]**

2 Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

3 And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

4 And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the ninety and ninth year;

5 And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

6 And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

7 And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

8 Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.

9 And Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.

May I ask what happened to Nephi, the son of Helaman? It says at the end of Helaman that he left Zarahemla and was never heard of again? The Lord said that he went to preach to the same people his grandfather Alma had been. Nephi knew what had occurred with his grandfather and had seen him. These people had begun to waver and the prayers of the righteous had made it possible for Nephi to go to them. Nephi followed much of the same course as did Alma, going North into the region near Alaska and then going down the coast toward California. Nephi was older and filled with desire to help these people like his grandfather had done. He handed the records over to his son, also named Nephi, and began his journey. The people were called Marantah, or that's how it sounded to me. They were a mix of Nephite, Lamanite, and had some other race too. Many were white skinned. Nephi ended his time among them and went south to almost the same area where he too was translated and taken up to heaven. Both he and Alma helped to prepare the final record, assisting Moroni before the record was sealed up. (Personal Journal)

10 And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.

11 And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

12 Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

13 And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

About 20 years before Christ would come to them the internal wars against the secret combinations intensified to the extent that it became a matter of survival. It was no longer about the division of skin color (Lamanites and Nephites), but the battle against those who valued freedom and those who sought to rule by force and depravity.

14 And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

15 And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites; **[There did appear to be lightening of complexion, as their children looked more and more Nephite. Not that their skin suddenly lost its**

pigment. It was a noticeable difference in their countenance compared to the Lamanites that were among the Gadianton.]

16 And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.

17 And it came to pass in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

18 And thus ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

19 And thus ended the fifteenth year, and thus were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

The war escalates.

Questions and Answers

Vs 16: “And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair“

Does this verse mean the youth became fair to look upon? **[Their countenance. It is only a trial if it becomes an idol. Any time a person excels beyond the standard of others there is the temptation of pride. But if they remain centered on the Lord it is a blessing to them. PR]**

Is beauty considered a good gift or a challenge/trial in this mortal life?

Will the signs in our day become more obvious? (For example, I don't know the stars and constellations so the Revelation 12 sign in the sky on 9/23/17 I had to learn about from others.) To me it seems that a lit-up night would be easy to see by all of the Nephites. Will we see signs this obvious? **[They will be exact fulfillment of prophecy, and yet the world will explain it away. PR]**

(I doubt my husband will believe it is the last days until it is raining fiery brimstone during an earthquake in the middle of a hurricane.)

Why was the Nephites receiving darker skin a curse, and the lightening here the curse being lifted? **[When the Nephites and Lamanites first began to separate the Lord put a skin of darkness upon the Lamanites to separate them. Later, it was not a curse, but a sign of their heritage, and their blessing. PR]**

When Nephi senior went away, did his wife go with him? I wonder the same about Alma the younger...or had they, the wives, already died? Where they in their older age when they took this journey? **[Alma the younger's wife had already passed away. I don't know what the case was with Nephi's wife. They were older in age. PR]**

Preparing for Gadianton War – 3 Nephi 3:1-26

1 And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land [**he was the governor of the land, but not the chief judge**], received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; and these were the words which were written, saying:

2 Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right and liberty; yea, ye do stand well, as if ye were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country, or that which ye do call so.

3 And it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that ye should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety for the word—Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

4 And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

It is important to understand that these are not people like the Lamanites which the Nephites contended with in battle before. The Gadianton are Luciferian and participate in dark oaths. The Kingdom of the Adversary see themselves as a form of righteousness, where good is evil and evil is good. To them, Satan is the giver of all earthly desires and blessings.

5 Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.

6 Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.

7 Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance. [**This tactic of flattery and an offer in the face of death and annihilation is how the Gadiantons tempted all who came into their path. You either convert or you die. This is the Kingdom of the Beast that shall sweep the world before the coming of Christ. This is the mark of the beast, to make an oath unto their God that you will serve him. If not, you shall be unable to live in their society and be put to death.**]

8 And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.

9 And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianton; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us. **[These acts came through Gadianton, but have existed since the days of Cain.]**

10 And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi. **[Those who participate in these secret associations see themselves as good and benevolent in a twisted kind of way. The suffering of all is of no consequence to the accomplishment of their dominion and pleasure.]**

11 And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers. **[How often today are the innocent accused of wrongs simply because of skin color, their Christian beliefs, or affiliations? Many take offense where none was intended. Many feel that the world owes them. This is the lure of the Adversary, to whip up the contention and anger of the people to seek their own desires at the expense of others. Violence and subjugation is acceptable to them as part of the process toward their ideals.]**

12 Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber; therefore he did not hearken to the epistle of Giddianhi, the governor of the robbers, but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them. **[Fortunately, the current chief judge is a man of faith, God, and prophecy.]**

13 Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

14 And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites **[one people]**, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

15 Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in nowise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers. **[This is the equivalent of repenting in sackcloth and ashes.]**

16 And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus. **[He laid out to them in detail what would occur if they did not repent with full purpose.]**

17 And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.

18 Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of all the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

19 Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge. **[In the pattern after Alma the Younger and Helaman]**

20 Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord **[for revelation]**, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

21 But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we do this he will deliver them into our hands.

22 And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend themselves against their enemies.

In this record, the prophet Lachoneus, the governor of the land, has issued a proclamation for all to gather to a central location for safety. Will something like this occur in the last days? At first there shall be many gathering around the world as people flock to places of safety. Some will be led by prophets, and others not. How will you know? Only if you have the Holy Ghost as your guide. Like the five virgins whose lamps were full, they will be ready.

23 And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful, yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation. **[This shrinks the Nephite land from Missouri to Michigan essentially. Previously, Nephite people were stretched out for more than a thousand miles.]**

24 And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the land northward. **[The Nephite people did not number in the millions, more like hundreds of thousands.]**

25 And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God, that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle.

26 And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong

with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers [**small shields**], after the manner of his instruction.

Questions and Answers

[“ In this record, the prophet Lachoneus, the governor of the land, has issued a proclamation for all to gather to a central location for safety. Will something like this occur in the last days? At first there shall be many gathering around the world as people flock to places of safety. Some will be led by prophets, and others not. “] I read prophecies by some who say there will be a “call out” to places of safety by the LDS church before these calamities come upon us in our day. Are these the places of safety you mention led by prophet? Will we remain there for long periods of time or after the calamities have happened, will we return to our homes? Or will these places be made into havens of safety where we will then live? **[It doesn’t matter who or where these “call outs” come from. Be sure to not lean on the arm of flesh and to seek personal revelation in the matter. PR]**

Will the secret combinations have “call outs” and camps where they are posed as places of safety for people? **[I don’t know. PR]**

I noticed a pattern where the people are to individually cry unto the Lord first (vs 12) and then they are gathered (vs 13). Or an answer comes and the people are told to gather.

When the proclamation to gather came, had the individual Nephites already had a revelation to prepare themselves to gather or a spiritual knowing that they would need to go to a certain place?

Did Lachoneus’ proclamation to gather serve as a second witness then? **[I do not know the answer to that. PR]**

So in this time period the people have a Governor who is a prophet (Lachoneus) an army captain who is also a prophet (Gidgiddoni) and a chief judge who is also a prophet, but we don’t know his name? I am so happy we are finally at 3rd Nephi!! Thank you.

[Lachoneus was the governor and a prophet. Refer to verse 16. Only two prophets mentioned here, but there were likely more. PR]

The Power of Prayer – 3 Nephi 4:1-33

1 And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down and to sally forth [**drive forward**] from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left desolate.

2 But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness. **[The land which had been occupied before was without wild game, and cleaned of all its food support.]**

3 And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

4 Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away. **[This is a significant amount of food stored away.]**

5 And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.

6 And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.

7 And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood. **[Many of them covered their entire bodies in blood. This was a sign of a Gadianton, representing the blood oaths in which they participated.]**

8 And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

The Nephites did not practice prayer like Christians today. Their culture of worship was not a quiet, reverent, silent expression. These people expressed to God without reservation with all their heart, might, mind, and body.

9 And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

10 But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them. **[A good example of how the power of prayer can prepare an individual to face any enemy, whether it be on the battlefield or any of the struggles of life.]**

11 And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

12 And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.

13 And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.

[Why did the prophet Gidgiddoni show no mercy? Because this was the instruction he was given of the Lord. Why did the Lord show no mercy? Because these were murderers and guilty of vile depravity upon the innocent.]

14 And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.

15 And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.

By this time, Jesus was married in Nazareth. Read in “A Witness of the Life of Christ” to understand more regarding this part of His life.

16 And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

17 Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnarihah; therefore it was Zemnarihah that did cause that this siege should take place.

18 But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

19 And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers; for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

20 And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger. **[The Gadiantons were weak and thin. They were beginning to be desperate in their attempt to win this war.]**

21 And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

22 And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnarihah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

23 And it came to pass that Zemnarihah did give command unto his people **[not just the soldiers]** that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthestmost parts of the land northward.

24 And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.

25 And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

26 And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.

27 And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

28 And their leader, Zemnarihah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

29 May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth. **[A powerful symbol to the enemy.]**

30 And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

31 And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies. **[There is a gift of the Spirit I call the “Gift of Song,” which is closely related to the gift of tongues as it relates to praise. When filled with the Spirit it is not uncommon to break out in holy song as we praise the Lord. It is led by the Spirit and often those participating create their own lyrics or even melody as a matter of praise.]**

32 Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

33 And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction. **[They had a fullness of joy in the realization of the great blessings the Lord had poured upon them. Part of the prayer that should be performed during our holy time with the Lord should be expressing gratitude and praise. In this state of contrition our spirits soar and we are able to commune with the Lord like no other way!]**

Questions and Answers

[“The Nephites did not practice prayer like Christians today. Their culture of worship was not a quiet, reverent, silent expression. These people expressed to God without reservation with all their heart, might, mind, and body.”] Does this please the Lord to

worship like the Nephites? Many would have you believe the Lord doesn't appreciate this kind of worship. They say it drives away the spirit of the Lord. I often sing to the Lord and shout praises to His name. **[The Lord is pleased with heartfelt worship. It doesn't mean every time we pray we have to be like this, but we should be willing to put everything on the table when we are at our greatest need. For me, this is when I do my holy time and coming to Him. During the day my prayers are lower key. When I'm in public I pray with my heart and don't always go the gamut, but if the circumstance was right I wouldn't hesitate to fall on my knees, raise my hands to heaven and shout out to God. PR]**

[There is a gift of the Spirit I call the "Gift of Song," which is closely related to the gift of tongues as it relates to praise. When filled with the Spirit it is not uncommon to break out in holy song as we praise the Lord. It is led by the Spirit and often those participating create their own lyrics or even melody as a matter of praise.] As you say that it comes upon you suddenly and is led by the spirit . Sometimes I feel the need to sing praises in prayer and I have memorized hymns to do so. But I sometimes just so want to have this "gift of song" as no hymns are adequate to express how I feel. So I just start trying to makeup my own song. Is this a gift that can be acquired by prayer or just by desire and repeated attempts to do so? It amazes me how you talk about subjects I have never heard anyone discuss before. Yet I think many people have felt in their lives. Thank you PR for this inspired blog!! **[Thank you, I give the Lord credit for everything! As with all gifts of the Spirit they begin with desire, followed by asking the Lord to bless you with them. PR]**

Vs 1: The Gadiantons were coming out of the Appalachian mountains and surrounding foothills? **[Only the far eastern parts of the Nephite lands did they dwell in the Appalachians. Mostly the Gadiantons dwelt in the wilderness areas away from the cities. Later they also were in the far west during the latter times of the Nephites. PR]**

"By this time, Jesus was married in Nazareth."

When Christ was here on the earth, as an adult, once he knew who he was, was he aware of things like this going on across the globe? **[Not that I am aware. In His early years he was just beginning to know who He was. PR]**

Vs 29 & 30: "May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness..."

The people declared these words but is it a covenant? I didn't see a reply from the Lord about it recorded here. Is it a promise that the Lord will deliver on to "protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection"? Or is this a message directly to us hinting at an Eternal truth that God always helps and protects those who call on Him? **[The one covenant we have is the Everlasting Covenant, which we entered into before birth or after. It promises that God will be with us. Sometimes it is renewed as a people when they have gone astray. PR]**

Vs 28: This imagery would be powerful. Did you see this event? What kind of tree was it? How high? **[I have not seen this. PR]**

“There is a gift of the Spirit I call the “Gift of Song,” which is closely related to the gift of tongues as it relates to praise.” I’m glad that you talked about this, I never saw as a gift, but ever since I was a child I would make songs for the Lord, not as much now as an adult. Very interesting how we are not taught this anymore, but we will just follow the Spirit. I know when I used to sing to God it made my heart so happy.

With the Lord on the earth in His mortal life as noted was it Father directing the Nephite prophets and people or is this a use of the fullness of the priesthood where The Lord is dividing His focus in omnipresence? **[There are many possibilities and I won’t speculate having not specifically asked the Lord that question. PR]**

Is this a similitude of what’s coming in the future days? How we will have to be in one body, and will need this kind of faith to retake our lands? The fighting combined with the power of God through our faith. **[This is in essence what occurs when the people gather to Zion for safety. PR]**

Also, expressing gratitude and praise when talking to God can help us be with Him, is this one of the key elements of visiting face to face with Christ? To reach that level we have to have and express more gratitude and give praises in a more powerful way, it’s that what you’re saying? sorry I want to understand better these things. **[Yes, our hearts need to be completely open in order to ascend the veil. Gratitude and praise is a path toward opening the baptism of fire (pillar of fire). PR]**

Nephites Exercise Righteousness – 3 Nephi 5:1-26

1 And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled. **[Imagine an entire people with such faith.]**

2 And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

3 Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

Here we see that it is possible for those with great sins, even abominations and whoredoms, to be forgiven as they repent. How does one serve God with all diligence night and day? By keeping the thoughts and intents of your heart focused upon Him. In such a state we are open to revelation.

4 And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and

did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

5 But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law. **[Imagine a judicial system where if a prisoner of war could simply make an oath to no more commit murders and fight against them would be set free. This was not even required of terrorists held as prisoners of war in America who have been set free.]**

6 And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

7 And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.

What was Jesus doing at this time in His life? He was raising a family in Nazareth. A very quiet existence where he was being prepared for His future mission. The Father gave Him experiences and dreams to open His eyes to His future mission, yet He did not fully comprehend until later. Read “A Witness of the Life of Christ” to learn more.

8 And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years; **[When a people are living in harmony and righteousness as was the people of Nephi, you have a great outpouring of the Spirit. The miracles and gifts of the Spirit that were experienced would surely fill a volume of the record.]**

9 But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi. **[Mormon chooses to use a shorter version as recorded by Nephi.]**

10 Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.

This would have been a good place to begin a new chapter.

11 And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.

12 And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.

13 Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life. **[Mormon states his authority to do these things. He is not only a disciple, which has special meaning as a close follower, but also an anointed servant, which is the equivalent of being “called.”]**

14 And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done— **[Mormon identifies this work of abridging the record as a fulfillment of prophecy of these former prophets.]**

15 Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.

16 Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;

17 And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes. **[First he abridges their records, and then he includes his own, as will be seen beginning in the Book of Mormon before the Book of Ether.]**

18 And I know the record which I make to be a just **[fair and organized]** and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write. **[There were certain words which were difficult because the same word could have many meanings, making it a challenge for Mormon to write. Here, the value of a seer, with the ability to translate by revelation can be useful in determining the correct word.]**

19 And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.

20 I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I have reason to bless **[to honor]** my God and my Savior Jesus Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he brought out of that land) and that he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.

21 Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob **[covenant people]**, and hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph. **[the line of Manasseh, and Ephraim.]**

22 And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his word.

23 Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God. **[At this time, about 400AD, there were few of both the seed of Ephraim and Manasseh who had a knowledge of the Lord.]**

24 And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

How will the Lord do this? First it is accomplished spiritually beyond the veil, then it occurs in a physical way before the coming of the Lord.

25 And as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them. **[This is referring to the Everlasting Covenant, which is the promise to them that He will seek after them, and they shall come into His fold as they repent.]**

26 And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be gathered in **[to Zion]** from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

Mormon gives a short snapshot of the purpose of the Book of Mormon, to prepare the way for the gathering of Israel.

Questions and Answers

“the Everlasting Covenant, which is the promise to them that He will seek after them...”
This is comforting, especially since I’ve been telling myself it is impossible to seek the Lord in vain, yet I seem to be getting so few answers. It is comforting to know He will seek after me, too.

PR, what is... or is there a difference between the house of Jacob and the house of Israel?
[The “House of Jacob” are usually referred to as those who have forgotten their covenant, and “House of Israel” are essentially all those of the covenant according to the Spirit and the flesh. PR]

I have learned that the everlasting covenant is comprised of nothing but those ordinances and experiences brought to us by the Holy Ghost, then brought to us by the Lord, which- if we hearken to with unshaken faith, will bring us into His presence while yet in the flesh.

is that over simplifying it too much?

if I were to give this definition to people I know in the church, most would not agree. yet I know this is correct. **[The Everlasting Covenant is everything required to receive exaltation. In this world it consists of the Doctrine of Christ: repentance, baptism, and the Holy Ghost. There is far more to this beyond this life which we must learn. The temple teaches some of this, but it is so cryptic that it would require the gift of revelation to fully understand. PR]**

PR- This week I have been focused on Levi !! Can you expand on what role he has played or is yet to play in the gathering? Also, through my personal genealogy, I discovered ties to many ancestors that came here from Italy and Prussia...under horrible circumstances yet MANY joined the church and landed all over the Great Lakes areas ,New Jersey (Lenni Lenape/ Unami) Canada , Alaska, down to Baja Cali.....consistent with your description. I have to publicly thank you for helping in my efforts to fulfill this earthly calling. The desire is pure and i find myself eagerly looking to learn more every day....
[The tribe of Levi represents a transitional priesthood among the Lord’s people. Everything about the Law of Moses was a type for the Kingdom of God. In the future the sons of Levi will once again offer a sacrifice at the temple in Jerusalem before the Lord’s coming, as they attempt to bring righteousness again to the Holy Mount. They will be deeply affected when Christ will appear upon the Mount of Olives and declares, “These wounds I did receive in the house of my friends!” When the Lord comes in His glory the world shall be cleansed and there will never again be the sacrifice of blood upon it. The Levites, in the spiritual sense, are the living embodiment of those who have received the Gift of the Holy Ghost and await to stand in the presence of the Lord to receive all things. PR]

The Levites, in the spiritual sense, are the living embodiment of those who have received the Gift of the Holy Ghost and await to stand in the presence of the Lord to receive all things. PR]

What do you mean exactly? Can you please expound?... they perform preparatory ordinances.

[The following is from my personal journal:

“The Lord said that there is both a physical and spiritual significance to the prophesy that the Levites would, before His coming, “again offer up a sacrifice in righteousness.” He said that the Levites would offer the old sacrifice again at the temple in Jerusalem before He comes; this is the physical. He said that the Levitical Priesthood is a transitional priesthood that involves the Gift of the Holy Ghost. The sons of Levi are those who are sent by the priests to teach the people and bring them to Christ. The Priests, and in the last days also, the priestesses, are as the Levites, by priesthood, to prepare those to stand in the presence of the Lord. They have received the Gift of the Holy Ghost, but not yet the Second Comforter. This transitional priesthood is for those to prepare themselves to be in the presence of God.

It goes from teacher, to priest, to High Priest, and then [Edit]. The Levitical Priesthood in the last days is a symbolic name for the preparatory priesthood before standing in the Lord’s presence.

Teacher – “sons of Levi / daughters of Zion” – Preparatory Levitical Priest – Levitical Priesthood (As the sons of Aaron.)

High Priest – Melchizedek – 144k, fourth estate PR]

23 Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their God. [At this time, about 400AD, there were few of both the seed of Ephraim and Manasseh who had a knowledge of the Lord.]

Oh that I could understand the role of the seed of Joseph in these end times!! Surely it is a direct End Times type and shadow how Joseph (son of Jacob) was carried into a foreign land, only to be preserved for the purpose of saving his entire Father’s house during times of distress in the future... And surely the End Time role of Ephraim is/was to spread the knowledge of the Gospel, since it was the birthright son of Joseph...

But has Ephraim (whose seed is mingled among the Gentiles) lived up to its commission in our day? Or has Ephraim sold it’s birthright for a bowl of porridge? Will the birthright blessings be passed to Manassah (the first born of Joseph)? Is this a manner in which the first will be last? Will it be a repentant Ephraimite remnant that will administer the fullness to Manassah (the seed of Lehi) and will they then receive the endowment of power that Ephraim failed to obtain – and then go on to build Zion???

Please, Dear Brother, will you add some insight here? **[Both Ephraim and Manasseh have stumbled, yet both will yet have a great role in redeeming Zion in the last days. Ephraim has already, through joining with Northern European blood, been the means to bless the earth in many ways. Through their lines the Gospel has been restored both through the Protestant movement and the restoration in 1830. It continues to prepare for a time of great upheaval when the House of Israel will rise up and be gathered. Many**

of the Gatherers in the end times will come from Ephraim in ways unexpected. PR]

Wow!! My heart is just smiling!!! I get it! What you are referring to regarding the Protestant movement. My next question may seem “odd” but I’m going to ask it anyways....you are that Priesthood counsel that I’m being directed too and you help confirm much of what I’m being taught myself. The Spirit of Elijah is working MIRACLES. I testify of this myself. Here’s my question....can a person who is 4th Estate be born into a family NOT under the earthly covenant through their parents? Or can a child be born with a parent from Ephraim AND Manasseh? Thx again for answering questions that may be obvious but I’m still truly learning. **[Yes, this is the “Times of the Gentiles” and many covenant beings are born across the world to parents who are gentiles. Often used to break the chains of generational sin. Like a leaven, they are here to raise the children of men and help to save souls in the Lord’s kingdom. PR]**

24 And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

How will the Lord do this? First it is accomplished spiritually beyond the veil, then it occurs in a physical way before the coming of the Lord.

“Spiritually beyond the veil” – what does “beyond the veil” mean exactly? Is this a reference to the calling and election of those who will help gather the House of Israel? Or is something else happening here. **[It begins when the covenants are made before birth, even before the foundation of the world, to gather Israel. There is far more that takes place in that realm than in the temporal realm that affects this purpose. Calling and Election refers to the moment a covenant being begins to awaken as they are made clean from the blood and sins of their generation. PR]**

The Curse of Pride – 3 Nephi 6:1-30

1 And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them. **[The word “horses” is the word chosen to represent a harnessed animal which pulls a carriage, chariot, or load.]**

2 And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.

3 And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus

they did establish peace in all the land. **[The term Lamanites was more a political/religious affiliation at this point, as many darker skinned Nephites dwelt amongst the people.]**

4 And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity **[fairness]** and justice.

5 And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

6 And now it was Gidgiddoni **[the prophet general of the Nephite army]**, and the judge, Lachoneus **[the prophet governor of the Nephite people]**, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

7 And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

8 And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

9 And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.

10 But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even unto great persecutions; **[After only three years pride begins to divide some of the more prosperous people.]**

11 For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.

12 And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning; yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches. **[Which is more dangerous: pride of one's presumed education and knowledge, or pride of one's wealth and status?]**

13 Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing **[revenge and bitter argument]**, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.

14 And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church **[four years after peace was established]** was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.

15 Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world. **[What are the vain things of the world? These Nephites were much like us today. A society which was inclined to seek riches, power, and a host of other sources of vanity. It is human nature to want to be a part of the accepted group. Most of our culture revolves around celebrities, fashion, material possessions, and how we feel accepted by the world. The Nephites were much like us, only with less technology.]**

16 And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years. **[A great form of “iniquity” is to seek one’s own status and comfort at the expense of others.]**

17 And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.

18 Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God. **[They consciously chose to pursue worldly ambitions and neglect the will of God.]**

19 And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.

20 And there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth **[prophets]**, standing among the people in all the land, preaching and testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord would make for his people, or in other words, the resurrection of Christ; and they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

21 Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.

22 Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

23 Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

24 Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—

25 Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

26 Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge, to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

27 Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests **[included church authorities]**, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

28 And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness. **[They reinstitute the oaths of Gadianton according to their desires.]**

29 Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.

30 And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

Today, our country is in peril. Many of the original liberties of the Constitution have been gravely removed. Those in high places in government are not held accountable to the laws of the people as two standards of justice are kept to enforce the laws. There is an undercurrent of criminal intent to undermine the republic and establish a government which puts the power in the hands of a few with the guise of using a democratic system. We are now living in the calm before the storm, much similar to the days before Christ came after the destructions of the Book of Mormon lands.

Questions and Answers

“Which is more dangerous: pride of one’s presumed education and knowledge, or pride of one’s wealth and status?”

My best thinking says pride of wealth and status can be removed by removing the wealth, which gives the person a significant chance at humbling themselves. The wealth was external and could be taken away easier so this is the less dangerous one? As opposed to internal knowledge, hard-headedness and false traditions that are more dangerous because they are harder to rid yourself of to strip away pride?

Matthias seemed to be able to leave his wealth to become an apostle later but it seemed it was much harder for the Pharisees. But I’m interested in learning which it is that is more dangerous? **[The answer is not all inclusive and is different for each individual. PR]**

“A great form of “iniquity” is to seek one’s own status and comfort at the expense of others.“

I’ve learned that some products/decorations we buy are made by poor people – or even children – working in deplorable conditions in other countries.

Are we guilty of this if we buy a product that was made in this way but we don’t know it? In what other ways are we guilty of this? **[Any time we purchase something it is at the expense of others, but this in itself is not a sin. The iniquity is when we purposefully use others, subjugating them to our will, removing their freedoms to choose, and not demonstrating charity. When and where this applies to us is dependent upon our hearts and understanding. PR]**

[“Today, our country is in peril. Many of the original liberties of the Constitution have been gravely removed. Those in high places in government are not held accountable to the laws of the people as two standards of justice are kept to enforce the laws.”] This chapter sounds exactly like what we are facing today. How can the people of God stand up against this great wickedness as more and more people turn away from God? Less and less people even believe in the only living and true God. Everyone seems apathetical towards what’s going on . They are just trying to survive day by day. Or as you state, [“These Nephites were much like us today. A society which was inclined to seek riches,

power, and a host of other sources of vanity.”] The world is becoming more in turmoil. What can we do to stop this great evil ? We can’t go off to new lands and start colonies of righteousness like in the days that we are reading about. Do we just have to survive the cleansing? It’s very frustrating. What does God demand of us in these situations? Is it enough to bare testimony to our neighbors and family members who have gone astray about the joy of living the laws of God and the blessings that flow into our lives? I have tried to tell my son, who’s life is in turmoil, that by obeying Gods laws blessings will come in his life and he will find lasting happiness and joy by doing so. He won’t talk to me anymore. My ways are not in accordance with “modern thinking” he tells me . /////
Thank you PR for all you do. I look forward to every post. Your insights from the Lord bring great enlightenment to these scriptures. Thank you for taking the time to answer our questions. **[Thank you. I empathize with your feelings. It is frustrating to watch things continue to slide. The Lord has taught me to listen to Him, to seek revelation, and to act accordingly. Sometimes I am given instructions to take action to raise awareness of what is happening in the country, but often I remain silent waiting on the Lord. We need to remember that His hand is in control of all things. There is more at work behind the veil than we can see. We must trust in the Lord. PR]**

“We are now living in the calm before the storm, much similar to the days before Christ came after the destructions of the Book of Mormon lands.”

I have felt this in the promptings I have received. As we go through 3 Nephi, I’ll be looking for similarities among them and us and what markers occurred just before the destruction hit. Thank you for adding notes that help us to open our eyes, dig a little deeper and ask the Lord more questions!

To [Edit]: My thoughts also. It is eye opening to try to gauge where we are currently as a people in the 3rd Nephi timeline. 3 Nephi 6? 7? 8? a concoction of all three?

Almost Time – 3 Nephi 7:1-26

1 Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.

About the very same time that the Nephite government was toppled, the works of Christ began His three and one-half year ministry amongst the Jews.

2 And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land. **[And so it shall be in our land.]**

3 And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes. **[Today we would call these factions, or self governing bodies, either by state or city, according to separate geographical locations and ideologies.]**

4 Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great. **[In the last days people will gather according to familiarity, both the wicked and the righteous.]**

5 Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

6 And the regulations **[laws and statutes]** of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.

7 And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them. **[This shall be a similitude of what shall befall America.]**

8 And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire. **[Six years from the time the people had turned their back against the wickedness of Gadianton.]**

9 Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

10 And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus. **[A man is chosen to lead who is among the greatest and most wicked among them.]**

11 And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government. **[The various sovereign states and cities (tribes) had no trust for any government.]**

12 Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so. **[A call for the wicked to gather.]**

13 And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.

14 And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

15 And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power

given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations; **[It is interesting that it is noted that Nephi is visited by angels, but only the voice of the Lord. How did the Lord Himself while in the flesh administer the affairs of His Kingdom? As always, by the means of His Holy Angels, and at times directly through the Spirit.]**

16 Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

17 And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority. **[A great and last effort before Christ would come to them.]**

18 And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily. **[What does this say to you? Can your faith be so great in the Lord that angels will teach you daily? Yes! And what is great faith? To seek the Lord's will by revelation and to act upon it.]**

19 And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother [Timothy] did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people. **[An interesting irony considering what would happen when Christ came and anointed him as a special disciple.]**

20 And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

21 And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed. **[Truly the calm before the storm.]**

22 And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

23 Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins. **[There is nothing of greater value than to preach repentance unto baptism. No other doctrine will save you. Peripheral commandments are not to be a part of the conversion process. "Come unto Christ, and be made clean!"]**

24 Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

25 Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins. **[There are two important purposes of baptism: to**

witness before the Father that you have accepted His Son, and that you witness before the Church (body of believers) that you are one of them.]

26 And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.

This chapter can easily raise many questions regarding our time and the events that may occur in the near future. For more information regarding the fate of America you can refer to “A Witness of the End of Times.” I do not know the exact dates these events will transpire. The Lord has told me to focus upon the events, not the dates. We are counseled to “stand in holy places,” which is to have your lamps filled and become holy that you may be led to safety as these events begin to unfold.

Questions and Answers

Breath taking! Can you tell us more about Timothy? I would love to learn more about him and his purpose here on Earth!! **[I will share more about him during the chapters that record the events of the twelve disciples chosen by the Lord. PR]**

[“22 And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, ”] So is this to mean that when the devils where cast out of them their sicknesses where healed because they were caused by devils who are inhabiting their bodies? Infirmities in the dictionary means “ ailment of age or a moral weakness. “ How is one to know what is making them sick? Especially psychological illnesses, is this kind of ailment usually a devil causing it? Do you have any inspiration on this matter ? Thank you PR ! **[“Devils,” or as we call them “evil spirits,” are often attached to those who suffer either physically or emotionally. It is almost always required when healing someone to cast out spirits to clean the individual. This doesn’t mean that all sickness is caused by these spirits, but that they are attracted to it and usually exacerbate the problem. PR]**

[“We are counseled to “stand in holy places,” which is to have your lamps filled and become holy that you may be led to safety as these events begin to unfold.”] This is a great comfort to me as I have wondered if I will have to endure and witness all these trials and tribulations as they unfold. Will this call to be led come through various religious leaders? Will the Lord give each of us our own personal revelation as to what to do to be led to safety and in whom to trust? Do you have any further insights into this matter? **[The only people who will have any promise when these judgements come upon the land will be those whose lamps are filled. Many will not know where to turn, and there will be many false prophets in the land. True prophets will be calling people to repentance. The Spirit of revelation will be your only point of safety under these circumstances. Those who are accustomed to leaning on the arm of flesh, even if it is a church leader, will be at risk. PR]**

20 And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power

Why would seeing a dead man brought back to life make a person angry? That has always troubled me when I have read it in the past. I know people can be ‘past feeling’... but did those who became angry think the dead man was faking it like some unexplainable magic act? **[I don’t know. Many people today see things through the prism of us versus them, and not good versus evil. PR]**

“...become holy.. to be led to safety...” i.e. Sanctified through the blood of the lamb. Set apart. Redeemed (fully)? Garments washed all the way white in His blood? Or would an individual who is in process of getting that done suffice? Do we need to see the face of the Lord in this life in order to be prepared (and led to safety) at that day or will just having an assurance that one is on the path with a solid grip on the iron rod (personal revelation)— even though the actual tree of life is far off in the distance good enough? Is there a required minimum level of holiness one needs to be at? **[When a person is repenting they are reaching for God with all their heart, and in turn the Lord is reaching for them. Under such circumstances the angels are helping. In the last days there will be those who put their trust in God, yet have not yet received the Holy Ghost. They will be assisted, and at the proper time all who are repenting will have the gift of the Holy Ghost given before the great day of the Lord. PR]**

Is it significant that Christ’s mission lasted three and a half years? Meaning behind the exact time frame? **[Yes, there is a pattern. The Lord is in every detail! PR]**

You wrote in another comment: “The only people who will have any promise when these judgements come upon the land will be those whose lamps are filled.”

The oil in the lamp represents interactions with the Holy Ghost? Or the baptism of fire? Or personal revelation received? What does the oil symbolize?

What is the minimum a person will need to be doing to qualify to be led to safety?

Can one spouse who is seeking the Lord qualify for their spouse and children to all be led to safety? **[At first it will be those with the Holy Ghost helping others, and they will make a difference; but when the Lord comes in His glory only those with the Holy Ghost will be caught up to meet Him. If you are worried about friends and family, understand that all those who are repenting will receive the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands before that day comes. PR]**

Why does obtaining the baptism of fire seem so hard now yet later will seem “easier” to receive by the laying on of hands?

Do the calamities crush and soften us, which makes it seem easier, even though it is the same process for all? **[Many experience a baptism of fire, but fewer the gift of the Holy Ghost. When the final days are upon us there will be more who are ready because of the situation in the world. When the Lord says “Now is the day of your Salvation!” it is meant very literally. PR]**

Some of my friends in my gathering group have received visions of a call-out by our church of places of safety and refuge with tents!, I feel that because of my gifts and the gifts of my 6 children, that there is a good chance my family will receive the answer that we need to stay instead of going with the initial call out! I appreciate reading on your blog and other scriptures to prepare me and my gifts for my future mission, but I was wondering if you had any tools you would recommend to help children with their gifts and missions? I love reading your experiences and the spirit Burns, but I feel I can't share most of my visions and personal revelation with most of my family and friends yet... I long for the day that I can share and testify of all these things to my husband, children and everyone! May the Lord bless you and keep you PR **[As you listen to the Spirit you will know with whom you can share and not share, even your own children. It is not wise to do so otherwise. Sometimes it is difficult to hold our tongue when others speak things that are not true. What I like to do is ask a lot of questions to cause them to think. When they begin asking me questions and the Spirit gives a green light I begin to share things in measure. PR]**

How do we know Christ's ministry was 3.5 years? Is this mentioned in scripture anywhere? **[Not that I am aware. This is something I was shown and included in my annotations here. PR]**

The Sign of His Death – 3 Nephi 8:1-25

Mormon continues to abridge the record kept by Nephi regarding the events leading to the coming of Christ.

1 And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man **[Nephi]** who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—

How is one cleaned “every whit” from iniquity? This means to be found spotless before God. Because we all sin how is this possible? Only by being washed clean in the baptism of fire may we have this occur. It is something that can occur frequently, usually during prayer as we ask the Lord to be made clean before Him. It is to be washed over by His glory. Faith always precedes the miracle, but unclean hands will prevent us from accessing the divine. We must be constantly repenting, and seeking the will of the Lord.

2 And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away; **[Nephite years were according to the Hebrew calendar which new year begins in the Spring.]**

3 And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land. **[Helaman 14:20]**

4 And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given. **[Why do you suppose they doubted after such a powerful sign, similar in nature to the other one Samuel had given? When the great tribulations overcome the earth in the future, and many miracles begin to unfold, there will be many who will doubt and dispute, as they look to science and logic to explain away these things.]**

The first Nephi recorded that the “prophets” have said that Christ would come 600 years after the time his father left Jerusalem. (2 Nephi 25:19) Were these words hidden from the Nephite people? How aware were they of this prophecy? Which prophets declared this? Samuel the Lamanite told them what the sign would be to look forward to both His birth and death, but did Samuel prophecy that Christ would live to a certain age so the people would know when to expect the sign of His death? These are questions I will ask the Lord.

5 And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land. **[The skies blackened and the clouds became extremely violent.]**

6 And there was also a great and terrible tempest **[a great wind, similar to a hurricane, but without rain]**; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder. **[Not the thundering of the clouds, but the moaning of the earth and heaven as it is stretched and pulled from a powerful force.]**

7 And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land. **[The kind that are not only loud, but shake the earth. Far greater than a typical lightning storm.]**

8 And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

9 And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

10 And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

11 And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

12 But behold, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds, and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quaking of the whole earth;

13 And the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became rough.

14 And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate. **[The area of the Great Lakes of America saw much changed in the land as areas were raised and others sunk into the earth.]**

15 And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many in them who were slain. **[Most buildings were made of**

earth and timber. These people's walls of loose cement would crumble at even a mild earthquake.]

16 And there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind; and whither they went no man knoweth, save they know that they were carried away.

17 And thus the face of the whole earth became deformed, because of the tempests, and the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the earth. **[This occurred mostly in America and was felt at various places throughout the globe. There was even an earthquake felt in Jerusalem.]**

18 And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, insomuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land. **[It would take very violent earthquakes to do this.]**

19 And it came to pass that when the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest, and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold, they did last for about the space of three hours; and it was said by some that the time was greater; nevertheless, all these great and terrible things were done in about the space of three hours—and then behold, there was darkness upon the face of the land. **[The New Madrid Seismic Zone runs right through the land of Zarahemla and the central part of the Nephite lands. But, this is not the source of this destruction. God moved upon the earth by allowing the “dark sun,” a large dark planet that doesn't follow the ellipsis of our solar system to do a flyby of the earth and cause great havoc. The same orb that brought about the destructions of the flood and will affect the earth during the end of times.]**

20 And it came to pass that there was thick darkness upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;

21 And there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;

“I then asked the Lord to help me understand what happened when He came to the Nephites in Bountiful. I was shown that when the destructions came the righteous who survived could hear His voice lamenting the destruction (voice in the Spirit). They knew exactly what was happening. As it says in scripture, the destruction lasted for about 3 hours, followed by 3 days of darkness. The air was so thick with debris that no light could penetrate. No fire could be lit because of the ash or dampness.” (personal journal)

22 And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which were upon the face of the land.

23 And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; yea, great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.

24 And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.

25 And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moronihah. And thus were the howlings of the people great and terrible.

These destructions are hard to fathom, as we have not seen such power in nature to the degree which is described here. When the events of the last days are upon us the hearts of the wicked shall fail them as they view the great calamities and last great sign in the heavens.

Questions and Answers

[“ God moved upon the earth by allowing the “dark sun,” a large dark planet that doesn’t follow the ellipsis of our solar system to do a flyby of the earth and cause great havoc. The same orb that brought about the destructions of the flood and will affect the earth during the end of times.] This is amazing information. Is this sun called a “dark planet” because evil beings or evil spirit entities live on the face of this planet? Do you have anymore information about this “dark planet”? I find this so fascinating!! **[All things in the heavens are in the similitude of the pattern of the Everlasting Covenant. If the sun is a type for Christ, then the dark sun would be a type for the Adversary. There are angels that dwell upon the brilliant white plasma of the sun, and there are beings living upon the dark surface of this other orb. All these creations contribute toward the glory of God. PR]**

[“ 9 And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned. 14 And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate. 15 And there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there were many in them who were slain. “] So the cities that were totally destroyed were totally wicked and past redemption? Were the righteous called out, like what will happen in our day and allowed to leave ? The cities not totally destroyed , is it because they had larger populations that were capable of repenting and returning to righteousness? Is this part of the tender mercies and long sufferings of the Lord ? **[Depending upon the level of iniquity in a city, the Lord passes judgment. To reject the prophets is one thing, but to be participants in the dark oaths of Satan like Sodom and Gomorrah of old is another. Some must be destroyed by fire. The Lord always provides an escape for the righteous before a city is destroyed. PR]**

What connection does the dark planet have with the great red dragon of revelation? Did the orbit of this sphere also contribute to the pleagues of Egypt and the great flood of Noah? **[Yes PR]** Is this the event that will happen in “the fall” which you spoke of in “End Times”? **[I believe that is different. PR]**

What is the significance of three exactly? 3 hours of destruction, 3 days of darkness. Christ's body was in the tomb for 3 days, Jonah in the whale for 3 days. **[All things bear witness to Atonement of Jesus Christ and His Resurrection. PR]**

I used to think it was God and His angels who carried out cursings and destructions, but now it seems He simply allows the buffetings of Satan to inflict that damage. God allowed the dark sun to cause flooding and earthquakes.... but who is the “destroying angel”? Was it God (destroying angel) that killed the Egyptians firstborn's or the adversary? **[It is God that declares judgment (the division of the good from the evil). At times, He allows the Adversary to do it, and at times it is His Angels of Power, or the Shahophalim. PR]**

Can you tell us about Jerusalem around this time? How it seemed there was a solar eclipse for the space of 3 hours. Is this possible or how was the sky darkened in Jerusalem for 3 hours? Was it like this with dark clouds and tempest or was it something else? **[In my journal I wrote the following: “The sky was dark, like a storm was approaching and the air was static, but no rain. When he died, there was a tremor, but it hit hardest in the area of the temple, where the veil broke.” The effects were not as striking in Jerusalem as they were in the land of the Nephites in the central part of America. PR]**

Were there secret combinations among the Jews during this time as well? It seemed to be a recurring problem for the Nephites, it makes me wonder what was going on in Jerusalem? **[They did not have it to the same extent. PR]**

Was it because the Nephites had a higher degree of secret combinations that their land was hit harder with catastrophies than in Jerusalem? Or was there other reasons for this? **[They did have a higher degree of dark oaths, but I do not know if there was another reason. PR]**

“God moved upon the earth by allowing the “dark sun,” a large dark planet that doesn't follow the ellipsis of our solar system to do a flyby of the earth and cause great havoc.”

Does the dark sun have planets orbiting it?

Are those planets likely to have dark beings on them if inhabited? **[I do not know that for certain. PR]**

The Beginning and the End – 3 Nephi 9:1-22

1 And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying: **[the Spirit of God called out to all that were listening]**

2 Wo, wo, wo **[such sadness and suffering]** unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent **[come unto Me]**; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my

people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen! **[This was not a metaphorical statement, for there was great rejoicing and celebration amongst the Adversary. Not because of Christ's death, but because of the many souls that perished in wickedness.]**

3 Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof. **[God always destroys by fire those cities which have become completely corrupt in the dark oaths of Satan. Such was the fate of Sodom and Gomorrah.]**

4 And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunken in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned. **[Much of the topography of the Great Lakes region is different today because of the destruction that occurred at this time.]**

5 And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

6 And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth; **[The collapse of the earth like a sinkhole, but larger.]**

7 Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them. **[Some of these cities were along the shores of the Great Lakes. Now they are hidden.]**

8 And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

9 And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them. **[Again, the most wicked, guilty of participating in the dark oaths and rejecting the prophets, the Lord destroys by fire.]**

10 And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

11 And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

12 And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

13 O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you? **[The Lord did not say they were perfect, but that they were more righteous than those who were destroyed. If there is a chance for repentance the Lord refrains. Understand that this does not mean that the righteous will always be preserved from suffering or death. We must trust in the Lord in all things. When the last days are upon us the angels will have stewardship over all souls who are prepared to receive him, for “the field is white already to harvest.”]**

14 Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me. **[repentance]**

15 Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name. **[This is a loaded verse of scripture. Jesus identifies himself as the Son of God. He created the heavens above and the earth beneath and all that is within that realm. He has been acting under the Father’s commandments from the beginning, and is ONE with Him in purpose and understanding. The last statement “in me hath the Father glorified his name” has special meaning. To “glorify” is to have light added upon. Jesus added light to the realm of Heaven by accomplishing the will of the Father and enabling the Sons and Daughters of God to have Eternal Life and a greater resurrection. All done in the name of the Father. This is the same example set for us as we too do all things in the name of our Father in whom we are spiritually begotten, even Jesus Christ!]**

16 I came unto my own **[His people the Jews]**, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

17 And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons **[and daughters]** of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled. **[The purpose of the animal sacrifice and all the laws and ordinances of Moses were to point the Jews toward the coming of their Messiah, and to teach them the process toward salvation.]**

When one receives the gift of the Holy Ghost they advance from their progression as a second estate being to a Son or Daughter of God. This is a literal designation given to those who join the Church of the Firstborn, which has great meaning in the Third Estate. To be promised Eternal Life and to dwell with God in the Eternities. However, it is only the third step in the process of our exaltation.

18 I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. **[He began all things, and He will finish the work.]**

19 And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings. **[To continue this practice would be false, because Jesus**

already fulfilled the law. It would be like saying the Messiah has not yet come.]

20 And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

There is much in this scripture to consider. The Lord states directly that the requirement of Him is a “broken heart and a contrite spirit.” This is how we are worthy to receive the added glory to our spirits called “the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

The broken heart is the act of full submission to the Lord and turning your heart to Him without reservation. The opposite would be a “hard heart.” The heart is the source of all our desires. To lay all you have upon the altar of the Lord in full repentance is what is required.

The contrite spirit is the act of fully seeking the Lord’s will in all things. To seek after His commandments whether they be in scripture, or by the Voice of His Spirit. One with a contrite spirit will seek baptism of water as a witness to the Father that they have accepted His son. This ordinance usually occurs before baptism, but on occasion has come after the gift of the Holy Ghost is given (as was the case with the Lamanites who were converted with Nephi and Lehi in Helaman 5). These Lamanites still needed to receive the baptism of water in order to be worthy to stand in the presence of Father and complete all righteousness.

What does the Lord mean that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost? What is the distinction? I cover much of this in my writings called “Our Temporal Progression,” but to explain in short: The baptism of fire is to stand in the pillar of light or glory that comes down upon the person when they are made clean. This is the “remission of sins” that prepares the individual to stand in the presence of God. This can occur many times during one’s life, but the gift of the Holy Ghost is only given once. It is the day of judgment for each soul as they are changed and “reborn” as a Son or Daughter of God. The baptism of water is an earthly ordinance to point the mind toward the reception of this divine spiritual gift.

21 Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin. **[To raise our souls out of a telestial state to a higher glory.]**

22 Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved. **[The Lord uses the analogy of coming to Him as a little child often. A little child is a toddler, barely able to walk and talk. They trust in their**

parents to show them the way. Such is the broken heart and contrite spirit. If you wonder what more you need to do to receive this gift you should ask the Lord with all your heart and He will reveal that to you by revelation.]

Questions and Answers

“they were baptized with fire ...and they knew it not”

a LOT of people talk about this designation, PR, can you explain if this means more understand along the lines that something has happened but not knowing what to call it, or is it more along the lines of having a subtle baptism of fire that is undetectable?

[Many people who receive the quickening of the Spirit do not know what has happened to them. Nephi knew by revelation and recorded it as such. They knew they had a change of heart and that something miraculous had occurred, and saw things of the Spirit they could not understand. Not everyone experiences this the same; so, not seeing angels does not necessarily mean you have not received the gift. To truly know requires a revelatory confirmation. PR]

[“Third Estate. To be promised Eternal Life and to dwell with God in the Eternities. However, it is only the third step in the process of our exaltation.”] I have wondered and pondered over this. When someone reaches a certain Estate are they literally required to continue to progress through the estates? Are there some beings who are content where they are in the estates and choose to remain there? I know you have said that there are those who are content to stay in the second estate. Is this true of the other estates? Are some beings content to be in the third or fourth estate? Are their marriages on this earth only sealed after the fourth estate? If someone chooses to be in the third estate are they always going to be sons and daughters of the Lord and not husbands and wives if they don't progress to the next estate? I know you are not allowed to talk about higher estates. Thank you so much for this great work you are doing! I look forward to each posting. **[There are many who stay in the 3rd estate. This is essentially the Terrestrial Kingdom, yet they are heirs of exaltation if they choose to progress. When they are ready to ascend to the 4th they are required to sacrifice to help save souls in the Father's kingdom, like the Savior, but to a lesser degree. There is no compulsion to sacrifice and move forward, as it is in any kingdom. “In my Father's house are many mansions.” As for marriage, these are not sealed up until the end of the 4th estate. The unions that are made in this life have the potential to be eternally sealed by the Savior if we are true to our covenants. Our children are sealed to the Savior and the Church of the Firstborn if they keep their covenants, and those relationships as a family endure long beyond the grave. This is my understanding as I have been shown. You will need to seek your own confirmation. PR]**

Thank you for all you do. To my understanding I thought the visit of the Savior took place immediately after His resurrection. From your writings A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations page 195 you saw that the Lord visited these people about a year after the

destructions. Then studying 3 Nephi 10:18-19 helps clear it up!... This helps me to appreciate the Lord's time frame and to not get so set on my own! Thank you again.

[“Understand that this does not mean that the righteous will always be preserved from suffering or death. We must trust in the Lord in all things. When the last days are upon us the angels will have stewardship over all souls who are prepared to receive him, for “the field is white and ready to harvest.”] Do we pretty much know what will happen in our lives before we come here, like we are given a general preview of our life? Such as any infirmities we will have, who our family members will be, a mission we have agreed to perform and how long we will live ? Or is there always the chance occurrence that might take our life prematurely? I have witnessed a few miracles in the lives of certain people who were brought back from the dead. Is this possibly because this person had an important mission they had to perform in this world, so their life was preserved? Like 4th Estate beings, are their lives preserved till their mission is complete? Thank you for all you share of the knowledge you have learned from the Lord. It blesses my life immensely. It seems as we draw closer to the Lord the adversary makes it even more difficult to discern. Please forgive me for asking one more question, should we always expect the witness of the Holy Ghost to accompany a prompting or revelation from the Lord? If that doesn't happen, then be cautious? I have a witness from the Lord you are telling the truth. Hence, all my questions I ask. God bless you PR!!! You are making a huge impact in my life and others I share your amazing blog with. **[It was an act of faith coming into this world as much as living here. We did not know everything. We knew who would be our parents and likely most of our siblings. We knew whether we had a covenant mission, but how and every detail was not given. If we were under the care of the angels there was a promise associated with what we did that gave us a sense of confidence. A witness of the Holy Ghost is not always a powerful experience. Normally it is as soft as a whisper. When our minds are filled with virtue it is easy to discern the difference from a spiritually divine prompting or something that is not. In such cases you just know, and if you're smart you still check with the Lord. You just find that sweet spot of knowing, because the Lord is with you always. Until you get to that point, it is important to keep trying, even when you stumble, and you will gain confidence. Refer to D&C 121:45-46 PR]**

“because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.” prophets plural! Do you think there were multiple prophets at the same time? **[Yes. PR]**

and other non prophets who were calling the people to repentance, it seems, we're also there. They were stoned.

we're these also prophets or a special type of martyr? or? **[A prophet is anyone who the Lord anoints to speak His words. It is a gift of the Spirit that should be common amongst the believers of Christ. PR]**

Could you please elaborate on why water baptism is still necessary even if the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost came previous to it (as with the Lamanite in prison)? If one has

ascended to the third estate, or awakened in the fourth estate, of what effect is the water baptism if it wasn't completed? To simply keep the commandment or for some other reason? Some are claiming belief that water baptism is not necessary if the baptism of fire preceded it – that to simply be called to the work through inspired desire is sufficient. Thanks so much and looking forward to commentary on Christ's ministry in America! .

When Christ came to the Nephites in Bountiful they were washed in fire by being in the Lord's presence, and then baptized in water and given the Gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands. The baptism of fire is common and will occur many times to a servant of the Lord. Each time I come to the Lord I am washed and made clean, or bathed in fire and glory to stand in His presence. In the case of those Lamanites, they were made clean, but still required to fulfill all righteousness.

I was also reminded that when Joseph Smith saw his vision in the grove he received the baptism of fire, but had not yet been baptized or had his Gift of the HG confirmed upon him. "They are required to have the baptism of water as a witness to the Father that they have accepted me." He said. Receiving the ordinance out of order has happened before and will happen again in the future. There will be times when it will occur during the gathering, and they will receive it after.

In the case of a servant of God, for them it is an awakening of light, a calling and election, that prepares them to fulfill their mission. We are required to be baptized in water as a sign and ordinance in a temporal world, and should not suppose that we do not need this ordinance. Refer to 2 Nephi 31:5-21

17 And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons [and daughters] of God...

What does it mean to be a son of God? [To be born again in Christ. PR]

Those Who Survived – 3 Nephi 10:1-19

The following is an abridgment of Mormon which is taken from many accounts regarding what happened after the destructions:

1 And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. **[The people spoke of it amongst each other, for the spirit of prophecy was shared with all.]** And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours; **[They pondered upon what had been given.]**

2 For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours. **[Not much moving around and the groaning of the earth did cease for that time, a perfect silence.]**

3 And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying: **[A spiritual outpouring that did come**

upon all the people. They heard the thoughts in their minds and did witness of it. A group revelation.]

4 O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you. **[These words were heard by the remnants of the House of Israel throughout the world, not just in the Nephite lands.]**

5 And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not. **[A metaphor that everyone knew in these days. The Lord singles out the city of Jerusalem in the old lands.]**

6 O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart. **[The Lord offers both a spiritual and physical protection to those who come to Him with “full purpose of heart.” Another way of expressing a broken heart and contrite spirit.]**

7 But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers. **[Your lands will be taken until the end of days when the covenants will be restored.]**

8 And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

9 And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

10 And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood **[the ground settled and filled itself]**; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

I asked the Lord what was the meaning of 2 Nephi 25:19 in which Nephi states that there were prophets who said that the Lord would come 600 years after his father had left Jerusalem. The Lord said that Zenock and Zenos had prophesied that 600 years after Jerusalem was destroyed and the Jews were exiled that the Messiah would come among His people. That a remnant would be led out and preserved unto Him. Lehi had also commented on this in the Book of Lehi, which we do not have. This is what Nephi was referring to. The latter prophets like Alma, Helaman, and Nephi were aware of this prophecy, but it was hard to know the exact timing that Jerusalem was destroyed to date the birth. The sign of Samuel set the date clear.

Samuel had prophesied that before Christ would visit their people the Nephites would be scattered, the chief judge would be no more. That they

would need to stand in holy places and pray day and night for deliverance. Other prophets also added their testimonies to this. The Lord said that the people remembered these prophecies when this occurred and knew the time was near, but not the exact time. They gathered mostly within an area a few hundred miles south of Bountiful in the land of Jershon. They built shallow underground bunkers of a sort with food and water to protect themselves according to the revelations of those who knew.

There were a couple of large groups who were similar to the order of Nehor who gathered bodies of people before the calamities. Many of them survived, but suffered more. In all, about 50% of the people died in the destructions. Most all of the Gadiantons, and more wicked parts who dwelt in the larger cities. (personal journal)

11 And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.
12 And it was the more righteous part **[not perfect but repenting]** of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—

13 And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.

14 And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.

15 Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things. **[Thus far, all the prophecies have come to pass.]**

16 Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.

17 Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph **[Jacob 5]**. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem? **[All these details were available for you to read.]**

18 And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year **[about a year since the destruction]**, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors **[even that which is more than they were yet worthy to receive]** shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads [New Covenants that will be made.], insomuch that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—

19 Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.

Mormon has set the stage to add to the record the greatest event in the Book of Mormon. The apex of the record that witnesses to the great worth of these words to all those who will read it.

Questions and Answers

["The Lord offers both a spiritual and physical protection to those who come to Him with a "full purpose of heart." Another way of expressing a broken heart and contrite spirit."] As some men and women are given specific missions on this earth to perform (like 2nd or 4th Estate beings), is this a benefit of the " Gift of the Holy Ghost" ? To have a spiritual and physical protection till their missions are fulfilled? I have witnessed some incredible miracles in some peoples lives being saved. I always wondered if this was the reason. Thank you for your incredible insights concerning these verses. They add so much clarity to the Book of Mormon. I am so excited for the next chapters!!! **[Yes, our lives will not end until we have done what is needed. I am excited about the coming chapters too! PR]**

Vs 4 note: "These words were heard by the remnants of the House of Israel throughout the world, not just in the Nephite lands."

Was there world-wide earthquaking when the planet passed? **[In different degrees. PR]**

Why did everyone hear these words spoken to their spirit? **[There were other House of Israel remnants in other places. The Spirit spoke to them as well. PR]**

Vs 10 note: "They built shallow underground bunkers of a sort with food and water to protect themselves according to the revelations of those who knew."

The Nephite believers did this before the earthquake & calamities or after in the aprox 11 month space between the calamities and when the resurrected Christ came to visit? **[In the time before the devastations they began to build these. PR]**

"There were a couple of large groups who were similar to the order of Nehor who gathered bodies of people before the calamities. Many of them survived, but suffered more."

Similar to the order of Nehor- Nehor taught that church leaders should become popular and be financially supported by the people. (Alma 1) Very similar to all churches with buildings today that collect money from the congregation. This seems to hint that these were religious groups who gathered.

What caused them to suffer more? **[They did not have the Spirit as their guide. Many meant well, but were deceived. All the people who believed in Christ were aware of the prophecies of Samuel, as well as those of Zenos, Zenock, Lehi, Jacob, and other modern prophets alive among them. They had many witnesses. PR]**

How did they know to gather before the calamities? **[Out of fear for the destruction before His coming, and also as a protection against the Gadianton leaders.]**

"They did not have the Spirit as their guide. Many meant well, but were deceived."

In what way were they deceived? **[They placed their entire trust in the arm of flesh. The places they gathered to were not the most safe. PR]**

“Out of fear for the destruction before His coming, and also as a protection against the Gadianton leaders.”

They seemed to have made their own “bug out” plans because of fear.

Did they do this because they had heard that other (righteous) individuals were being led to gather?

I’m wondering if the Order of Nehor leaders saw the righteous start gathering, had followers asking them questions and then faked a “revelation” to have their people do the same? **[I don’t know the exact details other than they knew destructions were coming. PR]**

He Comes – His Doctrine – 3 Nephi 11:1-41

1 And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place. **[Having been led by the Spirit to gather to this place.]**

2 And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

3 And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; **[they heard it in their mind, yet it was audible as if having coming from above]** and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn. **[An immediate reaction by the entire body of people to a sound, which was not from the ears, but even more acute.]**

There is something happening here, more than hearing a voice to prepare them, they were in the process of receiving a baptism of fire, or to be made clean to be able to stand in the presence of the Lord. Mormon records that “there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake” and the voice pierced their souls and their hearts burned. This is a typical description of the physical effects of a baptism of fire.

When a pillar of light and glory descends it can only be seen with the spiritual eyes. It cleanses, brings a remission of sins, and creates a circle of light that can surround a single individual or be as wide as a city.

4 And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

5 And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

6 And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

7 Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him. **[To hear the literal voice of the Father introducing the Son. Three times were the words spoken so that all would hear and understand.]**

8 And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

After about a year, many of the righteous had planned to gather for Passover at the temple in Bountiful. As they were assembled they heard the voice of the Father speaking to them and then saw the man in white descending from Heaven. It looked like a white light coming down into their midst. They saw Him in His glory, but it was a little different than I expected. What happened was that their spiritual eyes beheld him, and yet it was a physical manifestation too. Had they not been transfigured in the Spirit they would not have seen Him like this. Imagine a visionary experience where thousands witness the same thing! (personal journal)

There is something incredible happening here. How is it that the God of Heaven could simply descend into the midst of these people and they not melt from His power? Did the Lord leave His Throne and come to them, leaving all creation to fend for itself? Similarly to how Jesus was able to house His glorified spirit in a resurrected body and walk among men in Jerusalem after His resurrection, He is able to condescend from His Throne and visit amongst us in our physical bodies. It is a continual process of condescension and resurrection. He can show Himself as He wills. Yet, as an omnipresent being He is capable of continuing to oversee all creation and still focus His love upon a single individual.

9 And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:
10 Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.
11 And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.

Jesus identifies Himself, yet they had already received a witness from the Father of His identity. He introduces Himself without raising His voice; there was no intercom. He spoke and they heard His words into their minds as if He was standing next to them.

12 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

Every person attending this event was a humble seeker of Christ. Can you imagine the feelings and absolute love and contrition that you would feel to be in the presence of the Lord in this manner? In a similar manner as He came to the Nephites in Bountiful shall He come to His disciples in the last days when He first calls His Gatherers. Then there will be other visits before His final coming to the world in fire and glory!

13 And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:

14 Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

15 And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one **[each individually]** until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

About 2500 people were able to have a personal experience with Jesus Christ. It was not a single-file-line, with each taking the several minutes required to touch each of His wounds and embrace the Savior. They each had an individual experience in the Spirit, their full Second Comforter, a personal and unique conversation with the Lord. If they had done it in the flesh it would have taken at least 42 hours for each to have at least one minute to greet their Lord. Can the Lord provide this experience to all at once? Yes. They truly saw with their eyes and felt the prints in His hands and feet. They each witnessed the resurrected Jesus Christ and as Mormon said in the previous chapter, “did have great favors [even that which is more than they were yet worthy to receive] shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads [New Covenants that will be made], insomuch that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—”

16 And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying: **[They all finished receiving their witness about the same time and there was an eruption of praise!]**

17 Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.

What does it mean to worship? It is to focus your entire heart and soul upon something to the extent that you desire nothing more than to emulate and be with that person or object. These Nephites’ hearts were completely broken and contrite before the Lord.

18 And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth. **[This was Nephi's first experience with the Lord in this manner, yet He had both seen and spoken with Him previously.]**

19 And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

20 And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him.

21 And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven. **[Nephi had performed baptisms for the Lord before, but this was a new commandment.]**

22 And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.

23 Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his sins through your words, and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them—Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.

24 And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:

25 Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen. **[This is the exact manner in which a baptism is to be performed. The authority is given directly from the Lord, and the requirement is simple: they repent (desire to know Christ), and they desire to be baptized. That is all.]**

26 And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water. **[The immersion signifies a complete covering, and then to come forth renewed in Christ.]**

27 And after this manner shall ye baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one. **[They are of the same glory and mind of God, as we are to join with them in receiving the gift of the Holy Ghost. In no other way may we become perfected.]**

28 And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been. **[Even amongst the righteous who survived the destructions, there were many disputations concerning how to baptize, who should baptize, and many of the doctrines. The Lord commands this to cease and to focus upon the simplicity of the words He has commanded. When the Lord comes at the commencement of the establishment of Zion in the last days there shall also be many disputations among us concerning doctrine. At that time He will again command His servants to have no disputations, and such diverse views shall be laid to rest]**

29 For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

I have seen many good men and women in the Lord become angry and frustrated when others have different doctrinal views as them. We must judge righteously and remember that the Lord will sort out the differences. Do not become angry and allow the adversary to influence your heart. Trust in the Lord.

30 Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away. **[Another word for doctrine is “way.” The “Way of Christ” is His Gospel and the Book of Mormon contains a fullness of His Way for us to come unto Him. It is glorious!]**

31 Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

32 And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent **[Part One of the Doctrine]** and believe in me. **[The Lord always emphasizes this relationship between Himself and the Father, and our relationship with Them. The key is to come unto Him, to repent, and this is the grace that is given to us that we might have Eternal Life.]**

33 And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, **[Part Two of the Doctrine]** the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God. **[The importance of baptism is not to be overlooked. It is an essential part of the Doctrine. Why baptism? Because it is an eternal witness of our commitment that transcends time and space. In this is a mystery.]**

34 And whoso believeth not in me **[does not come unto Christ]**, and is not baptized, shall be damned. **[Cannot increase in glory]**

35 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost. **[Part Three of the Doctrine is that you shall be visited with fire (the washing of glory that makes clean) and the Holy Ghost (the renewal of your spirit to a higher glory).]**

36 And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one. **[This is the gift to you.]**

37 And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things. **[The Lord uses the example of being as a little child to explain repentance. You must believe and trust, for you know very little at this stage.]**

38 And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. **[Twice it is spoken. The emphasis is striking!]**

39 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them. **[A Warning that the adversary will come, but that if you remember what was commanded you will prevail against them.]**

40 And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them. **[Can you not see how this has occurred today, that many of the simple truths have been added upon, and the requirements for baptism have become complicated, or in some cases reduced? Evil is the express motive to undermine the kingdom of God. When men seek to lift themselves to gratify their pride the Doctrine of Christ is not allowed to function as it was designed. You must seek revelation to know the difference.]**

41 Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth. **[The words “Go forth!” have special significance to a servant as they are to begin an important mission. And so it shall and has been spoken in these last days.]**

Questions and Answers

Thank you for the true spirit of the Way you have explained this. Words can't explain the joy these people must have felt. Thank you again!

Interesting to note that 196 years ago today did Moroni deliver these plates to Joseph and we get to bask in the refulgent message of the Saviors gospel. Thank you PR for doing all this!

5 And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

How did they “open their ears”? **[They began to focus on what they were hearing spiritually. It is the same with us as we are involved in our tasks at hand we may not hear the subtle voice of the Spirit. It also was a preparation for them to “open their eyes” as the manifestations of the Spirit would soon be unveiled. PR]**

[“A Warning that the adversary will come, but that if you remember what was commanded you will prevail against them.” “What was commanded”, I am not sure what you mean by this. **[If you continue in His doctrine, you will overcome the Adversary. PR]** Also, when you receive the Gift of Holy Ghost and receive this “higher glory” does the adversary see this glory and seek with a greater vigor to destroy you and your testimony? **[At that point he cannot claim you, for you belong to the Lord. But there will be a greater effort to block your works, as you become a servant of the Lord. PR]** Can you shield this glory to not draw attention to yourself and all the efforts of evil to destroy you? How do you personally deal with this in your own life? What is the best course of action to deal with evil on a consistent and constant basis? **[You cannot hide from the Adversary. If you go to public places and you know that you have much light it helps to veil your light with the Lord's permission, simply to avoid more harassment. However, I have found it doesn't help much, because it is not permanent and they find you**

eventually. I don't worry about those things like I did when I first became aware of it. I simply check with the Lord and clean my space periodically. PR]

I was so excited to read this today!!! So if I understand this correctly the first time they heard the voice it was a "Baptism of Fire". Then again the second time they heard the voice and understood it not, could it have been the " Gift of the Holy Ghost"? Then they were ready to hear and see the third time the voice that spoke because their spiritual ears and eyes were opened? When you had your Baptism of Fire and Gift of the Holy Ghost didn't it also open up for you many spiritual gifts and make it easier to hear and see spiritually? Is that what was going on? I have always pondered about this topic . Thank you so much for all you shared today. It was a spiritual feast for me!!! Now I am even more excited for the next several chapters!!! Thank you for this great work you are doing! **[When they first heard the voice it was the beginning of the glory coming upon them. Some heard, and others not as much. It continued until the entire group of people were standing in the pillar of fire and glory. This was not the gift of the Holy Ghost. This was given to them after they were baptized, and by the laying on of hands. PR]**

Could you elaborate on what you mean by the people receiving favors that they weren't yet worthy to receive? Not sure I understand:

They each witnessed the resurrected Jesus Christ and as Mormon said in the previous chapter, "did have great favors [Even that which is more than they were yet worthy to receive] shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads [New Covenants that will be made.], insomuch that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—"

[Mormon had mentioned in the previous chapter that he would show that they received great "favors" and "blessings" from the Lord in the writings to come. The people who experienced the Savior in Bountiful were righteous and were blessed, but a "favor" is something that is given without earning it. Typically, the kind of faith required to part the veil and stand in the presence of the Lord requires more than most are willing to do in a lifetime. These people received both favors and blessings! PR]

This is beautiful, dear Brother!!! Oh that I might live to see the day when the Lord teaches His doctrine personally upon the earth again, and that I might even be given the commission to go forth!

So did the people in Bountiful have their Second Comforter experience even before receiving the Gift of the Holy Ghost? I thought the Gift of the Holy Ghost is a prerequisite to receiving the Second Comforter. **[The Gift of the Holy Ghost is a prerequisite to have your Calling and Election Made Sure. The Second Comforter is a modern phrase to mean a visitation from the Lord where you see Him. This phrase is used broadly by many people, but as you have used here it would only apply to the disciples that the Lord chose to perform a specific mission.**

Will Christ ever come to the people in Zion with a physical body? Will it only be with out spiritual eyes?... Will He live among the people before His coming in glory? **[He will visit similarly to how he did the people of Bountiful, but will not dwell among them until the earth is cleansed in His glory at His coming. PR]**

One thing this made me think of, as I was trying to wrap my head around it, how is this possible? By reading the scriptures, this account, you have the sure impression that this visit happened more physically than spiritually, like when we go to church on Sunday and we see everyone, shake hands and all that, so my mind can't see it not being any other way, but than I got thinking of some of my own personal spiritual experiences, and how they have felt, how real the voices I've heard before were, and I realized that we make the mistake to think spiritual equals vague, or not too clear, more like a dream, or fleeing, or that the tangible or physical is more present or real, but in my view, now I see that spiritual experiences have been more vivid, clearer, tangible than anything I could ever experience here, than what's real and what's not so real? Almost makes me question my sanity 😊 **[We question our sanity when the spiritual truth conflicts with the carnal mind. This is why Jesus said we must be as a little child. Thank you for those thoughts. PR]**

21 And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven. [Nephi had performed baptisms for the Lord before, but this was a new commandment.]

What command or power was Nephi given that was different than before? **[It is the same power, but a new instruction or authority. PR]**

How was the instruction or authority for Nephi to baptize different? **[It was a baptism of renewal for those who had received baptism before, and a new covenant for those who would enter for their first time. PR]**

I had been asking the question of the difference between a baptism of fire and the gift of the Holy ghost for the last 2 years oh, thank you so much for clarifying these two things! This is definitely a doctor and I am to teach others if and when they are ready! I feel the spirit burning with the truth of these things!

(In a similar manner as He came to the Nephites in Bountiful shall He come to His disciples in the last days when He first calls His Gatherers.).

Will this only take place in First Zion or will it happen in other locations around the world? Will these visits follow great calamities during the tribulation or proceed the tribulations to ready the gatherers? I suppose it will depend on the people and other things. I sure hope He comes to my people and area. in that day! **[It will happen after the beginning of calamities, at the First Zion. It will probably occur at other places too, but I have not seen that. PR]**

In verse 35, it says the Father will visit us With A baptism of Fire. Other verses in Third Nephi say that Jesus is who will baptize us with Fire. Why the differences here? **[I discuss this in detail in links about the Gift of the Holy Ghost in the menu**

selection for Our Temporal Progression. Just semantics, but initially it comes by the Holy Spirit of Promise from the Father. PR]

The Beatitudes of Progression – 3 Nephi 12:1-48

1 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) **[The number twelve signifies a governing body. For this people, these disciples at this time were the only ones given authority to baptize, and it was given to them directly of the Lord.]** and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them **[the Lord raised His voice]**, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am. **[This is the first of two new “blessed,” which are added to the Beatitudes in this BofM text. This promise is to those who will listen to the words of His servants and repent.]**

The word “blessed” in this context means to be anointed of God. It would be better to state that they are “Blessed,” as a state of holiness before the Lord. Normally, they would be baptized of water, receive the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost, and then see the Lord and know that He is. They witness Him first, yet the Lord says they must still be baptized and receive the Holy Ghost.

2 And again, more **[in addition to you]** blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, **[more people shall be blessed after hearing your testimony]** and that ye know that I am. **[The second “blessed” added in the translation is also not included in the original New Testament account (Matthew 5), which identifies a blessedness for those who receive baptism and the Holy Ghost.]** Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins. **[The remission of sins comes from the baptism of fire.]**

The following is what is called the Beatitudes (to be anointed or Blessed). This is the same sermon which was given in Galilee, with a few additions in the BofM translation as stated above. It is the Lord’s blueprint or perfect pattern for how you may receive the Second Comforter and stand in the presence of God.

3 Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, [**broken heart and contrite spirit**] for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. [**They shall receive the Holy Spirit of Promise.**]

4 And again, blessed are all they that mourn [**cry unto the Lord**], for they shall be comforted. [**I shall be with them.**]

5 And blessed are the meek, [**seek the will of the Lord**] for they shall inherit the earth. [**Shall stand with the Church of the Firstborn when the earth is changed and exalted.**]

6 And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, [**those who seek my will above all things**] for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost. [**Their spirits shall be quickened and be one with me.**]

7 And blessed are the merciful, [**filled with compassion for others – charity**] for they shall obtain mercy. [**Grace or divine progression through Christ**]

8 And blessed are all the pure in heart, [**real intent, pure love for God**] for they shall see God. [**This is the only justifiable purpose to seek the Second Comforter: to know Him because you love Him deeply and desire to serve.**]

9 And blessed are all the peacemakers, [**those who bring souls to me**] for they shall be called the children of God. [**Be called My Sons and Daughters, Servants of the Most High.**]

The word “servant” has a much more negative connotation in today’s society, but to serve God in righteousness is glorious and the greatest honor in the Heavens.

10 And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name’s sake, [**willing to give their life for me**] for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

11 And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute [**stated twice**], and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake; [**give up your reputation in the world.**]

12 For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you. [**Calling and Election Made Sure**]

This is a concise list of the Beatitudes, their meaning, and blessings. It is a blueprint for Eternal Life as given by the Savior each time He visits a people. It is the Ten Commandments of the New Covenant and will lead a soul from the beginning of the process to its full “Blessed” state when you stand in the presence of the Lord.

1. **Listen and heed the words of my servants. (believe) ALL SHALL BE GIVEN**
2. **Receive baptism of water and the Holy Ghost. (receive the promise of the Everlasting Covenant) KNOW THAT I AM**
3. **Continue with a broken heart and contrite spirit – full submission. (poor in spirit) WILL RECEIVE THE HOLY SPIRIT OF PROMISE**
4. **Cry unto me – pray always. (mourn) HE WILL COME IN SPIRIT**

5. **Seek His will– follow every revelation received. (meek) SHALL ABIDE HIS COMING**
6. **Seek God’s will above all – full submission. (hunger) FIRST RESURRECTION**
7. **Charity, the pure love of Christ. (merciful) DIVINE PROGRESSION**
8. **Pure intentions and love of God. (pure in heart) THE SECOND COMFORTER**
9. **Bring souls unto me as called. (peacemakers) A SERVANT OF GOD**
10. **Be willing to give all things. (persecution) CALLING AND ELECTION MADE SURE**

11.

13 Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.

The Lord said that we must be pure and white like salt, that through us the souls of this temporal earth may be saved. That they may see our good works and that our light will guide them to Him. When we become His sons and daughters, and as the light within us is magnified, we have great ability to draw others to Him. If we pollute ourselves or hide in darkness we cannot be of any use as a servant of the Most High. (personal journal)

14 Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid. **[Those who were witnesses were expected to be the light to everyone else.]**

15 Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;

16 Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven. **[What are the good works He is referring to? The most important is what is stated in the Beatitudes. To receive the baptism of water and Holy Ghost, and to follow the revelations given.]**

17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

18 For verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

[The Lord emphasizes that the Law of Moses and previous commandments are not to be forgotten, but that He fulfills them, so His new commandments are to be followed.]

19 And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled. **[Again, the focus is upon His Doctrine. The Lord emphasizes that all that the Mosaic Law taught has been fulfilled in His last and great sacrifice.]**

20 Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for verily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven. **[A reference to the Beatitudes just given.]**

The Kingdom of Heaven indeed has many mansions. The Throne is where God governs all creation. Most who receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost remain in a state of terrestrial, where they abide with the Holy Ghost and can have the presence of the Son, but not yet the Father. To ascend in the Kingdom of Heaven we must do all that the Lord has commanded, which is detailed in the Beatitudes.

At this point the focus on the Lord's sermon is how a Servant of the Most High is to conduct themselves:

21 Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill **[murder]**, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

22 But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca **[idiot]**, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire. **[Do not harbor negative feelings as expressed through your words, for it invites the Adversary and is not becoming of a servant of God.]**

The Lord is emphasizing how the Mosaic Law taught direct commandments against actions, but that even the very thoughts of harm toward another may divert our path.

23 Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—

24 Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you. **[You must not leave any hard feelings between you and anyone you may have offended. Seek reconciliation with these people. Then your heart will be ready to receive the Lord.]**

25 Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be cast into prison. **[This does not mean to admit guilt where there is none, but to honor any debts and promises so that you are not beholden to any man.]**

26 Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost senine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay. **[If you are found guilty of breaking the law you cannot be a Servant, for you must pay your debt.]**

27 Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;

28 But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.

29 Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

30 For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.

The heart is where we are judged by the Lord. If our desires are impure we shall not progress and may be led away by the Adversary. Those who struggle with a spirit of lust must endeavor to “deny” themselves any access to these images, thoughts, and temptations. Why is it so critical? It is Satan’s greatest lure for the Sons of God, both in this life and the next. Every attempt must be made to develop the habit of looking upon women with the eyes of God, with a wholesome, pure, and charitable view. To seek any sexual interaction outside of marriage is a step toward perdition. The Lord easily forgives, but it is highly advisable to do all in your power to deny yourself of these things. There are many of the Lord’s servants who have suffered through these sins. Often, the most difficult part of forgiveness is forgiving oneself. The more a servant can resist these temptations in this life the stronger and more focused they will be in the next.

31 It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement.

32 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.

The Lord said that this scripture is making the point that marriage is a covenant between God, a man and woman; something that cannot easily be broken by a piece of paper unless either is guilty of adultery. Adultery is to be unclean before God in marriage and will prevent them from ascending to Him. It is not just the woman, but the man as well that needs to consider such a thing. Careful prayer and a confirmation of the Lord’s will, through revelation, should be how a couple should consider their marriage difficulties. I thanked the Lord for the clarification. (personal journal)

33 And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;

34 But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God’s throne;

35 Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

36 Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair black or white;

37 But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay; for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil. **[It is a common practice to make oaths to God, referencing the heavens, one’s body, or any important personal thing as the cost of the promise if we fail. This is not to be, for the Lord sets the terms of our covenants with Him. Those who make covenants with curses attached to them are placing themselves at risk of deception and the Adversary.]**

38 And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth;
39 But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also;

This scripture is often used to justify a pacifist approach to Christian living. It is first to be noted that the Lord is addressing those who will be His Servants. They are to follow the last two steps of the Beatitudes in their spiritual progression. Here, the Lord expects them to submit themselves as they do His work. As such, their sacrifices stand as a witness against the wicked and also stand as a memorial for the eternities. Until one has been called and chosen to bear such a burden, we are to judge between good and evil and resist evil at all costs. We are to protect our families from harm, to fight for truth and justice. If you abide in charity, you will know exactly how the Lord wishes you to demonstrate His love (the pure love of Christ) in each situation.

40 And if any man will sue thee at the law and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;

41 And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain.

42 Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn thou not away. **[Be willing to give all you are required to those in need. This doesn't mean we give away everything we own at the expense of providing for the needs of our family. However, the Lord at times will ask it of us if we are called to the work and called to be Servants of God. Refer to Moroni 7:44-48, as defining characteristics of charity are listed.]**

43 And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;

44 But behold I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you;

45 That ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good. **[One defining characteristic of charity is that we see others the way God sees them. We must pray for charity that our hearts may be pure.]**

46 Therefore those things which were of old time **[Mosaic Law]**, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

47 Old things are done away, and all things have become new. **[The former law becomes old as you keep all commandments the Lord reveals to you now. Having received the gift of the Holy Ghost you are one with the Father and Son, as you keep His Spirit with you always. If a person after receiving this call falls to transgression or sin they must repent and be made clean again by the baptism of fire, otherwise they shall be led away by the buffetings of Satan.]**

48 Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I, or your Father who is in heaven is perfect. **[The Lord states to these people, after having received much, that they needed to become perfect. How is this possible, to be perfect like Jesus Christ and the Father? They must submit to the fullness of the Everlasting Covenant and do all things which are commanded of them. This comes incrementally, and cannot all be received in this life.]**

Questions and Answers

An even more concise description of the Beatitudes:

- 1. Believe His Servants**
- 2. Receive the Covenant**
- 3. Fully repent**
- 4. Pray Always**
- 5. Obey revelation**
- 6. Seek His will**
- 7. Charity**
- 8. Virtue**
- 9. Be a Servant**
- 10. Endure to the end**

Numbers 7-10 correspond to D&C 121:45-46 PR

This was a tremendous, beautiful spiritual feast! I have been so looking forward to this chapter and your insights into the Lords scriptures. I can't thank you enough. It was all I hoped for and more. I now have so much to ponder and reflect upon. Thank you PR! And I thank the Lord for allowing you to share all you have from your personal journal and time spent in His presence. God bless you for sharing.

Vs 2: "Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins."

I was going to ask if this promise still held true today if we believed these Nephite disciple's teachings. As I highlighted the sentence to copy it here, the Lord suddenly replied to my mental question that it held true of all His servants, including [PR]! And I felt personally chagrined because I should be asking the Lord EVERYTHING first! (I do still SO enjoy this BoM study together. I want to meet all of you – PR and fellow commenters – in real life some day!)

When He gave the Nephites the Beattitudes sermon, it was if course individually face to face, and not as a sermon to their group, is that right? **[No, he "cried unto them" and raised His voice, which is stated in verse one. PR]**

"Most who receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost remain in a state of terrestrial, where they abide with the Holy Ghost and can have the presence of the Son, but not yet the Father." Does this mean 3rd estate angels? And that 3rd estate cannot talk with or see the Father face to face, as you have? **[All third estate will see the Son, but not ascend to the Father. Refer to D&C 76:71-79 PR]**

When you say not ascend to the Father, do you mean celestial glory? Everyone talks with the Father and Mother when they are created right? **[Yes. PR]**

Thank you so much for everything PR.

Quick question. You said this – [All third estate will see the Son, but not ascend to the

Father.]

It is my understanding that when we receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost (3rd estate), that we are begotten spiritually of Christ and then he becomes our Father. If we accept him as our Father then what is the meaning of what you wrote? Can you expand on that at all? **[It is true that Jesus becomes our Father, as we are spiritually begotten of Him. But there is a patriarchy of Fathers. To be introduced to the Father in the Heavenly Realm we must ascend to the 4th estate. PR]**

For almost three years now I am prompted to put one thing on my bedroom wall and that was the beatitudes of Jesus Christ! Now I realize the depth of their full meaning! I was prompted to go through each one and ask the Lord what once I should focus on and steps I need to do to acquire them individually! This is mind-blowing, thank you!

His servants are told to turn the other cheek and love their enemies, but He has also directed His servants to wield the sword on occasion (Nephi killing Laban, Mormon and Moroni, etc). But in another place He says, those who live by the sword will die by the sword. How should we reconcile some of this? **[It is simple – Keep the commandments, but expect the Lord to direct your paths and not to lean on the arm of flesh. Generally, we are not to harm another, but if the Lord gives a clear revelation, and you have the kind of relationship where you know His voice conclusively, you won't need to ask the question. PR]**

Counsel to His Disciples – 3 Nephi 13:1-34

1 Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms **[donations]** unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

2 Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

3 But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth; **[Do not make it a public affair.]**

4 That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly. **[The Lord emphasizes the importance of giving to the poor, but for the right reasons. We are not to seek attention in any way, for this is pride, and that which is meant to be an act of charity and love is cankered, and there is no spiritual benefit.]**

In today's society, often the giving to charity is a public display with much congratulation. Donations should be done under the direction of the Spirit.

5 And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward. **[This is an interesting scripture. There are times when it is required to pray in public, but how do**

you pray? Are you concerned with how you will sound to the listening ear? Do your words in public match the words you use in your private prayers? Are you praying for the Lord to hear, or to please those who are listening? This was important enough for the Lord to mention, as many do not pray with their heart, but for pride they craft their prayers to impress those who are listening.]

6 But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly. **[I have found my closet to be the best place. It is private and humble. My greatest experiences with the Lord have taken place there. Where is your private place that you can go at any time?]**

7 But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking. **[The Lord hears the desires of the heart, not the eloquence of our words. Often when people praise the Lord they use lofty speech to express themselves. Simply remember the purpose. Focus upon your love for Him and desire to serve.]**

8 Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him. **[He is simply waiting for you to exercise the faith.]**

9 After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name. **[Approach Him humbly, address Him, and praise His name. The praising is a way to open the Spirit of God upon us as we express gratitude.]**

10 Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven. **[Seeking His will, not our own. Often we come to Him demanding certain blessings. We must trust in the Lord.]**

11 And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors. **[Ask for forgiveness of our sins. consider yourself, and seek revelation for how you should assist or forgive others. Is there anything in your life which is amiss?]**

12 And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil. **[Ask for the strength to overcome temptation and the Adversary.]**

13 For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen. **[Recognize and express gratitude to God.]**

“The Lord’s Prayer” is usually read as a continual prayer, but in actual application it is a series of steps. They can be spoken in your own words and it is advisable to pause between them to listen. The Spirit may have you add to your prayer. The greatest prayers you will ever offer will be those in which the Spirit dictates every word spoken.

Order of prayer based upon the “Lord’s Prayer:”

- 1. Father, (express gratitude and praise. Thank Him for your blessings.)**
- 2. Seek His will as we ask for what we need.**
- 3. Ask for forgiveness, consider what you need to do.**
- 4. Ask for protection from both spiritual and physical foes.**
- 5. Again, express gratitude and contrition. Be a Servant of God.**

6.

14 For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heavenly Father will also forgive you;
15 But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses. **[Your personal forgiveness can never be complete until you forgive all who have wronged you. If you carry a dark thought in your heart toward anyone, even if that person is yourself, the power of forgiveness will be halted. Pray for an understanding of what this means to you.]**

16 Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

17 But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;

18 That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly. **[Fasting is much like giving alms. It is a benevolent act when we purify ourselves of the world and focus upon God only. This can include obtaining from food and drink, or any worldly activity. Do not do these for the attention of our friends and family. It is completely something between us and the Lord. The Lord looks upon the intent of the heart.]**

19 Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;

20 But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

21 For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also. **[Everyone treasures something. A treasure in itself is not evil. Our family and friends are treasures. Our possessions can serve an important purpose in bringing joy to us as we provide for the needs of others. What is important is to understand that all things in this world are temporary. The glory of heaven is eternal, and should be the focus of our heart's desire.]**

22 The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.

23 But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!

When a singular “eye” is referenced, this is the eye of the Spirit, not the physical “eyes.” There are many cultures that are aware of a separate eye and point to the pineal gland in the forehead as the “Third Eye.” If your spirit is awakened, the light within you will grow until you have been quickened in the Spirit of the Lord. This is an act which fills your entire body, not just a gland in your head. The adversary has a counter to this where the body may be filled with darkness. Each are covenant beings and follow their master.

24 No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon. **[personal gratification, the Adversary]**

25 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve **[Disciples]** whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words

which I have spoken **[this is the conduct by which ye shall act]**. For behold, ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment? **[Do not worry about your physical needs as you administer to these people.]**

26 Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they? **[You are my chosen disciples. You will be provided for in every way.]**

27 Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature? **[Just as you cannot cause your height to grow by anything of your own doing, you must allow things to take their course.]**

28 And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;

29 And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these. **[You shall be glorious in your light and glory. Do not focus upon your clothing and how you appear to others.]**

30 Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith. **[You will have what you need until your time is over.]**

31 Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

32 For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things. **[Again, trust in the Lord, and He will provide all that His Servants require.]**

33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you. **[Your priority is the ministry in which you are called. Your food, clothing, housing, and all needs will be provided for.]**

34 Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof. **[Take it one day at a time.]**

This part of the Book of Mormon is the same counsel given to His disciples in Galilee, which is called the “Sermon on the Mount.” When Joseph Smith came to certain passages within the Book of Mormon, particularly Isaiah and the words spoken by Christ, he saw that the words mirrored that which was written in the Old and New Testament. He was permitted to use the same English translation with a few variants as the Spirit guided him. This is a common annoyance to those who judge the Book of Mormon as false. To Joseph, it was an act of honoring what he knew were true words of scripture from the Bible.

Questions and Answers

Is the Lord offended when we do not ever kneel down to pray?

I have thrown out some religious traditions and I talk to Heavenly Father and Jesus using normal words, as if they are there with me and are family. Because of my spouse, I rarely kneel or appear to be in prayer. (I feel like I have to make sure he doesn't see it because of how he grew up, as such devotion makes him uncomfortable.)

I've wondered if I am offending HF & Christ by not kneeling? **[95% of the time I pray**

I am sitting down on the floor with my knees up. The other 10% are kneeling or standing. What is important is that our hearts are filled with contrition. The way we express that with our bodies, hands, and words will affect the prayer. PR]

[“Your personal forgiveness can never be complete until you forgive all who have wronged you. If you carry a dark thought in your heart toward anyone, even if that person is yourself, the power of forgiveness will be halted. “] I have been struggling with this. I would appreciate your thoughts. My dilemma is when you forgive someone do you still have to associate with them? I have no ill will towards them but I feel until they show some respect towards me I should avoid them. I know many people have had to endure great trials in their life with certain people. When is enoughenough? Does the Lord allow you to forgive but keep your distance or does He expect you to keep trying? **[It does not mean you have to associate with them, unless the Spirit tells you otherwise. We should forgive all people and even love our enemies. It doesn't mean we trust all people, trust is earned. The best answer is to ask the Lord to reveal to you how He expects you to interact with that individual. PR]**

“If your spirit is awakened, the light within you will grow until you have been quickened in the Spirit of the Lord. This is an act which fills your entire body, ...”
I have experienced this many times. For me, it comes and goes. Sometimes it is out of the blue, many times it happens in prayer or right after I have been pensive and thoughtful in accomplishing a task He has given me. But some times it goes days and even almost a week of nothing. Question: I think that is normal for most? Question: Is there a time (a spiritual level?), while yet mortal, when this amazing quickening of joy, peace, patience, brotherly kindness, and light is like... always present? Or is that not possible due to the weight of the Telestial forces at play on us... if it IS possible, would you share what you know? **[What you were describing is being in and out of the light of God, or standing in a baptism of fire from time to time. The gift of the Holy Ghost changes your spirit within you, but still you need to stand in the glory to be made clean while in this life. When a person receives the sealing power they receive a fullness of that glory while in the flesh. For most, they must wait until they have finished this life and inherit Eternal Life. PR]**

Do you have any more insight on how and why Joseph used the KJV Bible for his manuscript rather than revelation/translation. I don't personally have a problem with this, but I'm trying to develop an explanation that is more palatable to critics of the Book of Mormon that maybe they have not considered before... Like for example, I wonder if in some cases the Isaiah chapters weren't copied directly into the metal plates, but rather just referenced, which would make sense that Joseph would go ahead and copy a chapter down... **[All I can say is what I was told. Critics will never be satisfied. PR]**

Build Your House Upon the Rock – 3 Nephi 14:1-

27

1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude [**the Lord turns from speaking only to His chosen twelve Disciples to the entire multitude**] , and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.

2 For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

3 And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

4 Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

5 Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

It is human nature to look upon others and see their faults. We are expected to judge between good and evil every day, but we must exercise charity, which is to see others the way God sees them. If you review the fruits of charity, as stated in Moroni 7:45, you will see that the Lord does not approve of those who judge others unrighteously. In fact, if we are unforgiving and harbor dark thoughts toward others it will prevent us from remaining clean in the presence of the Lord.

6 Give not that which is holy [of God] unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you. [**The Lord specifically commands them to not share anything holy with “dogs and swine.” Who are the dogs and swine? These are those who hate the words of Christ. The Lord will show you by the Spirit when to refrain from exercising the gifts of the Spirit. Remember when Jesus was commanded by Herod to do a miracle and Jesus was silent? You must be prudent and prayerful when sharing that which is holy.**]

7 Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

8 For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

9 Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

10 Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

11 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

This is such a beautiful analogy which the Lord uses to emphasize the “Law of Asking.” He admonishes the people to “ask” for what they need. To seek, and even “knock” until they are given access. This is the power of faith in receiving the blessings of heaven. Many expect the Lord to simply give them

what they need with no thought of even asking. In some things this will occur, but when seeking the most beautiful blessings that can be obtained in this life it requires us to diligently seek Him. To knock on the doors of heaven with great purpose and resolve. Don't just tap, knock loudly and keep doing so until He answers. You might hear a small voice in the distance telling you to be patient, "I'm coming." You must take these verses literal and believe, for in them is the key to all the mysteries of heaven.

12 Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets. **[The "Golden Rule" to treat others as you wish to be treated. On the heels of the former verses the Lord emphasizes that when someone comes knocking on your door, respond to them likewise. All "prophets" are servants of the Lord.]**

13 Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in there at;

14 Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it. **[The gate to Eternal Life begins at baptism, but it continues for a great distance, a straight course toward the completion of the Everlasting Covenant. Narrow is the way which leads toward its completion. Of all the people who inhabit this earth, few will follow this path. It is not that it is difficult to find, but that few desire to go therein.]**

15 Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. **[Never, ever, judge a person by the way they look. Especially in today's society, where anyone can be polished and presented in a positive manner to create the illusion of kindness, sophistication, and even righteousness. What is a ravenous wolf? These are those who are filled with darkness who have evil intentions. The only way to know such people is to pray for discernment. Ask the Lord to know the intentions of their heart. In these last days such discernment is critical.]**

16 Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

Another important counsel to help us see clearly: If the "prophet's" message causes you to continually pull back, like trying to eat a sweet fruit that has thorns attached to it, something is wrong. What kind of fruit is it? Do their words and actions bring you closer to Christ, or closer to the prophet? Does it build the Kingdom of Heaven, or an earthly kingdom of men where others are held up high with honor and comfort? Does the prophet teach exactly what the Lord commanded in 3 Nephi 11, the "Doctrine of Christ," or do they require people to pay strict allegiance to their words as many duties and commandments are added to the doctrine? Do they teach how to know the Lord, receive pure revelation, and literally come unto Christ? The prophet is the messenger, not the message.

17 Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

18 A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

19 Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

20 Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.

We can all judge the fruit for ourselves. What is the fruit of Joseph Smith? We have the Book of Mormon, and many revelations. Would you include all the people who have witnessed against him as proof that the fruit is bad? Each must taste the fruit for themselves and decide. You cannot judge the fruit according to the standard of the world. It is not the size of the churches, their beautiful structures and powerful influence that we look upon to know if the fruit is good. We must judge righteously, seeking a witness of the Spirit.

In the case of all prophets, we must judge by the “fruit” that is brought into the Lord’s kingdom. How many have come unto Christ because of a prophet’s guidance? A prophet can have hundreds of thousands of followers with not a single soul brought to Christ and thereby have no fruit to show. Evil fruit is the evidence that a prophet teaches doctrine which actually separates individuals from Christ. If they teach you to lean on the arm of flesh, to deny the power of the gifts of the Spirit, to judge others, or to change the doctrines of God to conform to the changes of society is not good fruit. These are general observations. Pray for your own understanding.

21 Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.

22 Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?

23 And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

These are hard words to hear. Imagine a person who has assumed their entire life that they were a servant of God. They had great callings in the church, performed priesthood duties with great vigilance. They attended all their meetings and regularly attended the temple. Yet, when they finally are judged of the Lord He says he never knew them! How can this be?

You cannot earn your place in the kingdom by your works, or expect that a church calling is the equivalent of acceptance before the Lord. The path is narrow, and it requires only three things: repentance, baptism, and the Holy Ghost. Have you had this change of heart, the quickening of the spirit that comes to a person that has received the baptism of fire and the gift of the Holy Ghost? If you have, all you must do is follow the commandments the Lord gives here in chapters 12-14 of 3 Nephi.

24 Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—

25 And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock. **[The shape of the rock never changes. It is solid. The philosophies of men cannot change or move it. The**

rock is the Lord's Gospel and the words in these last chapters. Do you understand?]

26 And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not **[Ask yourself if you truly are anchored to these words.]** shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—

27 And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

Today, we live in a time when many are falling away from the Gospel. Does it mean these people are made of sand? No. It means they are not following prophets whose teachings are built upon the rock of the Lord's true Gospel. Many teach the philosophies of men mingled with scripture. Come unto Christ, repent, be baptized and seek the gift of the Holy Ghost. Then follow the new commandments the Lord sets forth in the Beatitudes and the counsel to His Disciples. Then, you will be on a straight path toward receiving a fullness of the Everlasting Covenant, and shall be perfect in all things.

Questions and Answers

How does one “knock” on heavens door? **[Every time you pray with real intent you are knocking. As you exercise great faith (seek revelation and act upon it) you begin to knock louder. PR]**

I like the Joseph Smith Translation for Matthew 7. Why do you think Joseph didn't add this to Third Nephi?

32 And many will say unto me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name; and in thy name cast out devils; and in thy name done many wonderful works?

33 And then will I say, Ye never knew me; depart from me ye that work iniquity (JST Matthew 7:32-33). **[The proper Meaning is “had no relationship.” It can be translated either way, but Joseph understood that God truly knows us, so it is from our end that the relationship is lacking. When Joseph translated these portions of the Book of Mormon the Lord permitted him to use parts of the King James Version of the Bible. Anyone who reads the Book of Mormon can ask the Lord for revelation to further understand the translation. PR]**

I feel very inspired after reading this chapter, praise the Lord, God bless the prophet Joseph, and thank you PR! The discussion on the law of asking gives me much to ponder.

Also, I have been pondering on the doctrine of Christ and its simplicity. Repentance never ends, although I feel that it has stepped up a notch as I am zeroing in on these greater blessings. I know that I was baptized at 8, although likely wasn't by someone who had been authorized directly by the Lord. As to receiving the gift of the Holy Ghost, I am not sure if that has happened yet, so likely not.

Question for you PR: since most if not all of my repentance has occurred subsequent to my baptism, perhaps should I anticipate a baptism of renewal later on before the

establishment of Zion that you mentioned a few chapters ago? Is this something that all servants should anticipate? **[Yes, all the Servants will have this. PR]**

Other Sheep and Gentiles – 3 Nephi 15:1-24

1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father **[to His apostles in Galilee]**; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day. **[What is the last day? It is the last day before the earth is exalted.]**

2 And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new. **[This was difficult for many to understand because they had dutifully performed the ceremonies of the temple for hundreds of years. They saw salvation through these performances and didn't understand what they should do going forward in that regard.]**

3 And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

4 Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

5 Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end. **[Those ordinances pointed to His great and last sacrifice. Now all things are new.]**

6 Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled. **[Do not dismiss the prophets words, for they pointed to Him, and much is yet to be fulfilled.]**

7 And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

8 For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me. **[Some of what was given to Moses was yet to be fulfilled. Many of the feasts observed by the Israelites pointed to the great events of Christ's life. The last three are yet to be fulfilled in the last days.]**

9 Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.

What does it mean to “endure to the end?” It means to not give up until you receive the fullness of the blessing promised. The end of your journey spiritually comes at different junctures in your progression. The first will be when you finally receive your baptism of fire and gift of the Holy Ghost. This is a process of enduring to the end. Then you must endure your third estate until you can be perfected by entering your fourth estate, and so on.

The Lord is advising the House of Israel to not give up, but continue to experience life eternal, which is the process of exaltation.

10 Behold, I have given unto you the commandments [**speaking of the last few chapters**]; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.

11 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:

12 Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph. [**A covenant people**]

13 And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.

14 And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

15 Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land. [**Jesus knew of the existence of the people in America, the lost ten tribes, and others; but never mentioned to his disciples in Israel because of their lack of faith.**]

16 This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

17 That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

18 And now, because of stiffneckedness [**a closed mind, unwilling to see**] and unbelief [**false traditions**] they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.

19 But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

20 And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes [**lost ten tribes which were dispersed after being taken by the Assyrians**] hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them. [**Later, it was assumed that Jesus was speaking of the Gentiles, but His sheep are those that know His voice. They are the “Elect,” which means they are under covenant from before they were born.**]

21 And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

22 And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.

23 And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

The greater the covenant, the greater the blessing. Gentiles are the seed of men, who are children of God, but whose souls are ancient, having been telestial for a very long time. In this state, having been invited to participate in this beautiful 4th estate world, are invited by the Holy Ghost to partake of

the Everlasting Covenant. It is during the Times of the Gentiles, after the great sacrifice of the Lord, that a great effort is made to bring the Gospel to them. All who desire to follow that path are given access to Jesus Christ. But He did not show Himself unto the Gentiles at that time.

24 But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

There are many that have heard His voice and yet not seen the resurrected Lord. Only a relative few have both heard and seen. They are given to our Lord Christ by the Holy Spirit of Promise and cannot be taken away except by a difficult process in which one colludes with the Adversary (to deny the Holy Ghost).

Questions and Answers

Note from vs 8: “Many of the feasts observed by the Israelites pointed to the great events of Christ’s life. The last three are yet to be fulfilled in the last days.”

Is it Christ Himself that will fulfill the last 3 feast days? **[Yes. PR]**

If so, doesn’t that hint that his second coming could fulfill one of the fall feast days? **[That is correct.]**

Just wow and wow.... I have to ask you this question! When you post certain chapters from the BoM, is that what you are inspired or prompted to share? It’s as if you are being absolutely directed to share chapters that pierce my soul. I love how GRACIOUS the Lord is and how he also knows the answers to many of our questions are from HIM through you. He allows us to be a witness of HIM personally and seems to add that second witness through you. I’m so filled with he Spirit of LOVE!!! Here’s a second question that may sound bizarre. Is it ok that i feel more connected to the ancient prophets and servants of the Lord? I enjoy the B of M and am learning so much but I have more of a sense of familiarity with the Ancient leaders. IDK- but I could use a little words of wisdom. **[I only write what I feel prompted to share. The ancient leaders are not so ancient. They are our contemporaries and some day when the big picture is revealed you will see how familiar they really are to you. PR]**

Is it Christ Himself that will fulfill the last 3 feast days? **[Yes. PR]**

If so, doesn’t that hint that his second coming could fulfill one of the fall feast days? **[That is correct.]**

What would be the other 2? **[The first feast days were accomplished by His Atonement and suffering. PR]**

Thanks again for all you do!

“The ancient leaders are not so ancient. They are our contemporaries and some day when the big picture is revealed you will see how familiar they really are to you.”

This makes sense. The first time I read the BoM, Moroni the Historian’s words struck a chord with me. I felt like I KNEW him.

Do you mean that we will realize we were all close siblings in heaven or do you mean that some of them are literally here on earth with us? **[Those who are born in the covenant have relationships that stretch from before the foundation of this world. Time is relative, and we are not separated from them. PR]**

“Gentiles are the seed of men, who are children of God, but whose souls are ancient, having been telestial for a very long time.”

Since I was raised Gentile can I safely assume that I am an ancient telestial soul or could some of the House of Israel be born and raised as a Gentile for God’s purposes?

[During the Time of the Gentiles there are covenant beings born unto all races. The “Elect” hear His voice. There are very few pure blood House of Israel in the world today. PR]

‘in this beautiful 4th estate world’ Hi PR does this just mean that our world has had a Savior and 4th estate beings residing here? I know you talked about ancient telestial children wanting to come to a world again and again and gain a body for experience etc How are they selected to gain a body when they are all clamouring to get one, just out of interest, wondering how they qualify. Thank you! **[This world is beautiful because of the Gospel. This affects both the earth and the people. All spirits for this earth get a body, but the body they have is determined by covenants made or not made. Some just come down according to their turn. When I saw a portion of this in vision it was fairly chaotic for those not in the covenant. PR]**

“When I saw a portion of this in vision it was fairly chaotic for those not in the covenant.”

When I read this I thought of Black Friday shopping where buyers get grabby over a limited number of products, insisting they had it first, it is rightfully theirs (for whatever reason), etc. Is it something like this? **[I saw a place that reminded me of the NY Stock Exchange in terms of yelling and waving hands. It was not the same reverence you see with those born in the covenant of Christ. These people are born in every country and creed, and unlikely places, but they are the Elect and under the constant care of the angels of God. PR]**

If there is chaotic squabbling over bodies to be born into, do some spirits of one gender end up in the body of the opposite gender, hence gender dysphoria? **[I know this is a popular belief these days, but no person changes gender. There may be physical difficulties, or spiritual difficulties that come with mortality, but not entering the body of an opposite gender at birth. This is what I have learned and each will need to seek their own understanding. PR]**

This People Shall Rise in the Last Days – 3 Nephi 16:1-20

A continuation of the previous chapter, as the Lord speaks about the Gentiles and His other sheep.

1 And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land **[North America]**, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister. **[Jesus' mortal ministry was confined to Galilee and the land around Jerusalem.]**

2 For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them. **[The location of the people representing a remnant of the ten tribes in the north countries.]**

3 But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.

4 And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles **[this is a reference to the great work of bringing the Gospel to the Gentiles]**, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer. **[The Lord commands that these words be written so that it may be included in this record for us.]**

5 And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel. **[Referring to the last days when the Elect shall be gathered in preparation for His second coming.]**

6 And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father. **[The function of the Holy Ghost, to bring us into the presence of the Lord, and the Father. This blessing is made possible to the Gentiles simply because of their belief and trust in Him.]**

7 Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief **[false traditions]** of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

8 But wo **[so sad]**, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them; **[prophecy of future events, the conquest of the Americas by Europeans.]**

9 And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them— **[This occurred to both the Jews, and the remnant of Joseph (the Book of Mormon people) when the Americas were settled.]**

10 And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

What does this prophecy refer to? Who are these Gentiles who will reject the fullness of the Gospel? The fullness is the Doctrine of Christ and everything that is taught regarding how to come unto Christ and experience all the gifts of the Spirit, which is taught mostly in the BofM, and also the Bible. The people of America are predominantly Gentile. This verse of scripture is a specific and direct prophecy of what is happening in America today. This includes all religious institutions that use either the Bible or the Book of Mormon.

When you consider the drastic decline of American culture, the rejection of the laws of God and the Judeo-Christian values that founded this country, it is easy to see the realization of this prophecy.

11 And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

12 And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

This applies to the Jews, but the Lord is sharing this with the people of Bountiful to help them to know that in the last days their descendants shall come to a full knowledge of the Gospel, as revealed in this record.

13 But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel. **[There shall be a remnant of righteous Gentiles that shall separate from these institutions and seek the Lord in purity, and shall be among the House of Israel.]**

14 And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father. **[This Remnant of Jacob in America shall sweep the country, but spare the righteous from destruction.]**

15 But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

16 Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance. **[They will reclaim this land.]**

17 And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:

18 Thy watchmen [**prophets**] shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing [**praise God**], for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion. [**Shall walk with God when His kingdom is established.**]

19 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem. [**Both the old and new Jerusalem shall be gathered.**]

20 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God. [**The Lord quotes these words of Isaiah to prophecy His glorious return.**]

Questions and Answers

“There shall be a remnant of righteous Gentiles that shall separate from these institutions and seek the Lord in purity, and shall be among the House of Israel.”

So PR, I am a member of one of these institutions. And in fact I have witnessed how my endeavours to be believing, and casting out fear has put me outside the “comfort zone” of fellowship. I find I cannot share ideas, express concerns, nor ask deep searching questions. To do so would put my “membership” in peril. And to go along with that, my sense is that the situation you describe and my own personal experience is only going to get worse. Perhaps even excommunication could be the result as it has been for others I know.

Despite all this, I am grateful and humbled because of the Mercy of Jesus Christ. He has blessed me with so many profound (yet to the opinion of some small and insignificant) opportunities of being led to Him by the Spirit. As well as miraculous events that have quietly prepared my way time and time again. All of this has strengthened my testimony and my resolve to have His will as my own.

You are further down the “path” and I hope it’s ok to ask if there anything else you can share that would help point the way for those of us striving for the Tree of Life and a personal relationship & witness of our Lord and Savior, Jesus Christ? I really want to be prepared to be in His service. [**The story of Lehi’s Dream in the Book of Mormon is great advice. When the people were walking on the path and were surrounded by mists of darkness, some heard the sound of a servant’s voice calling out to them to grab hold of the rod. The rod is the “word of God,” or direct revelation. When you receive the fullness of the Doctrine of Christ (Holy Ghost), you have everything you need to weather the storms that are coming. Your lamp will be filled. As far as dealing with those who are bogged down with unbelief... it is sad to watch, but listen to the Lord and you will be led. PR**]

TSJ: There are a number of us. How do we get together to support & to strengthen each other? [**The Lord brings people together. I have seen miracles happen in this regard. Pray for the Lord to guide you. PR**]

For “non-Americans”, can you clarify what you mean by “American culture”? [**There began to be a strong decline in the American culture, increasing in the 1960’s. Until then, Americans were predominantly Christian, our values were more Judeo/Christian, meaning that the people followed the Ten**

Commandments and believed in God. Far more attended church, crime was less, and the family played a stronger dynamic in American society. Such culture has declined tremendously in the last 50 years. PR]

And also, what values that are specific to Judaism and Christianity were involved in founding it? **[The Ten Commandments were cited as one source of inspiration when writing the Constitution. The belief in God’s Law, or that men were endowed with unalienable rights endowed by their creator: “life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness [property].” This is stated in our founding document, *The Declaration of Independence*. The Constitution was created to sustain those rights, and the Judeo/Christian beliefs were the standard for all Americans, with the caveat in the 1st Amendment that “Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof.” PR]**

fullness of the Doctrine of Christ (Holy Ghost), you have everything you need to weather the storms that are coming. Your lamp will be filled.”

When discussing the parable of the 10 virgins, we are taught that to fill our lamps requires daily effort, daily acts of service/kindness to fill the lamps drop by drop. You say that our lamps are filled when we receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost. So do we accumulate oil drop by drop through our constant effort or is it the Lord Himself who fills the lamp (He is the Light after all)? Because in one case we are in charge of the process, and in the other we have no say as to when it will happen. How can we actually prepare to weather the storms that are coming? We can’t accelerate God’s timing in receiving the Gift of the Holy Ghost. Until then we have no protection promised. **[Every person who is repenting and seeking Christ will have their lamp filled before His coming. You cannot earn “drops” by daily acts or works. The Lord requires only a broken heart and contrite spirit, which is the sign of full repentance. Unto such shall the kingdom be given. The fruits of repentance may manifest themselves by a greater degree of obedience to commandments, kindness, etc. Not one soul shall be lost which comes unto Christ. PR]**

The promises made to this remnant as well as the larger house of Israel are quite profound. I understand that gentiles can also partake of those blessings if they are adopted in. But are gentiles already part of the house of Israel? Meaning, some groups seem to teach that Americans of European descent are gentiles and also house of Israel, but this chapter and other BoM chapters seem to make a pretty big distinction between the two groups, so I’m confused. **[The confusion is that the House of Israel has both a physical and spiritual connotation. There are people of European blood who carry a DNA connection to the House of Israel through Ephraim, but it is mixed heavily with Gentile blood. There are few today that have pure Israelite blood. The Lamanite remnant has some pure, the Lost Tribes, and a few of the Jews. All who make the Everlasting Covenant before birth are considered House of Israel, and they are spread across every nation of the earth. This is partly why it is said that we live in the Times of the Gentiles. PR]**

No Tongue Can Speak – 3 Nephi 17:1-25

1 Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand. **[My time to leave is close.]**

2 I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time. **[How are they weak? Spiritually, they are not capable of ingesting the degree of revelation they have been given. The Spirit brings a level of comprehension that the carnal man struggles to understand. It is not that these people were unrighteous, but had not learned to exercise the degree of faith which normally would be required to experience what they have this day. But there is a remedy.]**

3 Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again. **[To “ponder” is to prayerfully consider and free your mind to allow the Spirit to teach you. It leads to the free flow of revelation. It is a focused effort and not a random meditation. When we are asked to pray always, it means to continually allow your thoughts to consider the words of the Lord. The Lord had commanded these people to ponder upon His words until He came again that they may better understand.]**

4 But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them. **[These are the other sheep, but not just a single body of people for they had splintered into more than one group.]**

5 And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

6 And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

7 Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

I saw when the Lord healed the people. About a third of the people came forward to be healed from everything from hearing loss, old wounds, vision loss, arthritis, and anemia. Only a few had extreme healing needs. Many of the people had to be encouraged by others to come forth, for many felt their infirmities were too insignificant. It was a beautiful blessing for them and took about two and a half hours, for the Lord did the healing relatively quickly. (personal journal)

8 For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.

9 And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and

with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

10 And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

11 And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.

12 So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

He said that there were 147 small children that were brought to Him as He commanded. Some of the older children held the smaller. They ranged from a few months old to about age 9, with the youngest placed closer to the Lord. They all got down on the ground. It says in the record that they all knelt, but it means to bow down to the earth. Most were sitting and some were on their knees. (personal journal)

13 And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.

14 And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel. **[The Lord is pleased with the righteousness of these people, yet there are so many more of the House of Israel that remain in their wickedness. Everything the Lord has done, the creation of this earth, the great sacrifices, and what will soon come to pass, all of it is to save the House of Israel. The Lord groans within Himself as He yearns to save all of them. When the Elect are gathered in the last days there shall be a great rejoicing as a fullness of joy sweeps the heavens!]**

15 And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

16 And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;

17 And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father. **[What was spoken at this time by the Lord that was so overwhelming to the people that their hearts were filled with joy and they saw and heard unspeakable things?]**

As the Lord prayed in the Spirit, all could hear the Lord express His thoughts. He spoke of the Plan of Redemption, the Creation, and [Edit]. He bore witness to the great names of those who were among these chosen people. He revealed the true nature and identities of many who were among them. He spoke of great deeds of faith and love which these chosen people had performed, especially these Blessed children who were among

the Noble and Great Ones. The Spirit was so strong that these same children spoke prophetic words and sacred words for days following the experience. The Lord commanded them not to record some of what was shared during these experiences. (personal journal)

18 And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

19 And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.

20 And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full. **[What is it that brings a fullness of joy? It is to see the completion of a task commanded of the Father that leads to the saving of souls.]**

21 And when he had said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them.

22 And when he had done this he wept again; **[To “weep” would seem such a mortal emotion, but it is godly. The Lord laughs, weeps, ponders, and eagerly anticipates the repentance and progression of all His children. Such emotions in their pure form adds to the fullness of joy that is experienced. “Men are that they might have joy.”]**

23 And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto them: Behold your little ones. **[They are far greater spirits than you even imagined!]**

24 And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them.

When the angels descended they were in the glory of the Lord, which is often referred to as fire. There are flame-like licks of light, but it is white and not orange in color. There is a golden tint to it, but these angels were viewed with the spiritual eyes. For these people, there was no delineation between what was seen with the spiritual and physical eyes. It was seen in congruence together. (personal journal)

25 And the multitude did see and hear and bear record; and they know that their record is true for they all of them did see and hear, every man for himself; and they were in number about two thousand and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men, women, and children.

Questions and Answers

“Many of the people had to be encouraged by others to come forth, for many felt their infirmities were too insignificant.”

If this is the “natural man” reaction, does that mean the Lord desires to heal us from everything, including the insignificant? **[It is our nature to refrain from asking God, thinking we should do it all ourselves. But, after asking we must remember to trust in the Lord. PR]**

Also, the Lord is incredibly generous. Did the people have to ask specifically for what they needed healed? Or did He heal them of everything, including the small things they had so long lived with they forgot to ask for healing for it? **[I don't know the answer to that. Good question. PR]**

Is the faith to be healed a small amount of faith compared to other things? It seems Christ was able to do this even though they did not have the faith required to comprehend other things, as Christ mentioned. **[To repent and seek healing requires the same amount of faith. PR]**

This encounter with Christ, was it all seen thru spiritual eyes, or a combination of physical and spiritual? **[The people experienced it both physically and spiritually. PR]**

V20.. “Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full. And when he had said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them. And when he had done this he wept again”

Why exactly was He weeping? “and the multitude bare record of it” **[I have wept before as I've watched my children do wonderful things that touched my heart. The Lord was filled with joy at witnessing so many of His children together exercising exceeding faith. PR]**

As the Lord prayed in the Spirit, all could hear the Lord express His thoughts. He spoke of the Plan of Redemption, the Creation, and [Edit]. He bore witness to the great names of those who were among these chosen people. He revealed the true nature and identities of many who were among them. He spoke of great deeds of faith and love which these chosen people had performed, especially these Blessed children who were among the Noble and Great Ones. I'm overwhelmed with JOY!!! This is so beautiful and humbling to feel the Spirit through these miracles.

That makes me feel good. For me that's the most revealing passage of scripture about the nature of God, His will and love for us. The Lord who desires us come to Him and is overjoyed to tears when His children do... just wow!! So amazing.

The Sacrament – Jesus Ascends – 3 Nephi 18:1-39

1 And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

Here the Lord presents the Sacrament for the first time to His Disciples and the people. He specifically requests bread and wine. He could have more easily requested water, but there is a reason it is done in this manner.

2 And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth. **[An act of humility in preparation to receive from the Lord.]**

3 And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

The Lord said that the bread used for them was a kind that they were familiar with. Its color was not white or dark. I don't know if it was wheat. (personal journal)

4 And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

5 And when the multitude had eaten and were filled **[with the Spirit]**, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name. **[The Lord gives authority to whomever He chooses to administer the Sacrament, similarly to whoever He chooses to baptize.]**

6 And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

The Lord specifically commands that the Sacrament be administered the same as He has done, without variation. There will be one ordained to bless the Sacrament, and they shall bless and break the bread and wine to all those who believe and will be baptized in His name.

7 And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

8 And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

I asked the Lord about the wine and He said it is the preferred way of partaking of the Sacrament. He said if it is not obtainable one can use water. The wine that the Nephites used was prepared in many ways. The wine used for the Sacrament had a low alcohol content. The Nephites and Lamanites were expert vineyard keepers and wine makers. That heritage lasted for hundreds of years and is now completely lost. (personal journal)

9 And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

I asked the Lord about the Sacrament that He offered to the people. It was a miracle similar to what occurred in Galilee with the fishes and the loaves. There was a single cup, which He blessed, then it was poured into twelve cups, which were passed around to the congregation. Every person

was able to drink. The bread was broken and passed around in a similar manner. (personal journal)

10 And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this **[Sacrament]** is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

It is critical that we take the Sacrament and receive the baptism of water as a witness to the Father that we will keep the Lord's commandments. Why is that important? Because the Father must approve of our anointing in order to receive baptism of fire and the Gift of the Holy Ghost. "By the Spirit [Holy Spirit of Promise] we are justified." Moses 6:59-60

11 And this shall ye always do to those who repent **[and also]** and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you. **[The Sacrament should be administered not just to those who have been baptized, but also all who are repenting and coming to Christ. By this time the people had not yet been rebaptized.]**

This verse admonishes us to "always remember Him" in order to have His Spirit with us always. How do you always remember the Lord? These words imply that the Spirit withdraws when we forget Him. Our thoughts are the great test of a servant of the Lord. To forget or not "remember" Him is to allow unvirtuous and carnal thoughts to preoccupy our mind and actions.

12 And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.

13 But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, **[The "rock" is our relationship with Jesus Christ. All is built upon this foundation. It is not the organization of the Church, for it is simply a vehicle to help members participate in these ordinances and fellowship if it is built properly upon the rock.]** but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them. **[A "sandy foundation" is anything we trust that is not the Lord specifically. To place our trust in a person of authority or institution and not the Lord is to build upon the sand. Pray and ask the Lord if you are doing this in any way in your life now.]**

14 Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you. **[What are the commandments? On the basic level they are what the Lord has just given the people as His doctrine, which includes the Sacrament. On a higher level, they are every word of God given to you by personal revelation.]**

15 Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him. **[This is how we learn to receive revelation. To pray, watch, learn, act, and overcome.]**

16 And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you. **[Jesus is the only light we are to follow. Those who receive authority to lead only perform that which the Lord has commanded. The Lord alone is the light that we follow.]**

17 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:

18 Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat. **[The Lord commands the multitude to receive personal revelation for themselves, that they may exercise discernment.]**

19 Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;

20 And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

What does it mean to pray unto the Father in Jesus' name? This confuses many who are not sure who to pray directly to. All is done through Christ. He is our salvation, but until we receive the promised blessing we must always pray to the Father. After the gift of the Holy Ghost is given we pray directly to the Lord, as He is our Father, born again in His name. There are many Fathers, but Jesus is our focus at this time in mortality. There will be times when we will be prompted by the Spirit to pray differently (as you will see in coming chapters).

21 Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed. **[We may be prompted to pray to the Father after we have received the Holy Ghost. We must follow the Spirit in how we pray.]**

22 And behold, ye shall meet together oft **[regularly]**; and ye shall not forbid any man **[person]** from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

23 But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name. **[Again, pray to the Father in Jesus name for those who are repenting.]**

24 Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed. **[What is the “light” that we are commanded to share? It is our enthusiasm and love for God. It is our knowledge of His blessings. We don't zap people with this light, we simply allow it to be seen in us, and they will come to it. Until we are commanded by revelation to do more we simply invite and share our love for God and His Gospel. This is calling people to repentance, or simply pointing them to Christ.]**

25 And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me **[literally]**, that ye might feel and see; even

so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment [**to literally come unto Christ**] suffereth himself to be led into temptation. [**If we do not seek to be a witness of Christ in every way, we shall be led into paths of deception that will draw us away from the Lord.**]

After the Lord administers the Sacrament, he admonishes the people to be a light and to invite all to receive their “Second Comforter” experience as they did.

26 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

To be “chosen” is to be anointed from before the foundation of the world.

27 Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment [**instruction**], and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

28 And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

29 For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him. [**How is one unworthy to partake of the Sacrament? Is it because they committed a crime, or because they are known to be a sinner? To be “unworthy” is to not be repenting. People who are not serious about coming to Christ should not partake of the sacred emblems because they are making a mockery of God, and the Spirit will not attend to them. Without the Spirit they will not hear or feel anything when the Lord’s servants speak to them.**]

30 Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him [**or her**] out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood. [**In the case that they are denied the Sacrament because they are unworthy, as they repent and are baptized, then they can now receive the Sacrament.**]

31 But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

32 Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them. [**The fourth time they are commanded not to cast out unrepentant participants at their places of worship.**]

33 Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth. [**A condemnation is to pass judgment, to lose a gift which was given.**]

34 And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you. [**There had been previous disputations regarding how to handle those who attended**

worship that were known to be sinners. The Lord clearly defines what is “worthy” and settles the matter. Many of the Nephites were guilty of condemning their brethren, where they should be openly accepting them and allowing God to do the judging.]

There is a distinction that needs to be made regarding condemning others. It is one thing to love everyone and invite all to participate in worship, and another to allow sinful behavior as part of what we know is against the commandments of God. We cannot conflate the two. For example, we would not allow a person to preach that stealing is acceptable to God from the pulpit. There must be wise and prayerful judgment used in dealing with such things.

35 And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes. **[The Lord was about to ascend to the Father to discuss the matter of organizing His disciples to begin their missions.]**

36 And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.

37 And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true. **[In a like manner a servant of God must be touched in order to have the full power of the laying on of hands for the gift of the Holy Ghost. This is a step toward receiving the fullness of the sealing power.]**

38 And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

39 And while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven.

The cloud of our minds is what we see with our spiritual eyes when they are not opened. As the pillar of light gathered around the Lord the Disciples watched as He ascended up and was gone. Where did He go? He returned to the Throne of Heaven where He would converse with the Father regarding the organization of the twelve Disciples and their missions. In a very like manner did the Lord ascend when he was with the Twelve on the Mount of Olives. And the angels spoke to them as they looked up, “Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? This same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come [back to you] in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven.” Acts 1:11

Questions and Answers

I am now thinking of the song “Choose the Right.” “Let wisdom mark the way before.” Mind blown. Thank you again for breaking down the scriptures to simple understanding PR. Question- the sacrament is representative of the flesh/blood of the body of Christ. The partaking from a single “cup” has deeper meaning I’m assuming and I had a

thought. One of the gifts the wise men brought him at his birth was Myrrh.....an oil used for anointing/purification. Is there a connection between Myrrh and blood? Or Myrrh and souls? **[Myrrh was used for anointing kings and priests, and embalming. It is a fragrant oil, but bitter to the taste, and therefore said to represent suffering. Wine is often a bittersweet taste, and used for anointing and healing. I believe myrrh was given as a gift to the Christ child because it was a kingly gift.]**

[In a like manner a servant of God must be touched in order to have the full power of the laying on of hands for the gift of the Holy Ghost. This is a step toward receiving the fullness of the sealing power.] I don't understand this statement. Are you saying that a servant of Christ must be touched by Christ to give the gift of the Holy Ghost to another servant. The gift of the Holy Ghost is the First Comforter. A servant may give this gift to another if he has been touched by Christ. I thought you could only receive the First Comforter by Christ. But you are saying you may receive this gift by a servant who has received the Second Comforter, correct? **[The power to give the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands is not something that can be passed from one person to another, it must come directly from the Lord as is seen in these passages. The Lord personally touched each of the disciples. People can receive the gift of the Holy Ghost in two ways: either directly from the Lord, or to have hands laid upon them by servants of the Lord. When a servant places their hand upon you and declares that you now have the gift of the Holy Ghost they are announcing to that individual that the Lord is now changing their spirit body to be filled with light, quickened, and are reborn in Christ. It is not that the servant has by their own choice given the person the gift, but that they are helping the faith of the recipient to know what is happening to them. When dealing with large groups of people it is a powerful witness to them and blessing. In the last days as the gatherers go forth to bring home the Elect this will be the common method of laying on of hands for the gift of the Holy Ghost. PR]**

” It is critical that we take the Sacrament and receive the baptism of water as a witness to the Father that we will keep the Lord's commandments. ”

As a young man, I heard the message of the Doctrine of Christ and the Book of Mormon and of Joseph Smith and I believed. I was baptized, I believe, with a repentant heart and a firm desire to know the Lord Jesus Christ. Was this baptism acceptable, even though the individual or organization may not have had direct authority from the Lord? How does the Father judge a true baptism – based on authority of those instructed to baptize or on the heart / faith of the individual being baptized? **[Only the Lord can answer whether your personal baptism was sufficient for you. Reading your description it sounds like you met the criteria. Most people who perform a baptism are found worthy by those presiding or the Church, and whether they are truly worthy is impossible to know for certain without a spiritual witness. However, when the heart of the one receiving is pure with real intent of repentance unto baptism, the Lord honors that ordinance. There may come a time, as did these Nephites, where a baptism unto renewal is required. PR]**

“The cloud of our minds is what we see with our spiritual eyes when they are not opened...”

The people in Bountiful had just witnessed great and marvelous things with their spiritual eyes. How is it that their eyes were now closed? Did the Lord purposefully close them so that only the disciples would witness his ascension to the Father? **[The Lord was standing in the midst of the twelve disciples having a private conversation. The people were not aware of what was happening. Often I have been with a group of people when I would see in the Spirit along with another, but the cloud prevented others from seeing the same thing. Sometimes it simply requires the focused faith of the individual to see. With these Nephites in Bountiful they were given many blessings. The Lord was witnessed with the physical eyes, but far more was witnessed with the spiritual eyes. This ascension was only witnessed by the disciples. PR]**

What does the bread and wine symbolize exactly? The bread is broken, and is in remembrance of His body. The wine is in remembrance of His blood. Is this the broken heart (bread) and contrite spirit(wine)? **[Yes, exactly. But it also represents the body and the spirit which is the complete soul of man, all that we are and will be. It represents sacrifice of the body and spirit in this life and the next. It binds us to Jesus Christ in a way that has eternal consequences and blessings. As we come closer to Christ His Sacrament takes on a profound meaning that helps us better understand the Everlasting Covenant. When I get to Moroni 4 and 5 I will break this all down more carefully. PR]**

And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. (3 Nephi 18v 7)

remembering unto the Father my body which was laid down for you (D&C 27v2)

IS there a difference between the Lord's body Before and after his death ?

It seem to me that we get 2 kinds of sacrament ? **[There are three kinds of witnesses of the Atonement: First is to see the marks on the resurrected body of Christ. Second, to witness the actual suffering of the Lord in the flesh via a vision which may take place outside of time and space. And third, is to partake of His Sacrament as we partake of His flesh and blood by ordinance to provide a physical witness within ourselves that we will take His name upon us in every way. Each person will receive all three witnesses at some point. As for His “body before and after His death,” it is now glorified, as will ours be when we too have accomplished all that the Father commands of us. PR]**

If a group of people seeking the Lord decide to meet, pray and praise, should they pray about adding someone new to the group?

The scripture says we shouldn't turn anyone away from our synagogues but when is exclusivity encouraged? **[The synagogues should be open as the Lord instructed. There are times when groups meet differently like the School of the Prophets, or the Quorum of the Anointed with Spouses, Relief Society,**

etc. These are brought together by revelation and have a different purpose. That is all I can say about that. PR]

Who are the Elect? Are they the ones who accept Christ's atonement but haven't received the gift of the Holy Ghost? **[The Elect are those who have accepted His atonement from before the foundation of this world. They are covenant spirits who hear the "call" and seek to be "chosen." PR]**

The scripture says many are called but few are chosen. Does that apply to the elect or does it include the gentiles who have been taught and invited to participate in the everlasting covenant? **[Another way to phrase it would be "Many are invited, but few receive it." There are many who are called to repentance, but few actually walk through the gate which leads to the Tree of Life. The same phrase also applies to the 4th estate, for there are many angels called, but few are chosen to sacrifice all things. PR]**

It's drinking wine something that will be brought back one day?
I was raised Catholic and was very young when I started to partake of the sacrament, and I remembered the big cup of wine that we all drank from. It didn't feel anything special to me at the time. But now When I drink the water during sacrament I feel like I'm drinking living waters, which makes me have this question will I feel anything different if or when I drink wine instead of water? Christ turned the water into wine at His wedding, so maybe every time we drink the water He's changing the properties of the water as it goes in us, maybe. **[Interesting thought. Most Christians partake of the Sacrament using wine. The LDS used wine as well until just before the Word of Wisdom was made a commandment by the presiding church authorities. The Lord will honor the Sacrament for those who use water if they come with a broken heart and contrite spirit, but wine is preferred. PR]**

Paul says not to keep company with fornicators and sinners. But the Lord in this chapter says to not cast sinners out of our synagogues but minister and pray for them.... what's the context for Pauls words? Or was he just wrong?

1 Corinthians 5:9-11

9 I wrote unto you in an epistle not to company with fornicators:

10 Yet not altogether with the fornicators of this world, or with the covetous, or extortioners, or with idolaters; for then must ye needs go out of the world.

11 But now I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother be a fornicator, or covetous, or an idolator, or a railer, or a drunkard, or an extortioner; with such an one no not to eat. **[There is a difference between ministering amongst those who commit sin and keeping company with the sinners. It is that if we live a lifestyle that allows for such things whether we think we are immune or not, it is unwise. Paul often taught the saints to abstain from practices of tradition that befall new converts. PR]**

[The Sacrament should be administered not just to those who have been baptized, but also all who are repenting and coming to Christ. By this time the people had not yet been

rebaptized.]

So those who are repenting should be allowed to partake of the sacrament even if they have not been baptized? I

I'm trying to wrap my mind around this because it has been on my mind recently a lot. I keep thinking that the first fruits of repentance are baptism (Moroni 8). and Christ says that it should be done always to those who repent and are baptized.(vs 11) but "always" does not exclude those who are in a state of repentance but haven't been baptized yet, but could imply it.

To those who are unworthy they are told to repent and then be baptized and then to have the sacrament ministered to them. (vs 30)

The Nephites has been baptized before this experience right? So this ordinance wasn't done out of place, but they were required to be rebaptized.

Is it wrong for little children to partake of the ordinance sense they are incapable of repenting?

Thanks for your insights – maybe I'm reading too much into this. **[Anyone who believes in Christ and their heart is given to Him in the Spirit of repentance should be invited to partake of the Sacrament. The Lord's church are all those who repent and come unto Him. (D&C 10:67) A child can be taught even before baptism the significance of the Sacrament at their level of understanding. Baptism is a fruit of repentance, and the Holy Ghost is another fruit of repentance. The Sacrament promise has bearing in this life and beyond. PR]**

All Things are Possible – the Glory of God – 3

Nephi 19:1-36

1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home. **[There were entire families present when this all occurred, having traveled long distances and pitched their tents as they made their way to the temple in Bountiful.]**

2 And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude. **[An organized effort to spread the word to all within a distance allowing them to come and see.]**

3 Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude. **[Many came without sleep, carrying their sick and afflicted. How could anyone miss such an opportunity?]**

4 And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was

Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude. **[for they had divided this vast group of many thousands]**

5 And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

6 And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel **[sit, kneel, or become low to the ground]** down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

7 And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

8 And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus. **[Praying and preaching seamlessly, as the Spirit guides.]**

9 And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them. **[Why would they pray for the Holy Ghost and not for Jesus to come in their midst? Because with the Holy Ghost, all things would be possible. The Disciples knew this, and desired the group to experience all the beautiful gifts of the Spirit, including the very presence of the Lord.]**

10 And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

11 And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized. **[He baptized himself, praying to the Lord and submerging himself in the water.]**

12 And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen. **[Nephi began with the twelve disciples, who in turn began to baptize. The twelve divided groups numbering in the thousands.]**

13 And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire. **[A powerful and unique experience as after all had been baptized the Holy Ghost descended upon all in a mass baptism of fire and gift of the Holy Ghost.]**

14 And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them. **[A baptism of fire can fall upon a single individual, or upon an entire congregation, even an entire city if necessary. Within this pillar of light and glory, angels can commune with the righteous, and Jesus Christ can appear and minister to the living. It literally brings heaven into a temporal space for a time.]**

15 And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them. **[He descended in the pillar of light just as He had ascended the previous day.]**

16 And it came to pass that he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.

Why is it important to bow down to the earth to prepare to receive a great spiritual manifestation? For many it is wise because when the spiritual eyes open fully you are often unaware of your temporal surroundings. It's safer. Also, it is an act of contrition, to allow one to more fully focus during prayer. It is advised to do this as often as possible, including when receiving the Sacrament.

17 And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray. **[All blessings are predicated upon faith in Christ, and must come forth due to asking in faith.]**

18 And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God. **[Why did they pray unto Jesus and not the Father as had been previously commanded? Because they had all received the gift of the Holy Ghost and been born again in the image of Christ, spiritually begotten of Him. Jesus is now their Father in the next step of their eternal progression. Like a succession of Fathers in a family tree, all are important and loved, but we follow our current Father to know what to do next.]**

19 And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said: **[Why did Jesus separate Himself and walk a short distance to pray? Because He was about to offer a personal prayer on their behalf. He desired to show to the people the power of a personal relationship with the Father. All His words were heard by every individual in the entire congregation, like an amplifier in each person's ear, the Spirit made the words known to them as if they were standing cheek to cheek with Jesus Christ.]**

20 Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world. **["Many are called, but few are chosen..." many hear His Spirit speak unto them, but few receive of a fullness, because they do not sufficiently repent and come unto Christ.]**

21 Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words. **[Jesus prays for those who have not yet experienced this mighty change of heart. The Lord continually prays on our behalf to the Father, even in the great Thrones of Heaven.]**

22 Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost **[this group in Bountiful]** because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them. **[When you receive the Holy Ghost the Lord is with you in a manner as never before. You belong to Him, and He belongs to you, as long as you do not take the path of perdition.]**

23 And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one. **[Again, the Lord prays for these new souls, as well as future ones who shall come unto the fold, for they shall be one with the Father and Son in this great Covenant which binds us to them for eternity. This is the Atonement.]**

24 And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire. **[They spoke in tongues, by the power of the Holy Ghost, and prayed with pure desire. Such prayer is the highest level of praise and worship available and often is the last stop on a journey before standing in the presence of the Lord of Hosts, the great God, even Jesus Christ!]**

25 And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof. **[Nothing brings down the glory of heaven to the degree of praying in tongues. This kind of gift of the Spirit is not meant to be heard by all, but is between you and the Lord. It doesn't need to be translated by others. The Lord knows the intent of your heart, like a baby crying out to its parent, "Hold me, love me, help me, I need you!" There is nothing so beautiful in the eternal realms of heaven.] There are different kinds of spiritual gifts regarding the use of tongues.**

26 And Jesus said unto them: Pray on **[I am here. I hear you.]**; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

27 And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:

28 Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified **[To be filled with the gift of the Holy Ghost is to be purified in Spirit. Like going from a 20 watt bulb to a 2,000 watt bulb. Filled with light and glory.]** those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me. **[Again, a third time the Lord repeats the same prayer to the Father.]**

29 Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them. **[This prayer is repeated many times, the Lord stating His purpose, not to save the world in sin, but to save them out of sin, to rise up to a higher place out of this world.]**

What does Jesus mean to "be glorified in them?" It is to have greater light given by keeping the commandments of the Father. In this case, Jesus is filled with joy and light by what He has done as a result of his great Sacrifice, and He feels the glory, which He in turn gives to the Father.

30 And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus. **[When one stands in the presence of God, you see Him in the same light as yourself. You embrace God as you would embrace another. Your whiteness is the same. However,**

you sense the power of who He is that defies description. The glory of each Father is beyond comprehension.]

31 And it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father;
32 And tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed, neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.

33 And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.

34 Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.

Jesus spoke of things that are so personal and sacred that the Spirit prevented these people from sharing. Such conversation included Heavenly relationships, the Great and Noble, and details regarding the Everlasting Covenant that are not permissible to share. Imagine being there. Some day you will watch the entire event in detail and understand.

35 And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

36 Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

What kind of faith did these disciples demonstrate that allowed them to witness such an incredible outpouring of the Spirit? Five things: Desire, openness, persistence, love, and courage. They were unrestricted by unbelief. They knew with God all things were possible.

Questions and Answers

This was a very beautiful chapter. I could feel the love the Lord has for his people. This verse caught my eye. I've never read about anyone baptizing themselves before.

11 And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized. [He baptized himself, praying to the Lord and submerging himself in the water.]

It's just interesting. Can you share more about this?

Can others do this with permission? **[Anything that the Lord commands us is acceptable. I would not suggest baptizing yourself unless you are commanded of the Lord, and that is unlikely today. PR]**

Who are the Great and Noble? Why are they called the Great and Noble? **[These are of the 4th Estate who are very close to Christ and have critical missions in the kingdom. These include dispensation heads, their spouses, and great prophets. PR]**

One thing I have found amusing is that in 3 Nephi 17:3 Jesus instructs the people to ... go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

Then in chapter 19 it tells us that

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

I wonder how many people went home to ponder the things they heard? Apparently, many of them were out spreading the word that Jesus would be there the next day and had no time to go home and ponder the things they heard. Not that I blame them, pretty exciting stuff. You would think that Jesus would know they would all be excited and not want to go home and ponder and yet he gave them that directive.

PR, do you have any vision on if many of these people did spend much time preparing themselves for the marrow or that it was just a bunch of communication going on with excitement? **[I do not. They can walk and ponder at the same time, but I imagine many of them were exhausted by the second day. But, can you imagine how elated and overjoyed they were? PR]**

Can you please elaborate on the 12 that were called to be disciples? I'm curious about their rolls in the gathering! **[These twelve were called to administer to the people of their day. They are among the 4th estate and continue to help with the gathering of Israel from the other side. Only three do a work among the living today for which I am aware. PR]**

Are we to understand in verse 9 that the disciples had not yet received the gift of the Holy Ghost prior to this experience? Nephi would seem to be one who had the Holy Ghost already. Without knowing more about the other disciples, it's hard to say whether they would have had the gift already but it seems likely they would. **[Yes. PR]**

The reason I ask is that the Holy Ghost apparently wasn't given to the apostles at Jerusalem until the day of pentecost, after Jesus ascended into heaven. Many have speculated that the gift of the Holy Ghost wasn't available on the earth during Christ's ministry – is there any truth to that? Personally, I feel as though it was simply the best timing for the apostles to receive it after He ascended, but I'm still not sure how or why Nephi, who performed many miracles and had angels minister daily, could have been without the gift until that moment (see 3 Nephi 7:15-20). Perhaps it was simply a baptism of fire experience for him and extension of his calling and election being made sure. Would love to know your thoughts on the matter. **[Nephi, as well as others, had received the gift of the Holy Ghost before Christ came. Most of the people had not. The Apostles in Jerusalem did not receive until the day of Pentecost. They were still able to have the Spirit with them and exercise gifts of the Spirit, but the mighty change came later for them. Why was this the case? I suspect it had to do with proper timing. PR]**

3 Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

Can you just imagine- wow! The laboring that must have transpired to get there once discovering the Lord was teaching, healing and transforming the people... wow. I am of course seeing the parallel here that I need to have that same urgency of “getting to him”. Labor exceedingly right here, right now. What a great experience reading this today. Thank you.

Why was Nephi rebaptized if he already had the Gift of the Holy Ghost?... how many times is rebaptism by immersion necessary? **[He was beginning a new calling in his ministry. He already had the Gift of the Holy Ghost. PR]**

He Shall Restore the House of Israel – Isaiah 52 – 3 Nephi 20:1-46

1 And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts. **[What does it mean to pray in your heart? It is the act of pondering, desiring, and hoping for the Spirit to guide you in your daily walk with God. It is to continue to live with a broken heart and contrite spirit.]**

2 And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.

3 And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.

4 And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude. **[This is the second time in two days the Lord has given the Sacrament to the people. The first was before their baptism, and now after all have been baptized and received the Holy Ghost.]**

5 And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.

6 Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

7 But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink. **[The Lord made these available without multiplying an existing thing. The power of creation is based upon faith. In this is a mystery.]**

8 And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.

There is something profound and mysterious in this statement. Jesus' flesh was broken for our salvation. His blood was spilt that we may rise to a higher resurrection. What is the soul? It is the combination of the spirit and body and all that has been learned in the process. How does it overcome hunger and thirst according to the Lord's Sacrament? By receiving a fullness of His Spirit and walking the path of a Son or Daughter of God until we have become perfected in the Everlasting Covenant. The Lord's Sacrament is meant to be given to us in mortality. There are other Sacraments which will be given in the future beyond this world. There is much to be given.

9 Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard. **[I need to inquire of the Lord regarding this.]**

10 And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.

11 Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—

12 And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel. **[The Lord gave Isaiah a special mission: to prophecy of the coming of the Messiah and the gathering of the House of Israel. His writings are particularly precious to the Lord.]**

13 And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.

14 And the Father hath ^acommanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance. **[North America]**

15 And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people— **[the settling and expansion of America]**

16 Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver. **[The future destruction caused by the Remnant of Jacob in the Americas in the last days.]**

This will be led by the Joseph Servant, a descendant of Joseph of Egypt through the lineage of Lehi. He is one of the two prophets who will also die in the streets of Jerusalem as they defend the city from the siege of the great battle of Armageddon.

17 Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries **[go against them]**, and all thine enemies shall be cut off. **[separated]**

18 And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor. **[I will gather the Elect in groups and to safety.]**

19 For I will make my people **[honor my people]** with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron **[power unshakable]**, and I will make thy hoofs brass **[strength quick]**. And thou shalt beat in pieces **[call to repentance]** many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord **[called His people]**, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it. **[They shall be favored above all in the earth.]**

20 And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice **[separation of the wicked from the righteous]** shall hang over them at that day; and except they **[the people in the last days]** repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

21 And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel. **[This will be a great and marvelous work and wonder, as the Lord gathers His Elect, the House of Israel, for the four corners of the earth.]**

22 And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you. **[This is the literal gathering of the Elect to the New Jerusalem in Missouri and expanding out from there. This is the literal establishment of Zion in America.]**

23 Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

24 Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

25 And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed. **[You are the covenant children.]**

26 The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant—

27 And after that ye were blessed **[received the gift of the Holy Ghost]** then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel. **[And now the Gentiles shall be given the covenant too.]**

28 And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father. **[The fullness of the Gospel was given, and now it has been adulterated. Thus, the Remnant of Jacob will cleanse the land.]**

29 And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people [the Jews] and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time,

that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

[Not until the year 70 AD were the people of Jerusalem destroyed. The Great Diaspora of the Jews exiled all of them from their homeland until this last century as they began to come home and the country of Israel was again established. This was an impossibility at the time Joseph Smith translated the Book of Mormon.]

30 And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

31 And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name. **[There is a movement of Messianic Jews in Israel today, but it is relatively small.]**

32 Then shall their watchmen **[prophets]** lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye. **[They will praise the Lord together and understand.]**

33 Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

34 Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

35 The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.

36 And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean. **[The final redemption of the House of Israel.]**

37 Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck **[the generational unbelief]**, O captive daughter of Zion. **[The “daughters of Zion” are the remnant of the covenant that have gone astray and then come back to the Lord.]**

38 For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught **[you gave up your birthright]**, and ye shall be redeemed without money.

39 Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak. **[The Jews will know that Jesus Christ is the Messiah.]**

40 And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains **[among the nations]** are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them **[The Servant of the Most High]**, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth! **[It will be a beautiful day when the Davidic Servant manifests himself to the Jews and leads them against the nations of the world as he declares that God reigneth in Jerusalem again!]**

41 And then shall a cry go forth **[a new call to the Gathering Servants]**: Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels **[servants]** of the Lord.

42 For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight **[shall not go unprepared]**; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward. **[You will have the power of God with you!]**

43 Behold, my servant [**referred to sometimes as the Davidic Servant**] shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.

44 As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men— [**This will occur at his death. Refer to Revelation 11:7-9**]

45 So shall he sprinkle [**affect**] many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him [**leaders shall not respond to him**], for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider. [**They shall see His death and assume it is over.**]

46 Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land of their inheritance. [**After all these prophecies come to pass (the last days prophecies of the book of Revelation), then shall Jerusalem be restored as is promised.**]

These are very powerful prophecies the Lord spoke to the people in Bountiful. They are meaningful to us today as we await these glorious events.

Questions and Answers

How beautiful! I shed tears of happiness, I loved this chapter, I know this is a random sort of question but I always considered by the time these events occur (the servants dead in the streets for 3 days then being raised etc) the world would be in turmoil and so close to the second coming that media/journalism/technology the world as we know it, will be gone. Will people in far away countries hear of these things, will we be able to know what is happening in Jerusalem or will we only know through revelation what is happening in the far away parts of the world? Thank you [**It will be filmed and shared throughout the world amongst the wicked as they celebrate and even share gifts amongst each other. The world will be in disarray, and America's infrastructure as it now is will not exist, but the rise in the kingdom of the beast will be massive. PR**]

41 And then shall a cry go forth [a new call to the Gathering Servants]...

What is this new call? [**To gather the House of Israel. PR**]

When does the Gathering begin? Before or after the Savior appears to the Jews?... before or after the Davidic Servant begins leading Israel? [**It coincides with the rise of the Davidic Servant and before He appears to the Jews. The Lord will show Himself to the Jews after the 3 and a half year tribulation when the Mt. of Olives will split and as the Jews are fleeing for safety they will see Him there. This is just before His coming in glory. PR**]

PR, who are the daughters of Zion? Are they not those of the LDS faith? You have mentioned in previous chapters that the daughters of Zion are a later or modern generation. It is those that Moroni testified that would read the Book of Mormon. Is this accurate? [**The term is usually used to denote the remnant of the covenant**

people who have gone astray. But, it is also used today to mean the literal daughters of God who are seeking Christ. PR]

I see righteous men in Jerusalem, such as rabbi Yehuda Glick, who seem very dedicated to God but do not yet recognize Jesus as the Messiah. I wonder if the ultimate rise of the Davidic Servant will correspond with a conversion to Jesus as the Messiah from likely Orthodox Judaism? Can we expect to see some miraculous conversion events from the Jews in Jerusalem, and from the Davidic Servant specifically? **[Yes! PR]**

“12 And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel. [The Lord gave Isaiah a special mission: to prophesy of the coming of the Messiah and the gathering of the House of Israel. His writings are particularly precious to the Lord.]” Do you know if the house of Israel covenanted before birth (in the everlasting covenant)? Is that why they are His chosen people? **[Yes. PR]**

Also: is it correct to say that some of who live on earth covenanted before birth by entering into the everlasting covenant? **[Yes. PR]**

I am talking to a friend about this and they are under the impression that one can only make covenants on earth because you need a body to make a covenant. Do you know if that is accurate or based in scripture? **[Covenants can be made before birth or while in mortality, but they are consummated during this life. Some can receive the blessings after this life, but whatever intelligence or glory we receive in this life will have greater benefit in the life to come. PR]**

Prophecy of the Gathering – 3 Nephi 21:1-29

This chapter is a continuation of the last chapter where now the Lord explains in detail the meaning behind the Isaiah words He has just quoted.

1 And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion **[holy people and city];**

2 And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them; **[When the Gentiles have the Book of Mormon which contains what I have given unto you (those here in Bountiful) the time is drawing near.]**

3 Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you; **[when the BofM is given back to your posterity as a witness]**

4 For it is wisdom in the Father that they **[the people of America]** should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people **[under the US Constitution]** by the power of the Father, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

The religious freedom in America was a unique atmosphere which made the coming forth of the Book of Mormon ideal for bringing to pass the Lord's work. Only in the United States has this land been established as a free nation.

5 Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity; **[The Indian nations have dwindled in unbelief, but the day will come when they shall receive the Book of Mormon and embrace it. It will be an event where many shall be converted in a single day.]**

6 For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel; **[There will be a remnant amongst the Church of the Gentiles that shall do this. They will follow the pure doctrine of Christ and be the means to bring the record forth to these Lamanite descendants. They will also assist in providing what is needed to begin the process of building the New Jerusalem.]**

7 And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel. **[This verse makes it clear that when these modern day Lamanites are converted it will coincide with the beginning of the gathering of Israel as was prophesied by Isaiah, the great day of the Lord as the judgments of God are brought forth to the earth.]**

8 And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider. **[Without the permission of world leaders shall these gatherers go to the four corners of the earth seeking the Elect.]**

9 For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them. **[Many will dismiss and be incredulous as people begin to share what they have seen and heard of these Servants of God who are gathering the righteous to safety.]**

10 But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil. **[Though they shall destroy his body, they shall not conquer, for I am God. These servants shall be translated in the body, which means they cannot be destroyed, though it may appear so. The crowning event will be when their bodies lie in**

the street of Jerusalem and the Lord raises them up (heals them) to the horror of their enemies.]

11 Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant. **[They shall be cut off from Zion.]**

12 And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts **[evil]** of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep **[without a shepherd]**, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver. **[These Lamanite warriors shall destroy all that attempt to challenge them.]**

13 Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off. **[destroyed and isolated]**

14 Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent **[come unto Me]**; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots; **[All means of transportation shall be halted or destroyed in this land.]**

15 And I will cut off **[destroy and isolate]** the cities of thy land **[America]**, and throw down all thy strongholds **[defenses]**; **[The military will cease to function and there shall be no power grid or infrastructure to support these cities.]**

16 And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers; **[The internet and news sources will be shut down.]**

17 Thy graven images **[man made devices]** I will also cut off, and thy standing images **[trusted people and places]** out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands; **[Everything that society worships today shall be shut down, destroyed, and made useless.]**

18 And I will pluck up thy groves **[places of entertainment]** out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy thy cities.

19 And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away. **[Various institutions, both government, religious, and cultural, shall be done away.]**

20 For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;

21 And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard. **[They shall be smitten with great destruction and they shall live as the savages with no rules and laws, eating their own flesh and with no restrictions.]**

22 But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance; **[The Lord's arms are open to receive them if they will only repent. There shall be groups of righteous Gentiles that will prepare the way for those to come.]**

23 And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob **[the Lamanites]**, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come **[a remnant of the Ten Tribes]**, that they

may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem. **[The Church of the Gentiles shall be relatively small in number compared to the others that shall build the New Jerusalem.]**

24 And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem. **[The Great Gathering of Israel]**

25 And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst. **[A reference to the event where the Gatherers are given the sealing power and the instruction to go forth.]**

26 And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day **[beginning at that moment]**, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. **[beginning with the Lamanite remnant]** Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people **[all the Elect from the four corners of the earth]**, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

27 Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name. **[A way is prepared to bring the Gospel to all, no matter how remote a location, or unlikely a people. This will be a miraculous undertaking, not one of mortal means, for as written, all transportation will have ceased. The earth will be in commotion, but the servants of God will go forth like the “eagles” as they snatch up the people and bring them to Zion.]**

28 Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

29 And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste **[unprepared]**, nor go by flight **[in a panic]**, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward. **[God will protect and oversee all.]**

Questions and Answers

12 And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts [evil] of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep [without a shepherd], who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver. [These Lamanite warriors shall destroy all that attempt to challenge them.]

Am I right to assume that these Lamanite warriors are not yet converted to Christ and His Gospel, but will be converted afterwards? (And thanks as always for sharing your insights with us. I was very much looking forward to your comments on this chapter, and you did not disappoint!) **[They will only have a few believers in their midst before the conversion. PR]**

Can you tell me why verse 10 only mentions “My servant” which I understand as One Servant not two. What about the two witnesses in Jerusalem? It seems very odd to me since all other biblical scriptures says there are two witnesses – in fact nowhere in the BOM does it talk about two witnesses in Jerusalem yet this is discussed in Zechariah and Book of Revelation? Even though you mention that one of the witnesses is from the

American continent – the bible says two witnesses, and yet the BOM only says one. Obviously, the Resurrected Lord knows about the two witnesses, and yet the BOM only mentions one. Any clarification would be helpful. Also the other day you posted that one of the witnesses is Joseph, an Indian Prophet, yet D&C 77:15 mentions that the two prophets are raised up to the Jewish nation, which has always been my understanding they are from Israel. I'm very confused. **[There are two Servants, one of David (of Judah or the Jews), and one of Joseph (Lamanite prophet). In 2 Nephi 8:19-20, it specifically references these two servants. When the Lord was speaking to the people in Bountiful and mentioned His servant, it is referring to the servant upon this land, and another time the one who will gather to Jerusalem and the Jews. These servants are not given names, but I identify them as either the Davidic Servant, or Joseph Servant. PR]**

From verse 6: “the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel”

I'm reading that the simple requirements are:

1. Not harden their hearts
2. Repent
3. Come unto me
4. Be baptized in my name
5. Know of the true points of my doctrine

Then they MAY be numbered among my people, O House of Israel.

Am I reading this too simplistically?

I notice this implies that a person is simply seeking or has learned enough that they “know OF the true points of my doctrine” – not that they have to be perfectly living them – to qualify to “may” (perhaps?) be numbered. Is this accurate? **[I think that “may” in this case means permitted. The Gentiles will be permitted to participate in Zion under those premises. PR]**

Nate from vs 9: “Many will dismiss and be incredulous as people begin to share what they have seen and heard of these Servants of God who are gathering the righteous to safety.”

Does this imply that the people will be first be taught by the gatherers while living in a place or their homes and then later are gathered? **[They will all be taught before they are taken to Zion. In some cases it will happen in a day, and others will take longer. During that time of gathering they will be fed, healed, nurtured both body and spirit, baptized, and given the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands. Then, they will be brought to Zion by miraculous means. PR]**

Vs 11: “Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant. [They shall be cut off from Zion.]”

When the Gatherers are gathering, will the Lord allow some individuals with their

children to be gathered out, leaving behind the unbelieving spouse if they are fighting against these things? **[All are invited who will come. There will be no turning away. PR]**

Note from vs 14: “[All means of transportation shall be halted or destroyed in this land.]”

Is this done mostly by the EMP you described in Witness of the End Times? Or are they halted by a lack of fuel? Or parts to repair them? Or they have deliberately built-in “kill switches” we are not aware of? Or does something worse happen that we cannot yet comprehend? **[Everything I have seen is in the book. I’m not certain of the order, but the end result is a complete collapse of the infrastructure of the United States. PR]**

Vs 16: “16 And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers; [The internet and news sources will be shut down.]”

Can you give more information on why witchcraft and soothsayers are symbols for news sources and the internet?

What is the Lord’s definition of soothsayer? **[A soothsayer is anyone who predicts the future according to their own intellect. We see this everyday on cable news. Witchcraft is the teachings of secular leaders who put trust in the arm of flesh. Normally we think of witches casting spells, but it is the act of pulling away the people to put trust in the words and means of evil men and women. All of which comes from a Satanic source. PR]**

What is the role of those like us who are learning together? Are we to help share what we have learned to help others who may struggle to believe?

I know the Lord can only answer us personally about our roles but in a general sense, what are the “aware” Persons used to help with in the future? **[At this time many are awakening. The Lord is using different means to do that. Once they are all awake they shall be commanded to arise and go forth. Until then, follow the commandments given in 3 Nephi 12, and prepare yourself and family as best you can. PR]**

So the Gathering of Israel has not begun, or is not under way yet, despite how church leaders explain it? (through missionary work) **[Joseph Smith was given the keys to the ushering in of the dispensation of the fullness of times, in which all would be restored. This includes the gathering of Israel. Yes, it has begun, in that the Jews are returning to their homeland, and the Gospel is restored, the Book of Mormon is translated and the Gentiles have it. But, much has been prophesied regarding the Gentiles and what will occur before this marvelous work and a wonder commences. We have hardly begun. PR]**

Are the leaders of of secret combinations aware of Zion and the Gathering that is coming (and Jesus being real)? Or are the world leaders mentioned those who are not perdition? **[Most world leaders are not perdition, but are controlled by those who are. Perhaps those in high places are aware, but they have their own view of the**

“gathering” and establishment of a kingdom on earth, with even the Messianic return of their King. The hot spot for this activity will be Israel, and according to the “Law of the Last Second,” the true King will come to cleanse the earth. PR]

Throughout the Book of Mormon there are accounts of people converting to the Lord in a single day. The Nephites under King Benjamin, Lamoni and his family, the Lamanites in the prison with Nephi and Lehi, this account of the future Lamanite Remnant. Those who are heavily involved in institutional religion seem to struggle much more with overcoming their unbeliefs and false traditions before truly repenting (broken heart and contrite spirit) and coming to the Lord. I know I struggle a lot against my own cultural perception of how conversion is supposed to work.

In your experience what are the stumbling blocks that you’ve noticed that are particularly troubling for people coming out of a faith tradition that emphasizes works over grace or the “slow process of conversion”? Do you have any advice for overcoming them? **[I have experienced the same unbeliefs that afflict people of our generation. I had to overcome my preconceptions of how God communicates through revelation, and how the gifts of the Spirit operate. I think for each person it will be different, but for me the turning point was the day I prayed and said, “Lord, I will give away everything I have to know you, even if it means doing things I’ve always been told I cannot do.” In other words, I fully submitted myself to the Lord and was willing to be unconventional in the process. This is frightening, as I was doing things that my priesthood leaders would disapprove, and likely be considered crazy by most people. But, I loved the Lord more. Fortunately for me, my wife was on the same page in her journey. PR]**

Is the Davidic servant the one many in Israel are expecting as the Mashiach? When he arrives on the scene, will many recognize him as the promised deliverer? Does he have a role in the development of the 3rd temple in Jerusalem right now? Will this temple be used as a true temple of God in the future? Or will it be used for evil means? **[He will have a direct connection to the rebuilding of the temple in Jerusalem and be very respected and hated at the same time. Before the temple has barely begun it will be desecrated by the evil leaders of foreign nations and then the Davidic Servant will take upon himself a more formidable role. There may be some who will assume he is the Messiah, but he will point all to the true Messiah. PR]**

Protect Zion – Isaiah 54 – 3 Nephi 22:1-17

The Lord continues to quote Isaiah, as it pertains to something so dear to His heart.

1 And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child; for

more are the children of the desolate **[damned]** than the children of the married wife **[Blessed]**, saith the Lord. **[Praise God, for the bride of my covenant has brought forth fruit for the kingdom.]**

2 Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes; **[grow and establish Zion]**

3 For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities to be inhabited. **[You shall inherit the land.]**

4 Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed; neither be thou confounded, for thou shalt not be put to shame; for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach **[disapproval]** of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more. **[Your days of sorrow have passed.]**

5 For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel—the God of the whole earth shall he be called.

6 For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God. **[Thou hast returned that which once was lost, the gathering of the House of Israel.]**

7 For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee. **[This occurred beginning in 70AD with the Great Jewish Diaspora, and is beginning to prepare for its full return to the blessings of God.]**

8 In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.

9 For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

[The flood that destroyed all life upon the earth made way for a new dispensation when Abraham was given the Covenant of God which would be the House of Israel. The people of the Covenant have wandered in forbidden paths, but will be reclaimed.]

10 For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

11 O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires. **[Colored stones and gems are symbols of the Everlasting Covenant, referring to anointed Servants that will be placed amongst them.]**

12 And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones. **[I shall protect you with my anointed.]**

13 And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children. **[You shall receive the blessings of Zion.]**

14 In righteousness shalt thou be established; thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee. **[There shall be a great barrier between you and the destruction of the Beast which shall flood the earth.]**

15 Behold, they **[kingdom of the Beast]** shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

16 Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire **[the fiery powers of earth and sky]**, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy. **[the gushing waters of heaven and earth]**
17 No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord. **[The Gatherers shall protect the bride with great power.]**

Questions and Answers

Vs 11: The anointed servants are all 4th estate? **[That is what this verse is referring to. When one receives the gift of the Holy Ghost it is an anointing of the Holy Spirit. Each new estate comes with an anointing for a particular call. The purpose of the 4th estate is to assist in saving the House of Israel. PR]**

Will all of the initial people at First Zion when the tribulations start be Gatherers or will there be other faithful people not appointed to be Gatherers there as well? **[Yes, others too. PR]**

[There shall be a great barrier between you and the destruction of the Beast which shall flood the earth. PR] Can you further explain what this great barrier is? Also, thank you so much for your enlightening insights into these chapters. Bless you in all you do now and in the future. You have given me so much to ponder and I have grown so much spiritually in the last several years since the Lord led me to your blog. I am so excited to read your inspired insights in the coming chapters! Thank you for all the time you spend in helping so many to grow closer to the Lord. It has made a huge difference in my life. **[The great barrier is the judgments of God that will be poured out upon the earth. This will separate the wicked from Zion. PR]**

Good mornin! Couple questions...

“O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires

. [Colored stones and gems are symbols of the Everlasting Covenant, referring to anointed Servants that will be placed amongst them.]

– Are these stones representative of the breast plate worn by the high priest? Do they represent each son/tribes of Israel? **[It does partially. The stones represent parts of the Everlasting Covenant, the order in the Heavens, and the Twelve Tribes. PR]**

– Next question.....did the gathering of Israel start in our dispensation with a good portion of those families of pilgrims when they reached the Promised land? **[Only the “ushering in” of the Gathering of Israel. The full gathering begins soon. PR]**

– Why was Joseph Smith’s desire so strong to teach the Native Americans (specifically) certain tribes? He felt impressed to send Pratt/Cowdery and I forgot the other person to meet with the Chief of the “Delaware’s” which is really the Lenni Lenape. Many of those Native Americans eventually fled or were driven out of their lands to the Great Lakes areas and up into Canada/Alaska and many married those pilgrims descendants who came from Jerusalem. (I’m just learning about this via personal genealogy.) Could this

be part of the gathering or gatherers beginning already? Am I even making sense???!
[Joseph knew they were the direct descendants of the Lamanite people, that they had a vested interest in having the Book of Mormon. But, there was much that he could not foresee. His calling was to translate the record, bring forth the revelations, and restore priesthood (relationship) with God. He hoped to establish Zion and see the coming of the Lord during His life, but it was not part of His mission. Joseph's work continues on the other side of the veil in a critical capacity in preparing for what is to come. PR]

In response to the previous question with your answer of "The great barrier is the judgments of God that will be poured out upon the earth. This will separate the wicked from Zion." Is this what D&C 63:54 is talking about when it refers to and ".....entire separation of the righteous and the wicked..."? **[Yes. PR]**

From a previous comment: "Will all of the initial people at First Zion when the tribulations start be Gatherers or will there be other faithful people not appointed to be Gatherers there as well? [Yes, others too. PR]"
Are these others the children of the gatherers?
Or others who qualified but their mission is different than the Gatherers? **[Yes, and yes. PR]**

Is 2nd Zion the New Jerusalem? **[There will be other outposts of Zion before the New Jerusalem. Only the first has that designation. PR]**

You wrote: [Joseph knew they were the direct descendants of the Lamanite people, that they had a vested interest in having the Book of Mormon. But, there was much that he could not foresee. His calling was to translate the record, bring forth the revelations, and restore priesthood (relationship) with God. He hoped to establish Zion and see the coming of the Lord during His life, but it was not part of His mission. Joseph's work continues on the other side of the veil in a critical capacity in preparing for what is to come. PR]

What is Joseph's critical work? I continue to be confused about how the prophecies and promises related to Joseph Smith, such as much of 2 Nephi chapter 3. Many prophecies of Joseph's work seem to be unfulfilled, or yet to be fulfilled in the future. How is Joseph's role in the future marvelous work and a wonder, otherwise known as the gathering of Israel? Will he only be recognized in this capacity on the other side of the veil? **[2 Nephi chapter 3 is interesting and often misunderstood. Many assume it is Joseph Smith who it is referencing. It is not. Joseph was the head of the sixth dispensation, to translate the record and restore priesthood. The "one mighty and strong" is the Joseph Servant, by the same name, that will be of Lamanite descent who will rise up in the last days and lead the descendants of Lehi to their conversion, among other things. Joseph Smith, as with all dispensation heads, takes the role of leading the order of Principalities after his death. His role is to administer over the affairs of men from the First Heaven and this is a critical role in preparation for the Second Coming of Christ. PR]**

Expounding the Scriptures – 3 Nephi 23:1-14

1 And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah. **[Where else in scripture are we commanded to read the writings of a prophet? Why does the Lord make this twice spoken commandment just after quoting these verses of Isaiah to the Nephite people? Because, Isaiah's words speak to our destiny as sons and daughters of God. Not just to read, but to "search diligently." What are you searching for? The Spirit will reveal that to you.]**

2 For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles. **[Great promises to the Gentiles too.]**

3 And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake. **[The prophetic revelatory events to come are given in great detail.]**

4 Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.

5 And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets **[writings]**, for many there be that testify of these things.

6 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not. **[They had many questions regarding the words of Isaiah, which the Lord took time to expound unto them. What scripture did they not have that He commanded them to write? There were prophets among them whose words were not included in the writings. Some of these included women. One particular named, Hozabel, whose writings will be revealed after Zion is established and the records in the Hill Shim are translated.]**

7 And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.

8 And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

9 Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me **[upon Jesus' condescension]** that there were many saints **[saved souls, both of families and imminent Nephites and Lamanites]** who should arise from the dead **[their spirits shall appear to the living]**, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?

10 And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.

11 And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

12 And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

13 And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded. **[How often do we forget to write down our**

spiritual experiences? The Lord has commanded me to write every detail from my experiences with Him, many of which I have included notes in this annotated BofM project.]

14 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one **[from beginning to end]**, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them. **[It was the most profound and engaging discussion you could imagine, as the Lord thumbed through the records and commented on many stories, doctrines, and events. The dismay of the people, their love and gratitude, as they realized the great truth, that the Lord's hand is in every detail. So much goes on behind the scenes that we do not comprehend or see.]**

Questions and Answers

“...that there were many saints [saved souls, both of families and imminent Nephites and Lamanites] who should arise from the dead [their spirits shall appear to the living], and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?”

I have always taken this to mean that the people broke out of their graves and appeared as resurrected beings, like Christ did (as also phrased by the below scriptures), but it sounds like you are saying that this was a spiritual manifestation, like the ministering of angels. Is that correct? I wonder why the phrases “graves opened ” and “come out of the graves” is used?

Helaman 14:

25 And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

Matthew 27:

52 And the graves were opened; and many bodies of the saints which slept arose,
53 And came out of the graves after his resurrection, and went into the holy city, and appeared unto many. **[It is an expression. (like having a “broken heart.” The heart is not literally broken, but it makes the point.) The graves do not literally open up and the dead come up. However, the term “resurrection” is a very specific meaning, although that too is often misunderstood. The glorified spirits appear to the righteous to minister to them according to those verses. This is my understanding and as with all I share each will need to get their own revelation to confirm. PR]**

I also have a follow up question about a resurrected Body. The scriptures say we will be raised a spiritual body, but D@C 129 verse 1 says that angels are resurrected having bodies of flesh and bone. Is that spiritual flesh and bone? but it also says you can feel their hand if you shake it. **[I have shaken the hands of angels and they are as physical as you and me, yet technically it is of the spirit [resurrected body]. The distinction is flesh and bone, versus flesh and blood. PR]**

Jesus being in every detail... so much hope promoting substance just to think of that. So much to ponder on that thanks

Offerings to God – 3 Nephi 24:1-18

1 And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. **[The words of Malachi came after Lehi left Jerusalem, and the Lord gave the Nephites these important scriptures to study.]** And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi—Behold, I will send my messenger **[a Servant who shall prepare the way]**, and he shall prepare the way before me, and the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant **[Jesus Christ]**, whom ye delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

2 But who may abide the day of his coming, **[When is His coming for you? For these people in Bountiful it was that very day.]** and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire **[burn out the dross]**, and like fuller's soap. **[to make white and clean]**

3 And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi **[those coming to the Lord]**, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness. **[be found worthy to receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.]**

The Levites symbolize a class of people who are seeking the Lord in holiness. Today, many who are desperately seeking God have a priesthood distinction called Levite (though it is referred to as a “seeker of light and knowledge”). When they stand in the presence of God and are anointed a servant they have a higher relationship with God, which is referred to as Melchizedek. These are only word distinctions, for to the Lord they represent different levels of relationship with Him.

4 Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years. **[The Jews will be reclaimed to the covenant and be made holy.]**

5 And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts. **[The Lord will separate them from the world, as they are received unto Him.]**

6 For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob **[those under My Covenant]** are not consumed.

7 Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts. But ye say: Wherein shall we return? **[How do they return to the Lord of the Covenant?]**

The following scriptures are often used to make a strong case for giving tithing to the church. This was not the point of these verses as they were

given. The entire recorded book of Malachi is the Lord's rebuke to the wicked Israelites, especially the priests and leaders who had made a mockery of the temple and all that was holy. They had used the tithes and offerings for their personal enrichment.

Under the Mosaic Law, one/tenth of what was gained was to be given to support the Levites who did not own land or work for a living. They were to be used to serve God and Israel, and help with priestly duties. The Levites lived meager lives of worship to the Lord and honored by the people for their sacrifice. Those who wished to self-select from other tribes to offer their lives to God were called Nazarites.

8 Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings. **[You priests of the temple have taken the sacrifices of the people and used them for your own benefit.]**

9 Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation. **[Your priesthood is gone, for you have taken what is not yours.]**

10 Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house **[Bring all the donations which are the great sacrifices of this people and apply them as has been commanded.];** and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it. **[A spiritual blessing, which is greater than any worldly wealth.]**

11 And I will rebuke the devourer **[the Adversary]** for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts. **[The Lord will pour His spirit open them and their posterity unto a higher resurrection.]**

12 And all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of Hosts. **[The land of your fathers shall become a mighty nation.]**

13 Your words have been stout **[belligerent and proud]** against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say: What have we spoken against thee? **[What did we do wrong?]**

14 Ye have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts? **[We have seen no benefit for ourselves by following the laws with exactness. What's in it for us?]**

15 And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God are even delivered. **[Now, we are living well, blessed with abundance because of the tithes and offerings of the people.]**

16 Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another **[The righteous knew better and found the Lord.],** and the Lord hearkened and heard; and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name. **[The names of the righteous were recorded, even if they were not noticed amongst the priests of the temple.]**

17 And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of Hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels **[anointed servants, calling and election made sure];** and I will spare them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him. **[shall be rewarded for their obedience]**

18 Then shall ye return and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

Why did the Lord feel it important to share the words of Malachi? He wanted to impress upon these people in Bountiful the importance of not abusing priestly power, to seek Him and to be the means to bring many souls to Him. According to the Mosaic Law it was commanded to bring sacrifice and to make offerings so that there would be meat and other needed items to further the building of the kingdom.

It is a good thing to pay tithes and offerings to help in building the kingdom of God. This is to be done between you and the Lord, not by constraint. The purpose of this chapter is not to warn those who give tithes, but to warn those who are the stewards of the Lord's Storehouse.

When Zion is established there will not be a law of consecration of property and wealth by constraint. It will not be "enforced communism." There will be unequal diversity of lands, houses, and possessions, as citizens seek to produce what is necessary to help the community. People will pay tithes and offerings according to what they can without hoarding their possessions. The difference in this community is that the Spirit of the Lord shall dwell amongst them without constraint. A pillar of light by day and a pillar of fire by night, as the glory of God surrounds them.

Those who cannot dwell amongst them will live around the city limits as they prepare themselves to also receive the fullness, benefitting from the protection of the city. A true Zion society is simply those who are one in their love for God and each other as they dwell in peace. For these, the Heavens open and revelations are poured out to the degree that eventually the city is prepared to be lifted up and taken unto God.

Questions and Answers

[" When Zion, the New Jerusalem, is established there will not be a law of consecration of property and wealth by constraint. It will not be "enforced communism." There will be unequal diversity of lands, houses, and possessions, as citizens seek to produce what is necessary to help the community. People will pay tithes and offerings according to what they can without hoarding their possessions. The difference in this community is that the Spirit of the Lord shall dwell amongst them without constraint. A pillar of light by day and a pillar of fire by night, as the glory of God surrounds them."] Are you allowed to say more about Zion and how it will operate? I have always wondered about this. How will it be governed? Will the Savior literally be there continually living among the people? Some speculate Enoch's Zion will be brought down and be the New Jerusalem, is this true? Some speculate great technology will be part of this city while others say it will be more simple like olden days. Will all the other Zions throughout the world function the same way as the New Jerusalem ? Since the Savior is omnipresent will He be the leader in all smaller Zions? There is so much speculation. What has the

Lord revealed to you ? I tried to do a search of this topic among your writings , but only found a few things. Can you please reveal more? **[The New Jerusalem will be a gathering place and administered by the 4th estate servants whose calling is to save the House of Israel. It will function according to the direction of Heaven, via angels and at times the Lord Himself. There will not be any other society on earth functioning the same as this place. There will be places of safety waiting to be gathered, but not like this. It will have a temple at its central place that will resemble the Enochian temple and when Christ comes only two land masses will be taken up – the old and new Jerusalem. These will be placed upon the renewed and glorified Terrestrial earth where they will be met by the City of Enoch. At this point there will be no need for a temple, for God will reign personally upon the earth and all will be revealed. At the end of the Millennium there will be a time of temptation before the new dispensation of the Great God commences and the earth will receive its Celestial Glory. PR]**

When the two land masses that are taken up inhabit the new and glorified Terrestrial earth, will that be a new earth? In other words a different earth? -Lyle **[It is the literal resurrection of the earth. The earth has a spirit and it shall be glorified, like a “new earth.” Then the holy cities shall be placed thereon and God will dwell upon it with the righteous. All things are a type for the Everlasting Covenant. PR]**

Is it taking God’s name in vain to cite priesthood authority one presumes to have through ordination in a church but that hasn’t actually come from God as you’ve described it after verse 7? I expect we can inwardly ask for heaven’s permission through faith and revelation in such cases, but is it improper to cite authority you haven’t actually received? It is a tradition to cite this authority when giving a blessing, but it’s really more the church’s permission to do things than God’s permission and I don’t want to conflate the two. **[The Church can give authority to do things within the Church, but only God can give authority to speak in His name and do miracles. Whenever giving a blessing or ordinance it is wise to ask the Lord for permission and authority and not assume anything. If one were to act without permission it would indeed be using the Lord’s name in vain. PR]**

Brother PR, thank you for taking the time to share and expound so much!

Malachi 3 used to make me feel like the Lord was scolding me any time I would happen to flip open to it.

He finally taught me (by directing me to Malachi 2:1) that He was talking to the leaders. The Lord once told me that when it came to tithing I could either obey or disobey but I could not rob Him. I was so grateful for His answer! But of course that seemed to lead to me asking new questions! 😊

“It will function according to the direction of Heaven, via angels and at times the Lord Himself. There will not be any other society on earth functioning the same as this place. There will be places of safety waiting to be gathered, but not like this. It will have a temple at its central place that will resemble the Enochian temple and when Christ

comes only two land masses will be taken up – the old and new Jerusalem.”
What about First Zion? **[It functions the same, but will not be taken up with the other two. PR]**

From a previous comment:

“What about First Zion? [It functions the same, but will not be taken up with the other two. PR]”

What about the Hidden City you visited in the book, where you marveled at how they hid. Is that a city of righteousness that is aspiring to qualify to be taken up one day? Or is it a safe haven where seekers of light and truth have gathered and are growing together? **[All those whose lamps are filled will be taken up when the bridegroom comes, but only two physical cities are taken up. PR]**

In the first question above you stated in your comment this , [“ It will have a temple at its central place that will resemble the Enochian temple “] I have never heard of an Enochian Temple. Can you please explain what this is . I would really appreciate it if you could include a few details about this temple. I am fascinated about new things I’ve never heard of before. I tried to find a reference in the scriptures and I failed. I also tried a search on your blog and found no mention of it. Thank you so much for your patience with my questions. **[The Enochian Temple is pyramidal. It is laid out in an ascension pattern, and teaches the fullness of the Everlasting Covenant. The temple also changes the land around which it is built. This pure temple is the type that was sought for by all the ancients. There were many imitations, but few reached it to perfection. PR]**

It’s interesting that in verse 1 Jesus says the Father told Malachi these things. The Book of Malachi quotes “The Lord” who I have understood refers to Jesus Christ. Can we know when “The Lord” means Jesus Christ or Heavenly Father in the scriptures? [Most all the prophets are communicating with the Jesus Christ. PR]

Do we receive the same blessings promised to the Israelites? If yes, why? Why would we when we are not the chosen people?

I suppose a better question is: are there blessings for the chosen people that you and I will never have a chance to achieve?

Following up on that, why is there even a chosen people like the Israelites? Why do they seem so... UN-chosen right now? If we can be grafted in, why bother with a chosen people at all?

What did they do to find so much favor to God? Did they do something special in the pre earth life to deserve this chosen status on earth? yes? What?

If yes, and we didn’t do what they did, why are we allowed to take hold of the iron rod and be redeemed?

[Those are good questions. The answers are related to who we are before birth and the covenants made. The House of Israel are the very first of the new children of light (the first estate), and the earth was created specifically to help them ascend through the Everlasting Covenant. The children of men (gentiles) are older children of the Father who are invited to this world to also partake of the covenant if they choose (and most do not). It is during

the Times of the Gentiles, after the House of Israel had rejected their King, that these spirits are given a full opportunity to receive the covenant. The Lord is eternally merciful, and when this world is finished He will raise up the wheat (those who have chosen Him) and the tares will go to their place according to righteous judgment. And, every soul will be satisfied with their place. PR]

Coming Forth of Elijah – Malachi 4 – 3 Nephi 25:1-6

This chapter is a continuation of what the Lord shared in the previous chapter, as He revealed the words of Malachi to the people in Bountiful.

1 For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven [**When Christ comes in His glory and the earth is completely bathed in fire, literally.**]; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch. [**without life**]

2 But unto you that fear my name [**respect His coming**], shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing [**resurrection and ascension**] in his wings [**rays of glory**]; and ye shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall. [**bursting with joy**]

3 And ye shall tread down the wicked [**have overcome all evil**]; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of Hosts.

4 Remember ye the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb [**where Moses saw the burning bush and communed with God**] for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments. [**The higher law, which was later replaced with the Ten Commandments and preparatory law.**]

5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord; [**Elijah is a title which means “with God’s power.”**]

Elijah, along with Moses, are the two most important administrators of the House of Israel. Moses is head over the administering of the House of Israel, and Elijah administers over the 4th estate. Before the Second Coming, Elijah will come and set the wheels in motion to deliver the House of Israel by organizing the coming forth of the Gatherers, as it is written in Revelation 7:2-4.

6 And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

This last statement has layers of meaning. It is not solely related to baptisms for the dead. For the first shall be last and the last shall be first in bringing forth the kingdom of God upon the earth. When the hearts of the children remember the blessings to the Fathers, Zion shall rise up and the

earth will fulfill the purpose in which it was created. Otherwise, it would be cursed.

Questions and Answers

“5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord; [Elijah is a title which means “with God’s power.”]

Elijah, along with Moses, are the two most important administrators of the House of Israel. Moses is head over the administering of the House of Israel, and Elijah administers over the 4th estate. Before the Second Coming, Elijah will come and set the wheels in motion to deliver the House of Israel by organizing the coming forth of the Gatherers, as it is written in Revelation 7:2-4.”

Are you implying here that the “Elijah” who comes to organize the gatherers is the actual Elijah? Or another who is coming with the title of Elijah? – thanks

[It is the actual Elijah, not another. He will not walk among the living, but is preparing the servants to perform their missions. PR]

[The higher law, which was later replaced with the Ten Commandments and preparatory law.]

IS the higher law called today the doctrine of Christ ? Or More than that? **[It is the Doctrine of Christ with the truths to be taught in the temple of the New Jerusalem, which constitutes the fullness of the Everlasting Covenant. This is what made it possible for the City of Enoch and Salem to be taken up to Heaven. PR]**

Hi PR,

I am a little confused so any clarity would be great. All the Elijahs seem to be mixed up for me. I know there was the man Elijah who was the prophet, & there are others who do a work that makes them an “Elijah”. So can you explain the rolls each will play in these Last Days? I am concerned about three of them: the original Elijah the prophet, John the Beloved-Revelator, and the Davidic Servant. **[There is only one Elijah. Elias is a title that means the restorer of priesthood. Many can have this name given to them: John the Beloved as he restores the lost tribes of Israel, the Davidic Servant, and the Joseph Servant. The “power of Elijah” is the sealing power.]**

Thanks

Try the Faith of the People – 3 Nephi 26:1-21

1 And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

[The Lord delights in sharing the deeper meaning behind scripture. Everything is available to receive if you just ask, and trust in the revelation received.]

2 And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you [**particularly Malachi**], the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

3 And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth [**even unto our day**], even until the elements should melt with fervent heat [**The earth will literally melt, leaving no matter untouched.**], and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll [**If you were watching this event it would appear as a wave of fire moving over the earth, like a scroll being rolled.**], and the heavens and the earth should pass away; [**It will end, or die.**]

4 And even unto the great and last day [**It will remain in that state until the end of the Millennium, when the Final Judgment occurs.**], when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil— [**Every person of every race and people, shall be judged (divided and separated), to go to their new place.**]

5 If they be good, to the resurrection [**rebirth**] of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation [**without progression**]; being on a parallel [**a dual reality, both continuing on different planes of existence.**], the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

6 And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people; [**The Lord spent days expounding scripture and answering questions.**]

7 But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people. [**This is the record kept by the high priest of the people containing the more sacred writings since Nephi.**]

8 And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken. [**knowing that these scriptures had great relevance to the Remnant of Jacob**]

9 And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith [**The early saints were the first who received the Book of Mormon, to see what they would do with it.**], and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them. [**the further offering of the sealed portion of the Book of Mormon**]

10 And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation. [**Which is exactly what has occurred, and the sealed portion has not been revealed. See D&C 84:54-57**]

11 Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

What does it mean to “try the faith of my people?” It is that the Lord will test our desire to come unto Him, to seek His revelations, and then to act upon it. If the early saints had sought after the blessings of the Fathers to the extent that the Lord was willing to give them, Zion would have been

established, and the saints would not have been cursed with the loss of their prophet, lands, possessions, and blessings.

12 Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.

13 Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them. **[The Lord did freely interact in their midst for a long time. Such is the case after one experiences their Second Comforter. The barrier is removed between you and the Lord. Part of the teaching to these people was how to open their spiritual eyes, to exercise the gifts of the Spirit, and to receive a fullness.]**

14 And it came to pass that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

The Lord is no respecter of persons, which includes His ministry to even the children. This was not like holding a Primary class. He interacted and spoke with these great spirits in a way that was more profound and succinct than you would expect. Children learn through symbol, story, and love. Great visions were opened to them, and many were shown their missions, and sacred identities.

15 And it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—**[Many people continued to be brought to the land of Bountiful to find the Lord and receive healing. With each healing came a remission of sins and a commandment to receive that Doctrine of Christ: to repent, be baptized, and receive the Holy Ghost.]**

16 Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them.

The only things that I have been forbidden to write are details regarding some of the Everlasting Covenant, which often relate to our eternal selves, relationships, and destiny.

17 And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost.

18 And many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are not lawful to be written.

19 And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another. **[They lived the Law of Consecration. To have all things in common does not mean that there were no personal possessions, but that they all provided for each other's needs. There was no hoarding of possessions or resources. They were living a Zion structured society.]**

20 And it came to pass that they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them.

21 And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus were called the church of Christ.

These people came from different backgrounds. Before their experience with the Lord there was a diverse chasm between doctrinal beliefs, much like there is today. All this will be washed away when Zion is established.

Questions and Answers

Note from vs 19: "They lived the Law of Consecration. To have all things in common does not mean that there were no personal possessions, but that they all provided for each other's needs. There was no hoarding of possessions or resources."

How does the Lord define hoarding? **[When Zion is established it will be a place of refuge from the storm. There will be no long term savings accounts, investments, or opulence. The focus will be preparing to meet God. People will work to provide for the community doing everything they know how to do. The materials to build the city, particularly the temple will come by miraculous means, not by pooling the money of the people. There will be no money. There will be a storehouse to help for those who are new arrivals. There will be schools, but not like we have today. It will be a Christ-centered society, anticipating the great day of glory. PR]**

It probably does not include the harvest put away that they will use to feed their families for the next several months, right?

I feel like I have such a deformed understanding of the law of consecration. It is difficult for my brainwashed generation to separate it from communism and various forms of forced "sharing" (where everything is taken from you and you receive a ration of it back) that seemed to take place in church history.

Do you have a blog post describing how this works and how it looks when practiced righteously? **[No, but there is no need to be concerned. Communism is a forced participation. Zionism is self selected and if someone chooses to do differently they leave. If they cannot perform their labors they are helped by the community. Because there will be no money or authoritative government positions, there is no means to exercise unrighteous dominion. It will be a volunteer system, by revelation and consensus. New arrivals will be given options and hope. It will be a new society where everyone is reliant on each other.]**

“Great visions were opened to them, and many were shown their missions, and sacred identities.”

What does sacred identities mean? **[Who they were before birth. PR]**

[“The earth will literally melt, leaving no matter untouched.], and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll [If you were watching this event it would appear as a wave of fire moving over the earth, like a scroll being rolled.], and the heavens and the earth should pass away; [It will end, or die.]“ Does the earth just move to a orbit closer to the sun causing such great heat or does it move to a higher plain of existence? Can a Terrestrial earth remain in this solar system? Or is it moved closer to Gods throne? In this state how is the earth different? Are you allowed to relate what you have seen in vision to us? **[It will appear as if a planet or comet is approaching the earth. When they meet up the earth will be consumed. Great fear will come upon the wicked and they will attempt to hide in bunkers in the mountains, to no avail. It will not be caused by the sun. PR]**

[“If they be good, to the resurrection [rebirth] of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation [without progression]; being on a parallel [a dual reality, both continuing on different planes of existence.] Can you please comment further on this statement about on “a dual reality both continuing on different planes of existence.” How many planes of existence are there? Do they occupy the same space? What current plane of existence are we on now? I so want to further understand this concept. I just love expanding my consciousness. **[There are many planes both ascending and descending according to glory. One way to understand this is to think of the glory of the sun, moon, and stars, or in other words telestial, terrestrial, and celestial. But, there is more, many mansions as the Lord says. I’m not talking about hypothetical theories of mirror universes. PR]**

Are there certain gifts of the spirit that can only be developed after receiving your born again baptism of fire experience? **[Yes, for example the gift of translation, and the gift to know the differences of administration. Most gifts can be given in different degrees as one begins to repent, but as you mature spiritually they can be given in greater measure. PR]**

[... Everything is available to receive if you just ask, and trust in the revelation received.]
True, true and true!
tnank Pr.

Why is it that the Nephites weren’t able to establish a Zion that was taken up? They had hundreds of years of a Zion like experience but yet never achieved the Salem/City of Enoch finality. Was it due to changes in leadership? Certain sins that were prevalent at the time? Or was it just “not part of the plan?” I’m curious what held them back if anything. Thanks! **[I don’t know the answer to that specifically. I have not asked. I do know that they were spread out quite a bit, and not all living in a single community. Perhaps that is related to the answer. It had been prophesied that within 400 years Satan would reveal himself again amongst them. PR]**

Ask and Knock – 3 Nephi 27:1-33

1 And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting. **[Jesus had left them and they were traveling in the land to preach the Gospel as it had been given to them.]**

2 And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?

3 And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

4 And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

5 Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day; **[A Church is simply a group that worships the same way. It is Christ's Church, so it can be called by nothing else. It may be called anything that points to that end: Church of Jesus Christ, Christian Church, The Church of Jesus, The Church of Messiah, it doesn't matter as long as He is the focus.]**

6 And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

7 Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake. **[Everything is through Christ. All glory is to the Father, and all is because of Him.]**

8 And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel. **[There are many Christian churches today who call themselves after the name of the man who organized them. This is not approved of the Lord. I don't think Mormon was happy that the restored Gospel people took the name of "Mormons."]**

9 Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;

10 And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

11 But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return. **[There are many churches and movements led by men, but**

if their foundation is built around a personality and not upon the Doctrine of Christ it shall fall.]

12 For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you. **[Here, the Lord places great emphasis on “works.” It is improper for a person to place themselves in any way between us and God. By their fruit, or “works” we will know what is true. Sometimes, for a “season” things will look wonderful, but the final result is whether it brings people to Christ and increases faith.]**

13 Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

14 And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil— **[The Father shall also lift up men, as Jesus was lifted up on the cross. What does this mean? Christ became our Savior because of what He suffered on our behalf. The Father shall also lift us up, to stand before Him, that we may be found worthy of Eternal Life. And then, we shall come to know Christ on an intimate level as never before. The Sisters are also lifted up, but their journey after knowing the Son is to know the Daughter and the Mother. There is a great work to be done to prepare for exaltation, and such things are among the mysteries of the Everlasting Covenant to be taught here after.]**

15 And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

16 And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled **[with the Holy Ghost]**; and if he endureth to the end **[as they stand worthy to receive the gift during mortality]**, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world. **["Enduring to the end" during mortality, is the challenge to persevere until one has received the gift of the Holy Ghost. For some this “end” is after water baptism. For others, it may take many years of faith in seeking Christ. All who choose Christ will find Him.]**

17 And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.

18 And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilleth the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilleth all his words.

19 And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end. **[How do we become clean and stay that way? The baptism of fire cleans a soul of sin, but then we are free to sin again, and again, making ourselves dirty in the process. Here is where the gift of the Holy Ghost is paramount. In such a state, our spirits are filled with light and glory, to the extent that we are claimed by Christ, judged of the Father. If we sin, we can be handed over to**

the buffetings of Satan, but cannot be lost, except by denying the Holy Ghost (shedding innocent blood).]

20 Now this is the commandment **[The number one commandment from Jesus to you!]**: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

21 Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do; **[What works is Jesus referring to? Everything. When will we do it? Now, then, later, and forever...]**

22 Therefore, if ye do these things **[Doctrine of Christ]** blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

23 Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden. **[The Lord expressly tells us what we can and cannot share. There is no question on the matter. I once asked the Lord, “How will I know if I am saying something I should not? and the Lord replied, “I will stop your utterance.”]**

24 Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.

25 For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them **[these writings]** shall their works be known unto men. **[future generations]**

26 And behold, all things are written by the Father **[His instruction to keep the record of all things]**; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged. **[What kind of books exist in Heaven? Today, in many cases, books seem primitive, as most books and writings are kept digitally and not in a library of paper printed, bound books. How does God keep a record? It is the record of time and space, an infinitely permanent record which cannot be dissolved. There are things that are kept for symbolic purposes, but truth is accessible according to our faith and glory, and it is eternal.]**

To know that all acts are recorded in Heaven may cause many to be concerned that their sins will be revealed to all some day. What is important is that they are not held against a repentant soul, and God will remember (judge against) them no more. In the higher realms it is considered beautiful to know that a sinner is made clean. Like the hiker that has endured a great and treacherous climb, coming down the mountain covered in mud, sweat, and blood, to be bathed and given fresh clothes, and told by the great Judge, “You did it!”

27 And know ye that ye **[My disciples]** shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am. **[You are My ministers, to do My works.]**

28 And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.

29 Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened. **[The Lord promises these servants that they will be given anything they ask for if they ask and knock. That constitutes praying until you get the answer you need.]**

30 And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fulness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost. **[They are all saved in the kingdom. This is of the greatest worth to the Lord, the Father, and the angels. It is what they exist for, to save the House of Israel.]**

31 Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy. **[The Lord explains that it is the group of people alive now, not forevermore.]**

32 But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation **[Almost 400 years]**, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads. **[They will turn to their lusts of power and self-gratification as do the sons of perdition.]**

33 And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work. **[And where did Jesus learn this? It was also given to Him of the Father.]**

This is an interesting chapter, as the Lord continually references the Father and the doing of His will as He teaches His disciples. All things are done through Christ, and glory be to the Father. Why must it be this way? Is it not confusing as to whom we must worship? The Lord has often said that to see the one is to see the other. They are one in purpose, yet two distinct and separate beings. Jesus sets the example by deferring glory to the Father. We must do the same. I praise the name of my Redeemer, Jesus Christ, and also the great glory of our Heavenly Father that sent Him. We must remain focused on doing His will and never deviate to seek other sources of worship. There are many mysteries that the Lord must teach us. As you ask and knock, the answers shall be given.

Questions and Answers

Vs 16: "All who choose Christ will find Him."

Lately I've been repeating to the Lord "It is not possible to seek You in vain" -which is something He once said to me – and have been comforted by that thought. Thank you for your witness here!

Hi PR,

Thank you for your service. I have a couple of things I am hoping you will flesh out a little more. The first one relates to when you stated:

“The Sisters are also lifted up, but their journey after knowing the Son is to know the Daughter and the Mother. There is a great work to be done to prepare for exaltation, and such things are among the mysteries of the Everlasting Covenant to be taught here after.”

Are you saying you’re going to teach more about this, or is the Lord going to address this in other BofM chapters, or perhaps the first presidency of the Church of Jesus Christ is going to reveal this? **[I will not be teaching this any time soon, but I am planning to share some of my wife’s journal experiences (with her permission) that will touch on some of this. PR]**

And then there is this comment you make:

“Here is where the gift of the Holy Ghost is paramount. In such a state, our spirits are filled with light and glory, to the extent that we are claimed by Christ, judged of the Father. If we sin, we can be handed over to the buffetings of Satan, but cannot be lost, except by denying the Holy Ghost (shedding innocent blood).”

Wow!!! So is this having one’s Calling and Election made sure? Or is this after being in the presence of Jesus Christ himself? Or can a person have this promise and be completely unaware of any significant event occurring that would stand out like a road marker? **[I am referring to the bestowal of the gift of the Holy Ghost. The Calling and Election Made Sure is a process that goes beyond this world. It is given to a 4th estate when they receive a fullness of the Lord before beginning their mission. PR]**

Thanks be to God for gifting our lives with his message of love and encouragement. I pray that you will continue to be blessed and watched over so that each person reading this will learn to have greater faith and ability to rely on Jesus Christ.

“I will stop your utterance.” What does this feel like when you are speaking? Or if you are typing, do your hands literally stop or you feel the direction to stop and have no desire to disobey? **[You feel constrained. You simply cannot do it. Like putting your hand on a red hot oven, you just don’t. When this has happened to me it is so quick and without warning that I stop mid sentence, and I know. PR]**

[...If we sin, we can be handed over to the buffetings of Satan, but cannot be lost....]

We also read that in D&C132 v 26.

Please may you give the meaning of buffetings of Satan? **[It means to be controlled by Satan, tossed to and fro without guidance. A very unpleasant experience, which most people in this world are subject to. PR]**

I love how you are blessed to provide answers to some really deep questions I had on my heart for the past week. Can you elaborate on how the name “Latter day saints” and “Mormons” came to be? It’s more of a curiosity question. Also, is being “lifted” as sisters equivalent to receiving more light and knowledge? Or a higher estate in progression? Or to become a daughter in Zion to prepare to be a Mother in Zion? So many thoughts racing through my brain!! **[I’m not a historian and haven’t asked the Lord about the origins of the titles of the Church. I have read that the early church was referred to as Mormonites from the beginning. Every denomination was called some kind of “ite” back then. It must have stuck. The Church’s name changed much over the early years. The current LDS name came later. I will**

be talking more about the term “daughters of Zion” in the future, but it is much bigger than its first expected meaning. When this BofM project is finished the next task is to transcribe my wife’s journal and with her permission share the female side of this journey through her eyes. She has been with me during all of this and has experienced many of the same things as me. PR]

Someone said that in the spirit World, communication is by telepaty also that to just think about someone, then you are in contact with. So distance there not matter. It is also said that when you look upon those who have not yet their baptism of fire &HG, you can know their sins.

But as for those who have the baptism of fire & HG, there is nothing as sin. Can you confirme that? **[Thoughts are an open book to those in the spirit world. One’s level of light and glory immediately is recognizable. However, you do not look upon someone and know their sins. Unless the Spirit of the Lord gives you that knowledge. Even in Heaven, you must ask for knowledge. In the presence of God all sin is washed away by His glory. Sin is to be out of harmony with God and is a telestial state of being. PR]**

They Did Not Taste of Death – 3 Nephi 28:1-40

1 And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father? **[The very same question was asked of the Lord’s apostles on the banks of the Sea of Galilee.]**

2 And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom. **[Their greatest desire was to fulfill their mission and come home.]**

3 And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

The Lord said that the number 72 is the number of completion of covenant, particularly the grouping of covenants. It did not mean that they would each die on their 72nd birthday, but that their lives would not be cut short. Some lived well beyond this age. (personal journal)

4 And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father? **[They were required to ask.]**

5 And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired. **[Too often we do not ask the Lord for that which we desire because of unbelief, or false traditions. There is a prevalent unbelief**

amongst many today that the Lord expects us to work it all out for ourselves and only come to Him if we are in desperate need of help. The Law of Asking is an important principle of faith in the Lord's Kingdom. However, when the Spirit guides us in the questions we ask we will have pure intent. To ask for something for the purpose to consume it in our lusts is not of God.]

6 And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me. **[Even though the Lord already knew their thoughts, they still needed to ask. What they wanted was given to them by the Spirit, for it was the mission for which they had been called before the foundation of the world.]**

7 Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death **[body shall not lie down in the ground]**; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven. **[At this time all translated beings shall be resurrected to their wholeness of body.]**

8 And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye **[your body]** shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality **[how you look now]** to immortality **[fully resurrected body]**; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father. **[A translated being is physically changed to where their bodies are not subject to the physical laws of mortality. However, their appearance continues from the age in which they were translated. Every wrinkle, blemish, and physical characteristic is the same.]**

9 And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh **[They cannot be harmed unto pain in any way.]**, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

Those who have experienced translation feel the physical world around them, yet their bodies are able to move amongst the living without the same constraints. They can travel great distances, move through solid objects, and have none of the ill effects that would harm a physical body. Like a spirit with a physical shell that can cloak their spirit. The flesh is as dust that can reshape itself.

The effect of not aging is only a small evidence of this great gift. Only those who are called and chosen of God to be servants for Him from before the foundation of this world are given this calling.

10 And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one; **[Their understanding of God's will shall be unhindered (an aspect of the sealing power). A fullness of joy is the equivalent of seeing the fulfillment of God's word and your part in that process.]**

11 And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.

12 And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

[What was the effect of the touch given to these disciples? He gave them the sealing power and the Lord consummated the promise given to them.]

13 And behold, the heavens were opened, and they [the three] were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things. **[This is the hallmark of such an event in the life of a servant, for they have an ascension to the Throne of Heaven where they are taught the mysteries of God by the Lord Himself.]**

14 And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

15 And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God. **[This is the greatest experience that a servant of the Lord can be given. To stand at the Throne and be shown all things. It feels real and tangible, yet not the same as a physical experience in that the senses are freed, and the realism reaches a hyper sensitive level, where one almost feels like after returning to the body that the physical world is less real. After returning to the physical world nothing feels the same again, and for these three it wasn't.]**

16 But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven. **[They were shown the fullness of the Everlasting Covenant. Such things are not to be shared. They were commanded to only teach the Doctrine of Christ and then the Beatitudes and additional commandments the Lord had given them in Bountiful. Oh, how their thoughts and memories reached the Heavens for the remainder of their lives!]**

17 And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not; **[What I have been shown regarding the future event when the Gatherers are called and receive the gift of translation is that it is a process that takes about 40 days. It involves fasting and coming to know what this new body can do. It is not something that is acquired by eating certain foods or reaching a higher peak of righteousness. It can only be given directly from God, by a touch (ordinance). This will not occur in the future until the temple is built at First Zion and the initial servants are gathered in His name. The experience will be much like Christ's appearance to the Nephites in bountiful, but with a different purpose.]**

18 But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given—they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost. **[Similar to what the Gatherers shall do, but on a smaller scale.]**

19 And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.

20 And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

21 And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.

22 And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

23 And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.

The miracles that will be performed by the Lord's servants in the last days will be so commonplace that rarely will the stories be told, except by those who were the recipients of them.

24 And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.

25 Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world. **[I have had experiences with these men. Once in the physical body and in the Spirit. They look to be in their middle age, wrinkles and all. One is a Lamanite and works mostly with the Remnant of Jacob. The other two are brothers and are preparing for the Book of Mormon to fulfill its destiny and the coming forth of Zion. They do interact among the living today.]**

26 But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.

27 And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.

28 They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.

29 And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them. **[When a servant speaks by the power of the Holy Ghost it has an extreme power to convince others of truth, and the Elect will respond to the call.]**

30 And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good. **[And such is the calling of translation as a servant of God. These are the 4th estate who minister to the House of Israel in the last days.]**

31 Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;

32 Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day. **[What is this event? It is a series of many events that lead toward the establishment of Zion before the Lord's coming. This work in the last days began with the establishment of American freedom, the coming forth of the Book of Mormon with Joseph Smith's calling, and leads up to the grand gathering. There is a small handful of translated beings that are choreographing this under the direction of the Lord and some day their works shall be made known.]**

33 And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come. **[If you only knew how much the Lord is involved you would truly marvel.]**

34 And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

35 And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come? **[If you do not follow the voice of the shepherd you will not be secure and protected.]**

36 And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality— **[An addendum is added to the record:]**

37 But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

38 Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

39 Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified **[filled with light]** in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

40 And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ **[the second coming]**; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out **[no longer required to condescend as a 4th estate]**, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

Questions and Answers

In verse 40 when you noted that they will no longer be required to condescend as a 4th estate, are you referring to just this world, or permanently? **[They have reached the end of their full requirement as a 4th estate in this world. PR]**

Vs 5 note: “To ask for that which is only to consume in our lusts is not of God.”
Can you better define “consume upon our lusts”? What does this mean? **[Some people desire to experience the supernatural out of curiosity. People lust after many things in this life. Real intent is to seek the Lord in love and desire to serve Him and others. There is no other way. PR]**

Vs 17 note: “until the temple is built at First Zion”
Who builds this temple? **[It is overseen by the 4th estate, its building, and fruition; but has been in the process of being prepared since the days of Moroni. PR]**

It seems to be built before the majority of believers in the US even realize a gathering is beginning. Is this assumption of mine correct? **[Yes. PR]**

Vs 25 note: “They do interact among the living today”

In what way do they interact? **[By physically interacting with people in need of their divine help. These are angels with a physical body that blend into the world. Rarely are they identified as angels. PR]**

Are you permitted to give a general example? **[Mysterious good samaritans, but more often just seem like helpful strangers. Their acts are usually unassuming, and not spectacular. But they work in tandem with the angels and serve a great purpose among the living. PR]**

What is the likelihood that one of us blog readers has had an interaction with one of the three Nephites without us knowing? **[Very likely. PR]**

The Lord has said it is not good for man to be alone. Did the 3 Nephites have their wives translated with them?

Or because of their nature they are no longer mortal man who suffers loneliness and thus their wives are not translated? **[In the case of these three disciples, their wives were not translated with them, but this will not be the case amongst the Gatherers in the last days, many of which will have their spouses with them. There was a good reason that their spouses were not with these original three. PR]**

From vs 40: “to go no more out [no longer required to condescend as a 4th estate]”

Is this great reward because they had fulfilled the last “step” (the last role) required of a 4th estate? [edit] **[Their last role. PR]**

I have always had questions about this passage. I hope you can help answer them.

Question 1.

Book of Mormon

6 And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me

D&C

7:6. Yea, he has undertaken a greater work; therefore I will make him as flaming fire and a ministering angel; he shall minister for those who shall be heirs of salvation who dwell on the earth.

So, the three Nephites (one Lamanite) desired the same thing as John. Did they receive the same gift as John? In their changed state, were they, or could they be considered “as flaming fire and ministering angels”? **[Yes, the same. PR]**

Question 2.

Book of Mormon

Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death [body shall not lie down in the ground];

D&C

110:13. After this vision had closed, another great and glorious vision burst upon us; for Elijah the prophet, who was taken to heaven without tasting death, stood before us, and said:

D&C

42:46. And it shall come to pass that those that die in me shall not taste of death, for it shall be sweet unto them;

I take it that the expression “taste of death” means different things for John and the three Nephites, Elijah, and those who are blessed by the elders, but who “die in the Lord” **[John, Elijah, and the three Disciples all were translated, but their experiences were each a little different. Those who are “blessed by the Elders” and still died were not translated, but were raised in glory. PR]**

Question 3.

8 And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye [your body] shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality [how you look now] to immortality [fully resurrected body]

36 And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality— [An addendum is added to the record:]

37 But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

So, just to make it clear, Moroni is saying that they were still in mortality, but a different kind of mortality (not tasting of death when they were caught up to heaven? **[Yes. PR]**

Question 4.

You speak of “gatherers” in verse 17 and 18. Are these gatherers the same as “the servants of God who are sealed in their foreheads” mentioned in D&C 77:9 and who will “bring as many as will into the church of the firstborn” 77:11. You mention this in one of your books, as well, but I wasn’t clear who you were referring to. **[Yes, the same. PR]**

Oh boy...so now I’m thinking about Enoch and Melchizedek and their cities of people being translated because they were a pure and righteous group of believers.? Did they die in mortality and if not, will they eventually need to in order to be resurrected? Loaded question but are they connected to the names that could not be written?? WE are connected to them closer than we know, aren’t we!? I really need to pray on this and understand if you cannot speak on this...

About the fourth estate, does that include women who are 4th estate or is it only the men who go out gathering the elect or do the women go out and gather also? **[Includes the women in the last days. PR]**

[“ I have had experiences with these men. Once in the physical body and in the Spirit. They look to be in their middle age, wrinkles and all. One is a Lamanite and works mostly with the Remnant of Jacob. The other two are brothers and are preparing for the Book of Mormon to fulfill its destiny and the coming forth of Zion. They do interact among the living today.PR] Have they ever lived among us or do they reside in the city of Enoch and visit us as needed? **[I don’t know anything about them having dwellings. They are fairly busy and go effortlessly between the Heavenly Realm and this world. PR]** [“ [At this time all translated beings shall be resurrected to their wholeness of body.PR] Is a translated body just a lower level of light then a fully resurrected body? **[There is no difference between a resurrected body and**

translated body in terms of glory, other than a translated body maintains the visage of mortality, their age, physical flaws, etc. There are many kinds of resurrections, so in the future, as they are further glorified, their resurrected bodies will change again. PR] I just can't figure out what "wholeness of body means ". When someone is translated are they given the patriarchal priesthood? **[Patriarchal priesthood is just a word often used out of context. There is the priesthood used by the patriarchs, such as Enoch, and Noah, but that is Melchisedek, or the Terrestrial power of God. The Highest priesthood, which is both patriarchal and matriarchal, is a fullness of relationship with the Father. It is omnipotent, omnipresent, and omniscient. PR]** Are you allowed to tell us about your interaction with them in the physical body and spirit that you mentioned above? Or is this something you could add to one of your books? **[I discuss them in my book "A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations," but it is heavily edited. PR]** Can you tell us why their wives were not with the original three? **[They still had children to care for. Other reasons too, but this is what I was shown regarding that. PR]** I just find this whole chapter to be fascinating. So many questions. Thank you for your patience with my questions. This whole Book of Mormon project of yours has been such a tremendous blessing in my life. I look forward to your new projects. Thank you so very much!

You said " they move effortlessly between the Heavenly Realm and this world". Are they restricted in any way of where they can go in the heavenly realm? For example, Peter wanted to quickly come and be with Christ in His kingdom when he died, but John wanted to tarry and bring souls to Christ. If John and the Three Nephites can move effortlessly between realms, is there any reason why they couldn't also go back and temporarily be in the Presence of Christ from time to time? I.e. have the best of both choices, or are they prevented during their ministry from being with Christ (ascending to the Throne, even for brief visits)? What would prevent them from being fully resurrected before their time? Such as maybe just being in the Presence of Christ would work a further change on their bodies before that further change is supposed to happen? Hope this makes sense. **[The purpose of translation is to continue to be able to serve the Lord in an angelic capacity, and maintain the visage of a mortal person. It is a unique type of resurrection. When their work in this world is done, their bodies are resurrected to their perfect form. They are in the presence of Christ often, but are not "resting" from the work among the living. PR]**

And I just want to add that this is marvelous that they would want to condescend to remain and help us "Greater love hath no man than that he lay down his life for his friends." There is more than dying a martyr's death to lay down your life.

As it relates to the gathering of the House of Israel... what are the benefits/merits of the distinction of having House of Israel pure blood ancestry IF any person regardless of lineage born here on this earth can be adopted into the House of Israel? **[More spirits will be born into those lines who are of the House of Israel. There are few today that are purely of this bloodline. PR]**

Is the pure bloodline connection with the Levite's and their families still recognized in our day? Is it the Levite's that carry that pure bloodline throughout generations? **[That is recognized among the Jews, but the Law of Moses is no longer required of the Lord. Levites have the right to officiate in temple duties by blood among the Jews, so this will play a small part of prophecy in the last days.**

However, the spiritual equivalent of a Levite is the most important. PR] And what about patriarchs who have given blessings pronouncing a person as a literal seed of Israel? This confuses the heck out of me! **[I would always check with the Lord on those Patriarchal Blessings, for they are not always reliable. PR]**

PR, have you seen anything about Levi having a specific role on this earth in the last days in directing the levitical priesthood/relationship to help and complete those to come in and forward to a Melchizedek relationship. **[There is a spiritual significance to Levi, a transitional phase of priesthood where people are preparing to come to Christ and assisting others to do the same. Many who follow this blog would be acting in a Levitical role in modern times. There are actual blood descendants of Levi in Israel who hope to be a part of the rebuilding of the temple there, but the blood sacrifices are not accepted of the Lord any longer. PR]**

PR – I am very interested in how the Book of Mormon will fulfill it's destiny, as you stated in verse 25... How will the Book of Mormon's destiny be fulfilled? **[When it is presented to the Lamanite remnant and they are converted to Christ in preparation for His coming. PR]**

Curious question, that has recently been brought up... Did the 3 Nephites have a direct role in translating the Book of Mormon into English (before Joseph Smith's work of "translation" or transcription)? In like manner, did the 3 Nephites have a role in determining the final resting place of the plates prior to coming into Joseph Smith's possession? **[Two of the three disciples of Christ that tarried are entrusted with the care of the resting place. All three are actively helping for the BofM to fulfill its destiny. It's the very reason why they tarried as translated beings. PR]**

"40 ...to go no more out [no longer required to condescend as a 4th estate], but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens."

This phrase "to go no more out" is found in the scriptures in many places. These passages always seemed mysterious until you understand the principle of condescension. Rev. 3:12, Alma 7:25, Alma 34:36, Hel 3:30, 3 Nephi 28:40, John 10:9 (talks about the sheep who follow Christ, their Good Shephard and know His voice and follow Him, coming in and going out of the sheep fold).

Do Not Deny the Gifts – 3 Nephi 29:1-9

1 And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles **[what is written in the Book of**

Mormon] according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled. **[In 1841, 11 years after the publication of the Book of Mormon, Orson Hyde, an Apostle of the Church, dedicated the Holy Land of Israel for the returning of the Jews. By 1882 there began to be a small number of Jews that trickled into the country. In 1917, the British government, the controlling power of Palestine, issued the Balfour Declaration, which announced the support for the establishment of a national home for the Jewish people in Palestine. The state of Israel was formally created in 1948, 22 years shy of exactly 2000 years after the forced exile of the Jewish people from their homeland.]**

2 And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled ; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

3 And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel. **[This is our generation.]**

4 And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn **[dismiss]** at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand **[very close]**; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

5 Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works! **[Not just the prophecies, but the gifts of the Spirit.]**

6 Yea, wo unto him **[very sad for them]** that shall deny **[refuse to acknowledge and seek]** the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healing, or by the power of the Holy Ghost! **[How often do you hear people speak in this manner, even among the leaders of the Church? Some may say, "Only the leaders can receive such miracles." Where such miracles are absent, the Lord's Spirit is missing.]**

We live in a time when revelations, prophecy, tongues, healing, and gifts of the Spirit are considered peculiar, undignified, and deceptive. The very opposite of their true standing with God. Should we not be seeking such things in our relationship with Him? Is it not commanded of us? Be very alert and aware of this reality among the believers of Christ and those who attempt to lead us.

7 Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ! **[The Lord gives us a clue to recognize these deceivers. They will gain economic rewards while they deny the importance of such gifts. What does it look like when one denies the gifts? They will claim they are not necessary, for an exclusive group, or rebuke those who claim to have received these gifts. They will suppress the very sharing of experiences and not allow them to be exercised during times of worship. They are "like unto whited sepulchres,**

which indeed appear beautiful outward, but are within full of dead *men's* bones, and of all uncleanness.” Matthew 23:27]

Mormon also compares those who set themselves up as a light in the last days to get gain that they shall be as the “son of perdition” where no mercy is given. What does this mean? A son of perdition is one who had made oaths with Satan of the highest order. Those of perdition have made oaths, but of a lower order. They are dark through and through. From such people will these unbeliefs be propagated.

8 Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss [**gossip**], nor spurn [**dismiss**], nor make game [**make fun**] of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

9 Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left [**change what God has decreed**], that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

Mormon makes a powerful observation regarding the state of the Gentiles at the time this record will be available. Do you not see this is how it is today?

Questions and Answers

“Orson Hyde, an Apostle of the Church, dedicated the Holy Land of Israel for the returning of the Jews”

Was this dedication directed by the Lord or men? [**Orson Hyde did it of his own desire. It was a dedicatory prayer. Simply a signal for what was coming. PR**]

“but are within full of dead men’s bones”

Is “men’s” italicized because it references the telestial level where the men who are leading the people exhibit none of the gifts of the Spirit and thus none of the light and knowledge of any higher kingdoms? (They are second estate at best or the children of men currently without covenant? Or even worse if sons of perdition have slipped into leadership?) [**They are not “sons of perdition,” as they are 2nd estate, yet they are without light. PR**]

Yes! I JUST read about the Belfaur declaration in June from a book I had ticked away for 20 years....I love the Lords tender mercies!!!!!!

“They are not “sons of perdition,” as they are 2nd estate, yet they are without light.” If they are without light, will the Gatherers be able to find them? [**If they are without light they have already pledged themselves to Satan. If they are the Elect and simply without a shepherd, they will hear the call. PR**]

“Mormon also compares those who set themselves up as a light in the last days to get gain that they shall be as the “son of perdition” where no mercy is given.”

Does that mean no mercy is given in this life and they are destroyed in the flesh during the coming troubles?

I know the Savior's atonement is powerful to forgive and when the scripture says "shall be as", that it is just a likening. What is the consequence these persons endure? **[If they choose to align themselves with the Adversary (not by accident, but by oath and covenant) they shall be as the son of perdition in that Satan shall have claim on them and they will be numb to God's call out to them. PR]**

re: healing

"these signs follow those who believe: cast out devils in my name and healing in my name" (paraphrasing).

I 100% believe in this. I have seen it. I'm aware that I am in the minority.

I've seen what appears to be people who don't even believe in Jesus experience overt miraculous healing in their body. I Am I seeing things? Do you think it's possible if the one praying over the nonbeliever believes? **[It seems that you're asking if someone who is not a believer can experience healing? Yes, sometimes if the faith of the healer is sufficient this can occur, but there are many factors. If the person is controlled by demons, those must first be removed. If not, there will be no healing. PR]**

Will the "call out" be clear where there is no denying that God is calling you out? **[I'm not sure what you mean by a "call out." People who have the Spirit as their guide will be inspired to go and do things. Those who are the Elect that do not know what to do will be found and given the Gospel. PR]**

The "call out" is a belief that leaders of a church will warn their congregations to pack up and move to church-owned land somewhere in a more remote area (usually assumed to be mountain areas) where the people will live in tents as a way to escape the coming destruction of Babylon.

Over the last year it has seemed to me that if we are following the Spirit, we are already being positioned where we need to be through the first difficulties/calamities. If we are seeking the Lord, we can expect to continue to be led to do things both simple (like preparing in some way) and large (like moving). I suspect we are already participating in The Gathering, even before Gatherers have shown up on our doorstep. (Is this correct?) **[Yes. PR]**

I have also come to believe that the majority of the elect who will be gathered are in our homes for the economic crash and civil war, which is used to turn our hearts back to the Lord. Is this belief correct? **[They are all over the world. PR]**

Turn to God – 3 Nephi 30:1-2

Mormon adds another important addendum:

1 Hearken, O ye Gentiles **[those in the last days that will first receive the record]**, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath

commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commanders me that I should write, saying:

2 Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceiving, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcraft, and your envying, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins **[baptism of fire]**, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the House of Israel. **[Most important distinction is to be numbered among the House of Israel, to be included in the Everlasting Covenant, which is to have the promise of Eternal Life. There are only two churches upon the earth that the Lord recognizes: the Church of Christ, and the church of the devil. Christ's church are all those who repent and come unto Him. The Church that exists in the Higher realm is called the Church of the Firstborn.]**

The Lord has Mormon make an addendum specifically for the Gentiles (us) to repent and be made clean. He covers a wide range of iniquities, many of which people perform without realizing they are sinful. Our culture today is rife with lies, deceptions, whoredoms, priestcraft, envying, and strife. We continually seek after commercial products that focus our attention on Babylon. The Lord asks us to “turn” away from this and to turn toward Him. The gift He offers is immeasurable!

Questions and Answers

This two verse chapter is amazing!

In November 2017 the Lord gently told me I was “practicing idolatry and supporting priestcraft”. Earlier this morning I was thinking about that experience. When I read verse 2 here this afternoon, I realized what He said to me actually referenced this scripture, as idolatry and priestcraft are mentioned in that order here, too.

“Our culture today is rife with lies, deceptions, whoredoms, priestcraft, envying, and strife. We continually seek after commercial products that focus our attention on Babylon.”

Can you teach more specifics about this? **[I’m referring to a culture that focuses on entertainment, celebrity worship, and false teachings that come in the form of TV, movies, social media, advertisements, and such. PR]**

Is there something you were shown that we are utterly and completely blind to that it would benefit us to know as we evaluate ourselves?

4 Nephi

The Rise and Fall of Three Generations – 4 Nephi

1:1-49

1 And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost. **[These were the golden years of this generation, as all the disciples were still alive and the Gospel was spread with powerful success.]**

2 And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another. **[The entire land had been converted. All that had remained after the destructions were convinced of the truthfulness of these disciples' message. There were thousands of witnesses that were alive to tell the great story of walking with and being ministered to by Jesus Christ!]**

3 And they had all things common among them **[They sought each other's welfare. No buying and selling. All were living a communal society.]**; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free **[debtors did not exist]**, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift. **[All were born again in Christ.]**

4 And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also, and there still continued to be peace in the land.

5 And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus. **[The chosen disciples of Christ performed great miracles in the presence of the people and these acts were known and spoken of freely.]**

6 And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty and ninth, and forty and first, and forty and second, yea, even until forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and one years had passed away.

7 And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

8 Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

9 But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

10 An now, behold, it came to pass that the people of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and delightsome people.

11 And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them. **[Regarding that their children would multiply and fill the land, raised in the covenant.]**

12 And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses **[temple blood sacrifice]**; but they did walk after the commandments which

they had received from their Lord and their God [**3 Nephi 11-12**], continuing in fasting and prayer, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

13 And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the people, in all the land [**no arguing concerning doctrine or seeking power over others**]; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of Jesus.

14 And it came to pass that the seventy and first year passed away, and also the seventy and second year; yea, and in fine, till the seventy and ninth year had passed away; yea even and hundred years had passed away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God [**some of the chosen disciple lived far beyond the age of 72**], save it were the three who should tarry; and there were other disciples ordained in their stead; and also many of that generation had passed away.

15 And it came to pass that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people. [**The people had charity for each other.**]

16 And there were no envying [**seeking higher status**], nor strifes [**angry divisions**], nor tumults [**rioting**], nor whoredoms [**sexual improprieties**], nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness [**acts of sexual lust or lewdness**]; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God. [**This verse is a good description of what the people of God look like.**]

17 There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God. [**There were no secret combinations among the people.**]

18 And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.

19 And it came to pass that Nephi [**4th Nephi, the son of the Disciple Nephi**], he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

20 And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

21 And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book. [**Although there was a vast amount of records kept, there was only one Book of Nephi, which is this record we call the Book of Mormon.**]

22 And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.

23 And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land [**North America**], and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.

24 And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world. [**Interesting that “high fashion” would be a lure of the Adversary to the lifting up of pride.**]

25 And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them. **[The profiteering of products, which was the accumulation of things. No longer were they satisfied with having sufficient for their needs and seeking the welfare of their neighbors.]**

26 And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ. **[A church is simply a word to describe an institution that people gather to achieve a common objective. At this time amongst these BofM people, they began to organize to destroy the Church of Christ and set themselves up leaders and rulers of the people.]**

27 And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness. **[What is “unworthiness” in the sight of God? It is to be with envying, tumult, strife, lyings, whoredoms, murderers, and any kind of lasciviousness. If anyone was known to be a perpetrator of such iniquity and not repenting with all their heart, they were to be denied the Sacrament.]**

28 And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts. **[A popular teaching amongst the rising generation. Do you see popular teachings rising in today’s generation which are not of the original doctrine and commandments of the Lord?]**

29 And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them. **[Another church, not only persecuted the church of Christ, but denied Christ all together. These are like today’s secularists, or atheists, that actively suppress Christians.]**

30 Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them **[the Three, who by this time were well known among the people for their age]**, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them. **[could not be held by walls]**

31 Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word. **[That must have been a challenging thing for them!]**

32 And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

33 And they also cast them in dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

34 Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. **[Many set themselves up as the priests and prophets of the people, but a title is not how we judge their authority.]** And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and

wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away. **[There is a phenomenon amongst the wicked that they feel they are justified to smite the face of anyone who disagrees with their thinking. They believe they have a license to be violent. Do you see that amongst the “churches” today?]**

35 And now it came to pass in this year; yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people. **[This is as much political as religious.]**

36 And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believer in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanite — Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites; **[Different branches of the same political persuasion, defined by their geography and heritage.]**

37 Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites. **[What is the difference between a believer and a worshiper? A believer is one who identifies as a Christian. The worshiper is one who is devout in their keeping the commandments of the Lord. Today, in America, there are many believers, but few worshipers.]**

38 And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did willfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their father, from the beginning, did dwindle. **[“Unbelief” is a state of following a false tradition passed down through generations. When one willfully rebels against the truth they bring upon themselves the judgments of God.]**

39 And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers **[the latter generations of Lamanites]**, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate children of Nephi from the beginning.

40 And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God. **[The church of Christ becomes a minority among the people. In only about 43 years the complete demographic of believers amongst the people has changed.]**

41 And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years. **[Is the adorning of churches with “precious things” an abomination to the Lord? During the time that the favored people of the Lord flourished there had been no such thing done upon their church edifices.]**

42 And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton. **[At the exact same time, as the people were focusing upon the “precious things” and dividing into classes, the secret combinations began to rise again.]**

43 And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites. **[Both political distinctions among the people became equally wicked in their acts.]**

44 And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world. **[The state of sin amongst the people had ripened and the Three disciples were taken from their midst. From that time forth they acted anonymously as servants of the Lord.]**

45 And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

46 And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. **[The few that had remained unspotted from the world, saved in Christ.]** And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance **[the Gadiantons]**, and did traffic in all manner of traffic. **[They did build up the commerce of the land, the currency, and the buying and selling of all things including slavery, and murder.]**

47 And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

48 And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred — yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred — even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ. **[These were all carried a great distance to the Hill Shim.]**

49 And he did hide them up unto the lord, atet they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob **[In our day, a future event]**, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.

Questions and Answers

21 And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book. [Although there was a vast amount of records kept, there was only one Book of Nephi, which is this record we call the Book of Mormon.] Wouldn't it be wonderful to have other records that would tell us how these people accomplished this oneness with the Savior.. I believe that if there were it would be exactly what your mission is to assist us who need to awaken and come to know the Lord. Forever thank you for what you are doing.. It has made such a wonderful difference in my life as well as many others that I know.

From vs 9: “But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.”

Did these cities sink along the edges of or into the Great Lakes?

Or they sank and random, large sized lakes where these cities once stood still dot our

land? **[They were both large sinkholes and waters going beyond their bounds and the topography of the land changed. Much of this occurred around the Great Lakes. PR]**

v. 19 And it came to pass that Nephi [4th Nephi, the son of the Disciple Nephi], he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died...

[Edit] **[Out of respect to Mormon's declaration that he would not include their names in the book I refrained from naming them therein. PR]**

Mormon

The Preparations of a Young Prophet – Mormon

1:1-19

1 And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon. **[Referring to his own personal record.]**

2 And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe; **[Many had already noticed the gifts of this child, Mormon, but Ammaron, through the gift of prophecy, knew what the Lord's will was concerning Mormon.]**

3 Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum **[Rocky Mountains]**, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

4 And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself **[bring them back with you]**, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

5 And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me. **[There was much history in the family name.]**

6 And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

7 The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea. **[Most of the people at the time built with mud and wood.]**

8 And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and

this war was between the Nephites and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

9 Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites. **[It is interesting how when people grow wicked they seek to divide and persecute according to skin color and heritage. There were certain factions amongst these people who profited from race-baiting the others, just as there is today.]**

10 And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon. **[Near the state of Missouri along the Mississippi River.]**

11 And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in the same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.

12 And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.

13 But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

14 And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief. **[Within a single generation the truth had been lost. Why and how did this happen? Because their hearts became fixed upon the things of the world and that which was holy became unpopular and greatly mocked by all the people.]**

15 And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober **[serious and thoughtful]** mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus. **[The “soberness” of Mormon was that he respected greatly the traditions of the Gospel of Christ. His adherence to these things caused him to stand out from his peers.]**

Mormon’s “sober mind” is much like that of Joseph Smith, in that he pondered the great questions of religion, and why people behaved the way they did. What was truth? Mormon knew that he could get answers from his prayers and received revelations and visitations.

16 And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them **[Mormon was often constrained by the Spirit to refrain from speaking. This is a gift of the Spirit, to know when to speak and when to not.];** for behold they had willfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity. **[To speak of godly things to those with no light is the example of throwing pearls to the swine. We are expressly commanded not to do that.]**

17 But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden **[of the Lord]** to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

18 And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again. **[How was the land cursed? There was more shifting in the earth, tremors, and earthquakes, though small, enough to keep buried items difficult to access after burying them in many cases.]**

19 And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wroth upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite. **[People often forget that the Adversary has a counterfeit for most all of the gifts of the Spirit. As the people became more wicked they found such darkness as a means to acquire more wealth and power.]**

This is an interesting time in the history of the Book of Mormon people. They had been the recipients of incredible blessings, yet had fallen out of favor with God to the extent that the gifts of the Spirit were gone. A remnant of the disciples of Christ had made a journey west to establish a safe haven for the records in the Hill Shim, with the knowledge that they would not be safe in the heartland near Zarahemla. All these details are orchestrated by the Lord for the purpose of preparing the House of Israel to receive Him in the last days. Mormon's part in this plan is of great importance. His prominence as a prophet and record keeper of the Plates of Nephi is not fully understood.

Questions and Answers

Vs 3: “go to the land Antum [Rocky Mountains], unto a hill which shall be called Shim” If the hill “shall be called Shim”, does that mean there was still a righteous remnant living in Antum who Mormon could ask to direct him to a hill they called Shim? **[The Lord directed him there. PR]**

Vs 17: “because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.” What are some ways that the Lord curses the land for our sake? **[The Lord allows bad things to happen for our sake. In this case it was trying to trust in the arm of flesh. A modern day equivalent would be hoarding food, money, etc., at the expense of others. PR]**

Verse 18 mentions earthquakes “because the Lord had cursed the land”, which seems to momentarily liquify the earth enough that buried treasures slip deeper down or away from where they are buried.

Are earthquakes always a symbol that the land has been cursed? **[Yes.PR]**

Do you have any notion of when the records that are deposited in the hill Shim, will begin to come forth? Will it be during , before or after the tribulations? **[It will be during. PR]** Have you been allowed to visit and view these records? **[I have seen them. PR]** I just wonder how these works will be published to read with all the destructions that will take place. I'm just so excited to start reading them!

[“ Mormon’s part in this plan is of great importance. His prominence as a prophet and record keeper of the Plates of Nephi is not fully understood.”] Can you please give us further details concerning this statement? What is it that we need to further understand concerning his part? **[There is nothing anyone needs to further understand, or I would have stated. It is a personal comment that will have great meaning to others later. It is related to the ongoing plan of the Father and the Everlasting Covenant. PR]**

I’ve always thought there was only one resting place for the records, Cumorah. The Hill Shim was in the Rocky Mountains? So, the records were all moved to Cumorah at some point or are some records still at the Hill Shim? **[There is only one Hill Shim, but there are many “cummorahs,” as commorah means to bury up. PR]**

Would most of the nephite cities and civilizations become destroyed by the lamanites and natural disasters? is that why there aren’t so many? **[They eroded with time, were covered by earth, and lost. There are remains of great cities to be found in the region, mostly mounds and walls. PR]**

From a previous comment: “Will it be during , before or after the tribulations? [It will be during. PR] ”

Will we have internet and mass printing available when these records come forth? **[Things looked pretty rough, so I don’t know how that would happen. Probably something will be worked out. PR]**

Can you answer why there are never any references to Sam-ites? Did he only raise up daughters? Or was his wife barren? **[I don’t know. PR]**

The Demise of the Nephites – Mormon 2:1-29

1 And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature **[influence]**; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies. **[Mormon’s influence was seen through both his physical presence and his wisdom and ability to speak with power. His level of maturity was highly respected amongst the people.]**

2 Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

3 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

4 And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

5 And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

6 And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.

7 And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.

8 But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

9 And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.

10 And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

11 Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

12 And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamination and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord, my heart did begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people. **[Typically, this would occur, but not this time.]**

13 But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin. **[Godly sorrow is the broken heart and contrite spirit that comes when we realize our great need for forgiveness and the Lord's help. The sorrow of the damned is the regret one feels for losing their possessions, and that is all.]**

14 And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

Those who are overcome with darkness and rage usually curse God and desire to inflict great harm upon others without concern for their own lives. They are in effect possessed by evil spirits.

15 And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw the the day of grace **[day of their repentance]** was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down **[killed in war]** in open rebellion

against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

16 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

17 And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron. **[Mormon had kept the commandment and retrieved the Plates of Nephi.]**

18 And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man. **[The people of Nephi had become wicked, partaking in great whoredoms and lasciviousness, which Mormon was exposed to from his early youth.]**

19 And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day. **[Mormon knows he has been saved, having received the gift of the Holy Ghost.]**

20 And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

21 And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them for destruction.

22 And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.

23 And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.

24 And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

25 And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifteen thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.

26 And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.

27 And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

28 And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.

29 And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward. **[The original lands divided before Christ came.]**

In this chapter, Mormon summarizes 24 years of the history of the Nephite people. They had fought many wars and had moved around much, but the day of repentance for them had passed.

In the last days it will be similar for the American people. When the day of repentance is passed they will be left unto themselves, to war amongst themselves and suffer the sorrow of the damned. The Lord will show great mercy at first, as there will be times of relief, to come unto Him before the fullness of His wrath is poured out upon the world. But there will be a remnant of the righteous that will be preserved.

Questions and Answers

Vs 8: “notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings”

Had the people repented at this moment – or even a subset of the people – how would the Lord have protected them?

Would He have them flee? **[There was a small remnant of the people who had not fully succumbed to the wickedness, but the people as a whole were ripe in wickedness. Their fate is written in the coming chapters. PR]**

Vs 10: “ for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.”

I get how thieves, robbers and murderers caused people to not be able to keep that which was his own but how did the magic art and witchcraft also cause this? **[There were poisonings, assassinations, extortion, and other dark acts caused by those practicing these arts to take away the possessions of others. PR]**

Vs 20: Where is the land of Shem today? **[Northern central area near Canada. PR]**

From vs 18: “The people of Nephi had become wicked, partaking in great whoredoms and lasciviousness, which Mormon was exposed to from his early youth.”

I feel like this is our day, now, and our children, now.

Will the fighting in our day be as prolonged and drawn out as the 24 years Mormon Details here? **[That I do not know. PR]**

Thank you for the enormous amount of time you take doing all this and answering me!

Where is the land of Jashon? **[I am not sure. PR]**

Mormon Writes Their Downfall – Mormon 3:1-22

1 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. **[Mormon is now age 49]** And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

2 And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people — Repent ye, and come unto me, and be baptized, and build up again my church **[those who follow Christ]**, and ye shall be spared.

3 And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God. **[The American people have lived in relative peace since 9/11. The degree of terrorism from that source has mostly been felt outside our country. America has seen an increase in wickedness in these last two decades and the rift within our country will continue to divide until the Lord will pull away the protection from the people and we will experience a similar fall as the Nephites.]**

4 And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

5 And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.

6 And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

7 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

8 And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

9 And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

10 And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land. **[This is a form of blasphemy, as they swear against God unto their own blood.]**

11 And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination. **[It was no longer a war for the protection of their wives and children, but a war of vengeance.]**

12 Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my

heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts. **[To have “faith” in this effort would have required a revelation from God that the outcome would yield fruit, but Mormon just loved them anyway. Sometimes this is how a parent loves a wayward child.]**

13 And thrice **[three times]** have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.

14 And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ **[3 Nephi 12:33-37]**, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

15 Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off **[destroyed]** from the face of the earth.

16 And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me **[The Lord had commanded Mormon to no longer lead them into battle.]**; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come. **[He would write the record of their fall.]**

17 Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles **[the first to receive the record]**, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence **[the Remnant of Jacob, and the Jews]**, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

18 Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged **[divided and organized according to righteousness]** according to your words by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

The original Twelve Apostles, chosen of the Lord, officiate over the twelve tribes of Israel from beyond the veil as the administrators of the Principalities, with special responsibility of the placing and saving of the House of Israel as it is spread throughout the four corners of the world. There is much that occurs in that realm.

19 And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem. **[Always a governing body of twelve to help judge the people, to organize the families and generations that will come unto Christ.]**

20 And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human **[mortal]** family of Adam; **[the first estate who are descendants of Adam]** and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

21 And also they ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God. **[The witness of the Book of Mormon.]**

22 And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

Questions and Answers

Will there be a “last-chance” call to repentance with many prophets and preachers to the people of America like the Lord had Mormon preach to the Nephites before the end? Is that partially the reason for your blog and books? **[My calling is to spark those who will gather. The Gatherers will be the last effort amongst America and the world. However, even now many are preaching the doctrine of Christ in America. PR]**

I literally have chills, and a warm heart at the same time reading this! You have covered another question I just have been praying about! This make so much sense to me now regarding past disciples and the future disciples working together for our good!!

“family of Adam; [the first estate who are descendants of Adam]”

I thought mortality is their second estate? **[They are 2nd estate in mortality. I call them the first estate because they were the only ones who were before coming to this earth. PR]**

“My calling is to spark those who will gather. The Gatherers will be the last effort amongst America and the world.”

When you write “those who will gather” with a lowercase g, does that mean the people who will be gathered by The Gatherers (uppercase G; a role or title)? **[Gatherers is a title I give them. They are also the 4th estate, Saviors on Mount Zion, the Anointed Ones, and have many names. PR]**

Or is your calling to spark those who will be Gatherers (uppercase G)? **[Gatherers, both 3rd and 4th estate. PR]**

“...even now many are preaching the doctrine of Christ in America...”

Where do we see this? Is this just being done in small, local community groups? **[Yes. Not any large institutions. PR]**

I wonder about why some are not awoken yet. I have a great friend that’s a saint, pure, with a love of Christ so great I feel small next to her, and yet she’s not awake and I am. I guess we all have a time table to go by.

[My calling is to spark those who will gather. The Gatherers will be the last effort amongst America and the world. PR] Does that mean that all those who are drawn to your blog are 4th estate beings, the future Gatherers with specific missions to gather in the Elect? Is it possible to be part of the 144K and not be awake yet? **[My blog is for Gatherers with a Mormon background. There will also be those of the 2nd estate that will benefit from it in their journey. Most 4th estate are not awake yet. PR]**

“Most 4th estate are not awake yet.”

What is the Lord’s definition of awake? **[A person can be on the path and yet not awake. When they grab hold of the rod they “hear” the word of God. They receive the Holy Ghost for their guide and no longer rely solely upon the words of others. After they are awakened by the gift of the Holy Ghost, then they must arise and fulfill the missions to which they have been called. Many of the 4th estate are still stuck in the box of generational unbelief, but they will awaken. PR]**

Does the awakening process include becoming aware of the secret combinations that have gotten above us and becoming aware of our awful situation?

What are the next steps? What is the next thing we need to awaken to?

Can you tell us the story of how the Lord first awakened you?

What was the first thing you became aware of?

How did your awakening progress? **[My story is documented in the first book “How to Have Your Second Comforter.” I always desired to know the Lord from a young age, but wasn’t sure how to do it. A critical moment was the day I heard the words, “Be believing.” The next big step came when I made a promise to the Lord that I was willing to sacrifice all things to know him, everything. With an open mind and a willing heart, I paid close attention to every bread crumb that came my way and took nothing for granted. I awoke over about a year period culminating in my baptism of fire and Holy Ghost. Six months later I had my Second Comforter experience. Everyone’s experience will be different. PR]**

You have been on this journey a long time. Are you aware of awakenings happening more quickly?(Gift of Holy Ghost and Second Comforter) **[It’s different for everyone. Some have struggled while others experience it very quickly. I notice that those who progress at lightning speed are very open to things, very believing. They don’t seem as cumbered by expectations. For example, they don’t get upset for not seeing clearly, but rejoice for even the smallest gift. They trust in the Lord and seek his revelations for them. They don’t seek the gifts as a status symbol to compare themselves, but love the Lord and only want to serve. I’ve seen at least a dozen personally this way who have not dragged. Then, I have seen far more that are frustrated. I wrote the second book, “How to Open Your Spiritual Eyes,” to help these to get past some of their difficulties. Many still struggle. My answer: trust in the Lord’s timing. Seek a relationship with Him. Learn to receive revelation. Most of those who are called to gather will have their experience with a group as did the Nephites. This is not a competition, it is a journey of love. You cannot add to your standing with the Lord by your works, only your faith. Learn to hear and follow His voice. All else will follow. PR]**

“Most of those who are called to gather will have their experience with a group as did the Nephites.” Will this be before the temple is built, or after? Can you elaborate more on this group awakening? **[It comes before the New Jerusalem is built. That is about all I can say. PR]**

You said the following [Gatherers, both 3rd and 4th estate. PR] Thus is the first I've heard of 3rd estate gatherers. Can you give us more information about them? **[These are those who gather friends and family to Zion. PR]**

“These are those who gather friends and family to Zion.”

Do these gatherers receive their own personal revelation to leave an area to go elsewhere and persuade friends and family to make the journey with them? **[Yes. PR]**

Or they are true Gatherers and travel in spirit to go get friends and family who are suffering out in the world and bring them to a place of safety/refuge where they can be taught? **[My understanding is that only the 4th estate do that. PR]**

Thanks for all you do!! Can you elaborate on the word “friend” a little more and more of the spiritual definition if you have one? The word “friend” is taking on an entirely new meaning to me personally but would love to hear you thoughts! **[When we get to the point where our relationship with the Lord has the intimacy of coming and going, asking, sharing, and trusting in each other. PR]**

One more question that maybe you can answer on this... With a group awakening, like the Nephites at Bountiful....could it occur with the help of one who has the sealing power? **[It will be the Gatherers with the sealing power, bringing groups together to receive the baptism of fire and bring them to Zion; but the people of Bountiful were gathered by the Spirit to receive the Lord, which was a uniquely blessed experience. PR]**

This is related to [edit] question above about awakening. What if a person starts feeling the Spirit so strongly they don't think they can take any more for the moment, or if so much knowledge is coming to them they don't think they can absorb any more for the moment, or they can't write it down fast enough, so what's the right thing to do? Keep forging ahead anyway, or back off, take a break, and do something else for a while, then come back later? This would be like an athlete who is exhausted from training, but he is getting such a buzz, he wants to keep going. Would it be a show of faith to the Lord to keep pushing ahead despite all, or is the person getting too caught up in their zeal and thereby their efforts are ineffective? **[Never back away spiritually for fear. The Spirit witnesses when it is time to pull back and exercise wisdom. Not all can be given at once. The Lord knows our weakness of the flesh. There have been times I have paused and said to the Lord, “How can I remember all this?” He replies, “I will bring it to your remembrance.” PR]**

Human Sacrifice – Mormon 4:1-23

1 And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.

2 And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

3 And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.

4 And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them. **[They were more safe taking a defensive position.]**

5 But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed. **[It is not by God that the wicked are punished. Usually, they fight amongst themselves. This is different than when judgment is pronounced by God, in which a people are destroyed by natural disaster in order to cleanse a land.]**

6 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.

7 And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

8 And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

9 And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

10 And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

11 And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually. **[It was beyond an act of war between two nations, it was bloodsport, as deeply wicked people sought carnage and death.]**

12 And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

13 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

14 And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods. **[Human sacrifice is the zenith of Satanic debauchery and has occurred at some point in every civilization. This had been the first time the descendants of Lehi had as a people stooped to this low point. It is a sign the Spirit of God had completely left them.]**

15 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

16 And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.

17 And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.

18 And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.

19 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

20 And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, insomuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

21 And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

22 And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.

23 And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord. **[Mormon takes his family and those who will follow and leaves the land, taking the journey to the land of Antum, near the Hill Shim.]**

Questions and Answers

Would abortions be classified among “human sacrifice?” You have said that spirits choose when to enter into the body before birth just wondering if abortion is murder in that sense **[Yes, it is a kind of human sacrifice and many people do not realize the degree of Satanic influence in its practice today. PR]**

“Human sacrifice is the zenith of Satanic debauchery...It is a sign the Spirit of God has completely left them.”

We have this.

Is that why it is included in the BoM? As a warning to us that they will do it openly in the future using us, women and children, as sacrifices? **[It is happening today in the form of abortion, but will also occur on a smaller scale after society collapses. PR]**

Vs 15 & 16: There is a gap of time between 367 and when the Lamanites come to fight again in 375.

Did some people repent?

Were some led to flee elsewhere?

What did they do during these years? **[I do not know. PR]**

Where is the land of Antum?

Round about which modern state or province? **[The Rocky Mountains. PR]**

At this point in my life, I weep as I read these chapters and in particular this chapter.

By the end of the BoM the people that were left were in complete depravity. Did it just continue like this for hundreds of years more? In the BoM Nephi prophesied of the coming of the gentiles to their land, and the destruction of many of the people. I just visited a Mayan city, and when walking around the ruins I felt that evil things were done there, it just felt.. I don't know how to explain it, but it felt think with evil. **[After the Nephites were destroyed those who remained fought amongst themselves. Some more depraved than others. PR]**

“Mormon takes his family and those who will follow and leaves the land, taking the journey to the land of Antum, near the Hill Shim.”

There are multiple times small groups of Nephites or righteous Lamanites branch off. Is this part of the reason why, among Native Americans, there were some peaceful, spiritual tribes with different living styles and traditions than other tribes? **[That may be. PR]**

Prophecy of the Indian Nations – Mormon 5:1-24

1 And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath **[Mormon had promised the Nephites, not God.]** which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions. **[Mormon loved the people despite their iniquities. Part of his compassion was the terrible suffering upon the women and children.]**

2 But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them. **[When is there no hope for a miracle? When the majority of the people are ripe in iniquity. What does the Lord do when this occurs? He creates a situation whereby the people can be divided so that he can lead a righteous remnant away to safety, if they exist.]**

3 And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

4 And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did maintain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained by the Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of our land.

5 But it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and

villages, and cities were burned with fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.

6 And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

7 And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.

Mormon is moving westward toward the Land of Antum, gathering people as they abandon their cities.

8 And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be revealed upon the house-tops—

9 And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment [**this writing**], daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

10 And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

11 For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

12 Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob [**Native American descendants**]; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time. [**The day of bringing forth to the Remnant of Jacob in its fullness has not yet occurred.**]

When the records are brought forth in the last days it will be during the times of great sorrow and destruction upon America. The army of Native American people led by the Joseph Servant will be passing through the Land of Antum when they will be met by First Zion. The translated record will be presented to him and these people will be converted in a single day. From here, they will go to build the New Jerusalem.

13 And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

14 And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

Part of the importance of receiving the entire Book of Mormon is that its power of convincing will be miraculous.

15 And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry. **[This prophecy has been fulfilled and is coming full circle. The Joseph Servant will play a powerful role in their revival.]**

16 For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

17 They were once a delightsome people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.

18 But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

19 And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land. **[The future colonization of the Americas.]**

20 But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel. **[These people have been truly “driven and scattered.” Their time is coming.]**

21 And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them. **[Whose prayers are these? Both past and current generations of anointed men and women, who pray for these people to awake and arise.]**

22 And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?

23 Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll? **[Referring to the end of the world as we know it.]**

24 Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver. **[A prophecy concerning the future role that these Native American people will play in the cleansing of America.]**

Questions and Answers

Vs 11: “they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.”

The Nephite & Lamanite people who are being killed in these wars in Mormon’s day are the children of men (no covenant) or House of Israel (covenant; some at various levels) or a mix of both? **[House of Israel. PR]**

12 Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob [Native American descendants]; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time. [The day of bringing forth to the Remnant of Jacob in its fullness has not yet occurred.]

When the records are brought forth in the last days it will be during the times of great sorrow and destruction upon America. The army of Native American people led by the Joseph Servant will be passing through the Land of Antum when they will be met by First Zion. The translated record will be presented to him and these people will be converted in a single day. From here, they will go to build the New Jerusalem.

Could you please clarify the concept of First Zion, or direct me to the appropriate book or blog post where this is explained more fully? **[There is a chapter in the book “A Witness of the End of Times” titled “First Zion.” PR]**

The Abraham covenant is a subset of the everlasting covenant then? It basically promises Abraham that his seed will have access to full redemption through Christ... through the Gentiles, correct?

So if correct, the Abraham covenant is the promise that seed will have the opportunity to receive the Everlasting Covenant... correct? **[I’m not sure what you mean “through the Gentiles.” The Lord made a covenant with Abraham that through his seed would come the blessings of the Everlasting Covenant. After Christ came the covenant was extended to the Gentiles. Abraham’s seed was chosen to house the bodies of the first estate that had already made the Everlasting Covenant before birth, which would provide the opportunity to receive a fullness in this life. PR]**

The End of the Nephites – Mormon 6:1-22

1 And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites. **[They traveled as a group westward, away from the Lamanite armies.]**

2 And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

The word “cummorah” means to “seal up.” There is an area in the Land Antum which contains many caves and hidden chambers where various records are deposited. The records in this region include both Adamite, Jaredite, and various Nephite records. This is the area where Ammaron sealed up all the Nephite records in the Hill Shim. This land Antum was anciently the Adamite land of Methuselah, the grandfather of Noah.

3 And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

4 And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites. **[Even today the land has many natural springs and water.]**

5 And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah. **[Age 74]**

6 And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah **[There is more than one Hill Cummorah]** all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

There was an entrance into the Hill Shim, set against a large mountain. The entrance was collapsed and filled, never to be accessible again from that point.

7 And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them. **[This took place at the foot of the Hill Shim in a large valley.]**

8 And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

9 And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

10 And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

11 And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in the front by me. **[From this vantage point you can see the entire valley. I have stood upon the hill and seen what is left of ancient roads. In the last days this place shall be the calling point of First Zion.]**

12 And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni.

13 And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

14 And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

15 And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were

with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

16 And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:

17 O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!

18 Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

19 O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!

20 But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.

By this time most of Mormon's family, his children and grandchildren had been murdered by the Lamanite assassins. Only a few remained, which included Moroni.

21 And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now moldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, to be judged according to your works; and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.

22 O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

Such a sobering scene of death and destruction Mormon describes. This is the story of his people, brought together by his abridgment according to the commandment of the Lord. He would later appear to Joseph Smith before the translation of the record began.

Questions and Answers:

Note from vs 11: "I have stood upon the hill and seen what is left of ancient roads."

Did you drive to this area to stand on this hill in real life or were you there, standing on the hill and being shown the place in spirit? **[I have stood there in my physical body. PR]**

(You live a really neat life if someone has to ask you that type of clarifying question! 😊)

There is a certain sense of poetry involved in all of this. When you stop to consider the prophecies of Nephi and Moroni concerning their words crying from the dust. And then think about what you have said here about the finality of destruction of the Nephites and where it took place. And then to see what you have said here about being the calling point for First Zion.... Well, there is something beautiful in all of that. Another one of those super cool things that the Lord orchestrates and choreographs for us to behold.

Are there other locations/Cumorahs besides the Hill Shim where God has hidden sacred records? **[Yes, the locations span at least a hundred miles. PR]**

When did Mormon come to visit Joseph Smith? **[When he was first given the commandment regarding the plates, but that is all I can say. PR]**

When you say this will be the calling point of 1st Zion, Is that to say that those in 1st Zion (or invited therein) are to go there and live? **[It means that this will be the first place where the Gatherers will be anointed of the Lord. PR]**

When you refer to the “last days”: At what point in the near future will the last days begin?
Will the last days begin during the tribulation time period, or after? **[The “last days” have come in phases, beginning with the coming forth of the Book of Mormon and culminating in the great judgments that will be poured out as the House of Israel is gathered and Zion is established. We are about to enter the final phase of the last days. PR]**

From a previous comment: “It means that this will be the first place where the Gatherers will be anointed of the Lord.”

How will the Gatherers have arrived at that location?

Will they be there in the flesh, having been physically led there?

Will the Gatherers be living together as a group or in groups to support each other?

[Yes to all questions. PR]

Was it Nephi or Moroni who appeared to the boy Joseph in vision in his bedroom that evening in September 1823? **[It was Nephi. There is a long story there, but I don’t have permission to go there. PR]**

Last Words of Mormon – Mormon 7:1-10

Now that there is nothing more Mormon can do for his people, he shifts the attention of his writing to whom the book was made:

1 And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared **[The descendants of these people, both Lamanites and Nephites.]**, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak: **[The four things they must do in the last days to receive the promised blessings.]**

2 Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel. **[Know your heritage.]**

3 Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved. **[Come unto Christ.]**

4 Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

[End the war in which you are now engaged.]

5 Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up. **[Mormon now instructs them to receive the full doctrine of Christ...]**

6 And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

7 And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

8 Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you. **[Embrace the Gospel as it is given in the Book of Mormon and the Bible.]**

9 For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

10 And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye believe in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment. Amen. **[You shall have eternal life.]**

About Mormon: he was a large and muscular man, with dark, almost black hair, which was white by his old age. His son Moroni was similar looking, but hair was more light brown. These men were broad in their physical features, resembling strong Polynesian men, thick in the arms and legs. Those who believe in the truthfulness of this record are usually referred to as “Mormons.” This is not something that is approved of the Lord or of the prophet Mormon. We are disciples of Christ, or the Church of Christ, as classified by the Lord.

Moroni Sees Our Day – Mormon 8:1-41

1 Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father. **[This consists of only the two chapters at the end of Mormon’s record. The Book of Moroni is like an addendum.]**

2 And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

3 And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.

4 Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not. **[He did not hide them in the Hill Shim in the Land of Cummorah because the Spirit led him elsewhere to do this.]**

5 Behold, my father hath made this record **[the full abridgment on gold plates]**, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk **[family]**, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not. **[Moroni witnessed the entire massacre of his wife and all but two of his children who were away from the family homestead. The rest of his family perished at the final battle near the Hill Shim.]**

6 Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior. **[The fulfillment of prophecy, Helaman 13:5]**

7 And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites. **[“Marvelous” describes events which seem impossible until they occur.]**

8 And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.

9 And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land. **[This was the source of ongoing wars after the Nephites were destroyed.]**

10 And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth. **[Two of the three disciples continue to watch over the Hill Shim to this day, to protect the records and other items which will bring to pass the Lord’s marvelous work and a wonder in the last days, which will soon be upon us. They are heavily involved with the preparations that will lead to the gathering of the Remnant of Jacob. The third disciple is of Lamanite heritage and works directly with those descendants in ways I am not aware.]**

11 But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us. **[They minister to all who are involved in the gathering of the House of Israel. Often without revealing their identity.]**

12 And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you. **[What great things would Moroni be referring to? The Book of Mormon contains a small sampling of the great works and mysteries of the Lord. How many**

read this book and do not take it literally? How many scoff at the miracles, or use their scholarly understanding to explain things they do not understand? How many reject the book because they find fault in Joseph Smith based on historical writings, or how the book is written? Moroni would reveal all that he knew if the Lord allowed it. What did he know? If Moroni had been allowed to reveal everything the Lord showed him about our day the Book of Mormon would be the single most admired prophetic writing ever created, because he saw all the events leading up to the coming of Christ.]

13 Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.

14 And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord [**Moroni is the one which will deposit the plates and relics in the stone box at the “Hill Cummorah” in Palmyra.**]; the plates thereof are of no worth [**monetary**], because of the commandment [**revelation**] of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless. [**Joseph Smith and all who assist others in gaining light from it.**]

15 For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory [**to do the will of the Lord**], or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord. [**to gather Israel**]

16 And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God. [**Bringing this record forth unto the convincing of the Remnant of Jacob and Jews will only occur by the power of God. Not only the translation and publishing, but the very act of conversion, which has not yet occurred.**]

17 And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire. [**The Lord revealed to Moroni that even though he saw no fault in the record that in the last days they would find fault in the translation.**]

18 And he that saith: Show unto me [**Prove it!**], or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth [**revealeth**] that which is forbidden of the Lord.

There are many things which will not be revealed in the last days to those who judge rashly and persecute the believers. They will not see the miracles, or receive evidence without faith.

19 For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

20 Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

21 And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

These last four verses are referring to the state of affairs leading up to the establishment of Zion, as those who seek Christ will be persecuted throughout the world for what they believe.

22 For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

23 Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. **[Moroni has not the room to include the remainder of them, or to expound upon what is included in the record.]** Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints **[entered into the rest of the Lord after fulfilling their missions, the 4th estate]** who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust **[from the Spirit World]** will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

24 And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word. **[the sealing power of His servants]**

25 And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him **[the Joseph Servant]** that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

26 And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead. **[a dual prophecy]**

Upon first reading this we think of the prophet Joseph Smith, who was given the calling to translate the unsealed portion of the Book of Mormon. But this particular prophecy is referring to the end of times, as the fullness of the power of the record, including the sealed portion, is revealed.

27 And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness. **[Many of the righteous shall perish and the innocent shall cry out to the Lord because of the abuse and persecution which shall be inflicted. This shall be far beyond the sufferings of the early saints.]**

28 Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches. **[Leaders of Christian churches in the land will be rich, and build opulent places of worship, and deny the gifts**

of the Spirit, and suppress the poor among them, both temporally and spiritually.]

29 Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands; **[The record will come forth at a time when most of the world will be in commotion, yet this area of Zion will be free of much of it relatively speaking.]**

30 And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers **[various]** places.

31 Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth **[This is definitely not in Joseph Smith's time. The pollutions, both spiritually, and physically in our day are unimaginable.];** there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such, for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity. **[This is a modern day phenomenon, where black is white and white is black. We are living in the quiet before the storm.]**

32 Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins. **[This has occurred for hundreds of years, yet the rich who lead the followers of Christ are lifted up in this land like no other time.]**

33 O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured **[changed into something different]** the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled. **[the prophecies concerning the end of times]**

34 Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you. **[Why did Moroni say "shortly come?" We've been hearing about the end of times destruction for a very long time! Moroni wrote his words knowing who would read it. He knew the time frames. Consider the prophecies of Samuel the Lamanite, given only a few years before Christ's coming. He gave them signs to look for, and Moroni is doing the same.]**

35 Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing. **[Powerful language to emphasize to you that now is the day to awake and arise!]**

36 And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one **[excluding none, all of them, no exceptions]**, have become polluted **[without God's approval]** because of the pride of your hearts.

37 For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted. **[This is a hard rebuke from the final prophet of the Book of Mormon. Do you believe him?]**

38 O ye pollutions [**a name for a kind of person that is not clean**], ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell [**dedicate**] yourselves for that which will canker [**rot and destroy**], why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? [**to seek the baptism of fire and Holy Ghost**] Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world?

The praise of the world is the single biggest influence in today’s society. Nobody wants to be labeled, or ostracized for an unpopular position.

39 Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not? [**These are called “dead works.” Doing activities in the name of Christ that do not focus one’s efforts upon helping those who are afflicted around us, both spiritually and physically, in favor of performances and busy-work of no value.**]

40 Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads? [**Secret abominations regarding widows and orphans? This is a reference to unholy wars and slavery caused by designing men in the last days. Their insidious tentacles stretch into every corner of our society, including academia, corporations, government, and even religious institutions.**]

41 Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.

Questions and Answers

Vs 28: “...leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches”

Does this mean leaders will be envious of members who have spiritual gifts and/or have seen Christ so they excommunicate or cast out these righteous from among them? Lest their priestcraft be discovered and destroyed by the righteous sharing truth? [**Yes. It is a struggle to maintain control amongst all churches. PR**]

Vs 37: “For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.”

I once asked the Lord about the “adorning of your churches” – what does that mean? And how was it taking money from the sick and afflicted?

Through my mind flashed a multitude of Christmas decorations, disposable tableware and other decorative items that had been used to decorate for a church party my family had attended at our church building. Almost all of it had been purchased using money the church had collected as tithing, but instead of that tithing money being used to help the poor and afflicted, it was spent on cheap, disposable decor that was used for the adorning of the church for a party. I remember feeling my heart drop. I was guilty of

ordering such decorations for some of these types of parties and accepting reimbursement checks that came from the church's tithing funds. I was guilty. This scripture was about me.

Vs 39: "...yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?"

I know you have said before that the Lord will direct us through revelation of who to help but I'm having trouble hearing directions. Do I need to take a more obvious first step, like perhaps showing the Lord the money I have that I intend to use as He sees fit and then wait to be directed? **[This is a personal decision that should be guided by revelation. PR]**

I've had this scripture in my mind lately, and have tried to notice the less fortunate persons or areas I pass by. I have no idea how to truly help. I really will need the Lord to guide this one.

Do I just need to take a more obvious first step in private with the Lord with the expectation that He will guide me?

"Many of the righteous shall perish and innocent shall cry out to the Lord because of the abuse and persecution which shall be inflicted. This shall be far beyond the sufferings of the early saints."

Early Saints, meaning the early Lds Saints or the early Christians? **[Early Mormons during Joseph's time. PR]**

Also, how will theirs/our sufferings be worst than the early Saints? **[Yes. PR]**

I accept the Book of Mormon. I believe it and add my testimony to others who rejoice in its witness and truth.

Good catch, S Silver. I always wondered what that passage meant. This ties in nicely to Hel. 13:14.

Can I ask you a personal question about how you have taught your children, (when they were younger and now) to prepare for the treacherous times ahead? How much of your journey do they know about or understand/believe and what practical advice do you give them after the main teaching of 'come unto Christ and rely on him to guide you' if any about preparing. **[We teach them to trust in the Lord. We speak about the Doctrine of Christ and that is all. When they ask questions we answer. We pray regularly for help for them and the Lord answers. In all things we trust in Him. PR]**

I wish this translation could continue on for much longer i have enjoyed it and learned so much, I am waiting with excitement for your wife to share her records! Thank you so much for everything!

Do the same two disciples (of the Three Nephites) watch over the other records elsewhere besides the Hill Shim? **[I don't know. PR]**

What does curse mean. Is it merely God withholding blessings due to our choices? Is it what the devil promises to us almost like an "anti-blessing" of sorts? **[To "curse" is to**

shut up the heavens and separate us from God. At that juncture, Satan has the ability to afflict them. PR]

I understand that we always have the opportunity to repent and come unto Him and the Lord is perfectly merciful and just, and as intelligence we have the natural power of agency within us. All blessings are predicated upon our obedience to his word.

vs 40

secret abomination= human trafficking? **[Yes. PR]**

Ask the Father – Mormon 9:1-37

1 And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.

2 Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?

The world is inhabited by a vast number of people who will never hear the Gospel. Many say while in the flesh, “There is no God.” The fact is that far more goes on behind the scenes in the world of spirits than you know. It is during mortality that we can consummate the decision to choose Christ. Every soul that has made the Everlasting Covenant, and every soul that makes that covenant during this life will find the Lord. It is by choice. Those who choose not to make the covenant are to remain in the state they are, unless they rebel against God and choose the darkness. Most choose to stay as they are forever. They may not know the Lord in the flesh, because they chose that path, but in their purest spirit form, they all know exactly who He is.

3 Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?

4 Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell. **[We go where we choose to go. You would not even desire to be with God, for you would know you are unclean.]**

5 For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God **[you can hide nothing]**, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you. **[Such is the state of standing in the presence of God.]**

6 O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day. **[A simple recipe for receiving the baptism of fire and repentance.]**

7 And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues; **[most all people in a secular society]**

8 Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

9 For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variableness neither shadow of changing? **[Moroni's appeal to us to consider that God does not change.]**

10 And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles. **[Think of the many established laws and commandments that have been altered by many Christians to adapt to societal trends. Has the simplicity of the Gospel been replaced by a list of acts and deeds which are promised to bring the favor of God? And still, where is the fruit?]**

11 But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

12 Behold, he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

13 And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep **[spiritual darkness]**, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

These previous three verses are Moroni's short synopsis of the Everlasting Covenant according to the 2nd Estate. Moroni says they shall be "awakened" by the Lord and loosed from this temporal death. What is that? It is the quickening of the spirit according to the resurrection of light, the gift of the Holy Ghost which brings us into the presence of the Lord on High.

14 And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still. **[This is referring to the final judgment when all will be divided and sent to their place of glory.]**

15 And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

16 Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God? **[We can't begin to comprehend**

the power of God as we look around us. Not even our greatest scientific minds can begin to understand the fullness of His glory in nature.]

17 Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought? **[A miracle is simply a mystery that is not understood, yet we see the result and marvel at how it came to be.]**

18 And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

19 And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

20 And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

Why is Moroni taking the time to write this? Because he has seen our day and knows the minds of our people. Are we not surrounded by unbelievers, even amongst those we call saints? Where are the miracles on the level that Christ performed, His Apostles of old, the prophets of the Book of Mormon? How many of you have witnessed someone raised from the dead, healed on the spot, speaking in tongues, prophecy, the administering of angels, and beholding the light of heaven upon them? These are fruits of living the Gospel. Have you ever heard your ecclesiastical leaders tell you to avoid these things?

21 Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

That is an amazing promise! I have seen it come to pass in my life. It doesn't mean you get it when you want it, or the way you want it. But, every righteous request is granted. We need to be humble enough to seek the Lord's will in all things. If you don't ask Him, you may lose an opportunity to receive something wonderful.

22 For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

23 And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned **[cannot move forward];**

24 And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

25 And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth. **[These powers can be confirmed**

upon both the 3rd and 4th estate disciples of Christ. All according to their faith.]

26 And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish. **[You cannot stay the hand of God.]**

27 O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. **[Ask, ask, ask.]** Doubt not, but be believing **[simply begin by believing and move forward]**, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him. **[Fear and trembling is to infer great anxiety and seriousness, with full purpose of heart.]**

28 Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness **[Change your lifestyle to that which is in harmony with the Lord's commandments.];** ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts **[as a sign of His power]**, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God. **[Real intent is crucial in seeking the Lord. It is to seek Him out of love and desire to develop a relationship.]**

29 See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out. **[To be unworthy is to be unrepentant. We are all sinners, every one of us. But, if your heart is not given fully to the Lord, your sacrifice is in vain. Come to Him with full purpose of heart (broken heart and contrite spirit) and you will be worthy, and then you will be made clean as you follow the Doctrine of Christ as taught in this record.]**

30 Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.

31 Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been. **[Learn from us, and do not judge harshly.]**

32 And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech. **[This manner of writing stayed intact since the time of Nephi, with the inclusion of many new characters that were created for their language.]**

33 And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

What Moroni means by imperfections is that some of the characters used had multiple translations, so it was difficult to create the exact meaning at times. Joseph Smith required the gift of Translation to discern the right English word to make the meaning clear. Even then, at times it requires us to receive further revelation to find the most clear meaning.

34 But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof. **[The Urim and Thummim.]**

35 And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren **[have done all that we can in our stewardship]** who have dwindled in unbelief.

36 And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

37 And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen. **[This is the official ending of the Book of Nephi. The following Book of Ether and Book of Moroni are addendums added by Moroni.]**

Questions and Answers

Note from vs 33: “What Moroni means by imperfections is that some of the characters used had multiple translations, so it was difficult to create the exact meaning at times. “ Are there artifacts that exist today that have reformed Egyptian writing on them? **[I have seen some. They look much like the writings Joseph copied in the Charles Anthon Characters. PR]**

(I’ve seen pictures of some Hopewell mound area artifacts and wondered if it was their language.)

“Every soul that has made the Everlasting Covenant, and every soul that makes that covenant during this life will find the Lord. It is by choice.”

Do the new first estate spirits make or accept the everlasting covenant before birth? If they do then how is it that so many remain in their 2nd estate? **[Yes, they do. But, they learn by their experience to know the good from the evil. In this is a mystery. PR]**

25 And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth. [These powers can be confirmed upon both the 3rd and 4th estate disciples of Christ. All according to their faith.]

I wonder PR, what the difference is between 3rd and 4th estate disciples when you are referring to them here? Are the 3rd Estate those who have already live here or on another world and are waiting on their next probation but coming to learn and use these powers? Are the 4th those who are here now and are fulfilling previous covenants and bringing these powers into this existence, or perhaps discovering them and learning about them here? **[3rd estate are those who have received the gift of the Holy Ghost. 4th estate are those anointed to save the House of Israel before the foundation of this world. They are the Gatherers, the 144k as they are called in the book of Revelation.]**

This feels like quantum physics to me and my brain struggles with understanding, but somehow my gut knows. Can you tell me if my hope is correct that the future me already

exists with the reality that the promises I have received God knows perfectly with his certainty, and somehow by faith or priesthood power, these spiritual gift are then made manifest? Thanks! **[People make covenants to the Lord before this life and those covenants are consummated here, or begin here depending on the individual. When we repent, are baptized, and receive the Holy, we receive all that we need to continue the path toward a fullness of the blessings. It's not too complicated unless you make it. The best advice I can give is to give the Lord your full heart, seek personal revelation, and be believing. PR]**

“These previous three verses are Moroni’s short synopsis of the Everlasting Covenant according to the 2nd Estate. ”

I thought the EC was more than redemption from death. In these 3 verses, Moroni talks about the fall and available redemption from death, which is only a part of the Everlasting Covenant. Per Moses 5:10-11 isn't it also to be brought back into the Lord's presence 'while yet in the flesh'...? **[“In the flesh I shall see God” is a reference to the resurrection of the body. The Everlasting Covenant in this mortality is to receive the quickening of the Spirit and inherit Eternal Life. This is the fullness available for the 2nd Estate. Some are blessed to see the Lord while in the flesh, but that is not a requirement of the EC for us to progress. A 4th Estate will have a different set of events in their life to help them perform their missions. PR]**

Am I missing it?

PR said: “The Everlasting Covenant in this mortality is to receive the quickening of the Spirit and inherit Eternal Life. This is the fullness available for the 2nd Estate. Some are blessed to see the Lord while in the flesh, but that is not a requirement of the EC for us to progress.”

I thought that receiving the Second Comforter is one of the greatest gifts we should strive for in this life (after receiving the Gift of the Holy Ghost of course!). Are you saying that not every 2nd estate being whose heart yearns to see the Lord will actually see Him? Doesn't even the temple prepare us to “converse with the Lord through the veil” and to embrace Him and touch His wounds? To me “through the veil” implies in this mortal existence in the flesh (with either the body being the veil or us passing through the veil to enter mortality). What about D&C 93:1 “shall see my face and know that I am”? **[The purpose of that statement is to emphasize that the Second Comforter is not a requirement for Eternal Life for a second estate, it is not the measure of one's worthiness to enter the Kingdom. The path of progression requires all men and women to know the Lord intimately, to walk and talk with Him; but for many this continues beyond the grave. All those who exercise the necessary faith will have the experience, but it is not necessary for a second estate being to move forward. PR]**

Ether

After the Tower of Babel – Ether 1:1-43

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

2 And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether. **[These plates had already been in their possession for almost 550 years.]**

3 And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews— **[Similar to the Joseph Smith Translation of Genesis, which today is called the Book of Moses. The Book of Moses only goes as far as Noah.]**

4 Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account. **[These plates are also laying in the Hill Shim even today.]**

5 But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give, from the tower down until they were destroyed.

6 And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor. **[Ether did an abridgment very similar to what Mormon did. The language was capable of containing far more content in the glyphs than the Nephite writings.]**

7 Coriantor was the son of Moron.

8 And Moron was the son of Ethem.

9 And Ethem was the son of Ahah.

10 And Ahah was the son of Seth.

11 And Seth was the son of Shiblon.

12 And Shiblon was the son of Com.

13 And Com was the son of Coriantum.

14 And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.

15 And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron. **[An ancient name that survived even until the time of Moses.]**

16 And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the son of Hearthom.

17 And Hearthom was the son of Lib.

18 And Lib was the son of Kish.

19 And Kish was the son of Corom.

20 And Corom was the son of Levi.

21 And Levi was the son of Kim.

22 And Kim was the son of Morianton.

23 And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.

24 And Riplakish was the son of Shez.

25 And Shez was the son of Heth.

26 And Heth was the son of Com.

27 And Com was the son of Coriantum.

28 And Coriantum was the son of Emer.

29 And Emer was the son of Omer.
30 And Omer was the son of Shule.
31 And Shule was the son of Kib.
32 And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;
33 Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered.

I saw a large pyramid structure, perhaps the same size as the Giza Pyramid, except it had a large obelisk on the top. It was huge and made of stone. The top had a circular, zig zag staircase around the obelisk that led to the top. I'm afraid of heights, so it made me uneasy just looking at it. I saw a few men making their way to the top. I saw men, great in size, giants by our standards, building this incredible structure. I was told that the city of Salem had already ascended to heaven. These men of all races had come together to build their own city and to reach heaven on their own. They believed that this structure would accomplish the same thing. I saw them using unknown technology to cut the stones and lay them. Huge stones, far too large to move with today's technology.

I then saw fire from heaven come down and hit the upper part of the tower. There was a rumble and part of the foundation of the pyramid sank into the earth. The people stood back afar from the structure and watched as within a short time the building came down on itself. It reminded me of the collapse of the World Trade Center at 9/11. When the dust cleared, there was little more than a hill of earth left. I asked about the confusion of the languages and was shown that this was not exactly as we understand it. The Tower of Babel was built by several races of men that came together to outdo God. Each had their own culture and language variations before this began, but had a common purpose and worked together to defeat God. After the tower fell, they gravitated back to their own groups. The people that would be called the Jaredites were anxious to keep themselves separate from these other cultures that did not know God. These were the remnant of the Seed of Adam. The few left after the ascension of the City of Salem. Their DNA was unpolluted. They were large people, in height ranging from 7-9 feet tall. They had predominantly reddish hair, (Edit) and looked different than we do today.

The Brother of Jared was willing to seek the Lord and like today most of the people preferred that others speak with God. Perhaps this is why they were not worthy to ascend with the City of Salem. (personal journal)

I asked why the brother of Jared did not use his name in the holy record and was told it was a similar reason as to why I didn't sign my name with the book, "How to Have Your Second Comforter." He didn't want to focus upon himself. His brother's name was Kio-hani-jarod. He was the leader of the people. Moriancamur was the Brother of Jared's name, as Joseph has revealed. He looked like the above description, but had a soft face. He had a medium length beard and hair. The Lord said Moriancamur was an artist and a sculptor. The Lord smiled as He said this as if He was pleased with those who create beautiful things. (He did detailed carvings, and tapestry art when he lived among the Jaredites.)

34 And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared, his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words. **[A prayer that their people would remain intact and not be confounded by intermingling.]**

35 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.

36 Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.

37 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.

[They were able to gather together those who would become the Jaredites.]

38 And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance. **[This was put into Jared's mind by the Spirit and he was impressed to have his younger brother take it to the Lord.]**

39 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.

40 And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him: **[by revelation]**

41 Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy families; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

42 And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth. **[It was important that these people separate themselves from the other people or they would have eventually been assimilated or destroyed. Abraham was a descendent of the line of Adam, but his blood was not as pure as the Jaredites. This is why the sign of**

circumcision was required of the Lord to initiate the covenant to his posterity.]

43 And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. **[A great nation of pure Adamic blood.]** And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

The Jaredites were the remnant of those who had not been taken to heaven in the City of Salem. They had not the kind of faith necessary and had long before separated themselves from those people. They had little knowledge of God other than He was powerful. The Brother of Jared had simple faith, enough to hear the voice of the Lord.

Questions and Answers

“The Jaredites were the remnant of those who had not been taken to heaven in the City of Salem.”

Did they feel as if they had been left behind? **[Yes, but their predecessors had purposefully separated themselves. PR]**

Why did the races of the earth believe building this pyramid structure with the obelisk on top would accomplish the same thing as Salem being taken up?

Was this a technology they were trying to copy?

What was it they were trying to mimic or copy? **[Yes. The Temple of Enoch was pyramidal in structure. It created both a physical and spiritual effect upon the land. This is why there are so many ancient pyramids in the world, all trying to mimic the true temples of God. The only visible authentic pyramid today is in Giza. It was created before the flood and never reached its full purpose. In the many planets throughout the cosmos this is the most common of sacred structures. The People of Babel, led by Sons of Perdition, mocked God and attempted to create what they decided was the greatest of pyramid temples. PR]**

WOWZERS!! Is there a pattern the Lord reveals with certain names? I see things like Mountains, Nations, Valleys, Lands with repetitive names like Moriah, Moriamcumr, Moroni, Mormon...I know relates to “More Good” however I feel there’s a deeper meaning.....I truly love and appreciate your time spent sharing with us your personal revelation. I feel that I need to hear your wife in her wisdom soon!

What is the physical effect the Temple of Enoch created on the land? **[It prepares it to be lifted up. When the City of Enoch was lifted it was enormous, like the size of Texas. From a distance it looked like a large tooth coming up. The interesting thing is that there was little falling off, and the land fell in around the hole. PR]**

When you say he had ‘simple faith’ would the description of that be very believing, no doubts but without knowledge or experience? I have been wondering about this as I see it in many people and used to think this myself. ‘I have a simple strong faith and that’s that’ – if you are ignorant or without experience with little to no desire to increase your relationship with the Lord but you have a simple believing faith all your life is that enough for some people? Was it enough for Jared? Or will we be held accountable for not becoming more, why was Jared prompted to ask his brother to pray, just because he had no desire to form his own relationship with God? Are the consequences just that he didn’t desire it and therefore missed out on a personal relationship?

I probably haven’t been very clear. Sorry, lol. I am wondering what will become of all my loved ones who have simple faith and no desire for relationship. I know lack of desire is a fruit of a hard heart but if simple faith is enough then **[The Brother of Jared followed a similar pattern to many of us. He learned to pray and receive revelation, step by step, until he could have a literal conversation with the Lord. But, because he lacked knowledge he didn’t know where to go. The Lord helped him to exercise faith until he was able to part the veil. Many good people believe in Christ and repent, but are subject to false traditions that limit the degree of light they can receive in this world. The Book of Mormon does more than any other book to address this. If someone is repenting in this life they will not be denied the salvation of the Lord. Many of those who are weak in faith yet repenting receive Him upon their death. PR]**

Vs 43: “And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.”

How long did Jared have to pray to receive this answer?

What does the Lord consider a long time? **[I don’t know for how long the Brother of Jared prayed for his people before the promise was given. It was long enough that the Lord responded to his faith by granting the blessing. I know that for most of my life I searched to know the Lord, and it wasn’t until I began to cry in behalf of my Brothers that I saw the heavens begin to open in excess, and shortly thereafter everything I was searching for came to pass. I don’t know the length of the BofJ praying, but it seems to be a lengthy process of perseverance. PR]**

“From a distance it looked like a large tooth coming up.”

Did the city of Enoch raise like this gradually or fairly rapidly all in one day? **[I do not know. I saw it suspended in the air from a distance and was filled with wonder. PR]**

Will the temple to be built in the last days also be pyramidal? **[Yes. It will have a pyramidal shape. PR]**

Were there any races of men/different races, on the American continent at this time? You have said in previous chapters that the Nephites mixed with a race of men that were already present. **[No, not at that time. PR]**

“Great and mighty man, ”
“and a man highly favored of the Lord,”

What can be the meaning of these words ? Thanks [**The Brother of Jared was highly revered amongst his people for his humility, skills as an artist, and strength of character. He was greatly blessed both temporally and spiritually. But, his spiritual blessings were his greatest. PR**]

This must have been several generations after the flood. Were the Jaredites from the line of Shem? Also with the groups of people, did these come from Noah’s line or were there other groups that survived the flood outside of Noah? How did they know about the city of Enoch if it’s been several generations later? [**Yes, the Jaredites came though the line of Shem. These people had pure Adamic blood, but other races did not. I wrote about how this came to be in the book A Witness of the Temporal Dispensations. PR**]

“I know that for most of my life I searched to know the Lord, and it wasn’t until I began to cry in behalf of my Brothers that I saw the heavens begin to open in excess, and shortly thereafter everything I was searching for came to pass”.

I wasn’t aware of this with regards to your personal story. When you say “Brothers” do you mean your close friends? And why do you say that it is in your view? That the Heavens began to open in excess when you began praying for other people? Is that one of the keys to having more access to the gifts of the Spirit? [**It was a part of my experience. Each person is different, but I would say that there is something in approaching God for the purpose of being a servant to others that shakes the heavens. My brothers (friends) were all seeking the Lord equally together. PR**]

“My brothers (friends) were all seeking the Lord equally together.”

Are these brothers/friends the same “Brothers up North” mentioned on page 14 of Witness of the End Times? [**Not specifically. PR**]

[This was put into the Jared’s mind by the Spirit and he was impressed to have his younger brother take it to the Lord.]

I had always presumed that the Brother of Jared was the eldest. But just yesterday I have read something that makes me want to ask if you have been made aware how the role of Priest and King are most often assigned respectively where a younger son is chosen the spiritual leader (priest) and older son is destined to be the leader (king) of the family?

- Cain & Able
- Esau & Jacob
- Judah & Joseph
- Manasseh & Ephriam
- Laman & Nephi then Nephi as King & Jacob as the their Priest
- Hyram & Joseph (Patriarch and Prophet)

Christ embodied both roles as Priest and King. And some others like Adam, Noah, Melchizedek, Abraham, & Issac. So my question is do you know any of the story about the Brother of Jared being chosen as the spiritual leader by his mother as the Matriarch?

There seems to be a hint for this when Rebekah helped Jacob receive the blessing from Issac, and I wondered if you may be able to flesh this out more? **[There is a pattern to that as you have written above. The King and priest are related by blood and either die or are translated. The witness is often overlooked. I don't know anything about the Brother of Jared's parents. PR]**

“Were there any races of men/different races, on the American continent at this time? You have said in previous chapters that the Nephites mixed with a race of men that were already present. **[No, not at that time. PR]**”

The nephites mixed with another race of men? **[There were some Nephites in the Pacific Northwest that mixed with another race of men later in the BofM history. This was something that Alma discovered when he went to preach to them after leaving the Nephites in his later years. PR]**

[There were some Nephites in the Pacific Northwest that mixed with another race of men later in the BofM history. This was something that Alma discovered when he went to preach to them after leaving the Nephites in his later years. PR]

Was this group of people different from the mulekites? **[Yes. PR]**

In what way are the Kings, Kings or kingly? What makes the King a King. Is it assigned? And if so, by whom? The Father, or the Son, or by the people. There's got to be more mystery in this than what common understanding of earthly kings gives us. Probably a pale comparison from earthly king to a God given King. And we're just talking king. What about the prophet, priest, and witness of each dispensation? The witness goes unnoticed, but do they live the entirety of a dispensation? Are they translated beings made able to do all the witnessing? There is so much mystery in all of this. It's exciting to think about, but frustrating to try to figure out. And I've asked! **[The word “King” in its spiritual sense has profound meaning. It is to overcome all things like the Savior did. You might say the 4th estate are the little kings or the princes and princesses, or the priests and priestesses. Once a person reaches a fullness of exaltation they are a King or Queen, a Father and Mother in Eternity. But, it doesn't end there. PR]**

From Myrsmakeup: “WOWZERS!! Is there a pattern the Lord reveals with certain names? I see things like Mountains, Nations, Valleys, Lands with a repetitive names like Moriah, Moriamcumr, Moroni, Mormon...I know relates to “More Good” however I feel there's a deeper meaning”

In Hebrew Moriah is a compound word ‘Mo-re-yah’ meaning: shown of the Lord; who is chosen of Yehovah; who is seen of Yah. Yah is the shortened or first part of the sacred name of God, Yehovah, or Jehovah in the KJV. It would be interesting to know the meanings of some of our Book of Mormon names. In the Old and New Testaments, names are very important and each one relates in some way to the particular mission and calling of the individual. To give another example, the name Michael means ‘who is like God’. Mi- means who; kaw- means like; El of course means God. In Hebrew Michael is pronounced with three syllables just like Moriah, which only appears twice in scripture.

Gen 22:2 And he said, Take now thy son, thine only son Isaac, whom thou lovest, and

get thee into the land of Moriah; and offer him there for a burnt offering upon one of the mountains which I will tell thee of.

2Ch 3:1 Then Solomon began to build the house of the LORD at Jerusalem in mount Moriah, where the LORD appeared unto David his father.

Do you know the approx location of the tower of Babel by today's geography? **[It was north of Babylon, but I cannot say exactly. The land looks much different now than it did then. PR]**

Preparing for the Journey – Ether 2:1-25

1 And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

When the one ark survived that contained Nephilim and the Son of Perdition, through his loins the Perdition blood line continued in the earth. They settled the Nile basin and through his loins came great kings and rulers, using the secrets of dark knowledge to gain power and control. Nimrod came through this lineage, as did Gilgamesh. To this day this line of perdition continues in the world. (personal journal)

2 And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters. **[like an aquarium]**

3 And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

4 And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not. **[The “cloud” is the state of receiving revelation, but unable to see the Lord. It is the cloud of our minds according to our faith. All of us must struggle to build faith in the same manner.]**

5 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

6 And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges **[boats]**, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

7 And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was

choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people. **[They were being led to the North Americas.]**

8 And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them. **[It was considered a holy land. A land which had been inhabited by Adam and his posterity from before the flood, which came to destroy the wickedness which overcame the land.]**

9 And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity. **[We have now seen this in the case of the people at the time of Noah, the Jaredites, the Nephites, and soon to be the Americans. In each case a remnant of the righteous are preserved even if it be only a few.]**

10 For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off. **[What defines a “fulness of iniquity?” It is where the people are beyond repentance and Satan has such a strangle hold upon them that the Lord can only remove those who are good in order to cleanse the land.]**

11 And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done. **[These are the words of Ether.]**

12 Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written. **[Since the first colonizers of America, this has been a land of freedom for those who came seeking Jesus Christ, Christians who wish to worship according to their conscience without restraint. Today, it is moving away from that more and more.]**

13 And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. **[Pacific Ocean opposite of the Americas]** And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

14 And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord. **[The Brother of Jared and the people had been distracted, and the brother of Jared failed to call upon the Lord. It almost cost them the blessings and protection the Lord was willing to give them.]**

15 And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye

shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

There are those who believe that the wicked can always easily repent. When people become fully ripe in iniquity the Spirit of the Lord completely withdraws and the chance of there being a reversal becomes very low. Unless they are a son of perdition, they can always come back.

16 And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. **[The same as the barges that brought them to the place called Moriancumer, named after the Brother of Jared.]** And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. **[With a few variations.]** And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

17 And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

There were eight barges, which looked about 30 feet in diameter. They were flat on the top and bottom with a point on each end. They seemed not perfectly round, kind of oval. There was a top and bottom opening in the center that could be twisted and pushed out as often as needed. There seemed to some kind of buoyancy, so that if the boat was tipped over it could go back as before as it rose again. It had no sails, rudder, or ways to steer the ships. (personal journal)

18 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.

19 And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish. **[The BofJ is confused by some of the alterations to the original design.]**

20 And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

21 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded. **[The Lord showed the BofJ in vision how to do these things. Until this point the BofJ has simply asked the questions and received an immediate response.]**

22 And he cried [**with emotion and real intent**] again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?

23 And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire. [**a true dilemma**]

24 For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth. [**The Lord had already decreed a change in the pattern of the ocean that it would make possible the journey.**]

25 And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

These last four verses demonstrate how the Lord communicates with us. There are times when the answers are freely given, and others where we are left wondering what to do. The Brother of Jared had a conversation in his mind with the Lord as he pondered these questions. How could he learn to exercise greater faith without using his own creativity to visualize a remedy? The Spirit of the Lord would guide him to find the solution and in the process, he would learn to have the kind of faith necessary to part the veil and stand face to face with the Lord.

Questions and Answers

The journey and struggle of the BofJ which resulted in his face to face encounter with the Lord, ought to give the rest of us encouragement and hope. Ask, and the Lord giveth LIBERALLY.

We learn from vs 15 that not calling upon the name of the Lord is considered “evil” and a “sin” by the Lord. I interpret this to mean that the BofJ was not praying to the Lord as often as he should have been doing. Doubtless, there were other sins, but they are not the focus of this chapter, which is all about calling upon the name of the Lord. But, why did Jared always ask his brother to pray, and not go to the Lord, himself?

Could you please explain the difference between “calling upon the Lord” and “calling upon the name of the Lord”? I sense that there is a difference, and a mystery to be learned.

I think that the Lord loves it when we reason together with Him, and when we propose innovative solutions to problems, present them to the Lord, and then seek His approval before carrying them out. [**Calling upon the name of the Lord is to exercise the gifts of the Spirit, specifically the gift of prophecy. Jared knew that his brother could receive revelation in their behalf. When we perform any of the gifts of the Spirit we do so in “the name of the Lord. When we “call upon the Lord,” that is personal. PR**]

The story of the barges is fascinating to me! But I have so many questions:
Did the barges stay mostly upright or where they rolled around a bit? **[Mostly upright. PR]**

How did the people handle cooking or eating while in the barges? **[Yes, I will talk about all this more in coming chapters.]**

How did they handle their own waste and the animal waste?

How did the fish they brought survive transport in the vessel/aquariums? How did they aerate the water to provide the bit of oxygen they need?

I have read that bees can starve after a few months, and this journey was longer than that. Were there miracles that helped resolve these issues?

“And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been.”

Where is this quarter/area located? **[I don’t know that for sure. I have my opinion, but don’t want to speculate here. PR]**

Vs 6: “And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges [boats], in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.”

If they have already built barges to cross “many waters”, are they on an island when they build the barges for the final Crossing to the Americas?

What landmass, island or area are they on when they build the windowless barges? **[I have not asked that question to the Lord. It would be somewhere opposite the Northern Pacific of the US. PR]**

“The Lord had already decreed a change in the pattern of the ocean that it would make possible the journey.”

Did the former ocean patterns exist to steer people away from the Americas?

Or to steer people towards other areas where the Lord willed them to go? **[That is possible. I do not know. PR]**

[“ They settled the Nile basin and through his loins came great kings and rulers, using the secrets of dark knowledge to gain power and control“] Are these same secrets of dark knowledge being used today in America to gain power and control? Are they just oaths and secret combinations? Can you elaborate more about this? **[This knowledge has circulated since Cain. It is the dark oaths that are used to expand dominion over the world. It is the same as was used by the Gadiantons and the higher levels of secret combinations today. PR]**

[When the one ark survived that contained Nephilim and the Son of Perdition, through his loins the Perdition blood line continued in the earth.] Was “the Son of Perdition” Cain? **[No, it was a different individual. PR]**

9 And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath

cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity. [We have now seen this in the case of the people at the time of Noah, the Jaredites, the Nephites, and soon to be the Americans. In each case a remnant of the righteous are preserved even if it be only a few.]

It is a sad thing to watch as many people who leave church leave God altogether. There are others from various Christian churches in America who do the same. When you listen to their rhetoric they use so many excuses to justify a life without moral boundaries. Their arguments of self-justification remind one of the anti-Christ in the Book of Mormon, and of the false gods worshiped by Israel anciently in the Old Testament. It's the same old story of deception from the adversary of our souls. What's amazing and humbling is that there are many in oppressed countries where religion and belief in Jesus Christ is prohibited, where Jesus is appearing to people who are seeking after Him and He is coming to them and blessing their lives! In America, where we have so much, so many are turning away in a false sense of self-security!

The Finger of the Lord – Ether 3:1-28

1 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, **[There is a sense of holiness when going to the top of a mountain. In the Brother of Jared's case he was led there by revelation.]** and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

I saw the Brother of Jared molting the stones out of the rock. It was what looked like a kind of quartz crystal, but I don't know. He had an apparatus which looked like mirrors and light that was similar to what was used to cut large stone for building pyramid size structures. On a smaller scale, it cut stones for the Brother of Jared's purposes. He cut, then shaped the stones, about the size of a golf ball, but not as round. (personal journal)

2 O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires. **[The Brother of Jared understood the concept of sin, and the law of prayer and worship. He knew of Adam and Eve and the great flood that destroyed the life upon the earth. He knew the power of God unto deliverance. He knew that God dwelt in the Heavens, but did not comprehend the details, as many of us.]**

3 Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness **[It took many years to travel across the continent of Asia.]**; nevertheless, thou hast been merciful unto

us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock. **[The BofJ had acted in faith, molted the rocks out of the mountain for the purpose of creating light for the barges. Now he will make his case to the Lord as he asks for the blessing.]**

4 And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea. **[In the Brother of Jared's imagination, or creative mind, he has already seen a vision of the Lord touching the stones. This was given to him by the Spirit of the Lord, but the BofJ did not realize it was more than his own creative thinking. The Lord was helping him to prepare for the exercising of greater faith.]**

5 Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men. **[He continues to plead that the Lord grant this blessing. Is this not child-like faith? He did not know how, only that the Lord had the ability to do it.]**

6 And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words **[The Lord waits for us to ask. All the greatest blessings require us to ask Him.]**, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. **[In the Heavenly Realm all things are done with symbolic gestures. The Lord could have spoken the words and changed the stones, but chose to actually touch each individual stone, one by one. In a similar manner he takes the time to touch each of us. You would be surprised by the level of personal involvement and patient interaction He plays in our lives.]** And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear. **[The cloud over the BofJ mind was lifted, his "spiritual eyes" were opened, and he was able to see the Lord's finger touching the stones. When seeing into the spiritual realm we often have very focused vision, not seeing everything at once. This was the first time the BofJ had been able to gaze into the cloud of light and see. But, for him, it was unexpected (as it often is for us), and he worried that he had an improper thought in the presence of the Lord. The BofJ closed up the vision immediately and recoiled.]**

7 And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

8 And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood. **[Often when seeing in the Spirit, especially when it involves beings of light or their habitation, we see things that are unfamiliar and unexplainable. Some will choose to fall back, or to assume they understand the meaning. The Lord patiently waits for us to ask questions. If we do not ask we will not receive.]**

9 And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith **[seeking revelation and acting upon it]** thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not

have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this? **[Other prophets had exercised great faith before the BofJ, but not like him. He had exercised the power of faith by using his sacred imagination, which led to the Lord revealing himself to him.]**

Had the BofJ not prepared his mind to see in the Spirit he would not have been able to pierce the veil as he had done. Most people wonder why they do not see angels, or experience other gifts of the Spirit. It is usually the symptom of unbelief, or false traditions regarding what we see in the mind. In our time when the world is filled with unbelief, people dismiss the visualizations of the mind as false and misleading. The spiritual realm is foreign and primitive to them. There is no faith. You must prayerfully seek the Lord as you open your mind to receive Him.

10 And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me. **[He asks.]**

11 And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak? **[The first step in opening the full channels of the spiritual realm is to be believing of what you see and receive in the spirit, for it will not conform to the logic of the world.]**

12 And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie. **[His mind was firm in every form of godliness.]**

13 And when he had said these words **[which included the asking and declaration of his faith]**, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

The BofJ had an ascension experience where he was lifted up to the Throne of Heaven and walked with God. He went from seeing a finger while kneeling within the pillar of light and fire (initially unseen to him), to receiving the fullness of the Holy Ghost as a 4th estate being (calling and election), to having his full calling and election made sure (ascension to the Throne of Heaven and blessed by the literal hand of the Lord.

14 Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son **[The Father, because in Him we are spiritually begotten; and the Son, by whose commandment He suffered for the sins of the world.]** In me shall all mankind have life **[Eternal Life if they accept it by choosing to receive Him.]**, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters. **[The result of having the baptism of fire and Holy Ghost.]**

15 And never have I showed myself **[in this manner]** unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image. **[This was the new truth that the BofJ was taught.]**

16 Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh. **[The exalted spirit body is tangible. It can**

feel and touch as we do. Jesus' body, before coming to this earth, was a resurrected and glorified body. He condescended to earth, meaning He set aside His glory to come down here and suffer for us. Do you understand?]

17 And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written **[The details of the BofJ's experience were written, and these are included in the sealed portion of the Book of Mormon, but not included in the abridged portion in the Book of Ether.]**, therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

18 And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites **[Day after day the BofJ would ascend to the Lord and learn, asking more questions to help him in his mission.]**; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works **[creations]** which the Lord had showed unto him.

19 And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil **[The BofJ could come to the Lord at any time henceforth.]**; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

To know something is to have knowledge. Our faith is what leads to that knowledge. Once knowledge is obtained, it is the key to priesthood.

20 Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

Why did Moroni feel prompted to add the addendum of the Book of Ether to the record which would be called the Book of Mormon? Because within its few pages lies the keys to understanding the knowledge of God. It is the full circle of relationship that is available to those who seek Jesus Christ. Do you understand?

21 And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh **[The BofJ was shown the complete vision of the world's past, present, and future. This is often what is given when one receives their calling and election made sure, if the correct question is asked. Certain aspects are forbidden to be revealed, because it would remove some of the opportunities for us to demonstrate faith.]**; wherefore, ye shall treasure up **[record]** the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

22 And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read. **[These are written in glyphs that can only be translated by the gift of Translation.]**

23 And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.

He said that the sixteen stones, which were each about the size of a golf ball were used for sacred purposes. When they were in the barges they remained lit as long as the people prayed in faith and would wane in light as they stopped. It taught them the importance of turning to the Lord. He said that they were divided up among some of the people and forgotten

except the two which were fastened in a bow and placed on the breastplate as the Urim and Thummim. These are placed next to the golden records of the Book of Mormon, which contain a full account of the brother of Jared's writings. Today these are stored up in the Hill Shim, in the current location (Edit). Who would have thought! (personal journal)

24 For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded [**mixed and changed**]; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write. [**coming forth of the sealed portion after Zion is established in the future**]

25 And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth. [**There is a finite number assigned to this earth. Some are the first estate, and most are the children of men which have been in their second estate for a very long time.**]

26 For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things. [**The BofJ knew from long before that the Lord would show all things unto those who believe in Him. He simply didn't realize how literal this was. Many people today read these scriptures and do not realize the significance and literal truth in their meaning!**]

27 And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men. [**These records were translated by Mosiah, but not made available. They will be read openly in Zion and be the means of convincing the Remnant of Jacob and the Jews that Jesus is the Christ.**]

28 And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men. [**These two stones lie safely within the Hill Shim in a chamber that contains many sacred objects and records. The Lord is in every detail!**]

Questions and Answers

“He cut, then shaped the stones”

The apparatus he used, did it heat up the stones as it cut?

How did he shape them?

Did he use the tool to “laser” off any sharp edges to make them round-ish? Or were they so hot from cutting that he could just roll the stones to shape them? [**It cut the stones like butter, like a laser it seemed. The tool was used for first cutting loose a large clear stone, then smaller stones, and then the final shaping. PR**]

“He had an apparatus which looked like mirrors and light”

Did this tool use sunlight to focus a beam or was it handheld technology that generated the light, similar to our laser pointers, flash lights, etc? [**It used the power of the sun, but I do not understand the technology. The brother of Jared had this**

small tool, a similar technology as was used to cut the ancient stones we see that are megalithic in size. PR]

Vs 15: “And never have I showed myself [in this manner] unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast.”

Enoch walked & talked with God. I don't understand the difference between Enoch's experience & the way Christ showed Himself to the BofJ. But I believe that God cannot lie, so there must be some difference! Can you help explain the difference? **[I tried to a little in the chapter notes. Enoch's experience was different than the BofJ in the way he had to exercise faith. When the Lord said “never has man believed in me as thou hast” it meant that the way in which the BofJ came to him was unique up to that point. The brother of Jared burst open the veil by preparing his mind to see the Lord physically, thereby creating a platform for him to see the finger of the Lord. PR]**

“The BofJ was shown the complete vision of the world's past, present, and future. This is often what is given when one receives their calling and election made sure, if the correct question is asked.”

Can one simply ask the Lord to be shown this? Or to be shown what the Brother of Jared saw? **[It is wise to follow the Spirit when choosing what to ask the Lord. This particular vision is given after one has ascended to the Throne and has a perfect knowledge. You can always ask the Lord by using the following: “Lord, am I ready to receive the full vision of the history of this world?” PR]**

“the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.”

This seems to be a key to unlocking more. Once you believe that the Lord knows and sees all things, you then have the faith to say “Lord, I believe that You see and know EVERYTHING! Will you show me this? And this?” and because of that faith that the Lord does see everything and because you asked, “the Lord could not withhold anything”.

In short, once we stop putting the Lord into a “box” and limiting Him in our minds, we also stop limiting ourselves and what we can learn. We mentally free Him and ourselves at the same time from the “box” of limitations we ourselves created.

Is this accurate? **[As it has been written, we receive line upon line, precept on precept, until we have the perfect day. The Lord is eager to show us all things, but in wisdom we are given what is best at our level of faith. Once the BofJ had a perfect knowledge of the attributes of God and His Throne and power there was no reason to not answer all his questions. PR]**

“He said that they (the stones) were divided up among some of the people and forgotten”

These stones the Lord touched can obviously operate as seer stones, as shown by them becoming the Urim & Thumim.

I have some questions!

1. If found today, would one of the forgotten stones function as a seer stone still? Would it light up still if it was asked to? **[It would if the correct faith were exercised, but**

the Lord will need to reveal that to the person finding it. PR]

2. How is a stone “asked” to do something? Do we ask the Lord by faith for the stone to perform a certain way and by His power, the stone functions because we asked and He granted? **[A stone is consecrated to perform a particular function whether that be for light, knowledge, healing, or translating. The Lord touched these 16 stones and blessed them for a specific purpose. When it comes to sacred stones, we can ask the Lord to make them holy for a purpose, but I have found when it comes to seer stones you don’t find them, they find you (the Lord orchestrates their arrival in your life). I suspect the BofJ was led by the Spirit to a particular place to find the clear stone that would be touched by the finger of God. PR]**

3. Once a stone is a seer stone for good & righteous purposes, does it always stay that way? Or can the adversary alter stones so they no longer work properly?

Really beautiful revelations and visions. Have you seen any women in this group and were any leaders, or writers, or any record of their lives? **[I have no knowledge of any particular Jaredite women, though I am sure there were many with great stories to tell. Every great man of God has an equally great wife in their earthly mission. In this is a mystery. PR]**

You mentioned, “He went from seeing a finger...to receiving the fullness of the Holy Ghost as a 4th estate being (calling and election)...”

Are you able to share more about “receiving the fullness of the Holy Ghost”? Are there levels to receiving your Baptism of Fire and Holy Ghost? Like the initial BoF&HG can be increased to where you get to a point of receiving a “fullness of the Holy Ghost” as a 4th estate being? Not sure if this question makes sense. I may be misunderstanding what “fullness of the Holy Ghost” means. **[The “Fullness of the Holy Ghost” is to receive all the gifts of Spirit that a servant of the Lord can receive while in mortality. This includes the quickening of the spirit, to be born again in Jesus Christ, and to receive a remission of sins. PR]**

Dear PR..... Wow... In your writings, I don’t recall you asking questions to emphasize two important parts in verses.

They are:

16 Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh. [The exalted spirit body is tangible. It can feel and touch as we do. Jesus' body before coming to this earth was a resurrected and glorified body. He condescended to earth, meaning He set aside His glory to come down here and suffer for us. Do you understand?]

HE came down. An Exalted Being became like us. Gave us an example. HE showed us the way. He saved us if we but follow. Glorifies us and the FATHER.

and

20 Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

Why did Moroni feel prompted to add the addendum of the Book of Ether to the record which would be called the Book of Mormon? Because within its few pages lies the keys

to understanding the knowledge of God. It is the full circle of relationship that is available to those who seek Jesus Christ. Do you understand?

Wow! What a masterpiece!

Thanks be to the Lord.

[The exalted spirit body is tangible. It can feel and touch as we do. Jesus' body before coming to this earth was a resurrected and glorified body. He condescended to earth, meaning He set aside His glory to come down here and suffer for us. Do you understand?] PR... Does this mean because He is omnipresent, He can condescend to this earth and be born into a Telestial body and live a life of mortality while still being a resurrected being in a glorified body ruling in heaven above simultaneously. Or could you further elaborate on this? The only other option is to set aside His resurrected body to have His spirit be born into a Telestial body. But that option doesn't make sense to me for some reason, because He can be omnipresent. Are you allowed to clarify this? **[I cannot elaborate on anything above a 4th estate, but the purpose of the statement is to emphasize the degree of sacrifice made by the Only Begotten Son. PR]**

Have prophets since the B of Jared and before our day exercised faith like him? **[That would be a question for the Lord to answer. PR]**

When did the Brother of Jared receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost in his process of coming to Christ? **[Verse 13 identifies the moment when he was redeemed from the fall. It was during his time with the Lord and before his ascension that the gift of the Holy Ghost was given. PR]**

“You would be surprised by the level of personal involvement and patient interaction He plays in our lives”

I've said this before but it bears repeating because of the resonations I feel with it now. Every time you write this sort of thing, which has been many times now, it floods my heart with so much hope (and joy), I can't really describe it. It causes a... yearning... some sort of fire...? for the things of God. Do I understand? I don't understand all as to why this is so, except only that I know the Lord is leading me and I keep hitting a wall. On one hand I feel like this crumb from the table is so precious and I am starving, and so I am very grateful to have the nourishment from it when it falls.

(I'm not trying to self-deprecate here. I think many reading this here might also be familiar with the environment of unbelief we have been handed.)

On the other hand, it feels so familiar and so right to contemplate that the Lord is really in MY life patiently playing out all sorts of different things to give me every chance to succeed to the fulfillment of the Everlasting Covenant. (also scares me to death TBH- I mean, what if I blow it)

My question: How does one rise up off the floor, come out of the corner and finally sit at the table... and believe that eye contact with the Lord is actually possible. How? When an institution and a culture has taught them, even engrained into them their entire life that the floor and the corner (or even a floor/corner in a different house or city apart!) is the only option?

If the answer is in this chapter, just tell me. I don't need you to explain it. Just point the

way. You kind of allude that the answer is in this chapter? **[The answer is to have faith. The Book of Mormon is filled with many great examples of the kind of faith that brings us to the Lord. The BofJ's example is beautiful in demonstrating how the Lord does this. In the coming chapters Moroni will expound upon it in a way that the message is perfectly clear. We all must follow the path and eventually grab hold of the rod. From there, we persevere as we pull ourselves toward the Tree of Life. If you can grab the rod of iron you will partake of the fruit. PR]**

“He had an apparatus which looked like mirrors and light...” was this apparatus the kind of technology they were using to build the Tower of Babel? Did this technology survive the flood? **[Yes, and it did survive the flood for a while. I don't know how the technology was lost. PR]**

Also, Christ appeared to BoJ in the form men were created in the beginning, so is this what he saw? The body that Christ was gonna have during His mission? Is that why his faith was so incredible?

Why did BoJ die at an old age? I thought since he was translated he could not taste death. **[The brother of Jared's faith was incredible because he sought for revelation and acted upon it. He used his mind to create a platform of sacred imagination that prepared him to pierce the veil and see the finger of the Lord. Like tuning in a radio to the perfect frequency, the BofJ was able to open his spiritual eyes and behold the Lord in His true form, and this without having previous knowledge. The BofJ was not translated, but did write the record of his full vision at the Throne of Heaven. A servant of the Lord can be translated for a future mission, not because they reach a level of perfection and righteousness. PR]**

Hi PR, The children of men who have been telestial for a long time, are they still our heavenly father's children or can they be the spirit children of another heavenly father or is it a mix of both, and I know in the beginning some came here via transport but are the majority born here? I have read in one of your books but would love to understand it more. **[All the children of men are children of God at some point. The Father of their spirits is connected to this world. In this is a mystery, but it is not far from understanding. PR]**

THANK YOU!

[In the Brother of Jared's imagination, or creative mind, he has already seen a vision of the Lord touching the stones. This was given to him by the Spirit of the Lord, but the BofJ did not realize it was more than his own creative thinking. The Lord was helping him to prepare for the exercising of greater faith.]

I'm still a beginner in terms of exercising sacred imagination. I think this is where most people misunderstand. If the scene was already “given” to the BoJ by the Spirit in his mind, then how much of it is his own creative thinking? And how much of it is “given”? It seems to me that we must kickstart the process by the deliberate use of our agency (Faith ~ expressive desire ~ willingness ~ Asking) and then the Spirit will have more opportunity to work upon your mind and imagination? I know you write alot about this in your book “How to open your spiritual eyes”, but thought your comment on that

particular verse was interesting. **[We are beings of light and faith. When we are filled with virtue and lean on the Spirit, what we call “sacred imagination” is simply the catalyst for the Spirit to open the vision of truth to us. It is important not to force an outcome, or to control the vision, but only to relax and allow our thoughts to go where they will. This is called pondering. PR]**

[The exalted spirit body is tangible. It can feel and touch as we do. Jesus' body before coming to this earth was a resurrected and glorified body. He condescended to earth, meaning He set aside His glory to come down here and suffer for us. Do you understand? PR]

Is it safe to say then, that at this point in the world’s history when appearing to the BOJ, Jesus has not yet dwelled on earth yet? Or if I am wrong in that assumption, His body is a spirit body in front of the BOJ because... He (Jesus) had not accomplished the resurrection yet? **[I can only say He had not yet been resurrected in glory, which came after His suffering in Jerusalem. PR]**

[To know something is to have knowledge. Our faith is what leads to that knowledge. Once knowledge is obtained, it is the key to priesthood. PR]

How is knowledge, obtained by faith, the key to priesthood. If priesthood is really relationship to the Lord, in right-standing with God, then isn’t faith the key to priesthood, not knowledge? We cannot have any relationship with the Lord without faith. That said, it then also seems that the same thing applies to hope and belief and charity. Why does knowledge trump faith, hope, belief and charity with respect to fully functioning priesthood? Is it because knowledge is the end result of all these things? **[In my first book I wrote: “Hope is believing, faith is asking, knowledge is receiving, and priesthood is becoming.” It is a process of coming to the Lord in the fullness. PR]**

The Sealed Portion – Ether 4:1-19

Moroni adds much commentary regarding the significance of the Brother of Jared’s experience:

1 And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people. **[Among the writings of the BofJ was the history that would unfold amongst the Nephites.]**

2 And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest. **[The sealed portion of the BofM contains a fullness of the writings of the BofJ. These things were known to the righteous Nephites**

after Christ came, but were sealed up by Mormon not to come forth until the end of times.]

3 And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth. **[The golden plates abridgment which would be the Book of Mormon.]**

4 Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared. **[He saw it all, both in heaven and the earth.]**

5 Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters **[Urim and Thummim]**, according to the commandment of the Lord.

6 For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord. **[This is referencing the modern church of the Gentiles in the last days. This has not yet come to fruition, as the sealed portion has not yet been revealed. The iniquity that has continued in the church has not yet been overcome and the condemnation is still in force. D&C 84:55-57]**

7 And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did **[to seek Christ directly]**, that they may become sanctified in me **[be made holy]**, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw **[the same gifts of the spirit and receiving these mysteries]**, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are. **[You will see it all, and it will come from the Lord.]**

I bear my witness that this is true. The Lord has revealed to me the same things that the Brother of Jared saw. No words can describe His glory! Much is forbidden to reveal, as you must experience this for yourself. Praised be the name of the Lord!

8 And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed **[prevented from receiving]**; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh. **[Many shall deny such things are possible, and it will be an end for them.]**

9 And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut **[It is the Lord Himself that determines who comes up and who does not. We cannot force the Lord's hand. He looks upon the heart and we receive according to our faith and covenant.]**; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire. **[foreshadowing of what is to come in the end of times]**

10 And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day. **[The prophecies of his servants shall be witnessed as truth in the last days.]**

11 But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. **[The first two words**

I audibly heard from the Lord were, “Be believing.” As you follow the Spirit as the brother of Jared you will be led at each step to know what to do until like the BofJ you receive a fullness of the manifestations of His Spirit.] For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.

12 And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world. **[Jesus is indeed the Father of this world, for by Him were all things created, and through Him all may be born again in the Spirit. How does one judge what is good? It enlightens the soul and clears the mind. It enriches our spirit and cultivates a desire to do more good. It is a clear understanding that what we are doing is in harmony with Him. There is no confusion or doubt when one is doing “good.” All good leads to righteousness and a fullness of the Holy Ghost.]**

13 Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief. **[This is speaking to us, the church, and all who read the BofM outside of the Lamanite remnant (Remnant of Jacob), and the Jews.]**

14 Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief. **[speaking to those who are already a part of the Everlasting Covenant]**

15 Behold, when ye **[Jews and Remnant of Jacob]** shall rend that veil of unbelief **[move past your false traditions]** which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

16 And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. **[through the revealing of the sealed portion of the BofM]** Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed. **[The fullness of the BofM will come forth just as the great judgments begin to break forth upon the world.]**

17 Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

18 Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and signs shall follow them that believe in my name. **[The signs are the gifts of the Spirit, which include the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost.]**

19 And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen. **[The entire purpose of this world is**

to prepare the House of Israel, the covenant people of God to rise in the resurrection of glory and dwell in the kingdom of the Father, where they will continue to develop in the image of Christ until they reach the fullness of their exaltation.]

Questions and Answers

So powerful, and gives so much hope. I love reading the Book or Mormon this way and know the Lord is giving us this gift to increase our hope, faith and trust in Him. Thank you for sharing with us these beautiful riches of eternity.

“I bear my witness that this is true. The Lord has revealed to me the same things that the Brother of Jared saw. No words can describe His glory! Much is forbidden to reveal, as you must experience this for yourself. Praise be the name of the Lord!”
Wow..... thank you for this testimony of Light, Knowledge and Love.
Thank you so much.

vs 12 “he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me.” This passage really stuck me tonight. It says to me that if we do not believe the words that we read in the scriptures, we wouldn’t believe them even if Christ or the Father came to us and declared them to us himself. And, if we don’t pay attention to their words and take them to heart, we are not believing in them. That’s a difficult thing to admit. But, we have to admit it and repent, and come out from under this condemnation. We need to realize that nearly every Book of Mormon writer has received his Second Comforter, which was the defining point of their lives, and the centerpiece of everything they are trying to teach us.

I love this so much.....my mind immediately went to Nephi having been born of Goodly parents and all that is truly of God comes from The Lord!!!

[The fullness of the BofM will come forth just as the great judgments begin to break forth upon the world.]

How will those who are not in First Zion or Zion but who love the scriptures and believe in their words be able to have access to and read the fullness of the BofM, especially if all communications have broken down? **[All the righteous throughout the world will be gathered in as the destructions begin to sweep the earth. At first they will not have access to the translations. PR]**

“The iniquity that has continued in the church has not yet been overcome and the condemnation is still in force. D&C 84:55-57”

Is the condemnation for an individual person removed when they begin seeking Christ and seeking His revelations and a relationship with Him? Or is it only removed for an individual after they have received the baptism of fire? **[That prophecy is for the church and not for the individual respectively. When a person approaches God with a broken heart and contrite spirit and then receives the gift of the Holy Ghost they have received the new covenant of the Book of Mormon**

and are redeemed of the Lord. This is the fruit the Lord desires to see His church bring forth. If a church does not bring forth such fruit it is under condemnation. PR]

... 15 Behold, when ye [Jews and Remnant of Jacob] shall rend that veil of unbelief [move past your false traditions] which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind...

I'm from the tribe of Ephraim according to my Patriarchal Blessing as are many of us. Joseph had two sons (Ephraim and Manassa). Joseph's father was Jacob (Israel).

Must we be Native Americans to be considered part of this Remnant of Jacob?

We each need to rend that veil of unbelief [move past your false traditions] which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind.

I think we are from the line of Jacob (Israel) so are we not also part of this Remnant of Jacob mentioned? **[There are three types of people mentioned in the Book of Mormon: the Jews, Gentiles, and the Remnant of Jacob. There are many who have been declared "Ephraim" in the church, but there are no pure descendants of Ephraim. This is a spiritual declaration, for many have that mixed lineage who came from the British Isles, and many more have been adopted into the House of Israel and been declared Ephraim. The Book of Mormon specifically designates the Remnant of Jacob as the descendants of those who fled Jerusalem and were led to the Americas. These modern Native Americans are the Remnant of Jacob. This is my understanding, but I leave it to others to make their own prayerful conclusions. PR]**

[All the righteous throughout the world will be gathered in as the destructions begin to sweep the earth. At first they will not have access to the translations. PR] In the remark you said above in Samaritan2021question.....Will the First Zion eventually be abandoned as the people move towards the New Jerusalem ? Also, will the places of "call out " turn into Zions or are they temporary , just meant to escape the destructions? Are all the Zions that will be established on the earth eventually going to be brought together to be one Zion on the American continent and one in Israel? Or will they be scattered Zions throughout the earth? Thank you for your patience with my questions.

[Eventually, First Zion will be the far outreaches of the borders of Zion. Only the old and new Jerusalem will be taken up when the earth is cleansed with fire. There will be gathering points throughout the world before Christ comes. These are not Zion, but places of gathering. "Stakes of Zion" are a reference to satellite cities for a true Zion establishment. There has never reached a full realization of this since before Christ. PR]

Three Witnesses – Ether 5:1-6

1 And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory **[The parts the Lord commanded him to include in the Book of**

Ether.]; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up **[The parts that are forbidden, the sealed portion.];** therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God. **[Moroni declares that the sealed portion not be translated until it is wisdom in God.]**

Moroni then prophesies in how they will be made manifest:

2 And behold, ye **[the translator]** may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work; **[More than one scenario here, for it is written for the coming forth of the BofM under Joseph Smith, and the future coming forth of the sealed portion.]**

3 And unto three **[witnesses]** shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true. **["The Power of God" is to say that it comes by miraculous means and cannot be denied.]**

When reading this chapter we immediately think of the Three Witnesses: Martin Harris, Oliver Cowdery, and David Whitmer; but there will be future three witnesses that will also behold the plates when the sealed portion is brought forth for translation. This will not occur until First Zion is established and many of the tribulations have begun.

4 And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day. **[This also includes the witnesses of the three translated disciples, whose mission includes protecting and bringing forth the sealed portion of this record to help in the conversion of the Remnant of Jacob in the last days.]**

5 And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God. **[The Remnant of Jacob, and the Jews, and the Gentiles.]**

6 And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen.

It shall be a joyous day when the sealed portion is revealed and published for all the inhabitants of Zion. And then shall the prophecy be fulfilled: "And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth." 2 Nephi 27:11

Questions and Answers

"And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be

revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.” 2 Nephi 27:11 I went back to that scripture to check to see if my question I’m asking now has already been asked. It’s an interesting use of words to “be read upon the house tops.” Can you tell us more of the meaning of this statement? And the statement “be read by the power of Christ”? **[It means that it will be shared by all with great celebration. PR]**

How is the sealed portion going to be shared?

If the world is in tribulation, online and modern print versions seem unlikely. Maybe hand written copies will be read aloud to groups? **[I don’t know. Perhaps printed the old fashion way. PR]**

Crossing the Great Waters – Ether 6:1-30

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

2 For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

3 And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

4 And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

5 And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

6 And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

7 And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

8 And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

9 And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

10 And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.

There were eight barges, which looked about 30 feet in diameter. They were flat on the top and bottom with a point on each end. They seemed not perfectly round, kind of oval. There was a top and bottom opening in the center that could be twisted and pushed out as often as needed. There seemed to some kind of buoyancy, so that if the boat was tipped over it could go back as before as it rose again. It had no sails, rudder, or ways to steer the ships.

Each family had their own barge. Different animals and various kinds of birds, or items they wished to bring to the new land were carefully placed on the different vessels. There was a separation on most of the vessels between the animals and people. Food and water was hung from the ceiling and hammocks and other items were also hung. At each end of the ship where it was pointed, the stone would be suspended for light, two for each vessel. The top hole would be kept open most of the time unless the waves became too heavy, then the lid would be twisted shut.

For most of the journey the vessels were pushed by strong currents. I don't understand what was happening, but the ocean did not seem to be behaving normally. It was like watching a wide river moving fast. It was stormy and the seas were very violent at times as huge waves buried the vessels, but that would not last long and they knew when to plug the hole and when it was safe. They could hear things knocking the bottom of the vessel from time to time as sea creatures tried to see what it was.

Often the occupants of these vessels would look out of the hole during the voyage to see if any of the other vessels could be seen. Rarely were they successful in seeing each other. The faith and prayers of these families was required to lead them to the Promised Land. They prayed day and night for deliverance and noticed when their prayers waned that the light in the stones began to wane as well.

I saw the families singing, praying, and doing as much as they could to keep their spirits up. Animal and human waste was constantly pushed up and out of the top hole, which was about as wide as a person to climb through. There was some kind of water capturing cistern for rain water on the top side, but I don't understand how they used it.

*When they began to beach their vessels, I saw that they were all strung out over miles of beach. Their story is almost as amazing as that of Noah.
(personal journal)*

11 And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

I could not find in my journal a particular observation that is worth mentioning here. I did not see large animals on the vessels. Mostly sheep,

goats, and small animals. There was one family per barge and they brought enough provisions, including seeds and preserved food to last the length of the voyage. Each family brought different kinds of animals, but they didn't bring the same animals and honeybees as they did when they began their trek eastward. The entire voyage was an act of great faith.

12 And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

13 And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

14 And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

15 And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.

16 And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.

17 And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.

18 And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

19 And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

20 And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

21 And it came to pass that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves. **[This is the tradition of gathering together the entire family to receive a blessing before the aging patriarch dies. It originated with Adam and continued amongst his descendants.]**

22 And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.

23 And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity. **[The BofJ, the spiritual leader amongst them advises against it.]**

24 But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king, even whom ye will. **[Jared overrides his brother's council and the people choose a king. Jared was their previous leader, but was more a chief among them.]**

25 And it came to pass that they chose even the firstborn of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his father **[BofJ]** should constrain **[strongly compel]** him, but

his father would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.

26 And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.

27 And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.

28 And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.

29 And it came to pass that Jared died, and his brother also.

30 And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord, and did remember how great things the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their fathers.

Why did the new Jaredite people in this land feel compelled to appoint a king to lead them? Many knew of the great civilizations before them which were lead by kings. For them, it was a sign of their status as a people. Had they chose to lean on the Lord for guidance they could have established a system of judges as the Nephites, or even a Constitution, as the early American colonists that guaranteed freedom for each individual. When a righteous man is anointed a king unto the people they prosper, but it doesn't take long for corruption to find its way into the kingdom and the people lose their liberty. Such was the fate of the Jaredites.

Questions and Answers

Vs 20, 22 and 12 children are a lot of children for one woman to bear. Was polygamy being practiced by these men at this time? Or were they living longer lives than ours? **[They lived normal life spans. They were not polygamists. The Brother of Jared's wife died in her forties and he remarried a younger woman who bore more children. Their views on child rearing were different than today. Women desired to bear many children and a large family was a great blessing to them. This is what I was shown. PR]**

Does a Republic or a system o judges really preserve freedom? Maybe to an extent as a country begins. Secret combinations still overtook the United States government. The right to bear arms and freedom of speech are also being attacked. **[It preserves freedom longer than a monarchy. Once a people choose wickedness they crumble quickly. The Nephites had a visit from the Savior, but within 4 generations they had fallen. PR]**

“...they didn't bring the same animals and honeybees as they did when they began their trek eastward.”

Thank you for sharing this! The answers are sometimes so simple and straightforward but we don't have the reading comprehension skills to catch the tiny details and we need the Lord's help to fill in what we don't understand. This was one of those times where I marvel at the obvious simplicity!

How did the families handle cabin fever during the voyage?
Could they sit or stand on top of the barge? **[They could sit, but it was dangerous to go outside the hole. They spent their time singing, praying, thinking, and telling stories. It was a difficult ordeal for certain, but they did it. PR]**
Could they swim alongside it in good weather?

[Jared overrides his brother's council and the people choose a king. Jared was their previous leader, but was more a chief among them.]
Please can you point out the differences between a Leader and a chief? **[Jared was a leader of the people, like a chief, but not a king. A king would have absolute authority. PR]**

Also, does that mean Jared presided and his brother was the prophet?
What about the concept of priesthood Keys, we heard about so much!? **["Priesthood Keys" are simply authority given. Some keys are given by the Church, and some can only be given by God. The BofJ had priesthood because of his relationship with the Lord. PR]**

The chief/leader and the prophet are often the same person in the Book of Mormon, but not always. But this account shows us that this does not necessarily have to be so. The Brother of Jared was a very meek man, but his brother was wise enough to defer to him in spiritual matters. We don't even know the names of any of his children. **[The one son of Jared, Orihah, is named. He was the only one willing to accept the mantle of king. (verse 27) PR]**

The Jaredites Expand Upon the Land – Ether 7:1-27

1 And it came to pass that Orihah **[the son of Jared]** did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.

2 And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.

The women of this era bore many children, but this is not from the same woman, or from a polygamous family. There is a story here which I do not know.

3 And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.

4 And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor;**[It is possible that the Order of Nehor that was among the Nephites originated from this name, as this portion of the Jaredite record was available to the Nephites.]** and he begat sons and

daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

5 And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity. **[That if they chose to have a king the people would be taken into captivity (enslaved).]**

6 Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites. **[Near the west side of the Great Lakes and Canada.]**

7 And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

8 And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

9 Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim **[An ancient name which was used to name Joseph's son.]**, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.

10 And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.

11 And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.

12 And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.

13 And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

14 And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

15 And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

16 And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.

17 And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.

18 And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

19 Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.

20 And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

21 And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.

It is interesting to read this history. It sounds like a bullet point list of events in their history, written very differently from the rest of the Book of Mormon.

22 And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

23 And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent. **[come unto Christ]**

24 And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

25 And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

26 And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age. **[These prophets had a great affect upon the people unto repentance. The main role of a prophet is to preach repentance in the name of the Lord. Sometimes they are commanded of the Lord to prophesy future events for the purpose of preparing the people, or to warn them.]**

27 And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

I have not prayed about the details regarding the Jaredite people beyond the story of the Brother of Jared and their voyage to America. I will say that the Jaredites did not look like the Nephites. They were very large and tall, and most all of them had reddish brown hair. Their skin was fair and their eyes were blue or green. They were the pure blood of Adam. Their civilization lasted for over 2000 years, yet little remains visible to mark their people.

Questions and Answers

Vs 16: “And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.”

Where was the land of their first inheritance? **[I do not know how far the Jaredites traveled before they settled. I know they landed somewhere along the west coast and moved inland. PR]**

Vs 4 mentions the land of Nehor.

Is it safe to assume there was a man called Nehor who was born among the past

generations of Jaredites who the land was named after? Or does Nehor mean something in their language? **[I do not know. Those are good questions. PR]**

The Rise of Secret Combinations Amongst the Jaredites – Ether 8:1-26

The list of events continues from the previous chapter:

1 And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

2 And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

3 And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

4 And now, in the days of the reign of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters, among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

5 And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.

6 And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he pled with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.

7 And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

8 Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

This reads like a the most twisted of family dramas. When a story is condensed into only a few words it seems improbable, but often the truth is stranger than fiction.

9 Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair **[beautiful]**. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory? **[Why would the few Jaredite people who came across the ocean choose to keep the records when they came, even the evil oaths and acts that led to the fall of Babel?]**

10 And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king. **[A similar**

story to how the daughter of Herod danced to get him to agree to execute John the Baptist.]

11 And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

12 And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king. **[She used her ability to seduce him to get him to murder.]**

13 And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you? **[The beginnings of a dark oath and secret combination after the order of Cain.]**

14 And it came to pass that they all swore unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life. **[This is a blood oath.]**

15 And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning. **[These same oaths were stolen by Gadianton as he read the translated record of Mosiah without permission.]**

16 And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms. **[Even today these oaths are carried out in the secret chambers of the elite throughout the world.]**

17 And it was the daughter of Jared **[not the original Jared, but a later descendant.]** who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

18 And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God; **[Why is it the most abominable and wicked to God? It involves the murder of innocent men, women, and even children. It requires secret oaths to Satan, and often involves sexual ritual and the giving of signs and symbols to form a dark coalition. The highest order of these people is to achieve the status of Son of Perdition.]**

19 For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man. **[A secret combination is different than a sacred ceremony that is not shared publicly. Many conflate what Joseph Smith taught regarding the Endowment and its relations to Free Masonry as a secret combination, but it is not. There were elements that were added by Brigham Young from his masonic learning, but the ceremony itself is founded in sacred knowledge and teachings for the purpose of knowing how to come to the Lord.]**

20 And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had

among the Lamanites. **[Even Moroni was compelled to not detail the dark oaths.]**

21 And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi. **[This will also seal the destruction of all people upon the face of the earth. Even today the American people's freedom hangs by a thread as these evil people plot to gain power over all lands.]**

22 And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

23 Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be. **[Moroni is now speaking directly to us, here and now, in America and across the world.]**

24 Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up. **[Many of the murders go unnoticed or marked as suicide and missing persons. The technology of our times makes the work of assassins more easy than ever.]**

25 For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

26 Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved. **[Such will not be the case until Zion is established. Until that time we are to stand in holy places by making ourselves holy. We are to follow the Spirit in our actions as we seek to hear the voice of the Lord. Some will even be led to fight against the corruption of these secret combinations at their own peril and trusting in the Lord for protection.]**

Questions and Answers

Were there ever Sons of Perdition among the Jardite people? **[Wherever the dark oaths are, there are sons of perdition. PR.]**

“Why would the few Jaredite people who came across the ocean choose to keep the records when they came, even the evil oaths and acts that led to the fall of Babel?”

There is opposition in all things. Was one among them evil?

Or did they bring it as proof that it existed and ruined their society? **[I had the same questions. I have not asked the Lord yet. It is not odd that they brought records, but why would they preserve the details of such evil? The Nephites preserved the same details as was translated by Mosiah, but it was sealed up. Why not just destroy it? There is a mystery here. PR]**

“These same oaths were stolen by Gadianton as he read the translated record of Mosiah without permission.”

So Gadianton read the record Mosiah translated (things in the sealed portion) without permission and that is how he learned the oaths? **[Yes, I commented on this when Gadianton first makes his appearance in the record.]**

Why does the Lord keep allowing this to be preserved and used? **[Perhaps for the same reason he allowed Eve to be tempted in the Garden. We are always given options to choose, the good and the evil. It seems that in most cases it takes some effort to find it. PR]**

In reference to Nate’s question above and your response. As I understand it, there are 1) Sons of Perdition and, 2) Perdition. “Wherever there are dark oaths, there are sons of perdition.” Does it require a son of perdition to administer those oaths to a perdition? **[No, Satan can guide the candidate through the process, as did Cain. PR]**

Jaredites Suffer Because of Wickedness – Ether

9:1-35

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.

2 Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.

3 And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim **[Rocky Mountain area]**, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom, by the seashore **[Great Lakes region]**, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.

4 And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.

5 And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.

6 For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.

7 And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.

8 And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.

9 And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.

10 And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

11 Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

12 And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

13 Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

14 And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

15 And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.

16 And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they became exceedingly rich—

17 Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

18 And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

19 And they also had horses [**bridled animal to pull carriages**], and asses [**bridled animal to carry loads (I wrote about these when commenting on Ammon and the kings horses.)**], and there were elephants [**primitive species no longer in North America**] and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants [**type of mammoth**] and cureloms [**wooly rhino**] and cumoms. [**a different type of small mammoth**]

These passages fly in the face of modern science and are a sticking point to those who criticize the Book of Mormon. Using the current radiocarbon dating systems, such beasts died out long before the Jaredites came to the Americas. The carbon dating system is flawed as it assumes that carbon-12 is a constant in nature, that the climate does not change. This is a point that

has created a closed debate amongst those who adhere to the current standards of dating ancient artifacts, bones, and geological formations. The fact is that the climate of the earth has changed drastically since the days of Adam.

20 And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.

21 And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

22 And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness [**had a Second Comforter experience**], and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.

23 And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.

24 And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.

25 And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.

26 And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.

27 And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.

28 And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent. [**A similar pattern as Elijah or Alma in proclaiming a famine if the people will not repent.**]

29 But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.

30 And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth [**cursing**] upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

31 And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

32 And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

33 And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

34 And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts **[buffalo]**, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

35 And it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.

I am amazed at the brevity of words used to describe the lengthy history of the Jaredite people. Ether created a short abridgment of his people and how they fell due to the influence of secret combinations. Only the brief mention of prophets sent among them to call them to repentance.

Questions and Answers

Speaking of climate change and Carbon-12 dating, here is a supporting scripture from 2 Peter”

“Knowing this first, that there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lusts, And saying, Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as they were from the beginning of the creation. For this they willingly are ignorant of, that by the word of God the heavens were of old, and the earth standing out of the water and in the water:” (2 Peter 3:3-5)

There was a study published last year that indicated that there is potential fluctuation in carbon-isotopes based on location. Not saying this is bullet-proof evidence that proves a discrepancy in the thousands of years range, but there is evidence that carbon-dating isn't perfect and if there were dramatic shifts in the climate, there could be altered radio-carbon data.

In particular, the team noted that the degree of discrepancy in Carbon-14 levels varied over time, and that it appeared to be largely driven by changes in regional climate, with warmer temperatures leading to larger differences.

The article is “Fluctuating radiocarbon offsets observed in the southern Levant and implications for archaeological chronology debates”

Vs 19: Thank you for giving us a description of these mystery creatures! I notice that they are all possibly “woolly” coated animals. Was the climate across those northern states similar to what it is today? Was it colder in the Jaredite's day than it is now? Or warmer?

Were these animals woolly coats similar to what buffalo/bison have today? **[They seemed to be. I don't know how the climate was different or the same. PR]**

Vs 31: “And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people.”

What type or species of snake was this? **[I don't know. I was guessing some kind of rattlesnake. I haven't seen that. PR]**

A few years ago my area of Texas was in a drought, which flushed thirsty snakes right up to our houses and they were found in places they normally wouldn't be. After that experience, these verses made a lot more sense!

When people are warned in 'a dream' as many have been, is this a dream that always requires translation or is it simple and direct (i realise this is an insanely broad question you may not be able to answer) or a better question, what does a dream feel/look like when it is direct from the Lord? Do you still receive revelation through dreams and would you be able to share some with us? (I know you have shared some previously). Also, I would love to hear some of the dreams your wife has had for a female perspective – just pass that on to her for later lol – Thank you! **[Whenever a dream makes an impression on me enough to remember it I always ask the Lord if it is from Him. Typically, dreams are filled with symbols and meaning that is veiled. Don't assume the first meaning you think of is the correct interpretation. I've been surprised at times. In the future, I will be sharing such things from my wife as she permits. PR]**

The Jaredite Kingdoms Flourish – Ether 10:1-34

1 And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.

2 And it came to pass that Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.

3 And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father. **[Interesting little side note to the fall of Shez, the son of Shez. We don't know if he was maimed or just lost all his possessions to the robber, or both. But, it was enough to restore peace. These Jaredite royal families had a hard time keeping the peace.]**

4 And it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his stead. **[The Jaredite people had a longevity that exceeded people of our time. This was due to a pure bloodline of Adam. Why did they not live hundreds of years? The people before the flood ate something that was not available after the flood of Noah. It sounds fantastic, but much did change after the flood.]**

5 And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings. **[Here we have a direct reference to how God views polygamy. There is no mention of how it was not right, just that it displeased the Lord. People who justify polygamy always site Abraham and Jacob as examples, but where is it written that God commands them? In every situation, the Lord has shown me that when polygamy was allowed of the Lord, it was requested of the first wife, and then was for the purpose of raising up seed. Often it was a lack of faith, but that the Lord let it be. Polygamy is a telestial marital option that leads to sorrow in most cases and not how the Lord designed marriage, between a man and a woman. The first marriage, that of Adam and Eve, was the prototype for all His children until the end of time and for all eternity.]**

6 And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death. **[He enslaved his people.]**

7 Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

8 And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, insomuch that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

9 And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

10 And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

11 And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

How does sexual impurity separate us from the Lord? When a person continually lusts after their sexual appetites, the Spirit is constricted and their heart leaves no room for charity. This is one of the chains the Adversary uses to constrain those that follow him. He requires them to embrace such depravity and their minds are continually seeking ways to satisfy their lusts. Until they are able to break those chains they remain cut off from the Lord. The only way to be freed is to call out to God and completely turn one's heart to Him. It requires a complete submission. This is the meaning of repentance. In such a state, a person can overcome and have their heart made clean again.

12 And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

13 And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

14 And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

15 And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

16 And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

17 And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.

18 And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.

19 And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

20 And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land. **[between the Great Lakes]**

21 And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants. **[Which the Nephites referred to as the land Desolation.]**

22 And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

23 And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

24 And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness. **[Whether silk worms were brought by the brother of Jared to the new land or came through trade with other peoples, I do not know. The Brother of Jared, being a tapestry artist by trade, I would suspect he brought them with him to the new land and the art remained with the people until their demise.]**

25 And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

26 And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

27 And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship. **[ingenuity of design]**

28 And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it. **[They sound like a young America, rich with industry and temporal blessings, because of their general goodness and keeping to the commandments of the Lord.]**

29 And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.

30 And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.

31 And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.

32 And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

33 And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom. **[The secret dark oaths are always introduced when a people are prosperous. Such was the case of America in the late nineteenth century.]**

34 Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.

Questions and Answers

[The people before the flood ate something that was not available after the flood of Noah. It sounds fantastic, but much did change after the flood.] I just have to ask, do you have any idea of what they ate? **[It was something we refer to as ORMUS. A recipe made from gold powder that affects aging and heightens the spiritual senses. I don't know how they made it. Since the ancient days mystics have tried to recreate it, the "philosopher's stone," the "elixir of life." Today, only cheap imitations are made, mostly through witchcraft. PR]**

"The people before the flood ate something that was not available after the flood of Noah."

Was this a type of plant, herb, root or fruit that grew naturally?

Or was it something provided from heaven similar to manna? **[It was a recipe using powdered gold and something else. I don't know how it was made. PR]**

"The secret dark oaths are always introduced when a people are prosperous."

Is there a reason why this happens? **[Their purpose is to gain wealth and power over others. Also, it is the disposition of evil to attempt to destroy all that is good in the world. PR]**

Prophets are Sent – Ether 11:1-23

1 And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness. **[Sometimes the Lord sends many prophets, and sometimes he sends only one or two. When an entire people are about to be destroyed he often sends many.]**

2 And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.

3 And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days. **[The prophets told the people if they did not repent they would be destroyed.]**

4 And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

5 And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

6 And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth **[a unique destruction]**, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

7 And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, insomuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

8 And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.

9 And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.

10 And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.

11 And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.

12 And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

13 And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.

14 And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.

15 And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

16 And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.

17 And it came to pass that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

18 And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.

19 And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.

20 And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;

21 And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers. **[The Jaredites knew the miraculous manner in which their forebearers had come to this land. Now, after over a thousand years of civilization, many wars and destructions, the prophets have foretold their destruction and replacement.]**

22 And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

23 And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days. **[The prophet Ether is born in captivity, the grandson of a former king.]**

I was thinking how a people can so easily turn from righteousness to complete depravity. My 18 year old son asked me the other day why everyone talks about things being so bad in the country. Things seemed pretty good to him. I responded that we live in a bubble in our isolated community. Much of the country is struggling for its soul. The Jaredite people often struggled to remember the Lord and to have peace. Truly the path of kings led these people to much wickedness. The United States follows a Constitution, yet in many ways we have kings and royalty among us, as not all are held to the same accountability under the law. Great wickedness has corrupted our county as many standards of liberty and morality have been replaced with permissiveness and excessiveness.

Prophets are being sent among the people today. How do you recognize them? They preach repentance without mincing words. They offend others, because they do not speak flattery. They call out wickedness: abortion, promiscuity, idolatry, pride, apathy, lasciviousness, secret combinations, and warn the people (all people) in the name of the Lord to come unto Him

or face the wrath of God. Who is doing this? Their numbers will grow in the future until the time when all will have heard the warning.

Questions and Answers

We need the story of the fate of the Jaredites as a second witness to the story of the fate of the Nephites. There are a multitude of prophets in the land warning of the evils of our society, and impending destruction, but they are also inviting us to come to the Lord, to save ourselves, and to join them in warning others.

Hi PR,

1 And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

12 And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

20 And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction; So in these 3 verses the prophets were sent and all three times the people would not be prevailed upon.

I haven't heard anything that remotely seems to mirror what this chapter is saying the Lord does. In fact, I have had to go searching for "prophets" who aren't popular, who aren't polished, who will proclaim repentance. And of the ones I have been lead to, many are women. YouTube, Blogs, Social Media like Facebook, are the mediums in which I have found them, but it seems that I have to go searching, or perhaps more correctly stated, is that I have been sent in search of them.

Do you know why we aren't hearing from prophets like this chapter describes? Are you encountering others like me who have presumed that the ancient warnings from Isaiah, Jeremiah, John the Revelator, and many others including the Book of Mormon prophets are the only ones bold enough to speak because of how the mainstream media has silenced so much of the free speech in the world? Or do you know if the Lord hasn't sent these kinds of prophets yet because of timing? **[There have been prophets who have spoken out from various places, but they are generally ignored. They do not come from institutional religions. More prophets will raise their voices and become more prevalent as we near the end. PR]**

Thanks for all you do PR. I am truly grateful.

"Who is doing this? Their numbers will grow in the future until the time when all will have heard the warning."

I know the Lord does not tell you times but this sentence seems to hint that we still have a time (a few years) of warning, even though we may see some judgement events.

Is this accurate? **[We are in the middle of some of the events, but the full judgment of God is a way to go. I can't say how many years. Wish I knew. PR]**

PR, were the plates of the Jaredites given to the Nephites for the same reason the story of the Nephites was given to, us, the Gentiles? To teach them? The Nephites had the records also...so I was wondering if the Nephites were offered the same thing as what we have been offered through the Book of Mormon? And it seems the record shows that “many” prophets were sent three different times...is there significance to this? **[The Nephites mostly studied the brass plates and the words of their prophets since Nephi. The Jaredite record was available as a portion, like what we have. They understood the Doctrine of Christ until the people fell. The Lord sends many prophets to warn His people when they begin to fall. Such was the case with the people of Israel, Jerusalem, the Nephites, and even today. How many generations have the Christians looked forward to His coming in modern times. Since the days of Joseph Smith there has been such a call to repent. I know of prophets coming from every corner of the earth speaking of His coming and the need to repent and prepare. Is there any adult that has not heard that message from somewhere? Usually it is scoffed at and ignored. PR]**

The Eye of Faith – Ether 12:1-41

1 And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land. **[By this time, the Jaredites had lived in America approximately 1500 years since the Brother of Jared led the people to the land.]**

2 And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him. **[One way to know your actions are led by the Spirit is that you cannot be “restrained” from taking action upon the Spirit’s guidance. I have seen and experienced this many times. When the Spirit comes over a person they may be constrained to take immediate action, to offer assistance, to prophesy, to speak in tongues, to heal, to perform a miracle, and to do things not of the ordinary. It feels uncomfortable to not do it because of the great urgency and desire that overwhelms the person filled with the Spirit of the Lord.]**

3 For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled— **[This is a classic role of an anointed prophet. They preach repentance to the Lord, that if they do not turn they shall be destroyed, and that by their faith it will be made possible. Teaching the people how to exercise faith is the hallmark of a great prophet!]**

4 Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God. **[The anchor is the knowledge that they have been saved in the kingdom of the Father, quickened in the Spirit unto a**

higher resurrection. Such faith comes by seeking His revelation and acting upon it.]

5 And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not. **[A typical reaction to a prophet: “Show me a sign! Why should we believe you?]**

At this point, Moroni injects his thoughts into the text of the record. He feels passionate about the topic of faith, as it relates to the entire record of the Book of Mormon. The rest of this chapter encompasses the purpose and greatness of the record and what the prophets have been trying to tell us!

6 And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith. **[You must first take action to know the Lord and seek after Him, then comes the witness.]**

7 For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers **[in the land of Bountiful]**, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him **[It came a year after His resurrection, after they had followed the Spirit and had journeyed to the temple in Bountiful at Passover.]**; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world. **[They had to gather according to the Spirit, which for many could not be restrained.]**

8 But because of the faith of men **[all those who believe in Him]** he has shown himself unto the world **[in many places]**, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift **[To stand in His presence while in the flesh]**, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen. **[Hope upon the words of those who have witnessed Him, having not yet seen for themselves.]**

9 Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.

To have hope is to believe in the promise from the Lord that we can indeed come to Him, see His face, and know for ourselves that He lives. This hope becomes an “anchor to our soul” as we pursue our Second Comforter experience. We must believe in order to plant the seed and begin the process.

Once we plant the seed in our heart we must nourish the desire that we may obtain the prize. This requires us to exercise faith, which we do by asking God for that which we desire. The asking and reaching, and endeavoring to pierce the veil is required to come to Him. This is where the Holy Spirit teaches us all we need in order to become a Son or Daughter of God, and to be reborn in the Spirit, new in Jesus Christ. Moroni now list examples:

10 Behold it was by faith that they of old **[Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the all the great patriarchs before the flood.]** were called after the holy order of God.

[The “holy order of God” is another expression that means “priesthood,” or in other words a true relationship with the Father.]

11 Wherefore, by faith **[seeking the Lord’s will and acting upon it]** was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled. **[Even Christ Himself acted in faith and created a “more excellent way” for us to come to the Father.]**

12 For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith. **[This is a key statement. Until we make an effort to come to Him, He will not show himself unto us. What is the miracle spoken here? All the gifts of the Spirit are available for us to learn of Him, serve others, and prepare ourselves to know Him in the same way as the prophets of old.]**

13 Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth. **[This is an interesting choice of examples of great faith. Alma and Amulek had suffered much at the hands of the leaders of Ammonihah. After being forced to witness the brutal burning alive of the believers in the city, they were put in prison without food and clothing for a long period, and received regular beatings. During this suffering they cried to the Lord in faith and were delivered. (Alma 14:28-29) The Lord often allows us to struggle before our faith yields its desired result.]**

I have learned there are two laws of heaven that often come into play regarding our faith: the first is the Law of Asking, and the second, the Law of the Last Second.

The Law of Asking requires that we exercise faith by asking the Lord for that which we desire. We must ask with real intent, a pure desire without guile, and believe and hope for the Lord to grant it unto us in righteousness. Many blessings are never given because we simply do not think to ask. The Law of the Last Second is an interesting one. The Lord will often stretch our faith to the point of breaking. We may think we can go no further, and sometimes when we are almost beyond hope the promised blessing is realized. You must not give up, but believe!

14 Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost. **[What happened there? They prayed for the Lamanites who desired to kill them. Like Alma and Amulek, they were suffering in prison. They prayed and asked for a miracle, and because of their faith the heavens opened and the miracle was granted. Approximately 300 souls received the baptism of fire and Holy Ghost that day. (Helaman 5:21-52)]**

15 Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites. **[Ammon and the other sons of Mosiah exercised faith, endured great suffering, and yet were the Lord’s tools in bringing many thousands of Lamanites to the Lord. Many of them had sufficient faith to also witness the Lord while in the flesh.]**

16 Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after. [**“Miracles” constitute all the gifts of the Spirit, including the gift of Knowledge that Jesus is the Christ. This is the Second Comforter, but often the other gifts are first learned and exercised before this occurs.**]

17 And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith. [**It was according to the three disciples' faith in asking for that which they desired that led to the gift of translation for the purpose of continued service to the Lord without tasting of death. This was not some random desire they had, for the Spirit of the Lord put it into their hearts and they had the courage to ask. What desire does the Lord put into your heart? If the purpose is to serve Him and is motivated by love and not personal enrichment, it is likely from the Lord.**]

18 And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God. [**This pattern is the way in which we exercise all the gifts of the Spirit.**]

19 And there were many [**There were far more examples of the great faith of different people than Moroni could include in the writing.**] whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil [**When faith is sufficient, the Lord can not withhold His glory and the person is allowed to see.**], but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad. [**What is an eye of faith? It is the sacred imagination that prepares the individual to see in the Spirit. It is to look into your mind with anticipation of the end result. It is the foundation of faith by which all things are possible!**]

20 And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word [**The word was the Brother of Jared's request “Show thyself.”**] which he had spoken unto him [**the Lord**], which word he had obtained by faith.

21 And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil. [**This is the effect of having the veil removed and standing in the presence of the Lord. You now have knowledge given freely. The principle of faith doesn't end after the veil is rent, for you must push forward, asking the Lord the questions that the Spirit leads you to inquire. A single question in the Heavenly Realm yields far more answers than you can imagine, and also leads to an infinite number of follow up questions. Jesus Christ truly is the Fountain of Living Waters!**]

22 And it is by faith [**Asking the Lord in faith and acting upon the revelation.**] that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren [**the Lamanites**] through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ. [**And thus, Moroni received his commission.**]

23 And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them; **[Moroni knew that their ability to convey the message in writing was limited. How could he convince those who would read this in the future that he was writing the truth? How can they believe in miracles?]**

24 And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them. **[The writing language of the Brother of Jared was filled with nuance and description. Whereas, the Nephite language was limited and easily open to interpretation and misunderstanding.]**

25 Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words. **[It helps that the translation would come forth by the power of God. Joseph Smith and future translations all come by the gifts of the Spirit, which helps to find the true meaning behind the writings given. However, when reading the Book of Mormon we should listen to the Spirit and discern when there is a nuanced meaning that perhaps goes beyond the translation.]**

26 And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn **[realize their folly]**; and my grace **[blessing of Eternal Life]** is sufficient for the meek **[those who seek me above all else]**, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

27 And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness **[natural limitations]**. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble **[seek the Lord]**; and my grace **[blessing that opens the gifts of the Spirit]** is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me **[repent]**, and have faith in me **[seek revelation and act upon it]**, then will I make weak things become strong unto them. **[They will grow in the gifts of the Spirit until the perfect day.]**

This is one of the most powerful verses in scripture. The Lord reveals these exact words to Moroni regarding the process of receiving Him by faith. He acknowledges that we as humans have weakness. This is the natural man, the creature of mortality that functions according to the five senses and doesn't comprehend God with the natural senses. This is the "weakness" the Lord is referring to. There are many temptations that this veil of the flesh may cause the unrepentant soul to fall prey to, but the Lord said He would "make weak things become strong" unto those who humble themselves and have faith in Him. The Lord has promised all those who exercise faith will become strong in overcoming their weakness.

28 Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness **[their lack of spiritual understanding]**, and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto

me—the fountain of all righteousness. **[Faith, hope, and charity = repentance, baptism, and the Holy Ghost]**

As we seek to follow the Doctrine of Christ the Lord will open unto us all the blessings promised.

29 And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith; **[The Lord knows our hearts. He knows who loves Him and desires to come to Him. He plants the “Elect,” the recipients of the Everlasting Covenant, throughout the world in the last days, and their faith will lead to the fulfillment of all the promises of the prophets since the beginning.]**

30 For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith.

How does this happen? Did the brother of Jared just decide he wanted to move a mountain and because he believed it happened? No, not like that. He saw a problem, took it to the Lord and requested a miracle. The Lord granted it according to his faith, and the miracle came to pass.

The Lord showed me that as the people of Jared made their way north and east that they came to a wide mountain range covered with snow. There was no way to pass. For three days the Brother of Jared prayed to the Lord and pleaded with him to help them find a way to pass over the mountains. On the third day they saw that the snow had melted over a certain part and the path was made clear for them. The mountain was “removed” in that they were able to pass through. I don’t know that part of the world, but it seemed to be north and east of current day Iraq and Turkey. (personal journal)

31 For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples **[all those disciples since the beginning who have come unto Christ];** for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.

32 And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house **[place of progression]** for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father **[the hierarchies of angels along the path to progression, which is the Everlasting Covenant],** in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.

33 And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men. **[The necessary requirement of sacrifice to lift the souls of men and establish a Father and child relationship with those who come unto Him.]**

34 And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast

prepared in the mansions of thy Father. **[Charity is synonymous with the gift of the Holy Ghost. It is a state of spiritual union with the Lord that allows one to stand in the presence of the Lord in the Heavenly Realm.]**

35 Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity **[do not come unto Him]**, because of our weakness **[will not exercise faith]**, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent **[gift from heaven]**, yea, even that which they have received **[the words of the prophets]**, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly. **[more knowledge to those who are willing to accept it]**

36 And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace **[the opportunity to receive the Gospel]**, that they might have charity. **[gift of the Holy Ghost and Eternal Life]**

37 And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father. **[The Lord makes it clear to Moroni that he need not concern himself with the Gentiles acquiring the grace, or blessings of Eternal Life. The Lord is the ultimate judge, and Moroni has learned to come unto Him, and he has been richly blessed with the fullness of the Holy Ghost, and is prepared to move forward toward his own exaltation.]**

38 And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood. **[This is an expression that means he has done all in his power to preach repentance and bring others to Christ.]**

39 And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things; **[This is Moroni's own plainly written witness that he too has spoken with the Lord "face to face." Such a declaration given after the example of so many to emphasize the truthfulness of these words.]**

I too have seen Jesus, and talked with him face to face. Everything written by Moroni in this chapter is true, in every imaginable way. It is not an illusion or fantasy of the mind. To stand in the presence of the Lord is more tangible than if you were to shake the hand of your best friend, yet far more glorious and impactful! It is the culminating moment of your faith, the fruit of the Tree of Life, the fullness of the gift of the Holy Ghost, and available to all who exercise faith in Him.

40 And only a few **[examples of such events]** have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

41 And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus **[begin your own quest]** of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

This is the most lofty chapter in the Book of Mormon. It points the reader to the reality of having a face to face with the Lord. It is important that Moroni emphasizes the qualification of faith, as the means to make such a thing possible. Few in this life exercise the needed faith to rend the veil and overcome their “weakness.” The Lord doesn’t want you to fail. The most important goal is to acquire “faith, hope, and charity;” which is the means to come unto Him. Those who receive Eternal Life receive the greatest gift one can receive in this life. When will the faithful have their audience with the Lord? It is different for all, but you must trust in Him, His timing, and His wisdom. Relish every bit of grace that is given to you and look forward with an eye of faith for that perfect day!

Questions and Answers

Oh my heart and soul are rejoicing!! The VERY concerns of my heart and soul and mind and such have just been revealed to me through these passages through your literal breakdown. How beautiful is the LOVE OF OUR FATHER!!! I sincerely love you Brother “PR” and simply feel “blessed” the Lord has allowed me to personally build an unwavering, sincere testimony of the Gospel Doctrine of Jesus Christ through your words of wisdom that you reverently share with us. My heart is FULL in ways I never thought possible!!!!

Note from vs 7: “They had to gather according to the Spirit, which for many could not be restrained.”

When I read this, I had the instant thought that this is how it will be for many of us again when it is time to gather. We won’t be able to resist the Spirit leading us to take whatever the initial steps are to gather.

This has been an interesting journey for me. I feel as if I have never actually read the Book of Mormon before. I am beginning to understand the Lord’s condemnation for taking this sacred record so lightly.

Did the Brother of Jared literally move a mountain?... Have you seen what happened? **[I will add my addendum to verse 30. PR]**

I have a general question for you about spiritual armor, not related to this chapter. This may be of general interest to others, as well. I have not received my spiritual armor (to my knowledge, in the way you have described), but I was in a situation last night where I felt cut off from the Spirit of the Lord and felt the influences of the adversary. I took a look at what resources I did have available to me, and found a 1:1 correspondence between the various parts of the spiritual armor. I used what I had, and thanks be to God, was able to overcome the darkness. I knew it was overcome because the Lord immediately revealed a great mystery to me. So, my question is can we claim our armor from the Lord, even in the very hour of need? I believe the answer is Yes, but I would love to hear your views on this subject. And, thank you for providing the heads-up so we have the knowledge of what to expect and how to deal with it. **[Yes, we can receive gifts, blessings, and armor in the very moment we need them as we exercise**

faith. Whenever we are confronted with the Adversary the best thing to do is to pause, ask the Lord, “What do you want me to do?” Often, He will give suggestions in the form of revelations, or if you have more experience will respond, “What do you think?” The armor is a very personal way of strengthening one’s spiritual fortitude. PR]

“When the Spirit comes over a person they may be constrained to take immediate action”. What happens if a person feels so constrained, but, out of fear, doesn’t act? Is forgiveness possible?

This happened to me once. I felt constrained to bear my testimony to something that was said, but I didn’t. It was a little thing at the time, but it seems really important. I failed, and I feel that I let the Lord down. But, now I feel constrained all the time to teach and bear my testimony, whenever truth is spoken, and I do so. But, is forgiveness possible? I believe it is, but hearing it from another person would help, and hopefully others as well. **[The Lord always forgives. It is not uncommon for the lord’s servants to fail at times. He knows that our weakness, fears, discouragement, and pride can often prevent us from taking action and exercising faith. The key is that we don’t give up. PR]**

For verses 35 and 36 it seems that there is a dual meaning of the word gentiles? In this case gentiles as a whole but also the latter day gentile church for taking the Book of Mormon lightly? Would that be a more correct way to read those two verses? **[It was the Gentiles who received the Gospel of the New Covenant through the Bible, and then the modern Gentiles who received the Book of Mormon’s New Covenant. I believe you are correct. PR]**

To make weak things strong. Can you help me understand this better. If I have a spirit of criticism which would be a weakness, how can that spirit of criticism become a strength? Any help is appreciated. **[The word “weakness” is not used here the way we think of “weaknesses,” as character flaws. The Lord is speaking of the weakness of the flesh in general, the whole situation of being born in mortality with a body with limited spiritual abilities. The different character flaws and addictive tendencies people have are a byproduct of this weakness, but the Lord doesn’t give that to us. What the Lord does give us is the means to overcome. PR]**

This has been a powerful chapter, so many levels. I love and appreciate all of the comments, which have added much insight as well. I am so looking forward to the printed book when you are directed to get it done. It will bless so many more lives. As I was reading I kept visualizing each one of us taking The Word forth and teaching it with clarity and power, and great understanding. Hebrews 4:12 “For the word of God is quick and powerful and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.” Visions of our ability to heal by the power of the Spirit according to the will of God, knowing what the will of the Lord is and being filled with the Spirit as an instrument in His hands! Powerful!

“Often, He will give suggestions in the form of revelations, or if you have more experience will respond, “What do you think?”

When He asks, “what do you think”, what does that process usually look like then?

Making suggestions and waiting for His approval or just going for it? **[When you gain a degree of confidence with the Lord you are able to just do it. The confidence is knowing that His Spirit is guiding your actions. In the early phases of dealing with the Adversary you are best to ask the Lord how and what to do in every situation. Not until He gives you that green light are you safe to do any different. PR]**

“It is not uncommon for the lord’s servants to fail at times. He knows that our weakness, fears, discouragement, and pride can often prevent us from taking action and exercising faith.”

I’ve been pondering for months why Joseph labeled the BoM people’s harnessed pulling animal as a “horse” when I believe he recognized the species. I’ve wondered if there already existed old fables of people driving sleighs and carts pulled by non-horse (or non-typical) animals and Joseph feared people would disbelieve the record or label it fantastical fiction if he listed the true species. Is it possible his fear led him to do this? Or was he commanded to conceal the species? **[Joseph saw what they were. Some things are better left veiled by words to avoid distractions. I have been instructed to do this more than a few times in my writings. PR]**

Greetings P.R

We know that Christ has said that if you have faith the size of a mustard seed then you will be able to move mountains. It seems to me that faith that is sufficient to move a mountain is pretty great, yet Jesus compared it to the size of a mustard seed. Is there a deeper meaning behind this statement from the Lord? What is He saying really? This chapter is talking about great faith. If this type of faith is compared to the size of a mustard seed then what is an example of faith that is bigger or greater than that?

I hope my question is making sense.

Also, I am very curious to know the background story behind the BoJ moving a mountain if you are able to share. This is the only place in scripture that I am aware of that mentions a man actually moving a mountain.

Thanks P.R **[A little mustard seed has all the potential within itself to become a large and fruitful tree. In like manner, we too have the potential to become powerful in priesthood by our faith. PR]**

V 35....” that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent [gift from heaven], yea, even that which they have received [the words of the prophets], and give unto them who shall have more abundantly. [more knowledge to those who are willing to accept it]” More specifically, are those who shall have more abundantly the Native Americans? **[This is referring to the end of the Times of the Gentiles and the beginning of the gathering of Israel. These are the Remnant of Jacob (Native Americans), a remnant of the Gentiles who are the Elect (House of Israel by covenant), and the Jews who are gathered. PR]**

Hi PR

(they had followed the Spirit and had journeyed to the temple in Bountiful at Passover.) What ordinances/covenants did they perform in their temples if you know? Apart from being a place where they gathered to learn from the leaders. I don't think we hear much about temples in the BOM and I'm curious to know their role in the salvation of the people. I guess I just want to know if baptism and receiving the gift of the Holy Ghost is being done outside these walls, what were they doing inside of them? Thank you so much. Chelsea **[They only did the ordinances taught by Moses within the temple walls. When they came to Bountiful after the destructions they did not know what they would do, just that the Spirit was guiding them to go there. PR]**

I'm trying to learn the degree to which God works through the natural laws of nature in the telestial world and to what degree He is bound by them, if at all. I have a good friend who doesn't believe that certain miracles found in the scriptures actually happened because science would disagree, or that there must be a pragmatic scientific explanation. When something challenges his ability to believe, he decides it must be allegorical. It's a popular modern wisdom that God works through the natural laws of physics, thus enabling theories like evolution or such to settle into people's minds as being possible means by which God created life on earth. In my opinion, this line of thinking fosters unbelief if one cannot see how God might bring about a given miracle because there is no rational way for it to take place, even if that person wishes God has a way to do it. Would you mind sharing your experience and feelings on the matter? It seems you've beheld a number of miraculous events in scripture that are indeed explained by some more mundane processes of the physical world, even if those were enacted by God (such as the removal of the snow so they could pass). Thanks! **[Everything harmonizes in the eternal realms, which means all things obey God's commands. This trickles down to the natural laws that seem to dictate the temporal world. There are different laws that work in the higher realms of the Spirit. What science can explain in this world is so rudimentary that it's the equivalent of a small child trying to explain the law of relativity. There are many so-called "laws of science" that have no bearing in that realm. PR]**

Ether Prophecies – Ether 13:1-31

1 And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.

2 For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof; **[Why do you suppose that North America was designated "a choice land above all others?" It is because herein lies the land of Adam and his**

children. It was dedicated to the Lord from the beginning. The land up until the time of Noah was divided according to the sacred triangle of space reaching from Missouri, to the Gulf of Mexico, and the western side of the Rocky Mountains.]

3 And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord. **[When the earth becomes new, the New Jerusalem, after having been lifted up, will be placed upon the earth after its baptism of fire.]**

4 Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land. **[which shall be built in the original place of the land of Adam]**

5 And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel— **[Ether prophesied of the Jewish Diaspora and the rebuilding of Jerusalem. There is still more that must occur.]**

6 And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type. **[The city will be mostly built by the Remnant of Jacob, or in other words, the Lamanite descendants.]**

7 For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

8 Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old **[This is a reference to the “City of Peace,” or as it is referred to as the city of Salem which was taken up to the Lord. The current location of Jerusalem is near this location.];** and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away. **[This is a profound prophecy, for the city of Jerusalem had not even been thought of yet. Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob had not yet walked the earth. But, Ether prophesied what would become of the land of the Jaredites.]**

The city of Salem was taken before the people of Jared migrated away from Babel. They were a remnant that had not lived up to the covenants given of Melchizedek to the people. But, because of the prayers of the brother of Jared were spared and given an opportunity to dwell in the most sacred of lands.

9 And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new. **[When Christ comes the earth will be bathed in fire and all life upon it shall cease. The spirit of the world itself shall be resurrected and all shall be new. In other words it will not inhabit the same body of material and space, but ascend to a new glory in the terrestrial realm. A “new heaven, and a new earth.”]**

10 And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who

are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

11 And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

There are two places which the Lord will actually preserve to be placed upon the new earth. That is the Old and New Jerusalem. Why does the Lord preserve those two places? Because they will stand as a monument to His work among the House of Israel for the eternities.

12 And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first. **[A reference to the 4th estate, the Saviors Upon Mount Zion, who assisted the Lord in saving the House of Israel.]**

13 And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people. **[Even today, these prophecies are considered ridiculous to the world.]**

14 And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of this record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

15 And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

16 And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

17 But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

18 Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

19 And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

20 And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people— **[A final plea for repentance and deliverance. It grieved the Lord to see this part of His vineyard perish.]**

21 Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household **[his people]** save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and

Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

22 And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

23 And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

24 And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

25 Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

26 And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

27 And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

28 And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

29 And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

30 And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.

31 And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

At this point it is a freefall into death and destruction for the Jaredite people.

Questions and Answers

There are two places which the Lord will actually preserve to be placed upon the new earth. That is the Old and New Jerusalem. Why does the Lord preserve those two places? Because they will stand as a monument to His work among the House of Israel for the eternities...

Are these also referring to the Cities of Enoch and Melchizedek? Or is it referring to actual persons? **[To those places, which are also significant. PR]**

And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first. [A reference to the 4th estate, the Saviors Upon Mount Zion, who assisted the Lord in saving the House of Israel.

Is it ok to ask another question? (forgive me, but my head and heart need to be in the same page..) Can you elaborate at all regarding the Motherhood roles of Sarah, Rebekah and Rachel? Or Lucy Smith? I LOVE THEM!! **[They are the greatest among**

women, called and anointed to be priestesses to their husbands from before the foundation of the world. They follow the path of the Everlasting Covenant and will some day be the Mother of all Living in a world of their creation. And this same path is for all who continue in faith. PR]

["In other words it will not inhabit the same body of material and space, but ascend to a new glory in the terrestrial realm. A "new heaven, and a new earth."] Can you share more about this statement? Does it go into a closer orbit around the sun? Or does it leave this solar system and move in closer to Kolob? Or does it go to another dimension? Anything you can tell is much appreciated. Thank you for sharing what you have learned from the Lord. **[The spirit of the earth ascends to the Terrestrial. This is closer to Kolob, but not in the Celestial realm. The Earth's body will be dead and without life. It is a planetary resurrection for Mother Earth as she follows a similar path of progression as do we. PR]**

And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first. [A reference to the 4th estate, the Saviors Upon Mount Zion, who assisted the Lord in saving the House of Israel.] Does this scripture reference that the 4th estate came here several times during the life of this earth? Then they are done with their mission and move forward to the next Estate on a new earth? **[When the 4th estate finish their mission at the commencement of the final dispensation, they will be prepared to move forward on their path of progression in a new world. The first are now last, and so on. PR]**

13 And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether;Are the rest of the prophecies of Ether going to come forward to be read soon ? Are they hidden with all the other records? Have you been taught these marvelous prophecies in your times with the Lord? Sorry for all the questions. I just love to learn all I can. Thank you for your patience, **[I do not know if Ether's prophecies are included in the sealed portion of the plates. I do not know if I have seen the same things or not. Sometimes, people are shown different things depending upon the questions they ask. PR]**

25 Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

26 And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.....

Is this basically what will happen in these last days? It seems the same problems, evils and destructions continually happen in a never ending cycle. Are the 1st Estate spirits allowed to view these events as they transpire on this earth? Do we ever learn from history? It is very sad that we cannot learn from the past. **[It will be much like this when society collapses and before the rise of the Remnant of Jacob. The first estate do not witness these things firsthand. Their training is focused upon training their hearts to seek truth. PR]**

Vs 16: “Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world”

When we see this in the BoM, does it mean “worldly knowledge” or is it more wicked than just knowing slick, lawyer-like language and cunning ways to argue or persuade? **[He was well educated, especially in matters of war and politics. PR]**

[PR The Earth’s body will be dead and without life.] Your answer to my question above. Does the earth stay dead and lifeless or does it go through another cycle with a new spirit and with a new Adam or Eve? Is it possible some of the planets in our solar system (like Venus or Mars) have had cycles of life on them like our earth has had? I just wonder about the purpose of these dead planets. Thank you so much PR, your Book of Mormon insights has been an absolute JOY to look forward to read almost daily! I have learned so much! I will truly miss this. It is just a huge spiritual uplift everyday to read your material that has been revealed to you by our Savior. I hope the Lord will allow you to continue to share your amazing revelations He has given you. It means so much to me personally to have this to look forward to almost daily, as this world tumbles into increasing wickedness, to have a bright light of gospel truth to ponder upon. I pray the Lord will allow you to continue to share what you are learning. It is a huge inspiration to press forward to receive our own revelations and to grow in holiness. Also, I hope you can share more stories of rescuing others around this world. It fills my soul with gladness to hear about your adventures here on this earth. That God has His angels there to rescue us when we may find ourselves in dire circumstances. God’s blessings upon you PR. **[Thank you, the Lord is so merciful. I don’t know if the body of this earth has life given to it again. I have not seen that. It will appear like a rock in space after the cleansing. The glorified earth will appear as a sun in the firmament, and this is only in its Terrestrial State. It must then go forward to its fifth estate and follow the path of the Everlasting Covenant. PR]**

“The land up until the time of Noah was divided according to the sacred triangle of space reaching from Missouri, to the Gulf of Mexico, and the western side of the Rocky Mountains.”

I live in Texas and have felt sad that my region is not involved in the BoM as much. Have you seen anything of note that took place in Texas or near the Texas coastline? **[Not particularly in relation to the Book of Mormon, but it was a part of the sacred land of Adam and close to where the City of Enoch originally stood. PR]**

“The city of Salem was taken before the people of Jared migrated away from Babel. They were a remnant that had not lived up to the covenants given of Melchizedek to the people. But, because of the prayers of the brother of Jared were spared and given an opportunity to dwell in the most sacred of lands.”

I had understood that the City of Enoch which was taken up was once in the Gulf of Mexico. Was the Tower of Babel in Iraq? **[Yes, in the northern part. PR]**

The sacred land of Adam – “the sacred triangle of space reaching from Missouri, to the Gulf of Mexico, and the western side of the Rocky Mountains”

Does this area function as a safe haven during the hard times coming?
Or not really because while some areas may be a refuge, there are wicked cities that will be destroyed so the sacred triangle area doesn't mean much when it comes to the destructions? **[It will be the future lands of Zion, but not a safe haven until it is established. PR]**

When our Earth's telestial body is dead, will the telestial spirits who died at the Lord's second coming remain on the earth though in the spirit? If our Earth's spirit will have departed, can the spirits of those people even remain there? If so, will Satan and his angels also remain tied to the body of the Earth? Will the telestial spirits be ministered to by those of the Terrestrial Earth or will they have to endure this "night" where no labour can be performed? **[At that point the earth will be a literal prison for those who did not repent. They will remain there until the end of the Millennium. From there, as God performs the final judgment, those of perdition will be sent to outer darkness, and those of telestial will be sent to another alive world. PR]**

These last two chapters have been joy to read and ponder with you. Thank you so much!

[At that point the earth will be a literal prison for those who did not repent. They will remain there until the end of the Millennium. From there, as God performs the final judgment, those of perdition will be sent to outer darkness, and those of telestial will be sent to another alive world. PR]

So...Then where do the things and events in the millennium take place if the earth is dead and void of life?

you said, "There are two places which the Lord will actually preserve to be placed upon the new earth. That is the Old and New Jerusalem"

so I'm thinking that a part of North America will still have life left on it, with 3rd estate type people after the Lord comes again and the earth is cleansed with fire. Is that correct?

If not correct, Will Zion be on the earth during that time? **[Zion exists on earth until the time of His coming. The earth will be cleansed with fire, the city of New and Old Jerusalem will be taken up to heaven and be taken to a new heaven and new earth of terrestrial glory closer to the abode of God. PR]**

"The earth will be cleansed with fire, the city of New and Old Jerusalem will be taken up to heaven and be taken to a new heaven and new earth of terrestrial glory closer to the abode of God. PR"

So New and Old Jerusalem AND this earth's female spirit go to a new "earth"/planet to reside, which has glory and appears like our sun? (We basically go live in a sun planet, because we can withstand that glory, correct?) **[Yes, but the earth doesn't go to an existing planet. It is resurrected as such, just like we will be. PR]**

If our sun has a male spirit, according to the Pearl of Great Price, is the progression for the male and female planets the same?

Is there any noticeable difference in landform, vegetation and appearance if you reside on a male or female planet? **[Yes, there is Kolob, the female planet adorned with beauty (Eden), and the Throne which is Koholo. They reign side by side**

at the center of creation. I do not know how they would appear different to those living upon it. PR]

Something that continues to confuse me in regards to the Everlasting Covenant... We take the Savior's atonement to be everlasting and infinite, and when we are spiritually begotten of Christ, that he becomes our covenant Father... But then, when we condescend again, in a new world as fourth estate, it would appear we look to a new Savior, who would then become our new covenant Father, once we're spiritually begotten again in that new creation... This seems to make Jesus' atonement in this cycle a bit less "infinite" than we often speak of... If each cycle we need to be spiritually begotten, then when are we heirs to salvation and not subject to spiritual death? How does the atonement wrought in this creation cycle affect us in new creation cycles? **[That is a good question, but I cannot answer it directly without unfolding the particulars of the Everlasting Covenant that I am not permitted to do. I will say that our connection to Jesus Christ never diminishes, ever. It all fits together beautifully, as we sacrifice to save souls for our Father's kingdom. PR]**

I once prayed and asked who I should pray to since scripture contains people both praying to HF or directly to Christ. The answer I received was that I was to pray to Heavenly Father because I was "safely" under covenant with Him. (I felt the sensation of safety, for lack of a better way to describe what was communicated, but perhaps "already under existing covenant" would be applicable wording.) Perhaps after the baptism of fire those instructions will change. I wondered if this was part of the Everlasting Covenant? Where I am relying on an existing covenant with HF as I am in this life, trying to follow through on covenants made with Christ? **[That is likely the case. PR]**

[That is a good question, but I cannot answer it directly without unfolding the particulars of the Everlasting Covenant that I am not permitted to do. PR] Why aren't you permitted to reveal certain particulars about the everlasting covenant? Is it because that knowledge could prematurely damn us if we knew it but did not live it? Is it simply a trial of our faith? **[It is part of the true mysteries that the Lord desires to reveal to us directly. These things are only given after ascension and directly from the Lord. By the power of the Holy Ghost you may know the truth of all things, not through PR.]** Also, When is this knowledge given? After the baptism of fire? Gift of the Holy Ghost? Second Comforter? **[All of these. PR]**

Death and War – Ether 14:1-31

1 And now there began to be a great curse **[power of the Adversary which comes from the Lord removing his light]** upon all the land because of the iniquity of the

people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land. **[The degree of thievery and commotion was to the extent that men would not part from their possessions knowing they would be gone if left unattended.]**

2 Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

3 And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

4 And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

5 And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

6 And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

7 And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

8 Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

9 And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

10 And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

11 And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.

12 And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

13 And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

14 And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

15 And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

16 And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

17 Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.

18 And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land—Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him! **[A tactic of war to bring fear to your enemies.]**

19 And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

20 And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

21 And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

22 And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

23 And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof. **[As will be in our future before Zion is established.]**

24 Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

25 And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

26 And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore **[western side of the Great Lakes]**, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

27 And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

28 And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

29 And it came to pass that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again the second time. And it came to pass that they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

30 And it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds; and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and was carried away as though he were dead.

31 Now the loss of men, women and children on both sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp.

This chapter prepares us for the final ending of the Jaredite civilization. It paints a picture of the hopelessness and waste of human life that comes from wickedness and hate. Today, very little of their civilization remains. Most has crumbled over the thousands of years. There are a few places here

and there that remain a mystery. The closest writing to resemble that of the Jaredites is similar to Egyptian. Their language was similar to that spoken by Father Adam, but with a whole lot of changes. They were a giant people by today's standards, and are closer to how we look in our true spirit form. Such a noble people who fell to such great depths. Such will be the sorrowful remembrance of this great land that had so many blessings, yet abandoned the God of our fathers.

Questions and Answers

How did they look? How do we look in our true spirit forms? (I thought that we retain the appearance of our mortal visage if we choose). **[Much better than you do now. (smile) PR]**

Vs 7: "Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness"

Where is the wilderness they dwelt in?

Was it north or south of the General area they occupied? Or was it the mountains? **[My understanding is that it was just east of the Rocky Mountains. PR]**

"Today, very little of their civilization remains."

There seems to me to be a deliberate and ongoing effort to hide the true history of this land. Whether it is to remove artifacts from public view, misrepresent what they are or ignore artifacts altogether. Is this belief of mine accurate? **[Yes, but they cannot hide it all. PR]**

What are the " few places here and there that remain a mystery?". I've always been fascinated with the Jaredites...Can you expound on this? **[I won't go into details, but I have seen a good number of petroglyphs and archeological sites that are indeed Jaredite in North America. They have a distinct difference from Native American. PR]**

Destruction of the Jaredites – Ether 15:1-34

1 And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

2 He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; yea, there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children. **[The Jaredite population was the equivalent of the United States at the late eighteenth century. Not more than 4 million. These numbers would have been exponentially higher had it not been for the wars than plagued these people. It took only about 200 years for the United States population to reach about 300 million.]**

3 He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they

were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.
[But, his mourning was not unto repentance.]

4 And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

5 And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people. **[No response given.]**

6 And it came to pass that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

7 And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

8 And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum **[A Great Lake]**, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

9 And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

10 And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.

11 And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill **[Shim]** where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.

12 And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land **[to the best of their ability]**, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

13 And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

14 Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

15 And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and head-plates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

16 And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

17 And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again

they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

18 And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

19 But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle. **[They were possessed by spirits of hate and cruelty. There was no light in them by this time.]**

20 And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

21 And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

22 And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

23 And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz. **[This is an incredible battle if you consider the loss of life. Millions were killed by the sword. Has there been such a battle in recorded history?]**

24 And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.

25 And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.

26 And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow. And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men. **[Most all the women and children had been slain.]**

27 And it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.

28 And it came to pass that when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.

29 Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.

30 And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.

31 And it came to pass that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised up on his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died. **[An interesting note to include in the story. When the desire of the heart is to such a degree, the body will respond even without the head. In essence, Shiz was still alive until he finally fell.]**

32 And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.

33 And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and

the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them. **[Ether traveled east and wrote as a witness to the destruction of what he saw, entire cities left desolate. He abridged much of the record to be found by the new people according to the commandant of the Lord.]**

I asked the Lord regarding the prophet Ether. What became of Him? I saw an older man, wandering eastward. He brought his records and means to travel. He came out to the area where Limhi's people would eventually find the 24 gold plates written. It was north and west of Tennessee. There was a small hill with a stone structure resembling an igloo. In it was a large rock with a stone box placed upon it. The box contained the plates and on it's top cover was Jaredite writing, which was an Egyptian ankh, and above it a symbol of an eye (not Egyptian). I didn't ask what it meant, but I know that the Jaredite symbol of ankh means the knowledge of God. This was once shown to me when I found some ancient Jaredite writings on a rock wall a fair distance away from the Hill Shim. The Lord said that Ether later died of natural causes. (personal journal)

34 Now the last words which are written by Ether are these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God. Amen.

I am not aware of Ether ever being translated in the flesh. An interesting side note: there were Jaredites that survived and went south from the great battle. Their numbers were few and they were a loathsome and small remnant of these people who lived even after the fall of the Nephites. Today, they are no more.

I asked the Lord, "Did the Jaredite people survive, other than Conriantumr and Ether? I saw that there were some left behind for dead that went south. A very small number who hid themselves in the desert southwest. They became a dark and loathsome people, living like savages and even eating human flesh. They survived almost concealed from the world until long after the Nephites were destroyed. Later, after some fighting with Lamanites in the area they were finally destroyed many years before the Americas were settled. (personal journal)

Questions and Answers

"Ripliancum [A Great Lake], which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all"
Is this the one we, too, call Superior? (To Exceed All) **[No, but I feel constrained from naming it. PR]**

"there were Jaredites that survived and went south from the great battle. Their numbers were few and they were a loathsome and small remnant of these people who lived even after the fall of the Nephites. Today, they are no more."

There are old Native American legends of “giants” that lived in southern regions, such as New Mexico, but which have long since died out. Were these the descendants of the Jaredites? **[I can't speak to those legends specifically, but these few remaining Jaredites did inhabit a small portion of the southwest. PR]**

Did the Nephites encounter these Jaredite remnant peoples? **[Yes, but it was a rare occasion and no person lived to tell about it. PR]**

How long did Ether travel for? **[Ether wandered for over 20 years. He was not translated, but was able to abridge the record and carefully prepare a place for the people of Limhi to find it. There was a small hill where a stone structure, like an igloo was made. In it was a pedestal with a stone box on it containing the record. On the box was two symbols: what looked like an eye placed upon the ankh symbol. PR]**

Did you see what ended up happening to him? **[He died of something related to old age. PR]**

This is truly a tragic story. I cannot imagine how the Lord must've felt to witness His children willfully withdraw themselves from the light and plunge into total destruction; after all that He has done for them.

How did the surviving Jaredites become extinct? If they lived even after the fall of the Nephites then how did they become extinct? Did they have some sort of correspondence with the children of Lehi while they were living? Or were they just isolated and remained separate for hundreds of years? Did they also undergo a change in appearance overtime like the Lamanites? **[They became very dark and primitive, seeking to kill Lamanites for the purpose of eating them. Eventually, they were hunted down and killed by the Lamanite remnant. PR]**

When the flood cleansed this land, did the Lord also remove all of the spiritual pollution brought upon it in the spirit realm? (Devices, portals, wicked spirits that become bound to the earth, ect).... and what about that from the Jaredites?.... and Nephites? **[Wicked spirits always have the freedom to roam the earth unless confined to the Eternal Prison (which is less common). Any dark devices would be useless after the land is cleansed. PR]**

The Paiutes have legends about giant man eaters who lived in Nevada. The Pauites are said to have suffocated them in a cave with smoke.

The Paiutes called them Si-Te-Cah, a race of red-haired giants, ten feet tall, who terrorized their neighbors with cannibalism. The Paiutes eventually trapped them in Lovelock cave and smoked them to death. Some of the skeletons were recovered some years later. True story.

Also check out the Kincaid caverns in the Grand Canyon. Egyptian artifacts. 9 ft tall mummies. Government cover-up. All very interesting. **[I don't know whether that is true, but often truth is stranger than fiction. PR]**

Moroni

He is Alone – Moroni 1:1-4

1 Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared [**Book of Ether**], I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

2 For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ. [**After becoming blood-thirsty to the extent these people were, it is difficult to live in peace.**]

3 And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life.

4 Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord. [**The Book of Moroni, in his own words, is written expressly for the Lamanite remnant who will read them at a future date.**]

This is a small introductory chapter to Moroni’s own writings. Until now we have read Moroni’s annotations in the record. He now includes what he is inspired to add to finish the record.

Moroni is alone, like Ether before him. And like Ether does not know his fate. After finishing the record, Moroni will be translated and is able to cross the country to a specific location shown him of the Lord where he will deposit the plates of gold with the other sacred objects (urim and thummim attached to a breastplate). Why was Moroni translated and not Ether? Because he had a work to continue among the living.

Note of interest: For a period leading up to the final battle and for a good while afterward, Moroni did not write anything in the book of Mormon during that time. His grief for the loss of his family was overwhelming to him. He witnessed the murder of his wife and eight of his children at their homestead, as he was higher up the mountain and witnessed the entire massacre. His remaining two older children died at the Hill Shim where they made their last stand.

Questions and Answers

“He witnessed the murder of his wife and eight of his children at their homestead, as he was higher up the mountain and witnessed the entire massacre. His remaining two older children died at the Hill Shim where they made their last stand.”

Why does this happen? I thought that once you had made covenants with the Lord, one of the covenant blessings was offspring who live. Moroni the Historian has always been a favorite of mine. To know he witnessed and endured the loss of his wife and 10 children feels painful to my heart, too. **[Many prophets have seen the loss of their families. But, their trust is in the Lord. PR]**

Did Moroni re-marry before he was translated? **[No. PR]**

Was translation an eventual relief from his anguish? **[Translation doesn't give any relief from sorrow. But, to know the Lord is to know that his family is well taken care of beyond this life. PR]**

I'm still struggling with this. It seems cruel to me but I don't believe the Lord is cruel. Still, He needs Moroni to condescend and do a mission on earth. After giving Moroni a (likely) righteous wife and sending them ten children, He allows them all to be killed so Moroni is "freed up" for his mission, which requires translation. This seems like a waste! But God is not wasteful!

The issue is my own mortal weakness, faulty thinking and telestial short-sidedness and blindness but I cannot comprehend why God allowed this.

Is there any further insight you can share? **[Yes, it is heart wrenching, but as you suggested, we see it through a different lens than the Lord. I have learned on the other side that death is not viewed the same as it is here by those who pass through it. Again, the most commonly shared advice is, "Trust in the Lord." PR]**

What were the genders of his two remaining children who were not down at the homestead that day and survived? **[A male and a female. That is a story in itself, but I cannot share it. There seems to be so many back stories in scripture. There is much I don't know, but some things I do and I don't have permission to share. There is much for everyone to learn. It seems that I share much, but I barely touch the amount of information available to those who come unto Him. PR]**

The Laying on of Hands – Moroni 2:1-3

Moroni felt impressed (revelation) to include some procedural information given by the Lord to the disciples when He came to Bountiful.

1 The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—

2 And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer **[Begin by asking for direct permission, bringing down the glory of God (baptism of fire), and receiving the revelation to move forward.];** and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine

apostles. **[These were personal witnesses ordained through Christ to act in His name in this manner. The word “apostle” is a word to describe a personal emissary of the King, to act in the king’s stead as his messenger.]**
3 Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

The only people who have the authority to lay hands upon an individual and declare that they have the Holy Ghost given are witnesses of Christ that have an established relationship with the Lord. The Lord must personally commission them to do this act just as the original twelve disciples in Bountiful and Jerusalem.

Priesthood is an interesting thing. It represents a connection between a person and the Lord which is defined by their access to revelation and power from Heaven. If they do not know the Lord, they have no voice to speak for Him.

The truth regarding the laying on of hands for the gift of the Holy Ghost is not that the priesthood holder has the ability to give the gift to whomever they feel is worthy. It is that they act as a facilitator of faith for the individual, to declare to them by prophecy that the Lord has found them worthy to receive the gift. The receiver of the gift is told what is occurring at that moment as the hands are laid upon them.

Questions and Answers

Is it appropriate for a person to begin their morning devotional to the Lord in this manner “[Begin by asking for direct permission, bringing down the glory of God (baptism of fire), and receiving the revelation to move forward.]” as well? **[I do a little more than that. I begin by stating my desire, I ask for forgiveness, then ask to be bathed in the light (baptism of fire), then I ask to receive revelation. If I know I will be performing an ordinance or blessing I do this prior and only on the spot if that is the only option. But, even if I get permission the day before, I still pray at the location and ask the light to come. PR]**
And also for each time they perform a Priesthood ordinance, such as baptism?

PR, how do you navigate situations where you may be asked to lay hands on someone “to give the gift of the Holy Ghost” but it is a symbolic act?

Once you know the truth, is it a mockery to still do the symbolic laying on of hands ordinance? **[First, I would ask the Lord what he wants me to do. Most ordinances done today for the purpose of confirming the Holy Ghost are more symbolic in nature, like the endowment in the temple. They are like a formality that confirms you a member of the church and instructs the individual to receive the Holy Ghost. I would never give a blessing and end in “the name of Jesus” unless it was given by the power of His Spirit. PR]**

Is the sealing power (or power for the laying on of hands to give the Holy Ghost; is that power the sealing power?) among people today or is that something that will be ushered in during the tribulations leading up to Christ coming? **[Any time a person acts in the name of Christ it is a degree of sealing power. What most people think of when using that term is the full power of God to control the elements. That is the part of the fullness of sealing power given in this world to the 4th estate servants called to gather Israel. PR]**

Many claim authority and power of God yet Lack the permission and relationship with Christ. I think it was Joseph that said the keys of the priesthood is knowledge (can't remember). I'm surprised at how many people deny the true power of god these days. The prophecies of Nephi and Mormon are being fulfilled. **[To have "knowledge" is to know the Lord intimately, then comes the bestowal of authority to do His work. The more you know, the more you are capable of serving. PR]**

"... I begin by stating my desire, I ask for forgiveness, then ask to be bathed in the light (baptism of fire), then receive the revelation. If I know I will be performing an ordinance or blessing I do this prior and only on the spot if that is the only option"

Would it be appropriate to walk up to someone who say, has a blown out knee, lay hands on that knee (with their permission), and say "Dear Jesus, we thank you for providing this man with a new knee right now. Thank you, Jesus. or.... In Jesus name, knee, be completely restored". **[It can yield results if the circumstances are right, but I believe there is a better way. It's the difference between preparation and simply hoping for the best. Jesus healed every person He attempted to heal because He explicitly knew the will of the Father, the situation at hand, and the faith of the individual. Those who do their best in faith are to be commended, but without revelation they will not have the same degree of success. This is what happened in Matthew 17:20-21. The Apostles did not seek revelation, but leaned upon simply saying the words that they thought would work, and it did not. The Lord was trying to teach them that only by prayer and fasting could they receive the revelation to know exactly what was required. Not all situations are the same. Even these wonderful people who focus their ministry healing in the name of Christ do not have a high percentage healing record. My suggestion is to always ask the Lord what to do, learn to hear His voice, and expect mixed results as you go. It is a process of learning to use the gifts of the Spirit. PR]**

I ask because I am aware of several people doing this who seem to actually be healing people with this. They also relate stories of having been baptized in the holy spirit. I know a few who do this almost every day and have been doing this for literally years. I'm captivated by this. I would really appreciate your insight on it.

PR

Many thanks for the insight! thank you.

So the first thing or requirement for healing is that a person must be baptized by the holy ghost, correct? (That is the only way a person can operate in the gifts of the spirit, I think). **[The healing comes through the glory of God coming upon them. This is a baptism of fire, but not the gift of the Holy Ghost. This is why the Lord**

said their sins were forgiven, which is what occurs when the glory descends upon them. PR]

Matt 17:20-21! Yes. Ok- Also I have wanted to ask you about the new testament. (I can only HOPE you are considering doing this sort of spiritual insight/translation that you've done here with the book of Mormon with the NT...)

My question is: compared to the Book of Mormon accuracy, how far off is the content of the New Testament from what we have today? Specifically, do you know if Joseph Smith fixed all or most or just some of the errors in the JST? Are the 4 gospels more accurate than the rest of the NT?

(I loved your book "witness to the life of Christ" it seems like much was left out of the NT when I read that witness, but I'm talking about the accuracy of the content of what the world actually has today). Thanks! many thanks **[Joseph Smith was never able to fully go through the Bible and only made some notes in the New Testament. When you look at what he did in Genesis (the books of Moses) you see the degree in which he would have done the entire Bible if he had lived. I have no intention of going through the entirety of any more scriptural books, but I will do some chapters in the Bible, Abraham, and D&C in the same manner as I did the BofM, sharing my thoughts for others to consider. The scriptures are truly marvelous! PR]**

How would you end a prayer instead of "In Jesus' name" if you weren't inspired to say it? **[Saying, "In the name of Jesus Christ, Amen." is more a colloquial phrase that has become a standard of public and personal prayer. The original Christians did not do this. They simply ended in "Amen" or even began their prayers with "Amen" to mean "these are my words" and the crowd would often repeat it back to show support and agreement. The words "in the name of Jesus Christ" are to be used when ordaining or blessing. When I say my personal prayers I end by saying, "Thank you!" and something personal like you would say when departing from a dear loved one. I would never end in Jesus' name when giving a blessing if I wasn't inspired to say it. PR]**

If we are to pray to the Father in the name of Jesus Christ, how do we do that?

I usually say "My father, I ask in the name of Jesus Christ..." when I'm praying with a request. But this may be overly formal and off-putting to Heavenly Father & Christ. How does Heavenly Father want us to approach Him in the name of Christ?

I like the idea of speaking to them very personally but neither do I want to be disrespectful. I've also seen others say that you need to behave yourself in front of God as if you were before a King. I'm not sure if the Lord wants us to be that stiff and formal. I like the idea of ending with "Thank you! I love you!" **[We can simply pray to The Father knowing that it is through our Savior that we approach Him. If you end your prayer, "In the name of Jesus Christ," that is fine too. Remember, the Lord looks upon the heart. PR]**

What are your thoughts on the bearing of testimonies? When the Holy Ghost constrains someone to speak/prophesy would that be appropriate to end in the name of Jesus? If

someone is just stating a declaration of belief and witness would it be appropriate to simply end in “amen” without invoking the Savior’s name? **[Any time one is constrained to speak by the spirit it is the gift of prophecy and should be stated “in the name of Jesus (or some other form of identification).” If someone is just sharing beliefs and feelings with another person privately it is not necessary. When formally doing so in public at a pulpit it is customary to end that way, but I would be sure your words are appropriate and inspired before ending that way. PR]**

Ordaining Priests and Teachers – Moroni 3:1-4

1 The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers— **[These “Elders” were as the Disciples of the church, the governing body of men that had received a witness of Jesus Christ and would travel to teach the Gospel. The First Elder was the head of the church and would be considered the High Priest. Each branch was officiated by a priest, with teachers assisting them. The focus was the Doctrine of Christ and nourishing each member of the church.]**

2 After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

The reason the hand is involved in touching the person when performing an ordinance or blessing is that the virtue of the person blessing is shared with the person receiving it, thereby strengthening their faith. It can also be reciprocal for the person who is performing the ordinance or blessing.

3 In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest (or if he be a teacher, I ordain you to be a teacher) to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen. **[The words spoken to ordain a priest or teacher to the ministry are simple and to the point. It is to preach repentance and become clean through Christ by our faith in Him.]**

Such an ordination is a public recognition of their new position of authority, but not a guarantee of their standing with God, for each was admonished to experience the Lord for themselves. There was no ordination of a prophet, for the gift of prophecy is to be offered to all who are followers of Christ.

4 And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them. **[How does the “power of the Holy Ghost” manifest itself in ordaining teachers and priests? By revelation they were selected, and by prophecy they were blessed.]**

Parts of Moroni's instructions are to help with what he saw as organizational necessities to run the church smoothly. They are rather simple and straightforward. He teaches: the laying on of hands for the gift of the Holy Ghost, the Sacrament Prayers, priesthood ordinations, and baptism. The Gospel of Jesus Christ is very simple and puts much of the responsibility upon the individual to find the Lord. The purpose of the church is to encourage and share collectively in that experience.

Questions and Answers

Was this the same church system that Alma the Elder and Younger had?... by the end of the book of Alma, Helaman and his brethren were all called High Priests(plural). Why is that? **[The office of Elder is a High Priest if they are given a stewardship over a geographical area, but typically it is referred to as the First Elder, which leads the church. PR]**

we don't hear of the office of a Deacon? why not? **[That was created by the early Christian church after Christ's resurrection. It functions like a "teacher" in the BofM. PR]**

Partake of the Bread – Moroni 4:1-3

1 The manner of their elders and priests administering the **[emblems of His]** flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true **[this is how they did it]** ; and the elder or priest did minister it— **[Whomever is the officiating elder of priest would be the one to bless the Sacrament for the congregation.]**

2 And they did kneel down with the church **[Everyone, no matter how large the congregation, would kneel. This was the tradition since Jesus first came and taught them the Sacrament in Bountiful four hundred years previously.]**, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

3 O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless **[set apart according to our needs]** and sanctify **[make holy]** this bread to the souls **[our spirit and body]** of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son **[remember the physical sacrifice of Jesus]**, and witness unto thee **[demonstrate by partaking of this sacred emblem and prayer]**, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son **[to be spiritually begotten of Jesus Christ (receive the gift of the Holy Ghost)]**, and always remember him **[always repenting and coming unto Him]**, and keep his commandments which he hath given them **[follow every revelation given from the Lord]**, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. **[that charity may abide in them and they may exercise a fullness of the gifts of the Spirit]** Amen.

The Lord said that it is proper amongst a congregation for the presiding Elder to bless both the bread and wine, and then to have the leaders under him pass to the people. It represents their status as a servant to God and to all the people. When in small groups it can be decided upon by revelation how to proceed. Blessing the Sacrament is much like having authority to baptize with water. (personal journal)

The purpose of the breaking and blessing of the bread is to remember the physical sacrifice of Jesus Christ. It is to remind us to have a broken heart before the Lord. In other words, to fully submit to Him in full repentance, as Jesus submitted to His Father. When a person has sufficiently broken their heart before the Father and remembers His Son, the Father bestows a promise that the comforter will come to them. This is the beginning of charity and the turnkey event that enables one to be ready to receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Many receive the gift of the Holy Ghost after baptism. Their journey takes some time and the Sacrament Prayer prepares them for this event. If they have already received the gift of the Holy Ghost, it prepares them to receive a fullness of the Holy Ghost, which is to stand in the presence of the Lord.

Questions and Answers

The fact that I couldn't tell you if I am 2nd, 3rd, or 4th estate, LIKELY means I am a 2nd estate (first timer perhaps?) who continues to earnestly strive to receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. My only hope is that perhaps I am like one of those of the Book of Mormon who received it and knew not of it. And this is after frequenting your heaven-sent blog and reading your deeply inspired books for over a year now.

My question for you PR and others who have awakened from 2nd estate slumber in this probation is... do you find yourself on occasion still getting frustrated on the inside when your wife or kids do things that put you off? Patience and charity are virtues and I continue to pray for. But stopping myself from entertaining these thoughts is difficult to kick completely. No doubt being filled with the pure love of the Savior will do much to erase this from probability. **[Receiving the gift of the Holy Ghost makes you perfect in spirit, but you are still living in a telestial world and subject to the weakness of the flesh. We all continue to sin. My kids irritate me too sometimes! This is why repentance is a lifelong pursuit. As for what "estate" we are, nobody really knows that until the Lord Himself tells you, and honestly it isn't something to worry about. All those who come unto Christ, no matter their estate, will eventually have the same opportunities during their path to progression. The blessings available to 2nd estate are beyond what many find conceivable. PR]**

I welcome any thoughts/suggestions. Thx!

Thank you for this clarification. I envision a beautiful scene with all the congregation kneeling in this sacred remembrance of the Savior's sacrifice. Oh to be in such a group of people today that practice it the same way. Powerful indeed!

Dear brother. Please help me understand what you mean by “perfect in spirit”? Could someone “perfect in spirit” possibly get angry, cuss, and slam a door when he’s late to work and can’t find his keys?

– hint – I did this yesterday.... **[When the Lord says, “Be ye therefore perfect...” He is referring to being born again in His image. This is the gift of the Holy Ghost, and your spirit is quickened to a higher place. This doesn’t mean you cannot sin, for the body is incapable of living in this world without sin. But, as we continue to repent, turning to Him, and standing in holy places, we are continually washed clean from the blood and sins of our generation and receive the Lord’s blessings as we serve Him in this world. PR]**

Many Christians partake of the bread and wine, but use their own words to bless it. Some of these even demonstrate more gifts of the spirit and sincere relationship with God. Does the Lord approve of these attempts of taking the sacrament, even though they do not have a specific prayer? **[I have not asked the Lord about that. It is possible. PR]**

Partake of the Wine – Moroni 5:1-2

1 The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup **[a single cup]**, and said:

2 O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls **[body and spirit]** of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood **[Spirit]** of thy Son, which was shed **[sacrificed]** for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him **[never forget your covenant to come unto Christ]**, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen. **[That the gifts of the Spirit are given to guide you in that effort.]**

It is interesting that two parts of the blessing for the wine are missing from the blessing of the bread: “willing to take upon them the name of thy son”, and “keep His commandments which he has given them.” Why is that the case?

The partaking of the bread is to have a broken heart, or to fully repent and come unto Christ. This requires us to be baptized in His name and to follow His commandments. Once we have done this we also have a contrition of spirit, which is to seek after His will in all things, to fully submit ourselves to Him. The wine represents the blood, which is the “contrition of spirit,” a symbol of Eternal Life and the path of the Everlasting Covenant. In this is a mystery.

I asked the Lord to help me understand the significance and meaning of His Sacrament or “sacred meal.” He said that it was His New Covenant.

That the old covenant given to Moses was no more and that now, in order to be made clean, one must partake of His flesh and blood, by accepting His sacrifice and becoming one with Him as He is one with the Father. This is what it means to take His name upon us. If we do this we can be washed clean with His blood, meaning, receive the baptism of fire and the Gift of the Holy Ghost. We Then become His sons and daughters and He is our Father, and we are prepared to receive all righteousness. The son does the works of the Father and as the Father, so does the son. I asked the Lord to explain more.

The old covenant, which was given to the House of Israel, was to teach them that to be made clean and remit their sins, they needed to sacrifice animals and sprinkle the blood upon the altar. The blood would make them clean. These outward ordinances pointed them to the future coming of a Messiah, which would save Israel and bring them into His presence. Only the Priest, once a year, was allowed to enter the Holy of Holies of the temple and come into the presence of God.

The New Covenant was given on the eve of the Lord fulfilling His covenant with Israel, to fulfill the Passover and to offer His body and blood as a sacrifice for us. We are required to offer now, instead of a blood sacrifice on the altar of the earthly temple, a broken heart and a contrite spirit, which means to give ourselves as a sacrifice to God, our full heart and spirit, both body and soul, to Jesus Christ and in return we are made clean through His blood. His blood is what gives life to our spirits. This Eternal Life, is to be made holy in the blood of the Lamb and to stand at the right hand of God, as His son or daughter forever.

The Lord said that if we partake of the Sacrament as a group united in calling, like apostles, it is good to take the wine from the same cup. If we are doing it for our personal selves, we can take it separately. The wine is best, because it is the perfect symbol of the bitter cup that Jesus partook of, but water or juice is fine. We are to partake of the Sacrament every time we wish to approach the Lord. It is good to break the bread, then bless it, then the wine. The broken body and the blood spilt for our sakes is the remembrance the Lord wishes to teach us. Taking the Sacrament helps to make us holy before the Lord as we prepare to approach Him. It is a reminder of our received covenant or promise of a future covenant we will make when we receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost. (personal journal)

Questions and Answers

How often do you partake of the sacrament during the week? **[At least once. PR]**
I'm not able to bless it, and asking my husband to do it for us might seem to him a little weird. Also, why eat of His flesh and drink the blood? My kids when they were little found it strange to think we're eating Christ's flesh, as a symbol, is it because He is the fruit? Or We have to ingest these things for them to work from within ourselves, or just a

symbolic gesture? **[Like all ordinances, there is a symbolic lesson in the receiving. By eating and drinking we are making Him a part of us. We are becoming like Him, or a part of Him, which is the entire purpose of the Everlasting Covenant. The literal change comes when we are bathed in glory and given the gift of the Holy Ghost, which is when we are spiritually begotten of Jesus and literally become His son or daughter henceforth. PR]**

Since I read that you often make partaking of the Sacrament part of your preparation time to get ready to come to the Lord, I have made it a part of mine. Having been away from the Church for a number of years, makes me appreciate even more what a privilege it is to partake of the Sacrament. I can't over-estimate what a difference this makes. At first, I forget to kneel, but kneeling really enhances the experience. You are asking the Lord to bless and sanctify the emblems, you are then in the presence of holiness, and a person ought to kneel. "Fill yourself with Me, and there won't be room for anything else, for I am infinite." **[It is good to get down on the ground. I usually sit when I do the Sacrament privately. When I'm with a group I will kneel if I can. PR]**

Oh this is just so wonderful. Just wonderful. I will just ask a couple questions for clarity, but it's all so good, thank you.

"His blood is what gives life to our spirits. "

this is in reference to the quickening of the spirit, from 2nd estate to 3rd estate, correct? **[Yes. PR]**

what happens spiritually to a young man who is engaged in grossly unworthy behavior but chooses to bless the sacrament before a congregation regardless? **[Nothing. It hurts only him. The Lord will honor earthly ordinances where the one receiving has great faith. If there is a problem where the one presenting the ordinance is grossly unworthy, such as performing a baptism, the Lord may have the person receive another baptism again in the future. He is very merciful, and no blessings are denied. PR]**

is the ordinance ineffective? null?

Do you know if the Lord somehow attends every worthy administration of the sacrament? Some days I can feel that he is in the room. Like, is He there looking at those participating in it? **[The Lord is always there when we reach out to Him. This seems impossible in the minds of many who place limitations on God, but the reality is that he is not limited. The Lord can focus on you as if you were the only being in His entire creation. And that is exactly what He does. PR]**
PR, this insight to this chapter is just so wonderful and my heart is full.

Hi PR, I had a thought recently and recorded it in my journal, I wonder if it is relevant or if you could correct me and point me in the right direction if not.

"Drinking blood is often mentioned when talking about the depravity of fallen people who have become murderous. Interesting that indulging in secret combinations and dark oaths and covenants includes (I believe) the token of drinking blood. Apart from being gross, there must be something inherently evil about drinking blood because a token of the atonement is also blood – that was literally shed/sacrificed for us (i think there is some deeper mystery there that I'm not privy too) So if blood has to be shed from a perfect vessel, clean for unclean, perfect for imperfect it becomes the eternal

symbol of a Saviors sacrifice and love to shed his blood for the Fathers children so they can have life. It's almost like the difference between purging that substance that gives us telestial life and ties us to being fallen/natural/mortal – while drinking it takes it in and anchors you to that lower level of glory, which is hell (symbolically).”

Is that way off? I love the beauty of this chapter, thank you. **[There are connections to blood for both mortality and immortality. I am not permitted to give details. PR]**

One more question today, dear Brother... At what point can it be said that we are “partaking of the body and blood of Christ”? Is this after we receive the Gift of the Holy Ghost (and are in the process of becoming like him as we retain a remission of our sins)? Or is it not until later when we are actually partaking of the fruit of the Tree of Life after we have literally come to him? **[The Sacrament is a promise that we will partake of His New Covenant, or that after having received it we will do all things that we are commanded that we may become in His image. The true partaking of His body and blood occurs when we are born again in His image. It occurs on many levels. In this is a mystery. PR]**

This is My Church – Moroni 6:1-9

1 And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it. **[Moroni makes the point that all leaders in the church were baptized and brought forth “fruit” that they were worthy of baptism. What is the fruit?]**

2 Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

3 And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end. **[These are the fruit that had to manifest itself: broken heart (fully turning their hearts to God), contrite spirit (full submission to the will of the Father), willingness to join the fold of the church and serve the Lord for the remaining of their days.]**

4 And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon **[worked on over time]** and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ **[the telestial church]**; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone **[no other person]** upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher **[full focus]** of their faith. **[The church would keep their name and do all in their power to nourish them with the “word of God,” and was focused upon their “relying alone upon the merits of Christ.” The church’s purpose was to nourish, and not to do anything else.]**

5 And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls. **[They would meet often as groups to study, praise, and worship the Lord in their own homes and church structures.]**

The focus of their meetings was not to dive into the mysteries of God, but to nourish each other in faith, and exercising all the gifts of the Spirit. What does this look like? It is not to sit and listen to lectures, but to sing and praise, bless and anoint, to receive the ministering of angels, to prophesy, and to have the visions of eternity open to the congregation. Meetings were joyful, times of feasting, and fellowship.

6 And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus. **[During these meetings they partook of the Sacrament.]**

7 And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them **[That there was no seeking darkness instead of the light. Often this comes in the form of sexual impropriety, or attempting to corrupt the word of God.];** and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.

This is very specific. There had to be at least three witnesses to condemn them before the special witnesses of Christ (the Elders), and if they did not repent (turn their hearts to God) they were not counted among the members. It was not an easy thing to be excommunicated from Jesus' church.

8 But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven. **[They were simply asked to repent and acknowledge their sin. There was a clear understanding amongst these people what the "word of God" required of them. Iniquity would include attempting to change the laws and commandments to conform to one's personal views. The Church of Christ was to be a constant, unchanging church.]**

9 And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

The most Spirit-filled meetings I have ever attended were completely led by the Spirit and the agenda was put aside. When I see unity amongst the group, where the voice of each person is listened to and considered, where prayer is the focus, and praising the Lord is the constant of the meeting, and the gifts of the Spirit present themselves in abundance – it is here that I know I am receiving a fullness of the worship experience in Christ's church. There are only two churches that are recognized by the Lord in this world: the church of Christ, and the church of the devil. (1 Nephi 14:10) How do we

know which church is true? “Behold, this is my doctrine – whosoever repenteth and cometh unto me, the same is my church.” (D&C 10:67)

Questions and Answers:

Since the telestial church is the church of Christ, it looks like this scripture says one must be baptized of the spirit (receive HG) first to be a part of that. Those who repent and come unto Him are considered his church. Telestial means they are on the path toward celestial. **[Telestial glory is the 2nd estate. Telestial Realm is mortality where we are subject to the temptations of the flesh, but we can overcome this world through Christ. PR]**

Is the Church of the Firstborn the celestial church where one must first come into the presence of Jesus (second comforter)? D&C mentions that this church is composed of those of celestial glory who come into the presence of Christ. I remember you saying those who receive the HG are counted among the firstborn. Are those of the 3rd estate part of the church if the firstborn, or does it mean they are on the path of ascension to the church of the firstborn. **[When someone is given the promise of Eternal Life they are 3rd estate and await the opportunity to mingle with these exalted spirits in the Church of the Firstborn, which can occur in this life if they commune with Heaven, or in the next life. Until then, they are amongst the church of Christ in the mortal world. PR]**

This is a beautiful description of how a church ought to function. I especially like the part where it says “and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls”. All kinds of images come to mind of members helping members with their temporal and spiritual needs, bearing one another’s burdens, mourning with those who mourn, etc. I could see this as a true support group. I could see all of this happening in a small, intimate setting, in peoples’ homes.

The Greek New Testament word better describes the meaning of “church”. It is “ekklēsia”, meaning a gathering of those who have been called.

Vs 4 sounds like it could be used today as scriptural justification to have “names taken” by the church, which then tracks its members, carries out in-home visits and makes decisions on how to discipline the members whose names were taken at baptism.

What did they do with the names taken?

How would they use these lists?

How would they “nourish them with the word of God” using these lists?

If someone tried to use this verse as scriptural justification for unrighteous dominion, how would you answer them? **[Those are good questions. Any person can take their ecclesiastical authority and use it against the people if their hearts are not pure. It makes sense to keep a record of names in a church, because how else do you know who your members are when numbers become large? I think the key is that any three witnesses could go to the Elders if they found iniquity abiding in a member, even if it was the priest who oversaw the congregation. Unrighteous dominion is a form of iniquity. There is a delicate line between preaching repentance and overstepping those bounds**

to where someone controls another's agency. I think of Joseph Smith's writings in Section 121:36-40. PR]

It looks like I was confusing telestial for terrestrial. Telestial is 2nd estate and temporal. Terrestrial is being on the path. What is the terrestrial church if the telestial church is the church of christ? **[The Church of the Firstborn. PR]**

[When someone is given the promise of Eternal Life they are 3rd estate and await the opportunity to mingle with these exalted spirits in the Church of the Firstborn, which can occur in this life if they commune with Heaven, or in the next life. Until then, they are amongst the church of Christ in the mortal world. PR]

are these 3rd estate beings who are on this earth the terrestrial church living amongst the Telestial church of 2nd estate beings?

(I am wondering if I'm making this more confusing than it needs to be haha) **[A church is a group of people who associate with each other in worship. The Church of the Firstborn are those who associate in the Heavenly Realm and are of the 3rd and 4th estate. PR]**

I thought once you were born again/received the Gift of the Holy Ghost you entered into the church of the Firstborn? But you are saying you remain in the telestial church of Christ and continue on until you are promised eternal life to become a member of the church of the Firstborn? Can you clarify this as far as very basic steps are concerned this is what i believed:

BoF – clean/remission of sins

GoHG – born again/3rd estate – become a member of the church of the First born

Exaltation – enter into his presence become a personal witness – second comforter experience

Eternal Life – promise of eternal life personally given by the Savior

[A church is an association. When a person enters their 3rd estate and receives the gift of the HG they are still dwelling in a temporal earth and associating with the temporal church. But, they may have an opportunity to converse among the Church of the Firstborn, but not until the next life will they be fully active in that church. Exaltation is the fullness of the Father, which is not received until one has climbed the ladder of their progression. This will not fully occur until far beyond this life. Eternal Life is to dwell in the presence of the Father, which occurs after this life for those who have ascended to their third estate. PR]

The Gift of Charity – Moroni 7:1-48

1 And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

[There were few who were willing to worship in the synagogue in the later years of Mormon's life. This sermon so impressed Moroni that he kept it and was inspired to include it in the final text of the record.]

2 And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you **[in this manner]** at this time.

3 Wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the church, that are the peaceable followers of Christ **[always repenting]**, and that have obtained a sufficient hope **[through baptism]** by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord **[the gift of the Holy Ghost]**, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.

4 And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men. **[How you conduct yourself with other people.]**

5 For I remember the word of God which saith by their works **[fruit]** ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

6 For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing. **[What are the results of an evil man praying to God? Where is the fruit?]**

7 For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

8 For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift **[blessing or offering]**, he doeth it grudgingly **[Regretting the act, for his heart is not there, and wonders how it will help him.]**; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God. **[Evil is a strong word, meaning it is by the power of the Adversary to do his will. Such a person is a hypocrite who pretends to pray to God, but there is no fruit.]**

9 And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.

10 Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift. **[Mormon's words encourage each of us to focus upon the results of the acts of one professing to be from God.]**

11 For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil. **[This all makes sense, but how do you judge this in real life? Imagine if your church leader appeared in every way to be righteous: he looks like a saint, he speaks of Jesus, he prays eloquently of the Gospel, he councils kindly, but something is missing. How can you discern they are not of God?]**

12 Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

Satan is not stupid, even though many would like to think so. How could he fall after knowing the Lord to the degree he did? Satan has chosen the path he walks and knows exactly what he is doing. He knows that the righteous will not follow him at first. They must be seduced, one small sin at a time. Give them a hundred truths, and inject a single lie. Lure them carefully away from the light. Evil is that one lie, enough to canker the heart and lead away. What will that lie be for you? Here, we must judge righteously.

13 But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God. **[We are told that “every thing” that leads to goodness, to love God, and serve him is inspired of God. What if a person is teaching these good things, but there is a lie injected? We must exercise discernment.]**

14 Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

One of the slippery slopes of our time is the preacher that sets themselves up as a light as they preach the platitudes of righteousness. Words of truth that the people agree are of God. But, then they demand their followers to look to them for their light, to live by their words, and not to truly know the Lord. The only thing that a servant of God truly preaches is repentance. This includes the why’s, what’s, how’s, and when’s of the process. There should be no question of how to come unto Christ. Mormon is about to explain this in detail.

15 For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night. **[Easy as one, two, three.]**

16 For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for every thing which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God. **[What is it that persuades a person to believe in Christ? Is it the warm hearted stories from the pulpit? Is it the reading of essays by scriptural scholars, or those who have a high standing of leadership? No, it is the participation in the “power of the gift of Christ,” which are the gifts of the Spirit.]**

17 But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

The only way to “do good” is to follow the doctrine of Christ and participate in the gifts of the Spirit, which are many and will be touched upon in this chapter and chapter ten.

18 And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge **[divide the good from the evil]**, which light is the light of Christ **[The Spirit]**, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged. **[You will follow that which you judge. If you judge evil to be good (which is what evil does), you will choose darkness.]**

19 Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently **[It is a process and great work to do this.]** in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly

will be a child of Christ. **[As you earnestly seek every good thing, judging between the good and evil, you will find the Lord.]**

20 And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing? **[He is about to explain further the process.]**

21 And now I come to that faith **[the foundation]**, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

22 For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of men, to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ; and in Christ there should come every good thing.

23 And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come. **[Believe in Christ and the words taught by the prophets. This is the foundation of your faith.]**

24 And behold, there were divers **[many different]** ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

25 Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God **[by revelation, scripture, and hearing the voice of others]**, men **[all people]** began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.

26 And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name **[receieved the Holy Ghost]**; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as surely as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good **[according to God's will]**, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you. **[The "believing" part is critical, for the Lord requires that we take action and if we do not believe our faith is dormant.]**

27 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles **[the gifts of the Spirit]** ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

28 For he hath answered the ends of the law **[Atonement]**, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave **[grab hold]** unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens. **[There is a difference between having "faith in him" and having faith of him, or about him, or like him. We are saved as He becomes a part of us. This is charity, the pure love of Christ. After we receive the gift of the Holy Ghost we exercise, "The pure love in Christ." For as we become one with him we are claimed as His Son or Daughter under the Atonement.]**

29 And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men. **[Miracles will follow them that believe "in Christ."]**

30 For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves **[the angels]** unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

This is a key scripture to opening a particular gift of the Spirit which includes the ministering of angels and the beholding of angels. Angels only

come to those who exercise faith. These individuals are seeking truth, they believe in the gifts, and do not block the reception of them because of false traditions (unbelief). How will an angel come to you? There are divers ways [various methods] this can occur. If one has “strong faith” [seeking the Lord’s revelation and acting upon it], and they have a “firm mind in every form of godliness” [mind is filled with virtue and belief in the Lord’s power in them], they will not be inhibited from conversing with the angelic host.

31 And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance [**bring them to Christ**], and to fulfil and to do the work of the covenants of the Father [**with regards to the Everlasting Covenant**], which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord [**3rd and 4th estate**], that they may bear testimony of him.

32 And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men [**second estate**] may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

33 And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me. [**You will be given the gifts of the Spirit as they are needed.**]

34 And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved. [**First step of the Doctrine of Christ, repent and come unto Him.**]

35 And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

36 Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved? [**Are there no miracles? Will angels cease to visit the followers of Christ? No way!**]

37 Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo [**sad and cursed**] be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief [**false traditions**], and all is vain. [**There is no hope.**]

38 For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name [**seek Jesus and act upon His words**]; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made. [**They will continue as a second estate forever.**]

39 But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness [**seeking His will above all things**]; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

40 And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope? [**The second step of the Doctrine of Christ.**]

41 And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise. **[This promise is made to the Father when we are baptized in water, a reminder of the resurrection of the soul unto Christ and life eternal.]**

42 Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.

43 And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart. **[You must have a broken heart and contrite spirit to accomplish this.]**

44 If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart **[full repentance, and full submission to the Lord]**; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity. **[Charity is the power of God that opens the door to baptism of fire and the gift of the Holy Ghost. This is the “pure love in Christ.”]**

Mormon now gives us a list of attributes that are obtained by those who acquire charity. These are some of the “fruits” of charity:

45 And charity suffereth long **[patient in afflictions]**, and is kind, and envieth not **[does not compare their possessions to others]**, and is not puffed up **[humble]**, seeketh not her own **[focused on other’s needs]**, is not easily provoked **[slow to anger]**, thinketh no evil **[virtuous thoughts]**, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth **[thoughts filled with the joy of the Lord]**, beareth all things **[that the Lord gives them]**, believeth all things **[that the Lord gives them]**, hopeth all things **[are possible through the Lord]**, endureth all things. **[every sacrifice the Lord requires]**

46 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail— **[To receive charity is to receive the promise of the Father that you are worthy of receiving the gift of Christ. This is the turnkey moment in your judgment, where you are found worthy to approach the Lord. Shortly thereafter the baptism of fire is given and the gift of the Holy Ghost is bestowed, as you are made holy and worthy to enter the presence of the Lord. Without this cleansing and holy sanctification, your attempt to ascend the hill of the Lord will fail.]**

47 But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.

There are seven virtues of godliness that lead to charity. Once we are fully tested, the Father opens our heart and the light pours into us. We are ready to receive the Son.

48 Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart **[full submission, contrite heart]**, that ye may be filled with this love **[light of**

Christ], which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons **[and daughters]** of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen. **[Our spirits are made pure and holy when we receive the third part of the Doctrine of Christ, the baptism of fire and the gift of the Holy Ghost. By this, we are able to stand in His presence, filled with light and glory, and be like Him in that we will not wither in His presence.]**

This truly is a beautiful sermon given of Moroni's father Mormon. He lays out the Gospel in its simplicity and the pitfalls that prevent many from receiving a fullness.

Questions and Answers

Vs 37: If faith is asking, can the word "asking" be used in place of the word "faith" in this verse?

"for it is by (asking) that miracles are wrought; and it is by (asking) that angels appear and minister unto men..." **[Yes, and asking comes at different levels. The first question, "Are you there? Do you love me? And, then later you ask more questions with increased faith. Also, true faith requires us to act upon what is received. PR]**

I am still having a hard time understanding these core concepts of the Doctrine of Christ. I will try to ask my main question as clear as I can.

How and when we may hope to receive the gift of charity, and partake of this "fruit"? **[It comes at the very moment we have reached a fullness of the requirements of a broken heart and contrite spirit. I have referred to these before as the seven virtues of godliness. PR]** I have often thought that charity is the main gift bestowed upon those who receive the baptism of the Holy Ghost. But you often describe it as a preliminary gift prior to receiving the baptism of the Holy Ghost. Isn't receiving the gift of charity synonymous to being spiritually begotten/mighty change of heart/receiving the baptism of the Holy Ghost? **[It does come at the same time. Charity is the Father's declaration of your worthiness. It brings the baptism of fire followed by the gift of the Holy Ghost. It is the state of being one with the Father, Son, and the Holy Ghost. "Without charity you are nothing."]**

Likewise, I have a hard time understanding how to fit Moroni's imagery in with Nephi's. I often believe that we "enter the gate" to the strait and narrow path by being spiritually begotten/mighty change of heart/receiving a full baptism (of water AND the Holy Ghost)... and that not until then can we fully cling to "the iron rod" (words of Christ given through personal revelation)... However, how does charity (the love of God) fit in with this, because Nephi/Lehi seem to separate these by saying we don't partake of the fruit of the tree of life (the love of God) until after following the iron rod (words of Christ given through personal revelation) along the path for some time.... **[The angel called the Tree of Life the "love of God." Mormon called charity the "pure love of Christ." They are closely connected, but not the same as I will explain in a moment. PR]**

Is charity “the fruit of the tree of life” we are to partake of (after the baptism of the Holy Ghost)? If so, why does Nephi/Lehi seem to separate the concept of partaking of the fruit (charity) and following the iron rod (the words of Christ given through revelation)? Don't we need to be doing both (partaking of the fruit AND clinging to the rod) upon being begotten spiritually / entering the gate / receiving the mighty change of heart / receiving the baptism of the Holy Ghost? **[Yes. PR]**

Thank you dear Brother!!!

[I was shown that charity is the gift that opens everything. It is the promise of the Father that we are worthy to receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. It comes in its fullness just before we have our baptism of fire and Holy Ghost experience. When I had my vision of the Tree of Life I saw something interesting regarding those who grabbed hold of the rod of iron – their bodies lit up. This was symbolic of them receiving charity and the Holy Ghost. The Tree of Life is Jesus Christ, and the fruit is Eternal Life. As we grab hold of the word of God and push forward we will come unto Christ (literally) and partake of Eternal Life. This is my understanding from my experience, but you can seek your own confirmation. PR]

PR wrote: “There are seven virtues of godliness that lead to charity. Once we are fully tested, the Father opens our heart and the light pours into us. We are ready to receive the Son.”

RE: the 7 virtues of godliness. I am pretty sure but are you talking about what you wrote over at

“Our Temporal Progression: Virtues of Godliness”

on your blog? **[Yes. PR]**

Each of the 7 virtues has a test to pass in this mortality?

Could you describe something that is an example of being fully tested? **[It is not as simple as completing a task, as much as aligning your heart in harmony with God. The virtue of faith requires us to seek God's will over all things, for example. Like the colors of the rainbow, when our hearts are sufficiently aligned there is a beam of white light created. When the Father sees that we are ready we are blessed with charity and the promise to receive the comforter, which is the Holy Ghost. PR]**

A Letter to Moroni – Moroni 8:1-30

Moroni chooses to include a personal letter written to him by his father, Mormon, which he had cherished since the beginning of his ministry.

1 An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. **[Moroni had been ordained a teacher.]** And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:

2 My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.

3 I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you **[watch over you]** through the endurance of faith **[seeking His will through revelation]** on his name to the end.

4 And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you. **[disputations regarding the doctrine of baptism and salvation occurring amongst those to whom Moroni fellowshipped.]**

5 For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

6 And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently **[in preaching]**, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.

7 For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost **[revelation]**, saying:

8 Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam **[to partake of sin and be separated from the Spirit of God]** is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

The law of circumcision was a sign of the Everlasting Covenant that was required of all males in the House of Israel beginning with Abraham and his people. Beginning with the Times of the Gentiles, the law was no longer required, only a broken heart and contrite spirit in Christ was required as a sign of worthiness.

9 And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children. **[It demonstrates a lack of faith in the words of Christ, and reliance upon works.]**

10 Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall all be saved with their little children. **[To be humble, contrite, and trusting, like a little child. Baptism of children at the age of eight is a standard for when a child can be baptized, but some can receive before and many should not until later. Many today feel the urgency to baptize children or even adults whose mental capacities are not beyond that of a child. We must trust in the atonement and seek revelation as to when it is the proper time to give these ordinances to them.]**

11 And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins. **[That is a good definition of baptism: “baptism is for those who come unto Christ, to**

fulfill the Father's commandment, so they can receive the baptism of fire and remission of their sins.]

12 But little children are alive in Christ **[under the umbrella of the Atonement]**, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God **[unfair]**, and also a changeable God **[inconsistent]**, and a respecter to persons **[bias in judgment]**; for how many little children have died without baptism!

13 Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.

All small children and those who die without the Gospel as saved from hell and damnation, but they must still learn of Christ and receive baptism and the Holy Ghost. Upon returning to the world of spirits these people are given an opportunity to hear the Gospel and make plans to move forward. Rarely do those outside the House of Israel choose to do so, but it does occur. Surrounding this work is a great mystery regarding the Everlasting Covenant.

14 Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness **[without love]** and in the bonds of iniquity **[false traditions, unbelief]**; for he hath neither faith **[in Christ]**, hope **[the seal of the Father]**, nor charity **[the gift of the Holy Ghost]**; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell. **[If one has any of those three attributes, even the first, which is faith, they would recognize that this doctrine is true.]**

15 For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

16 Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish **[be damned]** except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.

The phrase "perfect love casteth out all fear" is an eternal principle for overcoming the adversary. The principle applies to overcoming all addictions, fears, discouragements, and darkness in this world. The more complete way to phrase this would be, "perfect love for the Father casteth out all fear." As we learn to lean on the Lord, and focus our love for him without reservation, we will learn to overcome.

17 And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation. **[Charity is the greatest love of all, for it allows us to see ourselves and others the way God sees them. Charity opens the floodgates of revelation and spiritual power.]**

18 For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity. **[You can rely on Him without reservation.]**

19 Little children cannot repent **[because they don't know how]**; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

20 And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

21 Wo **[sad and great pity]** unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

22 For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. **[All those who never receive the Gospel.]** For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—

Some might say, “Then why give them the Gospel if they will be saved by simply not receiving the law?” They are saved from damnation and hell, but cannot receive Eternal Life and progress in the Everlasting Covenant until they do, for they are still at a glory that is telestial until they receive a fullness.

23 But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works. **["Dead works" are perfunctory ordinances and acts which men claim have saving power, and yet they are not. All ordinances performed by priesthood authority that are not sealed by the Holy Spirit of Promise are “dead” and have no bearing in the spiritual realm. Too many people expect that all ordinances received are the equivalent of a one way ticket to the Celestial Kingdom. Nothing could be farther from the truth. You must seek a personal revelation to know your standing with God. Ask yourself, “What do I lack yet, Lord?” The most important ordinances you receive in the flesh is baptism. The most important ordinance you receive in the spirit is the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost.]**

24 Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law. **[all those who commit sin]**

25 And the first fruits **[steps that show your faith]** of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth **[at the appropriate time]** remission of sins; **[baptism of fire]**

26 And the remission of sins bringeth meekness **[desire to seek Christ’s will in all things]**, and lowliness of heart **[humility and submission to His will]**; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart **[broken heart and contrite spirit]** cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost **[the gift of ascension of the spirit, to be born again in Christ’s image]**, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love **[charity]**, which love endureth **[remains unclouded]** by diligence unto prayer **[maintaining your relationship with God]**, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God. **[Receive Eternal Life in the next world.]**

27 Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent. **[Mormon still had a small hope.]**

28 Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost. **[Even in America today there is a large movement to suppress Christians and any voice they have in the public discourse.]**

29 And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself. **[America in many ways will follow the pattern of the Nephite people.]**

30 Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen. **[Written many years before Mormon's death.]**

Questions and Answers

“therefore the curse of Adam [to partake of sin and be separated from the Spirit of God] is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.”

I suppose this happens at a definite time in a young child's life? Could a parent do anything to protect a child from this happening, or perhaps more importantly, SHOULD a parent even attempt? And what about during the Millennium? Will baptism even be necessary for children born during the Millennium? **[As a child's mind matures they lose that innocence. It is different for everyone. I believe a parent's role is to train them in truth and then allow them to make decisions to learn for themselves. When the earth is made Terrestrial there will not be babies born like there is today. Baptism of water is a telestial ordinance. PR]**

“[Charity is the greatest love of all, for it allows us to see ourselves and others the way God sees them. Charity opens the floodgates of revelation and spiritual power.]”
Once, while riding on a city bus, I prayed and asked the Lord to enable me to see others the way you see them. He gave me that gift immediately, and has never taken it away. I haven't always paid attention to it, but I am paying attention now, but it is a marvelous gift. It will change how you look at people, forever. I didn't realize that it was the gift of charity. And, that makes sense because it happened about the same time I had the Baptism of Fire. Sometimes a person doesn't know where they are on the path that is the Everlasting Covenant, until somebody gives them a map, and shows you how to determine where you are on that map. Thanks for providing the map.

One more question. I was baptized at the age of 8 in the church, then re-baptized in to another Restoration church at the age of 38. Is re-baptism necessary in such a case? **[That would be a question for which to seek personal revelation. There is baptism unto repentance, and baptism unto renewal. Each is for a different covenant or purpose. Each requires a personal revelation. PR]**

When I heard a servant of the Lord teach that we must be baptized by somebody according to the Doctrine of Christ, and not merely baptized into a church, I felt that this was something I should be doing, and I have contacted a person who agreed to perform the baptism, but it hasn't happened yet. If this vital ordinance has not yet occurred, but a person has every intention of fulfilling it, this will not hold back a person's progress in

their spiritual journey back to the Lord, will it? I think not, but I would like to hear your views on this, and others might like to hear it as well.

Did the Nephites have a mail carrying service? I have wondered how letters would have been delivered! **[I do not know. PR]**

18 For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity. many would claim that that God isn't a "changeable being" to mean "god has always been god". yet the everlasting covenant allows us to become god's sons and daughters, and to even become like god. what would you say this scripture is saying? **[The laws of eternity never change. PR]**

Is there a difference between damnation and condemnation? I have thought damnation is just be damned/stopped in your progression, so remaining telestial. **[They are synonymous, but damnation has a more specific meaning. PR]**

["When the earth is made Terrestrial there will not be babies born like there is today. "] Can you elaborate on the above statement you made in another comment above? How will the communities grow then? Is it just growth through Telestial beings being converted to a higher order? **[There is a finite number of people that will inhabit that realm. They are resurrected beings. It doesn't add to its numbers the way our world does today. PR]**

Is there ever a time when baptism is not essential? I ask because I have a son who has down syndrome. He brings so much light, love, and simplicity into our home, is it possible that he may have already partaken of the everlasting covenant before he was born into our family? **[That is very possible. Only the Lord can answer that question specifically for you. PR]**

"When the earth is made Terrestrial there will not be babies born like there is today." So babies are only born in mortality on a telestial earth? **[No, but only telestial mortal babies are born on a telestial earth. Only an Adam and Eve are born in a terrestrial earth. PR]**

Is there a reason other than just continuing the storyline of the Nephites, that you jumped from Mormon to Moroni and skipped Ether? **[I don't know. I felt prompted to do it, no reason. Next one will be Mormon 8. PR]**

From your comment above to my question...[There is a finite number of people that will inhabit that realm. They are resurrected beings. It doesn't add to its numbers the way our world does today. PR] Do those Terrestrial resurrected beings just continue in that realm until they obtain a Celestial resurrection? When the earth is changed to a Celestial world after the 1000 year millennium is over? Do married Terrestrial beings have spirit children they raise in that realm to inhabit a new Telestial world? Or does that only happen in a Celestial world? What mainly takes place in the 1000 year millenium? Is it mainly sealing families together? There must be much more I would think going on.

Thank you for your patience with my questions. **[The Terrestrial world is transitional, where the angels of God reside. They are not limited to inhabit and stay on a single planet. During the Millennium the angels help with the creation of other worlds, and to prepare the new first estate for their entrance into mortality. The bringing forth of Adam and Eve takes place in the terrestrial world. PR]**

Are most people who are born without the law(gentiles), still subject to the buffeting's of Satan? **[Yes, but they are not condemned. PR]**

[“dead works are perfunctory ordinances and acts which men claim have saving power, and yet they are not. All ordinances performed by priesthood authority that are not sealed by the Holy Spirit of Promise are “dead” and have no bearing in the spiritual realm. Too many people expect that all ordinances received are the equivalent of a one way ticket to the Celestial Kingdom. Nothing could be farther from the truth. You must seek a personal revelation to know your standing with God. Ask yourself, “What do I lack yet, Lord?” The most important ordinances you receive in the flesh is baptism. The most important ordinance you receive in the spirit is the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost.]

I TESTIFY THAT THIS IS TRUE!

Please clarify something for me. At the end of the millenium, Satan will be loosed. If the millenium occurs when the Earth has changed to a terrestrial state...how does this happen? I thought Satan was thrown down and was limited to a telestial glory. Can you explain this further? **[The angels of Heaven who abide in the Terrestrial Realm have much freedom to go and see. From amongst these will be some who will go where they should not. It is a common knowledge amongst the angels that there is another choice, one that offers self gratification and dominion instead of sacrifice, charity, and glory to God. Satan will be loosed from his holding place and allowed to come to any who wish to look upon this temptation. These angels are “the Watchers” and will become the fallen sons of perdition. PR]**

PR- “The Terrestrial world is transitional”

To clarify, is the millennium the “pre-existance” as is commonly taught? **[The Millennium is the beginning of the coming forth of new first estate, also referred to as the “pre-existence.” PR]**

You have mentioned that the 4th estate help teach the new first estate after they are created and during the millennium. What are the 3rd estate doing during this time? Do they participate with the first estate in any way? **[There are twelve different hierarchies of angels. The third estate are the angels and have plenty to learn, explore, and do as they serve the Lord in righteousness. PR]**

PR Wrote: “All small children and those who die without the Gospel as saved from hell and damnation, but they must still learn of Christ and receive baptism and the Holy Ghost. Upon returning to the world of spirits these people are given an opportunity to

hear the Gospel and make plans to move forward. Rarely, do those outside the House of Israel choose to do so, but it does occur. Surrounding this work is a great mystery regarding the Everlasting Covenant.”

Why would they not choose to move forward? **[They have been telestial for eons of time. They are comfortable where they are.]**

Do they not have the Gospel plan right in front of them? **[There is always a choice. The House of Israel has more accountability to the Lord. PR]**

Isn't it obvious to them in the world of spirits that great glory and wonderful things await those who move forward in the Gospel and succeed? **[The children of men see three options before them: first, to stay where they are. Second, to suffer and sacrifice to follow Christ for something they do not understand. Third, to follow the Adversary and turn against their kin to have additional comforts at a cost they do not understand. Most choose the first. PR]**

Are there competing religions to confuse them about which one to go after? **[Some of the religions that are ancient are even more ancient than you realize. They are apostate versions of their own truth that originate with the children of men and teach a telestial path of peace. PR]**

The existence of God the Father and the knowledge of the atonement is common, right? How does anyone choose to not even try to move forward?

What is more enticing in the world of spirits than to choose to become a redeemed son or daughter of God? **[For most spirits the only thing that matters is grouping with their kin and planning how they can experience the pleasures of the flesh again. PR]**

I wrote:

“Isn't it obvious to them in the world of spirits that great glory and wonderful things await those who move forward in the Gospel and succeed?”

You answered:

[The children of men see three options before them: first, to stay where they are. Second, to suffer and sacrifice to follow Christ for something they do not understand. Third, to follow the Adversary and turn against their kin to have additional comforts at a cost they do not understand. Most choose the first. PR]

Why aren't the children of men able to understand that following Christ, and the glory of God therein is something worth pursuing and contributing towards?

Are there mists of darkness in the spirit realm that obscure/detract or distort truth just like we have here on earth? **[It's not a new thing to them. The children of men have been as they are for eons of time. It would seem easy that if we knew God exists that we would all just join that party, but that is not the reality. To follow Christ is self sacrifice and comes with a cost. It is like asking unhealthy people to choose to eat differently and begin exercising. They are comfortable with the status quo. PR]**

“Some of the religions that are ancient are even more ancient than you realize. They are apostate versions of their own truth that originate with the children of men and teach a telestial path of peace. PR”

Can the children of men receive visions/dreams/revelations from these religions

leaders? Like Buddha? **[Our dreams can be affected by any spirit, so the answer is yes. PR]**

The Fall of the Nephites – Moroni 9:1-26

Moroni included three additional writings of his father Mormon in his Addendum to the Book of Mormon before he sealed it all up. First was a sermon he gave on charity (chapter 7), second was a letter given to him from Mormon when he began his ministry (chapter 8), and third was a letter he received just before his father died (chapter 9).

This second to last chapter of the Book of Mormon is the darkest of all writings in the entire record. It demonstrates how low the descendants of Lehi fell before they were destroyed. It is hard to read without the heart aching, but Moroni follows it up in chapter ten with a joyous prophetic declaration.

1 My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

2 For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.

3 And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.

[Uncontrolled anger is a sign of demonic possession.]

4 Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them. **[Another sign of demonic possession is the manner in which the wicked respond to rebuke. They will shake and gnash their teeth, as they desire to strike out even though no violence has been given.]**

5 For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually. **[This is a sign of one completely giving themselves over to Satan. Like the pigs who ran over a cliff, these individuals seek to murder others and even throw themselves in harms way. (Mark 5:11-13)]**

6 And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God. **[It is their calling to rescue as many as they can while in mortality.]**

7 And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many

prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

8 And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them. **[These depraved people take pleasure in creative torture, and cannibalism. A sign of the dark oaths.]**

9 And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

10 And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery. **[A complete collapse of humanity. These people are owned by the Adversary and will continue as such for eternity.]**

11 O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

12 (And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightsome people)

13 But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

14 How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

15 Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face! **[When the dark oaths reach their zenith amongst a people, God's wrath pours out judgment upon them. In this case there were pockets of such depravity. When it is an entire city, God destroys by fire. Otherwise they are destroyed in other ways.]**

16 And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die. **[The Lamanites had enslaved the women and daughters of the Nephites. They left the tower to go to battle and the Nephite troops led by Zenephi took possession. They cleaned out all the remaining food and the freed prisoners were left to wander for food.]**

The Nephite men were so hungry for blood that they did not desire to tend to the needs of the women and children.

17 And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

18 O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands. **[It is past hope. They do not even follow the orders of their commander, as they seek blood and carnage endlessly.]**

19 And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike **[both Nephite and Lamanite]** brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children

upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

20 And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites. **[The reason that the Lamanites were allowed to endure.]**

21 Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me. **[for it would be a lie]**

22 But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him. **[Mormon prayed in faith that the Lord would preserve the life of Moroni.]**

23 And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

In the previous chapter I mentioned that Moroni witnessed the massacre of almost his entire family. In context of the brutality of the Lamanite's treatment of prisoners, it was a very quick death and a preferable way to die. All Nephites died except the few who defected to the Lamanites and Moroni himself.

24 And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee. **[the golden plates]**

25 My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

26 And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen. **[Both Mormon and Moroni had witnessed the Throne of Heaven. They knew the mercies of God and did have great reason to rejoice. But, it is heart-wrenching to witness the fall of their people! Such will be the heartache of those who witness the fall of this country we live in today.]**

Questions and Answers

Note from verse 10: "These people are owned by the Adversary and will continue as such for eternity."

Do these souls, who are owned by the adversary, come back to earth in bodies again? Or are most kept as evil spirits to influence other mortals? **[They remain as spirits except under certain circumstances where bodies are provided through the Adversary. In this is a mystery. PR]**

Note from vs 15: “When it is an entire city, God destroys by fire.”

When God destroys by fire, it is always fire and brimstone that rains from heaven? Or can it be ANY fire, like lava or nukes or something the world might dismiss as nature or man-made? **[It is a natural cleansing of fire, whether from the earth or above that is used. However, the wicked are often destroyed by war, plague, and famine as well. PR]**

This is heart wrenching.....I fear that we are already witnessing a majority of this now. Earthquakes are considered normal here in Cali. Volcanoes in New Zealand. Upheaval in Iran. All within a week. It makes my heart hurt and my head spin that evil is not recognized as being evil anymore. The GIFT of discernment is crucial....

You revealed that the meaning of “grafting” of natural and wild branches of the House of Israel included the birth of gentile spirits (2nd estate beings who are perpetually telestial) into Israelite bloodlines, and Children of Light (House of Israel) being born into Gentile bloodlines. **[I don’t remember gentiles being born into Israelite bloodlines, unless those lines mixed with gentiles by marriage. But, there are people who made the Everlasting Covenant before birth and are born in the gentile bloodlines. The House of Israel in the last days are those who made the Everlasting Covenant during their first estate. PR]**

I was going to ask whether gentile spirits had been born into these wicked peoples, because how could the House of Israel become so depraved? But, I expect these evil people are indeed House of Israel by spirit and lineage, and what tragedy their loss is. How can it be? Such a great loss. **[The only evil spirits born into the House of Israel would be fourth estate with the design to become sons of perdition. This has occurred. PR]**

In verse 10, was this the Nephites performing Oaths/combinations of Perdition?... did the Lamanites do that as well? **[They were both doing it, yes. It was not all the people, but some. PR]**

8 And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them. [These depraved people take pleasure in creative torture, and cannibalism. A sign of the dark oaths.] Are these sort of things happening (cannibalism) now in dark oaths across the world and in secret combinations amongst governments? **[Yes, but not necessarily feeding it to their families. That was a sick act that was done to humor themselves. PR]**

The Gifts – Moroni 10:1-34

1 Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good **[These are what Moroni considers to be his last words, what he wants to share before the record is sealed up.];** and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should

know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ. **[Why does Moroni specifically want to write to the Lamanites? He knows that the Nephites are no more, that they are the only remnant of his brethren that will someday read this book.]**

2 And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

3 Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

This is a popular verse, often used in missionary work to invite someone to pray about the truthfulness of the Book of Mormon. Pondering is a form of prayer, and if someone were to consider the dealings of God in history since the time of Adam it is not far fetched to think that a book like this is possible.

4 And when ye shall receive these things **[the book and the knowledge contained herein]**, I would exhort **[strongly recommend to]** you that ye would ask God **[pray specifically]**, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true **[exactly as they are written without exaggeration]**; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent **[expecting to receive an answer]**, having faith in Christ **[Christ is the foundation of your faith]**, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost. **[Through the gifts of the Spirit, whether that be revelation, the ministering of angels, or some other way.]**

5 And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

“The power of the Holy Ghost” is another way of saying the gifts of the Spirit. This is how the Lord communicates with us. This is how “all things” are made known to us regarding the past, present, future, truth, error, the physical, the spiritual, and the mysteries of all creation.

Many people are confused by this part of scripture, wondering how the Holy Ghost can truly manifest that truth to them. Most, simply wait for a warm feeling, or some emotion to come upon them when they ask. Is this the “manifestation” that Moroni is suggesting? Such feelings may follow a true manifestation as we feel emotions of gratitude or love, but they are not the manifestation of the Spirit which teaches truth.

When the Spirit of revelation is given it comes as clear thoughts upon the mind and heart of an individual. Like looking upon your infant child for the first time and knowing they are truly yours. Like trying to decide something after prayerfully seeking an answer and knowing exactly how to proceed without question. This is the first step in exercising the power of the Holy Ghost or the gift of discernment. But how well can a person know? The Lord blesses all who come to Him (in the name of Christ) asking that they may know enough to move forward. Their faith will not yet become

perfect, but they will know if it is a good path and will persevere until they shall truly “know the truth of all things.” That statement is not a sudden gift given to all who simply ask. It requires much faith, diligence, and patience, until they are able to ask all their questions freely in the presence of the Lord. And that is the truth of the matter.

6 And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is. **[Moroni is referring back to his father’s epistle in Moroni 7. For anything that preaches Christ and acknowledges Him is from the Spirit of God.]**

7 And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God **[gifts of the Spirit]**; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever. **[Without faith (seeking God’s will and acting upon it), you will not exercise such power.]**

8 And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny **[reject]** not the gifts of God, for they are many **[too many to count]**; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them. **[The gifts of the Spirit come in such diversity, because the Lord’s works cover many people, their levels of faith, and situations. Often they are referred to as miracles, because they cannot be understood by the carnal mind. Some are very specific, and other gifts cross over in their application. Some gifts are required to begin the journey to come unto Christ, and others are not given until one has matured in their faith and become a servant of the Lord.]**

9 For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom; **[The “word of wisdom” is how the Lord expects us to apply His laws and ordinances. It requires revelation and at a specific time, prophecy, which are also gifts.]**

10 And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same **[gift]** Spirit; **[The “word of knowledge” is the same as above, but suggests the kind of prophecy that is given from one who knows the Lord and shares such information, such as a prophet, seer, and revelator.]**

11 And to another, exceedingly great faith **[Those who have “exceedingly great faith” go to great lengths to know the Lord and do His work, this is a gift of the Spirit.]**; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit; **[The same kind of desire leads to the ability to heal in Christ’s name.]**

12 And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles; **[Every gift of the Spirit is a miracle, but the “mighty” ones are the kind that change the course of history. Sometimes, they come in the form of small acts of faith.]**

13 And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things; **[This gift is available to any man, women, and child. Do you believe it? The Lord can speak through His Spirit to anyone with the purpose of sharing to another.]**

14 And again, to another, the beholding of angels **[resurrected beings of great light sent to perform a mission]** and ministering spirits; **[usually spirits of the righteous dead who come to assist the living]**

It is not uncommon for those who have removed their false traditions (unbelief) to begin to see in the Spirit and converse with angels and ministering spirits. Such things seem deceptive to those with hard hearts, but we remember the words of Moroni, “Nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowlegeth that he is.”

15 And again, to another, all kinds of tongues; **[There are many kinds of tongues that can be spoken. There are the languages used in the world to communicate between people, and the prayer of tongues where an individual can pray to God with great power.]**

16 And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers [various] kinds of tongues. **[This is more for doing the labors of the kingdom in gathering Israel and preaching repentance, baptism, and the Holy Ghost. All servants of the Lord called to this capacity in the end of times will exercise this gift, and we are not talking about learning a foreign language.]**

17 And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will. **[They come for the purpose of establishing the kingdom of Heaven, the gathering of Israel, and to bring us to Christ. Every person who comes unto Christ receives them in multiples, even as many gifts as they need without restraint.]**

18 And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ. **[It all comes through Christ. This is why every prayer to the Father is in the name of Christ, because without Him we cannot exercise any of the gifts of the Spirit, including discernment, revelation, etc. He is the light that connects us to heaven. It is all Him, and no other!]**

19 And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that he is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men. **[How many read the scriptures and think that such miracles do not occur to them in their lives. How many hold tight to the false traditions that prevent them from exercising these gifts. Are people controlled by the culture of propriety that surrounds their civic, church, and personal lives? Have you heard that only the clergy or authority have the right to exercise these gifts of the Spirit? Many are rebuked for attempting to use them, or even share what they experience. What do you think about this? What will you do?]**

It is important to remember that God’s House is one of order. But, how is that handled amongst the believers? Using the gifts of the Spirit is a sacred trust and requires careful application. When we seek any gifts to gratify our pride, gain attention, gather a following, or simply to seek for a sign, the Spirit of the Lord is grieved and we are back to square one.

20 Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity. **[Again, Moroni refers back to his father’s epistle in chapter 7. Faith, hope, and charity – the Doctrine of**

Christ. These three principles of the Gospel create a platform to exercise all the gifts of the Spirit.]

21 And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope. **[All three, repentance, baptism, and the Holy Ghost make it possible to come unto Christ and be saved in His Kingdom.]**

22 And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity. **[If we do not exercise the virtues of godliness we are not filled with light and will suffer because of despair, the result of iniquity and separation from God.]**

23 And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me. **[Faith is the root of repentance, seeking the will of the Lord in our life (the Path of Salvation). As the disciple of Christ exercises faith they are given the gifts of the Spirit to guide them to the rod of iron. Then they are given the Holy Ghost and further gifts to help them to reach the Tree of Life and partake of the fruit.]**

24 And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth **[To every soul, both the remnant of Jacob, the Jews, and the Gentiles]**—that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief. **[false traditions, and rejecting the gifts of God.]**

25 And wo **[so sad and cursed be their situation]** be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.

This is a bold declaration. There are many “good” people in the world according to the definition most would use to describe people who are kind, generous, loving, and responsible. But, this is not the kind of good that Moroni is referring to. He writes to those who are coming to Christ and in harmony with His light, as the gifts of God are manifest. For only by the faith we exercise in coming to Him can we receive a fullness of the Holy Ghost and have Eternal Life. All else remains in the telestial sphere in which they reside, unless they choose perdition.

26 And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

27 And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust? **[All who shall read this book and reject it shall have to admit that the truth was in their hands.]**

28 I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth **[attract attention]** from generation to generation.

29 And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true. **[speaking to us]**

30 And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing. **[In the attempt to come unto Christ and exercise the gifts of the Spirit there can be the possibility of touching that which is unclean or evil. What would that be? For every gift of God there is a counterfeit of the Adversary. We should avoid spiritualism, magic, conjuring spirits, fortune telling, and other forms of miraculous experiences, which are popular in today's culture and promise instant results. Such does not bring one closer to Christ, but teaches the person to trust in the arm of flesh and another as their source for accessing the supernatural.]**

If you ever feel that your only way to access God is by leaning on another, especially if they require money for their assistance, run away as fast as you can. If their words teach you to come unto Christ and that He will help you to know what to do next, embrace it!

31 And awake, and arise from the dust **[your carnal and sinful state of being]**, O Jerusalem **[My people]**; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments **[the gift of the Holy Ghost, the garment of glory]**, O daughter of Zion **[The remnant that has strayed and now is found]**; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever **[the establishment of Zion in the last days]**, that thou mayest no more be confounded **[fall into apostasy]**, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled. **[the final realization of the Everlasting Covenant given to her upon this temporal earth]**

32 Yea, come unto Christ **[seek Him both mentally, spiritually, and physically]**, and be perfected in him **[by being born again in His image, the baptism of fire and the gift of the Holy Ghost]**, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God. **[This is the perfect formula for coming to Christ and finally receiving the promise. Fill yourself with virtue, love Him with all your heart and soul, then you will not be able to "deny" the power of God as you are changed to become His literal Son or Daughter, to be raised to a higher resurrection and inherit Eternal Life.]**

33 And again, if ye by the grace of God **[His Atonement that prepares the way for you to advance in glory]** are perfect in Christ **[Made clean and have glory added upon you]**, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified **[made holy]** in Christ by the grace **[glory]** of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ **[Atonement]**, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot. **[You will be perfect in Christ, never to be forsaken worlds without end, unless you choose otherwise.]**

34 And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen. **[Moroni expects to die soon. He looks forward to death rather than endure without his family. But, the Lord has other plans.]**

This is one of my favorite chapters of the entire Book of Mormon. Moroni sums up the purpose of the Book of Mormon – to bring us into the presence of the Lord. He emphasizes the gifts of the Spirit here more than any other part of the record. He knows the lack of faith that will exist amongst those who will receive this book in the last days and warns us. Do you understand the message? Is it not clear what he is saying? We must awake and arise and prepare ourselves to meet the Bridegroom. The Book of Mormon is the most clear roadmap to coming to Christ than any book ever written. Study it often and seek your personal revelation.

The purpose of sharing my thoughts by annotating the Book of Mormon was to inspire you to seek personal revelation, to ask additional questions, and prepare you to receive more holiness. Who are you? What is your path in this life? Prepare yourself to receive Him.

Questions and Answers

In verse 19, you mention. “It is important to remember that God’s House is one of order.” I have often heard that phrase quoted in support of the idea most gifts of the Spirit are only available to high religious authorities. But, one day, it occurred to me that God’s House is indeed a house of order, and the true order of God’s House is clearly shown in the lives and teachings of the people in the Book of Mormon. And you summed it up: “Every person who comes unto Christ receives them in multiples, even as many gifts as they need without restraint.”

Huzzah for Israel!

Thank you, PR. It had been so inspiring to read these every day as it helped me to gain new understanding. I was wondering about Reiki. Is it a gift of the spirit? It helps my husbands pain go away for the night but thats all. **[If it is not through Jesus Christ it is not a gift of the Spirit. Energy healing works, but it also carries its own risks. PR]**

To my fellow travelers on this eventful journey. I also wanted to reach out to you with love and appreciation. So many wonderful and inspiring comments and questions! My heart frequently overflowed with gratitude to witness I wasn’t the only one here being edified immensely. Many thanks to you my brothers and sisters! I enjoyed watching you grow along side me. What a wonderful experience this has been! The Lord... He is so so good to us all. 😊

Studying this past year has been incredible and something I will remember until the day I die. I was led to find the Pure Revelations blog in March 2017, a few days after doing a 30 hour fast where I asked the Lord what I needed to do to come closer to Him and be baptized with fire.

When 1 Nephi 1 was posted on Sunday November 18, 2018, I had no idea how much I would learn as I followed along. My paper scriptures have always been littered with

penciled things written in the margins. Some of these notes I was able to update or correct. Some of the questions that I had written in the tiny blank spaces of my scriptures a decade ago I asked here! What I understand now, a year later, is so much more and yet PR has assured us this is only scratching the tip of the iceberg! I look at the world through new eyes. I look at the landscape – the Book of Mormon lands under our feet – and wonder about the people. I want to learn so much more! Sometimes I find myself wishing we could all sit together in a room – each with a name tag bearing our screen names – and study together, comforted that we are not the only seekers in a decaying world. This daily study has been a lifeline. My family has often seen me smiling at my phone as I read and asked me if it is my online “Book of Mormon Study Group” that was making me so happy? I could not help but excitedly gush and share what I was learning!

[Every gift of the Spirit is a miracle, but the “mighty” ones are the kind that change the course of history. Sometimes, they come in the form of small acts of faith.] – Can you point me to a mighty miracle? – and one that starts with small acts of faith? **[There are many such examples in scripture. Nephi deciding to pray for himself to know if what his father said was true. Peter, willing to throw his net over the boat at the request of Jesus, not knowing the outcome. Joseph Smith going to the grove to ask God. It usually means being obedient to the voice of the Spirit, but the results are life changing. PR]**

[How many read the scriptures and think that such miracles do not occur to them in their lives. How many hold tight to the false traditions that prevent them from exercising these gifts. Are people controlled by the culture of propriety that surrounds their civic, church, and personal lives? Have you heard that only the clergy or authority have the right to exercise these gifts of the Spirit? Many are rebuked for attempting to use them, or even share what they experience. What do you think about this? What will you do?] PR- My brother and I have “come unto Christ” whilst pondering, praying and confirming your words... (that the words of Christ given to you are TRUE). Thank You! **[Edit]** And, how can we go about sharing to our families and ward families without stepping OUT OF BOUNDS? [out of bounds with the spirit first, and then the leaders of the Church of Jesus Christ] -Or is that a hazard of these times? **[You have to exercise a lot of patience and follow the Spirit. If you do, the timing of the Lord is always perfect. PR]**

I have not commented much here, but have read every word of your website including all the books. I have the gift “to believe on the words of others” but am cautioned to not put ANY between my Father (Christ) and me. From the depths of my heart I thank and esteem you for your great effort in helping me (and us; I know I speak for many) on this site. I sense the urgency that besets you especially in the last few weeks!! I pray for you and your family. Blessing to you all...

Pure Revelations: Thank you for the many kind remarks. It does warm my heart to know it has helped many people. Please understand that I am not a Gospel scholar, or have any kind of credential to do this. By the power of the Holy Ghost any of you can continue to expand upon these things, growing in your knowledge of the Lord, until you can stand in His presence

and “know the truth of all things.” What an incredible promise that is from the Lord, as written by Moroni!

A book that has so much insight and pure knowledge with so many examples of successful people who came unto Christ in this life, it amazes me still how people can say that the Book of Mormon was the construct of Joseph’s mind. It is a beautiful precious book. Thank you for using your spiritual gifts, PR, to bless the lives of so many. You are humble, admit your humanity, don’t seek for a following or attention, know who you truly are, seek to constantly follow the Lord’s will, and point others to receive their own relationship with Christ himself. That is so refreshing in a culture that does hardly any of those things. Thank you and Merry Christmas to you and your family. I’ll prize these gifts forever. **[Thank you. All credit to the Lord. PR]**

You may have answered this elsewhere, but could you please elaborate on what you mean when a second estate “chooses perdition”? Is it simply that they embrace evil as their MO, or is it done by covenant to follow Satan? Do they have the option to repent before the final judgement? Thanks! **[This is the equivalent of receiving your baptism of fire, but it is a baptism of darkness, the fruition of covenants made to Satan to fully commit to him. Such a person has done what some refer to as “selling their soul.” It is not as simple as signing on the dotted line or making a statement. They make dark oaths which usually require acts of darkness. Typically, we think of denying the Holy Ghost as 4th estate, but there are rewards given by the Adversary to those who choose him in this life. PR]**

Title Page of the Book of Mormon

In the current edition of the published Book of Mormon is a “Title Page,” translated by Joseph Smith from the record, and placed at the beginning of the book like we typically see for a title page. But this is not where Moroni placed it:

“I wish also to mention here, that the Title Page of the Book of Mormon is a literal translation, taken from the very last leaf, on the left hand side of the collection or book of plates, which contained the record which has been translated; the language of the whole running same as all Hebrew writing in general; and that, said Title Page is not by any means a modern composition either of mine or of any other man’s who has lived or does live in this generation” – Joseph Smith (The Joseph Smith Papers, History, 1838–1856, volume A-1 [23 December 1805–30 August 1834]).

This page is the last note left by Moroni after writing chapter 10 of his own writings. He felt prompted to write one last thing, to fill the space on the plates to emphasize who the record was made for. As with the rest of the record, there was no punctuation or chapters.

The Book of Mormon, **[the actual title given from Moroni]** an account written by the hand of Mormon upon plates Taken from the Plates of Nephi; wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites **[the words of two great peoples]**—written to the Lamanites **[Native American peoples who are decedents of these people]**, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile—written by way of commandment **[revelation from God]**, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation **[Prophecy is to say what the Lord directs, revelation is to do as the Lord directs and to understand His ways.]**—written and sealed up **[closed from the world]**, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed—to come forth by the gift and power of God **[the gift of Translation]** unto the interpretation thereof—sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile **[They were hid more than once until they had their final resting place in the Hill Cummorah.]**—the interpretation thereof by the gift of God. An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven **[Tower of Babel]**—which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord **[The fullness of the Everlasting Covenant, which shall be unsealed at the great day when the Lamanites shall be converted.]**, that they are not cast off forever—and also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that Jesus is the Christ **[And this event shall lead the way to the final conversion of the House of Israel.]**, the Eternal God, manifesting himself unto all nations **[Through His servants, the Anointed 144k, the Saviors on Mount Zion, the Just Men and Women Made Perfect, the Fourth Estate]**—and now, if there are faults **[in the translation]** they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment-seat of Christ. **[These mistakes are not to be laid upon Mormon or Moroni, or even Joseph Smith. They are the misunderstood false traditions that have given meaning to certain words that allow their true meaning to be veiled.]**

“Behold, it is finished.” [Moroni’s last words regarding the writings.]